This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.



https://books.google.com

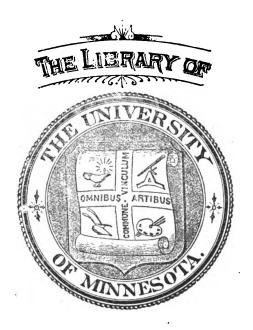


# No. 125 ASIATIC PILOT VOL. IV



1915





CLASS 656
BOOK Un3as



#### No. 125

# ASIATIC PILOT

Volume IV

THE SHORES OF THE CHINA SEA FROM SINGAPORE STRAIT TO AND INCLUDING HONGKONG

 $\mathcal{L}U, \mathcal{L}$ .

PUBLISHED BY THE HYDROGRAPHIC OFFICE UNDER THE AUTHORITY OF THE SECRETARY OF THE NAVY



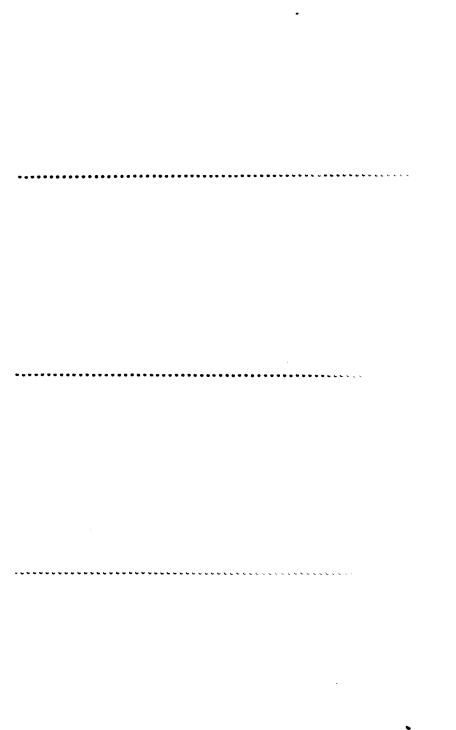
WASHINGTON GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE 1915

•	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** ** **	
	•
r sou i como mario de esta de e	
	•
to remark the rest of the section of	
*	<b>5</b>
•	
• • •	
Correction of the contraction of	
**************************************	•
eren de la companya d	£

#### H. O. 125

A summary of the Notices to Mariners affecting this publication, published during the year 1919, will be sent free of expense upon the receipt of this coupon at the United States Hydrographic Office, Washington, D. C.
Name
Address
н. О. 125.
A summary of the Notices to Mariners affecting this publication, published during the year 1920, will be sent free of expense upon the receipt of this coupon at the United States Hydrographic Office, Washington, D. C.
Name
Address
· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
н. о. 125.
A summary of the Notices to Mariners affecting this publication, published during the year 1921, will be sent free of expense upon the receipt of this coupon at the United States Hydrographic Office, Washington, D. C.
Name
Address
······································
н. о. 125.
A summary of the Notices to Mariners affecting this publication, published during the year 1922, will be sent free of expense upon the receipt of this coupon at the United States Hydrographic Office, Washington, D. C.
Name
• Address



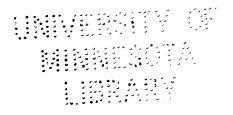


## PREFACE.

This volume of the Asiatic Pilot is compiled from all available information, and is taken principally from the sailing directions for the China Sea published by the British Admiralty. It comprises the eastern coast of the Malay Peninsula, Indo China, Cochin China, and China as far as and including Hongkong Harbor.

Hydrographic Office, Washington, D. C., February, 1915.

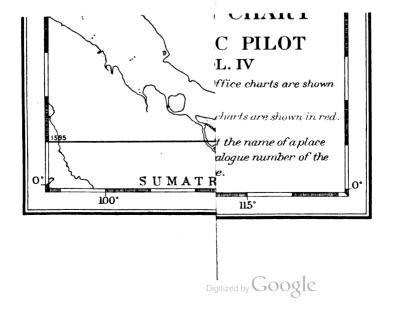
Ш



## TO VIESSIVISO AVORSVININ VEAREI

## CONTENTS

Preface	Pag .
Note	VII
Glossaries	VIII
Money tables	XI
Information relating to navigational aids and general navigation	1
Index	523
Index chart	VI
List of Hydrographic Office publications.  List of Hydrographic Office agents.	570 574
CHAPTER I.	013
•	
General remarks on the various countries; coaling places; communication; uniform system of buoyage; winds and weather; typhoon signals; currents; passages	21
CHAPTER II.	
SOUTHERN PART OF THE CHINA SEA.	
East coast of the Malay Peninsula with the offlying islands and dangers—Anamba Islands and North Natura Island	70
CHAPTER III.	
Main route to Hongkong—Description of islands, reefs, and shoals	105
CHAPTER IV.	
The Gulf of Siam, western shore	128 145
CHAPTER V.	
Indo China—Coasts of Cochin China and Anam	189
CHAPTER VI.	
Tonkin Gulf; Cape Lay to Cape Kami	254
CHAPTER VII.	
Hainan Island and Strait	313
CHAPTER VIII.	
Southeast coast of China—Hainan Strait to Si Kiang or West River	350
CHAPTER IX.	000
Chu Kiang or Canton River, including the various channels connecting Canton with the Si Kiang or West River.	411
CHAPTER X.	
Hongkong, and adjacent islands and anchorages.	462



## NOTE.

This publication contains the latest information up to and including Notice to Mariners No. 3, 1915.

The bearings and courses are true and are given in degrees from 0° to 360°, commencing at north and increasing to the right in accordance with the system adopted by the United States Navy.

Bearings limiting the sectors of lights are toward the light.

The directions of the winds refer to the points from which they blow; of currents, the points toward which they set. These directions are true.

Variations for the year 1910, with the annual rate of change may be obtained from Hydrographic Office Chart 2406. Variation of the compass.

Distances are expressed in nautical miles, the mile being approximately 2,000 yards.

Soundings are referred to low-water ordinary springs, except at Hongkong and vicinity, where they are referred to mean lowest springs.

Heights are referred to high-water ordinary springs.

The latest information regarding lights should always be sought in the light lists.

Attention is invited to the coupons on the first pages of this book, which entitle the purchaser to a summary of the Notices to Mariners affecting this publication. They will be ready for distribution as soon as practicable after the first of each year, beginning January, 1916.

Mariners are earnestly requested to notify the United States Hydrographic Office, directly or through one of its branch offices, of any new information obtained or of any errors or omissions discovered in this publication.

VII

### Glossary of nautical and generic terms in the Malay language.

Malay.	English.	Malay.	English.
Alang alang	Reeds.	Layar	Sail.
Angin	Wind.	Lumpar or Lumpur	Mud.
Api	Fire.	Manuk	
Arang	Coal.	Masin	Salt.
Arus	Current.	Mesigit	Mosque.
Ayer	Water.	Missigit	Mosque.
masin	Salt water.	Muara	Mouth of a river.
pasang	Flood or high tide.	Negri	Town.
surut	Ebb or low tide.	Nipa	
_ tawar	Fresh water.	Nusa	
Baharu	New.	Padi	Rice in the straw.
Bambu	Bamboo cane.	Pandoman	Mariner's compass.
Barat	West.	Panjang	Long.
Batu	Rock, stone.	Pantei	
Besar	Large, great.	Pasang besar	
Besi	Iron.	kring	Low tide.
Beting	Shoal, sand.	naik	Flood tide.
Buluh	Bamboo cane.	surut	Ebb tide.
Burung		turun	Ebb tide.
Bukit	Hill.	Pasir	Sand.
Buwah	Fruit.	Pelabuan	
Chettek	Shallow.	Pingir Laut	Coast, seaboard. Banana.
Daging-Sapi	Beef.	Pisang	
Dalem or Dalam	Deep.	Pohun or Puhun	
Dammar Darat	Gum. Coast, land.	Prau, prahu Pulo	Boat, shi <b>p.</b> Island.
Dessa	District, with villages.	Putih	White.
Ef (Misol)	Island.	Renda.	Low.
Gadong	House.	Rotan	
Gunong	Mountain.	Roti	
Gusong	Reef of rocks.	Ruma	
lkan	Fish.	Sampan	
Itam	Black.	Sawuh	
Jalan	Road.	Sayuran	
Jambatan	Mole, jetty.	Selat.	Channel, strait,
Jankar		Si	An article inseparab
Kalapa or Kelapa	Coconut.		united to nouns ar
Kaler	North.		denoting familiarity.
Kali	River.	Sungi	River.
Kampong	Village.	Tali	Cable.
Kapal	Ship.	Tanah	Land, country.
Karang	Coral.	Tanjong	Cape point.
Kayu	Tree.	Tebu	
Kechil	Little, small.	Tedoh	Calm.
Kering	Dry.	Telok or Teluk	Bay.
Kidul	South.	Tepilaut	
Kotta	Town.	Tida Angin	Calm.
Kring	Dry.	Titian	Mole, jetty.
Kroon boom	Round-topped tree.	Tohor	Shallow.
Kupel boom	Dome-topped tree.	Toko	Store.
Kwala	Mouth of a river.	Trepang	Bêche-de-mer.
Labuan	Anchorage.	Trumbu	Dangerous hidden shoal
Lama	Old.	Trusan	
Laut	Sea.	Tuwak	Old

### Principal points of the compass (Malay).

Malay.	English.	Malay.	English.
Utara. Utara-samata timor. Timur-laut. Timur-samata utara. Timur Timur Timur Timur-tanggara. Tanggara. Salatan-tanggara.	NNE. NE. ENE. East. ESE. SE.	Salatan Salatan-daya Barat-daya Barat-samata-salatan Barat-tapat Barat-samata-atara Barat-laut U tara-barat-laut	SSW. SW. WSW. West. WNW. NW.

## $A\ glossary\ of\ useful\ Siamese\ words.$

Siamese.	English.	Siamese.	English.
Ao, Au	Bay, creek.	Nam-Khum	Rising tide.
Ban	House.	Nam-long	Ebbing tide.
Bang	Village.	Nam-o	Beginning of rising tide.
Bon	Upper.	Nam-tem-Khray e	High water.
Buri	Cîtv.	Naung	Lake, swamp,
Chaung, Chong	Strait.	Nawi	Small.
Dam	Black.	Nei.	In.
Dan	Police or customs station.	Nei-kwa	Inner.
Daung	Forest.	Noi.	Little, less.
	Red.	Noi-kwa.	Lesser.
Deng Din niau		Nok.	Out.
	Clay.		I " 7"
Din-si-fong	Chalk.	Nok-kwa	Outer.
Doi, Dowi	Mountain.	Nong	Pond, pool.
Don	Island.	Pa	Forest.
Fai	Fire, light.	Pak	Meuth.
Hat, Hatsai	Sand bank.	Pak-nam	Mouth of a river.
Hin	Rock, stone.	Phra	Pagoda.
Hoi	Stream.	Phrair	Tributary of a river.
Htung	Field, plain.	Pom	Fort.
Huë	Mountain stream.	Pu	Hill.
Kau	Old.	Rai	Clearing in forest.
Khāo	Mountain, hill.	Rong-pa-si	Customhouse.
Khāo	White.	Sai	Sand, gravel.
Khlon	Mud.	Sala	Rest house.
Klong	Canal or creek.	Sao-thong	Flagstaff.
Koh	Island.	Sap	Great.
Kupa	Savages.	Ta	Landing place.
Laam	Bay, river bend.	Tha-le	Sea, lake.
Lang	Lower.	Thai	Siamese.
Langtao	Bar.	Thang	Road.
Lat.	Short cut.	Thit nua	North.
Lek	Small.	Thit tai	South.
Lem	Cape, point.	Thit tawan-ok	East.
Lom	Wind.	Thit tawan tok	West.
Luang	Yellow.	Thi-thort-samor	Anchorage.
			Storehouse.
Luong	Great.	Toko	
Mai	New.	Tong	Mountain.
Me	River.	Tumniep	Rest house.
Menang	Province.	Wat	Temple.
Monthon		Yai	Great.
Muang		Yai-kwa	Greater.
Na	Field.	Yort	Peak.
Nam	Water, tide.	11	

## A short glossary of Chinese words occurring in the charts and sailing directions.

Chinese.	English.	Chinese.	English.
Ai	A saddle between hills.	Hai wan	Bay.
An	Shore.	Hai yau	Gulf.
Cha	Barrier, sand.	Hang	
Cha kwang mu	Boom.	Hao	Ditch.
Chai	Camp.	He	Black.
Chau	District city of the second	Hia	Gorge, lower.
	order, islet.	Hia kau	
Cheng, Chin	Town or city.	Hiang tsun	Village.
Chia		Hien, Hsien	District city of the third
Chiao	Bridge.	•	order.
Chow chow	Rips.	Hiu	
Chuang	Village.	Но	River.
Chuen	Channel.	Ho tun	Lighthouse.
Chung yuen	Mainland.	Hsi	Swamp.
Fang	Hamlet, house.	Hu	
Fau fu		Hung	Red.
Fau tau		Hwan	Bay.
Feng	Peak.	Hwang	Yellow.
Fon		I	
Fu		Kang	
	order.	Kao	
Gau		Kau	
Hada	Mountain.	Kiang	River.
Hai	Sea, lake.	Kiau	Bridge.
Hai kau	Bight, creek.	Kin	
Hai kio	Cape.	King	Capital, city.
Hai mun		King chi chau	
Hai tao	Island.	Kio	Cape, point.

### A short glossary of Chinese words occurring in the charts and sailing directions—Contd.

Chinese.	English.	Chinese.	English.
So	Rocky peak, headland.	Sha	Sand, sand bank.
Cong	Temple.	Sha sien	Shoal.
wan	Customhouse.	Sha tan	Bar.
wang lau	Lighthouse.	Shan	Hill, mountain.
Cu	Valley.	Shan hu	Coral.
an	Market place.	Shan tau	Bluff, cliff.
au	Tower, old.	Shan ting	Mountain chain.
ang	Waves.	Shang	Upper,
eang	Ledges.	Shao	Small.
ei hsien chu	Telegraph.	She	Stone.
.1	Inner, one-third of a mile.	She tan	Reef.
iao	Distant.	Shi	Market.
in	Forest.	Shin	Spirit (celestial).
ing	Chain of hills, mountain	Shui	Water, small river.
-	pass.	8i	West, western.
u	Road.	Sia	Lower.
ung	Tiger, dragon.	Siau	Small.
[a	Horse.	Siau ho	Rivulet.
a tau	Jetty, port.	Sin	New.
aima	Trade.	Sing	A spring.
[ei	Coal.	So	Town, village.
en	Gate.	Та	Pagoda, great.
liau	Temple.	Tai	Plateau.
[u	A wood.	Tan	Rapid, shoal or bar.
[un	Pass.	Tang	Lake.
[uren	River.	Tao, tau	Island.
an	South, southern.	Tau tu	Clay.
ei	Inner.	Than	Rapids.
[i	Mud.	Ting, 1i tau	Promontory.
ui	Inner.	То	Bay.
mo	Lake.	To mu	Wooded.
8	Embankment.	Tsi	Ravine.
ai	White.	Tsiau pi	Cliff.
an	Hill.	Tsui	Cape.
au tai	Fort.	Tsui sha	Gravel.
e, peh, pei	North.	Tsui wei	Rocky, stony.
ho	Market.	Tung	East, eastern.
ing	A plain.	Tutan	Ferry.
0	Lake.	Ula	River.
u	Citadel, commercial vil-	Wai	Outer.
	lage.	Wan	Bay.
wang she	Rocks.	Wi mo ti	Isthmus.
ampan	Boat.	Wei	Outer, military post.
an	Hill, mountain.	Yang	Blue, sheep.
au	Little.	Yao	Small.
9i	Temple.	Yen tun	Beacon, buoy.

## MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

#### FEDERATED MALAY STATES.

Weights and measures as well as currency are the same as in the Straits Settlements. The dollar, value 57 cents, is the standard coin, and with the half dollar and the British sovereign is legal tender for the payment of any amount. Subsidiary silver coins are 20, 10, and 5 cent pieces; copper coins are cents, half cents, and quarter cents.

The measure of length in use is the yard with its divisions and multiples, and land is measured by the acre. The native terms are, however, still in use.

Commercial weights are:

- 1 kati=16 tahil=11 lbs. avoirdupois.
- 1 pikul=100 kati=1331 lbs. avoirdupois.
- 1 koyan=40 pikul=5,333\frac{1}{3} lbs. avoirdupois.

The kati of  $1\frac{1}{3}$  lbs. is known as the Chinese kati (catty). The measures of capacity are the gantung or gallon, and chupak or quart.

#### SIAM.

The unit of the monetary system is the silver tical, weighing 15 grams, .900 fine. Its value (formerly varying with the price of silver) has, by the Gold Standard Act of 1908, been fixed at 1s.  $6\frac{1}{2}$ d., or 13 ticals=£1, the gold value of the tical being equal to that of 55.8 centigrams of pure gold. There will be a 10-tical gold piece, or dos, weighing 6.2 grams, .900 fine, and thus containing 5.58 grams of pure gold. In addition to the tical the following coins are now actually in use:

The salung= $\frac{1}{4}$  tical, the 10-satang piece= $\frac{10}{100}$  of a tical.

The 5-satang piece= $\frac{5}{100}$  of a tical, and the satang= $\frac{1}{100}$  of a tical.

The salung is of silver, .800 fine. The 10-satang and 5-satang pieces are of nickel, while the satang is of bronze.

The measures of weight are:

1 tical=15 grams or approximately .53 oz.; 4 ticals=1 tamlung (60 grams or 2.1 oz.); 20 tamlungs=1 chang (1.2 kilograms or 2 lbs. 10.3 oz.); and 50 chang=1 hap (60 kilograms or slightly over 132\frac{1}{2} lbs.).

The measures of length are:

- 1 niu=0.83 inches; 12 niu=1 keup (10 inches); 2 keup=1 sok (20 inches); 4 sok=
- 1 wa (80 inches); 20 wa=1 sen (133 feet); 400 sen=1 yot (10 miles, roughly).

#### FRENCH INDO-CHINA.

For French Indo-China there is a coinage of silver pieces, piasters,  $\frac{1}{2}$  piasters, and  $\frac{1}{10}$  piasters; the piaster (since 1895) weighs 27 grams and the fractional coins in proportion; the piaster and  $\frac{1}{2}$  piaster are .500 fine, but the  $\frac{1}{3}$  and  $\frac{1}{10}$  piaster (since 1898) only .835 fine. The piaster and the Mexican dollar are usually worth rather less than 48 cents. There are two bronze coins, one equal to the 100th and the other the 375th part of a piaster.

. Digitized by Google

#### CHINA.

The sole official coinage and the monetary unit of China has been hitherto the copper cash, of which about 1,220=1 haikwan tael, and about 35=1 penny. A coin recently issued in great numbers by the provincial mints is the "hundredth of a dollar." This coin, of which the issue to the end of 1906 is computed to have been 12,500,000,000, has been readily accepted, but latterly at rates corresponding closely to the intrinsic value of the metal in it. The face value of the coin is about 0.15 of a cent, the intrinsic worth about 0.06 of a cent.

The use of silver bullion, or sycee, as the medium of exchange is not now much less common, but the circulation of the dollar is certainly extending. The haikwan (or customs) tael was equal in value in 1909 to 62; cents.

The dollar (of the same weight and touch as the Mexican dollar) is now current in all the provinces, even in out-of-the-way districts. Notes for cash are also much in vogue

A decree (agreed to by Great Britain) was issued May 25, 1910, establishing the silver dollar (yuan) of .90 touch and weighing .72 Treasury-weight tael as the unit of currency. The touch and weight of the silver subsidiary coins (50c., 25c., and 10c.) was also definitely specified, while provision was made for further subsidiary coins (5c. nickel, 2c., 1c., ½c., and ½c. copper), of touch and weight to be laid down later. The minting of these coins has begun, but none are yet (1911) in circulation. The several mints are now under the Central Government. The K'up'ing tael weighs 575.642039 grains, somewhat less than the haikwan tael, which weighs 581.47 grains.

A decree for uniform weight and measures was issued October 9, 1907, whereby the K'up'ing or Treasury tael was made the standard weight.

10 hao = 1 li (nominal cash). 10 li = 1 fèn (candaren). 10 fèn = 1 ch'ien (mace).  6 to Î 0 kin of rice and measur- ing from 1.13 to 1.63 gallon). 10 ch'ih = 1 chang (2 fathoms). Commodifies, even liquids, 1 li = approximately 600 yards	Weight.	Capacity.	Length.
avoirdupois, by treaty.  16 liang = 1 chin (catty) = 13 lbs.  18 lbs.  such as oil, spirits, are commonly bought and sold by weight.	10 hu = 1 hao.  10 hao = 1 li (nominal cash).  10 li = 1 lên (candaren).  10 fên = 1 ch'ien (mace).  10 ch'ien = 1 liang (tael) = ½ oz.  avoirdupois, by treaty.  16 liang = 1 chin (catty) = 1½  lbs.  100 chin = 1 tan (picul) = 133½	10 sheng = 1 tou (holding from 6\(\frac{1}{2}\) to 10 kin of rice and measur- ing from 1.13 to 1.63 gallon). Commodities, even liquids, such as oil, spirits, are com- monly bought and sold by	10 ts'un = 1 ch'ih (foot) = 14.1 inches, by treaty. 10 ch'ih = 1 chang (2 fathoms).

In the tariff settled by treaty between Great Britain and China, the *ch'ih* of 14.1 inches, has been adopted as the legal standard. The standards of weight and length vary all over the Empire, the *ch'ih*, for example, ranging from 9 to 16 inches, and the *chang* (=10 *ch'ih*) in proportion; but at the Treaty ports the use of the foreign treaty standard of *ch'ih* and *chang* is becoming common.

# INFORMATION RELATING TO NAVIGATIONAL AIDS AND GENERAL NAVIGATION.

## THE CORRECTION OF CHARTS, LIGHT LISTS, AND SAILING DIRECTIONS.

The following publications are issued by the United States-Hydrographic Office as guides to navigation: Charts, Chart Catalogues, Sailing Directions, Light Lists, Tide Tables, Notices to Mariners, Pilot Charts, and Hydrographic Bulletins. Of these, the Notices to Mariners and the Hydrographic Bulletins are free to mariners and others interested in shipping. The Pilot Charts are free to contributors of professional information, but are sold to the general public at 10 cents a copy. The other publications of the office are sold under the law at cost price.

The Charts, the Sailing Directions, and the Light Lists are all affected by continual changes and alterations, concerning which information from all parts of the world is published weekly in the Notices to Mariners.

The charts are always corrected for all available information up to the date of issue stamped upon them; and the Light Lists should be noted for the recent alterations and additions. The Sailing Directions, however, can not, from their nature, be so fully corrected, and in all cases where they differ from the charts, the charts must be taken as the guide.

Charts.—When issued from the Hydrographic Office, the charts have received all necessary corrections to date.

All small but important corrections that can be made by hand are given in the Notices to Mariners, and should at once be placed on the charts to which they refer.

Extensive corrections that can not be conveniently thus made are put upon the plates, and new copies are put on sale. Masters of vessels are urged to replace the old charts, which should be destroyed to prevent the possibility of their being used in the navigation of the ship.

The dates on which extensive corrections are made are noted on the chart on the right of the middle of the lower edge; those of the smaller corrections at the left lower corners.

The edition, and corresponding date, of the chart will be found in the right lower corner, outside the outer neat line.

Digitized by Google

In all cases of quotations of charts, these dates of corrections should be given, as well as the number of the chart (found in the lower right and upper left corners), in order that the edition of the chart referred to may be known.

The Light Lists are corrected before issue, and all changes are published in the weekly Notices to Mariners.

The navigating officer should make notations in the tabular form in the Light Lists and paste in at the appropriate places slips from the Notices to Mariners.

The Light Lists should always be consulted as to the details of a light, as the description in the sailing directions is not complete, and may be obsolete, in consequence of changes since publication.

The Sailing Directions or Pilots are kept corrected by addenda; and subsequent to date of last addenda, they should be kept corrected by means of the Notices to Mariners. Sailing Directions issued to naval vessels carry with them an envelope containing slips of corrections up to date of issue.

Addenda are published from time to time, and contain a summary of all the information received up to date since the publication of the volume to which they refer, canceling all previous Notices to Mariners.

To enable the books to be more conveniently corrected, addenda and Notices to Mariners are printed on one side only, and two copies of the latter are issued to each naval vessel, one to be cut and the slips pasted in at the appropriate places, the other to be retained intact for reference.

To paste in the slips, as the Notices to Mariners are received, is one of the duties of the navigating officer, demanding faithful attention.

It must, however, be understood that Sailing Directions will rarely be correct in all details, and that, as already stated, when differences exist, the chart, which should be corrected from the most recent information, should be taken as the guide, for which purpose, for ordinary navigation, it is sufficient.

The Tide Tables, which are published annually by the United States Coast and Geodetic Survey, give the predicted times and heights of the high and the low waters for every day in the year at 70 of the principal ports of the world, and, through the medium of these by means of tidal differences and ratios, at a very large number of subordinate ports. The tables for the Atlantic and the Pacific coast ports of the United States are also published separately.

It should be remembered that these tables aim to give the times of high and low water, and not the times of turning of the current or of slack water, which may be quite different.

Notices to Mariners, containing fresh information pertaining to all parts of the world, are published weekly and mailed to all

United States ships in commission, Branch Hydrographic offices and agencies, and United States consulates. Copies are furnished free by the main office or by any of the branch offices on application.

With each Notice to naval vessels is sent also a separate sheet, giving the items relating to lights contained in the latest Notice, intended especially for use in correcting the Light Lists.

Pilot Charts of the North Atlantic, Central American Waters, and North Pacific and Indian Oceans are published each month, and of the South Atlantic and South Pacific Oceans each quarter. These charts give the average conditions of wind and weather, barometer, percentage of fog and gales, routes for steam and sailing vessels for the period of issue, ice and derelicts for the preceding period, ocean currents and magnetic variation for the current year, storm tracks for preceding years, and much other useful information. They are furnished free only in exchange for marine data or observations.

Hydrographic Bulletins, published weekly, are supplemental to the Pilot Charts, and contain the latest reports of obstructions and dangers along the coast and principal ocean routes, ice, derelicts, and wreckage, reports of the use of oil to calm the sea, and other information for mariners. They are to be had free upon application.

#### THE USE OF CHARTS.

Accuracy of chart.—The value of a chart must manifestly depend upon the character and accuracy of the survey on which it is based, and the larger the scale of the chart the more important do these become.

To judge of a survey, its source and date, which are generally given in the title, are a good guide. Besides the changes that may have taken place since the date of the survey, in waters where sand or mud prevails, the earlier surveys were mostly made under circumstances that precluded great accuracy of detail; until a chart founded on such a survey is tested, it should be regarded with caution. It may, indeed, be said that, except in well-frequented harbors and their approaches, no surveys yet made have been so thorough as to make it certain that all dangers have been found. The number of the soundings is another method of estimating the completeness of the survey, remembering, however, that the chart is not expected to show all the soundings that were obtained. When the soundings are sparse or unevenly distributed, it may be taken for granted that the survey was not in great detail.

Large or irregular blank spaces among soundings mean that no soundings were obtained in these spots. When the surrounding soundings are deep it may fairly be assumed that in the blanks the water is also deep; but when they are shallow, or it can be

seen from the rest of the chart that reefs or banks are present, such blanks should be regarded with suspicion. This is especially the case in coral regions and off rocky coasts, and it should be remembered that in waters where rocks abound it is always possible that a survey, however complete and detailed, may have failed to find every small patch or pinnacle rock.

A wide berth should therefore be given to every rocky shore or patch, and instead of considering a coast to be clear, the contrary should be assumed.

Fathom curves a caution.—Except in charts of harbors that have been surveyed in detail, the 5-fathom curve on most charts may be considered as a danger line or caution against unnecessarily approaching the shore or bank within that line, on account of the possible existence of undiscovered inequalities of the bottom, which only an elaborate detailed survey could reveal. In general surveys of coasts or of little frequented anchorages, the necessities of navigation do not demand the great expenditure of time required for so detailed a survey. It is not contemplated that ships will approach the shores in such localities without taking special precautions.

The 10-fathom curve on rocky shores is another warning, especially for ships of heavy draft.

A useful danger curve will be obtained by tracing out with a colored pencil, or ink, the line of depth next greater than the draft of the ship using the chart. For vessels drawing less than 18 feet the edge of the sanding serves as a well-marked danger line.

Charts on which no fathom curves are marked must especially be regarded with caution, as indicating that soundings were too scanty and the bottom too uneven to enable the curves to be drawn with accuracy.

Isolated soundings, shoaler than surrounding depths, should always be avoided, especially if ringed around, as it is doubtful how closely the spot may have been examined and whether the least depth has been found.

The chart on largest scale should always be used on account of its greater detail and the greater accuracy with which positions may be plotted on it.

Caution in using small-scale charts.—In approaching the land or dangerous banks, regard must always be had to the scale of the chart used. A small error in laying down a position means only yards on a large-scale chart, whereas on one of small scale the same amount of displacement means a large fraction of a mile.

Distortion of printed charts.—The paper on which charts are printed from engraved plates has to be damped. On drying distortion takes place from the inequalities of the paper, which greatly

varies with different papers and the amount of the damping; but it does not affect navigation. The larger the chart the greater the amount of this distortion. It must not, however, be expected that accurate series of angles taken to different points will always exactly agree when carefully plotted on the chart, especially if the lines to objects be long.

Mercator chart.—Observed bearings are not identical with those measured on the Mercator chart (excepting only the bearings north and south, and east and west on the equator) because the line of sight, except as affected by refraction, is a straight line and lies in the plane of the great circle, while the straight line on the chart (except the meridian line) represents, not the arc of a great circle, but the loxodromic curve, or rhumb line, which on the globe is a spiral approaching but never in theory reaching the pole, or, if the direction be east and west, a circle of latitude.

The difference is not appreciable with near objects, and in ordinary navigation may be neglected. But in high latitudes, when the objects are very distant and especially when lying near east or west, the bearings must be corrected for the convergence of the meridians in order to be accurately placed on the Mercator chart, which represents the meridians as parallel.

On the polyconic chart, since a straight line represents (within the limits of 15 or 20 degrees of longitude) the arc of a great circle or the shortest distance between two points, bearings of the chart are identical with observed bearings.

The mercator projection is unsuited to surveying, for which purpose the polyconic projection is used by the Hydrographic Office and the Coast and Geodetic Survey.

Notes on charts should always be read with care, as they may give important information that can not be graphically represented.

Buoys.—Too much reliance should not be placed on buoys always maintaining their exact positions. They should therefore be regarded as warnings, and not as infallible navigational marks, especially when in exposed places and in the wintertime; and a ship's position should always, when possible, be checked by bearings or angles of fixed objects on shore.

Gas buoys.—The lights shown by gas buoys can not be implicitly relied on; the light may be altogether extinguished, or, if periodic, the apparatus may get out of order.

Whistle and bell buoys are sounded only by the action of the sea; therefore, in calm weather, they are less effective or may not sound.

Lights.—All the distances given in the Light Lists and on the charts for the visibility of lights are calculated for a height of 15 feet for the observer's eye. The effect of a greater or less height

79795-15---2

of eye can be ascertained by means of the table of distances of visibility due to height, published in the Light Lists.

The glare of a powerful light is often seen far beyond the limit of visibility of the actual rays of the light, but this must not be confounded with the true range. Refraction, too, may often cause a light to be seen farther than under ordinary circumstances.

When looking out for a light, the fact may be forgotten that aloft the range of vision is much increased. By noting a star immediately over the light a very correct bearing may be obtained from the standard compass when you lay down from aloft.

On first making a light from the bridge, by at once lowering the eye several feet and noting whether the light is made to dip, it may be determined whether the ship is on the circle of visibility corresponding with the usual height of the eye, or unexpectedly nearer the light.

The intrinsic power of a light should always be considered when expecting to make it in thick weather. A weak light is easily obscured by haze, and no dependence can be placed on its being seen.

The power of a light can be estimated by its candlepower or order, as stated in the Light Lists, and in some cases by noting how much its visibility in clear weather falls short of the range corresponding to its height. Thus, a light standing 200 feet above the sea and recorded as visible only 10 miles in clear weather, is manifestly of little brilliancy, as its height would permit it to be seen over 20 miles if of sufficient power.

Fog signals.—Sound is conveyed in a very capricious way through the atmosphere. Apart from the influence of the wind large areas of silence have been found in different directions and at different distances from the origin of sound, even in clear weather; therefore, too much confidence should not be felt as to hearing a fog signal. The apparatus, moreover, for sounding the signal often requires some time before it is in readiness to act. A fog often creeps imperceptibly toward the land, and may not be observed by the lighthouse keepers until upon them; a ship may have been for many hours in it, and approaching the land in confidence, depending on the signal, which is not sounded. When sound travels against the wind, it may be thrown upward; a man aloft might then hear it though inaudible on deck.

The submarine bell system of fog signals is much more reliable than systems transmitting sound through the air, as sound traveling in water is not subject to the same disturbing influences; the fallibility of the lighthouse keeper is, however, about the same in all systems, so that caution should be observed even by vessels equipped with submarine-bell receiving apparatus.



Submarine bells have an effective range of audibility greater than signals sounded in air, and a vessel equipped with receiving apparatus may determine the approximate bearing of the signal. These signals may be heard also on vessels not equipped with receiving apparatus by observers below the water line, but the bearing of the signal can not then be readily determined.

Vessels equipped with radio apparatus and submarine bell receivers may fix their distance from a light vessel having radio and submarine bell, utilizing the difference in velocity of sound waves of the radio and the bell. Sound travels 4,794 feet per second at 66° F. in water, and the travel of radio sound waves for practicable distances may be taken as instantaneous.

All vessels should observe the utmost caution in closing the land in fogs. The lead is the safest guide and should be faithfully used.

Tides.—A knowledge of the times of high and low water and of the amount of vertical rise and fall of the tide is of great importance in the case of vessels entering or leaving port, especially when the low water is less than or near their draft. Such knowledge is also useful at times to vessels running close along a coast, in enabling them to anticipate the effect of the tidal currents in setting them on or offshore. This is especially important in fog or thick weather.

The predicted times and heights of the high and low waters, or differences by which they may be readily obtained, are given in the Tide Tables for all the important ports of the world. The height at any intermediate time may be obtained by means of Tables 2A and 2B for most of the principal tidal stations of the United States, given in Table 1, and for the subordinate stations of Table 3 by using them as directed in the Tide Tables. The intermediate height may also be obtained by plotting the predicted times and heights of high and low water and connecting the points by a curve. Such knowledge is often useful in crossing a bar or shallow flats.

Planes of reference.¹—The plane of reference for soundings on Hydrographic Office charts made from United States Government surveys and on Coast and Geodetic Survey charts of the Atlantic coast of the United States is mean low water; on the Pacific coast of the United States as far as the Strait of Juan Fuca, it is the mean of the lower low waters; and from Puget Sound to Alaska, the plane employed on Hydrographic Office charts is low water ordinary springs.

On most of the British Admiralty charts the plane of reference is the low water of ordinary springs; on French charts, the low water of equinoctial springs.



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The distinction between "rise" and "range" of the tide should be understood. The former expression refers to the height attained above the datum plane for soundings, differing with the different planes of reference; the latter, to the difference of level between successive high and low waters.

In the case of many charts compiled from old or various sources the plane of reference may be in doubt. In such cases, or when ever not stated on the chart, the assumption that the reference plane is low water ordinary springs gives a larger margin of safety than mean low water.

Whichever plane of reference may be used for a chart it must be remembered that there are times when the tide falls below it. Low water is lower than mean low water about half the time, and when a new or full moon occurs at perigee the low water is lower than the average low water of springs. At the equinoxes the spring range is also increased on the coasts of Europe, but in some other parts of the world, and especially in the Tropics, such periodic low tides may coincide more frequently with the solstices.

Wind or a high barometer may at times cause the water to fall below even a very low plane of reference.

On coasts where there is much diurnal inequality in the tides, the amount of rise and fall can not be depended upon and additional caution is necessary.

Mean sea level.—The important fact should be remembered that the depths at half tide are practically the same for all tides, whether neaps or springs. Half tide therefore corresponds with mean sea level. This makes a very exact plane of reference, easily found, to which it would be well to refer all high and low waters.

The Tide Tables give in Table 3, for all the ports, the plane of reference to which tidal heights are referred and its distance below mean sea level.

If called on to take special soundings for the chart at a place where there is no tidal bench mark, mean sea level should be found and the plane for reductions established at the proper distance below it, as ascertained by the Tide Tables, or by observations, or in some cases, if the time be short, by estimation, the data used being made a part of the record.

Tidal streams.—In navigating coasts where the tidal range is considerable, especial caution is necessary. It should be remembered that there are indrafts to all bays and bights, although the general run of the stream may be parallel with the shore.

The turn of the tidal stream offshore is seldom coincident with the times of high and low water on the shore. In some channels the tidal stream may overrun the turn of the vertical movement of the tide by three hours, forming what is usually known as tide and half tide, the effect of which is that at high and low water by the shore the stream is running at its greatest velocity.

The effect of the tidal wave in causing currents may be illustrated by two simple cases.

- (1) Where there is a small tidal basin connected with the sea by a large opening.
- (2) Where there is a large tidal basin connected with the sea by a small opening.

In the first case the velocity of the current in the opening will have its maximum value when the height of the tide within is changing most rapidly, i. e., at a time about midway between high and low water. The water in the basin keeps at approximately the same level as the water outside. The flood stream corresponds with the rising and the ebb with the falling of the tide.

In the second case the velocity of the current in the opening will have its maximum value when it is high water or low water without, for then there is the greatest head of water for producing motion. The flood stream begins about three hours after low water, and the ebb stream about three hours after high water, slack water thus occurring about midway between the tides.

Along most shores not much affected by bays, tidal rivers, etc., the current usually turns soon after high water and low water.

The swiftest current in straight portions of tidal rivers is usually in the middle of the stream, but in curved portions the most rapid current is toward the outer edge of the curve, and here the water will be deepest. The pilot rule for best water is to follow the ebb tide reaches.

Countercurrents and eddies may occur near the shores of straits, especially in bights and near points. A knowledge of them is useful in order that they may be taken advantage of or avoided.

A swift current often occurs in a narrow passage connecting two large bodies of water, owing to their considerable difference of level at the same instant. The several passages between Vineyard Sound and Buzzards Bay are cases in point. In the Woods Hole passage the maximum strength of the tidal streams is at about half tide.

Tide rips are made by a rapid current setting over an irregular bottom, as at the edges of banks where the change of depth is considerable.

Current arrows on charts show only the most usual or the mean direction of a tidal stream or current; it must not be assumed that the direction of a stream will not vary from that indicated by the arrow. The rate, also, of a stream constantly varies with circumstances, and the rate given on the chart is merely the mean of those found during the survey, possibly from very few observations.

#### FIXING POSITION.

Sextant method.—The most accurate method available to the navigator of fixing a position relative to the shore is by plotting with a protractor, sextant angles between three well-defined objects on



shore which are shown on the chart; this method, based on the "three-point problem" of geometry, should be in general use.

For its successful employment it is necessary: First, that the objects be well chosen; and, second, that the observer be skillful and rapid in his use of the sextant. The latter is only a matter of practice. Two observers are better for this method.

Near objects should be used either for bearings or angles for position in preference to distant ones, although the latter may be more prominent, as a small error in the bearing or angle or in laying it on the chart has a greater effect in misplacing the position the longer the line to be drawn.

On the other hand distant objects should be used for direction, because less affected by a small error or change of position.

The three-arm protractor or station pointer consists of a graduated brass circle with one fixed and two movable radial arms, the three beveled edges of the arms, if produced, intersecting at the exact center of the instrument. The edge of the fixed arm marks the zero of the graduation which enables the movable arms to be set at any angles with the fixed arm.

To plot a position, the two angles observed between the three selected objects are set on the instrument, which is then moved over the chart until the three beveled edges pass respectively and simultaneously through the three objects. The center of the instrument will then mark the ship's position, which may be pricked on the chart or marked with a pencil point through the center hole.

The transparent xylonite protractor is an excellent substitute for the brass instrument and in some cases preferable to it, as when, for instance, the objects angled on are so near the observer that they are more or less hidden by the circle of the instrument. The xylonite protractor also permits the laying down for simultaneous trial of a number of angles in cases of fixing important positions. Plain tracing paper may also be used if there are any suitable means of laying off the angles.

The value of a determination depends greatly on the relative positions of the objects observed. If the position sought lies on the circle passing through three objects (in which case the sum of the observed angles equals the supplement of the angle at the middle object made by lines from the other two) it will be indeterminate, as it will plot all around the circle. Such an observation is called a "revolver." An approach to this condition must be avoided. Near objects are better than distant ones, and, in general, up to 90° the larger the angles the better, remembering always that large as well as small angles may plot on or near the circle and hence be worthless. If the objects are well situated, even very small angles will give for

navigating purposes a fair position, when that obtained by bearings of the same objects would be of little value.

Accuracy requires that the two angles be simultaneous. If under way and there is but one observer the angle that changes less rapidly may be observed both before and after the other angle and the proper value obtained by interpolation.

A single angle and a range of two objects give in general an excellent fix, easily obtained and plotted.

Advantages of sextant method.—In many narrow waters where the objects may yet be at some distance, as in coral harbors or narrow passages among mud banks, navigation by sextant and protractor is invaluable, as a true position can in general be obtained only by its means. Positions by bearings are too rough to depend upon, and a small error in either taking or plotting a bearing might under such circumstances put the ship ashore.

In all cases where great accuracy of position is desired, such as the fixing of a rock or shoal, or of fresh soundings or new buildings as additions to the chart, the sextant should invariably be used. In all such cases angles should be taken to several objects, the more the better; but five objects is a good number, as the four angles thus obtained not only prevent any errors, but they at once furnish a means of checking the accuracy of the chart itself. If a round of angles can be taken the observer's accuracy is also checked. In the case of ordinary soundings a third angle need be taken only occasionally; first, to check the general accuracy of the chart, as above stated; second, to make certain that the more important soundings, as at the end of a line, are correctly placed.

If communication can be had with the shore, positions may be fixed with great accuracy by occupying with theodolite or sextant two known points of the chart. The third angle of the triangle, that between the two points at the position sought, should be measured as a check.

The compass.—It is not intended that the use of the compass to fix the ship should be given up; in ordinary piloting the compass, with its companion, the pelorus, may be usefully employed for this purpose, although less accurate than the sextant.

If the accuracy of the chart is doubtful, the compass should be used in preference to the sextant.

In fixing by the compass, it should always be remembered that a position by two bearings only, like that by two angles only, is liable to error. An error may be made in taking a bearing, or in applying to it the deviation, or in laying it on the chart. A third or check bearing should, therefore, be taken of some other object, especially when near the shore or dangers. A common intersection for the three lines assures accuracy.

When the three lines do not intersect in a point, the following rule holds: If the line drawn to the middle object falls to the right of the point of intersection of the lines to the two outside objects, the position of the observer was to the right of the line to the middle object; and if it falls to the left of the intersection his position was to the left of the line. Thus it will be seen that the assumption, that the position is at the center of the triangle formed by the intersecting lines, is incorrect.

Doubling the angle on the bow.—The method of fixing by doubling the angle on the bow is invaluable. The ordinary form of it, the so-called "bow and beam bearing," the distance from the object at the latter position being the distance run between the times of taking the two bearings, gives the maximum of accuracy, and is an excellent fix for a departure, but does not insure safety, as the object observed and any dangers off it are abeam before the position is obtained.

By taking the bearings at two points and four points on the bow, a fair position is obtained before the object is passed, the distance of the latter at the second position being, as before, equal to the distance run in the interval, allowing for current. Taking afterwards the beam bearing gives, with slight additional trouble, the distance of the object when abeam; such beam bearings and distances, with the times, should be continuously recorded as fresh departures, the importance of which will be appreciated in cases of being suddenly shut in by fog.

When the first bearing is  $26\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  from ahead, and the second  $45^{\circ}$ , the run between bearings will equal the distance at which the object will be passed abeam.

A table of multipliers of the distance run in the interval between any two bearings of an object, the product being its distance at the time of the second bearing, is given in the Light Lists and in Bowditch.

Danger angle.—The utility of the danger angle in passing outlying rocks or dangers should not be forgotten. In employing the horizontal danger angle, however, caution is necessary, as should the chart be inaccurate, i. e., should the objects selected be not quite correctly placed, the angle taken off from it may not serve the purpose. It should not, therefore, be employed when the survey is old or manifestly imperfect.

The vertical danger angle may be conveniently used when passing elevated points of known heights, such as lighthouses, cliffs, etc. The computation of the distance corresponding to the height of the object and its angular elevation requires for small distances merely the solution of a plain right triangle; the natural cotangent of the angle multiplied by the height in feet gives the distance in

feet. The convenient use of this method, however, requires tables such as those published by Capt. Lecky in his little book entitled "The Danger Angle and Offshore Distance Tables." This book very usefully extends the vertical angle method to finding a ship's position at sea by observing the angular altitude of a peak of known height and its bearing. The tables give heights up to 18,000 feet and distances up to 110 miles.

When the angles are not too large they should be observed "on and off the limb" and the index error of the sextant thus eliminated, in preference to correcting for it the single altitude. It must be remembered that in high latitudes the bearing of a distant object needs correction for the convergence of the meridians before being laid down on a Mercator chart. The correction may be found by the following formula, using the approximate position: The sine of the correction equals the product of the sine of half the difference of longitude by the sine of the middle latitude. It is applied on the equatorial side of the observed bearing and its effect is always to increase the latitude of the observer.

Soundings taken at random are of little value in fixing or checking position and may at times be misleading. In thick weather, when near or closing the land, soundings should be taken continuously and at regular intervals, and, with the character of the bottom, systematically recorded. By laying the soundings on tracing paper, according to the scale of the chart, along a line representing the track of the ship, and then moving the paper over the chart, keeping the line representing the track parallel with the course until the observed soundings agree with those of the chart, the ship's position will in general be quite well determined. This plan was suggested by Lord Kelvin, whose admirable sounding machine renders the operation of sounding possible in quite deep water, without slowing down the ship and consequent loss of time.

Pelorus.—All ships should be supplied with the means of taking accurate bearings both by night and by day. The standard compass is not always conveniently placed for the purpose; in such case a pelorus will be very useful, but the results are not as accurate as those obtained direct from the compass. The utility of such an instrument in ascertaining the change of bearing of an approaching ship should not be overlooked.

Position lines.—Among the various methods of fixing position at sea, the one which should be best understood and put to the most constant use is that employing position or Sumner lines. These lines give the most comprehensive information to the navigator with the least expenditure of labor and time. The knowledge gained is that the vessel must be somewhere on the line, provided the data used is accurate and the chronometer correct. As the information

given by one line of position is not sufficient to determine the definite location of the vessel, it is necessary to cross this line by another similarly obtained, and the vessel being somewhere on both must be at their intersection. However, a single line, at times, will furnish the mariner with invaluable information; for instance, if it is directed toward the coast, it marks the bearing of a definite point on the shore, or if parallel to the coast it clearly indicates the distance off, and so will often be found useful as a course. A sounding taken at the same time with the observation will in certain conditions prove of great value in giving an approximate position on the line.

The easiest and quickest way to establish a line of position is by employing the method of Marcq St. Hilaire, as modified by the use of tables of altitude. The principle of this method is one of altitude differences, in which the observed altitude is compared with the computed altitude for a dead reckoning, or other selected position, and the difference in minutes of latitude measured toward the body along the line of its azimuth, if the observed altitude is greater than the computed altitude, and vice versa. A line drawn at right angles to the line of azimuth through the point thus determined is the position line, somewhere upon which will be found the position of the vessel. The tables of altitude obviate the computation of the altitude and thereby greatly facilitate the establishment of the line.

A position line may also be found by computing two positions for longitude with two assumed latitudes, and drawing the line between them; or by drawing to the position obtained with one latitude a line at right angles to the bearing of the body as taken from the azimuth tables.

A very accurate position can be obtained by observing two or more stars at morning or evening twilight, at which time the horizon is well defined. The position lines thus obtained will, if the bearings of the stars differ three points or more, give an excellent result. A star or planet at twilight and the sun afterwards or before may be combined; also two observations of the sun with sufficient interval to admit of a considerable change of bearing. In these cases one of the lines must be moved for the run of the ship. The moon is often visible during the day and in combination with the sun gives an excellent fix.

The morning and evening twilight observations, besides their great accuracy, possess the additional advantage of greatly extending the ship's reliable reckoning beyond the limits of the ordinary day navigation, and correspondingly restricting the dead reckoning uncertainties of the night. An early morning fix in particular is often of great value. Though the same degree of

accuracy as at twilight can not be expected, night observations are very valuable and should be assiduously practiced.

Piloting.—The navigator, in making his plan for entering a strange port, should give very careful previous study to the chart and sailing directions, and should select what appear to be the most suitable marks for use, also providing himself with substitutes to use in case those selected as most suitable should prove unreliable in not being recognized with absolute certainty. Channel buoys seen from a distance are difficult to identify, because their color is sometimes not easily distinguished and they may appear equally distant from the observer even though they be at widely varying distances. Ranges should be noted, if possible, and the lines drawn, both for leading through the best water in channels, and also for guarding against particular dangers; for the latter purpose safety bearings should in all cases be laid down where no suitable ranges appear to offer. The courses to be steered in entering should also be laid down and distances marked thereon. If intending to use the sextant and danger angle in passing dangers, and especially in passing between dangers, the danger circles should be plotted and regular courses planned, rather than to run haphazard by the indications of the angle alone, with the possible trouble from bad steering at critical points.

The ship's position should not be allowed to be in doubt at any time, even in entering ports considered safe and easy of access, and should be constantly checked, continuing to use for this purpose those marks concerning which there can be no doubt until others are unmistakably identified.

The ship should ordinarily steer exact courses and follow an exact line, as planned from the chart, changing course at precise points, and, where the distances are considerable, her position on the line should be checked at frequent intervals. This is desirable even where it may seem unnecessary for safety, because if running by the eye alone and the ship's exact position be immediately required, as in a sudden fog or squall, fixing at that particular moment may be attended with difficulty.

The habit of running exact courses with precise changes of course will be found most useful when it is desired to enter port or pass through inclosed waters during fog by means of the buoys; here safety demands that the buoys be made successively, to do which requires, if the fog be dense, very accurate courses and careful attention to the times, the speed of the ship, and the set of the current; failure to make a buoy as expected leaves, as a rule, no safe alternative but to anchor at once, with perhaps a consequent serious loss of time.

In passing between dangers where there are no suitable leading marks, as, for instance, between two islands or an island and the main shore, with dangers extending from both, a mid-channel course may be steered by the eye alone with great accuracy, as the eye is able to estimate very closely the direction midway between visible objects.

In piloting among coral reefs or banks, a time should be chosen when the sun will be astern, conning the vessel from aloft or from an elevated position forward. The line of demarcation between the deep water and the edges of the shoals, which generally show as green patches, is indicated with surprising clearness. This method is of frequent application in the numerous passages of the Florida Keys.

Changes of course should in general be made by exact amounts, naming the new course or the amount of the change desired, rather than by ordering the helm to be put over and then steadying when on the desired heading, with the possibility of the attention being diverted and so of forgetting in the meantime, as may happen, that the ship is still swinging. The helmsman, knowing just what is desired and the amount of the change to be made, is thus enabled to act more intelligently and to avoid bad steering, which in narrow channels is a very positive source of danger.

Coast piloting involves the same principles and requires that the ship's position be continuously determined or checked as the landmarks are passed. On well-surveyed coasts there is a great advantage in keeping near the land, thus holding on to the marks and the soundings, and thereby knowing at all times the position, rather than keeping offshore and losing the marks, with the necessity of again making the land from vague positions, and perhaps the added inconvenience of fog or bad weather, involving a serious loss of time and fuel.

The route should be planned for normal conditions of weather, with suitable variations where necessary in case of fog or bad weather or making points at night, the courses and distances, in case of regular runs over the same route, being entered in a notebook for ready reference, as well as laid down on the chart. The danger circles for either the horizontal or the vertical danger angles should be plotted, wherever the method can be usefully employed, and the angles marked thereon; many a mile may thus be saved in rounding dangerous points with no sacrifice in safety. Ranges should also be marked in, where useful for position or for safety, and also to use in checking the deviation of the compass by comparing, in crossing, the compass bearing of the range with its magnetic bearing, as given by the chart.

Changes of course will in general be made with mark or object abeam, the position (a new "departure") being then, as a rule, best and most easily obtained. The pelorus should be at all times in readiness for use, and the chart where it may be readily consulted by the officer of the watch. The sextant should also be kept conveniently at hand.

A continuous record of the progress of the ship should be kept by the officer of the watch, the time and patent-log reading of all changes of course and of all bearings, especially the two and four point bearings, with distance of object when abeam, being noted in a book kept in the pilot house for this especial purpose. The ship's reckoning is thus continuously cared for as a matter of routine and without the presence or particular order of the captain or navigating officer. The value of thus keeping the reckoning always fresh and exact will be especially appreciated in cases of sudden fog or when making points at night.

Where the coastwise trip must be made against a strong head wind, it is desirable, with trustworthy charts, to skirt the shore as closely as possible in order to avoid the heavier seas and adverse current that prevail farther out. In some cases, with small ships, a passage can be made only in this way. The important saving of coal and of time, which is even more precious, thus effected by skillful coast piloting makes this subject one of prime importance to the navigator.

Change in the variation of the compass. 1—The gradual change in the variation must not be forgotten in laying down on the chart courses and bearings. The magnetic compasses placed on the charts for the purpose of facilitating the plotting become in time slightly in error, and in some cases, such as with small scales or when the lines are long, the displacement of position from neglect of this change may be of importance. The date of the variation and the annual change, as given on the compass rose, facilitate corrections when the change has been considerable. The compasses are reengraved once in ten years; more frequent alterations on one spot in a copperplate would not be practicable.

The change in the variation is in some parts of the world so rapid as to need careful consideration, requiring a frequent change of the course. For instance, in approaching Halifax from Newfoundland the variation changes 10° in less than 500 miles.

Local magnetic disturbance of the compass on board ship.—The term 'local magnetic disturbance' has reference only to the effects on the compass of magnetic masses external to the

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> See H. O. Chart No. 2406, Variation of the Compass.

ship. Observation shows that disturbance of the compass in a ship afloat is experienced in only a few places on the globe.

Magnetic laws do not permit of the supposition that the visible land causes such disturbance, because the effect of a magnetic force diminishes so rapidly with distance that it would require a local center of magnetic force of an amount absolutely unknown to affect a compass half a mile distant.

Such deflections of the compass are due to magnetic minerals in the bed of the sea under the ship, and when the water is shallow and the force strong, the compass may be temporarily deflected when passing over such a spot; but the area of disturbance will be small unless there are many centers near together.

Use of oil for modifying the effect of breaking waves.— Many experiences of late years have shown that the utility of oil for this purpose is undoubted, and the application simple.

The following may serve for the guidance of seamen, whose attention is called to the fact that a very small quantity of oil, skillfully applied, may prevent much damage both to ships, especially of the smaller classes, and to boats by modifying the action of breaking seas.

The principal facts as to the use of oil are as follows:

- 1. On free waves, i. e., waves in deep water, the effect is greatest.
- 2. In a surf, or waves breaking on a bar, where a mass of liquid is in actual motion in shallow water, the effect of the oil is uncertain, as nothing can prevent the larger waves from breaking under such circumstances; but even here it is of some service.
- 3. The heaviest and thickest oils are most effectual. Refined kerosene is of little use; crude petroleum is serviceable when no other oil is obtainable, or it may be mixed with other oils; all animal and vegetable oils, such as waste oil from the engines, have great effect.
- 4. In cold water, the oil, being thickened by the low temperature and not being able to spread freely, will have its effect much reduced, a rapid-spreading oil should be used.
- 5. A small quantity of oil suffices, if applied in such a manner as to spread to windward.
- 6. It is useful in a ship or boat either when running, or lying-to, or in wearing.
- 7. When lowering and hoisting boats in a heavy sea the use of oil has been found greatly to facilitate the operation.
- 8. For a ship at sea the best method of application appears to be to hang over the side, in such a manner as to be in the water, small canvas bags, capable of holding from 1 to 2 gallons of oil, the bags being pricked with a sail needle to permit leakage. The waste pipes forward are also very useful for this purpose.

9. Crossing a bar with a flood tide, to pour oil overboard and allow it to float in ahead of the boat, which would follow with a bag towing astern, would appear to be the best plan.

On a bar, with the ebb tide running, it would seem to be useless

to try oil for the purpose of entering.

- 10. For boarding a wreck, it is recommended to pour oil overboard to windward of her before going alongside, bearing in mind that her natural tendency is always to forge ahead. If she is aground the effect of oil will depend upon attending circumstances.
- 11. For a boat riding in bad weather to a sea anchor, it is recommended to fasten the bag to an endless line rove through a block on the sea anchor, by which means the oil can be diffused well ahead of the boat, and the bag readily hauled on board for refilling, if necessary.

## THE ASIATIC PILOT.

### VOL. IV.

## CHAPTER I.

# GENERAL REMARKS ON THE VARIOUS COUNTRIES.—WINDS AND WEATHER.—CURRENTS.—PASSAGES.

General remarks.—The China Sea is the water area between Singapore Strait and Hongkong, which is bounded on the west by the Malay Peninsula, the coasts of Siam, French Indo-China (consisting of Cambodia, Cochin-China, Anam, and Tongkin), and the southwest Province of China, including Canton and West Rivers, and Hongkong; the description of these coasts and their dangers, with the dangers bordering the main route of the China Sea, form the subject of this volume.

Toward the center of the southern portion of the China Sea there is a considerable area known to be occupied by numerous coral banks and reefs, only partially surveyed, and therefore dangerous, which should be avoided by all vessels.

Mariners are advised to follow the tracks recommended and shown on the charts, as far as practicable.

Malay Peninsula—The Federated Malay States of Perak, Selangor, Negri Sembilan, and Pahang, which occupy a large portion of the Malay Peninsula, are under British protection; of these, only Pahang on the east coast lies within the limits of this volume.

By the treaty between Great Britain and Siam, February, 1910, Siam transfers to Great Britain the rights of suzerainty and protection, etc., as she has possessed over the tract of territory lying to the northward of the Federated Malay States, and embracing the whole of Tringano, all but the northeastern corner of Kelantan, the next State northward (and the greater part of Kedah, Perlis, etc., and off-lying islands, all in the Straits of Malakka), Great Britain undertaking to facilitate railway construction so that the Siamese railways may be connected with the Federated States. These new territories comprise an area of about 15,000 square miles and a population of about half a million.

21

79795—15—-3

The supreme authority in the Federated Malay States is vested in the Federal Council, consisting of the high commissioner, the chief secretary, the residents, and some of the principal Europeans and Chinese merchants. The residents are under the control of the chief secretary and the high commissioner. All legislative enactments are submitted to the high commissioner and the secretary of state for the colonies.

The other States are under the governor of the Straits Settlements as high commissioner, with a British adviser at each court.

The States bordering the western shore of the China Sea, northward from Singapore, are as follows:

Johore.—The State of Johore occupies the whole of the south extremity of the Malay Peninsula, its eastern coast with off-lying islands extending to about Lat. 2° 40′ N., including the Sungi Endau; it has an area of 9,000 square miles and a population of 200,000, mostly Chinese. Johore Bharu, on the old Strait of Singapore, is the capital. Its foreign relations are controlled by Great Britain in virtue of a treaty of 1885. Under the Sultan the country is administered by district headsmen.

The Sungi Endau flows from the Segamat Hills, about 30 miles in a direct line from its entrance, but its course traverses quite double that distance. The Sembrong Endau and its tributaries, rising in the Blumut Range to the southward, joins the Endau at Pahang Village, some 20 miles above its entrance.

Exports are gambier, pepper, sago, tea, coffee, gutta-percha, etc. **Pahang.**—The State of Pahang, next northward of Johore, commencing in about Lat. 2° 40′ N., has a seaboard of about 100 miles, the boundary between it and Tringano, the next State northward, being near Bukit Tenga; both claim the Sungi Chendar, from whose banks much valuable timber is obtained.

It has an area of about 14,000 square miles and a population of about 120,000.

The Rumpin and Pahang Rivers are available for small steam craft, which trade to Singapore during the southwest monsoon period. The Kuantan is available for small steam craft nearly at all times. In the northeast monsoon season most of the small rivers or streams on this coast and the western shore of the Gulf of Siam are usually impracticable.

The Pahang is the largest of these streams and is fairly wide for about 70 miles, where it is joined by several tributaries which take their rise in the mountains in Selangor and Negri Sembilan. For the entrance, see the body of the work.

**Products.**—The staple products are tin, coconuts, rice, rubber, sugar, tapioca, coffee, pepper, gambier, and nipah palms.

Tringano or Trengganu state, northward of Pahang, has an area of about 6,000 square miles and a population of about 50,000; capital of the same name at the mouth of a small river. The prevailing religion is Mohammedanism. The industries are of the same character as Kelantan, below mentioned. The country is rich in tin, but it still has to be systematically prospected for minerals.

The capital, Kwala Tringano, is grouped in picturesque fashion about the foot of low conical hills, which afford a pleasant contrast to the generally flat character of the coast country.

Rivers.—Tringao possesses a fertile plain backed by ranges of wild, jungle-clad mountains. It embraces the basins of 12 distinct rivers or streams, the principal of which is the Tringano. Above the Kelemang falls this stream is mainly formed by the confluence of the Kerbat and Tringano Ulu, which unite at Kwala Tringano Ulu, not to be confounded with Kwala Tringano, the capital, at its mouth. These falls constitute a formidable barrier to all river traffic, consisting of a flight of eight rapids or cataracts, extending over a distance of 3 miles; the rocky nature continues for another 3 miles, and in the whole 6 miles the drop is from 80 to 100 feet.

The Sungi Kemaman, which traverses the southern portion of the state, is navigable by large river boats from 30 to 40 miles. In both there are places with as much as 60 feet of water, but for the most part they are shallow and rapid.

From November to March, the northeast monsoon blows hard onshore, closing the ports, but for the rest of the year the fishing population work hard.

Kelantan.—The State of Kelantan lies between the State of Tringano and the Kingdom of Siam. It has an area of about 5,500 square miles and a population of over 300,000. Kota Bharu, the capital, has a population of about 18,000. The State has a hereditary Rajah; each village has its own headman, who is responsible to a circle headman, the circles being grouped into districts. The prevailing religion is Shaffi Mohammedanism, the State being divided into 250 parishes.

There is a Government school at the capital and other schools where English is taught.

There is also a police force of 250 men, commanded by a British officer.

Products.—The chief industry is agriculture; products, rice (the principal), coconuts (and copra), betel nuts, rubber, resin, rattans, pepper, tapioca, sugar-cane, and maize. A large part of the State is covered with jungle, comprising numerous kinds of valuable timber; it supports a large number of cattle, goats, sheep, and poultry; the mineral resources comprise gold, galena, pyrites, and tin; extensive

planting and mining concessions are held by British companies. The manufacturing industries are silk weaving, boat building, and brickmaking.

The capital has regular steamship communication with Bangkok and Singapore, and is in direct telegraphic communication with Bangkok and Penang.

Rivers.—The chief rivers are the Kelantan, whose basin comprises nearly the whole of the State; the Golok, and the Semarak, the last two flowing into the sea north and south respectively of the Kelantan, Sungi Kelantan has a length of about 120 miles, and at Kota Bharu. 8 miles from the mouth, is 400 yards broad. It is navigable by shallow-draft launches for about 80 miles. The sand bar at the mouth prevents sea-going craft entering the river; during great floods a temporary deep channel is secured through the bar.

Climate.—The climate of Kelantan is described as mild and equable, the heat being tempered by the land and sea breezes, which blow with great regularity during the greater portion of the year. In the coastal plain the temperature varies from 69° to 93°. In the hill country the range is slightly greater, from 62° to 96°.

October, November, and December are the months of heaviest rain, the dry season covering the months of February, March, and April. In 1905, 98.4 inches were recorded in the plains, and 90.5 inches in the hills. In 1906, 108.3 inches were recorded in the plains, and 111.3 inches during 11 months in the hill country.

Siam—Treaties—The limits of the Kingdom of Siam have varied much at different periods of its history, most of the border lands being occupied by tribes more or less independent. The boundary between Burma and northwest Siam was delimited in 1891.

By the Anglo-French Convention of April, 1904, an agreement made in 1896 was confirmed, and its provisions more clearly defined, the territories to the west of the Menam and the Gulf of Siam being recognized as being in the British sphere, and those to the east in the French. Various changes have recently been made in the Franco-Siamese frontier line.

In 1904, the Luang Phrabang territory to the west of the Mekong was acknowledged by Siam to belong to France, and the Provinces of Maluprey and Barsak (west of the Mekong) were also transferred to French rule, so that an area of about 7,800 square miles passed from Siamese possession.

On March 23, 1907, a new boundary in this region was accepted by Siam, whereby the Provinces of Battambang, Siam Reap, and Sisophon are ceded to France, while the strip of coast to the south, with the port of Krat, remains to Siam. At the same time a rectification of the boundary was made in the Luang Phrabang region whereby a tract of the Laos country was restored to Siam. It was agreed also SIAM. 25

that the four ports on the Mekong are to be held by France on a perpetual lease. By these arrangements the territory of Cambodia is increased by 7,000 square miles. The treaty also provides for the future jurisdiction of the Siamese courts over all French-Asiatic subjects and protégés in Siam, under certain conditions.

A treaty for a modification of British extra territorial rights in Siam for the cession of the Siamese tributary States of Kelantan, Tringano, and Kedah to Great Britain was signed at Bangkok on March 10, 1910. The three States have an area of about 15,000 square miles and a population of about 450,000, of whom about 300,000 are in Kelantan. See Federated Malay States on previous pages.

The area of Siam is now about 195,000 square miles, about 45,000 being in the Malay Peninsula; an estimate of the population based upon a recent census of 12 only of the provincial circles or monthons places it at about 6<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> millions. Bangkok is the capital.

Government.—The reigning King is Chowfamaha Vajiravudh, who succeeded in 1910. He has two brothers; the royal dignity is nominally hereditary, but each sovereign is invested with the privilege of nominating his own successor.

A British officer occupies the post of financial adviser, and there are numerous British officers holding high positions under the Government.

Provinces.—The Siamese dominions are divided into 17 monthons or provincial circles, of which 16 have a high commissioner, with subordinate governors for the several districts, the whole being under the single authority of the minister of the interior. The prevailing religion is Buddhism, and throughout the country education is chiefly in the hands of the priests. Bangkok, the capital, possesses several Government schools in which English is taught.

Regulations.—Every master of a merchant ship shall hoist her colors on entering Siamese waters, and shall keep such colors flying until the ship shall have been boarded by the harbor master or his deputy.

#### ON ENTERING THE RIVER.

Every vessel entering the Chow Phya River (River Menam), shall stop on arriving at the guard station at Paknam, and if necessary anchor there and allow the medical inspector and the customhouse officials to come on board. Such customhouse officials shall proceed in her to Bangkok, and shall remain on board until due permission to discharge shall be obtained, or until they shall be relieved by customhouse officials of Bangkok.

A copy of the harbor regulations will be handed to the master of every vessel in case he has not already been provided with the same, for which a small price is expected.

Menam Valley.—The most important district of Siam is the wide valley of the Menam or Bangkok River, which has been termed the Nile of Siam, since it overflows its banks from June to November, and the success or failure of the great rice crop depends on the regularity and amount of this fertilizing inundation. The Menam River is the great highway of the country, and around it are the most settled and advanced districts of Siam.

Lakon Sritamarat and Patani.—The two monthons or Siamese administrative circles of Lakon Sritamarat and Patani in the Malay Peninsula are among the most prosperous and thickly populated parts of Siam. Their natural resources are considerable; they possess a fertile soil and great wealth of minerals. The town of Singora, the capital, is at the mouth of the inland sea.

Population of the Province of Patani, last census, was 263,448, and of Singora Province 460,000.

There are a number of tin mines in Patani. The name of the Province often appears as Nakon Sritamarat.

The chief so-called ports of these Provinces, mostly open anchorages, are Naung Chik, Patani, Panarai, Telupin, and Bangnara; also Chumpawn, Langsuen, Bandon, and Koh Samui, farther northward. The ports mentioned, westward of Patani, admit small craft, but there is not much trade. Patani has a bar which prevents any but boats entering; steamers have to lie a long way off, and the bar is constantly extending seaward. Panarai, Telubin, and Bangnara, southeastward of Patani, are said to be more accessible than Patani to small craft in fine weather, as the bars are of no great extent.

Singora Bar, under very favorable circumstances, admits vessels of about 12 feet draft at the highest tides, but none of the regular steamers do so, as the tides are rarely convenient. There is but little doubt that on the completion of the coast railroad Singora will become the port next in importance to Bangkok.

The inland sea or lake on which Patalung is situated has its entrance at Singora; it is a very shallow sheet of water and only navigable by very small launches. In many respects it resembles the Zuider Zee.

Vessels of the Siam Steam Navigation Co. (Ltd.), trading from Bangkok, call four times a week (twice each way) off Patani, Panarai, Telubin, and Bangnara; there is also a smaller line calling at some of these ports. There is a stern wheeler in the inland sea.

Chumpon (Chumpawn).—Northward of the two monthons of Lakon Sritamarat and Patani is the monthon of Chumpawn, divided into three Provinces, namely, Chaiya, Langsuen, and Chumpawn; the town of Bandon is the capital. Population, 158,000.

The climate of the northern portion of Chumpawn Province resembles that of Bangkok, the end and beginning of the year being more

or less dry, and the rain falling chiefly from May to October, and in the southern to December.

The rainfall in Bandon in 1908 amounted to 123 inches, ranging from 33 inches in November to nothing in February.

Pearl fisheries exist throughout the Province, more particularly near the town of Chumpawn and Koh Samui.

Capital.—Harbors, Bangkok, the capital of Siam, is situated on both sides of the Menam Chau Fya or Bangkok River, about 25 miles from its mouth, and has a population estimated at from 400,000 to 600,000. At the mouth of the river are the Paknam forts.

The river is accessible up to Bangkok Harbor for vessels of about 13 feet draft. The smaller ports on the western side of the Gulf of Siam are mostly closed during the northeast monsoon period. They are referred to with the several Provinces.

Climate of Siam.—The climate of the eastern shore of the Malay Peninsula is very equable. There is no dry season, as at Bangkok, but during the months of March, April, and May very little rain falls as a rule. During the northeast monsoon, October to January, the weather is very wet and stormy.

The maximum temperature at Singora in 1909 was 93° (in July), and the minimum 72° (in February); mean temperature probably about 80°.

The rainfall from April, 1909, to March, 1910, was 75.82 inches, of which 20.43 inches fell in November; in Patani 102 inches. Malaria is rather prevalent, especially in the town of Singora.

The American Presbyterian Mission has a doctor and a hospital at Lakon Sritamarat, about Latitude 15° N.

There is a general hospital at Bangkok, to which sailors are admitted. Cholera and dysentery are prevalent at Bangkok.

Products.—The chief product of Siam is rice, which forms the principal national food, and with teak is the staple article of export. Other produce is pepper, salt, dried fish, cattle, and sesame, while (for local consumption only) hemp, tobacco, cotton, and coffee are grown. Fruits are abundant, including the durian, mangosteen, and mango.

Much of Upper Siam is dense forest; the cutting of teak is an important industry, almost entirely in British hands. Gold exists in some of the rivers, and gem mining is carried on in various districts.

The mining industry is under the control of the royal department of mines and geology, created in 1890. The Siam mining act of 1901 is in force for most parts of the country. Mining is practically confined to tin, gems (sapphires and rubies), and gold, their relative importance being in the order given.

The total annual production of tin is about 5,000 tons. There is an enormous field for the expansion of the tin-mining industry in the Siamese possessions in the Malay Peninsula.

The other minerals mined for in Siam are copper, lead, iron, coal, oil, and saltpeter. They exist only in limited quantities, and are relatively unimportant.

Trade—Shipping.—Nearly the whole of the trade is in the hands of foreigners, and in recent years many Chinese, not subject like the natives to forced labor, have settled in the country; the foreign trade is centered in Bangkok. In 1909–10 the imports consisted of treasure, cotton and silk goods, kerosene, sugar, opium, cotton yarn, hardware, iron, machinery, and other articles; and the exports consisted of rice, teak and other woods, bullocks, pepper, hides, silk, salt, and other articles.

Railroads.—The railroad from Bangkok to Paknam, 14 miles, was opened in 1893; from Bangkok northeastward to Korat (165 miles) in 1900; the northern line, beyond Ayuthia, has been completed to Sala Ma Puak (via Pitsanulok and Utaradit), 438 kilometers from Bangkok. A line from Sawankalok to the main line at Ban Dara is completed. A line from Bangkok to Petriu was opened in 1908; it has since been extended to abreast Kok Si chang. A line to Petchaburi, 95 miles, from Bangkok, was opened in 1903, since extended to Ban cha am. A line to Tachin, 20 miles, from Bangkok, was opened in 1905, and has been extended to Meklong, 20 miles farther. The total length, State and private, is probably about 600 miles.

Considerable progress has been made with the Peninsula Railroad which is being built by the Siamese Government with funds advanced by the Federated Malay States; when completed it will connect the existing Bangkok-Petchaburi Line with the line from Johore to Kelantan. A line will cross Bandon River about 5 miles above the town, with a branch to Singora.

Telegraphs.—There are about 2,900 miles of telegraph in the country, and Bangkok is in communication with Korat, Nong-Khai, Siesophon, Chentabun, Bangtaphan, Chiengmai, and Mehongson; with Moulmein and Tavoy, in Lower Burma; and with Saigon. Siam joined the International Postal Union in 1885, and the parcelpost service in 1890.

Mails.—There is a biweekly service by the vessels of the Siam Steam Navigation Co. between Bangkok and Singapore, via the ports on the western shore of the gulf. There is also a biweekly service between Bangkok and the ports and places on the eastern shore of the gulf.

French Indo-China—General description—Political divisions.—French Indo-China consists of the possession of Cochin China, the four protectorates of Tongkin, Anam, Cambodia, and Laos, and the territory of Kwang Chau wan, leased by France from China. Hanoi is the capital.

Cochin China is the most important of these divisions from the point of view of foreign commerce. There is a British vice consul at Saigon, the capital of Cochin China.

Tongkin comes next in the volume of its trade. It contains the second port of Indo-China, Haifong, and the seat of the government general of the whole—Hanoi. It is also interesting in view of the possibilities which it affords of reaching the trade of the southern Provinces of China.

Anam has its capital at Hué, where is the palace of the king who nominally reigns over both Anam and Tongkin. Hué has railway connection with the port of Tourane.

Cambodia (capital, Pnom penh) is also ruled over by a king under French protection. It now includes the former Siamese Provinces of Battambong and Siamrap, which were ceded to France in 1907.

The Laos Protectorate is still mostly undeveloped, lacking population. It has no scaport, and its foreign trade is carried on either through the other Provinces of French Indio-China or through Siam. The Mekong River, which flows through it, is unsatisfactory as a waterway, its course being much interrupted by rapids. The Province or country of Luang Phrabang, which forms a portion of the Laos Protectorate, is ruled over by another king under French control. Kwang Chau wan, though administratively a part of Indo-China, is geographically quite distinct from it. It is a free port, and no customs statistics are available as to its foreign commerce (which is not very large). It is leased from China.

The area of French Indo-China is 309,979 square miles.

Population and language.—The population of Indo-China at the census of 1906 was 16,315,063, but this figure can not be relied upon as accurate. More than three-fourths of the population are of Anamite race. The Anamite language is of the same family as the Chinese, and difficult to learn; the Chinese written character is used. The European civilian population was 23,590, nearly all French. The army at its full strength contains about 11,693 Europeans. French is, of course, the language mainly employed by Europeans. All the chief business houses can, however, correspond in English if necessary. The number of Chinese residing in Indo-China is believed to be about 250,000.

Regulations for entering French ports in time of war.— The French Government decree, dated July 19, 1909: The following regulations come into operation from the time of the order for mobilization, and if necessary they may be brought into force during a period of political tension:

No vessel other than French men-of-war may approach the French coast within 3 miles without special permission between sunset and

sunrise; are to fly their national flag and their number by the international code directly they come within signaling distance.

If they wish to enter the prohibited zone they are to hoist the pilot signal, and remain outside the 3-mile limit until permission is granted by a signal from a signal station or examination vessel.

From sunset to sunrise vessels approaching are to fly their national flag, and have their navigation lights lighted. If they wish to enter the zone they are to burn Bengal lights and blow blasts on the siren, and remain outside the 3-mile limit until they receive permission to enter from the examination vessel.

Any vessel summoned by the firing of a blank cartridge is to stop and check her way. If this is disregarded two minutes later a shot will be fired, and at the expiration of a further two minutes fire will be opened upon her. In case of urgency the blank charge may be omitted. At night, any vessel approaching within the 3-mile limit is liable to be destroyed forthwith.

In war in military ports and roadsteads no boats other than those belonging to French men-of-war are allowed to be underway under any circumstances between sunset and sunrise. Between sunrise and sunset boats are allowed to be underway when provided with a special permit and under certain restrictions.

In commercial ports the same regulations will hold good, but so arranged as to interfere as little as possible with commercial interests.

All vessels permitted to enter harbor are to take up their allotted anchorage, and may not leave or shift without permission.

Submarine vessels—Signals—Lights.—A square flag, with one yellow and one red horizontal stripe (red uppermost), hoisted at any of the signal stations on the coasts of France, Algeria, Tunis, and Indo-China, indicates that submarine vessels are exercising submerged in the vicinity.

While engaged in exercises, whether in harbor or at sea, submarine vessels carry at the stern the national flag, and at the bow the yellow and red flag described above.

A steamer or a torpedo boat escorting a submarine vessel submerged, carries at the stern, instead of the national flag, a white ball, and at the bow the yellow and red flag described above.

When submerged submarine vessels are engaged in torpedo practice, the escorting boat will, in addition to a large red flag, show the red and yellow striped flag above mentioned from where it can best be seen.

The escorting boat will generally be accompanied by a swift tender, which will be used to convey orders to passing vessels by means of hailing them, or by the use of a black board.

Every vessel seeing the above-mentioned signals for the vessel being submerged should steer so as to pass at least ½ mile astern of the escorting vessel.

Every vessel seeing these submarine vessels should keep out of their way, for, though temporarily navigating on the surface, they should be considered as still engaged in maneuvers.

When a merchant vessel, whose course is likely to render her dangerous to the submarine, is sighted from the escorting boat, the latter will hoist the international code signal M. N. (stop instantly), and will, if necessary, fire a gun.

The signal M. H. (Stand on) will indicate that the danger of collision has passed, and that the vessel can resume her course.

When in port.—French submarines, when in commercial ports, will show, at night, in addition to the usual white anchor light at each end of the vessel, two red lights over a white light, placed vertically 6 feet apart from each other.

No vessel or boat of any description is permitted to go alongside a submarine vessel without special permission.

The only port in this volume at which submarine vessels are stationed at present is Saigon.

Harbors and rivers.—The principal harbors are Haifong, on the Kua Kam in Tongkin, Tourane and Thuan An (for Hue) in Anam, and Saigon in Cochin China. Vessels of 13 to 17 feet draft can reach Haifong, via the Kua Nam trieu. The Saigon River is navigable to the capital of the same name for vessels of deep draft; very small craft can reach Hue by the Hue River. See the body of the work.

The Fai Tsi Long Archipelago affords shelter for all classes of vessels during typhoons, and the mouths of the several rivers to vessels of light draft.

The chief routes of inland navigation are the Mekong, which, not-withstanding obstructions and rapids, has been navigated during the favorable season by very light-draft steamers up to Luang Phrabang, about Lat. 20° N., or more than 1,000 miles from its mouth; and the Song Ka, or Red River, which can be ascended by very light-draft steamers as far as Laokai, near the Chinese frontier, a distance of some 250 miles.

Much has been done toward improving the canal and road communications in the deltas, and some small lines of railroad have been built.

Railroads.—The railroads of Indo-China constructed and open to traffic had in 1910 a total length of about 830 miles, as follows: The line from Haifong to Hanoi, 65½ miles; from Hanoi to Laokai, 184 miles; Hanoi to Langson and the frontier of Kwangsi (Yunnan), 101½ miles; Hanoi to Vinh, 202½ miles; Tourane to Kwang-tri, via Hue, 108½ miles; Saigon to Mitho, 44 miles; and the South Anam coast line, from Saigon, which is at present open to Fantit, or Phantiet, 123½ miles; it is to be continued to Nhatrang (the portion between Fan rang and Nhatrang is completed, 1912; the remainder

in about 2 years). Langson to Lungchau, 46 miles. A proposed extension of the Hanoi-Langson line, and to continue it to Nanning. Other extensions are intended. The Yunnan Railroad, an extension of the Haifong-Laokai line to Mengtz and Yunnanfu, a distance of 538 miles, was opened in April, 1910. The Indo-Chinese railroads all belong to the French Government.

Telegraph.—Within the union there are several thousand miles of telegraph line, with urban and interurban telephone systems.

Saigon is connected with Singapore, Haifong, etc., by submarine cable with Cochin China.

**Produce—Exports.**—Rice is by far the most important natural product of French Indo-China; maize is taking a leading place; others are pepper, hides, cotton, copra, mats, cinnamon, silk, cardimons, wood, coffee, lac, rubber, etc.

Imports.—Cotton tissues, tin, silk tissues, cotton yarn, liquors, manufactured metals, arms, pottery, tobacco, and kerosene are the principal imports.

The coal mines of Hongai, on the coast north of Haifong, have been worked now for many years, with considerable success. The coal is anthracite, and, mixed with Japanese coal, is used by the steamships and local railroads. Other deposits are worked at Dong trieu, and elsewhere in Tonkin.

Shipping.—In 1910, a subsidized fortnightly service of steamers was started between Haifong and Hongkong, calling at Kwang chau wan. The coasting trade is mostly restricted to French vessels.

Climate.—The climate of French Indo-China resembles that of China in its oppressive summer heat, but the winter is not so cold.

Anam.—French intervention in the affairs of Anam, which began as early as 1787, was terminated by a treaty, signed in 1884 and ratified in Hue in 1886, by which a French protectorate has been established over Anam. Prince Buu Lam, who succeeded to the throne on January 31, 1889, under the title of Thanh Thai, has, in accordance with the wishes of the French Government, abdicated in favor of his second son, Duy-Tan, 8 years of age (1907), who is placed under the control of a council of regency. The ports of Tourane, Kin hon, and Xuan dai are opened to European commerce, and the customs revenue ceded to France. French troops occupy part of the citadel of Hue, the capital. Anamite functionaries under the control of the French Government administer the internal affairs of Anam.

The area of the protectorate is about 52,100 square miles, with a population of about 5,000,000.

Bin Dinh, the largest town, has about 74,000; Hue, the capital, about 65,000.

Products.—The productions are rice, maize, and other cereals, areca nut, mulberry, cinnamon, tobacco, sugar, manioc, bamboo, and

timber; also caoutchouc and dye, and medicinal plants. There are about 215,000 head of cattle in Anam, and cattle rearing is of great importance. Raw silk is produced and earthenware manufactured. There are iron, copper, and silver mines in the Province of Quangnam, and coal mines near Tourane.

Cambodia lies, roughly, between the parallels of 10° 50′ and 14° N. and the meridians of 103° 15′ and 106° 15′ E., and has an area of about 45,000 square miles; population about 1,300,000, consisting of several indigenous races, 37,000 Malays, 91,000 Chinese, 61,000 Anamites, and 660 Europeans. The present King, Sisowath, in 1904 succeeded his late brother, Norodom, who recognized the French protectorate in 1863.

All the eastern portion of it is an alluvial plain through which the Mekong River runs, overflowing its banks during the five rainy months of the year; westward the country rises somewhat and is covered with dense forests. In the northern part the Mekong is joined by the overflow of a lake some 100 miles in length.

Capital.—The two chief towns are Pnom penh (population about 50,000), the capital of the territory, and Kamput, neither accessible for seagoing vessels.

**Products.**—The chief products are rice, betel, tobacco, indigo, pepper, maize, cinnamon, sugar cane, and coffee. Pepper is grown by 61 villages, with 4,780 planters, the production being 750,000 kilograms annually.

Cotton growing is extending; the production is estimated at 9,000, the whole of which is exported. The external trade is carried on chiefly through Saigon in Cochin China.

Cochin China.—The area of French Cochin China is estimated at 20,000 square miles; it lies roughly between the parallels of 8° and 11° 30′ N. and the meridians of 104° 13′ and 107° 15′ E. The whole is divided into 21 Provinces. Its affairs are directly administered by French officials. The towns of Saigon and Cholon have been formed into municipalities. The total population in 1910 was estimated at 2,968,529, consisting chiefly of Anamites. The French population was 4,932, and the French troops numbered 2,537.

Capital.—Saigon, the capital, is situated centrally on the river of the same name, a branch of the Don nai or Fuok Bing Kiang, at about 45 miles from the sea, and is connected with the Mekong delta by several navigable streams. Saigon is a modern town with numerous European buildings, including a citadel and dockyard; it has also a school of medicine and many establishments for medical aid.

The climate of Lower Cochin China is very unhealthful, owing to the excessive moisture combined with considerable heat. The country near the sea is composed chiefly of mangrove-covered swamps, this joins a reed-covered and marshy plain; farther inland it rises somewhat and is covered with forests. The narrow maritime division of Upper Cochin China has a pleasant climate, separated into the dry and wet seasons.

Products—Trade.—The chief product is rice, exported mostly to China, Java, and Europe; other crops are maize, beans, sweet potatoes, nuts, sugar cane, coffee, pepper, fruits, etc.; cotton, hides, fish, pepper, and copra are also articles of export. River and coast fishing is actively carried on; there are about 73,520 boats on the river and 3,000 on the coast. There are nine rice mills in Saigon and Cholon, turning out each from 450 to 900 tons daily. Commerce is mostly in the hands of Europeans and Chinese.

Imports consist chiefly of tissues, metals, implements, wines, etc., and the exports, rice, fish, fish oil, pepper, cotton, copra, silk, etc.

Communication—Telegraph.—For railroads, see French Indo-China. There are about 2,670 miles of telegraph. Saigon is connected with Singapore, Haifong, etc., by submarine cable. The Messageries vessels, the steamers of the French National Co., of the Messageries Fluviales, of the Chargeurs Réunis, of the Peninsular & Oriental, and of the Norddeutscher Lloyds call at Saigon regularly.

Tonkin.—This territory, annexed to France in 1884, has an area of 46,400 square miles, and is divided into 25 Provinces, with two military territories (Chinese frontier) and two principal towns, Hanoi and Haifong, the former being the capital. It has some 8,000 villages and a population estimated at 15,000,000, comprising natives, Chinese, and Europeans. It lies between the southern Provinces of China, Kuangsi, and Kwang Tung on the north, Yunnan and Lars on the northwest, and the Gulf of Tonkin and Anam to the east and south. The northern part is mountainous and inhabited by various hill tribes; the Song Ka fertilizes a large area of the center, and the marshy coastland southward of its mouth produces great quantities of rice.

The chief town is Hanoi. This town became on January 1, 1902, the capital of Indo-China, instead of Saigon.

The climate is generally healthful, though the heat is excessive during the rainy season, but the dry season is cool, and is said to resemble that of Nice and the south coast of Spain.

The rains commence in May, and much of the territory is inundated by August. Typhoons are frequent.

Products—Trade.—The chief product is rice, exported mostly to Hongkong, two crops annually; other products are sugar cane, silk, cardamons, coffee, cotton, various fruit trees, and tobacco. There are iron and copper mines of good quality. A French company works the coal mines at Hongai, near Haifong. The chief industries are silk, cotton, sugar, pepper, and oils. At Haifong is a cotton mill with 25,000 spindles; at Hanoi another with 10,000.

The chief imports are metal and metal tools and machinery, yarn and tissues, beverages, etc.; chief exports, rice and animal products.

Ports.—The principal port is Haifong.

Communication—Telegraphs.—For railroads see Indo-China. Hanoi is connected with Singapore by submarine cable, via Haifong and Saigon. The Messageries Maritimes line, fortnightly from Marseille, calls at Saigon, from whence the mails are distributed by the Messageries Fluviales by the inland waters to all parts. It is visited regularly by two French lines of steamers.

The Laos Territory, under French protectorate since 1893, is estimated to contain 98,000 square miles, with a population of about 1,000,000. It lies roughly between the parallels of 12° 30′ and 22° 30′ N. and the meridians of 80° 15′ and 106° 15′ E.

The capital is Vien Tian. In the country there are three protected States; Luang Phrabang, which has a capital of the same name, is the residence of the King, who is assisted in his government by a French administrator; the other protected States are Bassac and Muong Sing.

The soil is fertile, producing rice, cotton, indigo, tobacco, and fruits; there are teak forests, from which the logs are floated down the Mekong to Saigon. Gold, tin, lead, and precious stones are found. The country can only be entered by the Mekong, which is barred at Khone by rapids; a railroad 4 miles in length has been constructed across that island, and by means of it several launches have been transported to the upper waters.

Telegraph.—A telegraph line connects Hue, in Anam, with the towns on the Mekong and these with Saigon.

Chinese territory.—Eastward of the French Province of Tonkin are the Provinces of Kwangsi and Kwangtung, part of the Empire of China. Pak hoi, a treaty port, is situated in the southwestern portion of the latter. The Si kiang, or West River, which drains a large portion of the territory, discharges its waters westward of Macao Island, runs parallel to the coast at about 60 miles within Pak hoi.

The port of Kwang chau wan lies on the eastern side of Lei chau Peninsula; it and the islands of Nau chau and Tan hai, in the approach, are leased to France for 99 years from 1899.

The large island of Hainan, separated from the Lei chau Peninsula by Hainan Strait, is also Chinese territory. Hoi hau, the port of Kiung chau, the capital, is a treaty port, as below mentioned.

China, eastward of Hongkong Colony, is fully described in Asiatic Pilot, Vol. III.

Chinese treaty or open ports.—Pakhoi, in Tonkin Gulf, population 20,000; Kongmun, on West River, population 62,000; and Hoi hau (Kiung chau), in Hainan Island, 42,000, are treaty ports. Lapa (near Macao) and Kow loon are ports of entry only for Canton.

Inland, in the Province of Yunnan, are the treaty ports of Mengtz, population 20,000; Szemao, population 15,000; and Teng Yeuh, population 10,000; at the latter is a consulate officer. In the Province of Kwangsi are the treaty ports of Wuchau, population 59,000; Nanning fu, population 40,000; and Lungchau, population 13,000. Canton (900,000), and Samshui (6,000), westward of it, are also open ports.

Railroads.—Canton-Kowloon (Chui Kuang), 112 miles, constructed with British capital by British engineers, opened in 1911. The section in British territory, from Kowloon to Shumchun, is 22½ miles in length. A connection with the Canton-Hankau Railroad is proposed to be made by a loop round the north of Canton city.

Canton-Hankau Railroad (Yueh-Han), 730 miles, approximately. It strikes the Pe kiang just above Pak Kong kiau (50 miles above Samshui), thence along the left bank of the Pe kiang to Shao chau su, thence to Lochang, and thence toward Chiling pass. Construction is well advanced; through traffic from Canton to Lin Kong Hon via Paching, about 74 miles, was open in 1912. There is a branch railroad from Canton to Fatshan and Samshui, 32 miles, opened in 1904.

Macao to Fatshan (on the Canton-Samshui line), 75 miles; concession granted to a Portuguese syndicate in 1902; progress not stated.

Sunning Railroad, westward of Hongkong. Kongyik to Samkaphor via Sunning, 55 miles; 40 miles open in 1911. A line from Sunning to Kong mun was opened in 1912.

Yunnan Railroad (Tien-Yueh), Laokai to Yunnanfu, 291 miles, opened in 1910; an extension of the line from Hanoi, built and controlled by the French; meter gauge; completed in 1910.

Yunnanfu to Szachuan, 450 miles, proposed. In addition to the 8,000 miles of railroad opened or under construction, there is a railroad program for the further construction of about 8,500 miles.

Hongkong.—The Crown Colony of Hongkong was ceded by China to Great Britain in January, 1841; the cession was confirmed by the treaty of Nanking in August, 1842, and the charter bears date April 5, 1843.

Hongkong is the great center for British commerce with China and Japan, and a military and naval station of first-class importance. The administration is in the hands of a governor, aided by an executive council, composed of the general officer commanding the troops, the colonial secretary, the attorney general, the treasurer, the principal civil medical officer, and the director of public works and two unofficial members. There is also a legislative council presided over by the governor.

Hongkong is situated at the mouth of Canton River, about 80 miles south of the city of Canton. The island is an irregular broken ridge about 11 miles in length, and from 2 to 5 miles in breadth, and has

an area of about 29 square miles, separated from the mainland by the Lye mun, a narrow but deep pass. The city of Victoria extends about 5 miles along the southern shore of the harbor.

The opposite peninsula of Kowloon on the mainland was ceded to Great Britain by treaty in 1861, and now forms part of Hongkong.

By a convention signed at Peking on June 9, 1898, there was leased to Great Britain for 99 years a portion of Chinese territory, mainly agricultural, together with the waters of Mirs Bay and Deep Bay and the island of Lan-tao. Its area is 376 square miles, with 100,000 inhabitants.

The population of Hongkong Colony was estimated in 1910 to number 350,975 persons, consisting of 11,532 Europeans and whites, 15 Africans, 4,474 East Indians, 330,624 Chinese and Malays, and 4,332 mixed and colored, an increase of 7,098 over 1909. This estimate includes the population of New Kowloon and the naval and military forces resident in the colony, calculated for 1910 as 6,795, of which 2,362 belong to the Navy and 4,433 to the Army. (1906.)

Trade.—The chief industries are cotton spinning, sugar refining, shipbuilding, rope making, cement, flour milling, and brewing, also the manufacture of knit goods. Deep-sea fishing is important, especially for the new territories.

The commerce is chiefly with Great Britain (about one-half of the total imports and exports), India, Australia, United States, and Germany. Hongkong is a free port and the center of trade in many kinds of goods. Among the principal are opium, sugar, and flour, salt, earthenware, oil, amber, cotton and cotton goods, rice, coal, timber, etc. The Chinese tea and silk trade is largely in the hands of Hongkong firms.

Communication.—Hongkong is connected by telegraph with all parts of the world, and numerous mail steamers make it a port of call.

Caution respecting submarine vessels.—Notice is hereby given that submarine vessels are being constantly exercised off Hongkong.

In order to minimize the risk of collision with other vessels, the vessel escorting the submarines will, when the latter are exercising, display a large red flag at the masthead.

Every vessel seeing this signal should steer so as to give the escorting vessel a berth of at least 1 mile, and also to pass astern of her; when from any cause this can not be done, the escorting vessel should be approached at a slow speed until warning is given by flags, semaphore, or megaphone, as most convenient, of the danger zone, a good lookout being kept meanwhile for the submarines, whose presence may be only indicated by their periscopes showing above water.

Signals to be made by vessels approaching defended ports when inconvenienced by searchlights.—Any vessel approaching

Digitized by Google

a defended port in the colony of Hongkong or in that of the Straits Settlements when searchlights are being worked, and finding that they interfere with her safe navigation, may make use of the following signals, either singly or combined:

- (a) By flashing lamp, four short flashes followed by one long flash.
- (b) By whistle, siren, or fog horn, four short blasts followed by one long blast.

Whenever possible, both flashing lamp signals and sound signals should be used. On these signals being made, the searchlights will be worked so as to cause the least inconvenience, being either doused, raised, or their direction altered. The signal should not be used without real necessity, as unless the vessel is actually in the rays of the searchlight it is impossible to know which searchlight is affected.

NOTE.—The signals are designed to assist mariners, and do not render the Government liable in any way.

Coal.—Large supplies of coal are obtainable at Bangkok, Saigon, Kam Ranh Bay, Tourane, Haifong, and Hongai (Port Courbet); smaller supplies at Hoi hau Bay in Hainan, Canton, and Macao. See also the body of the work.

Dockyards.—There is a naval dockyard at Hongkong, a Siamese naval dockyard at Bangkok, and a French naval dockyard at Saigon.

Docking accommodation.—The principal docks for British vessels in this part of the China station are at Singapore (China Sea Directory, Vol. I) and Hongkong.

The places in which docks are situated included in this volume are Bangkok, Haifong, Saigon, and Hongkong.

Standard time.—The time kept at Hongkong and Macao is that of the meridian of 120° E., or 8 hours fast on mean time at Greenwich. In Indo-China it is the meridian of 105° E., or 7 hours fast on Greenwich.

Uniform system of buoys and beacons—Indo-China.—The system of buoyage in Indo-China is similar to that in force on the coasts of France, and is as follows:

The term starboard hand means that side which would be on the right hand going with the main stream of flood, or in entering a harbor, river, or estuary from seaward; the term port hand means the left-hand side under the same circumstances.

- Art. 1. Starboard-hand buoys are painted red, surmounted by a conical top mark, and numbered even, commencing from seaward.
- Art. 2. Port-hand buoys are painted black, surmounted by a cylinder, and numbered uneven, commencing from seaward.
- Art. 3. Buoys at the bifurcation of channels are painted black and white in horizontal bands, and surmounted by two cones, bases together.

- Art. 4. Buoys at the junction of channels are painted red and white in horizontal bands, and surmounted by two cones, points together.
- Art. 5. Buoys marking isolated dangers are painted red and black in horizontal bands, and surmounted by a sphere.
- Art. 6. Buoys marking wrecks are painted green, and surmounted by a top mark according to its position, in agreement with articles 1-5.
- Art. 7. The names and numbers on the buoys are painted in white letters.

Dredgers.—See Regulations, page 272.

Chinese waters.—The following system of coloring buoys, beacons, and distinguishing marks of wreck-marking vessels is adopted in Chinese waters:

The side of the channel is to be considered starboard or port with reference to the entrance to any port from seaward.

### Buoys.—

- 1. Buoys colored red mark the starboard side of the channel, and must be left on the starboard hand by vessels entering.
- 2. Buoys colored black mark the port side of the channel, and must be left on the port hand by vessels entering.
- 3. Buoys painted in red and black horizontal bands mark the fairway, and should be passed close-to.
- 4. Buoys painted in red and black vertical stripes mark the ends of spits, and the outer and inner extremes of banks, shoals, or extensive reefs, where there is a navigable channel on either side of such bank, shoal, or reef. Vessels must not attempt to pass between a buoy thus painted and the danger it marks.
- 5. Buoys painted red and black checkered mark rocks in the open sea, and also obstructions of small extent having channels on either side of them. When marking the latter, they are placed seaward of the danger. Vessels must not attempt to pass between a buoy thus painted and the danger it marks.
- 6. When two checkered buoys—red and white, and black and white—mark an obstruction, the red and white buoy marks the starboard side of the channel, and must be left on the starboard hand by vessels entering; and the black and white buoy marks the port side of the channel, and must be left on the port hand by vessels entering.
- 7. Wrecks are in all cases marked by green buoys, with the word WRECK and a number over it painted on them in white letters; when a wreck lies in the open sea, or in a position where there is a navigable channel on either side of it, the buoy carries no other distinguishing mark, and is in every such case placed seaward of the wreck.

Wreck buoys marked with an even number must be left on the starboard hand, and those with an odd number on the port hand, by vessels entering.

All other marks on buoys are in addition to the foregoing.

Wreck-marking vessels carry by day a red flag or such other mark as may be locally notified, and at night exhibit either one red light or a red light vertically over a white light.

Beacons marking channels and dangers are painted in a similar manner to buoys used for the same purpose.

The rules for painting beacons apply in each case to the body of the structure. When a beacon painted a single color, either black or red, is surmounted by a distinguishing mark, such mark may be painted the same color as the body of the beacon, or with that color and white combined, or white alone.

When the body of a beacon is painted in two colors, the same colors only are used for the mark surmounting it.

Beacons on land, to enable bearings to be taken or to give lines of direction for crossing bars or entering rivers, harbors, etc., are painted so as to make them as conspicuous as possible. Red, black, and white are the only colors used.

Light vessels.—The light vessels in Chinese waters exhibit a white light from the forestay to indicate the direction in which the vessel is riding.

When a light vessel is out of position a red flag is hoisted at the masthead or yardarm by day; at night the usual light is discontinued, and a red light is exhibited at each end of the vessel. In the case of a light vessel whose usual light is red, or red and white, a white light will be exhibited at each end of the vessel.

Light buoys must not be implicitly trusted, as mentioned in preliminary pages.

Chinese vessels—Lights.—The "Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea" are accepted for general use in Chinese waters by all Chinese vessels of foreign type, but Chinese junks, etc., do not carry the regulation lights.

Caution.—Enormous fleets of fishing junks may be met on the coast of China; these vessels carry no lights; as a rule they have the smallest sail forward, and are stoutly built; serious damage would probably be caused to an iron vessel in collision with one of them. The large trading junks have five masts, with two small sails aft.

Steam pilot vessels—Lights.—All foreign Governments have agreed to the exhibition of the following lights for steam pilot vessels:

A steam pilot vessel exclusively employed for the service of pilots licensed or certified by any pilotage authority when engaged on her station and not at anchor shall, in addition to the lights carried by all pilot vessels, carry, at a distance of 8 feet below her white masthead

light, a red light visible all round the horizon, visible at a distance of 2 miles in clear weather, and also the colored side lights required to be carried by vessels when under way.

When  $\epsilon$ ngaged on her station on pilotage duty, and at anchor, she shall exhibit only the two masthead lights.

Pilot vessels.—Other pilot vessels, when engaged on their stations, shall not show the lights required for other vessels, but shall carry a white light at the masthead, visible all round the horizon, and shall also exhibit a flare-up at intervals not exceeding 15 minutes.

On a near approach the usual side lights are to be lighted, and shall flash or show them at short intervals to indicate the directions in which they are heading, but the green light shall not be shown on the port side nor the red light on the starboard side when hand lights are used.

A pilot boat taking a pilot may use a hand lantern instead of a masthead light, and a lantern with green and red slides in place of the side lights. For full details see the Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea.

Water—Caution.—On the coast of China no water for drinking or cooking purposes should be procured from the shore, if it can possibly be avoided. If water can not be obtained by condensation, great care must be taken in selecting the watering place on shore, which it is essential should be above cultivated areas; the water should be boiled before use.

Dysentery and probably cholera, which is particularly prevalent at the end of summer and in autumn, result from drinking impure water. The peculiar way the Chinese manure the fields, the overcrowding in their towns, and a general disregard of ordinary sanitary precautions cause the pollution of the water.

Aerated waters sold by the natives, and ice stored by them, must not be used.

Diseases.—In China, besides dysentery and cholera, milder forms of intestinal diseases are common in summer, and occur probably from the promiscuous use of raw vegetables, or from chills caught when lying on deck at night.

There is a peculiar form of intestinal catarrh, popularly known as sprue, which attacks Europeans predisposed to illness; the mucous membrane is affected, diarrhea is often profuse, and only fresh milk diet, and often hospital treatment, or removal from the country, can cure the patient.

#### WINDS AND WEATHER.

General remarks.—Over the whole of the China Sea the southwest and northeast monsoons prevail, but in the northern part during both monsoons easterly and southeasterly winds are frequently experienced. Land and sea breezes occur near the coasts; they are experienced more frequently during the southwest than in the northeast



monsoon, and prevail most on the coasts of Cochin China, Palawan, and Luzon. The northeast monsoon is much the stronger and the more permanent of the two, being but rarely interrupted, while the southwest is particularly irregular and often very weak.

The winds may be summed up briefly as follows: From November to March the northeast monsoon blows. In April calms precede the change of the monsoon, with variable winds between northeast and southeast.

In May the southwest monsoon is established on the Asiatic coast, with northeast to southeast winds in the middle of the sea and easterly winds in the northern part.

In June the southwest monsoon is fairly established. In September the monsoon becomes weak; strong winds from south to northwest occur, often blowing with violence, and accompanied by rain on the coasts of Borneo and Palawan.

In October the northeast monsoon is established, and blowing fresh in the northern part, except on the coast of Luzon, where it is feeble, with calms and showers from southwest, south of the parallel of 13° N.

In November and December the northeast monsoon is strong, but calms, variable winds, and rain occur, in the eastern portion.

The northeast monsoon occasionally sets in as early as the last week in August, but it usually begins in the northern part of the China Sea about the end of September or early in October. In the southern part it seldom blows steadily till November; there light southerly or variable breezes prevail for the greater part of October. This monsoon generally (and sometimes without warning) commences with a gale, which frequently lasts 10 or 12 days and blows with great violence; therefore when the monsoon is about to change do not anchor in unsheltered positions, and weigh immediately the wind freshens, as otherwise, owing to the swell rising quickly, there is a difficulty in getting the anchor. Although the weather in some years is settled and fine, during September and October the period of the autumnal equinox is a very precarious one, and storms frequently occur in those months.

In November the northeast monsoon prevails generally, but it blows more steadily and with greater strength in December and January; the weather then is frequently cloudy, with much rain and a turbulent sea, particularly southward of Pulo Sapatu in Lat. 10° N.

In February there are generally strong winds and unsettled weather. During March the wind is moderate, with steady weather all over the China Sea, inclining to land and sea breezes on the coast of Luzon.

The southwest monsoon generally commences in the China Sea about the middle or end of April, and continues to the beginning or middle of October, liable to an acceleration or retardation of about a fortnight. It sets in sooner about the Gulfs of Siam and Tonkin

along the western shore than in the open sea or near the coasts of China, Palawan, and Luzon. It also continues longer to the southward of the parallel of 11° N. than in the northern part of the sea, where it generally terminates about the first week in September; for while northeast and easterly winds are blowing on the China coast, southerly winds frequently prevail between Singapore and Pulo Sapatu until the middle of October, although more often, about Pulo Sapatu, light northerly and variable winds and calms prevail at this period.

In May the winds in the open sea are often light and variable, and easterly or southeast winds are likely to occur for a day or two at a time during the whole of the southwest monsoon, particularly in the northern part of the China Sea, where these winds are frequently experienced in both monsoons.

The southwest monsoon is at its greatest strength in June, July, and August, at which period there is at times much rain and cloudy weather all over the China Sea; in these months, and also in May, sudden hard squalls sometimes blow out of the Gulf of Siam, as far as Pulo Condore and Pulo Sapatu. When dense clouds are perceived to rise, indicating the approach of these squalls, sail ought to be reduced without delay.

During the strength of the monsoon, the wind draws southward, varying between south-southwest and south-southeast in the months of June and July.

From the Gulf of Siam to Cape Padaran the southwest monsoon blows nearly parallel to the coast; and if close in a light wind from the land is at times experienced at night, succeeded by a short interval of calm on the following morning. The monsoon breeze then sets in and generally continues brisk during the day. These land and sea breezes prevail most on the coast of Cochin-China from Cape Padaran northward to Tonkin Gulf, for on this coast during this monsoon the sea wind dies away almost every evening and a land breeze comes off in the night, although not at a regular hour. This is followed by calms or light airs, which frequently continue until noon; the sea breeze then sets in from the southeast.

In September the monsoon falls light and variable.

Gulf of Siam.—The northeast monsoon in the Gulf of Siam sets in at the end of October, or early in November. It is usually preceded by a month of squally, variable, and uncertain weather, and fogs are prevalent, especially near Pulo Panjang. At the end of November the monsoon is fairly established, bringing with it heavy squalls and gloomy weather on the western shore, while on the eastern shore the sky is often unclouded for a week together with winds from the eastward. In the middle of the gulf the wind is northeast.

In November and December strong squalls, with heavy thunder and lightning, are occasionally met with near Pulo Panjang.

In December and January the monsoon blows with its greatest strength.

Toward the end of January the wind blows more from the east-ward, is steadier, and abates in strength.

In February the wind is more constant from east-southeast than from any other point; it blows between southeast and northeast with occasional calms and squalls. Fine weather and smooth water now prevail all over the gulf.

In March the monsoon can not be depended on. In the middle of the gulf calms prevail with southerly winds near the shore, and occasional land and sea breezes. Toward the end of the month the weather becomes hot and sultry.

April is the hottest month of the year; calms may be expected near the middle of the gulf, land and sea breezes near the shore, and occasional slight squalls. From mid-April to mid-May southerly winds predominate with calms, light rain, and heavy squalls at times. The southwest monsoon is established about the middle or end of June, preceded by a few weeks of unsettled weather.

In June, July, and August, the southwest monsoon blows strongest, with occasional showers, but generally there is very fine weather along the western shore of the gulf, where also the wind is more southerly; out in the middle there is a rough sea, and along the eastern shore there are strong breezes with much rain, and occasionally a fresh gale.

In September the wind is unsteady, veering between southwest and west-northwest in strong gusts. Heavy and continuous rain may be expected in this month.

In October the wind shifts between west and north and abates considerably in strength; the rain squalls are less frequent. Toward the end of the month the wind settles in the north and the cold weather and fine season sets in.

The southwest monsoon is scarcely felt close inshore between Cape Patani and the Redang Islands, its course being interrupted by the high land in that neighborhood. To the southward of Pulo Kapas it takes the direction of the coast, shifting a few points on or offshore by day or night, under the influence, alternately, of the sea and land breezes.

Squalls are frequent in the soutwest monsoon; they rise to the westward, accompanied by a heavy bank of clouds generally in the form of an arch, blow with considerable strength for a short time, and are frequently accompanied by heavy rain; strong gales are unknown in the Gulf

Lower Cochin China.—The northeast monsoon sets in toward the end of October, and continues until March, when there are variable easterly winds and calms up till May; then the first light airs of the southwest monsoon are felt.

In June, July, and August, heavy rains accompany the southwest winds; land and sea breezes prevail when the monsoon is weak.

Anam.—Upon this coast the northeast monsoon period is accompanied by rain and northerly winds from December to April. As far south as Cape Padaran the monsoon is generally strong, but southward of the cape it blows with less force and calms are more frequent.

During the southwest monsoon, land and sea breezes are fairly regular; the former is followed by calms or light winds, which generally last up to noon, when the sea breezes set in.

The winds may be said to be variable and weak during the whole year. There are heavy rains during the months of September, October, and November.

Tonkin Gulf.—During the month of October northerly winds are established in the Gulf.

From the beginning of November to the end of April the winds are as follows:

South of the seventeenth parallel, the wind varies between east and east northeast; between the seventeenth and eighteenth parallels the winds are variable from the eastward, with breezes sometimes from north to northwest, varied by calms; between the eighteenth and nineteenth parallels, the winds are from east northeast to east southeast near Hainan, and from northeast to north northeast near the coast of Tonkin; north of the nineteenth parallel the winds are from north to east.

The winds are moderate, only attaining on a few occasions, and for a short duration, a force of 6.

From May to August, near the coast, winds from south-southeast to south-southwest prevail, with variable winds from west, and sometimes from the opposite direction.

Toward the center of the Gulf, the winds are from south-southwest, southwest, and even west southwest; between Hainan and the coast variable winds and calms prevail.

These winds are weaker than those of the northeast monsoon period, rarely exceeding a force of 4.

The weather is generally fine and dry, from the end of October to the beginning of January, and the temperature falls to 54° F., with a considerable range during the 24 hours.

From the month of January fogs become prevalent, especially in February and March, the sun scarcely shows itself in these three months, and the temperature is down to 48° or 50° in the morning.

In April, at the end of the northeast monsoon, the weather begins to brighten, and keeps fine until June, when storms and rains make their appearance; the temperature rises to 83°.

In June, with the southwest monsoon, ushered in by storms, the rainy season establishes itself, and lasts up to September, but August is characterized by torrential rains which succeed each other almost without interruption; the temperature is often 95°. From September to November the winds are weak and variable, except for the somewhat frequent occurrence of typhoons, and the weather is also always fine; temperature declines perceptibly. The sea in Tonkin Gulf, although disturbed at times, does not run high.

The Fai Tsi Long Archipelago affords good shelter during typhoons for all classes of vessels.

Typhoons.—The cyclonic storms of the China Seas between China and Japan have long been named typhoons, after a Chinese word, meaning great wind.

The wind in these storms is precisely similar to that in all revolving storms in the northern hemisphere; it revolves around the central area of low pressure in the direction contrary to the motion of the hands of a watch, curving also spirally toward the center; and at the same time the whole storm field advances, sometimes with great velocity, and sometimes at scarcely more than the rate of a few miles an hour.

The average rate of progress of the center of a typhoon in Lat. 11° N. is 5 miles an hour; in Lat. 13° N., 6½ miles; in Lat. 15° N., 8 miles; in Lat. 20° N., 9 miles; in Lat. 25° N., 11 miles; in Lat. 30° N., 14 miles. Southward of Lat. 13° N., the rate does not vary perceptibly, but it is more variable the farther to the northward, and in Lat. 32° 15′ N. it ranges from 6 to 36 miles.

The area over which these storms extend varies from 20 to some hundreds of miles in diameter, and near land the strong winds are so irregularly distributed that in a place near the center there may be less wind than at some distance further away from it.

Typhoons are experienced in the western Pacific and northern part of the China Sea, between the parallels of 9° N. and 45° N., and are most prevalent in the months of July, August, September, and October; from December to May they seldom happen, still they have been known to occur in every month of the year. Between May and November these storms commonly follow each other quickly, and there are often several raging at one time; then they cease, and there are none perhaps for several weeks; in August and September a total cessation is most unusual, and the equinox is a very precarious period.

Typhoons are most frequent in the vicinity of Luzon, Hainan, and southwestward of Japan. They are said to blow with the greatest

fury when near the land, and their violence is not so great when they pass well to the southward of the coast of China.

The following table, giving the number of typhoons that occurred at Hongkong during the years 1886–1899, will show the probability of a typhoon being encountered in this portion of these seas, in any particular month:

Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.	Total.
1	0	1	4	10	24	45	43	57	31	22	6	244

In the Philippine Archipelago the typhoons which appeared, either crossing it or passing through it for a greater or less distance, were 468 in number between the years 1880–1901, inclusive, viz:

Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	June	July	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.	Total.
9	2	5	10	25	41	74	74	88	65	51	24	468

Only two of the 468 typhoons which were registered from 1880 to 1900, inclusive, occurred in the month of February; and only 5 in the month of March during the complete period. Their frequency then increases from April, when 10 were observed, to July, when 74 occurred. The maximum of 88 is reached in September, thus giving a yearly average of 4 for this month. From October the number gradually diminishes up to January, for which month but 9 are recorded.

As a rule, typhoons commence from east to southeast of the Philippines, whence they advance in courses between west and northnorthwest. In May their paths are confined to the Tropics. In June they trend toward Hainan Island, over Hongkong, and Swatau, or up the Formosa Channel. In July, August, September they become general.

September is especially dangerous, both for the reasons already mentioned, and owing to great irregularity of path caused by the northeast monsoon, which commences in the higher latitudes in fitful puffs. In October they are confined to the tropics by the northeast monsoon; but a few, having their origin well eastward of the Philippines, will make for the southeast coast of Japan. In November they blow only between the parallels 9° to 14° north in the China Sea; but, as in October, a few run northeastward between Liu Kiu and the Bonin Islands. In the central and northern parts of the China sea their course lies between northwest by west and west by south,

those having much northing generally continuing overland and recurving into the Gulf of Pechili. The typhoons traveling between west by north and west by south usually break up inshore. Those that cross the northern end of Luzon in the southwest monsoon, either usually come through the Bashi Channel and make their way up the China coast, or else run up the east coast of Taiwan, and then hug the north China shore; both these paths are dangerous.

In 1910, several typhoons of a mild form occurred in June, July, and September in Tonkin Gulf; one in September passed through Hainan Strait, one in June passed northward of Luzon to Lat. 20° N., Long. 115° E., when it turned northward, passing westward of Hongkong.

During the latter months of the year, typhoons that enter the China Sea after crossing the Philippines in a low latitude occasionally recurve to the southwestward; others, after crossing the Philippines, recurve in the China Sea and reenter the Pacific, passing between Luzon and Tainan; these latter occur at the beginning and end of the typhoon season, but chiefly in May.

In the typhoons of the summer months, which move toward the west-northwest or northwest in the northern part of the China Sea and reach the coast in the neighborhood of the Tonkin Gulf, the area over which the winds become strong, with a decided fall in the barometer in front of the center, is generally small. This is accounted for by the low pressure prevailing over the Tonkin Gulf and the continent beyond it. For the same reason the winds in rear are not only stronger, but long continued.

In the autumn months (September and October) these conditions are reversed, and in front of the storm the barometer begins to fall and strong winds blow at great distances from the center, while in rear the area over which the winds are governed by the depression is comparatively small.

In consequence, a vessel in front of a typhoon moving as stated above, will usually get much shorter notice of the advance of a typhoon from the barometer in summer than in autumn, and while in summer the bad weather lasts for a long time in rear, in autumn it improves rapidly when the center is past and a strong northeast monsoon sets in.

The winds round a typhoon center may be said to be composed of cyclonic winds on the one hand and the prevailing wind on the other.

Warnings of approach.—The indications preceding a tropical cyclone are, in general, common to all oceans and dependence should be placed in a combination of all these signs, rather than in any one of them. The chief indications are personal discomfort, an unsteady barometer, a heavy swell not caused by the wind then blowing, the forms and movements of the clouds.

The latter indication and its value as a storm warning is described as follows by Faura in the Cyclones in the Far East by Rev. José Algue, S. J., of the Manila Observatory:

The best means of determining the center (of a storm) and for following up its movements are the observations of cirri, little clouds of a very fine structure and clear opal color, which appear as elongated feathers. \* \* \* Long before the least sign of bad weather is noticeable, and in many cases when the barometer is still very high being under the influence of a center of high pressure, which generally precedes a tempest—these small isolated clouds appear in the upper regions of the atmosphere. They seem to be piled up on the blue vault of heaven and drawn out in the direction of some point on the horizon toward which they converge. The first to present themselves are few in number but well defined and of the most delicate structure, appearing like filaments bound together, but whose visibility is lost before they reach the point of radiation. We often had an opportunity to watch them at the Observatory of Manila, when the center was still 600 miles distant. The best times for observing the cirri are at sunset and sunrise. If the sun is in the east and very near the horizon, the first clouds which are tinged by the solar rays are the cirri-strati which precede the cyclone, and they are the last to disappear at sunset, insomuch as they spread the horizon. Such times are the best for determining the radiant point of the cloud streaks and at the same time for ascertaining the direction in which the center lies. Later on the delicacy of form, which characterizes this class of clouds in its earlier stages, is lost, and the clouds appear in more confused and tangled forms, like streamers of featherwork, with central nuclei, which still maintain this direction, so that the point of radiation can still be detected. In order to ascertain approximately the direction in which the center is advancing in its movement of translation, it is necessary to determine the changes of the radiant point at equal intervals of time and to compare them with the movements of the barometer. If the point of convergence does not perceptibly change its position, but remains fixed and immovable for a long time, even for several consecutive days, it is almost certain that the tempest will break over the position of the observer. In this case the barometer begins to fall shortly after the first cirrus clouds have been observed and sometimes even before. At first it falls slowly, without completely losing the diurnal and nocturnal oscillatory movements, but changing somewhat the hours of maximum and minimum. The daily reading is observed to be each day less than that of the preceding day. That part of the horizon in the direction of the storm begins to be covered by a cirrus veil, which increases slowly until it forms an almost homogeneous covering of the sky. This veil is known by the name "cirro-pallium" of Pöey, and is that which causes the solar and lunar halos, which are never absent when a storm approaches. Beneath the veil a few isolated clouds, commonly called "cotton," appear. They are much more numerous and larger on the side lying toward the storm, where they soon appear in a compact At such times the sunrises and sunsets are characterized by the high red tint which the clouds assume, resembling a great fire, especially in the direction of the cyclone. The wind remains fixed at one point, showing only a few variations, which are due principally to the squalls, which continually exert their force within the limits of the storm. The low or "cotton" clouds successively and from time to time cover the sky, throwing out occasionally squalls of rain and wind; but, the squalls having passed, a lull ensues, the cirrus veil remaining, and likewise the hurricane bank of clouds, which seems fixed to the same spot in the direction of the storm. This state of the atmosphere continues until the bank of clouds invades the point of observation, in which case the squalls will be continuous and the wind will increase in violence each moment.

The storm area, of violent winds, in the tropics is comparatively small, extending ordinarily about 150 miles from the center, but where the area is small the barometric

gradiants are exceedingly steep. In the typhoons of the North Pacific gradiants of one inch' in 60 miles are not infrequent: the isobars in such cases being almost circular. The winds on the slopes of these depressions are frequently of great violence, and in the matter of direction they are more symmetrically disposed about the center than is the case of the larger and less regularly shaped depressions of higher latitudes. In the low latitudes the average values of the deflection of the wind from the barometric gradiant is in the neighborhood of six compass points—to the right in the northern hemisphere.

Practical rules.—In the typhoon season be constantly on the watch for the premonitory signs, and carefully observe and record the changes of the barometer and wind.

When there is reason to believe that a typhoon is approaching, the two points necessary for the seaman to know are the direction in which the center of the storm is situated and in which semicircle of the storm the vessel is situated.

In order to ascertain these two points it is necessary that the observer should be stationary; the first thing therefore to be done is to stop head to wind, or heave to, and as it is always wise to assume the vessel may be in the dangerous semicircle, she should be hove to on the starboard tack (in the Northern Hemisphere). There should be no hesitation in heaving to, as the sooner a clear knowledge of the position of the ship in the storm is ascertained the better it will be.

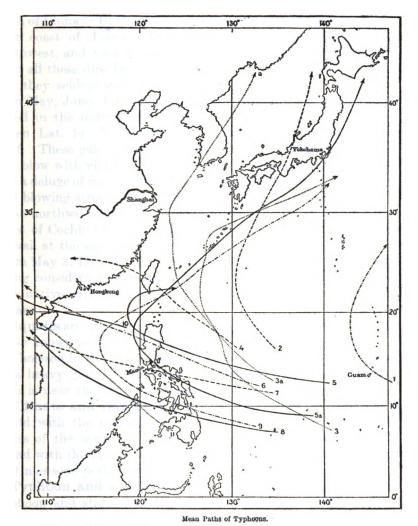
To find the bearing of the center the observer should face the wind, when the center will be from 8 to 12 points on the right hand in the Northern Hemisphere, and on the left hand in the Southern Hemisphere. At the commencement of the storm allow 12 points; when the barometer has fallen three-tenths of an inch, about 10 points; and when it has fallen six-tenths of an inch or upwards, 8 points.

To ascertain in which semicircle the ship is in, watch carefully the way the wind shifts. If the wind shifts to the right the vessel is in the right-hand semicircle, and if to the left in the left-hand semicircle. This holds good in both hemispheres.

If the ship is in the right-hand semicircle she should, if in the Northern Hemisphere, remain hove to on the starboard tack, but if in the Southern Hemisphere run with the wind on the port quarter until the barometer begins to rise.

If the ship is in the left-hand semicircle she should, if in the Northern Hemisphere, run with the wind on the starboard quarter, but if in the Southern Hemisphere remain hove to on the port tack.

If in the direct track of the storm the wind will, without change of direction, increase rapidly in force, while the barometer continues to fall, and then the most advisable course to pursue is to run with the wind on the starboard quarter in the Northern Hemisphere, and on the port quarter in the Southern Hemisphere, until the barometer has ceased to fall.



79795-15. (Face page 50.)

In all cases act so as to increase as soon as possible the distance from the center bearing in mind that the whole storm field is advancing.

In receding from the center of a typhoon, the barometer will rise and the wind and sea subside.

Gales sometimes blow steadily from east northeast or northeast several days at a time, in September and October, near the southeast coast of China. In the same months they are liable to happen on the west coast of Luzon. Here they mostly commence at north or northwest, and veer to west, southwest, or south, blowing strongly from all these directions, with heavy rain, and a cross turbulent sea; but they seldom continue long.

In May, June, July, and August, severe gales are at times experienced in the northwestern part of the China Sea, particularly between Lat. 14° N. and Hainan Island, the approach to Tonkin Gulf. These gales generally begin at north northwest or northwest, and blow with violence out of the gulf, accompanied by dark weather and a deluge of rain; from northwest they shift to west and southwest, still blowing strong, and abate as they shift more southerly. When these northwest gales are blowing in the vicinity of Hainan and the coast of Cochin-China, strong southwest or southerly gales generally prevail at the same time, in the middle of the China Sea.

On May 3, 1904, at 3h. 30m. p. m., a hurricane passed over Saigon, doing considerable damage to property, in which ships broke adrift and native craft suffered greatly. Such an occurrence at Saigon is rare.

Squalls are common during both monsoons, the most dangerous are those known as the arch squalls. When clouds are seen rising from the horizon in the shape of an arch, sail should at once be shortened, as a heavy gust of wind may be expected; these squalls when the arch is near the zenith are accompanied by heavy rain.

Climate and rainfall.—The general remarks on climate will be found with the remarks on the several countries, in the first few pages of the work; for special ports and for the rainfall it will be found with the description of those ports, where known. The northeast monsoon period is the healthful season.

Typhoon and storm signals.—The undermentioned system of typhoon and storm warning signals has been substituted for that formerly in use at the semaphores of the Imperial Maritime Customs on the coast of China, which include Hongkong and Canton in this volume. It has been established with slight additions by the French Government at the semaphores at Haifong, Tihen sha (Tourane), Padaran, and Cape St. James for the coasts of Cochin China, Anam, and the Gulf of Tongkin.

Information respecting storms can also be obtained at the following places which have no semaphore: Vinh, Dong Hoi, Tourane, Kin hon, Nhatrang, and Saigon.

The above stations, which are connected with the observatory at Fulien (Phulien), Haifong, will be instructed daily regarding the storm areas.

Signals.—When the following signals are made, a red flag with a white star in the center will be hoisted at the masthead during the day, and replaced by a red light at night.

The signals are made by means of shapes used as symbols having numbers corresponding to them as follows:



These shapes are hoisted at the yardarms of the signal mast, and have the following general characteristics:

depressions.	the direction toward which the center is traveling.
Gale signals	2 shapes at one yardarm showing the general direction of the wind. 3 shape at the other yardarm showing the region threatened.

The time the warning was issued from Zei Ka Wei Observatory, Shanghai, is indicated by one of the above-mentioned shapes hoisted at the masthead, as follows:

Signal.	Signification.
No. 1 (cone, point down)	Warning issued this morning. Warning issued yesterday afternoon.

## TABLE I .- Typhoons and continental depressions.

Signals made at the Zei Ka Wei Observatory, Shanghai, to indicate the positions of typhoons and barometric depressions.]

#### THREE SYMBOLS.

[Representing approximate position of center.]

# Series 1=

#### SOUTHEAST DISTRICT.

No.	Meaning.	No. Meaning.
111.	Yap—Pelew Group. Center between S. and W. (any distance).	143. Guam—Center between S. and E. beyond 240 miles.
112.	Guam (from Guam to Yap)—Center between S. and W. within 240 miles.	144. S. of Macclesfield bank. 145. S. of Paracels. 146. E. of Paracels.
113.	Bonin Group—Center between S. and E. (any distance).	151. Guam—Center between S. and E. within 240 miles.
	Far to the E. of Philippine Islands. SE. of Luzon.	152. Guam—Center between N. and E. (any distance).
	S. of Luzon. Yap—Center between S. and E. be-	153. Guam—Center between N. and W. within 240 miles.
122.	yond 240 miles. Sulu Sea.	154. Guam—Center between N. and W. beyond 240 miles.
	SW. of Luzon. E. of Luzon.	155. Central Paracels. 156. NE. of Paracels.
	Central Luzon. W. of Luzon.	161. Pacific about Lat. 15° to 20° N., Long. 135° to 140° E.
131.	Yap—Center between S. and E. within 240 miles.	162. Pacific about Lat. 15° to 20° N., Long. 130° to 135° E.
132.	Yap—Center between N. and E. within 240 miles.	163. Bonin—Center between N. and E. (any distance).
	NE. of Luzon. NW. of Luzon.	164. Bonin—Center between N. and W. (any distance).
135.	W. of Palawan Islands. SE. of Macclesfield bank.	165. Bonin—Center between S. and W. beyond 240 miles.
141.	Yap—Center between N. and W. beyond 240 miles. Yap—Center between N. and W.	166. Bonin—Center between S. and W. within 240 miles.
1 T2.	within 240 miles.	_

# Series 2=

## SOUTHWEST DISTRICT.

N. Y.		Ma	Manager 1
	aning.	No.	Meaning.
211. Off the coast of (			N. of Anam.
212. SW. of the Parac	els.	242.	NW. of Anam.
213. Off Anam.		243.	Central Anam.
214. Between Paracel	s and Hainan.	244.	Coast near Hainan.
215. Between Hainan	and Anam.	245.	NW. of Hongkong.
216. E. of Hainan.		246.	Off Swatow.
221. Haif ng to Vinh		251.	SW. of Anam.
222. Tonkin Gulf.		252.	S. of Anam.
223. Off Song Ka del	ta (Norway Island).		E. of Cochin China.
224. Hainan Strait.	` '	254.	N. of Cochin China.
225. SE. of Hongkong	beyond 120 miles.	255.	Off Amov.
226. SE. of Hongkons	within 120 miles.	256.	Coast S. of twenty-fifth parallel.
231. N. of Tonkin.	,	261.	Vinh to Tourane.
232. NW. of Tonkin.		262.	W. of Cochin China.
233. S. of Hongkong.		263.	NE. of Tonkin.
234. SW. Hongkong.		264.	Gulf of Siam.
235. S. of Formosa Ch	annel.	265.	S. of Pulo Condore.
236. Coast near Macad		266.	Between Pratas and Lamock Island.

## TABLE I .- Typhoons and continental depressions-Continued.

## THREE SYMBOLS—Continued.

# Series 3=

## SOUTH-CENTRAL DISTRICT.

No. MEANING.	No. MEANING.
311. E. of Liu Kiu Islands.	341. Lat. 20° to 23° N., Long. 125° to
312. Central Liu Kiu Islands.	. 130° E.
313. SE. of Liu Kiu Islands.	·   342. E. of Balingtang Channel.
314. S. of Liu Kiu Islands.	343. S. of Pescadores Islands.
315. SE. of Meiaco sima group.	344. N. of Taiwan.
316. S. of Meiaco sima group.	345. Center of Formosa Channel.
321. SW. of Meiaco sima group.	346. N. of Formosa Channel.
322. N. of Meiaco sima group.	351. Between Naha and Ishigaki jima.
323. W. of Liu Kiu Islands.	352. Center of Meiaco sima group.
324. SE. of Taiwan.	353. Between Taiwan and Ishigaki jima.
325. Balingtang Channel.	354. Off Ockseu.
326. Bashee Channel.	355. Off Turnabout Island.
331. Lat. 20° to 23° N., Long. 130°	
135° E.	361.
332. Lat. 23° to 27° N., Long. 130°	
135° E.	363.
333. SW. of Taiwan.	364.
334. E. of Taiwan.	365.
335. Central Taiwan.	366.
336. NE. of Taiwan.	

## Series 4=

## NORTH CENTRAL DISTRICT.

No. MEANING.	No. MEANING.
411. NE. of Liu Kiu Islands.	442. W. of Linschoten Islands.
412. NW. of Liu Kiu Islands.	443. S. of Quelpart Island
413. S. of Kiusiu Island.	444 NW. of Shanghai.
414. Off Tung Yung Lighthouse.	445. N. of Shanghai.
415. SE. of Wenchow.	446. Between Saddle Islands and Quel-
416. SE, of Hie shan Lighthouse.	part Island.
421. E. of Hie shan Lighthouse.	451. E. of Chusan Archipelago.
422. Coast of Chekiang.	452. W. of Quelpart Island.
423. SE. of Chusan Islands.	453. NW. of Quelpart Island.
424. SE. of Gutzlaff Lighthouse.	454. E. of Old Hwang River mouth.
425. Off the Saddle Islands.	455. Central Yellow Sea.
426. S. of Shanghai.	456. Coast of Kiangsu.
431. Center of Eastern Sea.	461.
432 NE. of Hie Shan.	462.
433 SW, of Shanghai,	463.
434 E, of Shanghai,	464.
435 W. of Shanghai.	465.
436. NE. of Shanghai.	466.
441. E. of Linschoten Islands.	

## TABLE I.—Typhoons and continental depressions—Continued.

## THREE SYMBOLS—Continued.

## SERIES 5=

## NORTH AND NORTHEAST DISTRICTS.

# SERIES 6=

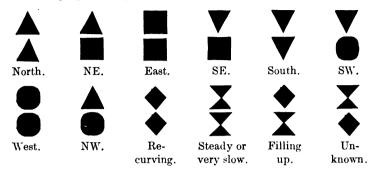
#### CONTINENTAL DEPRESSIONS.

No. MEANING.	No. MEANING.
611. Si-Kiang Valley or West River.	642. (Ingo-China) NW. of Anam.
612. Upper Yangtze Valley.	643. Chekiang Province, or
613. Mean Yangtze Valley.	643. (Indo-China) Center of Anam.
614. Lower Yangtze Valley.	644. Sea of Japan.
615. Upper Hwang River Valley.	645. Eastern Sea.
616. Lower Hwang River Valley.	646. Crossing Japan.
621. Central Mongolia.	651. Between N. Taiwan and China, or
621. (Indo-China) NE. of Tonkin.	651. (Indo-China) SW. of Anam.
622. N. of China.	652. Between N. Taiwan and Liu Kiu Is-
623. W. of Lake Baikal.	lands, or
624. S. of Lake Baikal.	652. (Indo-China) S. of Anam.
625. E. of Lake Baikal.	653. Gulf of Pechili, or
626. N. of Liau River.	653. (Indo-China) E. of Cochin-China.
631. Thibet, or Western China.	654. N. of Chosen, or
631. (Indo-China) N. of Tonkin.	654. (Indo-China) N. of Cochin-China.
632. SW. Provinces of China.	655. On Yezo Island (Hokushu).
632. (Indo-China) NW. of Tonkin.	656. E. of Japan.
633. Over Shantung.	661. Central Manchuria, or
334. Over Chosen.	661. (Indo-China) W. of Cochin-China.
635. Over Eastern Manchuria.	662. NW. of Manchuria.
636. Yellow Sea.	663. Amur Province.
341. N. of Kwangtung Province, or	664. Sakhalin Island.
641. (Indo-China) N. of Anam.	665. Korea Strait, and S. Sea of Japan.
642. Fukien Province, or	666. Between Liu Kiu Islands and Kiusiu.

#### TABLE 11.

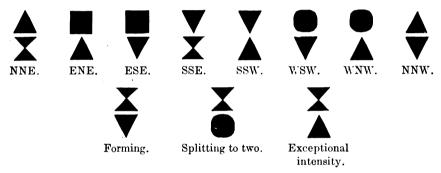
#### TWO SYMBOLS.

[Representing direction in which center is moving.]



The following additions have been made to the two-symbol signals of the storm-warning code:

[Representing direction in which center is moving.]



The foregoing additional signals will be made from the storm-signal station at Newchwang, Taku, Chifu, Chinkiang, Woosung Gutzlaff Island, Pagoda anchorage, Amoy, Swatow, and Shanghai (storm-signal station).

They are not at present in force at any port in this volume.

TABLE III.—Gales.

#### ONE SYMBOL.

[Representing locality threatened.]



Coast S. of Hainan Strait.



Coast from Hainan Strait to Amoy.



Tawain Island, and coast of China from Amoy to Hie shan.



Hie shan, and mouth of Yangtse River to Tsing tau.



Shantung, Gulf of Pechili, and Liau-tung.

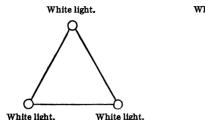


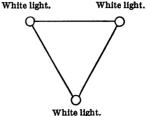
Coasts of Korea, Sea of Japan.

Note.—The direction of the wind is signaled as in Table II, given above.

#### TABLE IV.—Night signals.

#### A .- GALES.

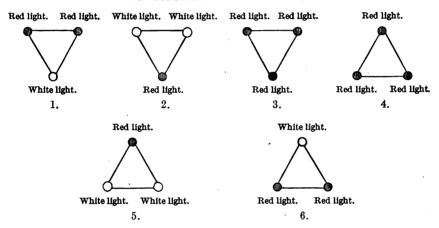




Gale expected on the coast north of the thirtieth parallel.

Gale expected on the coast south of the thirtieth parallel.

#### B .- Typhoons and Depressions.



These signals are used in the same manner as those in Table I of the code to indicate the approximate position of the center.

#### CURRENTS AND TIDES.

The principal currents in the China Sea are the northeast and southwest monsoon drifts. They are both very changeable, their direction and velocity depending much upon local circumstances, but that during the northeast monsoon is the stronger and the more constant.

Northeast monsoon period.—The current in the China Sea during the northeast monsoon, generally runs to the southwestward, with a velocity depending on the strength of the wind. When the force of the monsoon is abated, or during moderate and light breezes, there is often little or no current.

The current on the western side of the great mass of reefs included between Prince Consort bank and Ladd Reef is usually slack, even during the strength of the monsoon, and at other times is setting to windward; from Ladd Reef to North Danger Reef there is invariably a current setting to the northeast. When H. M. S. surveying vessel Rifleman was at anchor on the reefs, during both monsoons careful observations were taken of the set of the current, which, for 16 hours out of the 24, invariably set to windward, generally with the greatest force when the monsoon was strongest.

In the western parts of the sea, along the coasts of Cochin China and the Malay Peninsula, the current generally begins to run to the southward ahout the middle of October (sometimes sooner on the former coast) and continues until April. During the month of March its direction is generally to the south or southeastward about Pulo Aor, with light easterly winds and calm at times. On the coast of Anam, and adjacent to Hainan Island, a current varying from south to southwest commences some time about the middle of September; near the land, from Lat. 15° N. to about 11° 30′ N., it increases in strength, but its rate decreases in proportion as it flows southward. During the prevalence of the northeast monsoon, from about Lat. 14° N. to Cape Padaran, the current near the coast frequently runs 40 or 50 miles, and sometimes as much as 80 miles to the southward in 24 hours; the rate, however, is variable, and it is only in the limits above mentioned that it is occasionally so strong, for its strength abates at Cape Padaran, and it then runs with less velocity to the southwest toward the Gulf of Siam.

On the southern coast of China the current during the northeast monsoon runs almost constantly west southwest, nearly parallel to the land; and sometimes with considerable rapidity, when a typhoon or a storm occurs. The current at the distance of 70 or 80 miles from the coast seldom runs so strong as near it; and in depths of 30 or 40 fathoms there is much less current than in shallow water near the shore and among the islands. The westerly current sometimes slacks, and contiguous to the land the tidal streams prevail when not overcome by the force of the current, especially at springs.

Between Taiwan and the China coast the current runs to the southward during the northeast monsoon. When strong northeast winds prevail its direction is generally from southwest to south, between the southern end of Taiwan and the northern end of Luzon; but in light variable winds it often sets to the northward. On the western coast of Luzon the current is changeable, sometimes setting southward along the coast, at other times northward, but always with a decided tendency toward the coast.

Southwest monsoon period.—Late in April or early in May the current generally begins to set to the northward, in the southern and middle parts of the China Sea, and while the southwest monsoon is strong continues to run in a northeast direction until September; but it is not constant in this monsoon, for at times, when the wind is moderate or light, it is liable to change and set in various directions. After the strength of the monsoon has abated, there is often little or no current in the open sea, running to the northeastward; and sometimes its direction is to the southward.

Along the coast of Cochin China, from Pulo Obi to Cape Padaran, the current sets generally east northeast, parallel to the shore, from April to the middle of October; and during the same period its direction is generally to the northward along the east coast of the Malay Peninsula, from the entrance of Singapore Strait to the Gulf of Siam. To the northward of Cape Padaran there is but little current during the southwest monsoon, near the Cochin China coast; thence to Tonking Gulf, a small drain is sometimes found setting northward, at other times southward. When a gale blows out of the latter gulf from the northwest and westward, the current sets generally to the southwest or southward, in the vicinity of the Paracel Islands and reefs or where these gales are experienced; and this current running obliquely, or contrary to the wind, produces a turbulent and high sea.

On the southern coast of China the current is much governed by the wind; when strong southwest winds prevail, it runs along shore to the eastward, but is seldom strong. Near and among the islands westward of Macao there is generally a westerly current, occasioned by the freshets from Canton River setting in that direction, and which frequently sweeps along the islands from Macao to St. John, between west southwest and west northwest, about 1 or 2 knots per hour. This westerly current is, however, not always constant during the southwest monsoon, for a weak stream may sometimes be experienced running to the eastward.

In the Gulf of Siam.—The currents in the Gulf, near the middle are generally weak and variable, but near the land, in the strength of the monsoons, strong sets may be expected. In the southwest monsoon a strong northerly current was found from Lem Chong P'ra to Samroiyot Point. In the northeast monsoon there is frequently a strong set to the westward across the head of the gulf.

In the neighborhood of the Redang Islands and Pulo Obi, the currents prevalent in the China Sea may be expected. The China Sea current does not appear to enter the Gulf farther than a few miles, but to set across its mouth in both monsoons.

The flood stream of tide from the China Sea appears to strike the western shore of the Gulf and divide somewhere near Cape Patani; for at the Redang Islands the flood sets to the southward, and at Singora and Koh Krah it was found setting to the northward.

Tides—China Sea.—The observations on tides in the China Sea are neither numerous enough nor complete enough to permit of accurate generalizations being made for the whole area. The follow-

ing remarks, however, based on the existing evidence, afford some idea of the general tidal movement:

They are affected by a diurnal inequality, especially of height, causing a difference between the heights of successive high and low waters, which varies throughout the lunation, and sometimes attains large proportions.

The difference may be almost imperceptible, or may be so great that the movement of the water between the lower high water and higher low water is reduced to a mere stand in the level of the water, giving the effect of only one high and low water during the 24 hours.

The time of high water is generally the most regular feature of the tides, and follows the time of the moon's transit as usual.

Spring tides depend upon the opposition and conjunction of the moon and sun (full or new moon), and also on the attainment by the moon of its higher declination north or south.

The effect of these two positions of the moon is about equal on the tide, so that when the moon is either new or full, at the same time that it is in the high north or south declination, the spring tide is high and well defined. When the new or full moon occurs when it is on the equator, the spring tide is sometimes almost lost.

The higher water of each day follows either the superior or inferior transit of the moon when she is on one side of the equator, and the opposite transit when she is on the other side of the equator. The particular transit followed by the tide varies in different localities.

In Tonkin Gulf, when the sun has north declination, the higher tides about springs occur during the day, and when it has south declination, during the night.

The mean tide level on the different coasts varies during the year; in the Tonkin Gulf it is highest during the northeast monsoon, or from November to March; and also about Kin hon, on the coast of Cochin China, it is lower in May and June than in March. Tide tables for the ports in Indo-China are published annually by the United States Coast and Geodetic Survey.

### DIRECTIONS FOR MAKING PASSAGES.

OUTWARD (NORTHWARD) ROUTES-FULL-POWERED STEAMERS.

General remarks.—Toward the center of the southern portion of the China Sea there is a considerable area of unsurveyed and dangerous ground, known to be encumbered with coral reefs and banks, which should be avoided. Vessels are recommended to follow the routes shown on the charts of the China Sea, as far as practicable.

Singapore to Hongkong—Both monsoons.—Mail and other full-powered steamers take the main route; that is, between Pulo Aor and the Anamba Islands, eastward of Pulo Sapatu, and thence between Macclesfield Bank and the Paracel Group to Hongkong.

An alternate route, taken by many of the mail steamers in the northeast monsoon, and recommended for vessels of somewhat smaller power, is, after passing westward of the Anamba Islands, to steer about 30 miles westward of the Prince of Wales Bank and North Danger Reef, thence about the same distance eastward of Macclesfield Bank; from abreast the latter the fore and aft sails will usually stand. The current is decidedly favorable in this track from about Lat. 10° N., except possibly when the monsoon is unusually strong.

Singapore to Gulf of Siam and to Saigon—Both monsoons.—Mail and similar full-powered steamers take the direct route.

Hongkong to northern Chinese ports.—Direct, but giving a wide berth to the coast of China.

Hongkong to Nagasaki and Yokohama.—Direct as possible, but, during the northeast monsoon, keep as close as prudent to the coast of China northward to about Tung yung Island. See Asiatic Pilot, Vol. III, for coast of China.

Hongkong to Manila.—Direct in both monsoons.

#### VESSELS WITH LOW POWER.

Singapore to Hongkong—Southwest monsoon.—Vessels with low power, in this the fair-wind monsoon, also take the main route, passing between Macclesfield Bank and the Paracel Group.

During the strength of the monsoon, the inner route along the coast of Cochin China may be adopted, with the advantage of obtaining smooth water. Proceeding by the inner or Cochin China route, steer from Pula Aor along the coast to the Redang Islands, thence across the Gulf of Siam, and along the coasts of Cambodia and Cochin China, keeping the latter aboard to Cape Tourane; thence steer for the southwestern part of Hainan, coasting along the east side of this island and passing between it and the Taya Islands; then steer to make the coast of China about Tienpak, or Huiling san Island. The islands thence to Hongkong may be coasted along at discretion, and shelter may be found amongst them on emergency.

Northeast monsoon—Palawan route.—See Asiatic Pilot, Vol. V. Singapore to Gulf of Siam and Saigon—Southwest monsoon.—Vessels with low power, if bound to the Gulf of Siam, having cleared Singapore Strait, should shape a course to make the Redang Islands, and then steer along the western shores of the Gulf.

If bound to Saigon, pass westward of Pulo Condore, and thence to Saigon.

Northeast monsoon.—Vessels with low power generally steer a direct course during this monsoon to the Gulf of Siam and to Saigon; but during the strength of the monsoon, in December and January, it

would seem advantageous to follow the route recommended for sailing vessels, viz, east of the Anamba Islands if bound to the Gulf of Siam, and east of the Natuna Islands if bound to Saigon.

Hongkong to northern Chinese ports, as for full-powered, during southwest monsoon; or as for sailing vessels, Vol. V, in the opposite season, if of very low power.

Hongkong to Yokohama and Nagasaki, as for full-powered vessels, unless of very low power, then the route for sailing vessels should be taken.

Hongkong to Manila.—Direct.

#### SAILING VESSELS.

Singapore to Hongkong—Southwest monsoon.—Sailing vessels proceeding from Singapore to China should, as June approaches, use the main route, eastward of Pulo Sapatu, and between the Macclesfield Bank and the Paracel Group, the winds being more steady in the open sea than near the coast. As early as April a westerly breeze will sometimes be found blowing out of the Gulf of Siam and continuing to the Macclesfield Bank, from whence easterly winds will be experienced to Hongkong.

This route becomes precarious if a sailing vessel has not arrived in the vicinity of Pulo Sapatu early in October; for near this island, about the middle of that month, strong southerly currents begin to prevail, with light northerly winds, variable airs, and calms, by which many vessels have been delayed for several days and have made no progress to the northward. Fresh winds from the southward have been met with, even so late as November 1, but these instances are rare.

Some vessels proceeding by the main route have carried strong southwest and southerly winds, when others taking the inner route have at the same time experienced northeast and westerly gales blowing out of Tonkin Gulf, with dark weather and rain, and have been in danger of being driven among the Paracel Reefs; the inner route ought, however, to be chosen in the strength of the southwest monsoon, for the sea will be smooth, and being near the land anchorage may be obtained if required. The gales out of the Gulf are not frequent, and the land may be kept in sight nearly all the time.

Proceeding by the inner route, follow the directions given for vessels with low power taking this route. If it be taken before the end of March, the passage may be tedious unless in a fast sailing vessel.

The Palawan Passage may be used late in the southwest monsoon, when vessels should steer north of Pengibu (Victory) Island, and between Great Natuna and Subi Islands; thence proceeding as directed for sailing vessels taking this route in the northeast monsoon.

Bound to Hongkong in the strength of the southwest monsoon, endeavor to make the Great Ladrone Island bearing about north;

then steer between it and Gap Rock of the Kaipong Islands; thence between Lingting and the Lema Islands, and through Lema Channel into West Lamma Channel. After the middle of August, when easterly winds are likely to prevail several days together, as they are more or less at all seasons, it will be necessary to make the northeast head of the Lema Islands, and proceed in by Lema Channel toward West Lamma Channel. East Lamma Channel is also safe in both monsoons; for, although the water is deep, if the wind fall light, anchorage can be obtained, and there is little or no tide.

Singapore to Hongkong—Northeast monsoon.—Sailing vessels leaving Singapore for China during the northeast monsoon may expect a tedious passage if the main route be adopted; the route recommended is to stand eastward to the Natunas, passing between Midai Island and Subi kechil, on which a light is now established, thence working up the China Sea along the western edge of the reefs, where the current is generally favorable. Having arrived in the open sea in the parallel of 12° N., northward of the central dangers, charted as "dangerous ground," it is advisable, instead of beating to windward, to make easting and work up the coast of Luzon as far as Cape Balinhasai, and thence direct to Hongkong.

Near the change of the monsoon, the inner route, along the coast of Cochin China, is generally the most expeditious, as the southwest monsoon sets in earlier there than in the open sea.

Palawan route.—The passage to China by the coasts of Palawan and Luzon is the recommended route during the strength of the northeast monsoon.

Eastern route.—An alternative route for sailing vessels, and which affords a leading or fair wind and tavorable currents nearly throughout, is via Karimata Strait, southward of Borneo and Celebes, through Salayar Strait, Pitt and Gillolo Passages; thence eastward and northward of the Philippine Islands. Charts, see Index chart.

Singapore to Gulf of Siam and Saigon—Southwest monsoon.—In this monsoon the winds prevail between southeast and west in Singapore Strait, and sailing vessels will have no difficulty in sailing through to the eastward.

If bound to the Gulf of Siam, having cleared Singapore Strait, shape a course to make the Redang Islands; and thence keep the western shore of the Gulf aboard, passing inside Pulo Lozin and Koh Krah.

If bound to Saigon, steer to pass to the westward of Pulo Condore, making allowance for a current setting out of the Gulf of Siam, while crossing the entrance of that gulf. Steer thence northward along the edge of the bank that fronts the mouths of the Mekong River, and extends to the entrance of Saigon River, keeping in a depth of 8 to 12 fathoms; if the water shoals under 7 or 8 fathoms

haul off to the eastward, and it will immediately deepen, the soundings being regular on the edge of the bank.

Directions for making the land near Cape St. James and for proceeding up the Don nai River to Saigon are given on page 203.

Northeast monsoon.—Sailing vessels bound from Singapore to the Gulf of Siam in the northeast monsoon generally pass between Great and South Natuna Islands. Fast sailing vessels proceed between the Anamba and Natuna Islands, and endeavor to make Pulo Obi; thence for Pulo Dama if bound to Kamput in the Gulf of Siam; or outside Pulo Panjang and Pulo Wai, direct for Cape Liant, if bound to Bangkok. In February and March vessels frequently fall in with an easterly wind off Pulo Aor, that takes them to Pulo Obi.

The directions given for proceeding from Singapore to Hongkong in the northeast monsoon apply also to vessels bound to the Gulf of Siam or to Saigon, until they have arrived to the eastward of Natuna Islands, either by passing between the Great and South Natuna, or by the Koti Passage.

If bound to the Gulf of Siam proceed in a northeastward direction to about Long. 111° or 112° E., which can easily be done, as the wind is invariably from north to north-northwestward as far as the meridian of Cape Sirik, when it generally veers to the northeastward; thence toward Pulo Obi. Little or no current will be experienced until Lat. 6° or 7° N. is gained; then it will be found setting strong to the southwestward, governed considerably by the prevailing winds.

In April and May the best passages to the Gulf of Siam are made by keeping the Malay coast aboard; but expect squalls, calms, and rain; a weak current begins to set northeastward about this period.

If bound to Saigon proceed northeastward to about Long. 112° E., thence to make Cape Tiwan. From Lat. 7° N. until about 70 miles eastward of the mouths of the Mekong or Cambodia River, a strong current will be found setting to the southwest governed considerably by the prevailing winds, for when strong gales blow in the early part of this monsoon, the southwesterly current is stronger, and often runs 3 knots an hour. The tidal streams are regular, and set strong near the Cochin China coast during both monsoons.

In the latter part of March and April an easterly wind is often found eastward of the Anamba Islands, that will take a vessel to Pulo Condore; thence work to Cape St. James westward of that island, keeping toward the Cambodia coast, which is very low, and can seldom be seen at night.

From abreast the mouths of the Mekong or Cambodia River, the ebb stream will be found setting to windward, greatly assisting vessels standing inshore; but they should not stand near these mouths during the flood stream, and on no account shoal the water to less than

12 fathoms in the night. The lead should never be neglected when standing toward this low land, which may be seen from a distance of about 10 miles in clear weather.

The northeast monsoon often blows very strong on the parallel of Pulo Sapatu, and between it and the Cochin China coast, in December, January, February, and sometimes March, continuing for two or three days with a heavy sea and strong current, the sky being generally thick and hazy throughout. A gradual rise in the barometer is a sure indication of an increase in the strength of the monsoon.

Should the monsoon prove too strong to contend against, vessels may bear up for Pulo Condore, and anchor in Pulo Condore Harbor, where good shelter will be found.

Hongkong to Northern Chinese ports.—Asiatic Pilot, Vol. III. Hongkong to Yokohama.—In the northeast monsoon, work along the coast of China as far as Breaker Point, and then stand across to the southern end of Taiwan, working up on the eastern side of that island. But toward the end of that monsoon stand at once across the China Sea, and on nearing Luzon, where the wind is more from the eastward and sometimes from southeast, tack and stand north-northeastward with a strong favorable current.

In the southwest monsoon, run up the coast of China as far as Tung yung Island, then shape a course for Akuisi sima, one of the Linchoten Group, and pass through any of the channels between the islands southward of Japan in preference to Van Diemen Strait, where dense fogs are prevalent, while farther seaward in the Kuroshiwo the weather is fine and bright.

Hongkong to Nagasaki.—In the northeast monsoon as to Yokohama. In the southwest monsoon, direct.

Low-powered vessels in the northeast monsoon steam along the coast of China to Tung yung, thence steer to pass between Me sima and Tori sima.

Hongkong to Manila.—In the northeast monsoon make for the coast of Luzon at about Piedra Point, Lat. 16° 18′ N. The current sets strongly to leeward, but decreases near Luzon. From the latitude of Piedra Point, steer southward for Manila Bay, giving the coast dangers a wide berth.

In the southwest monsoon, take every advantage of the wind shifting southeastward or eastward to make southing. From Macclesfield Bank a vessel is certain to make Manila; indeed, did not the wind back from southwest to south and south-southeast Manila might be made on one tack. If passing to windward of Scarborough Shoal caution is necessary on account of the current setting to leeward. With a southerly wind make Lubang Island and the land southward of Manila Bay.

HOMEWARD (SOUTHWARD) ROUTES.—FULL-POWERED STEAMERS.

Hongkong to Singapore — Southwest monsoon.—Full-powered vessels after leaving Hongkong, and passing about 30 miles west of Paracel Islands and Reefs, should, if the monsoon be strong, steer to pass within sight of the land in the vicinity of Kulao Rai, keeping about 10 miles offshore as far as Cape Padaran, when a course should be steered to pass about 3 miles east of Pulo Aor; thence to Singapore Strait. Or, from westward of the Paracels, course may be shaped direct for Cape Varela Light.

At night in tolerably clear weather a vessel may pass near to Pulo Cecir de Mer, westward of the Catwicks and Pulo Sapatu, thence to Pulo Aor. During thick weather it is advisable to pass eastward of Pulo Sapatu.

Or the main route may be taken as in the northeast monsoon.

Northeast monsoon.—Full-powered steamers (in this the fair wind monsoon) on leaving Hongkong, take the main route, between Macclesfield Bank and the Paracel Group, thence eastward of Pulo Sapatu and Pulo Aor to Singapore.

An alternative route is to pass about 30 miles westward of the Paracels, as in the southwest monsoon; thence to pass 15 to 20 miles east of Cape Varela, and east of Pulo Sapatu; thence to Pulo Aor, and Singapore Strait. This route is said to be generally adopted, a favorable current being found along the coast. Some vessels take this route in both monsoons.

#### LOW-POWERED STEAMERS.

Hongkong to Singapore — Southwest monsoon.—Low-powered steamers usually adopt the inner route by the Cochin China coast, as from Singapore to Hongkong.

The route by the Palawan Passage may also be taken in these months.

Northeast monsoon.—Low-powered steamers take the main route between Macclesfield Bank and the Paracel Group, allowing for the southwesterly set when leaving the China coast; thence eastward of Pulo Sapatu and Pulo Aor to Singapore.

Gulf of Siam and Saigon to Singapore—Southwest mon-soon.—Low-powered steamers, if proceeding from Bangkok to Singapore, keep along the western shore of the Gulf of Great Redang Island; thence inside Pulo Brala and close along shore to Singapore.

From Saigon, steer along the Cambodia coast as far as the Brothers or Pulo Obi, then across the Gulf of Siam to the Malay coast, and passing inside Tioman and Pulo Sibu, keep along the coast to Singapore Strait.

Northeast monsoon.—Low-powered steamers from Bangkok steer along the eastern side of the Gulf past Pulo Wai to Pulo Panjang; thence eastward of Pulo Brala to Singapore Strait.

PASSAGES. 67

If from Cape St. James, pass eastward of Pulo Condore and thence direct to Pulo Aor and Singapore Strait.

#### SAILING VESSELS.

Hongkong to Singapore—Southwest monsoon.—It is a common practice for sailing vessels to work down the China Sea at all periods of the southwest monsoon. After leaving Hongkong the usual course is to stand toward Hainan, which will be often made without tacking, as the wind frequently blows for days together from the southeast or eastward in that part of the China Sea; from thence across Tonkin Gulf to the Cochin China coast. Land and sea breezes. and smooth water generally prevail close to that coast, for which reason it is usual to work down as close to the shore as possible, taking advantage of every slant of wind, but being careful not to get too far off the land. It is sometimes possible to get as far to the southward as Cape Padaran in this way; but generally, after passing Cape Varela, the monsoon is found blowing very fresh, with frequent hard squalls out of the Gulf of Siam, rendering it impossible to work much to windward. From Cape Varela, or from Cape Padaran, if a vessel has been able to make it, stretch away to the southwardmaking a tack if necessary, to weather the West London or other shoals—till the coast of Borneo is reached, along which work, and pass out through any of the South Natura Channels. Stand across to Singapore, and to make sure of your land-fall, keep well to the southward before closing Bentan, so as to allow for the current which runs sometimes as much as 2 miles an hour to the northward.

If the wind should be to the southwestward on leaving Hongkong, a good passage may occasionally be made in the early part of the monsoon by standing to the southeastward as far as Lat. 15° N. and Long. 115° 30′ E. Thence southwestward of the Macclesfield Bank, to Pulo Sapatu or to Cape Padaran, and across the Gulf of Siam to Pulo Aor and Singapore.

Northeast monsoon.—Sailing vessels bound from Hongkong or Chinese ports to Singapore, or to Gaspar or Banka Straits, should in March and April adopt the main route between Macclesfield Bank and the Paracel Group, which is the most expeditious in these months, allowing for the southwesterly set when leaving the China coast. In passing Pulo Sapatu they should borrow to the eastward toward the Prince of Wales and other banks, where the winds are more favorable than farther to the westward.

Vessels may pass either to the eastward or westward of the Catwick Islands and Pulo Cecir de Mer. Thence passing westward of the Charlotte Bank and the Anamba Islands, they should steer to make Pulo Aor.

Should the weather be thick and a fresh breeze blowing, when near Pulo Aor, round to under its lee, and wait a convenient time to bear up for the strait. The current between this island and the eastern point of Bentan sets about south-southeast, by which it often happens that vessels leaving Pulo Aor steer too much to the southward, and are swept with the current and the ebb stream coming out of Singapore Strait so far to the leeward of Bentan that they have been obliged to proceed round it, and come up through Rhio Strait.

In March, during the latter part of this monsoon, the winds are steady from the eastward, the weather settled, and the current weak. In April the prevailing winds are also from the eastward, but are much lighter and accompanied with calms and squally weather; from the latter end of this month to about the middle of May the monsoon gradually breaks up.

Gulf of Siam and Saigon to Singapore—Southwest monsoon.—Sailing vessels from Bangkok to Singapore should keep the western shore of the Gulf of Siam aboard, passing inside the Redang Islands, Pulo Kapas, and Pulo Brala. Southward of Pulo Kapas, keep inshore to avoid the current, and take advantage of the land and sea breezes.

From Saigon many good passages have been made by keeping the Cambodia coast aboard as far as the Brothers or Pulo Obi, and then crossing the Gulf of Siam with a strong northwesterly wind until the Malay coast is reached. Afterwards, keeping close inshore, passing inside of the Tioman Group, Siribuat, and Pulo Sibu, and thence to Singapore Strait, taking advantage of the tidal streams, and the land and sea breezes which prevail during settled weather in this monsoon.

The inshore channel extending from Pulo Sibu to Siribuat, and formed by a chain of islands and rocks parallel to the mainland, is a good and safe one, having but few hidden dangers, and good anchorage all the way through.

The above route is generally adopted from Siam and sometimes from Saigon; but the passage eastward of the Great Natuna is considered the best, particularly for large vessels.

Vessels leaving Saigon, from off Cape St. James, should steer to the southwestward until the regular monsoon breaks them off to the southeast. This may be accomplished by taking every advantage of the north and northeast winds, which frequently blow at night, and in some parts of the day, within a short distance of the coast. These local winds often carry vessels 40 or 50 miles southwestward of Pulo Condore without any interruption.

While standing to the southeastward the full strength of the northeasterly current will be met with about the Charlotte Bank; it gradually decreases and becomes slightly favorable when northeastward of the Great Natuna. In this locality southeast and easterly winds will generally be met with, and fast sailing vessels frequently pass through the channel between Subi and Midai Island and into Singapore Strait. There is now a light on Subi kechil, southern side of the channel between Subi and Midai and Great Natuna, which channel, since the survey of it, is safe for all classes of vessels.

Strong westerly winds, with rain, frequently blow during the early part of the monsoon, and from this cause or from proceeding 2° or 3° eastward of the Great Natuna with scant southerly winds after leaving the Cambodia coast, slow sailing vessels have often made the northern part of Borneo about the meridian of Cape Sirik. When this is the case, make for Api Passage, keeping the northwestern coast of Borneo aboard from Tanjong Api southward until the Burong Islands are reached. This will be accomplished without difficulty, for strong land and sea breezes prevail, and the current is weaker near the coast. Many vessels, through leaving the coast of Borneo too soon, have made no higher than Pulo Aor or Pulo Tioman.

The current in the offing runs strongly to the northward and through Api Passage. Vessels coming through this passage should keep the northern side when possible toward Merundung Island, and not shoal at night to less than 13 fathoms water on the southern side between Tanjong Datu and Tanjong Api; the latter point has shoals steep-to at 1½ miles off, but beyond that distance there is not less than 5 fathoms between it and Tanjong Datu. Vessels should be ready to anchor in the passage or off any other part of the coast, as the tidal streams are greatly influenced by the current, which often changes without warning.

Leaving the Burong Islands, pass either northward or southward of the Tambelan Group. Should the wind be scant from the southwest after leaving these islands, endeavor to make Pulo Panjang, off the eastern side of Bentan Island.

Northeast monsoon.—From Bangkok, the passage down the gulf will frequently be shortened in the northeast monsoon, by sighting Kusrovie Rock, and passing between Koh Tang and Koh Tron. Thence keep well to the eastward of Pulo Panjang, and if bound to Singapore the passage will be made quicker by steering well out into the China Sea; thence to pass about 20 miles eastward of Pulo Brala, and eastward of Pulo Aor; from the latter steer for Barbukit Hill, so as to allow for the southerly current setting across the strait.

Approaching Pulo Tioman at night or in thick weather, a good lookout should be kept and allowance made for the current setting to the southwestward, as vessels have several times been found close to the north end of that island when the reckoning has placed them well to the eastward of it.

From Saigon, when off Cape St. James, shape a course to pass east-ward of Pulo Condore, and thence direct to make Pulo Aor. From Pulo Aor to Singapore proceed according to directions previously given for Hongkong.

Local passages, Bangkok and Saigon, see page 199.

79795—15——6



### CHAPTER II.

#### SOUTHERN PART OF THE CHINA SEA.

EAST COAST OF THE MALAY PENINSULA FROM TANJONG SITAJAM TO PULO BRALA (LAT.  $4^{\circ}$  50' N.), WITH THE ISLANDS AND DANGERS BORDERING THE MAIN ROUTE; ALSO THE ANAMBA ISLANDS.

Malay Peninsula—East coast—General remarks.—The eastern coast of the Malay Peninsula from Tanjong Sitajam (Lat. 1° 31′ N., Long. 104° 17′ E.) to abreast Pulo Varela, is mostly low and wooded, its general direction being north-northwest. Near the coast, especially off the points, there are rocks, both above and below water, but they appear to lie within the 3-fathom curve of soundings, with the exception of Gading rocks, near Blair Harbor; so that when northward of Rumenia Shoals, situated about 10 miles southeastward of Tanjong Sitajam, the coast in most parts can be safely approached by the lead. The space between Tanjong Sitajam and Sungi Sedili Kechil, was sounded over by H. M. S. Saracen; no danger was discovered, and the depths were found to decrease gradually toward the shore.

Sailing vessels from Siam, bound to the southward against the southwest monsoon, generally find it most convenient to keep as close as possible to the Malay coast, where regular tidal streams prevail while a constant northerly current is found a few miles from the coast. It must be borne in mind, however, that the coast has not been closely surveyed.

Offlying islands.—Pulo Eu, a round bluff rock, is the southeasternmost of a chain of islets and rocks which lie parallel to and about 12 miles from the eastern coast of the Malay Peninsula.

Islets.—Ambong Reef, the depth on which is not stated, lies 7 miles northwestward of Pulo Eu; and nearly in a line between them lie four islets, or rocks above water, named, respectively, Chupa, Chondong, Gantang, and Belelei; no soundings have been obtained near them.

Lima Island, lying about 1.2 miles northwestward of Ambong Reef, is nearly ½ mile in extent, having two rocks above water, named Raket, about ½ mile east-southeastward of it; another rock, above water, lies just to the northward of its western extremity, and a similar one named Sangul, nearly a mile west-northwestward from the island; they all appear to be on the same reef.

Channel.—There appears to be a safe channel, 2.5 miles wide, between the islands and reefs mentioned and the Sibou group, with depths of 9 to 14 fathoms.

Sibu Islands consist of one large and several small islands and rocks.

Sibu Island, the northernmost, situated about 5 miles from the coast, is a narrow island 3 miles in length, with a hill, 555 feet high, near its southern end, overlooking a small bay, from the western point of which a bank dry at low water extends about ½ mile.

Middle Sibu, and two islets or rocks named Sibu Kukus and South Sibu, together with other rocks, both above and below water, extend in a southeasterly direction from Sibu for a distance of 2 miles.

Reef.—A reef, with depths of a half to 3 fathoms, fronts the western and southwestern sides of the Sibu group to about 1½ miles in places, except at the northwestern end of Sibu Island, which is steep-to. Close to the northeastern point of Sibu is a rock upon the inner part of a narrow ledge, which projects in a northerly direction about 2 miles; over this bank are depths of 4 to 5 fathoms, with 7 to 8 fathoms on either side of it.

Sibu Channel, between the Sibu Islands and the mainland, is about 2.5 miles wide in the navigable part, with general depths of 6 to 8 fathoms. The depths decrease regularly towards the main, but shoal suddenly from 9 or 10 fathoms to 3 fathoms on Sibu Reef.

See Directions, page 73.

Pulo Tingi, 2,046 feet in height, situated 5 miles north-northeast-ward from Sibu Island, is about 3.5 miles in length and 2 miles in breadth; on its northern side is a small bay, on the shores of which there is a village.

Water is obtainable on the western side of Tingi; its wells are dry at times, about August.

Anchorage is chartered in Pinang bight, in about 7 fathoms, on the southeastern side of Tingi.

Islets and rocks.—A cluster of islets and rocks extend nearly 2 miles south and southeastward from Pulo Tingi, the two outermost of which are named the Sembang Islands; a sunken rock is chartered nearly \(\frac{1}{2}\) mile eastward of Lantin, the next island northward.

About ½ mile from the northeastern shore of Tingi lies Ibul Islet, with Peniambang Islet between it and the shore; sunken rocks extend a short distance east of Ibul.

About 1.7 miles off the northern part of Pulo Tingi lie Gebang rocks. In fine weather these rocks are visible at low water spring tides, and there are heavy breakers on them in the northeast monsoon. Southwestward of the Gebang rocks is Siam Knoll of 3 fathoms, lying about one mile off the northwestern part of Tingi.

Morau rocks, or Arethusa Reef, is chartered as a reef about mile in extent, with a small islet on its western side, about midway between Morau Point on the main and Tingi Island; it is apparently steep-to.

Pulo Babi, lying 9 miles northwestward from Pulo Tingi, is about 2.3 miles in length, and  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in breadth. Near its southern end are two peaks, the northern of which is 911 feet high; some rocks lie close to its southern shore.

Mid Babi, an island about ½ mile in extent, with high rocks close to, lies nearly 1.5 miles northwestward of Babi, and ¾ mile beyond, in the same direction, is North Babi.

Regular depths were found between Pulo Babi and the mainland, there being from 6 to 8 fathoms, mud, in mid-channel, decreasing gradually to 5 fathoms, sandy bottom, at 3.5 miles from the main; soundings are few here on the charts.

Water.—There are three springs of clear fresh water on Pulo Babi, the principal one being on the northwestern point of the island, southward of a small patch of mangrove jungle.

Tikus rock, above water, with detached rocks around it, lies about 3.3 miles eastward from the southern part of Babi.

Sakit Mata is a rock awash, lying 88°, distant nearly 2.5 miles from the northern point of Babi.

Rawa Island, about ½ mile in extent, lies about 2.2 miles northeastward from North Babi. From Rawa a chain of islets and rocks extends 3 miles northwestward, terminating in Gurong Islet; the islets between are Kalabang, Goal, and Mensirip.

Siribuat Islands, situated 7 miles north-northwestward from Gurong, consist of two islands, the eastern and larger being about 1.8 miles in extent.

The western island is 748 feet high, and less than half the extent of the eastern. These islands are connected by a reef, upon which are rocks above and below water. Off the northeastern part of the eastern island are the two Santu Islets.

The four Mirtang Islands, connected by a reef, lie nearly 2 miles southward of the western Siribuat Island.

Blair Harbor.—Kaban island, about 1.3 miles in length, and ½ mile in breadth, lies near the mainland, abreast the Siribuat Islands, and with a prominent point of the coast named Peniabong, about a mile distant, forms Blair Harbor, suitable for small craft.

Rocks.—About a mile southeastward of the southern entrance of the harbor, lies Gading rock above water with sunken rocks around; rocks also appear to extend from the points on both sides of the southern entrance, thus materially contracting the channel. Little Kavan lies about a mile northward of Peniabong Point on the edge of the shore reef; other islets and rocks lie within it. Northwestward of Kaban is a group of islets and rocks named Tonos, and in the same direction, distant 2 miles from Kaban, is Leiar Islet.

A rock which uncovers, with 4 to 5 fathoms around, lies about ½ mile south of Leiar Islet.

Water.—Plenty of fresh water may be procured on Kaban Island by digging wells about 30 yards from high-water mark.

Directions.—The harbor is safe for small craft, sheltered from the prevailing winds, with anchorage in 4 fathoms, stiff mud. From the northward, it is easy of access by passing between the northern point of Kaban and the Tonos rocks, where the depths are 6 and 7 fathoms, decreasing to 5 and 4 fathoms within. From the southward, give a berth to the sunken rock near the southwestern point of Kaban.

General directions.—The Sibu or inner channel, between the Malay coast and the offlying islands above described, can be used by keeping along the coast at 3 or 4 miles distance. The depths are 8 to 11 fathoms, usually soft ground in mid-channel, with a few casts of sand in some places about midway between Tingi and the mainland.

With a working wind a sailing vessel may borrow toward the mainland, generally to 7 fathoms, and in some places to 6 fathoms; and stand off to 11, 12, and 13 fathoms, except in Sibu Channel toward Sibu islands, where the depths decrease suddenly from 9 or 10 fathoms to 3 fathoms on Sibu Island reef; in this portion a vessel should tack, when the water has deepened to 8 fathoms, when standing offshore. The channel is safe for use during the day, but in the narrow parts, among the islands, it is prudent to anchor at night, because some of the rocks or islets are very little above water.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, about 20 miles south ward of the entrance to the inner channel, at 9h. 44m.; springs rise 7 feet. Near the Siribuat Islands it is high water at 8h. 50m. and springs rise 9 feet.

In fine and moderate weather, tidal streams will generally be found setting along the coast, but currents predominate when the wind blows strong, running to the southward in the northeast monsoon, and in the opposite direction during the southwest monsoon.

Pulo Aor, and the Tioman Islands northwestward of it, form the west side of the main fairway up the China Sea; between it and Pulo Domar, the westernmost of the Anamba Islands, the channel is 53 miles wide, with depths of 27 to 30 fathoms.

Pulo Aor is about 3 miles in length, northwest and southeast, by about 1½ miles in breadth, thickly wooded and apparently steep-to; it has two peaks, the southern and higher being 1,805 feet in height, and the northern 1,521 feet.

Pulo Aor is generally adopted as a point of departure by vessels bound to China, and steered for on the return passage. Being formed

of two hills, it has the appearance of two islands when viewed at a great distance on a northeast or southwest bearing, and resembles a saddle on a nearer approach. The southernmost peak is domeshaped, and in clear weather may be seen from a distance of 40 to 50 miles.

Pinang is an islet, covered with trees, lying close off the southeastern point of Pulo Aor, and Lang is an islet lying about ½ mile from the northwestern point.

Dyang Island is separated from the northern end of Aor by a narrow channel having a depth of about 18 fathoms.

Anchorage.—Toh kyah, the bay on the southwestern side of the island, affords shelter during the northeast monsoon, when the wind is between north and east-southeast.

A good position is with Lang Island in line with the northwest point, in 20 fathoms, sandy bottom, about  $\frac{1}{2}$  a mile offshore; the bank is steep within a depth of 20 fathoms, and therefore it would be imprudent to shoal under that depth in a large vessel.

Supplies.—Pula Aor is inhabited, and there are numerous huts around the bay; firewood and coconuts may be procured, but no other supplies, except water. Vessels procure water with their own boats from a small stream on the northern shore of the bay.

Tides.—There is a rise and fall of tide about 5 or 6 feet, although the current, due to the monsoon, is met with in the offing.

Pulo Pemangil lies 12 miles northwestward from Pulo Aor; like that island it has two peaks situated in a northwest and southeast direction from each other, the southern peak being 1,507 feet, and the northern 1,227 feet in height. The bay on its southwestern side is similar to that on the southwestern side of Aor, and affords anchorage in a depth of 18 to 19 fathoms, 1 mile offshore. No soundings are shown on the charts. There are no supplies.

Pulo Tioman—Aspect.—This island, situated about 24 miles northwestward from Pulo Aor, is 11 miles in length, north and south, and from 2 to 6 miles in breadth. This island is composed of lofty mountains, the highest of which attains an elevation of 3,444 feet, and may be discerned from 50 to 60 miles in clear weather.

Asses Ears.—On its southern end are two remarkable peaks named, from their aspect, Chula Naga, or Asses Ears, standing on one base and rising almost perpendicularly from the sea to heights of 2,525 and 2,294 feet.

Population—Trade.—Pulo Tioman forms part of the Federated State of Pahang, and the island is visited by the district magistrate from Pahang River about once a month. The population of the island is about 500, chiefly Malays. A trade in coconuts, copra, and sharks' fins is carried on with Singapore.

Joara Bay, about a mile wide and  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile deep, situated about the middle part of the eastern side of Pulo Tioman, forms a fairly well-sheltered anchorage during the southwest monsoon, with depths of 6 to 10 fathoms over an even sandy bottom; the most sheltered anchorage is in the southwest part of the bay. Some small islets, 5 to 15 feet in height, lie off the northeast point of the bay to the distance of 370 yards close round which the depth is 10 fathoms.

Landing—Supplies.—Many natives reside in huts along the beach, where there are numerous coconut trees; elsewhere it is dense, impenetrable jungle. The best landing place is at the mouth of the fresh-water stream in the southwestern corner of the bay, which can be ascended by a boat at high water for a distance of 400 or 600 yards. A small supply of coconuts, bananas, and fowls can be obtained. There is also good landing within the mouth of the northern stream (fresh water) in the southwest monsoon season.

Mokut and Nipah Bays.—There is a village on the southeast side of the island, in Mokut Bay, a small sandy bay, which affords anchorage in 20 to 22 fathoms, sand, and may be used during fine weather; but Nipah Bay on the southwestern side of the island, affords the best shelter in the northeast monsoon.

If intending to anchor in Nipah Bay, when coming from the northward, pass close round the northwestern end of Tioman, between it and the small islands, the passage being 2.5 miles wide, with depths of 20 to 24 fathoms. Keeping about 1.5 or 2 miles from the western shore of Tioman, the water will shoal gradually in the bay to 10 or 9 fathoms, sand and gravel; the best berth is in a depth of 15 or 16 fathoms, with the extremities of the bay bearing 113° and 339° and the middle of the sandy bay 29°.

Tingah Bay, on the northwestern side of Pulo Tioman, is reported by the natives to be clear of danger.

Water.—There are two streams of fresh water in Nipah Bay where boats can fill their water casks, but a bar at the entrance of the southern one prevents their going in and out at low water. Firewood may be procured in abundance near the shore. Other supplies are not to be obtained here, the bay seldom being inhabited, although several parts of the island are cultivated.

There is also a stream of fresh water at the south end of Pulo Tioman at the foot of the Asses Ears, and three streams in Joara Bay, above-mentioned.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Tioman, at 6h.; springs rise 7 or 8 feet; along the western side of the island the flood stream sets to the northward, and the ebb to the southward, from 1 to 1.5 miles per hour at times.

Islets and rocks near Tioman—Giit Islet.—At 3 miles south of the Asses Ears is Giit Islet, having a high rock close southward of it. Bara and Burong are two rocks, or small islets, lying in the fairway of the channel between Tioman and Siribuat Islands. Bara lies 6 miles westward of Giit, and has sunken rocks extending nearly mile northward of it.

Burong is distant 10 miles northwestward from Bara, and the same distance westward of Tioman; close to the eastward of Burong are some rocks above water.

Tolie is the largest of the islands off the northwestern point of Tioman, from which it is distant nearly 3 miles. This island is about a mile in extent, having rocks above and below water extending about a mile southward of it.

On the western side of Tolie there is a small bay where anchorage may be had in a depth of 10 fathoms, coral and sand; a reef appears to project about 400 yards from the southern point of the bay.

Chibeh.—A little more than a mile to the northward of Tolie is Chibeh Islet; and from 2 to 3 miles westward of Tolie are Sepoi and Labas Islets, with rocks extending a short distance to the eastward of the latter.

The coast from abreast Blair Harbor trends westward for 7 miles to Sungi Endau, and thence about northwestward to the entrance of Sungi Pontean 9 miles beyond; here it gradually assumes a more northerly direction as far as the entrance of the Pahang River, 47 miles northward of the Pontean.

The coast as far westward as Sungi Pontean is fronted by a shallow bank to the distance of 2 to 3 miles, with Boyah rock, awash, at the latter distance.

Sungi Endau is fronted by a bar, with a low water depth of about 6 feet, extending apparently 1.5 miles seaward of its entrance points, and by a bank with less than 3 fathoms to about 2.5 miles offshore. No late information is at hand regarding it.

The average depths for a distance of 34 miles up the river are 5 to 6 fathoms. Both banks of the Endau are thickly wooded, and during the rainy season the right bank is generally submerged.

Boyah Rock.—Two small islets, named Duchong, lie on the shore bank nearly a mile off the coast and 3 miles southward of Sungi Pontean. About 3 miles eastward of them is Boyah Rock, awash, with 4 to 5 fathoms water around, with the entrance of Sungi Pontean bearing 274°, distant 5.5 miles.

Rumpin River enters the sea about 13 miles northwestward of Sungi Endau. Its entrance is obstructed by a sandbank, with shallow water extending 1 mile seaward of it.

The channel on the southern side of the entrance has low water depths of 7 to 10 feet; springs rise about 8 feet. These depths are not to be relied on, and the bar is not usually passable during the northeast monsoon period. Within the river the water is deeper,

and a steam launch could ascend to the distance of about 140 miles from its mouth.

A police station is situated within the entrance, on the right bank. Margaret shoal.—"The brig Margaret, in working to the northward along the coast in January, 1827, shoaled suddenly from 6 to 4 fathoms and then to 3 fathoms, at about 3 miles offshore, and 9 miles northward of the entrance of Rumpin River. There was a heavy swell on, and the water was breaking at 100 yards inshore of this position. From the depth of 3 fathoms the two conspicuous little hills on the lowland, of regular form, bore west by south, and southwest by west (mag.), the trees close to the beach being then visible from the deck. Between the shoal and the shore there appeared to be deeper water."

Pulo Varela, or Berhala, 92 feet in height, lying 15 or 16 miles from the mainland, is an islet about 300 yards in circumference, with steep sides and covered with trees, and in clear weather may be discerned from a distance of about 15 miles. There is a ledge of rocks about 3 feet high, over which the sea breaks in bad weather, 700 yards 13° from Pulo Varela.

Banks.—At about 4 miles northward of the island is the western end of a rocky bank with overfalls, which extends thence some 6 miles in an easterly direction, with a breadth of about 1 mile; the depth upon it appears to be about 5 fathoms throughout; it is steep-to.

A bank with a least-known depth of 6 fathoms, and steep-to, lies with Pulo Varela bearing 265°, distant about 9 miles. There are depths of 13 to 14 fathoms, sand and mud, between it and the islet.

The channel between Varela and the mainland is considered safe; for although the bottom is hard sand in some places, the depths are generally regular, about 11 or 12 fathoms near the island, shoaling gradually toward the main. Depths of 6 fathoms, and of 5 fathoms, are charted as existing, respectively, 270° about 7.7 miles, and 289° 10 miles from Pulo Varela.

Pahang River, the entrance to which is about 20 miles northwest-ward of Pulo Varela, was formerly a place of considerable trade.

The river is about ½ mile wide between its entrance points. Just within is Pulo Tejah, which divides the river into two channels.

Above, the river is shallow, and boats drawing 3 feet (except at high water) have difficulty in getting to Pekan, a town of 1,000 inhabitants, about 6 miles from its mouth.

The Sultan resides at Pekan, which is the administrative center of a large district.

The bar is not now (1911) passable during either monsoon.

Bar.—A shallow flat fronts the river mouth to the distance of  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile, over which there is a depth of about 2 feet at low water. This depth is liable to change, and therefore the chart is not to be relied on. Spring tides rise about 8 feet.



Light.—A fixed white light is exhibited on the northern bank of the river, from a wooden tower 33 feet high, at an elevation of 37 feet above high water, visible 6 miles.

The lighthouse, backed by trees, is difficult to make out by small craft approaching in the afternoon, with the sun shining ahead.

Flagstaff.—On the northern side of the entrance is a flagstaff, quarters for travelers, and a small village.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage outside the bar in a depth of about 6 or 7 fathoms, with the lighthouse bearing 246°, distant about 1.3 miles, usually indicated by a buoy.

Communication.—Small steamers run regularly from Singapore to Pahang anchorage, where they load or discharge cargo into surf boats.

Supplies.—Poultry and fruit are obtainable.

The coast between Pahang River and the Kuantan River, about 18 miles to the northward, forms a bay, which has not been sounded, but the chart shows depths of 8 to 9 fathoms on the line joining the entrances of the rivers. Bukit Galing lies about 4 miles within Tanjong Temiling, the northern point of approach to the Kuantan. From this river the coast, off which no soundings are shown, trends northeastward about 11 miles to Tanjong Gelang, a high and salient point, within which is Bukit and Kampong, Gebing. Telok Berserah affords anchorage in the southwest monsoon period; Berserah, or Beserah, is a large fishing village.

This coast is in general considered safe to approach to depths of 8 or 10 fathoms; but there are frequently overfalls on ridges of uneven bottom lying parallel to the coast; and there are some spots of 6 to 7 fathoms, sand and coral, about 22 miles offshore, with 10 fathoms nearer the coast, as charted; less water may exist.

Kuantan River lies about 1.8 miles within the high point of Tanjong Temiling (Tembiling). Between the river and the point a bank with less than 6 feet water stretches 1.7 miles to the southward, the outer part of which is marked by a group of stakes 800 yards within its extremity, and a buoy, about ½ mile southeast of it in about 3 fathoms, not to be depended on.

Southward of the stakes lies the bar, upon which there is a depth of about 6 feet at low water, with a spring rise of about 8 feet. These depths are subject to change, as the bar is of a shifting nature. See night signal below.

Steamers of 7 feet draft navigate to Datu Sawa some 15 miles up, a station of the Pahang Corporation. It is the outlet of a considerable tin-mining industry.

There are a few huts on the south point of entrance to the river, and the town of Kuantan is situated on the northern bank about a

mile within it. The town is the administrative center of a large district. Vessels can obtain water at the wharf from the town pipes.

Communication.—Small steamers run regularly from Singapore to the Kuantan River, calling at Pahang anchorage.

Lights—Beacons.—Two pairs of white beacons mark the entrance channel to Kuantan River, the front beacon in each case being square, and the rear (at a greater elevation) rectangular in shape. The outer marks, about 120 yards apart, 17 and 34 feet in height, are situated (front mark) 1,440 yards 207° from the observation spot at the river entrance, and were in line (December, 1911) when bearing 324°, leading in the fairway south of the red light on the dolphin marking the spit. The inner marks (21 and 37 feet above high water), situated within the river at 540 yards 317° from the observation spot, when in line bearing 347°, lead up the channel within the bar between the banks.

At night a fixed white light is exhibited on each of these marks, said to be visible about 9 miles. The lights are exhibited all the year round, and the beacons are moved as the channel changes.

A dolphin marks the southern extremity of the spit forming the eastern side of the channel, at the distance of 1.7 miles, 165°, from the observation spot. A red Wigham light is shown from it, visible 2 miles.

Bar depth signals.—By day, the depth on the bar is shown by balls hoisted on a staff near the lights in the river entrance.

A white ball indicates 8 feet of water or under.

A black ball with a white bank, 8½ feet.

A red ball indicates 10 feet.

A white ball, 11 feet and over.

At night, a white light indicates a depth of 8 feet or less; green, 8 to 9 feet; red, 9 to 10 feet; white, 10 to 11 feet.

Caution.—It will be observed that the day and night signals for a depth of 8 feet or less are the same as for 10 to 11 feet. No one should enter the river without local knowledge.

Coast.—From Tanjong Gelang the coast trends northward for 23 miles to Tanjong Panunyut or Penimjoh. Southward of Tanjong Gliga besar, which lies about midway between, no soundings have been taken.

Bukit Tenga lies 3 miles southward of Gliga besar.

Sungi Kumama, about 3 miles northward of Tanjong Gliga besar, has some trade; vessels drawing 8 feet of water enter the river.

Tanjong Panunyut, formerly known as Cape South, is situated 9 miles northward of Sungi Kumama, with several coves between, off which there are depths apparently of 5 to 6 fathoms at a short distance. A rocky islet lies close to the point, and Kecha village is situated within and northwestward of the point.

Howard shoal, reported by the ship Janet Hutton, in 1823, with a depth of 2½ fathoms, rocky bottom, lies about 6.5 miles 146° from Tanjong Panunyut; less water may exist, as the Malay fishermen stated there was only 1 fathom on its center. Its position, as charted, is doubtful; there are no soundings shown around it.

Tanjong Dungun—The coast from Tanjong Panunyut trends northward for about 27 miles to a rocky point known as Tanjong Dungun, forming three bays, separated by Tanjong Laboha and Tanjong Pelor or Packa, the hills within which are 1,176 and 1,700 feet in height, respectively; a stream discharges close southward of Laboha, and another, the Sungi Packa, in the bay within and southward of Tanjong Packa.

The Sungi Dungun lies close southward of Tanjong Dungun. The points of these bays are rocky, but there are depths of 8 to 10 fathoms at from 2 to 3 miles offshore.

There are several villages in the southern bay, that of Karte being at the northern end. Packa village lies within Tanjong Pelor or Packa.

Shoal.—A shoal, having over it a depth of 3 fathoms, was reported in 1907 by native fishermen to be situated about 3 miles northeastward of Tanjong Dungun. This shoal is charted as P. D.

Sungi Dungun.—The entrance to this river is obstructed by a sandbank, drying at low water, which extends from a position mile outside the southern entrance point in a north-northeast direction to within 400 yards of the northern bank.

The channel runs close to the northern bank until a small sandy cove is reached, when the depth increases to 3 fathoms.

Village.—The village of Dungun is situated on the left bank of the river, at about ½ mile within the entrance.

Supplies.—Goats, fowls, fruit, rice, and fish can be obtained, and there is a good supply of fresh water.

A small trade is carried on in dried fish and copra; tin is exported to Singapore in small quantities.

Pulo Brala, distant about 15 miles eastward of Tanjong Dungun, is about 1.5 miles in length, and 930 feet in height, and may be seen about 30 miles off in clear weather; when it bears about 180° its summit appears flat, but in hummocks when bearing to the southwest and westward. A black rock or islet lies one mile southward from its southern extremity. Also an islet about 600 yards in length lies about 2 miles 339° of the island, with three islets or rocks about a mile beyond; they are all apparently steep-to.

Between this island and the mainland the depths are irregular in some places, and the bottom rocky, or sandy; but in other places regular depths of 15 to 19 fathoms are found over a bottom of mud.

The coast northward of Pulo Brala is continued on page 128, with the Gulf of Siam.

#### ANAMBA ISLANDS.

General remarks.—The Anamba Islands lie on the eastern side of the main route up the China Sea, Pulo Aor and the Tioman Islands forming the western side. The light on Pulo Manki, at the northwestern extremity of the Anambas, is now a valuable aid to night navigation.

The Natunas, northeastward of the Anambas, lie somewhat out of the track up the China Sea; North Natuna lies nearest to the main track.

These islands, the higher peaks of which are from 1,200 to 1,800 feet in height, and thickly covered with dense forest to the very summits, consist of two large groups and several smaller ones, with numerous detached islets. Many of the islands are inhabited, and the great number of coconut plantations is a very noticeable feature all over the group.

The export of coconuts in the form of copra forms the staple trade of the islands, which is carried on by means of small sailing schooners plying to Singapore and to Linga. Sago also is exported.

The natives everywhere appear to be perfectly harmless and peaceable, and well disposed toward strangers.

Protectorate.—The islands form part of the seven groups known to the natives as the Tuju Islands, and lying between the parallels of 0° and 5° N., and the meridians of 105° 20′ and 109° 20′ E., which includes the Anambas. The whole belong to the Sultan of Linga, are under the protection of the Dutch, and form part of the Rajahship of Rhio-Linga.

The principal village is Terempah on the northern coast of Siantan Island. The Dutch Government official resides here, and is in charge of the northeastern group. The population of this section is estimated at 4,500 Malays and 500 Chinamen. The southwestern groups and offlying islands are more thinly populated, estimated at about 2,000 persons.

The principal village of the western group is Kampong Kwala, situated at the head of Telok Kwala, on the eastern coast of Jimaya Island.

Supplies.—Bananas, pineapples, mangoes, betel nuts, etc., are cultivated in the various islands, but not to any great extent. Goats, fowls, and water can be obtained at the larger villages. A large quantity of fish is caught by the Malays, both by traps and lines.

Caution—Channels.—Although the survey failed to discover any dangers in many of the passages between the islands of a group, yet it was not of a sufficiently exhaustive character to justify vessels in attempting any such passages, and as a rule it is only the channels between the groups that should be made use of.

Floating islands, composed of grass, small trees, and other débris from the rivers are sometimes met with in the neighborhood of the Anambas. One was met with in 1911, reported to be about 50 feet long and from 10 to 20 feet high.

They are probably seen off the coast of Borneo at times.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Selat Pananting (north-eastern group) at 10h. 0m.; springs rise 7.5 feet, neaps rise 4 feet. In Impul Passage (Western Group) it is high water, full and change, at 9h. 0m.; springs rise 6 feet, neaps rise 3.5 feet. The remarks here apply particularly to the months of from June to October, inclusive, the time occupied in the survey.

The moon's declination has a great effect on the tides.

With a high declination north or south there is but one high water in 24 hours and one low water; with a low declination there are the ordinary two tides for a few days only. The times of high water of the single tides appear to follow the lower transit of the moon when in north declination, and to follow the upper transit when in southern declination.

The single tides always appear to rise higher than the ordinary double tides, whether they occur at neaps or at springs. The phenomenon of two tides in the 24 hours will be most apparent when the time of full and change coincides approximately with the time of the moon having a low declination, and they may then occur for 5 or 6 days; under other circumstances they will occur for 2 or 3 days only.

Tidal streams.—During the stay of the Egeria, in the months of June, July, and part of October, the direction of the tidal stream was as follows:

The southerly stream began to run from 3 to 4 hours before high water, and the northerly (or ebb) stream commenced at from 3 to 4 hours after high water, but this was subject to an uncertainty of as much as 2 or 3 hours either way. The southerly stream usually ran for 13 or 14 hours, and the northerly stream for 10 or 11 hours.

At springs the tidal streams ran from 1 to 2 knots per hour.

At neaps they were weak and irregular.

Winds and weather.—During the month of June, southerly and southwesterly winds predominate, although occasionally northerly and northeasterly winds are experienced. Rains occur occasionally, but are neither heavy nor continuous.

In July considerably more rain falls and for longer periods. The winds are almost entirely confined to southerly and southwesterly directions.

In August the rainfall begins to diminish; the winds still remain southerly and southwesterly. Sharp and sudden squalls from the westward are occasionally experienced at night during this month, accompanied by rain.

In September very little rain falls, and it is altogether the finest month experienced in the Anambas. The southerly and southwesterly winds are more persistent and constant in direction than ever, occasionally blowing fresh from the southward.

In October the rainfall begins to increase again, and the prevailing south and southwesterly winds are occasionally interrupted by easterly and northwesterly winds.

During the whole of the stay of the Egeria in the Anamba Islands from June to October, the amount of cloudy weather and almost entire absence of sunshine for days together was a marked feature.

The strength of the wind never exceeded a fresh breeze (force 5), and attained that not frequently.

The Western Group is comprised between White Rock, the most southern islet of the group, and the parallel of about 3° 20′ N.; and between Pulo Riabu, Pulo Buan, and Pulo Durai on the east and northeast and Pulo Domar on the west.

Outlying Island.—Pulo Domar lies about 21.5 miles westward of the southern extremity of Jimaya, the largest island of the western group. It is a barren rock, with its summit 270 feet above high water, and with depths of from 30 to 32 fathoms close around. There is a small indentation both on its northeastern and southwestern sides, where landing can be effected in fine weather. There is a little scanty vegetation near the top of the islet.

The bold cliffs show white from the guano deposited on them.

Jimaya (Jimaja) Group.—Jimaya is the principal and by far the largest island of the western group. It is 15 miles in length, 8 miles in extreme breadth, but of irregular shape, and in two places is little more than 1 mile across. It is densely wooded and mountainous, attaining a height of 1,530 feet at its northeastern end; the peaks on the northern part of the island are for the most part easily distinguishable, but toward the southern end they become more uniform in outline.

The northern point has a reef extending 800 yards off, on which are several rocks above water.

Villages.—There are several large villages on the coast, principally on the northern part of the island.

West coast—Tanjong Julan.—Pulo Ipann, an islet 80 feet in height, cultivated with coconut trees, lies one-fourth mile westward from Tanjong Julan, on the northwestern coast of Jimaya, and is steep-to. The coast northward is fringed with reef, but has no offlying dangers.

Courier patch, with a depth of 6 fathoms, lies southwest, distant 1.3 miles from Tanjong Julan, with depths of 16 to 20 fathoms around.

It is stated that in 1839 the Courier struck on a rock about 3 miles 221° from Tanjong Julan. The ground in this vicinity was carefully searched by the boats of H. M. S. Egeria during three days, but with

the exception of the 6-fathom patch above mentioned no other shoal could be detected, and nothing less than that depth was obtained.

Pulo Sibrong is a wooded island 1.5 miles in length, with two prominent peaks, the southern one being 580 feet in height. The bay within is too much encumbered with reef for a vessel to enter. There is a village at the head of this bay.

Pulo Tulai, 365 feet high, lies between Julan Point and Pulo Sibrong, but a reef extends 400 yards from its southern half.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage in a depth of 8 fathoms, sand, at 1 mile northeastward of Pulo Tulai, but it is not advisable to go farther into the bay.

Gunong Datu and Gunong Adong, 1,480 feet and 1,420 feet high, respectively, are two prominent peaks on the northern part of Jimaya. The former shows as a remarkably sharp peak from nearly all views; the latter shows as a rounded hill from the eastward or westward, but is sharp from the northward.

Pulo Daru, a wooded island 635 feet high, lies close to Jimaya. A small islet, Pulo Katukan, lies 1 mile to the westward of it, with a narrow boat channel between.

Margesson Shoal, of sand and coral, is about 1.5 miles in length, and consists of two portions; the northern one has a least depth of 7 fathoms and the southern a depth of 5 fathoms. From the latter, Tanjong Jibang bears 110°, distant 7.8 miles. This shoal has depths of 22 to 28 fathoms around, and is usually marked by tide-rips.

Tanjong Jibang is the southern extremity of Jimaya; the hills slope gradually down to the point; a flat rock, 20 feet high, lies about 600 yards southeastward of it.

East coast.—Telok Neratu is a bay the entrance of which is 3.8 miles across between Pulo Dayong and Tanjong Linang. The southern portion of this bay is an inlet about 3 miles in length, but is so encumbered with reefs that a vessel can not make use of it. In the northern portion of the bay is Pulo Ponissan (Punisan), 400 feet high; the space within it is blocked with reefs. A detached reef lies nearly  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile southward of Pulo Ponissan, and within this also reefs encumber the bay.

A patch of 2 fathoms lies  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile north of Pulo Dayong, and this marks the western limit to which a vessel may safely enter the southern portion of Telok Neratu.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage in a depth of 14 fathoms, mud, midway between Pulo Ponissan and Pulo Dayong, with the northern end of the latter bearing 216°, distant 1 mile.

Telok Kwala, situated close northward of Tanjong Linang, is a narrow inlet 2 miles in length. A rocky bar, with a depth of 3 fathoms, stretches right across, \(\frac{2}{4}\) mile within the entrance. Within this bar there are depths of 6 fathoms, gradually shoaling toward the

head of the inlet, with two detached coral patches obstructing it. The large village Kampong Kwala lies near the head of the inlet on the northern shore; it is the principal village of the island, and much frequented by the sailing schooners collecting produce.

Anchorages.—There is anchorage off the entrance, northward of Tanjong Linang, in a depth of 12 to 14 fathoms, sand.

In the bay northward of Telok Kwala there is anchorage anywhere near the center in 9 to 10 fathoms, sand, about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile from the shore, which is fringed with reef extending from 200 yards to  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in places.

Gunong Tujoh, densely wooded, double peaked, and 1,530 feet in height, is the highest and most prominent mountain in the island, and is conspicuous from every direction.

Tanjong Penanang (Pinanang), the northeastern extremity of Jimaya, is low, and lies 2 miles northward of the northern point of the bay before mentioned. Off the coast between there is an islet cultivated with coconut trees, close to the southward, of which there is a detached reef, which projects beyond the line of the points.

Pulo Penanang (Pinanang), situated 1.5 miles northwestward from the point of the same name, is 270 feet high, and planted with coconut trees.

Pulo Ayam, with two peaks each 500 feet in height, lies 2.3 miles westward of Tanjong Penanang, close to the coast of Jimaya, and is connected with it by a reef.

Telok Mampoh (Mampo) is a large bay on the northern coast of Jimaya. It is 4.5 miles wide between Pulo Ayam and Tanjong Mingar, and 3.5 miles deep to its head, where there is a long stretch of sandy beach and several villages. The general depths in this bay are 13 to 15 fathoms over a sand and gravel bottom in the outer part, gradually shoaling to 7 and 8 fathoms at 1 mile from the sandy beach at the head. There is a conspicuous hill, Gunong Silvassi, 840 feet high, close to the coast, at the eastern end of the sandy beach, and another conspicuous hill, Gunong Puding, 700 feet high, at the head of the bay near the western end of the beach.

Reefs—Anchorage.—The western shore of Telok Mampoh is foul within a mile of the coast, and there is a coral patch of 3 fathoms, with Gunong Silvassi bearing 145°, distant a little over 1 mile. At the head of the bay also there are detached patches of reef within ½ mile of the beach; with these exceptions the bay appears to be clear of dangers, and suitable for anchorage in any part at a convenient distance from the shore.

Pulo Gumbong and Pulo Udan are two islets on the same reef in the northwestern part of Telok Mampoh, lying close together, of which the eastern one, Pulo Gumbong, 320 feet in height, is the higher.

79795—15——7

Tanjong Mingar.—The northern point of Telok Mampoh is a promontory 350 feet high, and appears from a distance as an island, being joined to the mainland by a low sandy neck.

Anchorage.—Westward of Tanjong Mingar the coast forms a bay 1.5 miles deep and \(\frac{2}{4}\) mile wide, affording convenient anchorage in a depths of 16 fathoms, sand, with Tanjong Mingar bearing 92°, distant 1 mile, out of the influence of the tidal streams which set somewhat strongly through Impul Passage. There is a patch of 4 fathoms \(\frac{1}{2}\) mile westward from Tanjong Mingar.

The head of the bay is foul, and also the western side, where there are some detached coral patches extending a ‡ mile from the shore. The edge of the reef on the eastern side is, however, steep, and by keeping over on that side, the bay may be entered to within a mile of its head, where there is from 12 to 13 fathoms water.

Pulo Impul is the highest and easternmost of a group of islands extending 9 miles in an east and west direction, at 1 mile northward of Jimaya. It is 2.5 miles in length, with an extreme breadth of 1.5 miles. The sharp and conspicuous wooded summit lies near its center, and is 1,180 feet in height. In the bight on the southeastern side of the island, is an islet 130 feet high, surrounded by reef, and about 400 yards southward of the islet there is a reef of rocks just awash at high water.

Pulo Ania (Aniak), 640 feet high, northwestward of Pulo Impul, is separated from it by a channel 400 yards broad, with depths of 7 fathoms. Two islets, 180 feet and 205 feet high, lie, respectively, ½ mile northwest and northward from Pulo Ania; the western is fringed by reef.

Pulo Moburi (Mubur) is separated from Pulu Ania by a channel ½ mile wide. The island is 2.5 miles in length, and joined by a mangrove swamp (through which there is a canoe passage) to Pulo Kramat on its southwestern side. A ridge of rounded hills lies on the northern side of Pulo Moburi, the highest of which is 810 feet in height. The bay on the southern coast of Pulo Moburi is encumbered with foul ground, and does not afford convenient anchorage.

Pulo Datu is 350 feet high, and lies close to the southeastern extrem ty of Pulo Moburi.

Pulo Manki (Mangkai), the westernmost island of the group, lies 2 miles from Pulo Kramat, with a deep and clear passage between. It is 1.5 miles in length by ½ mile in breath, 575 feet high, and wooded, and almost of a uniform height throughout.

Manki kechil, 200 feet in height, lies close southward of the east point of Pulo Manki. The coasts of Pulo Manki and Manki kechil are fairly steep-to.

Light.—Near the center of Pulo Manki, from an iron tower, 82 feet in height, is exhibited at an elevation of 636 feet above high

water, a flashing white light every five seconds, visible 33 miles in clear weather. It is obscured eastward by the higher isands, but is visible in Impul Passage.

Impul Passage, between Pulo Impul and Jimaya, is 1 mile wide in its narrowest part, and clear of dangers; the shores on either side are steep. There is a patch of 9 fathoms in the fairway, and the shoals below mentioned.

The flood stream sets to the westward, and the ebb to the eastward at about 1.5 knots at springs.

Bunker patch is a coral head of 5 fathoms, on a 10-fathoms bank, situated on the northern side of the eastern entrance to Imul Passage, at 1.3 miles 16° from Tanjong Mingar. The whole of Pulo Manki kept open southward of Pulo Impul, leads southward of Bunker patch.

McCaulay patch is a small coral patch of 5 fathoms, and possibly less, water, with 20 to 27 fathoms around, in the western approach to Impul Passage. It lies 1.5 miles 280° from the end of the low black rocks off the northern point of Jimaya.

Clearing marks.—Telega summit in line with the southern extremity of Pulo Impul, bearing 92°, leads 500 yards northward of McCaulay patch. The southeastern extremity of Pulo Impul in line with the end of the black rocks off Jimaya, 69°, leads 1,400 yards southward of McCaulay patch, and Pulo Katukan, open eastward of Pulo Ipann, 180° leads eastward of the patch.

White rock (Tokong Malangbaru), the southwesternmost of the group, lies about 32 miles southward of Jimaya. It is a white, flattopped barren rock, 110 feet high and 150 yards in length, with steep cliffs at its eastern end. The rock is steep-to all round, except close to the western extremity, where the shallow water extends off for a short distance.

Pulo Repon, situated 17 miles 77° of White rock, is 685 feet high, wooded, and about ½ mile in extent. It has two peaks joined by a high saddle, the eastern summit being the higher, and is surrounded by a narrow fringe of reef, the edge of which is steep.

Pulo Baua is a small cluster of uninhabited islets and rocks extending 1.8 miles in a north and south direction, the whole being surrounded by a reef and lying 13 miles northeastward of Pulo Repon. The largest and northern islet has a wooded summit 440 feet in height, and close to the northward of it there is a pyramidal-shaped rock, 220 feet in height.

The southern islet is 410 feet in height. The edge of its reef extends southeastward to a distance of 600 yards. Between the two principal islets there are a few low bushy islets and rocks standing on the edge of the reef connecting them; the group rises from depths of 35 to 45 fathoms.

Pulo Rittan is another small uninhabited group of three islands, extending 2.5 miles in a northeast and southwest direction, situated 14.5 miles east-northeastward from Pulo Baua.

The southern island is 1 mile in length, 450 feet in height, near the southern end, and thickly wooded, with an islet close eastward of its northern extremity. Both stand on the same fringing reef which projects on the eastern and southern sides to a distance of 400 yards.

Separated from these islands by a channel 1 mile wide is the northeastern islet of the group, 200 feet in height, situated on a reef that extends to the northeastward and westward for 800 yards; a flat rock, about 30 feet high, marks the western extremity of the reef.

The channel between the islets appeared to be clear, but it was not examined in any detail.

Tide rips.—Southward of Pulo Rittan tide rips and overfalls were observed with all the appearance of shoal water, but examination merely showed a slightly uneven bottom, and nothing suspicious could be detected by the lead.

Brownrigg rock, with a depth of 2 fathoms, is a coral patch lying 80° nearly 1 mile from the northeastern islet of the Pulo Rittan Group. There are generally tide rips over the patch.

Pulo Riabu (Ayer Abu).—The Riabu Group lies between 5 and 12 miles north-northwestward from the Rittan Group. The principal island, Pulo Riabu, is 6 miles in length, with an average breadth of 1.5 miles.

A high wooded ridge, with several prominent peaks on it, traverses the island. The highest peak, near the northwestern end, is 1,595 feet in height, showing sharp from all directions.

The other prominent peak, 1,580 feet high, is near the center of the island and is flat-topped.

The eastern coast has several small deep-water bays; on the west coast there is a bay over 1 mile in extent, in the center of which there is anchorage in a depth of 12 to 15 fathoms, mud; the head of the bay is foul.

A reef extends  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in a northwesterly direction from the southern point of this bay, and has an islet on it.

Southeastward of Pulo Riabu, and separated from it by a boat channel, is an island having a sharp wooded summit, 610 feet high. The only natives that were seen in the Riabu Group inhabit a village on the northern coast of this island.

Extending 1.3 miles eastward and northeastward of the above-mentioned island, there is a group of six small islets from 180 to 220 feet in height; the passages between them should not be attempted. A coral patch of 3 fathoms lies 1 mile 279° from the northernmost of these islets. A reef awash lies ½ mile from the northern point of the bay in Pulo Riabu, northwestward of these islets.

White rock.—The flat white rock, 45 feet high, situated  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile 193° from the southeastern islet of the Riabu Group, has a patch of foul ground  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile to the northward of it, and a reef awash at  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile 248° from it.

Pulo Piling, 1,065 feet high, and densely wooded, with a sharp and prominent summit, lies to the westward of Pulo Riabu, and is separated from it by a channel nearly ? mile wide.

A reef awash lies 800 yards from the center of the northern coast. Pulo Sra (Sura), a wooded islet, ½ mile in extent and 405 feet high, lies about 10.5 miles westward of the northern end of Pulo Riabu. It is surrounded by a narrow fringe of reef, which is steep close to its edge, except on the north and southeast sides, where shallow water extends off about 200 yards.

Tokong, a small islet, steep-to all round, 100 feet high, and covered with trees, lies 2 miles north-northwestward from Pulo Riabu.

Mæander rock, about 600 yards in extent, with a least depth of about 1 fathom, on which the sea occasionally breaks, surrounded by depths of 20 to 24 fathoms, lies with Tokong bearing 27°, distant 1.8 miles.

Pulo Genting, a wooded islet, 315 feet in height, lying 4.8 miles west-northwestward from the north point of Pulo Riabu, is ½ mile in length, with two rounded peaks on its eastern part. The northwestern end of the islet is low, with a reef extending from it to the distance of 600 yards.

Pulo Mantanio (Antaniu), a wooded islet, ½ mile in extent, and 325 feet high, lies 1.5 miles northwest of Pulo Genting.

A reef extends eastward from it for ½ mile, with a rock 6 feet in height near its northern edge.

Pulo Temian (Temiang) and Pulo Pentebawa, forming, with other islets and rocks, a group of 3.5 miles in length, lie 3.5 miles northeastward from Pulo Mantanio. The first-named island is 2.3 miles in length, with a breadth of over ½ mile. It is low in the center, rising to a broad-topped flat hill at either end; the westernmost and the higher being 860 feet in height, and densely wooded. There are inhabitants on the northeast side of the island.

Pulo Pentebawa is a flat islet 100 feet high, lying \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile southeast from Temian, and stands on a reef that projects southeastward 800 yards from it, on the extremity of which is a small button-shaped islet, 85 feet high.

There is a small detached reef 670 yards 212° from the small 85-foot islet.

A flat island, 130 feet in height, similar in appearance to Pentebawa, lies ½ mile southwestward from that islet. At 1 mile westward of this flat island is another islet 145 feet high, with a tongue of reef projecting 400 yards westward of it.

The channel between Pulo Mantanio and the Temian group has depths of 26 to 34 fathoms, and is clear of danger.

Pulo Tambin (Tambing) and Pulo Ujong, situated about 2 miles northeastward of Pulo Temian, lie ½ mile apart, with a narrow channel between; they are each about 1 mile in extent, 525 and 505 feet high, respectively, and wooded. Both islands are inhabited. The channel between them and Temian is quite clear, with depths of 30 to 34 fathoms. Reef extends from the southern and northern points of Ujong to a distance of about 600 yards.

Pulo Teliban (Telibang), nearly 2 miles in length, by  $\frac{2}{3}$  mile in breadth, is wooded; its summit, 610 feet high, is near the northern end. It is separated from Pulo Tambin by a channel 1 mile wide.

Pulo Dekar, an islet ½ mile in extent, and 350 feet high, lies ½ mile westward of Teliban. It stands on an irregular-shaped reef which extends 800 yards westward and nearly 1 mile northward, in patches, leaving a boat channel between it and Teliban. On the western side of this reef there are detached patches of reef.

A coral patch of 5 fathoms lies \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile 311°, and another patch, of 3 fathoms, 1.1 miles 13° from Pulo Dekar.

Pulo Buan, a wooded islet 250 feet high and 1 mile in length, lies 3.8 miles northeastward of Pulo Ujong.

A reef extends 800 yards southward of the islet, with a rock on it 14 feet high.

Pascoe rock has a depth of 3 fathoms, with 23 to 25 fathoms all around. It lies 2 miles 80° from the northern point of Pulo Buan.

Pulo Telinjan is a wooded islet ½ mile in length and 285 feet high. It lies 2.5 miles northwestward from Pulo Buan.

Bennet rock, with a depth of 2 fathoms, lies 1,700 yards 94° from the southern point of Pulo Telinjan. There is a patch of 5 fathoms (or probably less water) 63°, distant 1.3 miles from the same point, and another with 7 fathoms lying 249°, distant  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile from the same point.

Genting Uniot (Uniut) is the westernmost and largest island of a group of six, situated from 6 to 9 miles northwestward of Pulo Telinjan. It is 2 miles in length, with a bay penetrating ½ mile on its western side, in the center of which there is a depth of 15 fathoms.

A ridge of wooded hills runs throughout the island, culminating in a summit 950 feet high, near the southern end. The coasts of the island have but little reef round them, except at the northern extremity, off which it extends nearly \( \frac{1}{3} \) mile, with a rock about 5 feet high near its outer end.

Pulo Semessa, a wooded islet, 450 feet high, lies between Genting Uniot and Pulo Lingai, and is connected with the latter by a reef.

Pulo Lingai is 1.5 miles in length, and pear-shaped. A ridge of wooded hills rises to a summit 950 feet high toward the southern end.

Pulo Moso, an islet ½ mile in extent, and 395 feet high, lies close southward of Pulo Lingai, and is connected with it by a reef.

Pulo Nauan, a wooded islet, 270 feet in height, is the eastern islet of the group. Shallow water extends westward from this islet nearly half way to Pulo Lingai.

Batu Karang Sinki is a dangerous sand and coral patch, <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile in length, in a north and south direction, with a rock awash near its center, and depths of 2 to 3 fathoms over other parts. From the rock awash, the eastern extremity of Pulo Nauan bears 193°, distant 1.5 miles.

Barnes patch, of sand and coral, with a depth of 7 fathoms, is situated 2 miles 159° from the eastern extremity of Pulo Nauan. It forms the northwestern end of a bank with general depths of 17 to 18 fathoms, extending northwestward almost continuously from Pulo Telinjan. There is a patch of 10 fathoms <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile southeastward from Barnes patch on the same bank.

Pulo Telega (Lat. 3° 4′ N., Long. 105° 59′ E.) is the principal island of a group 5 miles in length, lying nearly midway between Jimaya and Genting Uniot. Pulo Telaga is the easternmost island, and is 4 miles in length, by about a mile in breadth. A conspicuous conical peak, 1,740 feet in height, is situated near the northern end, and a high ridge of hills runs the whole length of the island, which is densely wooded. Foul ground extends about 670 yards from its southern point. The island is inhabited, the villages being principally on the western side.

Pulo Lima, the northern island of the Telaga group, is 475 feet in height; Pulo Midai lies between it and Telaga. Pulo Passu, 250 feet high, lies close northward of Midai, and is joined to it by a sandy neck dry at low water. Between Pulo Midai and Telaga there is a passage with depths of 13 fathoms.

Telega kechil, close southward of Pulo Lima, has a sharp summit, 585 feet in height.

Pulo Buton, a narrow inhabited islet, cultivated with coconut trees, is 1.5 miles in length, and lies about 1,350 yards westward of the southern part of Telaga. A reef extends off the northern point for about 1,350 yards, with Pulo Dinkor, a rock, on it. Midway between this reef and the reef extending southward from Telaga kechil there is a reef ½ mile in extent, having a passage to the southward of it ¼ mile wide leading to an indifferent anchorage in 17 to 18 fathoms water westward of Telaga. This anchorage was not closely examined, but appears to be clear of danger. There is another channel leading to this anchorage from the southward between Pulo Buton and Telaga, but in view of the small scale on which the survey was done, it is not prudent to attempt the narrow channels between the islets of a group.

Tokong Blinao (Blinau) is a rock 6 feet high, with foul ground extending to the north, east, and southward of it to a distance of nearly ½ mile; it lies with the western extremity of Pulo Lima bearing 64°, distant 3 miles.

Pulo Durai is a wooded uninhabited island ½ mile in extent, with two sharp peaks 500 feet high, and lies 13°, distant 15 miles from Telaga. Westward of the island, about ½ mile, is Batu Mamong, a rock 5 feet high. There are depths of 30 to 40 fathoms around the island.

Tokong Nannas (Nanas) is a bare rock 70 feet high, situated 5.5 miles 269° from Durai. A narrow bank, with a least depth of 6 fathoms, coral, steep-to, extends for nearly a mile west-southwest-ward from the rock.

The northeastern group of the Anamba Islands, situated between the parallels of 2° 58′ N. and 3° 30′ N., consists of three large islands with numerous small islands and islets to the east and southeastward of them.

Pulo Pahat, the northwesternmost islet of this group, is pear-shaped. Its flat wooded summit, 700 feet high, lies at the northern end. Reef projects from the southeast side about ½ mile. It is surrounded by depths of 36 fathoms within ½ mile all round.

Mobur (Mubur), the northwesternmost of the three large islands of the group, is nearly 6 miles in length, and varies in breadth from ½ mile to 3.5 miles. The summit, 1,330 feet high and densely wooded, is situated in the southeastern part of the island. Viewed from the northward or southward it appears as a fairly sharp peak, but from the westward it presents a uniform outline. Noran, a small islet, 160 feet high, lies close off the northern point of the island.

The northwestern coast of Mobur is fringed with reef to about 300 yards, with no offlying danger.

Pajantai (Penjantan) is a small level-topped island 215 feet high, lying 3 mile off the western coast of Mobur, Shallow water extends about 200 yards from the island except off the southern point, which is steep-to.

Regni, another wooded islet with black cliffs on its southern side, lies near the southwestern side of Mobur.

Pulo Manga is a wooded island 520 feet high, and 1.3 miles in length, on the southern side of Mobur. At its northwestern end it is only separated from that island by an opening a few yards broad.

Telok Ayer Bandong is a deep narrow inlet between Pulo Manga and the southeastern point of Mobur. It is about 2 miles in length, 600 yards in breadth, and has general depths of 21 to 17 fathoms, mud. The shores of the inlet are fringed with reef, but except at the head, it projects only a short distance. It affords safe anchorage in 17 fathoms at 1,200 yards from the head. There are a few inhabitants on its shores.

Niulwan (or Yang) Matak is 9.5 miles in length, by 3.5 miles in breadth, and attains a height of 1,365 feet in Gunong Niulwan, near its southwestern extremity; it is a prominent peak dominating everything else in the island.

Telok Niulwan, on the southeastern side of Niulwan, is a shallow inlet 3 miles in length, dividing the southern part of the island into two high and wooded peninsulas, on the coasts of which are many villages. The center of the island is low.

Selat Mata (Matak), the channel between Mobur and Niulwan islands, is 3.3 miles in length, narrowing from  $\frac{2}{4}$  mile at the southern end to  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile at the northern end, where it opens out into Telok Mata. It is clear of dangers, with depths of 13 to 18 fathoms. The shores on either side are fringed with a narrow border of reef, steep-to.

The tidal streams set fairly through the channel, flood to southward and ebb to northward, from one to 2 knots per hour in the narrow part.

Pulo Semot (Semut) is a wooded island 710 feet high, lying close northward of Niulwan, from which it is separated by Selat Onass, 200 yards wide, and encumbered with rocks and foul ground.

A patch of 3 fathoms lies with the eastern extremity of the island bearing 204°, distant about ½ mile.

Telok Mata (Matak) is the bay between the northern portion of Mobur and Niulwan, and is 2.5 miles wide between the islands forming the entrance points, Pulo Noran and Pulo Semot. There are several islets and rocks on the northwestern side of the bay, the principal being Pungailing and Uching, between which the bottom is uneven and rocky; vessels should pass eastward of them.

Patch.—At 1,200 yards, 354° from Pulo Uching, there is a coral bank with a depth of 9 fathoms and 30 fathoms around. This patch is out of the fairway to the bay. It is possible there may be less water on it.

Pulo Bahru, 250 feet in height, lies on the eastern side of the bay, mile from the shore; at ½ mile southward is a patch of reef outlying the narrow spit of land southward of it.

The general depths in the bay are from 23 to 30 fathoms over a sand and coral bottom; there is no spot that can be particularly recommended as an anchorage.

Tokong Belayer (Belayar) (Lat. 3° 27′ N., Long. 106° 16′ E.) is a conspicuous bare rock like a pillar, 68 feet high, situated about 3 miles northward from Pulo Semot. A reef projects a distance of 4 mile in a northerly direction, and 200 yards southward from it. The edges of the reef are steep.

Pulo Kelong, eastward of the northern part of Niulwan, is about 6 miles in length by \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile in breadth, with a ridge of hills from 600 to 770 feet in height, extending nearly the whole length of the island. It is densely wooded, and there are several villages along the coast.

The northern extremity, Tanjong Kirpinis, falls steeply from a hill about 500 feet in height, and is steep-to. On the eastern side abreast its center, at 1 mile from the shore, there is a wooded island 300 feet high, and 1,200 yards in length, with a narrow channel between it and the shore.

Hooper patches.—The northern patch is a small sand and coral shoal, with a least depth of 5 fathoms at its southern end. It lies on the western side of Thetis Channel at 1.3 miles 80° from Tanjong Muning, southern extremity of Pulo Kelong. The southern patch, with a depth of 6 fathoms, lies 1 mile 170° from the northern patch.

Pulo Mudai, westward of the center of Pulo Kelong, is a narrow islet with a conical summit 160 feet high; a reef extends 400 yards northward of it. The islet is situated at the northern end of the shallow strait formed between Pulo Semot and Pulo Kelong. Reefs block the whole of the opening southward of the middle of Mudai.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage in a depth of 14 fathoms, coral bottom, at about 670 yards 277° from the summit of Pulo Mudai.

Pulo Piogos, Pidi, Mantong besar, and Mantong kechil form a chain of narrow wooded islets, extending for 2 miles southward of Pulo Kelong; their western sides have considerable reef. There is a narrow passage with a depth of 5 fathoms between Pulo Kelong and Pulo Piogos, the northernmost of these islets.

The islets are cultivated with coconut trees in places, and are inhabited.

Pulo Biliba, a wooded island, westward of the above, is 305 feet in height, with a reef extending about 600 yards eastward of it.

Pulo Lidi, a narrow wooded island 220 feet in height, lies one mile southward of Pulo Biliba. A reef projects 1,200 yards from it toward Mantong kechil.

Selat Tobong is the channel between the Mantong islands and those to the westward, and has depths of 12 to 14 fathoms, mud. Its northern end terminates in a narrow gutter in the reefs between Pulo Kelong and Niulwan.

Anchorage.—There is good anchorage in Selat Tobong, nearly mile westward of Mantong besar, in 13 fathoms, mud.

Shoal.—In the southern entrance to Selat Tobong there is a coral shoal with a depth of 7 fathoms, and possibly less water. It lies 1,200 yards 185° from the southern extremity of Mantong kechil, and foul ground extends for 670 yards in a 204° direction from that island. The northeastern extremity of Niulwan just open westward of Tanjong, Muning, the southern end of Kelong, bearing 350°, leads westward of the shoal. The western extremity of Pulo Ginting in line with the western extreme of Tanjong Muning, bearing 356°, leads midway between the reefs extending on each side of the channel from Mantong besar and Pulo Lidi.

Pulo Kiladi is a narrow wooded island, 2.5 miles in length, and 470 feet in height, with its northern end lying 400 yards westward of Pulo Lidi, and on the same reef.

Selat Firnenting, a deep narrow channel, in the coral encumbered with patches, separates Kiladi and Telok Pao from the eastern coast of Niulwan. Pulo Koran, 270 feet high, also lies on the same reef close to the southeastward.

Close eastward of Pulo Kiladi is a chain of islets cultivated with coconut trees, the tops of the trees varying from 90 to 145 feet in height.

South and southeastward of Pulo Telok Pao the reefs are broken up into narrow detached patches, through which a boat can with difficulty find a passage.

Siantan, the southernmost large island of the eastern group, is separated from Niulwan by Selat Pananting. The island is 10.5 miles in length, with an extreme width of 5.5 miles, and has several bays with high peninsulas between them. It is mountainous throughout and densely wooded. The summit Gunong Sama, 1,855 feet high, situated on the western side, is conspicuous.

A peak, 1,595 feet high in the northeastern part of the island, is conspicuous by its forming a shoulder that falls steeply to the northward. Near the southeast extremities is Gunong Peta, 770 feet high, sharp and conspicuous.

The general outline of the mountain ridges in the broader parts of the island is smooth and rounded, so that the summits are not easy to identify.

Villages.—The principal village is Terempah, near the northern end, and along the coast in the various inlets there are numerous small habitations.

Tanjong Pedass (Lat. 3° 14′ N., Long. 106° 12′ E.), the north-western point of Siantan, and the southern point of entrance to Selat Pananting, is steep-to at the distance of 200 yards, and slopes sharply down from a hill 610 feet high, a short distance within it.

Rock.—At 700 yards east-northeastward from Tanjong Pedass is a small rock, 1 foot above high water, with 3 fathoms close-to and a depth of 11 fathoms between it and the shore.

At 1.3 miles southward of Tanjong Pedass and ½ mile from the coast there is a coral bank of 12 fathoms. Elsewhere the 20-fathom curve maintains a distance of about 400 to 600 yards from the west coast.

West coast—Telok Rambutan is an inlet on the southwestern coast of Siantan, 1 mile in length by ½ mile in width at its entrance, with depths of 8 to 12 fathoms, mud. On the western side, a short distance within the entrance, the reef projects for 400 yards; on the eastern side the reef follows the coast closely.



The inlet is fully exposed to the south and is somewhat confined for anchoring.

Telok Ayer Bini lies about 2 miles eastward of Rambutan. It is about 1.5 miles in length, and nearly 1 mile in breadth between Tanjong Baik, a low point, and Pulo Soe, a flat-topped wooded island, 300 feet in height, lying near the coast: near its head it is about 400 yards wide.

A small reef lies 300 yards off the White rocks, 10 feet high, situated close to the eastern point of Telok Luing, within Tanjong Baik. There are some houses in this cove.

The reef on the western side extends to a distance of about 200 yards; on the eastern shore, at  $\frac{2}{4}$  mile within Pulo Soe, a detached reef lies parallel with the coast at a distance of 350 yards. Abreast the northern end of this detached reef, at the distance of 250 yards from the western shore, is a patch of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms; it is about 33 yards in length, and is not easy to see until close-to.

Anchorage.—The depths in the center of the bay are from 16 to 18 fathoms, mud, affording good anchorage, with the White rocks in line with Tanjong Baik, distant 1,350 yards.

Tanjong Katong, situated 2 miles east-southeastward from Ayer Bini, is the southeastern extremity of Siantan, and has a black flattopped rock about 20 feet high close southward. It forms the southern end of a peninsula, of which Gunong Peta, 770 feet high, is the summit.

Coast.—To the westward is an inlet 1.3 miles deep open to the southward, and therefore exposed during the southwest monsoon. Reef extends from the coast from 200 to 400 yards, increasing to 600 yards at its head. The water shoals from 19 to 12 fathoms, coral bottom, at ½ mile from the head.

Siantan, north coast Terempa (Terempah) cove, situated on the northern coast of Siantan, is  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile wide between its entrance points, and nearly 1 mile in length to its head, where there is a sandy beach on which the village of Terempa stands. The coast on either side is fringed by reef to about 300 yards, except near the village.

Village.—Terempa is the principal village in the group, and contains the residence of the Dutch Government official. Very good drinking water can obtained here from a spring.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage in a depth of 16 fathoms, sand and mud, at 670 yards from the head of the cove, where there are usually some sailing schooners at anchor.

Selat Pananting, separating Siantan from Niulwan, is a channel from \(^2\) mile to 1.7 miles wide, with depths of 10 to 24 fathoms. The western portion of this channel is deep and clear, but eastward of Tanjong Tuman it becomes much obstructed by reefs. The

fringing reef off Tanjong Tuman projects 600 yards from the shore, and its edge is irregular and broken up. Off the southeastern extremity of Niulwan, reef and foul ground extends nearly across the strait, leaving only a navigable channel 400 yards wide on the Siantan side.

Pulo Jankat is a wooded islet, 105 feet in heigth, on the coast reef, abreast Batu Birla.

Telok Bara.—Southward of Pulo Jankat, about ½ mile, is the entrance to a narrow channel leading through the fringing reef to Telok Bara. On the western side of the cove there are two waterfalls close to each other.

Batu Birla and Misabong, 385 and 435 feet in height, respectively, lie about ½ mile off the northeastern side of Siantan, on the reefs which block the eastern entrance of Selat Pananting. Several smaller islets stand on the same reefs.

Siantan island, east coast.—From Telok Bara the coast southward for 6 miles to Tanjong Katong, the southern point of the island, has numerous small villages at intervals.

Pulo Bajau, or Pulo Nyamok, lies eastward of Siantan, with Selat Simangi between. It is an island about 5 miles in length, of very irregular shape, indented on the north, south, and east sides by deep bays; the western portion is known as Pulo Bajau, and the eastern or larger portion as Nyamok. There are two prominent peaks; the western one, Gunong Simangi, 785 feet in height, the other peak, 780 feet high, lies 1 mile northeastward of it. There are inhabitants along the shores of nearly all the inlets, and in several parts of the island coconuts are cultivated.

Selat Batu Birla (Lat. 3° 11′ N., Long. 106° 17′ E.) is the continuation southward of Selat Pananting; it is a strait 2 miles in length, separating Pulo Batu Birla and Pulo Misabong from Siantan, with depths of 11 to 12 fathoms, but is only 400 yards wide between the edges of the reefs. There is a detached patch of reef about 200 yards off the reef extending southeastward of Jankat, on the western side of the northern entrance. There are no leading marks for this strait, and the tidal streams run somewhat strongly, flood to the southward and ebb to the northward.

**Directions.**—Neither Selat Pananting nor Selat Batu Birla are channels that can be recommended, but in case of necessity the following directions may be useful concerning their navigation, but the eye from aloft should be the principal guide:

Entering Selat Pananting from the westward, keep in mid-channel; before coming abreast of Tanjong Kangor (½ mile northwest of Tuman), bring the western extremity of Niulwan in line with another black bold point southeastward of it, bearing 320°. Keep these marks on, astern, until the northern extremity of Pulo Batu Birla

bears 101° in line with the northern extremity of Pulo Luyong, and steer for it on that bearing till the western extremities of Pulo Batu Birla and Pulo Misabong are in line bearing 159°. Then alter course for those points, keeping them in line until abreast of a small detached patch of reef which will be passed close-to on the starboard hand when Pulo Jankat is abeam, when course must be altered to clear the reef extending from Pulo Batu Birla. Thence, keep in the fairway of the channel between the reefs, and when to the southward of Pulo Misabong either steer northeastward through Selat Jalan or southwestward into Selat Simangi.

Selat Jalan separates the northwestern part of Pulo Bajau from Pulo Misabong and from the eastward leads to Selat Simangi and Selat Batu Birla. It is 1 mile wide between the edges of the reefs, with depths of 10 to 20 fathoms.

The tidal streams set through with some strength, flood to the southwestward and ebb to the northeastward.

Selat Simangi, separating the western coast of Pulo Bajau from Siantan, varies in width from 400 yards to 700 yards between the edges of the reefs. The depths are 12 to 15 fathoms, but there is a sand and coral patch of 5½ fathoms in the center of the strait. The edges of the reefs project on the Siantan side from 300 to 700 yards, and there are detached patches on that side also; on the other side the reef follows the shore more closely.

Selat Barawa is the continuation of Selat Simangi in a south-southeast direction and its southern entrance; the channel is reduced to little more than 200 yards in width between the fringing reefs within its entrance, opening southward into a deep bay formed between Tanjong Katong and Tanjong Suka on the east side.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage in 15 fathoms, sand, in the bay off the southern entrance to Selat Barawa. The head of the bay on the southern side of Pulo Bajau is encumbered with reef. Pulo Berala, 140 feet in height, and covered with coconut trees, lies mile off Tanjong Katong, western side of approach to the bay.

Pungelat (Lat. 3° 6′ N., long. 106° 21′ E.), Oro-oro, Batu Itam, Pirmotos, and Tungeran, constitute a chain of inhabited islets from 135 to 260 feet in height extending in a southwest and opposite direction for 3.3 miles, and situated southeastward of Pulo Nyamok, the Favorite channel between.

Favorite channel (Selat Tanjong Suka) is 1,350 yards wide, reduced in one place, on the western side of the channel near the center of its length, to about 900 yards by a patch of reef that dries 3 feet, and generally shows clearly; there is another patch near the same shore at \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile southwestward of it. There are depths of 22 to 24 fathoms in this channel, which is straight and clear of danger with the exception of the reefs alluded to. The tidal streams set

straight through, flood to the southwestward and ebb to the north-eastward, from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 knots per hour. On the flood, with a southerly wind, there are tide rips and overfalls in the southern part of the strait.

Clearing marks.—The western side of Pulo Gueta, in line or just open of the northwestern entrance point of Favorite channel, bearing 32°, leads eastward of the reefs in the channel.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage on the northwestern side of Pungelat in 17 to 18 fathoms, sand, at 300 yards from the island, with Gunong Munjan (the summit of Pulo Tanapuniat) in line with the southeast point of Oro-oro.

Pulo Tanapuniat (Memperuk) (Lat. 3°4′ N., Long. 106°21′ E.) is an island about 2.8 miles in length. Gunong Munjan, its summit, is 760 feet in height, and is conspicuous from all views. Pulo Abong, 345 feet in height, lies close westward of its southern end.

The channel westward of Pulo Tanapuniat, separating it from the chain of islets mentioned above, is 1 mile wide between Pulo Tungeran and Pulo Abong, narrowing to a little over 200 yards in width near Batu Itam; it is not recommended as a ship channel. There are inhabitants on both sides of it.

Batu Rakit consists of rocks from 2 to 6 feet high, situated at 1 mile off the center of the east coast of Tanapuniat.

Howard rock, with 13 feet water, lies 3 mile 102° from the northern point of Pulo Tanapuniat, and nearly 2 miles northward of Batu Bini.

Clearing marks.—The southwestern extremity of Mankian Pandok, in line with the southwestern extremity of Pulo Gueta, 342°, leads 3 mile eastward of Howard rock, and leads also just eastward of the eastern Chabrol patch.

Walsh patch, of coral, with a depth of 6 fathoms, lies about 2.3 miles 66° from Pulo Abong, with depths of 20 to 27 fathoms around.

Akar, Boiteu, form a group of six islands and islets extending from 1 to 4 miles southeastward of Tanapuniat. Pulo Akar, 1.5 miles in extent, and 525 feet in height, the largest and easternmost of the group, is uninhabited and densely wooded. Boiteu and Baba stand on the same reef, with another island lying between them and Akar. The westernmost islet of the group has a sharp summit 240 feet in height.

Batu Laki is a rock 3 feet high lying in the fairway of the channel between this group of islands and Pulo Tanapuniat, at 1,750 yards 80° from Tanjong Baluntao, and is steep-to.

Batu Bini is a rock that dries 3 feet, also in the fairway, at 800 yards 359° from Batu Laki.

Egeria rock (Lat. 3° 2' N., Long. 106° 27' E.), a coral head of 2 fathoms with 20 to 30 fathoms at a short distance, lies 1.9 miles

103° from the northeastern extremity of Akar island. A patch of 3½ fathoms with deep water between, lies ½ mile 264° from Egeria rock.

Nonseu (Nonsiu), about 1 mile southward of Akar, is the southeasternmost island of the northern group of the Anambas. It is a narrow wooded island, 195 feet in height, and  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in length. Foul ground extends for nearly 400 yards southward of the island. The channel between it and Akar is deep and clear, but there are frequently tide-rips across it.

The tidal streams run, flood to southwestward and the ebb to the northeastward, about 1 knot per hour in the vicinity of Nonsiu.

Pulo Panjang is the largest of a group of 10 islands and islets to the northward of Akar, and is 2 miles in length east and west, by ½ mile in breadth near its center. It has two prominent wooded peaks, ¾ mile east and west of each other, connected by a high saddle. The western peak is 1,050 feet, and the eastern 1,140 feet in height, and it is the highest island eastward of Siantan. Two islets lie off the southern coast.

Pempang is the easternmost of the group. It is 460 feet in height, nearly a mile in length, and is fairly steep-to. The island is wooded and inhabited.

Mantala (Mentala), southward of Pulo Panjang, is a narrow wooded island 300 feet in height, and 1 mile in length. The island is cultivated in places with coconut trees, but is uninhabited.

Pulo Pejul and Pulo Panginding, connected by reef, and about 200 yards apart, lie westward of Pulo Panjang and separated from it by Selat Telok Dalam, from 400 to 600 yards wide, with depths of 12 to 15 fathoms. The islands together are 2 miles in length, densely wooded, and have a few inhabitants. Pulo Pejul is 760 feet, and Panginding 815 feet in height. Close off the northwestern coast of Pulo Pejul there are two high islets, and close to the northern point of Panginding is another. An islet, 115 feet high, from which reef projects for a short distance, lies ½ mile northwestward from the last-mentioned islet.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage sheltered from the southerly winds in a depth of 13 fathoms, sand and coral bottom, in the space between the above-mentioned islets, with the islet close to the north point of Panginding bearing 86°, and the islet to the northward bearing 30°, distant 700 yards.

Pulo Luyong 375 feet in height, with well-defined peaks, is a narrow wooded island about 1.8 miles in length, lying about 2 miles northwestward of Pulo Pejul.

A patch of 2 fathoms lies ½ mile 289° from the head of the west bay in the low part of Pulo Luyong, with depths of 3½ to 7 fathoms around.

Pulo Gueta, 290 feet in height, is a wooded island, 1,600 yards in length, lying close southward of Pulo Luyong and on the same reef.

Chabrol patches are two in number,  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile apart, and steep-to. The western one has a depth of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and is situated 1,600 yards 199° from the southwestern point of Pulo Gueta. The other has  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and lies 1 mile 168° from the same point.

Esperance Reef, with a sandbank that dries 6 feet on its southern end, is a reef lying 1 mile 58° from the northern point of Pulo Luyong.

Shoals.—A ridge of sand and coral shoals, with depths of from 4½ to 8 fathoms over them, extends 2 miles 30° from Esperance Reef. As there may be less water on these shoals they should be avoided. At 1 mile 24° from Mankian Pandok there is a coral head with a depth of 3½ fathoms, and a 3-fathom patch lies 1,350 yards 165° from the coral head.

A reef awash lies 1.5 miles 20° from Esperance Reef with a clear channel between, having depths of 14 to 16 fathoms.

Clearing marks.—The southeastern point of Pulo Gueta in line with the northern point of Pulo Oro-oro bearing 210° (the entrance to Favorite Channel being just closed), leads between Esperance Reef and the last-mentioned reef, and eastward of the line of coral shoals extending northward of Esperance Reef.

Mankian Pandok, a small island, 160 feet in height, cleared for cultivation, lies with its peak about 1.2 miles northwestward of the north extremity of Pulo Luyong. It has a sandy spit at its southern end, and reef extends for nearly 400 yards westward from the island. There are two wooded islets at 400 and 1,000 yards southeastward of it.

Pulo Isan, 570 feet in height, is wooded, of irregular shape, and situated north-northeastward from Pulo Panjang. On the western side and northward of the island, reef and foul ground extend for a considerable distance. Immediately southward of Pulo Isan there is an islet 280 feet high, with a sandy isthmus extending in a southwesterly direction for 1 mile, connecting it with a promontory 80 feet high. Between this promontory and Pulo Panjang there is a deep passage 800 yards wide. Another islet, Nibong, 135 feet high, is situated close southeastward of the 280-foot islet.

Pulo Selei (Selai) (Lat. 3° 12′ N., Long. 106° 29′ E.), 530 feet in height and 2 miles in length, lies 2 miles eastward of Pulo Isan, and is also of irregular shape. Its summit shows sharp from the northward and southward, but broad-topped from other views. The bays on the southern and eastern sides are foul and rocky; the one on the northern side is also foul near the head, but it affords anchorage in a depth of 13 fathoms in the center, with protection from southerly winds.

79795—15——8

A narrow island, 305 feet high and 1 mile in length, lies close to the northwestward of Pulo Selei, affording temporary protection on its southeastern side from northerly winds, but the anchorage was not closely sounded. There is only a narrow boat channel between the islands.

Bossom, a wooded island, 600 to 800 yards in extent and 335 feet in height, lies northwestward of the island just mentioned, with an islet 110 feet high between, with which it is connected by reef. A small patch awash lies 400 yards 204° from the 110-foot islet.

Kudok, a small islet 85 feet high, lies 1.3 miles southwest from Bossom.

Sagu Dampar and Sama, 500 and 225 feet high, respectively, standing on the same reef and close to each other, are together nearly 2 miles in length; the southeastern part of Sagu Dampar lies 1,400 yards westward of Bossom. Nearly in the center of the channel between them is a rock awash at low water, with depths of 4 to 7 fathoms close around it, lying 1,100 yards 264° from the southern point of Bossom. With the exception of this rock the channel is clear, passing westward of Pulo Selei and Bossom. The channel between Pulo Isan and Sagu Dampar is too foul for a vessel to attempt a passage.

Pulo Lubong Gaii is a narrow wooded island of smooth outline, 335 feet high and 2 miles in length, with Ipil Islet close to its southern end. It lies 2 miles northwestward from Sagu Dampar, with a deep and clear channel between.

Pulo Manguan lies close westward of the northern point of Lubong Gaii, and is about 1.3 miles in length. The summit, 465 feet high, shows conspicuously. The space included between the southern coast of this island and the coast of Pulo Lubong Gaii encumbered with reef.

Mankian, 140 feet in height, and cultivated with coconut trees, lies 1.5 miles southwestward of Lubong Gaii. Reef extends on all sides to a distance of 200 to 400 yards except to the northeastward, where it skirts the island closely. The passage between Mankian and Lubong Gaii is clear of danger.

A patch of 2½ fathoms, coral, lies 193° about 1,400 yards from the southern extremity of Mankian, steep-to on its southern side.

Hale patch, with a depth of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms over a coral bottom, is small, and situated 1.5 miles  $306^{\circ}$  from the northern extremity of Pulo Mankian.

Thetis Reef is a coral reef ½ mile in length, lying 2 miles 252° from Pulo Mankian, with depths of 11 to 12 fathoms between. Patches with 3 to 5 fathoms on them extend for 1 mile to the northward of this reef, and there is a patch of 4½ fathoms 700 yards 204° of Thetis Reef. A patch of 4 fathoms lies 1,200 yards westward of Thetis Reef.

There is a narrow reef over 1 mile in length, with a sand cay that dries 5 feet, lying with its northern end 1 mile 238° from Thetis Reef.

Sampa, an islet 200 feet high, wooded, and 1,400 yards in length, lies close northwest of Pulo Manguan.

Matiana (Matianak), about 1,350 yards in length and 180 feet in height, lies about 1.3 miles northward of Sampa, with a rock or islet 30 feet in height in the channel between.

Pulo Minjalin (Menjalin) (Lat. 3° 23' N., Long. 106° 26½' E.), Pulo Stuju, Pulo Lamun, and Pulo Passu constitute a group of islands occupying a space nearly 2 miles square, situated about 5 miles eastward of Pulo Kelong; they are the northeasternmost islands of the Anambas.

Pulo Minjalin, the westernmost and largest of the group, is 1.5 miles in length, with a rounded summit, 430 feet in height, near the center. The western coast is embayed, but the water is too deep to afford convenient anchorage.

Pulo Stuju, a level-topped narrow island, 215 feet in height, lies northeastward of Minjalin, and on the same reef.

Pulo Lamun, about 1 mile in length, lies eastward of Minjalin. Reef extends southeastward of it for upwards of  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile.

Pulo Passu, with a conical summit 200 feet high, lies close northeastward of Pulo Lamun, with islets and rocks between.

Anchorage.—On the eastern side of Pulo Minjalin, in the bay formed by the projection to the eastward of the other islands of the group, there is temporary anchorage in a depth of 15 fathoms, sand and coral, with the southeastern extremity of Minjalin bearing 233° distant 800 yards.

Alarm bank, lying  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile east-northeastward from Pulo Passu, is a bank of sand and coral  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in extent, with depths of  $4\frac{3}{4}$  to  $5\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and possibly less, water. A small patch of 6 fathoms lies 1.4 miles 69° from Pulo Passu, with 20 fathoms between, and nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile still further eastward a cast of 15 fathoms was obtained. Heavy overfalls and tide-rips mark these banks, and they should be avoided.

Thetis Channel lies between the islands and islets immediately fronting the east coast of Niulwan, and those groups of islands lying to the eastward that have just been described. Its northern entrance lies between Pulo Kelong and Pulo Minjalin, and its general direction is south, between the several reefs that have been described in connection with the islets contiguous to them. The depths range from 30 to 36 fathoms in the northern part, decreasing to 11 and 12 fathoms in the central parts. It probably could be navigated from aloft with the sun in a favorable position, but there is apparently little to be gained by using it. The route outside the islands seems preferable.

Tidal streams.—In Thetis Channel the flood sets to the southward, and the ebb to the northward, from \(\frac{2}{4}\) to 1\(\frac{1}{4}\) knots per hour.

The North Natura Islands are situated about 130 miles northeastward of the Anamba Islands, and about 75 miles eastward of the main route up the China Sea. Pulo Laut, the larger island, is 869 feet in height, and Pulo Sekatung, close to its northern extremity, is 364 feet in height. They are inhabited by Malays and Chinamen, and produce various sorts of fruits.

Reefs extend about 3.5 miles off the southwestern extremity of Pulo Laut, gradually reducing its distance northward to Sekatung, the northern extremity of which is fairly steep-to. Reefs extend a considerable distance eastward of the islands.

## CHAPTER III.

## MAIN ROUTE TO HONGKONG.—DESCRIPTION OF ISLANDS, REEFS, AND SHOALS.

## EASTERN SIDE OF MAIN ROUTE.

Caution.—Vessels should not attempt to pass eastward of the banks that are here described, as numerous shoals exist over a very large central area known as "Dangerous ground," which have not been correctly charted.

Currents and tides.—While H. M. S. surveying vessel Rifleman was at anchor on the reefs, during both monsoons, careful observations were taken of the set of the current on the reefs, which, for 16 hours out of the 24, invariably set to windward, generally with the greatest force when the monsoon was strongest; it is not to be supposed that this action occurs at any great distance from the reef, it being an eddy, more or less.

The rise of tide at springs was about 5 feet, and at neaps one to 2 feet; one tidal stream in the 24 hours.

Banks on eastern side—Vanguard Bank, having 9 fathoms least water, and general depths of 20 to 60 fathoms, is crescent-shaped, about 34 miles in length, and has an average breadth of 6 miles. The position of the 11 fathoms on its eastern end is Lat. 7° 30′ N., Long. 109° 55′ E., or about 110 miles eastward of Charlotte bank, the southernmost bank on the western side of the main route.

Grainger Bank, the center of which lies 37 miles 64° from the eastern patch of the Vanguard, is 5.5 miles in length by 2 miles in breadth. There are coral heads with 6 to 8 fathoms over them, and depths of 10 to 20 fathoms around; the coral bottom is visible over nearly the whole of it.

Prince Consort Bank lies between the Vanguard and the Prince of Wales Bank, and extends about 16 miles north and south by 9 miles east and west. No danger exists on it; the general depths are from 30 to 50 fathoms, sand and coral, the least water found being on some coral heads near the western edge, with depths of 10 to 13 fathoms, with no bottom at 200 fathoms at a short distance.

Prince of Wales Bank, between 20 to 33 miles east-northeast-ward of Prince Consort Bank, is 12 miles in extent northeast and southwest, and 7 miles in breadth; it is of coral formation, with irregular depths, there being several heads with depths of 8 to 10

Digitized by Google

fathoms, and one of 4 fathoms near its northwestern corner, in Lat. 8°8' N., Long. 110° 27' E.

Alexandra Bank, about 5 miles southeastward of Prince of Wales Bank, is 5 miles in length north and south, 3.5 miles in breadth, and steep-to. A patch with 3 fathoms lies near the eastern edge, and there are others with 6 to 7 fathoms; the general depth is about 15 fathoms, the bottom, coral, distinctly visible.

Rifleman Bank is about 30 miles in length in a north and south direction by about 13 miles in breadth. Shallow patches, varying from 1<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> to 7 fathoms, exist around the edges, within which are depths of 20 to 40 fathoms, sand and coral; around the bank are depths of about 500 fathoms.

Bombay Castle Shoal, with 13 fathoms, situated at the northern end of Rifleman Bank, in Lat. 7° 56′ N., Long. 111° 42′ E., is marked by heavy breakers except during the finest weather.

Bombay Castle, Orleana, Johnson, and Kingston Shoals have been found to be patches on the edges of Rifleman Bank, and are named accordingly. It is quite possible that other small shoal patches may exist on the bank.

Owen Shoal, reported to be about 2 miles in extent, and to have a depth of 3½ fathoms, over coral, is charted 22 miles northeastward of Rifleman Bank, in Lat. 8° 8′ N., Long. 111° 59′ E. It has not been examined.

Ladd Reef (Lat. 8° 39' N., Long. 111° 40' E.), about 42 miles northward of the Rifleman, is a coral reef 3 miles in length, east and west, and about 1 mile in breadth. In the center of the reef is a lagoon with a bottom of white sand. The surrounding reef uncovers at half tide in many places, and at low water it is almost impossible for boats to cross over into the lagoon.

Spratly (or Storm) Island, situated 14 miles eastward from Ladd Reef, is a bare flat island about 8 feet high, 500 yards in length, and 300 yards in breadth, with a margin of bright white sand and broken coral. At a distance of 3 or 4 miles, in the breeding season, the birds standing erect look like small bushes.

The island is on the western end of a coral bank, which is 1.3 miles in length by 1,400 yards in breadth. Northward of the island at \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile distant, there is a depth of 3\(\frac{1}{2}\) fathoms close to the edge of the bank, decreasing toward the shore. Northeastward the depth is 7 or 8 fathoms not quite \(\frac{1}{2}\) mile from the island. Rocky ledges, dry at low water, surround the island, requiring caution when landing, which during the southwest monsoon may be effected on the lee side. The bank is steep-to, the sea breaking heavily upon it, except in very fine weather.

The Rifleman anchored in about 6 fathoms on the northeastern point of the bank, fairly sheltered from the southwest, with the

extremities of the island bearing about 221° and 244°, and the extremity of the breakers on the western edge, 264°.

In the months of June and July turtle frequent the island, and they may possibly do so at other seasons. Numbers were taken on the beach, being easily turned over by two or three men. Quantities of their eggs were found on the southwestern side of the island. Sea birds' eggs covered the ground in the months mentioned.

There were no signs in 1889 of anyone ever having tried to live there.

Tides.—Observations at Spratly Island in the summer months showed but one tide during the 24 hours, and in the early part of July it was found to be high water at 9h. a. m., the rise and fall being 5½ feet. The direction of the stream at the northeastern corner of the bank was southwestward during the rising tide, and from southeast to east-northeast during the falling tide.

Amboyna Cay (Lat. 7° 51′ N., Long. 112° 55′ E.), about 68 miles eastward of Rifleman Bank, and at the southwestern extremity of a small coral bank, is 150 yards in extent, and 8 feet high. It is surrounded by coral ledges, partly dry at low water, and steep-to, to the distance of nearly 400 yards in places, upon which the sea breaks heavily with any swell.

A pile beacon, composed of driftwood collected on the cay, a few lumps of coral, etc., was erected in the center of the island, and possibly still exists.

A bank, 400 yards wide, extends about 1 mile northeastward of the cay, with a depth of 4 fathoms at about 670 yards from it; at the extremity of the bank the water deepens suddenly from 9 to 17 fathoms, and thence to deep water.

Anchorage on this bank has been found in 5 fathoms, in the southwest monsoon, fairly sheltered by the cay from the prevailing wind.

A reef, with a depth of 2 to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, reported as lying with the center of Amboyna Cay bearing 137°, distant from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 mile; it is too near the cay to be shown on the chart, which is on a small scale.

Eastward of Amboyna Cay is the edge of the "dangerous ground" still unsurveyed, and which should be avoided, as before mentioned.

Tides.—By observations at Amboyna Cay 2 days before neaps, the maximum rate of the tidal stream was 1.4 knots per hour, the flood stream setting northward, the ebb westward; flood commencing at 11 p. m., and the ebb at 6 a. m.; rise and fall doubtful.

Remains of huts, which had been made of stones, pieces of coral, planks and bamboos, parts of an old boat, etc., were seen on the cay (1889), all covered with a white coating of guano, denoting that it is a long time since anyone was working guano, or living on Amboyna Cay.

Stags Shoal, northward of Amboyna Cay, was reported in 1802 in Lat. 8° 24′ N., Long. 112° 57′ E., as consisting of rocks showing above water.

A sounding of 1,085 fathoms, ooze, has been found in the position assigned to Stags Shoal. Amboyna Cay has been found to be 11 miles farther west than first reported, and it is possible, therefore, that the position of the Stags given may be 11 or 12 miles eastward of its true position. H. M. S. Renard, in 1862, got upon the position ascribed to the Stags Shoal, and steered a few miles east and west, but could not discover it. It is probably the northern end of Lizzie Webber Shoal.

London Reefs.—The London Reefs, four in number, lie about 60 miles northeastward of Rifleman Bank, extend over a distance of about 38 miles in an east and west direction, and are steep-to.

Like most dangers in the China Sea, the London Reefs are surrounded by deep water, thus rendering the lead useless; great caution is therefore necessary when navigating in the vicinity of these reefs, and vessels should not stand toward them with the sun shining ahead, as under these circumstances it becomes almost impossible to distinguish shoal water or breakers.

West (London) Reef (Lat. 8° 51′ N., Long. 112° 12′ E.) is about 4 miles in extent with several detached coral heads dry at low water around its edge. In the center of the reef there are depths of 6 to 10 fathoms, with several coral heads. The only approach to the center is from the southeast side, but so many coral patches exist that the navigation is hazardous. On the eastern side of the reef is a sand cay, 2 feet high.

Central Reef is a coral patch awash ½ mile in extent, with a shallow lagoon within the belt of coral, at 9 miles northeastward of West Reef. On the southwestern extremity of the reef is a sandbank, probably covered at high-water springs.

This reef lies directly in the track of vessels working up or down the China Sea. It is not always marked by breakers, like those which so readily point out the positions of East and West London Reefs.

East (London) Reef, 16 miles eastward of West Reef, is 7 miles in length, east and west, and from 1 to 2 miles in breadth. The coral around its edges inclose a lagoon, having depths of 4 to 8 fathoms, with many rocky heads; no entrance into the lagoon was discovered. The sea breaks heavily on the reef, and on its western extremity are one or two rocks which seldom cover.

Cuarteron Reef, the easternmost of the London Reefs, at about 10 miles eastward of East Reef, is awash, crescent-shaped, about 3 miles in length, and very steep-to. Although deep water is found close to all of these reefs, there was generally some slope from the edges, on which the surveying vessel could anchor with safety for a

short period to enable the position to be fixed, but on Cuarteron Reef no anchorage could be found, it being "steep-to" all around.

The Fiery Cross of Northwest Investigator Reef is a coral reef having several dry patches, upon most of which the sea breaks even in light winds, or with a slight swell. It is 14 miles in length, northeast and southwest, and 4 miles in breadth. The largest dry patch is at its southwestern end in Lat. 9° 32′ N., Long. 112° 52′ E.

Dhaulle Reef, reported in 1826 to exist in Lat. 9° 32′ N., Long. 112° 24′ E., is considered to be identical with one of the neighboring reefs. In this locality a depth of 1,060 fathoms is charted.

Discovery Great Reef, the southern point of which lies east-northeastward 55 miles from Fiery Cross Reef, in Lat. 10° 1′ N., Long. 113° 51′ E., is a narrow coral reef, about 7 miles in length, the greater part of which dries at low water, but with several large rocks always showing; in the center is a lagoon, which appeared to be shallow, and to have no passage leading into it. No bottom was found with 100-fathom line within a short distance of any part of the reef, except off its northern end, where the surveying vessel anchored in 42 fathoms nearly ½ mile from the rocks.

The Hainan Island fishermen reported a reef or shoal lying 10 miles northeastward of Discovery Great Reef, but depths of 40 fathoms, no bottom, have been found in that locality.

Discovery Small Reef, lying about 10 miles eastward from the south point of Discovery Great Reef, is a round coral patch, 670 yards in diameter, dry in places at low water, with very deep water all round.

Western or Flora Temple Reef (Lat. 10° 15' N., Long. 113° 37' E.) is the westernmost reef in this part of the China Sea, and dangerous, having patches of rock just under water at the southwestern part and from 1 to 3 fathoms in other places. It is a narrow reef, 1.5 miles in length, northeast and southwest, with depths of 20 to 70 fathoms close-to, and no bottom at 200 fathoms at a short distance.

Tizard Bank, with reefs and islands.—Tizard Bank lies about 16 miles northeastward of Discovery Small Reef. Like most of the large coral banks in the China Sea, it consists of a lagoon bordered by reefs dry at low water, two with islands on them, and a third with a sand cay. The bank is about 30 miles in length in an east and west direction, with an average breadth of about 8 miles. In the lagoon are several coral heads of 5 to 6 fathoms. The tops of the few trees on the islands may possibly be seen from a distance of 8 to 10 miles.

Hainan fishermen, who subsist by collecting trepang and tortoise shell, were found upon most of these islands; some of them remain for years amongst the reefs. Junks from Hainan (Tonkin Gulf) annually visit the islands and reefs of the China Sea with supplies of rice and other necessaries, for which the fishermen give trepang and other articles in exchange; the junks leave Hainan in December or January and return with the first of the southwest monsoon. The water found in the well on Ita Aba Island was better than elsewhere.

Itu Aba (Lat. 10° 23′ N., Long. 114° 21′ E.), the larger of the two islands, lies at the northwestern corner of Tizard Bank, and is  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in length. The reef surrounding it extends in some places nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile, its limits being generally defined by a line of breakers. The island is covered with small trees and bushes, and there are a few coconut and plantain trees near a well, the tops of which are about 25 feet above the sea.

Sand Cay.—About 6 miles eastward of Itu Aba Island is a sand cay, near the center of a reet  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in diameter. This cay, which was a mere patch or sand when visited by H. M. surveying vessel Rifleman in 1867, had bushes on it about 9 feet high; when seen from H. M. S. Rambler in 1888, their tops were about 15 feet above high water.

The island and cay are connected by a line of shallow patches; nearly midway between is a reef about 1,400 yards in diameter, covered at high tide. Elsewhere on the northern edge of the bank there is a depth of not less than 4 fathoms, and vessels may safely anchor in 7 to 10 fathoms about midway between the sand cay and the reet last described.

Petley Reef, an oval-shaped patch about a mile in extent, forms the extremity of a ledge of coral, about 1.3 miles wide, projecting nearly 5 miles in a northerly direction from the northern side of the bank, and with irregular depths; no bottom could be obtained with 100 fathoms at a short distance on either side of the ledge.

Eldad Reef forms the eastern extremity of Tizard Bank. It is 4.5 miles in length, from 200 yards to nearly a mile in breadth, and steep-to on its northern and southern sides; a ridge, about 1 mile in length, extends northeastward of the reef, with depths increasing from 8 to 45 fathoms, beyond which it drops sharply to 100 fathoms and more. A few large rocks on Eldad Reef are always visible, and at low water many smaller ones uncover.

Nam yit Island (Lat. 10° 12′ N., Long. 114° 21′ 30″ E.), on the southern side of Tizard Bank, is 600 yards in length by 200 yards in breadth, and surrounded by a reef which projects more than a mile to the westward and about 670 yards in other directions. It is about 20 feet in height and covered with small trees and bushes.

Gaven Reefs, two in number, form the southwestern extremity of Tizard Bank; they are each about 1 mile in extent, covered at high water, and about 2.5 miles apart, with coral heads between.

Anchorage—Directions.—The above comprise the whole of the shallow dangers found on Tizard Bank, and with the exception of a 3-fathom patch, about a mile northeastward of Nam yit, nothing less than 4 fathoms was discovered on any of the shoal patches surround-

ing the lagoon. Vessels of moderate draft can, therefore, in cases of necessity and in fine weather, find convenient anchorage, observing always due care and caution in approaching them, so as to guard against possible danger from some shoal spot having escaped detection by the lead.

Loai ta Bank extends 21 miles in a northeast and southwest direction and is 7 miles wide near its middle, tapering toward the ends.

Loai ta Island (Lat. 10° 41′ N., Long. 114° 25′ E.) lies 10° distant 18 miles from Itu Aba Island on Tizard Bank. It is a sand cay, 300 yards in diameter, covered with bushes, and surrounded by a reef extending in some places nearly ½ mile.

A reef, about 1.3 miles in extent, dry at low water, with a sand cay near the center, lies 5 miles northwestward of Loai ta Island. Another reef about 1.8 miles in extent, lies \frac{3}{4} mile to the southwestward of the one just mentioned. Not less than 4 fathoms was found anywhere on the northern edge of Loai ta Bank.

Lan kiam Cay and adjacent reefs.—A coral patch, ½ mile in extent, partly dry at low water, lies 75° distant 2 miles from Loai ta Island; and 67° distant about 6.8 miles from the same island, is a reef ¾ mile in diameter, having a sand cay near its center, known to the Hainan fishermen as Lan kiam.

At 3 and 4.5 miles northeastward from Lan kiam are two coral reefs which dry at low water, forming the southeastern extremity of Loai ta bank; no shallow reefs were found northward of these, though they may exist, the least depth being 6 fathoms near the northern end.

Thi tu Island and reefs consist of several dangerous patches upon two coral banks, 12 miles in length, separated by a narrow and deep channel.

Thi tu (Lat. 11° 3′ N., Long. 114° 16½′ E.) is a low sand island, about 800 yards in length, situated on the reef which forms the eastern extremity of the western bank. There are a few coconut and plantain trees near a small well.

**Banks.**—The western bank is 7 miles in length, with a maximum breadth of about 3.3 miles; its northern side is marked by a round coral reef,  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in diameter, between which and the island reef are depths of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 6 fathoms.

A sand cay lies on the northwestern edge of the bank, on a reef dry at low water and about 1.5 miles in extent; between it and the western extremity of the bank are reefs, nearly always marked by breakers. There is a passage into the lagoon between the sand cay reef and the reef eastward of it, with depths of 5 fathoms.

The southern extremity of the bank is marked by a small reef, situated 2 miles southwestward of the island.

The southern side of the bank is not nearly so dangerous as the northern side, and vessels may anchor upon it, with the sand cay on the northwestern side bearing between 36° and 328°, or to the eastward of the small reef on its southern extremity, where there is not less than 4 fathoms. In the lagoon the depths are as much as 19 fathoms.

The eastern bank is a mass of reefs and patches 4.5 miles in length, with a breadth of 2 miles; its western extremity is about 1,400 yards eastward of Thi tu Island reef.

Subi Reef (Lat. 10° 54′ N., Long. 114° 7′ E.), the northern end of which lies southwestward 12.5 miles from Thi tu Island, is an irregular shaped coral reef, 3.5 miles in length by 2 miles in breadth, dry at low water, and has a lagoon, into which there appears to be no passage; it usually breaks and is apparently steep-to.

North Danger Reef, of coral formation, is about 8.5 miles in length, northeast and southwest, 4.5 miles in breadth, and situated from 20 to 28 miles northward of Thi tu Islands.

On its northwestern side are two sand cays, each about ½ mile in length; northeast cay, the northern one (Lat. 11° 28′ N., Long. 114° 21′ E.) is 10 feet high, and the southern 15 feet. Between the cays is a passage 1 mile wide, with depths of about 5 fathoms leading into the lagoon of the reef, where the depth is from 20 to 27 fathoms.

Shallow water exists all round the edge of North Danger Reef, and there are heavy breakers over the coral, awash at its northeastern and southwestern extremities. No bottom could be obtained close to the edge of the reef with upward of 100 fathoms of line.

Both cays are covered with coarse grass, and on the northeastern of the two is a stunted tree. The cays are frequented by Chinese fishermen from Hainan, who collect bêche-de-mer, turtle shell, etc., and supply themselves with water from a well in the center of the northeastern cay.

Trident Shoal, lying 16 miles eastward of North Danger, is composed of coral, and is 7.5 miles in length by 6 miles in breadth; there are many patches on this shoal with less than 10 fathoms water over them, two of which are very shallow. The patches lie around the edge of the shoal, forming a lagoon, the depths in which are 20 to 35 fathoms; close outside the shoal there is no bottom at 100 fathoms.

The shallowest patch, situated at the northern extremity of the shoal, is about 2 miles in length, east and west, having near its center (Lat. 11° 31′ N., Long. 114° 39′ E.) a spot which dries at low water springs; the depths on other parts of the patch vary from 1 to 5 fathoms. Another shallow patch lies at the eastern extremity, with a least depth of 2½ fathoms. A depth of 4 fathoms was found on a head about a mile southwestward of the northern patch, but not less than 5 fathoms on any of the other patches.

Lys Shoal, about 5 miles in length, lies 2 miles southward of Trident Shoal, and like the latter is formed of a number of patches under 10 fathoms, with a lagoon in the center. A spot of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms was found, near the southwest extremity of the bank. Some 5-fathom patches exist near the northeast end of the bank, but nothing under 6 fathoms was discovered elsewhere; the bank is steep-to.

Reported Reef.—A reef on which the steamer Kasenga, drawing 16 feet of water, touched, is reported (1910) in Lat. 11° 50′ N., Long. 114° 37′ E., about 26.5 miles 39° from northeast cay, North Danger Reef.

WESTERN SIDE OF MAIN ROUTE-ISLANDS AND DANGERS.

Charlotte Bank, in Lat. 7° 8′ N., Long. 107° 35′ E., is the first bank met with on the western side of the main route northward of the Anamba Islands. It has a least depth of 5 fathoms, with from 32 to 40 fathoms around it, and is about 4 miles in length, east and west, by 2 miles in breadth.

Scawfell Shoal, originally reported in 1865 as a patch of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, practically in the position since found to be in, has a least depth of 5 fathoms, coral, near its center; it is  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in length, east and west, by  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile in breadth, within the 10-fathom curve, and situated in Lat. 7° 18′ N., Long. 106° 51′ E. The shoal at the time of examination by the Waterwitch in 1908 was not marked by discolored water nor by overfalls.

Pulo Condore Group, known as Connon by the Cochin Chinese, consists of about a dozen islands, situated about 45 miles from the coast of Cambodia, in the track of vessels proceeding between Singapore and Saigon River; their north extremity is distant 97 miles from Cape St. James, at the entrance to that river.

The principal island (Lat. 8° 41′ N., Long. 106° 36′ E.) is nearly 9 miles in length, northeast and southwest, from 2 to 4 miles in breadth, and is formed of a ridge of mountains the summit being flat-topped and 1,954 feet above high water. The eastern side is divided into two bays by a rocky peninsula, the northern of which is completely opened to the eastward; on the western side is Southwest Bay. Pulo Condore is encompassed by several smaller islands, which are mostly high and covered with trees, the highest attaining an elevation of 1,076 feet. The peak on Little Condore, 800 yards westward of the Gullet, forms an excellent landmark from the southward or westward.

Settlement—Supplies.—The French have established a fortified post and a penal settlement at the village in Great or East Bay. A small pier fronts the village. The island is but thinly populated, but it furnishes plenty of fruits and abounds with timber. The natives

rear a quantity of poultry and pigs. Water is procurable in Southwest Bay, southward of the landing place.

Telegraph.—Pulo Condore is connected with Cape St. James by submarine cable.

Communication.—The Messageries Maritime, Singapore to Saigon, steamers call here, also the Saigon-Bangkok line, giving communication with Saigon weekly.

Great or East Bay is formed by the projection from the main body of the island of two high points of land, which are about 4 miles apart. It is only available during the southwest monsoon period.

Islets.—Off the southern point, four islets, fringed with coral, extend nearly 1.5 miles, and off East Point is Hon Bai Kan, an island nearly 3 miles in length and 1,076 feet in height, also fringed with coral. Hon Lap, a small islet, lies off its southern side. Hon Kao, about a mile in extent and 797 feet in height, lies about 2 miles northeastward of Bai Kan.

Light.—From a rectangular white lighthouse, with red roof, erected on the eastern end of Hon Bai Kan, is exhibited at an elevation of 696 feet above the sea a fixed white light; it can be seen for 25 to 30 miles. (See Light List.)

Dangers.—East Bay, inside a line connecting its northern and southern points, is encumbered with an extensive shore flat and many detached shallow patches, on account of which vessels should not go inside that line except at the southwestern part of the bay, where the least-known depths are  $3\frac{1}{4}$  and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms.

The main entrance to the bay is barred by a flat which extends right across from Hon Gue to Hon Bai Kan, with depths under 5 fathoms and several patches of 2 to 3 fathoms, as shown on the plan.

In the deep-water anchorage between this bar and the shallows off the head of the bay is a patch of 2½ fathoms, steep-to, with White Rock in line with East Point, bearing 36°, the latter distant 1.7 miles. Patches of 4 to 5 fathoms are chartered in the southern part of the deep water, and others may exist as the bay has not been thoroughly examined.

Landmark.—A rock, nearly awash, lies 1 mile 176° from the pier at the village, and 800 yards from the western shore, with a remarkable rocky elevation in that direction bearing 264°.

A whitewashed mark is situated on the shore southeastward of the remarkable rock, and is a useful mark for making the anchorage.

There are no known dangers in the approach to the Pulo Condore group.

Directions.—Great or East Bay has three entrances. That from the southwestward between the southern point of the bay and Hon Cha is 600 yards wide, and apparently deep, but the water shoals to less than 5 fathoms within the island.

The second, or the channel from the southeastward, is between Hon Gue and Hon Bai Kan, over the bar which connects the two. The best water, about 4½ to 5 fathoms, will be found by passing from 200 to 400 yards northeastward of Hon Gue, about midway between it and the bank with 2 fathoms water to the eastward.

The passage from the northeastward between East Point and Hon Bai Kan is 1,340 yards wide and deep, but the soundings are very scant in the approach. When within the entrance, by keeping White Rock twice its breadth open from East Point, a vessel will pass eastward of the  $2\frac{3}{4}$ -fathoms patch in the fairway; when the remarkable rock situated on the northern slope of the hills on the south side of the bay bears 263°, or the white mark on the shore 255° the vessel will be southward of the patch, then steer for the southern point of the bay, anchoring as convenient.

If bound to the inner anchorage, steer in with the remarkable rock bearing 263° until the white mark bears 230° when bring it ahead, and gradually hauling to the northwestward to avoid the rock on the northern side of the approach.

Anchorages.—A good berth for a large vessel (which must enter by the northern channel) appears to be in 6 to 7 fathoms, with the summit of Hon Tai-leung, bearing about 182°, and Hon Lap 95°.

During the strength of the southwest monsoon, in order to avoid the sea, vessels of moderate or light draft should anchor farther westward, where, however, the squalls are heavier, but the holding ground is good, the bottom being grey mud, There appears to be good anchorage with depths of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to  $5\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, inside the ridge, which has  $3\frac{1}{4}$  and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms patches, with the southeren point of the bay bearing from 199° to 176°, and Hon Lap from 92° to 98°.

The inner anchorage, 199° about 1,600 yards from the landing pier has a depth of 3½ to 4 fathoms, as charted.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Pulo Condore at 2h. 30m.; springs rise 6 to 8 feet in Southwest Bay.

Northeast Bay offers convenient shelter in the southwest monsoon for vessels not wishing to enter Great Bay. It appears to be free from danger, but the depths decrease sharply within the 5-fathoms line. Vessels should therefore anchor in 7 fathoms, mud, or directly the water shoals under that depth.

White Rock lies east-northeastward, distant 3.4 miles from the northeastern point of the largest island of the Pulo Condore Group; it is apparently high, and there are depths of 17 to 22 fathoms at about 1 mile off, but none charted near it.

There is a bank of 8 fathoms 13 miles east-northeastward of white rock.

Southwest Bay is formed between the southwest end of the large island and the adjoining high island, Little Condore or Bae Vioung, 708 feet in height, the eastern point of which is separated from the southwestern point of the large island by a narrow channel. The entrance to the bay is about \frac{2}{4} mile wide, with depths of 7 to 9 fathoms, gravel and mud, decreasing to 5 fathoms near the flat that occupies the head of the harbor, and which is dry at low water for \frac{1}{2} mile. This bay is well sheltered by the surrounding hills, except from the northwestward, but the wind is seldom strong from that quarter; the heavy squalls, however, require precaution, but the holding ground is good.

Some islets lie off the northern point of this bay, northward of which is a high island named Hon Tap, having some rocks above and below water extending from its northwestern side.

Hon Tae, another high island, lies about a mile to the northwest-ward of Hon Tap; off its northeastern extremity is an islet. Hon Tae Niao is another island lying a little more than 2 miles northeastward of Hon Tae, having a reef and some rocks extending about 200 yards from its northern side.

The Brothers are two islets, about 3 miles apart, northeast and southwest, and situated 24 miles westward of the Pulo Condore group. The westernmost, Aride Isle (Lat. 8° 34′ N., Long. 106° 6′ E.), is a low barren rock, appearing white from the eastward, and has heavy breakers on its eastern side during strong winds. The easternmost is a round islet, 180 feet in height, covered with vegetation to its summit.

Wallace Bank was reported by the master of the British ship Wallace (1885) to be about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile in extent, with a depth of 8 fathoms, in Lat. 9° 32′ N., Long. 107° 40′ E.

Royal Bishop Bank (Lat. 9° 39' N., Long. 108° 15' E.), composed of coral, is 3.5 miles in length, and about 1.5 miles in breadth, with a depth of 10 fathoms over it, and 28 to 30 fathoms around; there may be less water.

A patch of 8 fathoms is charted in Lat. 10° 5′ N., Long. 108° 2′ E.

Pulo Sapatu, or Shoe Island (Lat. 9° 58′ N., Long. 109° 6′ E.), 347 feet high, is the easternmost of three islands, named the Catwicks. It is a barren rock, 670 yards in length, and visible in clear weather from a distance of about 22 miles.

When viewed from some directions it resembles a shoe; at others appears as a large square column; and from the eastward as a pyramid. Vessels generally endeavor to sight this island, or to pass within 25 miles of its eastern side, in proceeding up or down the main route of the China Sea.

With the exception of a rock awash, lying 50 yards eastward of its southern end, the island is steep-to; depths of 16 and 17 fathoms were

found at 400 yards eastward of it, and at  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile off in that direction 25 to 30 fathoms. On the western side the depths are greater.

Landing.—Under very favorable circumstances landing may be effected upon the rocks at the southern end of the island; otherwise it is inaccessible. It is frequented by sea birds in the breeding season.

Julia Shoal, with a depth of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, situated  $124^{\circ}$ , distant 3.5 miles from Pulo Sapatu, is of coral formation, and about  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile in extent.

Pyramid (Little Catwick), well open northward or southward of Pulo Sapatu, leads ½ mile or more clear of the shoal. With the Pyramid shut in behind Pulo Sapato a vessel will be inside the Julia Shoal if the angle of elevation of Pulo Sapatu be 1° 22′ or upwards, and outside the shoal if the angle of elevation be less than 0° 45′.

The Pyramid, or Little Catwick, is a pyramidal rock, 56 feet high and steep-to, lying about 2.3 miles west-northwestward of Pulo Sapatu.

The channel between this rock and Pulo Sapatu has a depth of about 60 fathoms, but it ought not to be used by a sailing vessel, as the currents are strong and irregular about these islands.

Round Island, or Great Catwick, is a barren rock 196 feet high, and about 300 yards in diameter, lying west-northwestward 11.5 miles from Sapatu; it has depths of 30 to 50 fathoms at a short distance in all directions.

La Paix rock is small, with a pinnacle awash and steep-to, lying in the channel between Round Island and Pyramid, the former bearing 275°, about 4.3 miles, and Pulo Sapatu is just open eastward of the Pyramid. Except in fine smooth weather, the sea always breaks upon this rock.

Yusun Shoal (Lat. 10° 16′ N., Long. 109° 2′ E.) is a coral patch of 4 fathoms, in the fairway of the channel between Pulo Cecir de Mer and the Catwicks, with the western hill of the former bearing 341°, distant 17.5 miles. Close around it are depths of 45 to 50 fathoms, which is the general depth of the middle of the channel, but about 1.5 miles west-northwest of the shoal are depths of 23 and 27 fathoms. In fine weather the shoal is not easily seen, but in the strength of the monsoons the sea has been frequently observed to break upon it.

There is reason to believe that the Yusun is the only danger in the channel between Cecir de Mer and the Catwicks, which is otherwise spacious and safe. The depths in the channel are few and irregular, and will be better understood by a reference to the chart.

Pulo Cecir de Mer is 3.5 miles in length north and south, and 1.5 miles in breadth, with two hills toward its northern end. The southwest hill has a round top, is 360 feet in height, and is visible in clear weather from a distance of about 25 miles. The northeast

79795—15——9



hill, 300 feet high, is conical, and has several masses of rock near its summit, which give it a jagged appearance.

No supplies.—Pulo Cecir de Mer is inhabited by poor fishermen and others, and is well cultivated, but no supplies can be obtained.

Islets and reefs.—Nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile off the northeast end of the island are several rocks, one 60 feet high, on the edge of the shore reef. Nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile off the northern end is a patch of 5 fathoms.

On the eastern side is a sandy bay, fronted by a coral reef to the distance of a mile or more; the reef is steep-to. At ½ mile off the southern end is an islet 132 feet in height, with a black rock beyond 30 feet in height. The reef which fronts the bay encircles these islets, and extends about 600 yards southeastward of the lastmentioned with rocks awash. The reef skirts the western shore at about 670 yards and is also steep-to.

Anchorage.—In seeking anchorage it must be borne in mind that the reef surrounding the island is steep-to. There is fair anchorage during the northeast monsoon period off the sandy shore forming the southwest and western sides of the island, in depths of 13 to 16 fathoms, sand and shells; but the best position is just southward of the southwest point, where vessels may conveniently anchor in 10 to 14 fathoms, at ½ mile from the shore reef, which is steep-to.

It is possible to obtain shelter in a steamer from the southwest monsoon by anchoring off the northeastern end in 14 or 15 fathoms; but the bottom is rocky, bad holding ground, and by no means to be recommended as an anchorage.

High rock, 50 feet high, and the resort of sea birds, lies nearly 5 miles northwestward of Cecir de Mer; 100 yards northward of it is a rock a few feet high, with a rock awash beyond it.

In the channel between Cecir de Mer and High rock the depths vary from 9 to 12 fathoms, coral. Near the rock are patches of 6 and 7 fathoms.

The channel between High rock and Holland Bank is about 9 miles wide, with depths varying from 7 to 10 fathoms on the patches, and to 15 to 20 fathoms between them; bottom generally sand, or sand and shells at the greater depths, and rocky on the patches.

Holland Bank is composed of coral, and within the depth of 19 fathoms is 6.5 miles in length by 4 miles in breadth. The shoalest patches are in its eastern half, and cover a space of about 2.5 miles, with an irregular bottom; the least depth found was 2½ fathoms, in Lat. 10° 39′ 30″ N., Long. 108° 42′ 30″ E.

The depths around the bank are very irregular, and afford no certain guide, but the bank is much steeper on its eastern edge than elsewhere. The lead, however, is not to be relied on in approaching that edge, for 20 fathoms may be obtained at one cast, and about 4 fathoms at the next. Vessels should pass westward of the bank.

Clearing marks.—Vessels passing northward of the bank should not bring the southwest hill of Cecir de Mer eastward of 131°; and those passing southward of the bank should not bring the same hill to the southward of 103°.

The dangers to the westward of Holland Bank are described with the mainland in Chapter V.

Marne Bank is charted 252°, distant 23 miles from the summit of Pulo Ce cir de Mer, and is 3.5 miles in extent east and west with a depth of fathoms over it. Has not been examined.

Juniata Bank.—The U. S. S. Juniata, 1888, reported having obtained soundings in 30 fathoms, fine grey sand, in a position about 40 miles eastward of Pulo Cecir de Mer (Lat. 10° 32′ N., Long. 109° 38′ E.).

Minerva Bank, with 28 fathoms, the locality of which is doubtful, is said to lie near the Main track (Lat. 10° 38′ N., Long. 110° 19′ E.).

Search was made in H. M. S. surveying vessel Rifleman on and near the supposed position of this bank, but no bottom was obtained with 200 fathoms; as a thorough examination was not made it may, however, exist somewhere near its assigned position. H. M. S. Sirius, 1904, sounded near this spot, obtaining no bottom at 95 fathoms. See Kiev Bank below.

Reported Bank.—The commander of the steamer Kiev, of the Russian volunteer fleet, reported in 1908 as having sounded on a bank with about 39 fathoms, apparently in Lat. 10° 15′ 45″ N., Long. 110° 13′ 15″ E., and also in the year 1901, obtaining a sounding of 34 fathoms in about Lat. 10° 10′ N., Long. 110° 10′ E.

H. M. surveying vessel Waterwitch again unsuccessfully searched for this bank in 1912.

## PARACEL ISLANDS AND REEFS.

General remarks.—The description of these islands and reefs is principally from the German Government surveys, executed between the years 1881–1884.

The Paracel Islands and reefs are an extensive group of low coral islands and reefs, lying between Lat. 15° 46′ N., and 17° 5′ N., Long. 111° 13′ E. and 112° 47′ E. They consist of two principal groups, the Amphitrite and Crescent, and several reefs and islets. They were annexed by the Chinese Government in 1909.

In fine weather and a clear atmosphere there is no difficulty in navigating between the reefs of the Paracel Groups with a lookout aloft, as the trees on the several islands, the heads of rock above water on some of the reefs, and the sea breaking over most of them, give warning of approach to the dangers. In misty or bad weather they should be avoided, and there seems nothing to be gained in passing between them unless seeking anchorage. Sailing vessels



should avoid these dangers at all times, for during calms they may be drifted on to the reefs, close to which there is no anchorage. Many wrecks occur here.

The anchorages are mostly open, affording shelter, only with the wind off the islands; these are mentioned with the several islands.

Tides and currents.—At the Crescent Group it is high water, full and change, at about 10h. 30m., springs rise 3 feet (see remarks on tides, page 59). The current runs generally with the wind in both monsoons, but in light winds between the monsoons they are continually changing their direction among the reefs, and sometimes attain the rate of 2 miles an hour.

Triton Island (Lat. 15° 46′ 30″ N., Long. 111° 14′ 30″ E.), the southwesternmost of the Paracels, is a sand cay, about 3 feethigh and a little more than a mile in length; it stands on a coral reef, which extends about 1.5 miles northward and northeastward, and to about ½ mile in other directions. The reef has not more than 6 feet of water over it, and is steep-to.

This island is the breeding place of sea birds.

Passu Keah, situated about 37 miles east-northeastward from Triton Island, is a sand cay situated on the western end of a coral reef, which is 5 miles in length in an east and west direction and steep-to.

Discovery Reef, about 9 miles northward of Passu Keah, is 16 miles in length in an east and west direction by about 5 miles in breadth, and is steep-to, with several rocks a few feet above water; there is barely a depth of 2 fathoms over any part of it. There is a large opening on its southern side into the lagoon, and a smaller one on its northern side, used by the Chinese fishing boats; the overfalls are very heavy on the reef.

Vuladdore Reef, lying 6 miles northeastward of Discovery Reef, is 7 miles in extent, east and west, 2.8 miles in breadth, and steep-to. It has a few small rocks on it above water, with high breakers at times.

Bombay Reef forms the southeastern corner of the Paracels Group; it is of oblong form, 13 miles in length, east and west, enclosing a lagoon; some of the rocks on its edge are awash, and four of them are above high water. The reef is steep-to, and breaks. Eastern extremity lies in Lat. 16° 5′ N., Long. 112° 38′ E.

Bremen Bank is situated about 12 miles northward of Bombay Reef, and is 12 miles in length within a depth of 20 fathoms; the shoalest water found is 7 fathoms at the southwestern part of the bank.

Jehangire Bank, about 6 miles in length, consists of three detached patches lying about 5 miles east-northeastward of the Bremen. The depths on the bank are very irregular; 7 fathoms is the least known depth, and it is situated at the southwestern extremity of the southern one.

Lincoln Island (Lat. 16° 40′ N., Long. 112° 44′ E.), the eastern of the Paracel Islands, is 1.3 miles in length, a little more than ½ mile wide, and about 15 feet high, the northeastern side being bold. It is covered with trees and brushwood, and surrounded by a coral reef, dry at low water, which extends from 200 to 600 yards. One of the coconut trees is said to form a good landmark.

The position of the observation spot (marked by a post) on the western side of Lincoln Island, was determined by the officers of the German Government survey in 1883, as in Lat. 16° 40′ N., Long. 112° 43′ 30″ E.

A narrow coral shoal projecting southward from its southeastern point, is said to extend 11 miles, and to be studded with rocks, but judging from the soundings that were obtained by the surveying vessel Rifleman, the dangerous part of the shoal does not extend more than 3 miles from the island; time did not admit of its being further examined. None of it should be crossed. Depths of less than 10 fathoms extend about 1 mile northwestward of the island.

On the northern and eastern sides of the island the depths increase rapidly, but towards the south and southwestward, depths under 40 fathoms were obtained for nearly 20 miles.

Anchorage.—Good anchorage can be obtained in the northeast monsoon under the lee of the island, in a depth of 10 fathoms, coral, about ½ mile from the shore. An anchor is charted on the northern side of the island, where possibly some shelter may be found in the opposite monsoon. In the center of the island, close to a stunted coconut tree, there is a well, dug by the Chinese fishermen, into which the water filters.

Pyramid rock, a small cone-shaped rock, 17 feet high, lies about 7.3 miles southwestward from Lincoln Island; at a distance it might be mistaken for a junk.

Dido Bank, discovered by H. M. S. Dido in 1844, is a small bank with 13 fathoms, sand, with 80 fathoms and greater depths around it; it lies 50°, distant 12.5 miles from the northern end of Lincoln Island.

The Amphitrite Group is the northeasternmost of the Paracels; the two portions of the group, lying north and south of each other, are separated by a deep-water channel, 4 miles wide.

The northern group consists of two reefs separated by Zappe Pass. The westernmost of these reefs is 6 miles in length by 1.8 miles in breadth, with a sand cay near its western end, and Tree Island 2 miles within its eastern end. The northern and eastern sides of these reefs are steep-to, but on the southern and western sides depths of 5 to 20 fathoms will be found at a short distance from the reef; at the southwestern corner of this group the 10-fathoms line is a mile from the reef.

Tree Island—Anchorages.—Tree Island, covered with mangrove bushes, and surrounded by a white sand beach, may be recog-

nized by the palm tree (30 feet high) near its center. It is much frequented by Chinese fishermen, the southwestern side of the island affording sheltered anchorage in the northeast monsoon period close to it for junks, in 13 feet water. The channel leading to this anchorage is on the southern side of the reef, and is 400 yards wide with a depth of 4 to 6 feet at low water. Under North and Middle Islands there is anchorage in from 11 to 16 fathoms, sand.

The southeastern reef of this group, on which there are three islands covered with mangrove bushes, is 4 miles in length northwest and southeast, and has three sand cays near its southern end; vegetation is increasing on these cays.

Landing can be effected in the openings on the southern side of this reef between the islets and cays.

Zappe Pass is about ½ mile wide between the reef on either side, with a least known depth of 2½ fathoms in mid-channel; it is only available for small craft during smooth water. With a fresh breeze the breakers extend right across; there is usually a strong current through it.

The southern group consists of Woody and Rocky Islands lying near each other and on the same surrounding reef.

Woody Island (Lat. 16° 50′ N., Long. 112° 21′ E.), the southern and largest island of the group, is about 1 mile in length, surrounded by a white sand beach, and covered with trees; landing can be effected on the lee side.

Rocky Islet, northeastward of Woody Island, and on the same reef, is from 40 to 50 feet high.

The reef surrounding these islands extends to a distance of 600 yards in places, and dries at low water. There are depths of 16 to 30 fathoms at a distance of 1 mile from the north, west, and southwestern sides of Woody Island Reef, decreasing to 8 or 9 fathoms close-to; and a bank, having 3 to 10 fathoms, extends upwards of 3 miles in a southeasterly direction from this reef, steep-to, on its eastern side.

Anchorage.—During southerly winds good anchorage may be obtained in 13 fathoms, sand, about ½ mile north of Woody Island Reef. With northeasterly winds there is good anchorage in 18 to 20 fathoms, sand, about ¼ mile from the southwestern side of the reef. The bottom for 5 miles seaward of this anchorage is fairly even with depths of 27 to 30 fathoms.

Iltis Bank, 3 miles in length and 1.5 miles in breadth, with depths of 8 to 10 fathoms and fairly steep-to, lies 7 miles 238° from Woody Island.

The Crescent Group of islands and reefs consist of six low sand islands, for the most part connected by reefs, stretching nearly east and west in the form of a crescent; on the southeastern horn of the cres-

cent is Drummond Island, and on an isolated reef westward of it the two Duncan Islands with an opening 5.5 miles wide between its reef and the Antelope Reef, which lies about 2 miles eastward of Money, the western island of the group. This opening, with a patch of 5 fathoms charted in the fairway, is on the southern side of the chain; within the crescent are irregular depths of 20 to 40 fathoms with coral heads in places.

Anchorage.—The best anchorage is near to the reef, on the northern side of Duncan Islands, in 10 to 15 fathoms, where there are some broad patches of sandy bottom. The Chinese fishing boats anchor on the reef between the two islands, where there are depths of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms.

Duncan Islands, of coral, and covered with shrubs, are surrounded by a reef extending about 1.3 miles east and west, with a breadth of 1,350 yards, and steep-to. The eastern and larger island, with trees about 20 feet high, and ½ mile in length, has on its southern side a well, near two coconut palms. There is a white flagstaff on the northeastern end of the island about 10 feet higher than the trees. The bushes on the western island are about 10 feet high, and there is a coconut palm near its center, forming a good landmark.

Drummond Island, about ½ mile in length, with a breadth of 450 yards, is covered with brushwood and mangrove trees about 15 feet in height, with a higher palm near the center. It is separated from the Duncan Islands by a channel 1.5 miles wide. In using this channel vessels should pass the Duncan Islands at a distance of ½ to ½ mile; there is anchorage close westward of Drummond Island Reef.

Cays.—Observation Bank is situated at the northern extremity of the Crescent Group; there are several sand cays from 3 to 10 feet high, on the reef between it and Drummond Island; the one on Observation Bank (and possibly others) is covered with brushwood.

Pattle Island, on the northwestern side of the group, is 1,000 yards in length, 500 yards in breadth, and about 30 feet high; on the southern side there is a bight where a boat may land, but not easily, at low water, as there are stones near the shore. The island is covered with brushwood and mangroves from 10 to 15 feet high, and at about one-third its length from the western end are three coconut palms, the top of the highest being about 40 feet above the sea, forming a good landmark.

The reef surrounding the island extends 1.8 miles northeastward of it, and has a rock above water on its edge, about 400 yards northward of Pattle. On either side of this reef there is a clear channel.

H. M. S. Flora, in October, 1909, took off the crew of the Ragnai, wrecked here a few days previously.

Water was obtained by the crew of the Ragnai by digging near the palms; it required boiling to render it more palatable.

Robert Island, oval in shape, and 26 feet high, is nearly 800 yards in length; it is covered with vegetation and has a well of water. A reef surrounds the island, but there is landing on the eastern side.

Money Island is situated on the western side of a reef 3 miles in extent and steep-to; it is 1,400 yards in length, about 20 feet in height, and covered with brushwood. Several sand cays lie eastward of it on the same reef.

The tidal streams run parallel to the edges of the reef at the rate of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  knots an hour at times.

Antelope Reef, lying eastward of Money Island, is 3 miles in length by 2 miles in breadth, and partly dry at low water, with a cay on its southeastern extremity.

North Reef, the northwestern danger of the Paracels, is about 6 miles in length, east and west, 3 miles in breadth, and steep-to in most places. The edge of the reef all around has rocks just above water, and the noise of the breakers over the reef may be heard from some distance at times. The remains of three vessels were visible on this reef in 1910 from a distance of 6 or 7 miles. The wreck of a steamship with two masts standing, but no funnel, lies on the southwestern edge of North Reef (1914). On the southwestern side is a boat passage into the lagoon. The western extremity of the reef is in Lat. 17° 2′ 30′′ N., Long. 111° 29′ 00′′ E.

Hotspur Shoal, on which an American ship of this name was said to have been wrecked in 1860, is charted in Lat. 16° 50′ N., Long. 111° 30′ E.; it was probably the North Reef that this vessel struck upon; was not seen by H. M. S. Linnet when here in 1893.

Macclesfield Bank, discovered by the English ship of that name in 1701, lies between Lat. 15° 24′ N. and 16° 15′ N., and Long. 113° 40′ E. to 114° 57′ E.

Reports of shallow water on the edge of this bank caused its partial survey by H. M. S Penguin in 1892 and Egeria in 1892-93. A previous partial survey showed that this coral bank rose rapidly out of deep water, was about 75 miles in length in a northeasterly and opposite direction, with an extreme breadth of 33 miles, and that it was a submerged atoll, with a general depth of about 40 fathoms over a large part of its area, and with distinct indications of a shallow rim surrounding this area. The general result of the whole examination may be stated to be that on the whole of the 200 miles forming the periphery of the bank there exists a coral rim about 3 miles wide of luxurious growth and at a remarkably even depth below the surface of from 7 to 14 fathoms; this rim being broken here and there by passages of greater depth, but less than the general depths of from 40 to 50 fathoms, which prevail over the central portion of the bank.

On one spot only of the rim (near its northeastern end on Pigmy Shoal) was a depth of as little as  $6\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms found, and on a patch in the center of the lagoon a small spot of 5 fathoms (Walker Shoal) was

the shoalest water found. Banks under 10 fathoms have been given the names of surveying officers chiefly. The western portion has only been partially surveyed.

The depth of the surrounding ocean is about 1,300 fathoms, the bottom globgierina ooze; the south face of the bank is almost perpendicular to 600 fathoms, the west is very steep, but the north face slopes gradually from 60 fathoms, close to the rim, to 200 fathoms at 10 miles northward.

Caution.—The bank may generally be seen from aloft on approaching by the greenish color of the water. In heavy weather the sea on its edge is high and confused. As it is quite possible that shallow coral heads may exist in the unsurveyed portion, and that others may have escaped the lead in the part which has been more fully examined, it is recommended that vessels should pass either eastward or westward of Macclesfield Bank, and not over it.

Shoals—Helen Shoal (Lat. 19° 12′ N., Long. 113° 53′ E.), between Macclesfield Bank and Hongkong, is 2 miles in length, east and west, and 1 mile in breadth. The least water found is 6½ fathoms, the general depths being 8 and 9 fathoms, with no bottom at 100 fathoms close around.

St. Esprit Shoal (Lat. 19° 33′ N., Long. 113° 2′ E.), about 55 miles west-northwestward of Helen Shoal, of coral formation, is about 2 miles in length, east and west, and 1 mile in breadth. The general depths on this shoal are 9 fathoms, the least water obtained being 7 fathoms, with from 60 to 80 fathoms at a short distance.

Current.—Strong tide-rips were observed in the vicinity of St. Esprit and Helen Shoals, but on examination deep water was found to exist. The current was found to set generally with the wind.

Pratas Reef and Island—Pratas Island (Lat. 20° 42′ N., Long. 116° 43′ E.) is situated on the western side, on the middle of the sunken part of Pratas Reef. It is about 1.5 miles in length, east and west, ½ mile in breadth, and 40 feet in height, of which elevation the bushes, with which it is covered, form about 10 feet. It is visible from a distance of about 12 miles in clear weather. In the hazy weather, which generally prevails during the northeast monsoon, the island is seldom visible beyond 5 or 6 miles, and the breakers at the edge of the reef may possibly not be seen until within 1 mile of them.

The island is composed of sand, and its shape is that of a horse-shoe; the two prongs, extending westward from the main portion, inclose a shallow inlet about a mile in length from the bar at its entrance to the settlement at its northeast arm; it affords shelter to the Chinese fishing craft which come here in the early part of the year. Coral reef, dry at low water, extends 800 yards westward of the entrance, at which distance its edge trends north and south. Shoal patches exist for a distance of 1.5 miles north and 2.5 miles

south of the island, with North and South Channels beyond. Brackish water can be obtained near the settlement by digging a few feet into the sand. Sea birds are numerous in the breeding season.

Surveying beacons were erected during the survey, February to May, 1911, and they will probably remain some time.

Pratas Reef, the northeastern point of which (Lat. 20° 46′ 30″ N., Long. 116° 53′ E.) is over 10 miles from the island, is a coral barrier of circular form, inclosing a lagoon with 5 to 10 fathoms water, thickly studded with coral knolls round its margin, but comparatively clear near the middle. The reef is about 40 miles in circumference and 1 to 2 miles in breadth. The north, east, and southern sides are just dry at low-water springs and steep-to; the western side forms a sunken barrier, across which are two channels leading into the lagoon, one on each side of Pratas Island.

The North Channel lies between the island and the edge of the breakers, and a depth of about 3 fathoms may be carried near the middle of it at low-water springs, but it is encumbered with patches with as little as 2 feet in places. The South Channel is by far the better of the two, being wider and a little deeper, and is less encumbered with coral knolls; this channel is apparently available for vessels of 15 feet draft; great caution, however, is required, and the vessel should be conned from aloft, having, if possible, the sun astern or abaft the beam.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at about 9h. 28m.; with a spring rise of about 5 feet.

Anchorages.—Although Pratas Reef is steep-to in most parts, there are several spots where, in case of necessity, a vessel might find anchorage outside the breakers; particularly on the western side, abreast the middle of the North and South Channels over the sunken part of the reef, and at the distance of about 2 and 2.5 miles, respectively, on either side of the island. At each of these spots there is good anchorage in the northeast monsoon, in 20 to 10 fathoms, but the position abreast the South Channel is considered the better of the two, the sunken reef at this part being deeper and the bottom more even than in the channel north of the island. There is anchorage in about 20 fathoms, coral and clay, at about 1 mile westward of the western end of the island. A vessel of light draft might even anchor in safety on the reef in the middle of the South Channel entrance, in  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at low water, or cross it and take up a berth inside the lagoon in 10 fathoms, fine sand.

An anchorage is shown on the new survey in about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, with the mast at the settlement in line with the central beacon (pole with diamond topmark) bearing 29°, distant (the beacon) 3.2 miles. Another, near the western end of the island, at the edge of the 5-fathoms curve, with the mast in line with the bay beacon (triangle topmark) bearing 65°, the latter distant 1.7 miles.



Many coral knolls doubtless exist besides those marked on the plan. Directions.—During the strength of the monsoons sailing vessels should always endeavor to pass to leeward of Pratas Reef, on account of the invariable set of the current to leeward; for there are no soundings to indicate a near approach, and the weather is frequently thick and hazy in this vicinity. The safest quarter to make the reef is from the westward, the island being on its western side, and the currents in the neighborhood invariably running in a northeast or opposite direction, according to the monsoon. Approaching the reef a vessel should be conned from aloft, as with the sun in a favorable position the bottom can be seen in 10 fathoms.

Caution.—The Pratas Reef, lying in the route between Manila and Hongkong, is a serious danger, especially in the northeast monsoon, when strong gales and thick clouds are sometimes prevalent for weeks together; and as, in this monsoon, vessels generally approach the reef from the southeastward, the greater number of wrecks have occurred on this side.

Tide rips, having the appearance of a heavy line of breakers, were observed from the steamer Wheeling, about 40 miles northeastward of the Pratas; probably fish.

Vereker Banks, two in number, are situated about 40 miles northwestward of Pratas Reef; both are steep-to, with deep water between and around them.

North Vereker Bank is 11 miles in length, in a northwest and southeast direction, and 7 miles in breadth within a depth of 100 fathoms; the least depth obtained was 35 fathoms, 2 miles southeastward of the center of the bank. No live coral was found. Center, Lat. 21° 8′ N., Long. 116° 2′ E.

South Vereker Bank, 8 miles in length, has a least depth of 32 fathoms, 2 miles westward of the center of the bank. The depths between the banks are from 150 to 180 fathoms.

Heavy overfalls and tide rips were met with in the vicinity of these banks.

Bank.—A sounding of 32 fathoms, sand and mud, has been obtained southwestward of Vereker Banks, in (approximately) Lat. 20° 40′ N., Long. 115° 18′ E.

Current.—During the examination of Vereker Banks (February) the current ran between west-northwest and south-southwest, from ½ to 1 knot per hour; the prevailing set was between west-northwest and west-southwest. The current at times sets to windward. During calms or light southwest winds, the current sets between south-southeast and east-southeast, with a rate of from ½ to 1 knot per hour.

Hongkong approach.—For the approaches to Hongkong, see Chapter IX and Chapter X.

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE GULF OF SIAM.

## WESTERN SHORE OF THE GULF.

General remarks.—Northward of the State of Pahang is the State of Tringano, and beyond it is the State of Kelantan, all under British protection. (See Chapter I.) The country inland is a vast forest with only narrow footpaths, and is watered by numerous streams; in Tringano there are no less than 12, the principal of which bears the name of the State; some of these compare favorably with the Rumpin and Kuantan in Pahang. The Sungi Kelantan in Kelantan State is navigable by light steam launches for about 80 miles from the sea, and unlike the Tringano is but little obstructed by rapids.

Trading season.—During the northeast monsoon period trade may be considered closed, as these rivers are mostly impracticable except at high water springs combined with moderate or fine weather; small coasting steamers run regularly, fortnightly, entering the rivers at the time mentioned when practicable, or anchoring outside. During the southwest monsoon period the sea is calm, and trade in the rivers is more or less brisk.

The coast is composed of bright sandy beaches, interspersed with rocky points and in places massive headlands, and unlike the west coast of the peninsula is free from mangrove.

Coast.—From Tanjong Dungun (Lat. 4° 47′ N., Long. 103° 27′ E.), abreast Pulo Brala, the coast trends north-northwestward to Tringano head, with Pulo Kapas about 3 miles in the offing. Siatin rocks are the only known danger.

Siatin rocks are two in number; the outer one, with a depth of 6 feet, and 8 fathoms at a short distance around, lies 1.7 miles offshore, with the mouth of Sungi Siatin bearing 205°, distant about 2.5 miles; the other has a depth of 11 feet, and lies 400 yards westward of the outer rock.

Pulo Kapas, the southwestern point of which is in Lat. 5° 13′ N., Long. 103° 16′ E., is 1.5 miles in length, north and south, ¾ mile in breadth, and 478 feet in height. A large rock lies 200 yards northwestward of it, and the southwestern side of the island is foul to a short distance. The island is fertile, and inhabited by fishermen, who cultivate a few vegetables for their own consumption.

Digitized by Google

Tringano Head, situated 5 miles west-northwestward of Pulo Kapas, is remarkable as the only rocky point in the neighborhood. The hill within attains a height of 816 feet.

A rock awash at high water lies \( \frac{1}{4} \) mile from the beach, and 1.5 miles southward of Sungi Tringano entrance.

Sungi Tringano (Lat. 5° 22′ N., Long. 103° 8′ E.).—The entrance to this river may be known by the large opening it makes in the coast line, as well as by a remarkable hill, 755 feet in height, in the form of a cone, situated 1 mile southward of the town. There is also in the town on the river front a steep hill, 100 feet high, with a fort and flagstaff. The river has a bar with a depth of 7 feet at low water springs; within the bar, and just below the town, there is good anchorage in 4 to 5 fathoms, but the river abreast of the town is shallow.

Wood, water, and fresh stock can be procured.

Light.—In the fort, near the flagstaff, on a hill 100 feet in height, a fixed white light is exhibited from a white circular tower, visible about 2 miles. The light is unreliable.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at the entrance of Sungi Tringano, at 8h.; springs rise 7 feet, irregular.

Coast—Eulo rocks.—The coast from the entrance of the Tringano trends northwestward about 9 miles, and is low to Eulo village, where the high land approaches close to the beach. Eulo rocks, a small group, 6 feet high, lie off the village, 250 yards from the beach.

Seal bluff lies 6 miles northwestward of Eulo, and is situated 2.5 miles northward of a cone-shaped hill, 675 feet in height. The whole of the coast from Sungi Tringano is fronted by a shallow bank to the distance of about a mile.

Coast.—From Seal bluff the coast continues its northwestern direction for about 60 miles to the mouth of Sungi Kelantan, with several off-lying islands. Sungi Libih discharges about 15 miles northwestward of Seal bluff, and within it is a mountain range 3,388 feet in height.

The coast is low and fronted by a sandy beach until within 2 miles of Turtleback Island, 346 feet high and 2 miles offshore, where there are two bluffs. From abreast Turtleback Island to about 15 miles northward, as far as it has been examined, it is fronted by a bank with less than 3 fathoms water.

Seal rocks consist of three rocks, the extremities of which lie north and south, nearly a mile apart. The southernmost rock is 7 feet high, the middle rock 2 feet, and the northernmost 3 feet.

The southernmost rock lies nearly 2.5 miles from Seal bluff, having a channel between it and the bluff, with depths of 6 fathoms. A rock, awash at low water, lies ½ mile northward of the bluff. Both should be given a berth of ½ mile.

Bukit Trokit is a rock 140 feet high, situated 4 miles northward of Seal rocks. There is a smaller rock, 5 feet high, lying nearly a mile westward of Bukit Trokit.

House rock, lying northwestward about 10.8 miles from Seal bluff, and 3.3 miles offshore, is so named from its appearance.

Off-Lying Islands—Little Redang Island, or Pulo Bedung (Lat. 5° 38′ N., Long. 103° 4′ 30″ E.), 985 feet high, lies 7.5 miles northeastward of Seal bluff; there is an islet ½ mile southward of Little Redang, with about 9 fathoms water between.

Pulo Gulu is an islet situated 1.5 miles northward of Little Redang, with Tikoro, a smaller one, ½ mile beyond.

Pulo Yu kechil and Pulo Yu besar, situated 5 miles east of Little Redang, are two islets a mile apart in a north and south direction, with a depth of 24 fathoms midway between them. Pulo Yu kechil, the southern island, is 209 feet high; Pulo Yu besar is 316 feet in height.

Great Redang, 1,139 feet high, situated 12 miles northward of Seal bluff, is 4 miles in length, north and south, 3 miles in breadth, and fairly steep-to all round. It has several islets and rocks on its southern and eastern sides, but they are all steep-to. The island is thickly wooded, and a valley with mangrove swamp and a freshwater stream running down to the harbor divides it from north to south.

There is a bay on the northern side and a small harbor on the southern side of the island, the heads of which are connected by low land, giving to Great Redang the appearance of two islands at a distance. The harbor, with depth of 3 to 5 fathoms, is protected to the southward by Pulo Pinang, 458 feet high, and, although small, might be useful to a small vessel in distress, being easy of access. A coral reef extends about 50 yards off the eastern point of the harbor, increasing to about 200 yards off the bight within the harbor.

In the southern approach, at 300 yards 345° from Bukit Mara, is a rock awash at low water.

The passage northward of Pulo Pinang has a depth of 5 fathoms, but it is only 200 yards wide, and dangerous when the tidal stream runs strong. The most open approach to the harbor is eastward of Pulo Pinang in a least depth of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms.

Anchorage.—A vessel requiring wood and water in the south-west monsoon can anchor outside the harbor in a depth of 10 fathoms, with Bukit Mara, a small islet off the southern part of the island, bearing 182°, distant ½ mile.

Water.—The only convenient watering place along this line of coast is at Great Redang Island.

Village.—There is a village on Pulo Pinang, and a few huts scattered in different parts of Great Redang. The chief man holds his

office from the Sultan of Tringano. Turtle may be caught in the proper season on the beach at the north end of Redang.

Pulo Lantinga, 520 feet high, lies 5 miles west of Great Redang; the space between has not been sounded.

Printian Islands.—This group, lying about 15 miles north-westward of Great Redang, is also safe to approach; the easternmost island is 1,134 feet and the westernmost 1,195 feet in height. The islands are inhabited, but fresh water is scarce.

The channel between the two large islands is nearly ½ mile wide in the narrowest part, in which rocks above water extend a considerable distance from the eastern island. There is good anchorage for small craft on either side of the channel, but the most secure is to the southward.

High rock, 735 feet in height, with offlying islets, lies 2 miles northwest of Printian Island; the channel between has a depth of about 12 fathoms.

The channel between the Printian Islands and the mainland is safe, with depths of 8 to 10 fathoms in the fairway. There are no dangers that are not apparent, and attention to the lead will generally indicate the distance from the land.

Coast.—Menchat is a village on the coast, with about 500 inhabitants. A conspicuous object near it is a group of five coconut trees. A white flag is hoisted on a white staff when vessels are passing. The coast to the southward of the village is covered with jungle for about 2 miles, where it ceases, being replaced by coconut trees.

Anchorage.—There is a depth of 3 fathoms off the village, sand and shell bottom, deepening gradually to 7 and 8 fathoms, at 5 miles off-shore.

Supplies.—Cattle, goats, pigs, fowls, etc., are obtainable; the water is of indifferent quality.

Sungi Kelantan.—The delta of this river, formed by the deposits brought down by the several streams, has resulted in a considerable projection of the coast line, with sand spits, situated 1 and 2 miles seaward of it, as shown in the sketch plan. It consists of several mouths which connect above the delta and below the town. During floods a temporary channel is scoured over the bar. In 1902 the best channel was abreast the light structure, but both the depth and direction of this and the other branches are continually changing. The entrances are sometimes blocked up altogether after gales of wind and new ones formed. The river at the town is about 400 yards broad and 2 fathoms deep; its banks here are very sandy.

The river is about 120 miles in length, taking its rise near the summit of the inland range of mountains to the southwestward.

The river is navigable for about 80 miles for steam launches drawing 2 feet. June and July are the months when there is least water in the river.



Light.—On the mainland, near the western end of the delta of the river, from a square wooden structure, painted white, a revolving white light, with a period of 7 seconds, is exhibited, at an elevation of 87 feet above high water, visible in clear weather at the distance of about 6 miles. The light is unreliable.

Directions.—Vessels approaching the river from the south-eastward will be guided to it somewhat by three small hills, situated near the coast 12 miles to the southward, within Menchat, but they are said not to be conspicuous. Two of these hills, named the Paps, are 300 feet high; the third, Wedge Hill, is 400 feet in height. The Paps will be in line with the sandy point eastward of the river when bearing 162°. The light structure made a good daymark for approaching the river entrance, which was situated near it in 1902, but the entrance is constantly changing; the lead should be kept going. There is open anchorage off the mouths of the river in depths of 6 to 12 fathoms.

There is a mooring buoy for small craft in 2½ fathoms, at 1.5 miles 309° true from the lighthouse.

The town of Kelantan, or Kota Bahru, stands on the right bank of the main river, 13 miles from the entrance, near the confluence of its delta, which consists of five streams. It extends about a mile along the river front, and has a population of about 10,000, the greater part being Malays and Chinese. The houses are built chiefly of bamboo and atap.

The whole delta of the river is fertile and highly cultivated; it produces quantities of coconuts, a great variety of fruits and vegetables, maize, rice, tobacco, etc. Bullocks, sheep, goats, and fowls are plentiful.

Trade.—A considerable amount of trade in cattle, rice, and produce is carried on.

Telegraph.—There is a telegraph station at Kelantan.

The coast for 40 miles northwestward of Sungi Kelantan has not been surveyed, but is believed to be safe to approach.

It is low land as far as the conical hill, 1,158 feet in height, on the coast about midway, and also beyond it to Hilly Cape.

A range of mountains, the Sarong Lang, attaining a height of 2,643 feet, lies about 8 miles within the coast northward of Conical Hill.

Menara Village, with about 700 inhabitants, is situated on the coast at about 3 miles northwest of Conical Hill, on the right bank of a small river.

A shifting sandbank extends from the southern entrance point of the river in an east-northeast direction for a distance of about 1 mile, and a bar, having over it a depth of 3 feet at low water springs, obstructs the entrance. Spring tides rise about 7 feet. A mudbank extends from the right bank within the entrance nearly halfway across the channel lying close to the left bank as far as the village, which is situated ½ mile from the entrance. Good anchorage, in 2½ fathoms, soft mud, is found off the village.

A white light is generally exhibited at night on the approach of a vessel, but this can not be depended upon.

Supplies.—Cattle, fruit, and vegetables are easily obtained, and good fresh water. Small steamers from Singapore and Bangkok call frequently.

Baltu Rakil (Lat. 6° 41' N., Long. 101° 44' E.) is a white rock, 35 feet in height, and steep-to; between it and the mainland there is a channel 3 miles wide, with depths of 6 to 7 fathoms in the fairway.

Telupin.—This village, with about 800 inhabitants, under the rule of the Sultan of Patani, is situated on Sungi Telupin, at about 1.5 miles within the entrance.

An isolated clump of high trees is situated northward of the entrance to the river, and there is a high white flagstaff.

The mouth of Sungi Telupin is obstructed by a shifting bar, over which at times there is only a depth of 2 or 3 feet at low water.

Telupin should be approached with the clump of high trees bearing 294°, and anchorage obtained in a depth of 3 fathoms, blue mud bottom, at a distance of  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile from the shore.

During the northeast monsoon the heavy surf prevents loading or discharging cargo.

Fruit, fish, cattle, and good fresh water can be obtained. The chief exports are rice, copra, damar, and rubber.

Hilly Cape is the northern extremity of a chain of hills which attain a height of 1,636 feet in Bukit Tuna, 7 miles within, southward of which is a Table range 1,304 feet high. The cape is remarkable from its two steep bluffs Grigre and Burrawas.

Pulo Lozin lies in the offing at 40 miles northeastward of Hilly Cape in about latitude 7° 22′ N., longitude 102° 0′ E.; it is about 100 feet in length, 7 feet high, and steep-to all round. A depth of 29 fathoms was obtained at 300 yards south-southeast of it.

Tanjong Patani is a low narrow sandy point covered with high trees, situated 16 miles west-nortwestward of Hilly Cape. The depths are irregular for about 5 miles north-northwest of it.

Light established.—A fixed white light, elevated 98 feet above the sea and visible 5 miles, has been established on Tanjong Patani, 3.5 miles 311° from Cape Datto.

Beating China Shoal, about 600 yards in extent within a depth of 3 fathoms, has been found off Tanjong Patani; the least depth on it is 13 fathoms, over a sandy bottom, and situated 63°, distant about 4.3 miles from Tanjong Patani.

79795—15——10

Loftus Bank, of hard sand, with depths of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 fathoms, is 3 miles in length, and lies parallel to and 1.5 miles distant from the coast eastward of Tanjong Patani between which there are depths of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, mud.

Kwala Patani is 4 miles wide in its entrance, which lies between the point and the town; it is nearly dry at low water, and the depth is less than 3 fathoms for nearly 2.5 miles off the town.

Patani Road, about 4 miles westward of Tanjong Patani, affords anchorage in 3 to 5 fathoms, mud, the depths decreasing gradually toward the shore.

The high trees on the eastern bank of Sungi Patani, bearing 136° is a good mark to approach the anchorage.

The town of Patani stands on the eastern bank of the river about mile within the entrance, and is said to be a good place at which to purchase stock. Coasting steamers from Bangkok call four times weekly, twice each way.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Patani Road, at 10h.; springs rise 2½ to 3 feet. The flood stream runs westward at the rate of 2 to 3 knots off Tanjong Patani.

The coast from the entrance of Sungi Patani is low, and trends in a westerly direction for about 18 miles to Kampong Tibu, thence northwestward to a sharp point, the termination of a ridge which backs the coast for the previous 7 miles. Within it is Table-top, 740 feet in height. Sungi Sokong discharges in the bay westward of the point. Two small streams discharge on this coast, the Pak sak and the China.

Enemy Chaser Shoal, with a least depth of 1½ fathoms, lies 3 miles offshore, with Tanjong Patani bearing 77°, distant 11.5 miles.

Pulo Chelaji, a small islet, 133 feet in height, lies about ½ mile off the above sharp point, with rocks around it.

From the bay abreast, the coast again becomes low, and continues so to near Singora, about 21 miles northwestward.

At about 2 miles southward of the entrance to Singora is Lem Kau Rong, the northern termination of a range of mountains 17 miles in length, and attaining a height of 1,858 feet at its southern end.

The 3-fathoms edge of the bank fronting this coast extends about a mile off, and there are apparently no outlying dangers.

Singora Approach—Off-lying islets.—Koh Gnu, 670 yards in length, and 279 feet in height, lies 1.5 miles off the entrance to Singora; Koh Mu, 149 feet in height, lies 1.5 miles northward of it, with the Luk Mu Nai rocks, 6 feet in height, between. Luk Mu Nok rocks 4 feet high, lie 1,350 yards northeastward of Koh Gnu, and there is a charted patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms between.

Light.—An occulting white light is exhibited from a white tower, 45 feet in height, at an elevation of 352 feet above high water, visible 10 miles.

Note.—This light shown on the charts on Lem Sie Point on the southern side of the entrance to Singora Harbor, is located 880 yards southeastward of that point on Pagoda Hill.

Directions—Anchorages.—Singora is easily identified by the hills with pagodas on them on either side of the entrance, and by the islands in the offing, and at night by the light.

During the northeast monsoon small vessels may anchor in 23 fathoms, mud, about 1 mile from the southwestern side of Koh Gnu; and during the southwest monsoon nearer the shore, in 21 fathoms, 1 mile southward of this island. Large vessels should anchor in 5 or 6 fathoms, with the southern extremetics of Koh Gnu bearing 271°, and may reach this anchorage at night by steering for the light bearing about 234°, by the lead.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Singora Harbor, at 8h. 30m.; springs rise 2 to 3½ feet in the southwest monsoon. During the northeast monsoon the tide rises 6 feet, covering the north and south banks, and also the cluster of rocks adjacent to Lem Miva, nearly a mile east of the entrance.

The flood stream runs to the northwestward and the ebb to the southeastward in the road at the rate of 2 to 3 knots.

Singora (Lat. 7° 12′ N., Long. 100° 36′ E.).—The walled town of Singora is situated on the southern side of the southern entrance to Tale Sap, an inland sea or lake mentioned below.

The population of the town, and suburbs across the water, is estimated to be 10,000, partly Siamese and partly Malay. There are some 60,000 people in the province, scattered in small communities along the shores of the inland sea and in the jungle of the interior. Rice, tin, fish, skins, and horns are the principal products, sufficient to keep a considerable fleet of junks running to Singapore and Bangkok.

The entrance to Singora Harbor is about ½ mile wide between the points, above which are the hills Kau Deng Yie, or Table Hill, 598 feet in height, with two pagodas on the western side, and that of Kau Tang Kwan, or Pagoda Hill, 307 feet high, with one pagoda, on the eastern side; its approach is obstructed by shallow flats and quicksands, dry in places to the distance of about a mile; Koh Gnu, the nearest island in the approach, is within the 3-fathoms line fronting the entrance.

The bar, and the middle ground within the entrance, are continually changing in form and depth, owing to the strong ebb stream, and to the heavy seas which break into the harbor during the northeast monsoon; the channel should therefore be buoyed before attempting to enter. The plan shows a depth of 1 fathom on the bar between north and south banks, deepening to 3 or 4 fathoms

between south bank and the west entrance point of the harbor, and under very favorable circumstances vessels of 12 feet draft are said to be able to enter, but it seems doubtful.

There is a narrow channel with 2 to 3 fathoms water as far as the town, about one mile up, by keeping close to the eastern shore and thence to the lake, if bound there.

The inland sea (Tale Sap), entered at Singora, extends about 40 miles in a north-northwest direction parallel to the coast, with a breadth varying from 2 to 10 miles, and is separated from the sea by a low sand ridge known as Kau Yie. It contains numerous islands, and the southern portion is navigable by small craft, there being a depth of about 9 feet on the western side which is the deeper, for some distance. Its northern portion is shallow, and the town of Patalung, on the western shore, can only be approached by small native boats. The lake is decreasing in depth; formerly, it is stated, there was a deep-water channel from Lakon Road to the northward, into the lake, now only navigable by boats of 2 feet draft.

Supplies.—Wood and water may be purchased at the town, or the latter may be obtained from a spring within the bar on the west side. Stock of every description is plentiful. There is frequent overland communication between Singora and Penang, and the coasting steamers from Bangkok call frequently, every few days.

The coast from Singora trends northward to Lem Kolam Puk, and is low and sandy, with trees in places, for the whole distance; the lake or inland sea within apparently discharges occasionally through the coast, by the Klong Ra, some 42 miles from Singora; there are a few scattered huts or small villages on the coast, which is fronted by a bank with less than 3 fathoms to the distance of from about 1 to 1.5 miles, into which the depths gradually decrease, with a mud bottom. There are no known dangers off it.

Koh Krah (Lat. 8° 25' N., Long. 100° 45' E.), lying about 31 miles from the coast inclosing Lakon bight, is ½ mile in length, and 530 feet high. Two rocks, 265 feet and 152 feet in height, and a rock 4 feet high (nearly awash at times), lie to the southward. Turtle are plentiful in the season.

Lakon—Lem Kolam Puk is a narrow curved spit of coarse sand, 6 miles in length by 100 yards in breadth, with a cluster of fir trees on its extremity, within which is Lakon bight; Lem Kolam spit is the continuation of the point under water for a distance of about 4 miles northward.

Lakon bight, about 9 miles in length, by 6 miles in breadth between its entrance points, is almost filled with mud, there being but little water over any part of it. At its head is the Klong Pakinang, which leads to Tale Sap, the lake or inland sea to the southward,

137

navigable by boats of 2 feet draft, before mentioned. The head of the bight is only navigable for boats at near high water.

LAKON.

Lakon Road, with depths of 4 to 5 fathoms, lies northwestward of Lem Kolam spit, off the mouth of the bight. The depth in the road is reported to be decreasing.

Lakon Road affords anchorage in the southwest monsoon period in a depth of about 4 fathoms, at about 5 miles northward of the west point of entrance to Lakon bight.

Directions.—Small craft, bound to Lakon Road from the southward, should round Lem Kolam Puk at a distance of not under 5 miles, thence steering to the westward and anchoring according to draft. If from the northward, keep inshore, and anchor in a suitable depth near the inner fishing stakes. Sailing craft can usually work up inshore against the southwest monsoon.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Lakon Road at 10h. 15m. Springs rise 4½ feet (in the southwest monsoon).

The town of Lakon, or Nakon, is charted about 6 miles westward of the west shore of the bight, and is stated to be about 5 hours' pull up a very shallow stream (possibly in a laden canoe). The State or Province of Lakon Sritamarat is one of the most populous and richest of the States of the peninsula, but owing to the exposed character of the road and the insignificance of the stream, Lakon is but rarely visited.

Coast—Aspect.—The following remarks are chiefly written from the chart:

From Lakon bight the coast trends northward to Devils and Northeast Points, forming the western side of Samui Strait.

This coast is all low except at Lem Kwang and Lem Ple Dam, where at about 1 mile inland there are hills 489 feet and 708 feet high, respectively, and within the latter is Kau Kwang, 2,670 feet high; several small streams discharge through it, with unimportant villages near them. The depths gradually decrease to the mud bank which fronts the shore to the distance of ½ mile.

About 12 miles within the coast line is the Kau Lu Ong range of mountains, 5,814 feet in height, with Needle Peak, 5,274 feet, and Sharp Cone, 2,594 feet in height, conspicuous points on it. Northward of this range are the Kau Prong, 4,480 feet in height. Ten miles within Devils Point is the Kau Pra Nom, 1,805 feet, with Horn Hill (Kau Kwie) between it and Northeast Point.

Devils Point is distinguished by five peaks, known as the Five Devils, one of which, in Lat. 9° 10′ 30″ N., Long. 99° 53′ 00″ E., is 796 feet in height.

A rock, with 2 feet of water, is reported by the native pilots to lie 1.3 miles off Lem Ple Dam: the assigned position should be given a berth until disproved.

Samui Strait (Lat. 9° 15′ N., Long. 100° 0′ E.) lies between the northeastern extremity of the peninsula (within which is the large and shallow bay known as Bandon bight), and the islands off-lying it. Between Northeast Point and Koh Kahten the channel is 6 miles in width, but in it there are five islets with deep water around them.

The best passage, about 3 miles wide, known as West Channel, lies between West Island and the mainland; the eastern portion of this for a width of a mile or more has depths of about 8 fathoms. The continuation of the strait northward, named Middle Passage, has a depth of about 6 fathoms. The branch channel to the westward, between Koh Mukapau and Koh Pahlicum, known as South Passage, gradually decreases in depth to Bandon bight, which is only available for small craft.

The coast northward of Northeast Point is fronted by a bank with less than 3 fathoms to the distance of 3 miles, and on the bank, 2 miles offshore, is a rock 313 feet in height.

The tidal streams probably run with considerable strength in the strait, as the flood, in the approach to the strait, is charted as running at the rate of 31 knots to the northward.

Islands in and northward of the strait.—West Island, 236 feet in height, a narrow island nearly a mile in length, and surrounded by rocks, is the westernmost island in Samui Strait. Koh Kwang, 250 feet high, and Koh Rap, which is low, are both fringed with rocks; White rocks, above water, lie northward of the above islands, and Smith islet farther in the same direction. There is deep water between all of them.

Koh Kahten is a triangular island 2.5 miles in length, 774 feet in height, and surrounded by reefs; Mat Sum lies eastward of it. Between these islands and Koh Samui are several dangers (rendering the passage impracticable, except for very small craft), with An Koh Wan, 6 feet high, on a detached reef eastward of them. Koh Hah, 268 feet high, with other rocks above water, lie off the southwestern side of Koh Samui.

Koh Samui, the largest of the outlying islands, is about 12 miles in length, about 7 miles in breadth, and attains a height of 2,269 feet in Kau Yie, its summit. It belongs to the Province of Lakon Sritamarat. The island is surrounded by islets and shoals, for which see the chart. There are several small villages on the island, inhabited by some hundreds of Chinese, who cultivate the coconut palm and rear large numbers of pigs and buffalo. There is some tin in the hills, but owing to the lack of water, it has not hitherto been worked with success. The island is covered with dense forest, consequently the villagers communicate along the coast.

Anchorage will be found in the bays on either side, according to the prevailing monsoon.

Koh Pennan, 9 miles in length and 6 miles in breadth, attains an elevation of 2,220 feet, and belongs to the Province of Chiya. It is fringed by a reef except on its southeastern side, and is separated from Samui by Pennan Channel. The small islets, Koh Klian, 80 feet, and Koh Tau, 397 feet in height, lie off its western side. There is anchorage around it according to the monsoon.

Pennan Channel, 5 miles wide, has depths of 7 to 10 fathoms. Table rock, 10 feet high, and Tong Krok, 83 feet high, 4 miles apart, mark the eastern limits of Pennan Channel between these islands.

Koh Tau, the northernmost island of the group, lies 19 miles north-northwestward of Koh Pennan, with Tau Passage between.

The island is 4.5 miles in length and 1,285 feet in height at its northwestern extremity. Its west side is fringed by a reef, with islets off its northwestern extremity, one of which is 387 feet in height.

Tau Passage separates Koh Tau from Koh Pennan; it has general depths of over 20 fathoms.

Sail rock (Lat. 9° 56' N., Long. 100° 0' E.), 65 feet high, steep-to, lies in the fairway.

Inner Islands.—Parallel to the islands above mentioned, at about 13 miles to the westward, are a number of islands extending about 30 miles in a north and south direction, nearly all of them within the 5-fathoms curve fronting Bandon bight. They form a breeding place for a large number of swiftlets, which produce the edible nests.

Koh Mukapau, the southernmost, is 570 feet in height, and nearly 2 miles in length; it is surrounded by reefs.

Koh Taluei, 6.5 miles northward of Mukapau, is the largest, being 3 miles in length and 1,246 feet in height. Between them are Koh Som, 381 feet, Gnueh Cheu, 411 feet, and Koh Cheuk, 450 feet high.

Rock to southward.—A rock with less than 6 feet over it has been discovered southward of Koh Taluei, 1,200 yards 138° from Remarkable High Horn, southwestern extremity of the island.

Koh Angtong, the next large island northward, is 2.5 miles in length, and 1,377 feet high at its southern end.

Angtong Passage, between, is 3 miles wide, has a depth of about 4 fathoms, and is the best channel between the inner group of islands.

Koh Wau and Koh Lan, 327 and 190 feet high, respectively, are the northernmost of this group, with Castle Islets southward of the former. There are several high islets, and a chain of numerous rocks, above water, filling the space between Koh Lim and Koh Angtong, 3 miles southward; the principal are Nang Yot, 603 feet, Koh Sam Yot, and Koh Klom Yot, 787 feet high.

North Passage (Lat. 9° 43′ N., Long. 99° 40′ E.).—Between Castle Islets and Koh Lim, 675 feet high, to the southward and just outside the 5-fathoms line, is North Passage, 4 miles wide, with a depth of about 10 fathoms.

Bandon bight is nearly 15 miles wide between Lem Kung Mau and Lem Sie, but is very shallow, there being less than 3 fathoms for about 16 miles northward of the first-mentioned point. The banks are reported to be constantly changing and decreasing in depth, but it is some time since it was surveyed.

A sandbank, nearly dry at low water, lies from 2 to 3 miles eastward of Lem Sie; it should be given a wide berth.

Koh Prap Bank, with 6 feet water, northward of the island, has a red buoy charted off its northeastern extremity; the depth is only about a foot less than that of the water surrounding it.

Light.—Koh Prap (Lat. 9° 13′ N., Long. 99° 25′ E.).—Koh Prap 255 feet high, lies on the eastern side of Bandon bight 2.5 miles offshore and 5.5 miles northward of the entrance to Bandon River.

A group flashing light is exhibited from a red lattice structure, 20 feet in height, on the summit of Koh Prap, at an elevation of 275 feet, visible 12 miles.

Anchorages.—The eastern part of the bight has a depth of about 9 feet. Siamese steamers and other small craft anchor about 2 miles northeastward of Koh Prap, in that depth, 7 miles from the entrance to Bandon River.

Nearly all the western part of the bight has less than 6 feet water, and is covered with fishing stakes. There is, or was, a pool with 5 fathoms in the Chiya sand, close northwestward of a sandbank, at 2 miles southeast of the channel to Pumreang, but with only about 1 fathom at low water in the approach, which is from the northeastward. There is a depth of 10 feet at high water over the flats to Chiya River, and about 15 feet inside the river entrance.

Trading vessels of or above 12 feet draft formerly used the anchorage 5 miles northward of Lem Sie, where there are depths of about 3½ fathoms; this is considered to be the best anchorage for steamers and other vessels loading or having communication with Chiya (Chaiya), Pumreang, and Bandon.

Tides.—For high water, full and change, in Bandon bight, see the chart, which gives a difference of several hours for various parts of this coast.

Bandon River is accessible to vessels of about 6 feet draft, and it divides into two main branches above the town, which is about 4 miles within the entrance; the eastern branch takes its rise in the mountains near Trang, where it is stated the watershed is so low that a boat can be taken across with a very short portage to the upper waters of the Trang, the total distance to Trang (Malakka Strait) being about 170 miles.

The population of the Province of Bandon is about 20,000, chiefly Chinese, engaged in exporting jungle produce, such as rattans, skins, and horns; quite a fleet of junks trade from here.

The Province of Chiya (Chaiya) lies northward of Bandon, with a population of about 43,000, Siamese and Malays (no Chinamen). It suffers from a want of navigable streams, so neither tin nor timber can be worked at a profit.

Steamer communication.—The steamers of the Siam Steam Navigation Co. call four times a week (twice each way) at the ports of Bandon, Langsuen, and Chumpawn, and twice a week at the island of Koh Samui on the voyage from Bangkok to Singapore and vice versa. This company carries the mails, and is subsidized by the Siamese Government. Three small steamers, owned by a Siamese subject, run between Bangkok and the ports of this Province, and the steamers of the Chumpawn Co. do the same, and are also engaged in the coasting trade.

Coast.—From Lem Sie the coast trends northward to Sawi and Chumpon Bays, off which the bank fronting the shore extends about 3 miles in places; it is advisable to keep seaward of the 10-fathoms line unless intending to visit any particular place, when vessels should haul in when abreast of it.

Loftus Shoal consists of three patches, covering a space 2 miles in length, in a northwest and southeast direction, with 6 fathoms water on its seaward side; a rock on the center shoal is apparently above water; it lies with Lem Bangman (off which is Luk Sua, 6 feet high), bearing 308°, distant 4 miles. A 2-foot patch is charted 3.5 miles 159° of the rock above water; abreast the latter, but within the 3-fathom line fronting the shore, are North and South patches, both said to be dry at low water.

Buoy.—A black buoy is moored on the southern side of the western patch of Loftus Shoal.

Langsuen Road (Lat. 9° 57′ N., Long. 99° 11′ E.), with a depth of about 5 fathoms, is situated 3 miles off the river and village of that name; the river is barred, but has a depth of about 6 feet at high water; in the rainy season the stream runs out at the rate of about 4 knots.

Dangers—Buoys.—Falcon patch, with 3 feet water, lies 1.5 miles northeast of the mouth of the river, marked by a black and white buoy, southward of which is a patch of 1½ fathoms.

A red conical buoy is charted at the edge of the 3-fathoms curve, about 2.3 miles southward of the mouth of the river, at about 1 mile off the Red Cliff, said to be marking South inner patch.

A patch of 3½ fathoms lies 111°, about 2.3 miles from Red Cliff.

East patch, awash at low water, lies on the southern side of the road, with the mouth of the river 279° distant nearly 3 miles; there is another patch between it and the shore bank.

Light.—From a white iron structure on south side of entrance to the river is exhibited, at an elevation of 41 feet, an intermittent light every 15 seconds, with white and red sectors, visible about 8 miles. (See Light List.)

The district of Langsuen has a population of about 16,000; the chief resides about four hours' pull up the river. The principal produce of the neighborhood is fruit; there are tin mines in the district, and fishing is carried on to a considerable extent.

Coast—Koh Petak (Lat. 10° 3′ N., Long. 99° 10′ E.) is an islet 425 feet in height, ½ mile off Lem Tong Woh, 6 miles northward of Langsuen; a ledge of sunken rocks, with one of them above water, extends 1 mile seaward of it.

The bay northward of Koh Petak is guarded by the islets Koh Ranpahtat, Koh Kang Sueh, and Koh Mate Yie, just within the 5-fathoms curve, within which vessels should not venture; these are good objects to use for fixing the position of a vessel in this locality.

Sawi Bay, 6 miles wide, is shallow nearly out to its entrance points. It is fronted by islets, namely, Kulah, Yung, Klap, Tang Lang, and Katu, and there are several others off the coast between Katu and Mat Kra; vessels of light draft only can use Sawi Bay, avoiding the charted dangers, most of which have rocks above water on them.

Chomporn (Chumpawn) Bay, northward of Sawi Bay, has the islets of Mat Kra, Pau Kleuh, Teluh, Luk, Nam, Tah Kai, and Samet in its approaches; the easternmost is Koh Nam, 380 feet in height; those without the 10 fathoms curve have apparently deep water between them; there are also rocks above water named Lak Mat Kra and Lak Nam, near the islands of same name, as charted. Koh Samet, 320 feet high, is within the 3-fathom line which fronts the south point of the bay.

The bay is about 2 miles wide between the rocky patch off its northern point and Koh Samet, and affords anchorage in 4 to 5 fathoms during the southwest monsoon period, at 2 miles off the mouth of the river.

Under Koh Samet there is shelter for small craft in the northeast monsoon.

Light.—A fixed red light, elevated 128 feet, and visible from a distance of 10 miles, is exhibited from an iron structure on pillars surmounted by lattice work supporting lantern, painted red, situated on Mataphon islet, at the entrance to Chomporn River.

Chomporn (Chumpawn) River has a depth of 8 feet on its bar at high water. About 20 miles up is the town of same name, near the center of the Malay Peninsula, which is here about 48 miles across.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Chomporn Bay, at 6h. 40m., with a rise of about 4 feet.

Coast.—Lem Tane (Lat. 10° 41′ N., Long. 99° 21′ E.) is a peninsula projecting 1.5 miles southward of the coast line on either side of it, at 12 miles northward of Chomporn Bay. At its extremity is a hill with a red cliff. Within the peninsula is a bay with a depth of about 2 fathoms, which affords shelter to trading craft off the village of Bang San.

Koh Kye, 362 feet in height, lies 3 miles northeast of Lem Tane.

Lem Chong P'ra is a remarkable craggy headland of 1,060 feet elevation in Lat. 10° 54′ N., Long. 99° 30′ E.

Koh Buot, a narrow island, 900 feet high, lies southwestward of the cape, within which is a snug bay named Chong P'ra. There are four islets or high rocks southeastward of Koh Buot, the two outer of which, Rang Pet and Rang Kye, are 100 feet high, 1 mile apart, and distant about 5 miles from the shore; the others are 140 and 200 feet high, the latter is named Koh Rang.

Lem Tong Lan lies 18 miles northward of Chong P'ra. About midway within the bay formed by these points, is Koh Tlu, a level bold island, 342 feet high, and nearly 1.5 miles in length. Within and southwestward of this island are two rocky islets named Chang and Sing, surrounded by reefs. There is no clear passage for vessels between Sing and Koh Tlu. Excepting the foul ground about Koh Tlu, the bay is safe.

Lem Tong Lan is 814 feet high, and the coast being very low within, at a distance it makes like an island. At 11 miles northward of Lem Tong Lan, there is the Cone clump, a cluster of conical hills, with a low islet surrounded by a reef, at the distance of ‡ mile from the shore.

Koh Chan (Lat. 11° 37′ N., Long. 99° 44′ E.), an island 80 feet high, with depths of 7 to 8 fathoms around it, is situated 4 miles off the coast, and about 17 miles northeastward of the Cone clump just mentioned.

Kau Luang, a mountain 4,326 feet in height, which is by far the most conspicuous landmark in this neighborhood, lies abreast Koh Chan at about 7 miles within the coast.

Koh Luem, 406 feet high, lies 1.5 miles off Aotinau Bay. The points of the bay have each a remarkable rocky horn, known as North and South Horns, 794 and 907 feet high, respectively. Klet Kla, an islet or rock, lies in the middle of the entrance.

Actibon lai, the bay, northward of North Horn, affords the better anchorage. Koh Lak lies close to its southern point, North Horn. The mountain Kau Maun lies 7 miles within the head of the bay, with a pass over it at 750 feet above the sea.

Koh Ta kut (Lat. 12° 11′ N., Long., 99° 59′ 30″ E.), 300 feet high, situated about 28 miles north-northeastward of Koh Luem, is a narrow island 1 mile in length; the coast between these islands is

apparently clear of danger outside the 3-fathom line, but it has not been properly surveyed.

Landmark—Samroiyot Hills—Sui Point, situated about ½ mile south of Koh Ta kut, is the end of a spur extending from a remarkable range of rocky mountains near the coast, named Samroiyot, or Three Hundred Peaks, and ranging from 1,813 to 1,900 feet in height. At a distance their appearance is that of a serrated table island.

Samroiyot is unlike any other land in the gulf, and sailing vessels bound to Bangkok in the southwest monsoon should make it.

Water.—The only fresh water to be obtained between Chong P'ra and Sui Point is from wells, which have been provided at places convenient for the use of native craft by wealthy benevolent Siamese.

Coast.—The coast takes a northerly direction from Koh Ta kut, and for about 10 miles the 3-fathoms line is from 2 to 3 miles offshore.

A rocky patch of 11 fathoms lies within the edge of the line, 1.8 miles offshore, with Koh Ta kut bearing 180°, distant 8.3 miles; it is steep-to and should be given a wide berth.

Koh Num sau (Lat. 12° 14′ N., Long. 99° 58′ E.), 500 feet high, lies 2 miles north-northwest of Ta kut, with rocks between it and the shore.

Pran rocks, two in number, each about 100 feet high and  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile apart, lie 17 miles northward from Koh Ta kut, about 1 mile from the coast. The village of Pran is situated at the entrance of the river of the same name, 4 miles southward of these rocks.

Sunken rock.—A small headland stands out prominently from the coast line at 2 miles northward of Pran rocks; 91°, distant \( \frac{3}{4} \) mile from it, is a rock which dries at half ebb.

Chulai Point—Aspect (Lat. 13° 2′ N., Long. 100° 3′ E.).— From the headland just mentioned the coast trends northward about 32 miles to Chulai Point and is low.

A few miles within is the Triple Peak range 2,100 feet in height, with Chulai Peak 1,200 feet in height nearer the coast. Near the middle of this coast there is much rocky ground, and some patches of 2 to 3 fathoms lie on a rocky ridge from 3 to 5 miles offshore; from the outer patch,  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms, of those charted Chulai Peak bears 297°, distant about 8 miles.

Caution.—Other patches may exist where no soundings are shown; vessels, therefore, should give this coast a wide berth and not stand in to less than 10 fathoms.

The coast about Chulai Point and to the northward of it is all very low. The edge of the bank extends from 2 to 3 miles off the shore and is steep-to, especially off the village of Banlam.

Within Banlam Point the low coast trends northwestward, forming a bay toward which the depths decrease regularly in most places, from whence along the head of the gulf to the bar of Bangkok River the lead will be found a safe guide by day or night; patches of 3 fathoms are charted between the 3 and 5 fathom curves.

Pechaburi Town (Lat. 13° 6′ N., Long. 99° 55′ E.) is 8 miles up the river of the same name, the principal entrance to which is 5 miles northwest of Banlam Point. It is clean, well built, densely populated, and the center of a great rice-producing district. In point of climate it is preferable to Bangkok, and more likely to agree with Europeans. The anchorage off the entrance of the river is far more sheltered in the southwest monsoon than that off the bar of Bangkok River, and cargo might be safely embarked at all times.

The railway runs from Bangkok to Pechaburi.

Menam Tachin, situated about 20 miles westward of Bangkok River, was navigated by H. M. S. Teaser, of about 11 feet draft, in November, 1871, about the time of the highest tides of the year, as far as Nakonchisi, about 25 miles from the mouth.

The bar extends from 3 to 4 miles off with a depth of about 3 feet at low water springs; the river deepens to 2 fathoms within, abreast the entrance points, and above to 3 and 6 fathoms.

The rise of tide is extremely variable and ranges from 4 to 9 feet, or even more. See tides, Bangkok, page 182.

The entrance is difficult to distinguish, the land in the neighborhood being low and covered with trees. It may, however, be safely approached by the lead; some 3-fathom patches lie between the 3 and 5 fathom lines off the entrance.

For the shore of the gulf eastward, see Bangkok River, page 179.

## EAST AND NORTHERN SHORES OF THE GULF OF SIAM.

Pulo Obi, the principal island of the Obi Group, lies about 11 miles southeastward of Cambodia or Kamao Point, in Lat. 8° 26′ N., Long. 104° 48′ E.; it is 2.3 miles in length and about 950 feet in height at its southern end.

A bank with 3 to 5 fathoms, mud bottom, extends 2 miles northwest, and another with same depths, but rock bottom, 1.5 miles southeast of the island.

An islet, 541 feet in height, lies 1 mile southeastward of the southern end of Pulo Obi, with a rock or islet east of it.

Hull rock, 32 feet in height, lies 4 miles southeastward of Pulo Obi, with depths of 14 to 15 fathoms between it and the islets mentioned.

Marsh reef, situated about 2.3 miles 356° from the northern point of Pulo Obi, is awash at low water.

Shoals—Caution.—Various reports have been received of the extension of the bank off and southward of Cambodia Point. Patches of 2 to 3 fathoms are now charted from 4 to 5.5 miles southwestward of the point, and depths of 5 to 5½ fathoms were reported by H. M. S.

Britomart in 1902, from 6 miles westward of Pulo Obi to 1 mile southward of the island, where depths of 13 fathoms are shown. Patches of 2½ and 2¾ fathoms are charted outside the 5-fathom curve, at about 88°, 9 miles, and 83°, about 5.5 miles from Pulo Obi Lighthouse.

As the shore bank seems to have extended considerably, vessels should not take the passage within the island, and, further, should give both it and Cambodia Point a berth of at least 12 miles.

Light.—On the eastern summit at the southern end of Pulo Obi, from a square light-gray granite tower, about 49 feet high, elevated 984 feet above high water, a flashing white light is exhibited said to be visible 40 miles. (See Light List.)

Anchorage.—There are two small bays, one on the northwest, the other on the eastern side of Pulo Obi. The best anchorage for small craft is directly off them, on either side of the island, according to the monsoon, at about ½ mile from the shore. Larger vessels must anchor farther off. The depths near the anchorages were reported (April, 1904) to have 1 fathom less water than those shown on plan; see preceding caution.

Water.—Fresh water is plentiful in these bays, but the shores are not convenient for embarking it; the islands are densely wooded.

Royalist Bank (Lat. 8° 11′ N., Long. 105° 11′ E.), on which depths of 6 to 10 fathoms were found when crossing it for a distance of about 1.2 miles, and depths of 17 fathoms at each end, lies about 27 miles 122° from Pulo Obi; less water may exist. Another bank of 6 fathoms is charted 75°, 20 miles from Royalist Bank.

Bank.—There is an extensive bank which has not been examined, with charted depths of 8 to 10 fathoms, and deeper water around, situated with its center about 265°, 75 miles from Pulo Obi, in Lat. 8° 10′ N., Long. 103° 35′ E.

Cambodia, or Kamão Point, the southwestern extremity of Cambodia, is low and covered with trees. The edge of the bank surrounding the point was formerly steep-to beyond a distance of about 2 miles, but it has considerably extended; see caution on page 145.

To the northward of Kamáo Point the depths are more regular. There are numerous fishing stakes on the bank.

Obstruction reported to westward.—An obstruction has been reported to exist about 18 miles westward of Cambodia Point.

Kamão (Song Bai hap) River.—From Cambodia Point the land trends east-northeastward for 17 miles, forming with the coast northward a deep but shallow bay, at the head of which is Kamão River; it is fronted by a bar to the distance of about 5 miles, nearly dry at low water, and covered with fishing stakes. It is accessible to junks and other native craft. Boats can proceed from it through the inland waterways to the Gang hao, and thence into the China Sea.

Song ong dok discharges into the bay northward of the Kamáo; it is visited by junks from Singapore and Hainan, which ascend for many miles.

The coast from the northern side of approach to Kamão River trends in a northerly direction for about 50 miles to abreast the Pulo Dama Group, the land between being all low, with the exception of the Paps, two small rocky bluffs, 100 feet in height, on the coast.

False Pulo Obi (Lat. 8° 57′ N., Long. 104° 31′ E.), 23 miles north-northwestward of Cambodia Point, is  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in length,  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile in breadth, and 500 feet in height, with cliffs and steep-to all round. At 4 miles south-southeastward from False Pulo Obi is a rocky islet, 167 feet in height, with a ledge of rocks projecting  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile from its eastern side. The channel between the two has a depth of 11 fathoms, and between them and the coast are depths of 6 to 9 fathoms.

Off-lying islands and dangers—Pulo Panjang, situated in Lat. 9° 18′ N., Long. 103° 28′ E., the main island of the Panjang Group, is 3 miles in length, east and west, 2 miles in breadth, and of a nearly uniform height of 550 feet, appearing like table-land from every direction.

There are two islets 100 and 200 feet in height at about a mile from its eastern end, with deep water between. Peak Islet is connected to the southern point of Panjang by a ridge of rocks, with 6 feet water over it. White rock, 75 feet high, lies 13° about 1.8 miles from its southern point; and two large rocks, East Island and Table rock elevated 110 and 40 feet, respectively, lie about 8.5 miles northeastward from Panjang.

Rajanattianuhar Reef, on which the British steamer of that name became a wreck, consists of two heads of rock, with 4 feet water, surrounded at the distance of 200 yards by a fringe of coral, with depths of 2 to 5 fathoms, and steep-to. The center of the reef lies with White rock bearing 247° and Peak Island 340°, distant 1,400 yards.

Anchorage.—During the northeast monsoon the bay on the southwestern side of Panjang affords shelter and good anchorage. A rock, 2 feet high, lies 227° about 1,200 yards from west point of this bay. Fresh water and wood can be obtained, and fish may be caught with a seine. The anchorage on the southeastern side of the island is indifferent.

Dewagougse Shoal.—The master of the steamer Dewagougse, 1888, reported the existence of a shoal with a depth of 3 fathoms, on which that vessel struck, situated with Pulo Panjang bearing about 160°, distant 17 miles, or in Lat. 9° 35′ N., Long. 103° 21′ E.

Caution.—Pulo Wai or Koh Kwang Noi, Veer Islet, Koh Prins, the Tankwala group, and Depond Reef, have been surveyed; and the soundings taken in the neighborhood seem to denote that the passages between them are safe; but as time would not permit the approaches



from the northward and westward to be sounded, caution must be observed when steering for them from those quarters.

The channel between these islands and Koh Tron is believed to be safe.

Pulo Wai, or Koh Kwang Noi, about 50 miles northwestward of Pulo Panjang, consists of two islands from 200 to 300 feet high, each being nearly 2 miles in length, from ½ to ¾ mile in breadth, and fringed by reefs in places. They are distant nearly a mile from each other, and the channel between them has depths of above 10 fathoms in the fairway (Lat. 9° 55′ N., Long. 102° 53′ E.).

A rock, 3 feet high, lies  $112^{\circ} \frac{3}{4}$  mile from the eastern point of the eastern island, and a patch of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms lies  $160^{\circ}$  2.4 miles from the same point.

Saracen rock, with 4 feet water, lies 1,600 yards 346° from the northwestern end of the eastern island.

Anchorage.—Good anchorage will be found off the northern side of the eastern island, but the best berth is off a sandy bay on the northeastern side of the western island, in a depth of 8 fathoms, at 1 mile from the shore.

Water.—The natives obtain their water from wells about the middle of the eastern island. The islands are wooded; the beaches afford turtle; and a cast of the seine will generally procure fish.

Depond Reef, only 100 yards in diameter, is awash at low water, steep-to on all sides, and in fine weather might not be noticed until close upon it. From the reef, the peak at the southern end of the western Pulo Wai is visible over the middle of the eastern Pulo Wai bearing 255°, distant 14 miles.

Koh Tang, or Tankwala Island, lying north-northeastward 24 miles from Pulo Wai, is 3.5 miles in length, narrow, and 440 feet in height near its northern end, situated in Lat. 10° 18′ N., Long. 103° 5′ E.

The sandy bay on its eastern side will afford good anchorage in the southwest monsoon; and Shelter Islet, lying in the middle of the bay, would afford some shelter to a small vessel anchoring here in the northeast monsoon.

At 1 mile southeast of Koh Tang is an islet, and at 4.5 miles east-southeastward are Southeast Islets, two islets, 106 and 141 feet in height, with depths of 15 fathoms between. Patches of 3\frac{3}{4} and 4\frac{3}{4} fathoms lie, respectively, about \frac{3}{4} and 1.3 miles south-southeast of the southeasternmost islet.

Veer Islet, 120 feet in height, lies 254° 14.5 miles from the summit of Koh Tang, with apparently deep water around it.

Koh Prins, 200 feet in height, lies 292° 10.5 miles from the summit of Koh Tang, and is about 1 mile in length; an islet, 150 feet in height, lies ½ mile 250° of it, and one, 20 feet high, lies nearly a mile westward of the latter.

Reported Shoals.—In Lat. 10° 41′ N. and Long. 102° 51′ E. a depth of 9 fathoms has been obtained. It is believed that a reef exists near this spot, but it has not been closely examined.

Condor Reef, on which the Bremen bark Condor was lost in 1860, was reported to be in Lat. 10° 42′ N., Long. 102° 48′ E. In 1872 it was examined and found to be a rocky plateau 100 yards in extent, with general depths of 16 to 20 feet, and several shoals of 1 to 6 feet; it is fairly steep-to, especially on the western side. From this examination the shoalest part was placed in Lat. 10° 43′ 45″ N., Long. 102° 53′ 15″ E.; it might possibly be a mile or so farther west.

Jan Peter Reef.—In 1880 the Jan Peter grounded on a reef with 2 fathoms water, and by bearings was placed in Lat. 10° 46′ N., Long. 102° 42′ E. This is close to the position of a wreck on a reef reported by the master of the ship Cowasjee Family, in 1860, bearing about 191° from Kusrovie rock, distant 20 miles.

Donai.—A shoal or obstruction on which the steamer Donai touched in 1908 is reported to be in Lat. 10° 51′ N., Long. 102° 50′ 15″ E. A sounding of 18 fathoms was obtained after touching it.

Simpson Shoal, reported in 1886 to be in Lat. 11° 26′ N., Long. 101° 12′ E., is stated to have been plainly seen, but that before the lead could be got ready the vessel had passed over it; a sounding of 18 fathoms was then obtained. Its existence is extremely doubtful.

Koik rock.—There is every reason to believe that a sunken rock exists about 83 miles northeastward of Koh Tau, in the fairway of the northern part of the Gulf of Siam.

This rock (Koik rock), originally reported by the master of the Norwegian bark Koik in 1882, was stated to be about 12 yards in length in a north and south direction, with about 6 feet water on it. The position reported must be considered doubtful.

Two reefs were reported in 1889 in this neighborhood, namely, in Lat. 10° 45′ N., Long. 101° 01′ E., and in Lat. 10° 45′ N., Long. 100° 56′ E.; they are probably all one and the same reef.

Pulo Dama Group.—Hon Nam Du (Lat. 9° 41′ N., Long. 104° 21′ E.), the principal island, is situated 43 miles north-northwestward from False Pulo Obi; it is 3.3 miles in length north and south, and 1 mile in breadth, having near its center a sharp peak 1,015 feet in height. Several islands lie off its northern point, and off its eastern side. The northernmost, Hon Gian, is 345 feet in height, with Hon Mok, also 345 feet high, between it and the main island. The eastern islands are Hon Truok, 295 feet, Hon Truong, 345 feet, Hon Dhau, Hon Botra, 295 feet, and Hon Mau, the southernmost.

Three islands lie off the southern extremity of Hon Nam Du, the southernmost of which is Hon Mong tai; a rock 4 feet high lies ½ mile south of it, and about the same distance beyond is a patch of 2½ fathoms, steep-to.

79795—15——11

Aspic rock, with 2 feet water, lies 600 yards 27° from the north-west extremity of Hon Truok, with depths of 5 to 15 fathoms between. Another rock, awash at low water, lies 375 yards morthwestward of Aspic rock.

There is a rock awash, at  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile westward of the islet (157 feet high), situated 250° 1 mile from Hon Gian.

Anchorages.—During the southwest monsoon the best anchorage is in about 5 fathoms eastward of the highest peak, with Hon Nhom in line with Hon Gian to the northward; the holding ground is good, but squalls of wind come off the high land.

There are two patches of 3 fathoms 1,200 yards apart, north and south, eastward of the anchorage marks mentioned, for which see chart.

During the northeast monsoon there is anchorage in about 7 fathoms southwest of Hon Mau, the southeasternmost islet; also under the western coast of Hon Nam Du at the entrance of a small bay, situated abreast the southern point of Hon Kolon. There is, however, a rock with  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms of water over it in the middle of the latter bay.

Tammassu (Hon Ré) is a table-topped island, 1,390 feet in height, with steep cliffs, situated 16 miles east-northeastward from Pulo Dama, with depths of 5 to 6 fathoms apparently around it. Fresh water was found in small quantities. The island is frequented by fishermen and junks.

A pinnacle rock, with a depth of 5 feet, lies 700 yards 300° from the western point of Tammassu; vessels should not pass between this rock and the rocky ledge, almost covered at high water, extending about 200 yards from the point.

Rock to southward.—A rock covered with 13 fathoms of water lies 1.5 miles 138° from the western extremity of Tammassu Island.

Teksu Island (Hon Tre), known also as Turtle Island from its shape, 13 miles northeastward of Tammassu, is of conical form, and 1,380 feet in height. The island lies near the edge of the mud flat, which fronts the mouth of the Kieng Kiang or Rach Gia for a distance of about 15 miles. The island is partly cultivated and now produces oranges, pineapples, etc., and there is excellent water. The plantation (under the French) is at the southern end of the island, but the anchorage off it is shallow and indifferent.

Teksia Peak is a cone, 800 feet in height, on the northern side of approach to the Rach Gia, and remarkable as the first high land on the mainland seen on approaching from the southward. Eastward or within this peak there is an anchorage for large trading junks; their cargoes are brought out from the river in the flat boats of the country.

Kieng Kiang (Rach Gia).—The bar of this river dries at very low tides, but there is a depth of about 10 feet in the entrance; it con-

nects with the Hau branch of the Mekong at Cho long Xuyen, as charted.

The town of Rach Gia is situated at the entrance of the river, is of some commercial importance, and is connected with the telegraph system. It is the chief town of the province of the same name. Small steam craft ply on the river; the current runs for 3 to 4 knots.

Song Kailon or Kua Lon discharges southward of the Rach Gia; its bar has a depth of about 3 feet at high water. There is communication with the Mekong and thence to Saigon by the several waterways from the Song Kailon by the Ba long Canal for vessels under 6 feet draft under favorable circumstances. Kamao, the capital of the Province of same name, may be reached by this route, but it is somewhat difficult, and the Song ong dok, near Cambodia Point, seems preferable. Kamao is situated on the Ganh-hao, the mouth of which is between Cambodia Point and the western mouth of the Mekong.

Table Head is a rocky headland, 600 feet in height, 15 miles westward of Teksia Peak. The coast between forms a shallow sandy bay, having several streams falling into it. Just within Table Head are some rocky hills attaining an elevation of 726 feet, and a mountainous ridge, which extends to near the town of Hong Chong.

A rock, 6 feet high, lies 4.5 miles 145° from Table Head; a rock awash lies about 1,200 yards 233° from it.

Bulua Islands—Tekere or Minghue, a cone-shaped island, 1,120 feet in height, in Lat. 10° 1′ N., Long. 104° 32′ E., 8 miles from Table Head, is the largest of the Bulua Islands, an archipelago of islands and rocks that extend westward and southwestward from Table Head, and is an excellent mark for recognition. It is well wooded, inhabited, and contains a large number of wild boars.

Rock.—There is a rock above water about 800 yards southward of its southern point, with a sunken rock just beyond. At 1 mile eastward of the island is a bank with 2\frac{3}{4} fathoms of water, and there is a patch of 2 fathoms close northwestward of the northern extremity of the island.

Outer Island is the southwesternmost of the group, 4.5 miles from Tekere Island; a bank, with 5 fathoms and possibly less water, is charted as extending 3 miles southwestward of it.

Shark Island lies nearly 5 miles westward of Tekere; Tree rock lies 2.3 miles northward of Shark Island.

Shoals discovered.—Two 3-fathom shoals have been discovered 5 miles westward of Shark Island.

It has been found that the depths in this vicinity are in many places less than charted and caution should be exercised when navigating in this locality.

Mekong Reef, with several rocky heads, and 6 feet least water, lies 240°, ½ mile from Tree rock. Saddle rock, and several dangerous patches, are charted northward of Tree rock.

West Island, the northwesternmost of the group, is 7 miles northwestward of Tree rock, and there is a patch of 3 fathoms at 2.5 miles 204° of it, but the depths apparently are but little greater in the neighborhood.

Hong Chong (Lat. 10° 9′ N., Long. 104° 36′ E.) is situated in the bay close northward of Cape Ongtai, the western extremity of Table Head, and within the eastern islands of the Bulua Group, which partly protect the small craft anchorage. It is of considerable importance for the export of pepper, large quantities of which are exported during the northeast monsoon period. Numbers of junks arrive here for that purpose about the end of the southwest monsoon period.

The town contains pepper warehouses, shops, and has a customhouse, police station, and other buildings, stretching along the shore.

Communication.—There is a telegraph station connected with Saigon, and postal communication with that place.

Small steamers call here for Hatien, to which there is also a road suitable for bullock wagons.

Storm signals are exhibited here.

Supplies of beef and fruit are obtainable, but the water is bad; there is no coal.

Anchorages.—The anchorage is good during the northeast monsoon, at which time all the trade is done. Small vessels and junks anchor as close off the town as their draft will permit, but there is no better water than 2 fathoms off the town. At 2.5 miles southward of Cape Ongtai there are depths of 3½ fathoms, as there is also northwestward of Hon Re, 3 miles westward of the town. During the southwestward monsoon the anchorages are untenable, and the sea breaks around the islets in the offing, but there is some slight shelter under Hon Heo, the northernmost, for small craft.

The chart shows anchorage eastward of the Pirate Islands, at this period, below mentioned.

Donai, 1898.—The master of the steamer Donai reported that his vessel appeared to touch bottom without stopping her way at 9.5 miles southwestward of Tree Island; an examination showed a uniform depth of 4½ fathoms, sand. Position, Lat. 9° 57′ 30″ N., Long. 104° 19′ 15″ E.

Caution.—Numerous other dangers and islets may exist in this neighborhood, not shown on the chart; the locality has not been properly surveyed, and vessels when near these islands should navigate with caution.

Hatien or Kankao River, situated about 16 miles northwestward of Table Head, is only accessible to craft of very light draft, there

being only about 6 feet on the bar at low water. The bar extends 1.5 miles seaward of the town, and the depths are not above 3 fathoms at 5 miles off, so that only vessels of light draft can approach the bar. On either side of its entrance are bluffs from 300 to 600 feet high, which, together with the gap dividing them, are remarkable from the westward. From this direction the town of Hatien, situated at the entrance (within which is a lake some 2.5 miles in length, nearly filled with mud) may be seen at the distance of 6 or 7 miles.

This river communicates by the Hatien Canal with Hau kiang, a branch of the Mekong above the citadel of Chaudok, and has depths varying from 3 to 10 feet.

Lights—Nui Nai (Lat. 10° 21' N., Long. 104° 25' E.).—On Loctri or Nui Nai point, from a masonry tower over a dwelling, 30 feet high, at an elevation of 205 feet above high water, a flashing white light is exhibited, visible 21 miles. (See Light List.)

Leading lights.—From a small masonry structure on the pier end at the western entrance point to the Hatien River, a fixed red light is exhibited.

At 1,130 yards cables 44° from the preceding a fixed white light is shown at an elevation of 33 feet above high water. These lights in line lead between the banks into the river.

Anchorage—Directions.—There is good holding ground southward of Nui Nai Lighthouse, but the depth is under 3 fathoms at 5 miles off, so that it is only available for light drafts, and in the northeast monsoon period.

The lighthouse, the Pirate, and Bulua Islands are excellent marks for recognizing the approach; the track recommended is between West Island of the Bulua Group and the Pirate Islands.

River—Beacons.—The channel into Hatien River, about 150 yards in width, is marked by wooden beacons; it should be approached southward of the outermost beacon, which is 26 feet high and surmounted with a spherical topmark; the channel within is marked on either side by stakes. It is stated that craft of 6 to 8 feet draft can enter the river, at times, at high water. No craft should attempt to enter without local knowledge.

Tides.—The time at which it is high water, and the amount of the rise of tide in this part of the Gulf of Siam, is very irregular and variable.

The town of Hatien, on the western side of the entrance, is the principal settlement, and to it are attached all the French Islands in the Gulf, as far as Samit Point.

Communication.—There is communication with Saigon by the canal via Chaudok, by very small steam craft and boats, and telegraphic communication with Saigon, Kamput, and Hong Chong.

Coast.—Between Nui Nai Point, Hatien, and Kep Point, 11 miles to the northwestward, the coast is low, and in the approach are the Pirate Islands; the channel between is only navigable for craft of very light draft.

Midway between the points is the Kompong trach, available at high water for small junks. There is a bridge over it about ‡ mile up; the town of same name is about 8 miles up. At a mile south of the entrance is Pnom Lok, or Luk Son, with a customhouse and a missionary establishment.

Pirate Islands.—This group extends for a distance of about 13 miles southward of Kep Point, and lies on the northern side of the approach to Hatien.

Peaked Island, the northernmost, is 504 feet in height and lies about 2.3 miles off Kep Point; good water and wood are plentiful here.

South Pirate (Lat. 10° 15′ N., Long. 104° 17′ 40″ E.), the southernmost, is very small and surrounded by a reef which extends to the distance of about ½ mile on its northern side. Great Pirate Island lies 4 miles north-northeastward of it.

Rugged rock, 6 feet high, at 2.5 miles northwestward of Great Pirate, is the western extremity of the group. Within the 3-fathoms curve encircling this group are numerous shallow patches of which the chart will afford the best information. The passage between them and the shore is only adapted to coasting craft with local knowledge.

Anchorages.—There is anchorage during the southwest monsoon period for small craft, in about 3½ fathoms, about ½ mile off the eastern end of Great Pirate Island; also at 2 miles castward of North Pirate in about 4 fathoms. In the northeast monsoon, there is anchorage in 3 fathoms under the southern side of Peaked Island, and also southward of Kep Point, in about 2½ fathoms, a prominent point northward of Peaked Island, with Kep Peak, within it, 963 feet in height. The navigator must use his own discretion when proceeding to any of these anchorages. The trade seems to be chiefly centered at Hong Chong in the northeast monsoon period.

Brandon rock—Rocks.—Between Peaked Island and Bumbi bluff, 11 miles northwestward of it, there is a rocky plateau, on which the general depth is about 2 fathoms, but there is a small patch of 6 feet 295° about 4 miles from Peaked Island; also Brandon rock, a pinnacle with 3 feet water, at 3.5 miles 261° of Peaked Island, with Temple and Rocky Islets farther westward.

Koh Tron (Fu Kok), called by the natives Koh Dud, and by the French Fu Kok, divides the approach to Kamput into two channels. It is of a triangular shape, 26 miles in length, north and south, and 14 miles in breadth near the northern end. The northeast side of

Koh Tron is composed of table-land about 8 miles in length, and 1,978 feet in height at its northern end, southward of which table-land is the Quoin, 1,017 feet in height; and at the southern end of the island there are some conical hills and bluffs. Round Hill, the southeast extremity, is 394 feet in height, and only connected by a narrow isthmus with that extremity of the island. Gunong Kwala, at the north extremity, is 1,213 feet in height, and situated in Lat. 10° 26′ 00″ N., Long. 103° 58′ 30″ E. There are also some hills of moderate height near the northwestern point; the remainder of the island is low.

Shores.—The eastern shore is fringed with reefs and sunken rocks to the distance of from 3 to 4 miles, and the northern side to 1 mile in places. The western side is almost clear; Spread Tree Islet (Hon do Moi), with rocks, outside it, lies nearly a mile from the shore at about 3 miles south of the northwestern point. The principal dangers are referred to with the channels leading to Kamput. There are several fresh-water streams on the island.

Villages—Duong Dong.—There are several villages, the chief of which, and the capital of the island, Duong Dong, is on the Kua Giang, a stream on the western side of the island; it is under the administration of Hatien, is the center of an important fishing industry, and contains about 600 inhabitants. From the offing it presents an agreeable appearance, being surrounded by coconut trees. The entrance to the river is marked by a large rock surmounted by a pagoda. When the small native craft are entering at night a light is shown, white in the channel and red over the dangers.

The village of Kua Kan is southward of Duong Dong, northward of Square Hill. It is a fishing village, about a mile up a stream which has a depth of 6 feet in the entrance at high water.

Fowls, eggs, and fish are plentiful on the island, but the natives are not over ready to sell.

The other villages and streams are of but little importance. Ham Ninh, on the eastern coast, is connected with Duong Dong by a road. Bai Dok, northward of it, is a fishing village, and sampans are constructed here. Retram, on the northern coast, is practically abandoned.

Communication with Hatien is maintained by a small steam craft and by junks, interrupted during southwest monsoon period.

Anchorages.—There are anchorages on all sides of the island, according to the prevailing monsoon.

An Thoi.—A group of islands extends about 7 miles southward of Koh Tron, the highest being Hon Dua, 326 feet, at ½ mile southward of An Thoi village at the southern extremity of Koh Tron. Omega, or Hon Trang, is the southwesternmost of these, and from it a reef projects southward for ½ mile. Hon Mong Thai is the southeastern-

most, at 1.5 miles eastward of Omega. Hon Thom, 328 feet high, is the largest, near the center of the group. Dangers extend 4 miles east-southeastward of Round Hill, the southeastern extremity of Koh Tron.

There are channels with apparently deep water between the islands, but they should not be used, as dangers exist other than those shown on the charts.

Light.—On the western point of An Thoi Bay, a fixed white light is exhibited from an iron column, at a height of 131 feet above the sea, visible about 6 miles. (See Light List.)

The Brothers.—East and West Brothers are two islets 3 miles apart, and 439 and 406 feet, respectively, in height, lying off the southern point of Koh Tron, 5.5 miles southeastward of the An Thoi Island. There are three rocks southward and westward of the West Brother; the southwestern and largest is Table Rock, distant 1 mile and about 20 feet high; the southeasternmost, at about the same distance, is 5 feet high, and the other, 3 feet high, is distant about 400 yards. They are all apparently steep-to.

Kamput approaches.—From Kep Point the coast westward forms several shallow bays to abreast Middle Island, a distance of about 30 miles; in the first of these bays is Kamput or Kampot town, on the western branch of the Kompong Bai.

Shallow water fronts the whole of this coast, extending southward of Bumbi Bluff, approach to Kamput, for a distance of 5 miles, and eastward of the meridian of the bluff for a distance of 21 miles.

It may be approached from southward or westward; the latter is available for all classes of vessels, as hereafter mentioned, while the southern has many dangers.

Aspect.—The approach is easily recognized by Koh Tron, the large island which divides the approach. The Elephant Range northwestward of Kamput is very striking, being 3,200 feet in height. The Paps over Bumbi Bluff, about 300 feet in height, and Bumbi Cone (Pnom Sor), about 8 miles northward of them, are conspicuous from the channel.

Dangers.—The islands and dangers on either side as far northward as Pulo Sisi have been described.

Pulo Sisi, or the Twins (Lat. 10° 17′ N., Long. 104° 13′ E.), are two islets covered with trees and connected by a reef of rocks at the southern extremity of the bank, which extends some 21 miles southward of Bumbi bluff, at the entrance to Kamput, and forming the eastern side of the approach; the northern islet is 213 feet high, and lies about 238° 5 miles from South Pirate Island.

Rosita rock, on the same bank, lies 328°, 4.8 miles from Pulo Sisi. It is 100 yards in extent, with 2 feet water on it and steep-to, and may at times be seen from aloft by the discolored water.



Clearing mark.—Bumbi cone in line with eastern side of Bumbi bluff, bearing 0°, leads westward of both dangers in not less than 2¾ fathoms water.

Rocky Islet, 26 feet in height, lies on the same bank about 4 miles southward of the Bumbi bluff, and Temple Islet, about 1.3 miles 103° of it; at 1,600 yards 219° from Temple Islet is a rock with 2 feet water.

South Channel to Kamput—Directions.—The Brothers, with Pulo Dama, form the limits of the southern approach to Kamput; farther northward Pulo Sisi and Rosita rock form the eastern side of the channel, and the shallow water extending some 4 miles off Koh Tron, the western. The channel is not recommended for vessels about 15 feet draft. Vessels may, if necessary, pass northward of the Brothers, but they should not approach Round Hill (the southeastern point of Koh Tron) nearer than 5 miles, as a rocky ridge with 3 fathoms and less extends east-southeastward 4.5 miles from the point.

Bearings of Pulo Dama Islands, the Brothers, Pulo Sisi, and of the conspicuous Peaks of Koh Tron, should suffice to keep a vessel westward of the doubtful Donai Shoal and off Rosita rock. Gunong Susu, or the Paps, on Bumbi bluff, bearing 2°, leads westward of Rosita rock; it will probably be visible when approaching the rock, and a better mark than that next mentioned. From aloft, in clear weather, Bumbi cone in line with the eastern extremity of Gunong Susu, bearing 0°, also leads westward in about 2¼ fathoms; this leading mark will also lead to the anchorage in 3¼ fathoms, 1.5 miles southward of Bumbi bluff, or anchorage may be taken abreast and westward of Rocky and Temple Islands in a little deeper water.

Sailing vessels working in must be guided by the lead and the chart, observing that the water shoals suddenly on the edge of the reef extending from the shore southeastward of the summit of Koh Tron.

West Channel to Kamput.—For vessels above 15 feet draft, the channel northward of Koh Tron should be taken, as the depths are not less than 6 or 7 fathoms throughout, whereas the channel eastward of Koh Tron is shallow. Vessels of or above moderate draft can not approach within 7 miles of Kamput.

Islands and dangers—Tian Moi, or Water Island (Lat. 10° 25′ N., Long. 103° 47′ E.), is a good mark by which to recognize the entrance of the West Channel. This island is 713 feet in height at its northern end, and has some fishermen's huts on the south side. The bay on the northern shore within Water Island and the coast near Kamput, is fronted by a shallow flat to the distance of 5 miles in places, as before mentioned.

Middle Island (Phu du) lies between Water Island and the mainland; it has two peaks, the northern one being 575 feet in height. A rocky patch with a depth of 5 feet lies 800 yards 196° from the south point of Middle Island.

The entrance of the West Channel between Water Island and Koh Tron is about 2.2 miles wide, with Flat rock just within it, situated 1,350 yards from the northwestern point of Koh Tron; a rock, which dries, lies midway between Flat rock and the point.

Clump Island (Hon Trai Boi), 60 feet high, covered with trees, lies 2 miles southwestward from the same point, with a shallow patch at 800 yards eastward of it.

Channel Island (Hon Ran), 48 feet high, lies in the entrance, nearly a mile northward of Clump Island.

Cape Clear rock, a pinnacle, with 4 feet water, lies on the northern side of the fairway, with the eastern extremity of Water Island bearing 311°, distant a little over a mile.

The ground is foul to the distance of ½ mile off Kwala Point, the northern extremity of Koh Tron, and a number of rocks, 20 feet high, extend about 400 yards from the point, having others near them under water. There is a patch of 1¾ fathoms, situated 1.5 miles 359° from Gunong Kwala, with depths of 8 to 12 fathoms around.

Directions.—The fairway is close northward of Channel Island and Flat rock, thence passing 2 miles or more northward of Kwala point to avoid the  $1\frac{3}{4}$ -fathoms patch off and the shoals eastward of it. The channel eastward of Clump Island and southward of Flat rock is not recommended, as the ground is foul between them and Koh Tron, and the set of the tidal streams irregular.

Caution should be used in standing toward the edge of the northern bank when approaching Kamput River, as it is steep-to and rocky.

Anchorages.—Large vessels can not proceed more than 5 or 6 miles eastward of Kwala Point or within about 7 miles of Kamput. Small craft bound for Kamput should haul southeastward from abreast Kwala Point and keep it bearing northward of 272° until Gunong Susu on Bumbi bluff bears about 358°, or Bumbi cone is in in line with the eastern side or lower part of Gunong Susu, as when coming by the southern channel, which mark will lead to the anchorage, in 3¾ fathoms, with Kep Point Hill bearing 103°.

Good anchorage will be found in the northeast monsoon period on the northwestern side of Tian Moi or Water Island in a depth of 4 fathoms, at ½ mile from the shore, avoiding the rock charted southward of Phu du or Middle Island; and all vessels intending to remain any length of time at Kamput would do well to anchor here and complete their water. The watering place is in a sandy bay on the northwestern side of Tian moi; it is a fine running stream, and as the beach is very steep the water is easily embarked. (The water is now said to be good at Kamput.)

Kamput or Kompong Bai (Lat. 10° 34′ 00″ N., Long. 104° 9′ 30″ E.) is the chief town of the Province of Cambodia, which stretches from Hatien to the border of Siam.

It is situated on the western shore of the western entrance of the Kompong Bai, about 3 miles above the Paps on Bumbi bluff, and consists of about 500 houses; the neighborhood is thickly populated, and there are numerous creeks intersecting it.

The principal traders are Chinese, who visit the place in junks which lie in the creeks near the town.

The town is becoming of increasing importance as a center of the pepper trade; sugar cane and rice are largely grown, as the soil is very fertile. The population is composed of Cambodians, Chinese, and Malay fishermen.

The residence of the administrator is about 2.5 miles above the customhouse situated at its mouth.

The river.—There is a channel on either side of the island in the fairway westward of Bumbi bluff. The western of these known as Grand Pass is the deeper of the two. The bar fronting them has a depth of nearly 2 feet at low water, but within it the water deepens to 12 feet and more. The channel over the bar is marked by stakes, but no small craft should attempt to enter without local knowledge. A boat can cross the bar at all times when the water is smooth, but during the southwest monsoon period the sea breaks along the whole coast at times. Junks are sometimes detained in the river by want of water on the bar. The eastern branch is only available for canoes.

Supplies—Telegraph.—Kamput is connected with the telegraph system. Coastal steamers call here and at Hatien. There is a fairly good market, beef and other supplies are obtainable, and the water is good.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Rocky Island, off the entrance of Kamput River, at 4h. 0m., springs rise about 4 feet. The streams here, as in most other parts of the gulf, run for 12 hours near the full and change, subject to great irregularities.

Winds.—During the months of March and April the winds are usually from southeast with strong squalls from northwest to east-northeast at times. The temperature at that period is about 86°, sometimes reaching 90°.

Coast—Smait River is at the head of the bay situated between Kamput and Middle (Phu Du) Island, western entrance to Kamput; the village of same name, with 1,200 inhabitants, is about 4 miles up; there is a depth of about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet in its approach.

Datsap River, northward of Middle Island, has the customhouse of Sre cham at its entrance. Light-draft junks enter it, and there is a considerable export of rice from it.

The town of Dat Sap is about 6 miles up, and westward of it is Riem and Riem Bay.

Riem Bay, situated on the northern side of the western approach to Kamput, is about 2.5 miles in extent, with depths of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms over a mud bottom. Four islands lie in the entrance, named after their respective situations; Northwest, Middle, Southwest, 344 feet high, and Bay Island, 377 feet in height, at its northwest extremity. Round Island lies northward of Northwest Island, and Channel Island southeastward of Bay Island. Reefs fringe the islands, as shown on chart.

The bay, though exposed to the southwest monsoon, affords fairly secure anchorage at that time off the northeastern extremity of Bay Island.

Dangers—White rock is situated on a ledge of rocks extending ½ mile 204° of the northern point of the entrance. Between Middle Island and the northwestern extremity of Bay Island are two patches of 3 fathoms, but the water is not much deeper in their neighborhood.

At ½ mile 13° of the customhouse on the northeast extremity of Bay Island is a patch of 6 feet, with 2 fathoms around it.

Anchorage—Directions.—Vessels under 15 feet draft can enter by any passage other than that eastward of Channel Island in the southern approach.

The best position is at the northern end of the channel between Bay and Channel Islands, in about 5 fathoms, with the customhouse 232°, distant 500 yards; if proceeding further into the bay by this channel, the rock with 6 feet water in the fairway must be avoided, passing westward of it; the customhouse bearing eastward of 171° clears it.

Town.—There are native villages on the shore, which are inundated at times. The town or village of Riem is about 3 miles up the river of that name, which has a least depth of 2 feet for about 2.5 miles up, above which it nearly dries at low water. The neighborhood produces principally pepper and rice, but they are apparently shipped from Dat Sap, which river adjoins Riem and discharges northward of Middle Island (Phu du), as before described.

Offlying islands.—Rong Sam Lem (Lat. 10° 35′ N., Long. 103° 17′ E.), the southernmost of a chain of islands in the estuary of Kampongsom River, is 5.3 miles in length north and south, 780 feet in height at its northern end, and wooded; its western and southeastern coasts are steep-to.

The island is unhealthful, but is inhabited and thickly wooded. An islet lies off its northern end, between which and the island is a rock with less than 6 feet water.

A patch of 4½ fathoms lies about 1.3 miles eastward of the northern point of Saracen Bay, with 9 to 10 fathoms around it.

Saracen Bay, on the eastern side of Rong Sam Lem, almost divides it into two parts, and affords good anchorage, the shores being high and the entrance fronting the mainland. The bay is 2 miles in length and 1 mile wide in the entrance, with depths of 5 to 6 fathoms over a considerable portion of it. The bottom is flat and generally sandy, decreasing in depth toward the shore. There are no dangers in the southern arm, at the head of which is a sandy beach, but the southern shore of the northern arm is encumbered with sunken rocks southward of the two rocks shown on the chart.

Shoal.—A patch of 1½ fathoms is situated 400 yards off the northern shore of the bay, bearing 248°, distant 1,450 yards from the eastern extremity of the northern point.

Anchorage.—There is good anchorage in about 4 fathoms about 600 yards off the cascade in the southern part of the bay during the southwest monsoon period. In the northeast monsoon the northern anchorage is the more sheltered, as there is a certain amount of fetch from the 25 miles of open water eastward of it.

Wood and fresh water may be obtained at the head of the bay without much difficulty at high water. There is also a convenient watering place just northward of the bay, where the beach is steep-to. The water, although it looks good, is at times impregnated with decaying vegetable matter, and is better avoided for drinking purposes.

Mangrove Island lies about midway between Rong Sam Lem and the mainland, with a sunken rock  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile westward of it. A patch of  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms lies nearly 1 mile northward of the eastern point of Mangrove Island, and another patch  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at 1.5 miles southward of the same point.

Elbow Island lies close to the main shore eastward of Mangrove Island, with Square rock, above water, about a mile northwestward of it. There is a patch of 4½ fathoms at ¾ mile southward of Elbow Island, and shallow water extends about ¼ mile off the point southward of it.

Rocks.—At 1 mile northeastward of Elbow Island is a reef which never covers, and at 800 yards 64° of the reef is a patch of 2½ fathoms. At 2 miles northeastward of the reef, and about the same distance offshore, is a rock with less than 6 feet water.

Koh Rong, 2.2 miles northward of Rong Sam Lem, is 8 miles in length northwest and southeast, 5 miles in breadth, 1,158 feet in height, and wooded.

Its western and northern sides are apparently steep-to, but a bank with depths of 3 to 5 fathoms (one patch of 1½ fathoms) extends about 3.5 miles northeastward of the northeast extremity of the island,

and another, with from 4 to 5 fathoms, projects about 2.5 miles southeastward from its southeastern side.

Anchorage.—On the eastern side of the island vessels may lie sheltered in the southwest monsoon period in depths of 4 to 8 fathoms, and vessels can approach it from either northward or southward of the island.

Channel Island lies in the northern approach to Koh Rong anchorage; its northern side is fringed with coral to a short distance.

Middle Island is between Channel Island and the northern shore, Samit Point; a shallow bank extends about 1.5 miles eastward of it. North Islet lies off its northern side, with shallow patches between.

Plate Islet lies between North Islet and Samit Point; rocks extend eastward of it, and the ground between it and Samit Point is foul in places.

Rocks.—There is a rock above water about midway between Middle Island and the point of the bay 9 miles eastward of it, with a sunken reef on its southern side; there is another rock or reef about a mile northeast of it.

Kampongsom Bay, within the island just described, is about 22 miles wide, with depths of 7 to 8 fathoms, apparently free from dangers other than those mentioned with the islands. At 7 miles eastward of Koh Rong it is reduced to a width of 14 miles, within which is the estuary of Kampongsom River, which has not yet been charted. Touffu rock is a conspicuous object in the bay, situated (several miles) north-northeastward of Elbow Island; a reef with rocks with 5 to 8 feet on it extends 1,600 yards northwestward of the rock.

The northern shore of the bay is mostly low, with mangroves, but it rises to 300 feet at the estuary of the river; on the southern side it attains an elevation of 500 feet. There are several villages around the shores of the bay.

The town of Kampongsom is about 30 miles up the river or about 55 miles from Koh Rong. It is a place of considerable trade.

The river Sré Umbel also discharges into this bay at 15 miles 15° from Depart Island, not charted. It is navigable for junks to near Kompongs leu, on the line of route from Pnom penh to Kamput. Sré Umbel is the capital town of the Province of same name.

Directions.—The channel from the southward between Rong-Sam Lem and Mangrove Island Reef is 3.5 miles wide, with depths of 11 to 13 fathoms; that between Rong Sam Lem and Koh Rong is nearly 2 miles wide, with a depth of about 10 fathoms; both are safe but the bottom in the latter is rocky and not suitable for anchoring. The channel between Koh Rong and the islet north of it is 1.5 miles wide, with depths of  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 7 fathoms. They are all easily available by a steamer. Above the soundings charted a vessel must proceed with great caution until such times as a chart is available.

Coast—Samit Point (Lat. 10° 53′ N., Long. 103° 3′ E.), 500 feet in height, is the northern point of approach to Kampongsom Bay; rocks above water extend 1.5 miles northwest of it.

Between Samit Point and Koh Kong, 23 miles to the northward, the land is hilly near the coast, forming rocky bluffs to seaward, with sandy bays between. These bays generally have deep water in them, and afford good anchorage with offshore winds. The highest and most remarkable hill about this part is the Quoin, 1,155 feet in height.

Koh Samit.—About 2 miles northwestward of Samit Point is Koh Samit, about 1.5 miles in extent, and 400 feet in height. It is the southernmost islet of a chain which extends 12 miles northward and nearly parallel with the coast below mentioned. (Another island of the same name lies about 75 miles northwestward, p. 170.) Between the island and the mainland the water is shallow, but there is shelter for fishing craft. Two other islands are situated at 3 and 6 miles northward of Koh Samit within the 5-fathom curve, and high rocks extend 1.5 miles northwest of Koh Samit.

A round island, 500 feet in height, lies about 4 miles northward of Koh Samit, apparently steep-to.

Table rock, 200 feet high, lies 3 miles north of the round island with a patch of 4½ fathoms off its southwestern side. Some islets, 300 feet in height, lie southwestward of the point, 300 feet in height, westward of Quoin hill.

Off-lying dangers.—The dangers, real and reported, as far northward as Koh Samit, Lat. 10° 54′ N., have been described on pages 149, 150. The following lie off the coast between that island and Koh Kong.

Kusrovie rock (Lat. 11° 6′ 30″ N., Long. 102° 46′ 30″ E.), situated 21 miles northwestward from Koh Samit and 15 miles from the southern extremity of Koh Kong, is about 150 yards in diameter and 36 feet high. Its sides are shelving and isolated rocks extend 100 yards from it.

Ubon Boratit Shoal, situated 11° 1,800 yards from Kusrovie rock, is formed of coral and sand, with depths varying from 1 to 8 fathoms, the least water upon it being 5 feet.

A patch of 3 fathoms lies 238°, distant 900 yards from the shoal. There is deep water between these two shoals, and between them and Kusrovie rock.

Ellen Bangka rock.—In 1870 the Netherlands India bark Ellen Bangka struck twice on a shoal on which there was only 11 feet of water. At the time the vessel was stated to be 5 or 6 miles north of Kusrovie rock, which was visible from the deck; the approximate position of the danger is Lat. 11° 11′ N., Long. 102° 47′ E.



Koh Kong (Lat. 11° 20′ N., Long. 103° 0′ E.), 21 miles northward of Koh Samit, is a table-topped island, 11 miles in length, north and south, 3.5 miles wide, 1,500 feet in height at its northern end, and covered with trees. It has some sandy beaches along its western shore, which is fairly steep-to, but the island offers no sheltered anchorages or other advantages to shipping. It is inhabited occasionally by fishermen.

Within Koh Kong there is a shallow bay into which numerons small rivers discharge; they are not generally approached excepting in the flat-bottom boats of the country. The channel into this bay from the southward lies close along the eastern side of the island.

The mainland within Koh Kong is very low as far as it is visible to the eastward, but it rises to the northward with great regularity until it joins the high table-land abreast Koh Kut.

Phra Chanta Nakara, the point on the northern side of the channel northward of Koh Kong, has a cone islet at about ½ mile northwest of it.

Klong Koh Paw.—Two streams of some size enter the sea at 6 and 8.5 miles northward of Koh Kong; the northernmost, named Klong Koh Paw, has a depth of 5 feet on its bar at low water, and may be known by a remarkable mound, 400 feet in height, forming a bluff on the coastline, 2 miles northward of the entrance. A French customs officer is stationed at Bankok Paw, 8 miles up the river, which is not navigable farther up. The southern stream, Klong Kasof, also has 5 feet on its bar at low water. A quantity of dried and salted fish is exported. The edge of the shallow bank off these streams is steep-to and 2.5 miles from the shore.

The coast, from the Klong Koh Paw, trends in a north-northwest direction 40 miles to nearly the head of Tung Yai Bay, with regular depths off it. With the exception of two rocky bluffs, the northern-most of which is Lem Kratt, the land near the sea is low, and fringed by a sandy beach pierced by numerous small streams; but parallel to the coast, at the distance of 2 or 3 miles inland, a table-land rises with great regularity to the height of more than 2,000 feet. This mountain mass rises at the distance of a few miles northeastward of Tung Yai River, and falls again at the Klong Koh Kong; one of its most elevated points was found to be 4,000 feet in height.

Koh Kut, lying 16 miles off the coast, and 25 miles northwest-ward of Koh Kong, is the southernmost of a group of islands extending in a direction parallel to the coast for a distance of 40 miles and fronting the southern approach to Tung Yai Bay. It is a high level island with steep cliffs. There are two small conical peaks in its southern portion, the highest of which (the northernmost) is 1,171 feet in height.

Good anchorage for small craft will be found in a bay near the northwest end of Koh Kut, with a stream of fresh water running into

it. The bay, on the eastern side (Lat. 11° 44′ N., Long. 102° 33′ E.), would afford shelter in the southwest monsoon period. Fresh water may also be obtained on this side about a mile from the northern point of the island.

Koh Mak, lying 4 miles northwest of the northern end of Koh Kut, is 4 miles in length, east and west, and generally rather low, excepting its western extremity, which is a rocky headland, 350 feet in height. The island, Koh Loi, 3 miles westward of Koh Mak, is 800 feet high.

A coral flat extends 4.5 miles northeastward from Koh Mak, on which is the islet of Koh Kahdat, 190 feet in height. At the northeastern extremity of the flat is Richelieu patch, with a depth of 2 fathoms.

Koh Mak is inhabited by fishermen engaged in collecting bechede-mer. There is a channel 3 miles wide between the archipelago of islands south of Koh Chang and Koh Mak, with apparently not less than 5 fathoms water; and there is a good channel 3.5 miles wide with depths of 9 to 10 fathoms between Koh Mak and Koh Kut.

Koh Chang, situated 7 miles north-northwestward of Koh Mak, is 16 miles in length northwest and southeast, and about 6 miles in breadth, having several peaked hills intersected by rocky and precipitous ravines. The highest part of the island (a table peak near its center) is 2,446 feet in height, and situated in Lat. 12° 01′ 30″ N. Long. 102° 19′ 00″ E. Notwithstanding the numerous islands and rocks that fringe Koh Chang, no dangers were discovered near its shores but what were apparent. Fresh water can be obtained on the western side of Koh Chang, about 3 miles from the northern point.

At the village of Ban Koh Chang, on the eastern side, is a customhouse.

Reported danger.—A sunken rock was reported in 1889 to exist about 23 miles westward of the northern end of Koh Chang, as charted.

Tung Yai Bay lies within Koh Kut, Koh Chang, and the islands between them, and affords good anchorage in depths of about 4 fathoms, with Lem Nam bearing about 272°, distant 4 miles; there are depths of 6 fathoms farther southward. Sunken rocks extend upward of a mile southward of Lem Nam and nearly the same distance northeastward of that point, all lying within the 3-fathom line fronting the bay.

The head of the bay has depths of less than 3 fathoms for a distance of 4 miles outside High Tree Point, which is 4.5 miles from its head.

Directions.—The widest approach to Tung Yai Bay is that from the southward between Koh Kut and the mainland, in which there is sufficient water for vessels of any draft, but a good lookout should be kept, as the soundings taken are but few.

The entrance immediately northward of Koh Kut is also good, being 3.5 miles wide, with depths of 9 to 10 fathoms.



The channel between Koh Mak and the several islands northward of it has apparently not less than 5 fathoms, and is 3 miles wide. A fairway patch of 5½ fathoms, with 8 fathoms around, is named Vesatri Bank.

These islands are Koh Kra, 800 feet; Klum, 600 feet; Bidang, 430 feet; Chan, 700 feet; Ile du Pic, 935 feet high; and Le Chameau. Le Soulier rock, apparently above water, lies about a mile northward of Le Chameau, and there is a rock, 148 feet high, about <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile eastward of Le Chameau.

The channel from the northward between Koh Chang and the mainland is referred to with Lem Ling below.

Tung Yai River falls into the head of the bay; it is only navigable for boats. The village of Takekian is charted about 4 miles above the entrance, with Muong Krat or Ban Prah about 1.5 miles westward of it. On the eastern side of the shallow part of the head of Tung Yai Bay is the village of Tem.

Lem Ling is situated on the northern side of the northwestern entrance to Tung Yai Bay. A mangrove islet lies close to Lem Ling, and the ground is foul for a short distance off, and also for more than a mile along the shore to the northward; but Lem Ling is quite clear to the southwestward.

North Channel.—This channel is 2.5 miles wide between Lem Ling and the northeastern extremity of Koh Chang, opening out to about 8 miles abreast the southeastern end of the island; the fairway depth is about 3½ fathoms at low water. The channel with this depth is narrow abreast Jaune rock, where a prong with 2½ fathoms stretches off from Koh Chang.

Dangers.—The Tung Yai Bank extends about two-thirds of the width of the channel from the eastern shore, with a depth under 3 fathoms; near its middle and about a mile within its 3-fathom edge is Jaune rock (Hin Mun Chang), a clump of black rocks which dries 5 feet. Les Freres, 197 feet high, lie in the fairway southwestward of Jaune rock.

**Buoy.**—A conical red buoy is placed in about 3 fathoms on the southern extremity of the bank off Lem Nam.

La Fourmi—Light.—La Fourmi rock, 4 feet high, lies in the fairway of the western entrance, 2 miles southeastward of Lem Ling; a small rock with 1 foot of water lies \( \frac{3}{4} \) mile northeastward of it, on the edge of the 3-fathom curve of Tung Yai bank.

A fixed white light is exhibited, from a white beacon, on La Fourmi rock, at an elevation of 26 feet above high water, visible from a distance of 4 miles. The light is unwatched.

A fixed white light is also charted at Lem Ngop, the Government station on the northern side of the channel, where also there is a customhouse.

Anchorage—Directions.—There is anchorage in about 4½ to 5 fathoms at about ½ mile southeastward of La Fourmi Light. There is no difficulty in reaching this anchorage; the lighthouse rock should be steered for bearing 101°, passing from 200 to 400 yards southward of it and anchoring when it comes in line with or open of Lem Ling.

Proceeding on to Tung Yai Bay requires local knowledge in any craft above 15 feet draft.

The coast from Lem Ling trends 20 miles northwestward to Lem Sing, the western point of entrance to Chentabun River. The shore between is low mangrove, and the depths are said to be less than charted. Koh Phroet, 5.5 miles southeastward of Lem Sing, is connected with the point abreast by a sunken ridge. This coast has a number of fishing villages.

Koh Chik, a cultivated island 349 feet in height, and nearly a mile in length, lies in the fairway of the approach to Wain Creek, an inlet about ½ mile in width in the entrance, at about 6 miles northward of Lem Ling; there is a smaller islet between it and the southern point of the inlet. In the fishing season (northeast monsoon) there are about 1,000 fishermen on Koh Chik.

Wain Creek is approached over the bar with 1½ fathoms at low water, which extends 2 miles seaward of Koh Chik; at 2 miles within that islet the depth is 6 fathoms. Here the inlet divides, the western arm trends northward, gradually reducing in depth to 2 fathoms at about 10 miles up, in the approach to Ban Yao, which town has 2,500 inhabitants. There is a boat channel leading to Chentabun River from near Ban Yao.

The eastern arm has from 1.5 to 2 miles for about 5 miles, to near its head, where Bau Creek enters it. The point which separates these streams has a shallow flat extending 3 mile southwestward or seaward of it.

Both branches are between mangrove swamps, but rice fields commence at Ban Yao, in the western arm.

Alabaster rocks, 7.5 miles southward of the entrance of Chentabun River, are two small rocks, about 40 feet apart, lying nearly north and south from each other. The southern and larger one dries 3 feet at low water springs and is 14 feet in length; the northern one dries 2 feet. There is a depth of 2 fathoms between and around them with 5 fathoms at a short distance. Fishermen say they can trace a line of rocky bottom to Cone Island.

From the Alabaster rocks, Cone Island bears 354°, distant 7 miles, and the southernmost of the three islands, Koh Kwan, 350 feet in height, abreast, 62°.

Chentabun River.—The position of this river may be recognized from a distance by Kau Sabap, a mountain, 2,900 feet in height,

situated 10 miles northeastward from its entrance; also by Cone Island (Koh nam sau), 405 feet high, lying 2 miles westward of the entrance.

Navigable depths.—Koh Chula, or Bar Island, lies in the entrance, and is surrounded by the flat with less than 2 fathoms water which extends from the eastern shore; rocks are reported to extend some distance southwestward of it. Between it and the rocks, which extend 300 yards off the western point of entrance, is the channel 500 yards wide into the river, with about 2 fathoms at low water; it is necessary to moor in the river as the streams are strong. Vessels of 12 feet draft go about 1.5 miles above Paknam, to abreast the Roman Catholic chapel, southward of Lem Pradoo, but the river is said to have silted up considerably.

Rocks discovered.—A survey has revealed the existence of the following uncharted rocks in the approach to the Chentabun River:

A rock with a least depth of 2 fathoms over it, 1,250 yards 155° from Koh Kwang.

A rock with a least depth of 2 fathoms over it, on the bearings: Koh Kwang, south tangent, 68° 30′, distant about 4.3 miles; Koh Phroet, north tangent, 51°.

A rock with a least depth of 1½ fathoms over it, on the bearings: Koh Kwang, south tangent, 76° 30′, distant 4 miles: Koh Phroet, north tangent, 58°.

An unchartered rock, with 11 feet of water over it at low water spring tides exists at the entrance to the Chentabun River. The rock is located 940 yards 226° from the western point of Koh Chula or Bar Island.

Note.—The name Lem Sing applies to the western entrance point of the river where the lighthouse stands, and not as shown on the chart.

The town of Chentabun is about 14 miles up; steam launches of about 4 feet draft can reach the town with local assistance. There is a French resident here.

In Chentabun is the finest and largest church in Siam, built by the Roman Catholics of the Province. Population between 6,000 and 7,000. It has a good market.

The village of Paknam, with a customhouse and a market, is situated on the eastern side of the entrance.

Light.—An occulting white light elevated about 280 feet above high water, and visible 12 miles, is exhibited from a red lattice-work structure on pillars, on the western side of the entrance to Chentabun River.

Anchorage.—A convenient anchorage for small craft, in a depth of 4 fathoms, may be obtained without the bar, with Koh Chula bearing 58°, distant 1 mile. Fishing stakes are numerous on the

banks. Fresh stock is scarce, but an abundance of good water may be procured in a small bay westward of Lem Sing.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at the entrance of the Chentabun at 10h. 0m.; springs rise about 5½ feet. The highest tide occurs on the day after new moon. Here, as in the Bangkok River, the streams run for 12 hours at the full and change, and are subject to great irregularity.

Telegraph.—Chentabun is connected with Bangkok by telegraph.
Trade.—Pepper is grown nearly everywhere in Rayong Province; coffee only around Chentabun; cotton does well: and rubber plantations are being developed; quantities of timber are shipped from the eastern ports of the Gulf; matting, gamboge, etc., are articles of export. Chentabun has a considerable trade in precious stones.

Fishermen move from one shore to the other, depending on the monsoon. Stakes extend out to depths of from 2 to 6 fathoms in places along the coast.

The coast northwestward from Chentabun River is generally flat, with hills in the distance.

Koh Saba (Lat. 12° 30′ N., Long. 101° 56′ E.) is a small island, 5 miles from Cone Island, lying close off the western point of entrance to the River Kem Nu, which river has about 4 feet on its bar at low water.

A reef, consisting of three heads, which dry 3 feet at low water, and is steep-to to seaward, lies just within the edge of the bank which fronts the shore, 306° about 2 miles from Koh Saba.

Parat Bay, northwestward of Koh Saba, is about 13 miles wide; the rivers Parat and Pa Sair or Pa Se discharge into it.

Dangers.—The eastern shore of the bay is fronted by a bank to the distance of 1.8 miles, on the edge of which, off Parat River, is Volant rock, which dries about 3 feet at low water.

Off the western shore the bank is foul and rocky and extends about 6 miles southeastward of the western point of the bay. A sand patch with 1 fathom water lies close to its edge, 241°, about 3 miles from Volant rock.

Three islands are situated on the prolongation of the bank southward; Koh Mon, the largest and outermost, in Lat. 12° 34′ N., Long. 101° 41′ E., is 6 miles offshore; the others are named Mong Klong and Mon Ni; the channel is foul between them. The channel within Mon Ni is foul, and should be avoided. Mon Ni is inhabited, and there is a well on it, the water of which is bitter, and supposed to contain medicinal properties.

Loftus rock, situated 126° about \(^3\) mile from Koh Mon, is of coral, steep-to, with 1\(^1\) feet water over it, and 5 or 6 fathons around.

The native pilots report a rock, named Hin ai eorp, visible at half-tide, as lying in a direct line between Mon Klong and Tung Kaben Bay, about 5 miles from the latter.

Hin Lawp, a rock lying 94°, distant 6 miles from Koh Mon, dries 3 feet at low water springs; shoal water extends 150 yards to the eastward of it, with depths of 4 to 6 fathoms around.

Pa Se River.—The bar of this river has a depth of 5 feet at low water, with 3 to 4 fathoms within, but the river is tortuous. Tankien is situated about 6 miles up, and is a telegraph station. The principal export is pepper. There is plenty of big game in the neighborhood.

Alhambra rocks, lying with Koh Mon bearing 13°, distant 8.5 miles, are coral patches 450 yards apart in a northeast and southwest direction and steep-to, having 9 fathoms water between them. The southwestern rock is nearly awash at low water spring tides, and the sea then breaks heavily on it in bad weather; the northeastern rock has a depth of 6 feet.

Buoy.—A conical black buoy lies about 300 yards southeastward of the southwestern rock; not to be depended on.

Victory Shoal, composed of coral, was reported in the year 1879, as being situated approximately in Lat. 12° 18′ N., Long. 101° 17′ E.

Coast.—Koh Tulu lies midway between Koh Mon and Koh Samit, 15 miles apart, with rocks extending ½ mile southeast of it.

Buoy.—At about 1.3 miles northward of Koh Tulu are two rocks 50 yards apart, dry at low water; a red buoy with topmark is placed on the northern side of these rocks, but is not to be depended on.

Koh Koi.—Between these rocks and Koh Samit is Koh Koi, with Koh Platin northward of it, with rocks between and around them. Between Platin and the shore are sunken rocks, as charted. Craft should pass southward of Koh Koi.

Koh Samit is wedge-shaped, 3.5 miles in length, and 424 feet in height at its northern end, which is its widest part. It lies 3 miles off the shore of the bight eastward of Lem Ya, and is connected with it by a bank with less than 3 fathoms water, and nearly so with that extending from Lem Ya, distant 1.3 miles. (Another island of the same name lies about 75 miles southeastward.) There is a patch of 2 fathoms at about 1 mile north of the northwestern extremity of Koh Samit, and one with less than 6 feet at ½ mile off the northern side of the island.

Light.—On the northwestern point of Koh Samit a fixed white light is exhibited occasionally.

Chong Samit is the narrow passage between Koh Samit and Lem Ya spit, and possibly carries 3 fathoms water.

A rock, 70 yards in extent, composed of bowlders, is reported to lie in the fairway, with the northern point of Koh Samit, bearing 53°, distant 1.5 miles. Another, with 10 feet of water, is reported near the end of the spit extending from the western shore (1912) at about a mile northeast of it; they may be one and the same. Only those locally acquainted should use this channel.

Tree Islet lies ½ mile southward of Koh Samit, and ½ mile beyond is Brown rock above water, with a sunken rock close eastward of it.

Lem Ya is 397 feet in height, and there is a range of conical hills extending from it 15 miles inland; the highest and northernmost is 2,470 feet in height. On each side of this headland the coast is low. A spit extends 1.3 miles southeastward of Lem Ya, forming western side of entrance to Chong Samit.

The village of Ban Pae lies about 2.5 miles northeastward of the point; it has a small garrison.

Bush rock, 268°, distant 2.5 miles from Lem Ya, is composed of coral, steep-to, and dry at low water, with 4 fathoms around.

Buoy.—A black and white horizontally striped buoy is moored 100 yards southward of the rock, but it is not to be depended on.

Coast.—The bay to the westward of Lem Ya is fringed with a sandy beach to its western extremity, Lem Sahemsan, or Cape Liant, distant 27 miles. Nearly midway, at about 1.5 miles offshore, is Koh Sakait with sunken rocks around it, but all lying within the 3-fathom edge of the bank fronting the coast.

Rayong.—A stream, on which is the town of Rayong, discharges northeastward of Koh Sakait; its mouth is continually shifting, and its bar is nearly dry at low water. A small white light is exhibited here when the mail steamers call, twice a week. The town has about 2,500 inhabitants. The principal products are pepper and gamboge.

About 5 miles westward of Koh Sakait are rocks above water, also within the 3-fathom curve.

Cape Liant or Lem Sahemsan.—Cape Liant is the southeast extremity of the promontory forming the eastern point of the entrance of Bangkok Bay.

Light.—On the southeastern extremity of Cape Liant a fixed white light is exhibited occasionally, visible 6 miles.

On approaching Cape Liant from the southward, the islands Chuen and Me san off it, being the highest land in the neighborhood, will be first seen.

Hin Chalan, the outermost island, will not be observed until it is within the distance of 5 miles; it is a white rock, 40 feet high, and steep-to.

The channel between Hin Chalan and Chuen is 2.5 miles wide, with deep water. The channel between Chuen and Me san is a mile in width, and deep; Sail rock, 45 feet high, lies in its western approach and Koh Ronkon, 118 feet high, at its eastern end. There are no dangers shown on the chart.

Chong Me san, the channel between Cape Liant and Koh Riat, is only 1 mile wide, but is much used by coasting craft, and has apparently a depth of 4 fathoms. During springs the tidal stream runs with considerable velocity through it, so that it should never

be attempted by a sailing vessel without a fair and commanding breeze.

Buoy.—A spit, with about 10 feet at low water near its extremity, extends 1 mile northwestward of Koh Me san, forming the southern side of the entrance from the westward. A spit extends northeastward of Koh Riat, southern side of the eastern entrance; it is marked by a buoy, not to be depended on; the channel is northward of it.

On the northern side are the shoals extending southward of Koh Pra and Koh Yoh Nok, as charted; the mainland is bordered by shallow water to a short distance beyond the points of the bays. Northeastward of Cape Liant is a reef which dries at times; position not given.

Light—Koh Chuen.—From Phahurat lighthouse, painted white, on the summit of Koh Chuen, is exhibited, at an elevation of 466 feet above high water, a group flashing white light. It is visible 29 miles.

A sector of fixed red light is shown from the same lighthouse over Hin Chalan, to the southward.

Sheltered Bay lies between the point situated 3 miles northward of Cape Liant and Lem Putau; it is about 4 miles wide, with good anchorage in about 3 fathoms water, sheltered by several islands fronting its entrance, mentioned below and with Koh Pra.

The eastern horn of sheltered bay may be known by a cone-shaped hill 454 feet in height. Koh Tki lies southwestward of the conical hill, and has a reef extending nearly to the rock above water  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile northward of it. A patch of  $3\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms lies about a mile 255° of Koh Tki. The best entrance apparently is between Koh Tki and the  $3\frac{3}{4}$ -fathom patch, and from thence eastward of Koh Mu, but it is apparently only available for vessels of light draft.

Sa ta hip, at the head of the bay, is a post and telegraph station; the place is growing fast, as are all the places where steamers call regularly. See channels, with Koh Yoh Nok, on page 173.

Koh Pra, 516 feet high, and about ½ mile in extent, is situated on the western side of Sheltered Bay, southward of Lem Putau, a bluff headland, 565 feet in height.

Light.—From an iron column 10 feet high on the northwestern extremity of Koh Pra, is exhibited, at an elevation of 55 feet above high water, a fixed red light visible 8 miles.

Buoyage.—A black and white vertically striped buoy marks the edge of the shoal at the northeastern extremity of Koh Pra, and a black and white horizontally striped buoy the edge of the shoal, 400 yards southeastward of the same extremity.

Anchorages.—There is an outer anchorage in about 6 fathoms at from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 mile westward of the light.

Northward of the quarantine station at the eastern end of Koh Prathere is anchorage space about 600 yards in length and in breadth, with depths of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 6 fathoms, with not less than  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms in the approach from seaward, but the channel is less than 200 yards wide at low water with that depth.

Southeastward of the quarantine station there is anchorage in 4 to 5 fathoms over ½ mile in extent. The depth is not less than 2½ fathoms at low water in the approach over the bar southward of Koh Pra; vessels can approach this anchorage either northward or southeastward of Koh Pra. The southern anchorage is apparently the quarantine anchorage.

The tidal streams are chartered from 1 to 2 knots, the flood northwest and west through these anchorages and the ebb in the opposite direction.

Rock reported.—A rock, drying at low water, has been discovered in Koh Pra anchorage, 800 yards 188° from the telegraph station at Bon Satahip.

Quarantine station.—There is a quarantine station on Koh Pra, and ships arriving from ports declared to be infected by the authorities of Bangkok call here for pratique; all vessels except regular traders who are sure of the port they left being clean are advised to call here.

Other so-called pratique stations are Koh Sichang, during southwest monsoon, and Ang Hin, during northeast monsoon; Paknam, and Bang Kolem in Bangkok River, only grant pratique if the port you come from is declared clean by the Siamese authorities; the bill of health is nothing to go by.

Signal station.—There is a signal flagstaff on the summit of the island.

Vessels which, for one reason or another, are unable to enter the quarantine anchorage, are required to fly F.G.L. flags of the International Code, in addition to the quarantine flag.

The answering signal W.N. will then be hoisted from the flagstaff, and the quarantine officer will board such vessels as soon as possible.

Koh Yoh Nok, 348 feet in height, lies about a mile southward of Koh Pra; it is nearly connected with Koh Yoh Noi, 275 feet high, just eastward of it. Hin Kadai, 75 feet high, lies south of the latter, and Koh Mu, 271 feet high, about a mile to the eastward. There is a channel into Sheltered Bay between these islands and Koh Pra, and Koh Satahipjai northward of them, and there is a channel to it also between Koh Pra and Lem Putau.

Coast—Tung Kitea Bay lies close northward of Lem Putau. Fresh water can be obtained in the southeastern corner of this bay, but in other respects it is an undesirable anchorage.

Koh Kram is 3 miles in length, north and south, 2 miles in breadth, and 704 feet in height near its southern end; its western coast is fairly steep-to, but a reef extends  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the eastern side, with an isolated patch beyond; on the eastern side of the southern extremity a reef projects nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile.

The bay on the northwestern side of Koh Kram is ½ mile wide at its entrance with a depth of about 5 fathoms, and there is about 3 fathoms at ½ mile from its head; it might afford temporary anchorage. There is a strong stream or current over the foul ground off West Point, but it is scarcely perceptible in the bay.

The channel between Koh Kram and the mainland is nearly 2 miles wide with a fairway depth of from 6 to 10 fathoms. The best channel is apparently eastward of Koh Ira, keeping close to the mainland. The channel westward of Koh Ira and then eastward of Sombrero appears safe also.

Kohr Ira lies in the fairway of the southern entrance of this channel; its southern and eastern sides are fringed by a reef with an islet or rock beyond; at 400 yards northeastward of this island, there is a rocky reef.

Sombrero rock or Hin Luk Kai, lies  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile from the southeastern side of Koh Kram (the chart shows another island or rock westward of it). A sunken rock is chartered  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile off the eastern side of Koh Kram, and 1 mile northward of Sombrero.

Tung Plong Bay, on the mainland, being sheltered by Koh Kram and Koh Ira, offers secure anchorage for small craft.

Islets.—At 16 miles north-northwest of Koh Kram is Koh Luem; between these is a chain of islets, namely, Koh Rin, 360 feet in height; Kring Badung, 194 feet; Mana Mechi, 154 feet; and the larger island, Koh Pai, 511 feet in height and 2 miles in length. There are several rocks around Koh Rin, all above water; the highest are White rock, 50 feet, and Tree rock, 51 feet, each with a little brushwood on them.

Koh Luem, or Pilot Island (Lat. 12° 57′ 30″ N., Long. 100° 38′ 00″ E.), the northernmost of these islets, is  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in length,  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in breadth, steep-to on the southern and western sides, and rises from the sea bold and with cliffs; its peak is of a dome-like appearance, and 445 feet in height.

A reef with 2 to 4 fathoms, and 8 to 13 fathoms close-to, extends at least 2 miles in a northerly direction from Koh Luem. A patch of 3½ fathoms lies 1.5 miles eastward of the northern extremity of the island.

This island, from its conspicuous and peculiar position, has long been considered the principal landmark at the head of the gulf; before the establishment of the light on Koh Chuen, vessels bound to Bangkok River made it, took their departure from it, and ran boldly for the anchorage off the bar by day or night.

Koh Lan, lying between Koh Pai and the shore, is 2.5 miles in length, 1 mile in breadth, and 635 feet in height. On its eastern side is a village; plantains and pineapples are plentiful, and a few fish are obtainable. A small island, named North Lan, lies ½ mile from its northern end, and East Lan, a mile from its northeastern side.

Rocks—Buoys.—At 1 mile south of the summit of East Lan lies Phra nang rock, with a depth of 2½ fathoms, with a black and conical white buoy at its northern extremity.

East Lan rock, about 200 yards in extent, with 3 feet water, at 1 mile 103° of East Lan, is marked by a red buoy.

Anchorage.—There is good anchorage in the southwest monsoon close under the northeastern side of Koh Lan.

The coast between Tung Plong Bay and Koh Klet keo, 4 miles to the northward, is composed of high rocky bluffs, with sandy bays between. At about 3.2 miles northwestward of Klet keo is Cliff rock, 40 feet high, with a few trees on its summit.

Lem Pataya (Lat. 12° 55′ N., Long. 100° 50′ E.), 9 miles northward of Klet keo, presents a number of low rocky bluffs to seaward, having at a short distance within, a hill 370 feet high. Between Klet keo and Lem Pataya is a deep bay with low land around it.

Patches.—A patch of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms lies 13° 3.2 miles from Klet keo, and one of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and about a mile in length  $204^{\circ}$  3 miles from the hill on Lem Pataya; there are patches of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  and  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms between these, and others may exist.

Between Lem Pataya and Lem Kra bang, 9 miles northward, is a bay from the head of which the shore bank extends 1.5 miles, with no dangers beyond it. At 1.2 miles northward of Lem Pataya is a low rocky islet 200 yards in extent, and a bank with 2\frac{3}{4} to 3 fathoms lies between a half and 1.5 miles southward of Lem Kra bang.

Lem Kwan is a prominent point in the bay, the coast northward of it being all low.

The village of Ban Sarai is here, and within it is a concession of 10,000 acres belonging to a Japanese company planting cotton and rubber.

Koh Nak is an islet situated about 4.5 miles southwestward of Lem Kra bang.

At Lem Kra bang commences a range of hills which borders the coast for 8 miles, and thence extending inland joins the Bang Pla Soi Mountains.

From Lem Kra bang to Bang Pra, the coast consists of a number of rocky points, with shallow sandy bays between.

Koh Sichang.—At 4 miles west-northwestward of Lem Krabang is Kangku Island (Lat. 13° 7′ N., Long. 100° 47′ E.), about

 $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in extent and 325 feet in height, the southernmost islet of the Sichang group.

Koh Sichang, the largest of the group, is about 3.5 miles in length north and south, by about 1 mile in breadth; its summit is 608 feet in height, near the northern end. Off the eastern side of this island are the islets of Koh Kam yai, 209 feet, Koh Kam noi, 80 feet, Koh Plong, 34 feet, and Koh ran Dokmai, 54 feet high, which afford some shelter to the anchorage off Rai Lang and Rai Bon, the northern villages in Sichang.

Dangers—Buoys.—The buoys are not to be relied on.

Koh Kam yai flat.—From Koh Kam yai, a flat with less than 3 fathoms, extends ½ mile northwestward, with a reef partly dry at low water, 400 yards within its extremity.

A red buoy, in about 3 fathoms, lies nearly 200 yards northwest-ward of the reef.

The western and southern sides of the island are foul to the distance of about 1 mile, and the eastern and northern sides to a less distance.

Reefs surround the three small islets to the distance of about 200 yards in places, and a similar reef fronts the shore of Sichang to the distance of about 300 yards. These will be best seen on the chart.

A patch, with a depth of 2 feet, lies off this reef on the edge of the 3-fathoms line, with Lem Tarote (Customhouse Point) bearing 277°, distant 500 yards.

A red buoy, in about 34 fathoms, lies near the eastern edge of the patch.

Hin Kong nok.—At about 1,600 yards northward of the north-eastern extremity of Sichang is Hin Kong nok, a reef about 70 yards in extent, and awash at low water springs. A black and white checkered buoy is placed off its western side.

Hin sam mah Yeu is a rock 10 feet high and about 150 yards in length, situated about 1,200 yards north-northwestward of the northwestern point of Sichang.

Light.—A fixed red light, named Asadang, is exhibited from a white tower 15 feet high, on Hin sam mah Yeu, at an elevation of 25 feet above high water.

Limits of the port.—The limits of the port are thus defined: North limit.—A line drawn 90° from the northern end of Hin sam mah Yeu (10-feet rock).

East limit.—A line drawn 0° and 180° from the eastern extremity of Koh ran dokmai.

South limit.—A line drawn 90° from the obelisk on Lem Wat.

West limit.—A line joining Hin Sam mah yeu and the northwestern point of Koh Sichang.

Ballast-discharging limit is shown on the chart eastward of Koh Kam noi and Koh Plong.

Anchorages.—There is anchorage for light or moderate drafts in a depth of about 4 fathoms, sand and mud, between the southwest extremity of Koh Kam yai and Lem Tarote; this, though shallow, is known as the man-of-war anchorage.

Between the northern extremity of Koh Kam yai and Sichang is the inner anchorage, with depths of about 3 fathoms.

The outer anchorage, in about 4½ fathoms, is situated about 1 mile northward of Koh Kam yai, with deeper water farther northeastward.

The chart affords a sufficient guide to any of these anchorages, either from northward or southward.

Completing loading.—Ocean steamers complete their loading here after leaving Bangkok, in the southwest monsoon period; from November to early in February they do so off Ang Hin, to which place the customs authorities move.

There are from 200 to 300 inhabitants in Koh Sichang.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Koh Sichang, at 6h. 30m. approximate; springs rise from 9½ to 11½ feet; neaps from 6½ to 8 feet.

Supplies.—Bread, beef, and vegetables may be obtained if sufficient notice is given to get them from Bangkok. Water is obtainable only through the courtesy of the naval authorities at Bangkok, but it is not fit to drink. Coal is sent down from Bangkok when ordered. A little fruit and a few eggs are obtainable.

Telegraph.—A submarine cable from the western side of Koh Kam yai connects with the mainland, enabling shipping at Koh Sichang to communicate with Bangkok. There is a flagstaff on the summit of the island.

Pratique is given here if from a noninfected port. See page 173. Landing.—There is a landing pier named the Royal pier, at Lem Wat, and another, not so good, close to the hotel within Lem Tarote.

The channel between the Koh Sichang dangers and the mainland is about 3.5 miles wide, with depths of 10 to 13 fathoms in the fairway, decreasing gradually toward the main; it is apparently free from danger.

Coast.—Koh Si Maha racha (Koh Loi) (Lat. 13° 10′ 30″ N., Long. 100° 54′ 00″ E.) is a rocky islet about 90 feet high, lying about 660 yards from the coast, and 6.5 miles eastward from the northern point of Koh Sichang.

Towns.—The town of Si Maha racha (Sriracha) stands on the mainland about ½ mile southeastward from the islet, and contains about 500 inhabitants; the town of Bang Pra, on the coast, about 3 miles to the northward, has about 1,000 inhabitants.

**Pier.**—There is a pier, from which timber is shipped, reported to be  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in length, extending beyond the islet.

Patch.—There is a patch of 1 fathom 1 mile off Bang Pra, just within the 3-fathom curve, and a patch of 4\frac{3}{4} fathoms outside the 5-fathom curve.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage for small craft in 3 fathoms, with Koh Si Maha racha (Loi) bearing 81°, distant ½ mile, with deeper water farther off.

Supplies.—Fresh water is abundant, but not very good; the towns of Si Maha racha (Sriracha) and Bang Pra can furnish quantities of fresh stock. There is a good market at the former place. Game is plentiful. At the distances of ½ and ¾ mile southward of Bang Pra are two fine streams of water that discharge over the beach, and the natives say that they are never dry. A boat might fill from these streams at high water, but at low tide the sands dry out so far that they could not be approached within ½ mile.

The soil in this neighborhood is fertile, and the vicinity of the Bang Pla Soi hills, rising to the height of 2,300 feet, would afford a retreat from the summer heat and render this spot an admirable position for a European settlement.

Telegraph.—There is a post office and telegraph station at these places. At Bang Pra is a naval college, and at Sriracha there is a naval hospital.

Lem Sah Muk, or Double Head, a prominent bluff rising from the low land to the height of 249 feet, and appearing at a distance like an island, lies 8 miles northward of Koh Si Maha racha; the coast between is fronted by a shallow bank to the distance of 1.5 miles in places, but reduced to ½ mile at Lem Sah Muk.

Mount Bang Pla Soi yai lies 8 miles within Lem Sah Muk, and is 2,497 feet in height.

Shoal.—A shoal with a depth of 2 fathoms lies about 1 mile southwestward from the southwestern extremity of the head.

Ang Hin—Anchorage.—Ang Hin village lies 2 miles northeastward of Lem Sah Muk. Off it there is anchorage in about 3 fathoms at 1 mile distance, and deeper water farther off. Ocean-going vessels from Bangkok complete their loading here during the strength of the northeast monsoon.

It is also a pratique station, but see page 173.

Limits of anchorage.—The western limit of the anchorage of Ang Hin is defined to be the 7-fathom curve line, and the southern limit a line drawn westward from Lem Sah Muk; then to the 7-fathom curve line.

Customs.—Ocean-going vessels complete their loading off Ang Hin from November to early February, the customs authorities moving here from Koh Sichang for that period. Bang Pla Soi.—At 4 miles east-northeastward of Ang Hin, at the head of a shallow mud bight, is the large town of Bang Pla Soi, a place of considerable importance. The town has a good market, but unfortunately it is only accessible from the sea at high water, in consequence of the mud-flat, which dries off 1.5 miles. Immediately at the back of the town there is a small range of hills from 400 to 450 feet in height, which is the termination of the high land northward on this side of the gulf.

Pier.—There is a landing pier abreast the town available only at near high water.

Light.—At Bang Pla Soi a fixed white light, at an elevation of 33 feet above high water, is occasionally exhibited, said to be visible 10 miles.

Bang Pak Kong River empties itself into the Gulf at 5 miles northward of Bang Pla Soi, and is said to be navigable for small craft as far as Prachin, a distance of 104 miles from the entrance. A mud flat, with depths of less than 6 feet, and covered with fishing stakes, front the mouth of the river to the distance of 5 miles.

There is a depth of about 2 feet on the bar at low-water springs.

Beacons.—The channel is marked by red beacons on the west, and white beacons on the eastern side. Fairway beacon stands in 6 feet of water at the entrance of the channel; it is a pole with red ball 18 feet above high water.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Bang Pak Kong entrance, at 7h.; springs rise 9½ feet, but see tides, Bangkok, page 182.

Petriu is a small port on this river, situated in a very fertile rice district; it has several rice mills, and is the terminus of the eastern line of the State railways.

Menam Chau Fya or Bangkok River rises in the mountains of Yun nan, is about 300 miles in length, and navigable for small craft for about 60 miles. The city of Bangkok is situated about 25 miles from its mouth, and is accessible to all vessels that can cross the bar. It has many tributaries.

The bar—Depths.—The river is about 1 mile wide between its entrance points, with a depth of 1½ fathoms at low-water springs. The western side of the entrance is fronted by a mud bank, which dries off to a distance of 1.5 miles, and the eastern side by one which dries to the distance of 660 yards.

The bar is a shifting one subject to frequent changes, and stretches seaward for a distance of more than 6 miles from the entrance points; when at its lowest level, which is about the month of April, it has sometimes not more than 3 feet at low water. The depth at the highest tide over the bar at this time of year will be about 12 feet, and in the month of October, when the depth is the greatest, about 15 feet. The depth is also affected by the wind, southerly winds

increasing the height of the water on the bar. (See tidal signals made from the lighthouse, p. 181, and remarks on tides, pp. 182, 183.)

Vessels can be forced through the mud, which is very soft. Extensive banks of mud and sand dry at low water on the bar, and it is covered with fishing stakes, which extend out 2.5 miles or more southward of the bar lighthouse. Tracks are shown eastward and westward of the lighthouse, the better of the two can only be ascertained on the spot; in 1910, that to the eastward, known as the middle track, was apparently the one recommended. An approximate eastern track is also charted, used by coasting craft.

Junks laden with stones were many years ago sunk at intervals across the mouth of the river abreast West Point; these, known as East, Mid, and West Junk, have become a solid mass by the accumulation of sand and mud, with a depth of about 5 feet at low water over them. Others were sunk in 1893 in the same part of the channel; the only available passage is between East and Mid Junk.

Lights—Regent or Bar Lighthouse.—From a screw-pile lighthouse, painted red, on the bar of Bangkok River, situated about 4.2 miles 178° of the landing at West Point, an occulting white light is exhibited at an elevation of 44 feet above high water, visible 10 miles.

The building, known as the Regent or Bar Lighthouse, is charted in (approximate position) Lat. 13° 28′ N., Long. 100° 34′ E. It is connected with the mainland by a telegraph cable.

Outer bar.—A lightvessel, painted red with white bulwarks, exhibiting a red fixed light, at an elevation of 40 feet above the sea, visible from a distance of 6 miles, is situated at a distance of 1.2 miles 151° from the Bar Lighthouse.

Inner bar.—A lightvessel, painted green with white bulwarks, exhibiting a green fixed light, at an elevation of 40 feet above the sea, visible from a distance of 6 miles, is situated at a distance of 3 miles, 38° from the Bar Lighthouse.

A lightvessel, painted red with a red ball at the masthead, exhibiting a fixed red light, visible about 5 miles, is moored head and stern abreast West Point over Mid Junk Shoal.

Buoys and beacons.—A black buoy, surmounted by a ball, is moored at the entrance of the Western Channel near the outer edge of the bar, in a position 235° 2.5 miles from the Bar Lighthouse. A black beacon, surmonuted with staff and globe, is placed on the edge of the bank, known as Mud Point, and lies 13°, about 2.8 miles from the Bar Lighthouse, White beacons are charted 109°, 1,600 yards, and 103°, 2.1 miles, from inner bar lightvessel, marking southern side of the eastern track. A green buoy marks East Junk rock.

Caution.—Owing to frequent changes in the depths, the positions of the beacons and buoys are constantly being altered. Vessels should not attempt to cross the bar without local assistance or personal examination of the channel. (See Tidal signals next page.)

Pilots.—There is a hulk for the pilots anchored outside the bar, in a depth of 3½ fathoms, about 2.5 miles south-southeastward from the lighthouse. There are four European pilots, but it is stated that at 'imes they are all at Bangkok. The vessel has one mast, is painted white, carries a bright white light at night, and shows a flare-up at short intervals. The pilot flag is red and white horizontal, and the pilot limit is the 4-fathoms curve off the entrance.

Pilotage tariff.—The rates cover pilotage from outside the bar to Bangkok, and from Bangkok to a safe anchorage outside the bar. Rates for all tonnage will be found in the laws on navigation, which all vessels are required to purchase. The pilotage charge for a steamer or a sailing vessel being towed, of 500 tons, is \$117, with a proportionate charge for less or greater drafts. The charge for 1,000 tons is \$136.50. One dollar extra for every 50 tons additional. For full details, see the laws above quoted.

Bar anchorages.—During the southwest monsoon the anchorage recommended off the bar is in 4½ fathoms, with the Bar lighthouse bearing about 19°, distant about 3.2 miles; the anchorage during the northeast monsoon is about 4 miles farther eastward in 5 fathoms, with Bar Lighthouse bearing 311°, distant 4.5 miles.

Limits.—The limits of the anchorage off the bar are thus defined: West limit.—A line drawn 180° from an obelisk, erected about midway between the entrance to Bangkok River and that of Tachin River, to the 7-fathom curve. South limit.—The 7-fathom curve. East limit.—The anchorage off Ang Hin.

Wreck.—At the distance of 4.5 miles, 147°, from the station of the pilot schooner lies the wreck of a three-masted junk, with one mast above water, temporarily marked by a pole with two flags.

Tidal signals.—Upon flag L, Commercial Code, being hoisted by a vessel asking for the depth of water on the bar, the following signals, in the same code, are made from the lighthouse:

Flag	Feet or Inches	Flag	Feet or Inches	Flag	Feet or Inches	Flag	Feet or Inches
s J	1 2	B C	5 6	M Siamese	9	N V	13 14
H K	3 4	R P	7 8	flag. T W	11 12	_	=

The upper flag indicates the number of feet; the lower flag the number of inches.

Directions.—The western point of entrance to Bangkok river has a clump of trees, the tops of which are about 30 feet above the surrounding mangroves. Southward of the trees is a fort visible at the distance of about 7 miles. The trees will usually be the first object seen from the offing; in hazy weather the Bar Lighthouse or the pilot hulk outside the bar will be the only marks visible.

Approaching Bangkok River, West Point should be brought to bear about 351°, and steered for on that bearing will lead in the direction of the Bar Lighthouse, and to the pilot hulk, from which a pilot should be obtained. The lighthouse keeper will signal the depth of water on the bar in answer to letter L of the Commercial Code. The bar should be crossed with a good head of steam, and the boiler feeds kept closed as much as possible. The flood stream sets to the westward or across the bar channel.

The best channel in 1910 was the middle track, passing a little east-ward of the outer bar light vessel, nearly direct for the inner bar light vessel, and passing westward of it, from whence the fairway lies between East Junk buoy and the light vessel on Mid-Junk; thence keeping toward the bends of the river in proceeding up to the city. See Siam navigation laws.

Caution.—Approaching the bar of Bangkok River from the southward, in the northeast monsoon, it will be necessary when near the head of the Gulf to allow for a westerly current which occasionally runs with considerable strength along the edge of the bank; sailing vessels set to leeward by it have found difficulty in gaining the anchorage.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Bangkok River Bar at 7h. 40m., but this is subject to a large correction, the greater part of which varies with the moon's declination, the result being that the time of high water at new and full moon fluctuates between after 5h. and before 10h.

Springs rise (higher tide) 11 feet, neaps (higher tide) 9 feet, the tides being usually higher in winter than in summer, but the extreme annual difference between the highest and lowest spring higher high waters does not appear to be more than 1 foot.

There is a large diurnal inequality of both time and height. The a. m. tides are the higher from October to March, or with the sun's declination south, and the p. m. tides the higher from April to September. There are usually two tides in the day, but when the moon's transit is between 2h. and 5h. the inferior tide often disappears, the result then being that there is only one tide at that period, the a.m. high water between October and March, and the p.m. high water between April and September.

The springs, or highest semimenstrual tides, do not happen at new or full moon, but appear to occur, according to the time of year, with the moon in certain declinational positions, as follows:

January and July........Preceding or at the maximum N. or S. declination.

February and August......Following the maximum N. or S. declination.

March and September.....Before moon reaches the Equator, uncertain in these months.

April and October......With the moon near the Equator.

May and November......After moon leaves the Equator.

June and December.......Preceding the maximum N. or S. declination.

## Mean lunifidal intervals.

### [Hours of moon's transit.]

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
h. m. 7 40	h. m. 7 25	h. m. 7 20	h. m. 7 45	h. m. 8 30	h. m. 9 0	h. m. 9 10			h. m. 8 40	h. m. 8 20	

## CORRECTION TO HIGH-WATER TIMES FOR MOON'S DECLINATION.

(Goin	g nort	h.)		North.			oing so	linatio	n.	Sou	th.		(Going	g north	.)
0	7°	14°	21°	28°	21°	14°	7°	0	7°	14°	21°	28°	21°	14°	7
CC	RRE	стіо	и то	TIME	OF	TIDE	FOL	Lowi	NG M	IOON	'S UP	PER	TRAN	ISIT.	
CC	RRE	CTIO	N TO	TIME	E OF	TIDE	FOL	Lowi	NG M	toon	'S UP	PER	TRAN	ISIT.	

CORRECTION TO TIME OF TIDE FOLLOWING MOON'S LOWER TRANSIT.

m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.	m.
110—	125—	100—	75—	40—	10-	20+	55+	80+	105+	125+	105+	60+	20+	20—	75—

To find approximately the time of high water.—To the time of moon's transit, add lunitidal interval for that transit, and take out moon's declination for resulting time, to which last apply the correction for the moon's declination as given above, distinguishing between the tides following the moon's upper and lower transits. The result will be approximately the time of high water.

NOTE.—If the maximum declination is less than 28°, then the correction for declination at its maximum is the mean of that under the two declinations of that amount, on either side of 28°. For example, if 21° N. be the maximum declination, then the time correction at that maximum is the mean of 135 m. + and 45m. + =90m. +

Tidal streams.—Outside the bar and near the anchorage the flood sets to the westward and the ebb to the eastward, altering its direction according to the strength of the river stream. Along the eastern shore of the gulf, toward Cape Liant, the ebb sets to the southward and flood to the northward.

At Bangkok the time of high water is about 3 hours later than at the bar. The range of tide in April is from 8 to 9 feet; toward the end of the rainy season (the beginning of October) when the river is much swollen, with its banks frequently flooded and the country inundated, the range at springs is only about 4 feet.

Owing to freshets, vessels rarely swing to the flood off Bangkok during the months of September to December, inclusive.

Weather.—At the bar anchorage, in the southwest monsoon season, the wind is from southwest to south by east, seldom being

westward of southwest, never blowing very hard, but occasionally a puff from the northwest. There is a choppy sea at times, rendering the hoisting up of boats somewhat risky. It is pretty safe to prepare for rain (July) at this season in the evening. Clouds generally gather between 4 and 5 p. m., often setting to windward, and the rain, preceded by a puff of wind, comes down in torrents, accompanied by lightning and thunder. In January, the northeast monsoon period, the wind was as frequently from southwest as from northeast, light with occasional calms and fine weather.

Above the bar—Paknam (Lat. 13° 36′ N., Long. 100° 34′ E.).—At about 3 miles within the entrance, on the eastern bank, is Paknam, where vessels arriving have to stop to take on board a customhouse officer. Here is a fair market, from which vessels remaining at the bar anchorage can obtain their daily supplies of fresh food. Opposite Paknam are two islets; on the southern one is a fort. A telegraph cable connects Paknam with the southern islet; it is marked at each end by a post and white disk; vessels are prohibited from anchoring within 100 yards of it.

Paknam is connected with Bangkok by railway and telegraph, and has a population of 6,000 to 7,000.

Canal—Paklat Lang, on the western bank of the river, 5 miles above Paknam, is situated at the entrance to a canal which saves a circuit of nearly 10 miles to boats proceeding to or from Bangkok; vessels must take the circuitous route by the river. The entrance is marked by a guardhouse on each side, and its vicinity may be known by its church and a long range of unarmed batteries ½ mile above on the same side of the river. The canal reenters the river alongside some floating houses at the small village of Paklat Bon, near Upper Paklat.

This canal is closed during the rains in order to avoid injury by the freshets.

Paklat Lang has a population of about 7,000 persons.

Aspect of river.—Above Paklat Lang is seen successively upon the eastern bank the first group of petroleum reservoirs, with a wharf and a cleared space, on a portion of which is Bang Chak railroad station. Some distance above is a second group of petroleum reservoirs, and 1.5 miles beyond, on the western bank, the chimneys of the rice and saw mills are conspicuous. Fine trees line the river banks, etc., in the lower portion of the river.

Bangkok (Lat. 13° 45′ N., Long. 100° 28′ E.), the capital and seat of commerce of the Kingdom of Siam, is 25 miles above the entrance points, following the river course, or about 14 miles direct. The western bank is chiefly occupied by Siamese, Chinese, and Mahommedan residents. The bulk of the business is transacted on the eastern side.

On the eastern bank of the river is the city proper, occupying a space about 3 miles in length by the same in breadth, traversed by canals and surrounded by battlements flanked by towers in places. Here are the Royal palaces, the foreign warehouses, the consulates, the principal rice mills, and most of the public offices. A road known as the Charum Krung extends from the palace walls to Bangkolem, and the electric railway runs along it and other roads for a distance of The principal buildings include the Anglican Church, about 11 miles. a Roman Catholic cathedral, several missionary chapels, two hospitals, etc. The King's palace and the temples are magnificent and on a large scale, the architecture being of a kind peculiar to the country. Street cars were introduced in 1888, and the principal streets and houses are lighted by electricity. A considerable portion of the river banks above the city are lined with floating houses, over which can be seen thick clusters of wooden houses built on piles.

The United States is represented in Bangkok by an envoy extraordinary and minister plenipotentiary, and a consul general.

Population.—The city of Bangkok, according to the census of 1909, has a population of 628,675 inhabitants. The number of British subjects is about 10,000 in the consular district.

Trade.—The principal exports are rice, teak, pepper, fish, sapan wood, and bullocks; the imports are treasure, gold leaf, cotton goods, cotton yarn, opium, silks, gunny bags, kerosene, hardware, etc.

Rice is produced in immense quantities, not only from the innumerable fields which line the fertile valley of the Menam, but from the adjacent rivers which flow into the gulf from the enormous watershed of the mountain crescent which fringes the northern extremity of the Kingdom. The principal industries are rice milling, teak saw milling, ship and boat building, and engineering. Ayuthea and Paknampoh are centers of big rice districts on the Menam.

Paknampoh is situated at the junction of the Menam with the Me Ping and Me Nan.

Korat, the northeastern terminus of the State railways, is the center of a large agricultural and forest district, and on the trade route to Ubon, on the Mekong.

There are 26 steam rice mills in Bangkok.

Chiengmai, one of the most important trading centers, is situated on the Me Ping branch of the river, in about Lat. 18° 50′ N., Long. 99° 55′ E. It does a considerable trade with Moulinein, as well as with Bangkok; the principal exports are teak, silver, and cattle. The railway from Bangkok is within 100 miles of it (1911). About 1,000 boats were engaged in the river traffic to Bangkok in 1908. Its rainfall in 1908 amounted to 68.63 inches; average, 54.83 inches. Population in 1909 numbered 50,000.

Draft.—Vessels above 12 or 13 feet draft complete their cargoes at Koh Si Chang in the southwest monsoon and at Ang Hin in the northeast monsoon, each about 20 miles southeastward of the bar.

Limits of harbor.—The limits of the harbor of Bangkok are defined as follows:

North limit.—From the obelisk above the mouth of Klong Bang Krabu in a straight line in a northwesterly direction to the opposite bank of the river, or about 3 miles above the palace.

South limit.—From the obelisk above the mouth of Klong Bang Lampu Lang in a straight line in a northeasterly direction to an obelisk on the opposite bank of the river, or about 6 miles below the palace.

Anchorage.—The widest and best place to anchor is 1.5 miles below the British Legation, in about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 6 fathoms, as above this the river is much encumbered with shipping and lighters. All vessels are obliged to moor unless made fast to a wharf or landing place. A quantity of floating matter is brought down by the freshets in the rainy season, and the currents run from 4 to 5 knots at times.

Vessels are not allowed to proceed above Klong Tapanhan, just below the Russian Legation without special permission.

Prohibited anchorages.—Vessels are prohibited from anchoring near the line of the telephone cable across the river abreast the Russian Legation. The position is marked by signboards (with an arrow pointing in the direction of the cable) on both sides of the river. Behind these boards are posts with white disks; the post and board in line indicate the direction of the cable.

At night the signboards are lit up by electric light.

There are similar marks for the cable across the river above the Royal Palace, at about 200 yards below the entrance of the Klong Bangkok noi, on the opposite shore.

There is a cable from Paknam to the island fort abreast, and probably others, which will be known to the pilots. For full details, see the Law on Navigation.

Mails.—Communication is maintained with Singapore and Hongkong by several lines of steamers; the North German Lloyd company's steamers maintain a regular communication with Hongkong and other south China ports; a Siamese company, known as the Chino-Siam Steam Navigation Co., was formed in 1909, visiting nearly the same ports; there is also a Danish-Asiatic company trading between Bangkok and Europe. Other lines call here.

Telegraph.—Bangkok is in telegraphic communication (office always open) with Singapore and the rest of the world. It is also connected with Korat, Nong-Khai, Sesopone, Chentabun, Bangtaphan, Chiengmai, and Mehongson, with Moulmein, and Tavoy in Lower Burma; and with Saigon in Anam; also with Penang.

Koh Si Chang is connected by a submarine cable to the mainland, thence by land lines to Bangkok.

Railroads.—A railroad runs from Bangkok northeastward to Korat, 165 miles, and is being continually extended in that direction. The northern line, through Phitsanulok and Ban Dara has been completed to Sala Ma Puak, 438 kilometers from Bangkok.

Supplies—Coal.—About 24,000 tons are imported annually, and some 4,000 tons are usually in stock. Steamers are coaled in midstream from cargo boats, or at the jetty, about 360 feet in length, where there is usually about 16 feet water at low tide. If a steamer is coaled outside the bar, or at Koh Si Chang or Ang Hin, each distant about 20 miles southeastward from the bar, an additional charge for lighterage is made. Fresh provisions and other supplies are abundant. Water reservoirs are in course of construction.

Docks.—There are docks at Bangkok as follows:

	Len	gth.	Breadth	Depth at H	Lifting		
Name of dock.	On blocks.	Over all.	of entrance.	On sill.	On blocks.	power.	
	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Feet.	Tons.	
Government	275	306	60	12.5	12.5		
Bangkok Dock Co. No. 1	260	300	60	12	12		
Bangkok Dock Co. No. 2	120	130	25	75	7.5		
Samsen	205	215	33	13			
Patent Slip	{ 116 (cradle)	}		{Forwart . Aft	5 10. 5	300	

There is a crane at the dockyard capable of lifting 30 tons, and workshops, etc., for repairs to Government vessels.

The entrance to No. 1 Dock is 40 yards from the river, with a spacious jetty, alongside which vessels can be taken at any state of the tide. There are also machine and molding shops well supplied with the necessary machinery for repairing steamers up to 1,200 tons, and a pair of shears capable of lifting 20 tons.

Winds and weather.—At Bangkok, early in October northerly breezes set in, varying toward west and east, and during this month or early in November the northeast monsoon is established. Throughout December it continues strong, but in January it has lost half its force, and in February retains only one-fifth of its original strength, the deficiency being partly made up by winds from south-southeast to southwest. By the end of this month, or early in March, the northerly winds have ceased, and strong breezes from south and south-southwest prevail.

During the months of May, June, July, and August, southwesterly winds are strong, constant, and sometimes boisterous, the direction

being chiefly south to south-southwest until June, and thence southwest until September, when light variable winds are the rule and foretell a breaking-up of the southwest monsoon.

Mean temperature for 1909 was 82.3°; total rainfall, 61.81 inches. In 1908 it was 71.36; previous highest recorded, in 1860, was 72.53 inches. The average for 21 years is 54.46 inches.

Climate.—Cholera, of which there is usually a small outbreak in March, April, and May, and dysentery are prevalent, and the use of the river water for drinking purposes should be avoided. There is a general hospital at Bangkok to which sailors are admitted.

Quarantine station.—See page 173.

Routes between Saigon and Bangkok.—From Saigon the recommended route is to pass within Pulo Condore and the Brothers at all times of the year, and to give a wide berth to Pulo Obi and the shallows off Cambodia Point.

Southwest monsoon.—From off Cambodia Point, the route is westward of all the real and reported dangers in the fairway of the Gulf of Siam until in latitude about 10° 40′ N.; a certain amount of shelter is afforded by bearing toward the Malay side of the Gulf. From westward of Koik Bank a course may be steered direct for Koh Leum, passing within sight of Koh Chuen Light, thence direct to Bangkok bar.

Northeast monsoon.—From off Cabodia Point steer northwestward between the Panjang Group and the islands southward of Koh Tron, thence passing a few miles westward of Koh Rong and Koh Samit. From thence a vessel may proceed westward of Kusrovie rocks, shaping course to pass westward of the reported Victory Shoal for Koh Chuen Light, or may proceed northward along the coast, westward of Koh Kut and Koh Chang, and thence northward of Fasana and Victory Shoals, or southward of those dangers for Koh Chuen Light, rounding it and proceeding northward to Koh Luen, and thence to Bangkok as before; the whole route is in comparatively smooth water.

# CHAPTER V.

### FRENCH INDO CHINA.

COASTS OF COCHIN CHINA AND ANAM—CAMBODIA (KAMAO) POINT
TO HUE RIVER.

General remarks.—For the regulations regarding vessels approaching or visiting French ports, see page 29.

Lower Cochin China—Inland navigation.—We have not here entered into a description of the numerous rivers and streams which in every direction intersect the interior of lower Cochin China, most of which lead into the Mekong, which river discharges by the many mouths forming its delta into the China Sea; such would be out of place in this work. Some of them are quite deep enough for the passage of small gunboats, and all, or nearly all, are navigable for the native craft by which the commerce of the country is carried on. The following are the most important:

The Vaiko, eastern branch, which runs from the north to the south, westward of and parallel to the Saigon arm of the Don nai, is deep and easily navigated.

The Vaiko, western branch, which runs parallel to the lower part of the Mekong River and joins the Vaiko, eastern branch, the latter joins the Soirap mouth of Saigon River.

The great commercial canal which unites Mitho to the western branch of the Vaiko River and to Saigon, and also to the numerous affluents of the Don nai. The commercial canal which connects Mekong River with lower Cochin China and the Don nai. The canal d'Avalanche, which is immediately northward of Saigon. The Rach mongom, the Rach tach bai, and the Rach babu, which streams afford easy means of communication between Saigon and Baria; and the Don kiang, the Tai kiang, etc., which connect Saigon with Bien Hoa, etc.

Most of the trade passes through the numerous waterways to Saigon; the Messageries Fluviales Co. and others afford rapid transit. See also the following pages on the Mekong.

The coast of lower Cochin China, from Cambodia or Kamao Point, its southwestern extremity, past the western mouths of the Mekong to the Don nai or Saigon River, is low land, inundated by the sea at times, and in most parts the tops of the trees are only just visible at the distance of 11 or 12 miles. The whole coast is fronted

with shallow banks of sand, which project 10 or 12 miles in places, having from 1 to 3 fathoms on them, and 6 to 10 fathoms near their edges. The depths are regular in the offing, decreasing gradually toward these banks, over a bottom mostly of fine sand and ooze.

As this coast is very low and destitute of any particular marks, vessels coming from the westward and going to Cape St. James ought to be careful to avoid it; after sighting Pulo Obi they should make for the Brothers and Pulo Condore, and from the meridian of this latter group steer a course for Cape St. James.

Royalist bank, southeastward of Pulo Obi, and a 6-fathom bank, 20 miles east-northeastward from it, are described on page 146.

Ganh-hao, a river situated about midway between Cambodia Point and the western entrance of the Mekong, has a low-water depth of 4½ feet on its bar, situated about 1 mile offshore, or about 13 feet at high water.

Junks ascend this river to Kamao, the capital of the Province, trading here from Hainan, during the southwest monsoon period; and there are waterways leading to the Song ong dok, northward of Cambodia point, into the Gulf of Siam.

Kua bobe, westward of the Ganh-hao, a smaller stream farther westward, also connects with the Gulf of Siam.

There is an old fort at the mouth of the Gang hao, but the entrance is extremely difficult to make out, but the depths decrease gradually toward the shore.

Bak lieu is situated about 4 miles within the coast, about midway between the Gang hao and the western mouth of the Mekong. It is a health resort, and of some importance, and is connected by waterways with Kamao.

Delta of the Mekong or Cambodia River.—The several mouths of the Cambodia River form a delta more than 60 miles in extent, in a northeast and southwest direction. The land is low and subject to frequent changes in consequence of the accumulation of the alluvial deposit brought down by the different branches of the river. Shallow banks front the whole delta, and extend so far to seaward that the land is in places invisible from their outer edges. The 5-fathom curve of soundings bounding these banks is from 10 to 12 miles offshore. The depths near its edge decrease suddenly from about 10 to 3 fathoms.

Caution.—Many vessels have gone on shore off this delta, on account of the rapid decrease of the depth and the absence of landmarks. It is therefore necessary in approaching to exercise the greatest caution when navigating westward of the line of Cape St. James bearing 23°. At the first cast under 11 fathoms, it is necessary to haul out, especially during the northeast monsoon, when the current sets strong southwestward on to the banks, and over which

there is then a considerable sea. The direction of the current varies from west-southwest to south-southwest, and its rate, which depends a great deal upon the force of the wind, is sometimes as much as 40 or 50 miles per day. Near the delta the rate of this current increases with the flood and diminishes with the ebb.

The water from the delta is charged with mud, and discolored water may at times be seen 7 or 8 miles out at sea toward the end of the ebb.

The mouths of the rivers are only available with local knowledge.

Mekong or Cambodia River takes its source in the mountains of Thibet, traverses the Chinese Province of Yun nan, the western frontiers of Tonkin and Anam, and enters Cambodia between Prea patang and Kratie in about 12° 30′ N. A little southward it turns abruptly westward and thence southwestward, where it divides into two branches near Pnom penh or Nam van, the ancient capital of Cambodia, in Lat. 11° 36′ N., Long. 104° 54′ E., flowing more or less parallel to one another through lower Cochin China to the China Sea.

The western branch is the Ba tak or Hau kiang. It takes from Pnom penh a south-southeast direction, watering the Provinces of Angiang, and Vinh Long, of which it forms the western limit. At the city of Angiang or Chaudok, Lat. 10° 43′ N., Long. 105° 05′ E., it communicates with the Gulf of Siam at Hatien by the Vinh te, Hatien, or Kankao Canal, and with the Tien kiang, the eastern branch, by the Vamnao Canal. From Angiang the river follows a southeasterly direction, discharging itself into the China Sea by a mouth divided by islands into two channels, namely, the Kua Ba tak and Kua Din an.

The eastern branch is the Tien kiang. From Pnom penh it makes its way toward the sea parallel to the course of the Hau, and bounds the Province of Mitho on the west. At Vinh Long, Lat. 10° 17′ N., Long. 105° 58′ E., the Ko khien branch diverges from the main stream southward, and falls into the sea by two mouths. A few miles farther eastward two other branches, the Ham long and the Ba lai, branch off from the main stream; the mouth of the first is named the Ben nhau, that of the second the Ba lai. The main stream flows on past the city of Mitho, and finally enters the sea by two mouths, named Kua dai and Kua tieu.

At the splitting of the river into the two branches at Pnom penh, in Lat. 11° 36′ N. above mentioned, it is joined by a branch which trends to the northwestward, and passing Udon, a royal residence, goes to supply a large lake, nearly 60 miles in extent, about 6 or 7 miles north of which, up a small river, are the extensive ruins of the ancient city of Angkor. The waters run into this lake during the southwest monsoon, the rainy season, and discharge into the Mekong in the opposite season.

Entrances.—The principal mouths have from 7 to 10 feet at low water over their bars; springs rise from 10 to 12 feet. Above the bars the depths increase considerably in most of them, but the rivers can only be navigated by those acquainted. The northernmost mouth, the Kua tieu, is the only one generally used; it leads to Mitho, etc. The ebb stream in the rainy season attains a rate of 3 to 4 knots, and a quantity of floating matter is brought down by it; at other times the velocity is from 1½ to 2½ knots at spring, the ebb being stronger than the flood.

Inland navigation—Height of river.—The water in this great river commences to rise in the month of May, attains its maximum in October, when it decreases until March. The rise is 17 feet at Chaudok, about 100 miles from its mouths, and 26 to 33 feet at Pnom penh, about 70 miles above (Lat. 11° 36′ N.). Tides are only felt during the season when the waters are low, the rise being about 1 foot at Pnom penh, and nearly  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet at Chaudok.

At Kratie (near Pasop) (Lat. 12° 30′ N., Long. 106° 00′ E.), about 100 miles above Pnom penh, or 270 miles from the sea, the water attains a first maximum in August, a second in September, thence falling until April. It is anticipated that with the removal of some obstructions a vessel of 3 feet draft, with a speed of 12 knots, in charge of a competent pilot, may ascend as far as the Strung Streng at low river.

Small craft can reach Pnom penh at all seasons, and during high river, or from July to November, can go up as far as the ancient city of Ang kor.

The Strung Streng, Lat. 13° 32′ N., about 420 miles up, is a large tributary of the Mekong, and much influences the rise of the water in the Mekong. Near, apparently below, are the Prea patang Rapids, through which there is reported to be a deep channel.

Between Paknum and Kemarat (chartered in Lat. 16° 0′ N.), 50 miles apart, the latter about 600 miles up, there are no less than 28 rapids; these rapids are impracticable from January to May at low river, and risky from mid-August to mid-October, high river, when the current is very strong; at other times they are practicable for vessels of about 2 feet draft. The gunboat Massie took six days to do these 50 miles. This vessel, drawing 2 feet, and accompanied by the Grandière, both upper Mekong gunboats, ascended to Vien Tian, about 300 miles above Kemarat (beyond the limits of charts), and thence to Luang Phrabang (Lat. 18° N.), 250 miles beyond, and nearly 1,200 miles from the sea, reaching the latter place early in September, in about 14 days from Vien Tian.

The rise of river at Vien Tian is about 40 feet, and at Luang Phrabang 50 feet.

This portion is considered navigable by craft of about 2 feet draft to Keng Luong, 60 miles below Luang Phrabang, for about 3 months, or when the water is 20 feet above low river at Vien Tian, though the navigation is considered dangerous a week or more on either side of high river, as the current is violent. There are numerous rapids in this portion, beginning about 15 miles above Vien Tian. Luang Phrabang has a population of 10,000 to 12,000.

A report states: "The river is open for navigation all the year up to Khone, where at high river it is barred by rapids. The river between Khone and Kong, about Lat. 14° N., for an altogether contrary reason, is impracticable during the dry season even for small launches. From Bandong, a village on the upper side of the island of Kong, the river is navigable at all times for steamers of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet draft to the northern limit of the province."

There is a light railway across Kong Island, 4 miles in length, on which two small steamers were transported to the river above.

The capital—Pnom penh (Lat. 11° 36′ N., Long. 104° 54′ E.), the capital of Cambodia and seat of government, is about 170 miles above the entrance of the Mekong. French functionaries have charge of the treasury, the administration of justice, customs, etc. The capital has been considerably improved under the present rule, roads have been made, sanitary works carried out, and the town lighted by electricity. The new treasury is the most remarkable building. Population about 26,000. The trade passes through Saigon. Easy communication is afforded with the principal towns in the interior by light-draft steamers. A land telegraph wire connects it with Bangkok and Tavoy (Burma).

Communication.—The Messageries Fluviales, in 1910, inaugurated a weekly service on the Mekong to the town of Ubon, situated on the Nan mun (apparently in about Lat. 15° 20′ N., Long. 104° 50′ E.), a right bank tributary of the Mekong, some 500 miles from its mouth. Communication with Ubon is only possible by water during high river.

Vinh Long (Lat. 10° 15′ N., Long. 105° 59′ E.), one of the prettiest stations of Cochin China, is 23 miles above Mitho, 48 miles from the sea. It is in daily communication with Mitho and Saigon by steam launches and vessels of the Messageries Fluviales. The climate is said to be healthful, and all sorts of supplies are obtainable. It has a fine church, telegraph office, schools, and good roads.

Mouths of the Mekong.—Kua Ba tak and Dinh an are the two channels of the western mouth of the Mekong River. The shallow banks fronting them extend about 9 or 10 miles offshore, and are for the most part uncovered at low water; there is a patch, over which there is only 4 feet water, 9 miles off the mouth of the Dinh an. Upon

the bar of the Kua Dinh an there is a depth of about 10 feet at low-water spring tides, subject to change; the Ba tak has not been properly examined.

Kua Kong hau and Ko khien are about 20 miles farther northeastward and have a common entrance; the shallow banks fronting them extend 10 or 11 miles off, and partly uncover; upon the bar fronting the entrance the depth is about 6 feet at low-water springs. There is a clump of trees on the right bank of the Kong hau, and a fort on the left bank at the outer end of the island which separates it from the entrance of the Ko khien.

The Kua Ben Nhau (Lat. 9° 56′ N., Long. 106° 47′ E.), about 8 miles northeastward, appears to be more accessible, the banks extend about 8 miles off; there is about 10 or 11 feet on the bar at low-water springs, but the channel is tortuous. There is a fort upon each point of the entrance.

Weser shoal is shown on the shore bank southern side of approach at about 6 miles offshore.

A few miles farther to the northeastward is the entrance of the Ba lai, which is only available for very light craft.

The Kua dai and the Kua tieu are the entrances to the north-eastern branch of the Mekong, fronted by the shore bank to about 10 miles.

The Kua dai has a depth of about 7 feet on its bar at low water on either side of some central banks which break at times; it is but little used.

Approach to Mitho—The Kua tieu, the northernmost mouth of the Mekong, is the one used by vessels ascending to Mitho, etc. On the bar there is a depth of about 8 feet, at low water, with a rise of about 12 feet at springs. Shallow banks front the entrance to a distance of about 10 miles, the edges of which are usually marked by breakers. Fishing stakes are numerous all over these banks, and occasionally a wreck. The bar is unbuoyed, and should only be crossed by those locally acquainted. There are forts on both sides of the entrance.

Lights.—A fixed green light, visible 7 miles, is exhibited 31 feet above high water from a white iron-frame structure on a rectangular masonry base on Mirador Point, northern side of the entrance to the Kua tieu.

From a small tower over a house on piles, erected near the southern edge of Norodom bank, on the northern side of approach, at about 2.5 miles 112° from the above, is exhibited, at an elevation of 90 feet above high water, a fixed light, showing red and white sectors. It is visible 15 miles. The light tower is a pilot lookout station.

Beacon.—A black beacon, surmounted by a ball, is charted 500 yards seaward of the pile light.

A red conical buoy, with a conical topmark, is moored near the Francis Garnier rock, situated between the two lights, at 1 mile from the fort light.

Wrecks.—A bell buoy, marking the wreck of the Norodom, painted black and white in horizontal bands and surmounted by a topmark in the form of two cones with their bases together, is moored in 2½ fathoms of water at the eastern edge of the 1½-fathom depths on the northern bank at the entrance to the Kua tieu. The wreck of the Cambodia lies in the fairway over the bar, marked by a green buoy bearing 161°, distant 300 yards from it, or in Lat. 10° 14′ 0″ N., Long. 106° 51′ 53″ E.; these buoys are not to be depended on.

Directions.—Vessels should not enter the Kua tieu without a pilot. Within the entrance points the navigation is said to be easy; the left bank is followed at the distance of 100 yards until abreast Rach Kahon, thence kept close aboard until Mitho is reached.

At night.—The white flashing sector, shown from the light at the entrance to Kua Dong tranh, western end of Kangio Island, bearing about 334°, will lead to off the entrance to the Kua tieu; Norodom pile light bearing 286°, showing fixed red, apparently leads in the fairway over the bar of the Kua tieu; but a vessel should anchor outside where the two bearings intersect, in about 3½ fathoms, unless in charge of a pilot. It is stated, in the French Sailing Directions, that the positions of these lights are not relatively correct, so that extreme caution is necessary.

Mitho (Lat. 10° 22′ N., Long. 106° 21′ E.).—The town and citadel of Mitho is situated about 25 miles above the entrance to the Kua tieu. It is connected by railroad with Saigon.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Mitho Road at 3h. 50m.; springs rise 11 feet, neaps 7 feet.

Saigon or Don Nai River—The Delta—General remarks.— Northeastward of the mouths of the Mekong, between the Kua tieu and Cape St. James, 17 miles apart, is a large bay, within which is the delta of the Don nai, or Fuok Binh Kiang, now generally known as Saigon River.

Numerous islands, covering a space about 15 miles in length by the same in breadth, with many rivers or channels between them, form the delta; about five of these rivers lead to the sea, and the mouths are, namely, the Soirap and Kua Dong tranh, westward of Kangio point, and the Kua Kangio (main river to Saigon), the Rach Theu and the Song Kai, on either side of Kulao Fu loi, and minor mouths.

The Saigon River is probably replenished by the inundations from the Mekong, the great river of Cambodia, as nothing in the nature of the mountains of lower Cochin China indicates the existence of what might be its proper sources. It irrigates all the northern part of the Province of Bien Hoa, passes before the citadel of that name, and pursues its course to the southward. It does not become navigable until below the ancient barriers, at about 6 miles below Bien Hoa. From thence it follows a southerly direction, with several windings for 15 miles, where it receives the Saigon arm and forms the Tam kiang khau, which runs nearly north and south. At Fa mi Point it divides into two arms; the one turning to the westward is the Soirap, that turning to the southeastward reassumes the name of Fuok Binh Kiang, and discharges its waters between Kangio Point and Cape St. James, as before mentioned.

The Saigon arm of the Don nai is its sole affluent, and, like it, is replenished by the inundations from the Mekong River. It flows from the northwestward, leaves on its right the mountain of Badinh, passes by the Kaikong, Thu dau mot, and Dai thieu, and, pursuing a serpentine course, passes Saigon, joining the Don nai about 8 or 9 miles below that city.

Soirap River.—The Soirap is the western branch of the Don nai or Saigon River. At 14 miles above its entrance it joins the main river at Fa mi Point.

The fairway depth over the bar, which lies eastward of Norodom Bank, is about 19 feet at low water, but there is less water within. With Dong tranh lighthouse between the bearings of 5° and 30°, there is a bank in the fairway with 3 fathoms, and a channel northward of it with 3½ fathoms. Still farther up, abreast the mouth of Grande Vaico (Lat. 10° 30′ N.), is a bar with about 16 feet, above which the water is deeper. The channel is unbuoyed, and is only available by those acquainted with it, and the bar is covered with fishing stakes.

Anchorage is prohibited in the narrow part of this channel, from a point about 200 yards below the entrance to the Rach Muong Thuoi, on the western shore, to a point 100 yards north of that entrance, which point is situated in Lat. 10° 40′ N.

Kua Dong tranh lies eastward of the Soirap, and is available by small craft with local knowledge.

Light.—On the eastern point of entrance to this river, west extremity of Kangio Island, from a white square tower, 80 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 73 feet, a fixed and flashing light, visible 14 miles. (See Light List.)

Cape St. James (Lat. 10° 20′ N., Long. 107° 5′ E.), 620 feet in height, is the southern extremity of the island forming the eastern boundary of the entrance to Saigon River, and is the first high land seen when coming from the southwestward, the whole of the coast from thence to the Gulf of Siam being low swampy land. The cape, with the two hills northward of it, 820 and 784 feet in height, named Nui Ganh Rai, appear as three islands when first seen at a distance of

about 30 miles. A small islet lies close to the southeastern side of the cape.

Lights extinguished—Caution (1914).—Cape St. James Light and all the lights at the entrance to the Saigon River have been extinguished until further notice.

All entering vessels are cautioned to remain 5 miles away from Cape St. James Light between the hours of 6 p. m. and 6 a. m. Directions for entering Saigon River and Cocoanut Bay by day will be given by a Government vessel.

Light.—From a white masonry tower, 49 feet in height, erected on the summit of the hill about 1,600 yards within the extremity of Cape St. James, is exhibited, at a height of 646 feet above high water, a group flashing white light, visible about 30 miles.

Signal station.—Near the lighthouse is a signal and semaphore station, with which vessels can communicate by International Code, thence by telegraph with Saigon. The submarines' signal flag is hoisted here when they are exercising in the neighborhood.

Telegraph.—Cape St. James is the landing place of the submarine cables from Singapore, Haifong, and Hongkong. The offices of the Eastern (International) Telegraph Co. are in Cocoanut Bay. There is a wireless telegraph station here, call letters C S J, open to the general public between 6 and 11 a. m., 2 to 6 p. m.

Storm signals are shown near the lighthouse.

Cocoanut Bay—Sanatorium.—Cape St. James is now the sanatorium of Cochin China, in consequence of which the town of Vang tau (Ville du Cap), situated in Cocoanut Bay, has much increased in size, and supplies of provisions of all kinds are now obtainable. Drinking water, however, is scarce, being procurable only from the tanks. Numerous batteries have been built on the heights, and troops of marine artillery and infantry are stationed there. A good coach road connects Cocoanut Bay with Cape Ti wan.

Harbor.—A mole has been built from the southwestern corner of Cocoanut Bay, 850 yards in length, which affords shelter during the southwest monsoon to small vessels not exceeding a draft of 8½ feet. The depth at the extremity of the breakwater is about 11 feet at low water, and 15 feet northward of the center. The mole was partially destroyed by a typhoon in May, 1904, and was then covered at high water.

A landing place has been constructed at Ben Dinh, in Rach Dinh within the northern extremity of Cape St. James, where landing may be effected in all weather.

Lights.—A fixed green light is shown on the end of the mole at Cocoanut Bay, visible 1 mile.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage anywhere off the western coast of Cape St. James, in about 7 fathoms, mud bottom, at the distance of 79795—15——14



about 1 mile. The swell is heavy here during the southwest monsoon, but the anchorage is excellent in the opposite season. There are no dangers other than the sunken rocks 100 yards offshore near the northern point of Cocoanut Bay.

Pilot station—Signals.—Cocoanut Bay is the pilot station for Saigon, etc. The station is connected by telephone with the semaphore on Cape St. James. There is a steam pilot-boat for boarding vessels, subject to the international regulations.

A pilot for Saigon is compulsory for merchant vessels. It is advisable that vessels of war should also employ a pilot on a first visit, as they are acquainted with the moorings, etc., at Saigon. They are instructed to hand to all masters of vessels arriving a copy of the signals and port regulations. The pilot flag is blue with a square white center.

Vessels wishing to anchor in Cocoanut Bay without the assistance of a pilot are required to hoist flag D of the International Code by day, and to show a red light at night from a position well above the gunwale, when approaching the anchorage.

Exercising submarines.—See Submarine vessels' signals, pages 29, 30.

Ganh Rai Bay, northward of Cocoanut Bay, is encumbered with a flat extending about 2 miles from its eastern shore, and is covered with fishing stakes.

The Chava and the Rach dua discharge into Ganh Rai Bay, the latter continues eastward under the name of Song Dinh; these streams meet at about a mile southward of Baria, which is only accessible to boats. At the junction they run as one stream southeastward under the name of the Rach lap; finally, after a tortuous course, discharging into the sea between Cape St. James and Cape Ti wan.

There is anchorage for small craft in the entrance of these rivers, eastward of Ganh Rai Bay, during the northeast monsoon period; two fixed white lights, as leading marks, are erected on the left bank of the Song Dinh, for those entering that branch. Green lights are shown on the landing stages at Song Dinh and Rach Dua.

Saigon River—Depths to Saigon.—The Fuok Binh Kiang or Saigon River, close eastward of Kangio Point and Fort, is the channel used by vessels of deep draft. It has a depth of 23 feet in the fairway in the shallowest portion of it, namely, over a coral bank or bar that has been dredged to that depth about 23 miles above Kangio Point and about 20 miles below Saigon. The channel northward of Kangio red light has only 4 fathoms; heavy drafts should not navigate here at or near low water; springs rise 12 feet.

The Messageries Maritimes steamers, of about 25½ feet draft and 6,357 tonnage, go up to Saigon city.

The main river is said to be navigable up to within 6 miles of Bien Hoa, as before stated, or 15 miles above the arm that leads to Saigon.

The Soirap and Dong tranh, to the westward, have been described. Dangers in the approach to Saigon River.—The bank fronting the entrances to the eastern branches of the Mekong to the distance of about 12 miles, has been previously referred to. Cape St. James Lighthouse, bearing northward of 23°, will keep a vessel clear of these banks.

Kangio or Bassok Bank forms the western side of entrance to Saigon River. It extends 5.5 miles southeastward of the land southwestward of Kangio Point, and dries from 3 to 4 feet in places for about 3.5 miles offshore, with depths of less than 3 fathoms over the remainder. Its eastern edge, where there is a charted depth of 1½ fathoms fairly close to the 5-fathoms curve, is 1.8 miles distant from the eastern side of the entrance northward of Cocoanut Bay, with a depth of 6 to 10 fathoms between. The bank is covered with fishing stakes out to the depth of 3 fathoms in places.

Abreast Cape St. James, distant about 1.5 miles, is the extremity of a tongue of Kangio Bank, with a depth of 4½ fathoms, and with less water between this extremity and the 3-fathoms curve of the bank.

Ranza Shoal has been dredged to a depth of 4½ fathoms; it lies in the fairway, between Cape St. James and the tongue of Kangio Bank, about 1,600 or 1,800 yards from the extremity of the cape. The best channel is westward of it, in not less than 5 fathoms, on the line of the leading lights, as chartered. The depths of 4¾ fathoms on the southeastern extremity of the tongue of Kangio Bank lies near to the line of the lights.

Formosa Bank, within a depth of 3 fathoms, is about a mile in length by ½ mile in breadth, with a least depth of 1½ fathoms on its northwestern extremity, situated with the extremity of Cape St. James bearing 294°, distant 1 mile. It is composed of hard sand, with depths of 3¾ to 4½ fathoms, extending nearly 1.5 miles east-northeastward of it.

About 1.2 miles southwestward and southward, and to 4.5 miles southeastward of Formosa Bank, are several shoals, with less than 5 fathoms; on one of these there is but 3½ fathoms, with the extremity of Cape St. James bearing 294°, distant about 3.2 miles; a patch with 4½ fathoms lies 95° 2.6 miles from it, and others may exist. The lighthouse bearing 9°, or northward of that bearing, leads westward of all these banks. The bay between Cape St. James and Ti wan is shallow, the outer limit of which, 4½ to 4¾ fathoms, with 6 to 8 fathoms close-to, lies 230° about 3.5 miles from Cape Ti wan.

Pernambuco rock, with 1½ fathoms water, lies 143° 2 miles from Cape Ti wan. A patch of 3 fathoms is charted 145° about 1.2 miles from Pernambuco rock; positions approximate. Other shallow patches are charted within this position on either side of Pernambuco rock, where the bottom is very irregular. It is advisable not to get into less than 10 fathoms when passing Cape Ti wan.

Lights.—The light on Cape St. James has been described. The following lights apply to the navigation of Saigon River.

Leading lights—Front light.—On the northern point of Cocoanut Bay is exhibited from a white square tower, at an elevation of 65 feet, a fixed red light, visible in the entrance. (See Light List.)

Rear light.—On the western part of Ganh Rai, at a distance of 1.2 miles 353° from the front light, is exhibited at a height of 426 feet from a white square tower, with a keeper's dwelling adjacent, a fixed red light. These lights in line bearing 353° lead between Ranza bank and the tongue of Kangio Bank.

The lights at the mouths of the Kua Dong tranh and Kua tieu, previously described, are useful in fixing the position of a vessel approaching from the offing.

River lights—Kangio Bank (Lat. 10° 24′ 15″ N., Long. 107° 00′ 45″ E.).—A fixed white light, visible 7 miles, is exhibited at an elevation of 32 feet above high water from a pile lighthouse on the northeastern edge of Kangio Bank, at about 5.5 miles 318° from Cape St. James Lighthouse. The light is obscured over the banks on the western side of Saigon River entrance.

Fuck binh kiang.—A fixed red light, elevated 33 feet above high water, and visible 7 miles, is exhibited from a pile lighthouse, close to the edge of the shallow bank on the western side of Saigon River, 311°, distant about 2.8 miles from Kangio Point.

At about 1,600 yards northward from the lighthouse there is an iron framework beacon, upper half painted white, lower half black.

Rach Gioi.—A fixed green light is shown from an iron support, 26 feet in height, 100 yards northward of the mouth of the Rach Gioi, western shore of Saigon River, 2.3 miles above Fa mi point, visible 7 miles.

Don nai.—A fixed red light, visible 1 mile, is exhibited from an iron support at the southern point of the junction of the branch that leads to Saigon city.

Signal Stations—Distinguishing signals.—There is a semaphore station close to the lighthouse on Cape St. James, in connection by telegraph with Saigon, as before mentioned; there is also a signal station at Fa mi Point, 4 miles below the Saigon branch below referred to.

A copy of the following instructions and of the port regulations should be given by the pilot to the master of every vessel going up to Saigon.

Every ship going up the river, which is desirous of taking, without stoppage or delay, a berth in the commercial harbor of Saigon, should, after having passed the bank of the point of junction of the Don nai and of the Soirap, draw near to the right bank, and endeavor to attract the attention of the signalman of the Nha Be reach of the river, situated on Fa mi Point, by making heard, by means of the

SAIGON. 201

steam whistle or siren, prolonged and repeated sounds at intervals of 10 to 20 seconds, until she has arrived abreast of the Rach Gioi, or has been sighted, as will be stated further on.

She should, at the same time, have flying, beside her national flag, the following ditinguishing signals:

Mail steamers—By day.—If a mail packet the mail flag and her company's flag, and, besides, the quarantine flag, if, finding herself in one of the cases provided for by the local orders, and by the decree with reference to the sanitary police, she must, before obtaining free pratique, be subjected to the visit of the sanitary medical officer (a hospital exists at Nha Be).

By night.—If she is a mail packet, the mail lights, the quarantine light, if necessary, and two white lights, visible for 2 miles in clear weather from all points of the horizon, hoisted at the head of the mizzenmast, and placed vertically one above the other at an interval of 5 feet.

Other vessels—By day.—If an ordinary commercial vessel, her number in the International Code, and the quarantine flag if necessary, as before stated.

When the ship going up river does not immediately proceed to a berth in the commercial port, either because she has to stop in Nha Be reach to discharge petroleum in the warehouse of Rach Gioi or explosive material at Nha Be, or because she wants to anchor before entering in order to wait a change in the current, she will hoist besides the signals indicated above, the signal "I must anchor;" and when ready to proceed to the port the signal, "I am getting under way," or, "I shall get under way at the hour indicated," by hoisting the signal of the hour upon another halvard.

By night.—When the ship going up should not immediately take her berth in the harbor, she will use her steam whistle or siren, as stated above, but will not hoist the two white lights aft, the particular meaning of which is just that the ship is going into harbor.

Communication with the commercial harbor.—As soon as the signal man at Fa mi Point perceives a ship carrying the distinguishing signals indicated above, he gives notice, by telephone, to the commercial harbor of the passage to Nha Be of the ship, and of the nature of the signals which she carries, saying if she is a mail ship or an ordinary ship, if she has the quarantine signal, and if she indicates by her signals that she is not going immediately to her berth.

If the reply from the commercial port indicates only a receipt of the communication, the signalman hoists, immediately, at the head of the signal mast, by day, the answering pendant of the International Code, and by night, a white lantern, visible in clear weather at 2 miles over all points of the horizon. If, for any reason, the captain of the port judges that the ship should not enter the harbor for lack of room, for instance, or if the ship carrying petroleum should discharge her cargo at the warehouses of Rach Gioi, he informs the head of the station of Nha Be of it, who, instead of hoisting the answering signal, will hoist one of the following signals:

"Anchor in the bay," which, in this particular case, will mean: "Anchor at the petroleum station of Rach Gioi," or, "Anchor as soon as you like," which will mean: "Entrance to the harbor is prohibited to you, and you must anchor before arriving there."

The ship, thenceforth, will be free to anchor either in the Nha Be reach, except at the prohibited anchorage between Rach Ong dien and the stream to the northward of Rach Gioi (or between the latitudes 10° 39′ 7″ N. and 10° 42′ 5″ E.), within sight of the signal mast, so as to be able to see the signal "Get under way as quickly as you can," which will indicate to her that the prohibition of entry is removed; or between the Stozenfelds and the second bend, where she will await the orders of the captain of the port, which will be sent to her, by a steam launch, as soon as this is possible.

This last anchorage should also be taken by every ship to the distinguishing signals of which the signal station at Fa mi Point shall not have acknowledged by the answering signal; but, in this case, she will endeavor to attract the attention of the harbor authorities by prolonged and repeated sounds of her steam whistle or siren.

Main channel to Saigon.—The channel of the approach to Saigon River forms an elbow to Kangio Point, the first land met with on the western side when entering, about 6 miles above Cape St. James Lighthouse. It is 10 miles in length and, between the north point of Cocoanut Bay and the Kangio Bank, 1.8 miles in breadth, as before mentioned with that bank, gradually narrowing to ½ mile abreast Kangio Point, where the river is usually considered to begin, and near where the chart shows it has shoaled to 4 fathoms. The bottom of the channel is soft mud, with depths of 7 to 12 fathoms, and vessels may anchor in any part of it. The best anchorage during the southwest monsoon is northward of Kangio Point.

The entrance of the river at Kangio Point can not be made out when distant, the land being very low and covered with brushwood. The best mark was formerly a remarkably small clump of trees of moderate height, on Kangio Point; the pile lighthouses are now probably the best marks.

Kangio is a small fishing village on Kangio Point, western side of river.

Banks which are steep-to front the shore in places, but not to any great extent; above the beacon on the western shore, 3 miles above Kangio, there are practically none until near Coral Bank is

approached, provided the vessel follows the bends of the river and avoids the points; there is said to be one exception to this, there being a mud bank in the bend 2 miles below Coral Bank, extending two-fifths of the distance across the river, but the present charts do not show it.

The Coral Bank (Lat. 10° 37′ N., Long. 136° 51′ E.) has a dredged channel through it from 560 to 620 feet in width, with about 23 feet at low water. Here the channel is close round the point, the bend opposite being somewhat encumbered with the undredged reef.

Beacons.—Two beacons erected on the northern shore of the bend northward of Coral Bank, when in line bearing 334°, lead through the dredged channel, but rather on the westward side of it; the helm should be altered in time to continue through the cutting with the two beacons on the eastern shore, in line astern bearing 116°, which leads through.

Wreck.—The wreck of the steamer Carlisle, with mast and funnel above water, lies near the eastern bank, about a mile northward of Fa mi Point, out of the fairway.

The bend above Fa mi Point should be closely followed to avoid the Ville de Paris Bank, nearly awash in places, and composed of sand and rock, which extends nearly halfway across from the eastern bank of the river. At the junction with the Ben ghe, the Saigon branch, the main river is barred by Kaobang Bank (which has a low-water depth of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms over it), the channel to Saigon being between this bank and the southern point of the branch, marked by a red light, and which is free from danger. Above this the channel is clear up to the city.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Cape St. James at 2h. 30m., and at Kangio half an hour later; springs rise 12½ feet. The spring tides are said to run strong, but they are probably of less strength than at Saigon, below mentioned; the ebb lasts longer than the flood. Neap tides are feeble and irregular. On the Coral Bank up the river high water occurs one hour before high water at Saigon, and the rise is the same.

At Saigon the tidal streams, which are tolerably regular about the springs, run about 2 knots, but sometimes attain a speed of 4 knots (probably in the rainy season); it is high water, full and change, at 4h. 30m., or about 2 hours later than at the entrance, and the spring rise is 12 feet.

Tugs are available, and sailing vessels are recommended to employ them.

Directions.—There is no difficulty in a steamer approaching Saigon River, Cape Ti wan and Cape St. James with its lighthouse being capital landmarks, and going up to Saigon on the one tide; the large vessels of the Messageries Maritime do so, as before mentioned.

In thick weather careful attention to the lead will keep a vessel clear of the banks which front the mouths of the rivers to the southward.

Coming from the northeastward, Britto Bank and the shoals off Cape Ba ke should be given a wide berth.

A careful lookout should be kept for any submarine vessels that may possibly be exercising in the neighborhood of the entrance. They are sometimes at anchor with their escort in the bay northward of Cape St. James, the same flying the prescribed flags. Craft visiting this shallow bay should at such times proceed slowly past the submarines and give them a wide berth.

Vessels meeting the submarines in the river are to pass on that side of the escorting vessel indicated by the waving of a flag.

To proceed into and up the river, the two western points of Cape St. James Peninsula kept in line, bearing 348°, lead in between the shallow banks on either side of the approach, passing close westward of Ranza Shoal, of 4½ fathoms, in a depth of about 4½ fathoms.

A better mark, if they can be distinguished, is the leading mark white lighthouses on those points in line bearing 353° (red fixed lights at night).

From abreast Cape St. James Lighthouse, keep about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile offshore, following the dotted line on the chart until Cape St. James Lighthouse is over the northern point of Cocoanut Bay, bearing 148°, which mark, astern, will lead up the fairway to the river entrance eastward of the lighthouse on Kangio Bank, until that lighthouse bears 233°. Vessels can anchor here, in Ganh Rai Bay, if advisable, before proceeding up river to Saigon.

If proceeding up, with Kangio Light 233°, as just mentioned, Fouk Bing kiang Light will bear 295°, steer direct for it on that bearing, but edging a little southward when near the shoals off the southern extremity of Kulao Fu loi, to keep on the dotted line. When about ½ mile from the light haul northward, and keep in mid channel, as charted. As before stated, the bend 2 miles below Coral Bank is said to be filled up with mud to two-fifths its distance across the channel; it should be given a berth.

The river is somewhat tortuous for a long vessel, but nevertheless is easily navigated with proper care. Leading beacons are established for crossing the Coral Bank. Above Fa mi Point vessels can not proceed without permission.

Above Fa mi Point, keep the western shore aboard to avoid the Ville de Paris Bank; thence steer fairly close around the point marked by a red light to avoid the bank in the main river on the opposite side, into the Saigon branch, in which there are no dangers below the city.

The best time to arrive at Saigon City is at high water, or on the first of the ebb, as the vessel will be more easily berthed.

Sailing vessels.—In the northeast monsoon sailing vessels from the southward should make the land to windward of the port, or they may be set to leeward of Cape St. James, and toward Kangio Bank, by the prevailing current, accelerated by the flood stream. During the ebb, however, the current is at times overcome, and there may be a northeasterly set.

At about 90 miles from the coast, the wind in settled weather usually hauls to east-northeast and east about 4 p.m., continuing all night fresh and puffy. This is the time for sailing vessels to stand inshore, and although as far to leeward as the meridian of Cape St. James, with the ebb tide under the lee, the vessel will be to windward of Cape Ti wan in the morning.

For entering and proceeding up river, see the preceding directions; a pilot is compulsory for merchant vessels.

In the southwest monsoon.—From abreast Pulo Condore, steer to pass along the edge of the bank fronting the delta of the Mekong, and extending to the mouth of the Saigon River.

Strong freshets run out of these rivers during this monsoon, and join the northeasterly current, whereby vessels are obliged to keep the edge of the bank aboard to prevent being set to leeward of Cape St. James. The lead should be kept constantly going while steering along the edge of the bank, keeping in not less than 10 fathoms. Should the water begin to shoal, haul off to the eastward, when it will soon deepen, as the depths are fairly regular.

Continue along the edge of the bank in these depths until Cape St. James bears northward of 30°, when course may be steered as requisite for the entrance.

Above Cape St. James a sailing vessel will be in charge of a pilot and probably in tow, so that it is not necessary to offer further directions.

Anchorage.—The limits of the Port of Saigon are the Arroyo de l'Avalanche, at the northern extremity of the town, and the mouth of the Dong Ong to, 3.5 miles below the time signal, the commercial port being all that portion southward of the time signal; extensive wharfage, constructed at great cost and under considerable difficulties, was completed in 1907; cargoes are now handled with rapidity. All vessels are berthed under the direction of the harbor master.

The northern portion of the port, that is, above the time signal, has several mooring buoys in depths of 5 to 7 fathoms, and is reserved for naval vessels.

In the commercial port vessels are moored head and stern between mooring buoys, or are berthed alongside the wharves. There are large petroleum stores in the main river at the Rach Gioi, above Fa mi Point. At the entrance of the Arroyo Chinois is the customhouse and the signal station of the commercial port, which is connected with that at Fa mi Point. This branch of the river is spanned by a handsome bridge, has numerous wharves and quays alongside which vessels load and discharge, and every facility in the way of mooring buoys and posts for mooring to or hauling off.

Prohibited anchorages.—No vessel is allowed to anchor in the river, except below the lower moorings and out of the fairway at a long distance from the city, and no vessel is allowed to anchor in the river, unless in case of necessity, within 1 mile on either side of the sharp curves of the river, such as near the Coral Bank cutting. Vessels are prohibited from anchorage between Lat. 10° 39′ 7″ N. and 10° 42′ 5″ E.; the signal station at Fa mi Point is about midway between these limits. See also signals, page 201.

The city of Saigon (Lat. 10° 46′ N., Long. 106° 42′ E.) stands on the western bank of the Ben ghé branch of the Don nai or Saigon River, about 48 miles from Cape St. James; it is the capital of the French possessions in Cochin China, and has undergone considerable alterations. Broad streets lined with trees, bordered by fine European houses, and public gardens testify to the wealth of the colony; canals have been carried through the principal parts of the town, while about two-thirds of the frontage on the river is now occupied by Government establishments. The principal objects are the cathedral, the gothic chapel of St. Enfance, the palace of the governor, the prison, and the military hospital.

The city is situated between two small rivers, the southern one of which is named Arroyo Chinois, the principal center of trade extending about 2.5 miles up this river to Cho lon, or Chinese Town, mentioned below; the northern stream is named Arroyo de l'Avalanche; their distance apart is about 1.2 miles.

The business part of the city is the southern portion, northward and westward are the residences of the governor and principal officers, situated on some rising ground nearly ½ mile from the river.

The United States is represented by a consul and a vice and deputy consul.

**Population.**—The population of Saigon proper in 1905 was 54,745, exclusive of the naval and military forces. The French population numbered 8,749, other Europeans 152, Chinese 14,000, Annamites about 30,000.

Cho lon, or Chinese Town, about 2 miles southwestward, has a population of 140,000. It is the market for all produce of the colony and of Cambodia, is the residence of all Chinese merchants, and the rice mills are situated therein.

Supplies.—All sorts of fresh food are obtainable, and good water is supplied by tank boats from the reservoirs on the hill westward of the city.



Coal can be brought alongside in lighters. About 200 tons can be put on board in a day and 300 tons working day and night. About 60,000 tons are imported annually, and about 17,000 tons are kept in stock. The quay at which steamers may coal has a depth of 30 feet alongside.

Docks.—There are two Government dry docks at Saigon. The larger one is 508 feet long on the blocks, 545 feet over all, 68 feet wide, and 30 feet over the sill.

The small Government dock is 230 feet long, 32.5 feet wide, and 9.75 feet over the sill.

There is a basin, 240 feet in length by 78 feet in breadth, in which vessels of 13 feet draft can be repaired.

A floating dock is building, 400 feet in length, 66 feet in inside width, to lift vessels of 10,000 tons.

The Government machine shops are capable of doing all sorts of work; there are floating steam cranes with a lifting power of 30 and 50 tons. The Cie. Messageries Fluviales can also undertake heavy repairs.

Hospital.—There is a military hospital, with 200 beds, where seamen of all nations are received.

The chief exports are rice, salt, fish, silk, cotton, pepper, and cardamoms; the imports consist of Chinese merchandise, English calicoes, silks, opium, tea, wines, and drugs.

Saigon is no longer a free port.

Communication.—The Messageries Maritimes run two lines of steamers from Saigon in connection with their main line; the one, bimonthly, does the service of Anam and Tonkin to Hongkong, calling at Nhatrang, Kin Hon, Tourane, and Haifong, etc.; the other, monthly, between Saigon and Manila.

Saigon and Mitho on the Mekong are connected by a railroad 55 miles in length, and with Bao Chang about 63 miles. A tramway connects Saigon with Cho lon. The innumerable streams which intersect Cochin China afford every facility for transporting the products of the country. There is a weekly service from Saigon to Khone on the Mekong, during the favorable season, and another to Ubon, referred to with the Mekong; the river could be made navigable for steamers of 3 feet draft from Kratie to Strung Streng.

Telegraph.—The telegraph service of Cochin China and Tonkin are connected by submarine cable from Cape St. James with Singapore and Hongkong, thence with all parts of the globe. Office at Saigon is always open.

Time signal (Lat. 10° 46′ 40″ N., Long. 106° 42′ 21″ E.).—A ball is dropped from the signal mast in the commercial harbor at noon, Saigon mean time corresponding to 16h. 53m. 11.7s. Greenwich mean time. The ball is dropped a second time at 17h. 0m. 0s. Green-

wich mean time, or standard time of the 105th meridian east of Greenwich.

Climate.—Like most tropical countries there is a dry and a wet season at Saigon; the former corresponds to the period of the northeast monsoon, and the latter to that of the southwest monsoon. The mean temperature varies from 71° to 86°, but at times in the dry season it reaches 93° in the daytime, sinking to about 70° at night; this is the period of fine weather with a clear sky and fresh breezes, and Saigon is then not a disagreeable place to live in, though the temperature shown is high; occasional gales of short duration are experienced.

In the southwest monsoon period, from May to September, the atmosphere is hot, humid, and very distressing to the body; but the heat is somewhat lessened by the cloudy sky and the daily showers.

The hottest months are from March to June, when the temperature is as much as 100° at times.

Health at Saigon has been much improved in late years, from a better understanding of the prevalent diseases and from the increased comforts of living. Bathing, moderate exercise in the shade, spare regular diet, and ample rest, are the best preventives. Exposure to the sun, indolence, irregular diet, excess of fatigue and of drinking, must be avoided.

Winds.—In December, January, February, and March, the monsoon at Cape St. James is steady and strong, with dry hot weather; it then gradually abates in strength until it ceases. The land and sea breezes then become steady, generally blowing from east-northeast and sometimes from northeast during the night, and drawing round to the east in the morning; the sea breeze then generally sets in from southeast toward noon, or early in the afternoon.

In the river, with fine weather during the northeast monsoon, it falls calm during the night, and in the morning a light breeze springs up from the northeast which freshens as the day advances, veering through east, and in the afternoon blowing from the southeast. It blows very fresh during the day, moderates toward the evening, and falls at night.

In the southwest monsoon the winds are variable between west and southwest. The sea breeze blows fresh up the river, gradually dying away in the evening. In settled weather the wind is from southwest to southeast, and sometimes east-southeast at Cape St. James.

Typhoons.—A typhoon passed over Saigon during the afternoon of May 3, 1904, doing much damage to property, and causing vessels to break adrift; considerable injury was done to native craft. There was at the same time a heavy storm on the coast, which was also felt at the smaller ports of the district. A typhoon passed over Pulo

Condore in November. It is not safe to assume they will not be met with southward of Cape Varela. A typhoon at Saigon is of rare occurrence.

Coast—Kua lap.—Between Cape St. James and Cape Ti wan, 10 miles eastward of it, the coast forms a shallow bay, into which the Rach lap discharges. Its bar, Kua lap, has a depth of about 2 feet, obstructing the entrance to the river, which leads into Ganh Rang Bay, in Saigon River, by the Song dinh and Chavia, before described. Probably only used by fishing craft.

Cape Ti wan (Lat. 10° 22′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 15′ 00″ E.), 10 miles east-northeastward of Cape St. James, attains a height of 984 feet at 1.5 miles within it, and will usually be seen before Cape St. James. The coast between these capes is low, and the bay very shallow, especially in its eastern portion, where the depth is only 2 fathoms at nearly 3 miles from the shore. At the head of the bay, close westward of the cape, is the village of Fuok tin.

Shoals.—The dangers off Cape Ti wan have been described with those in the approaches to Saigon River.

## COAST OF ANAM.

General remarks—Winds.—The monsoons blow nearly parallel to the coast of Anam, and are established about the middle of May and the middle of October, the southwest monsoon being generally preceded in April by about a month of calm weather. To the northward of Cape Padaran the northeast monsoon is generally stronger than to the southward. During the southwest monsoon, land and sea breezes occur tolerably regularly; the land breeze commences toward midnight, and falls about 7 or 8 a. m.; the sea breeze, generally from southeast, commences about noon and dies away about 8 p. m.

Typhoons are rarely met with south of Cape Varela, but occasionally one has visited Saigon.

North of Cape Varela they occur each year, particularly in September and October. Telegraphic warnings are issued to all the ports in French Indo-China from the observatory near Haifong.

Currents.—From the entrance to Saigon River to Cape Padaran the currents are weak, and rarely exceed a mile an hour; they are strongest between Cape Padaran and Cape Varela, varying in velocity from 2 to 2.5 miles an hour, and sometimes in the northeast monsoon attaining a speed of 4 miles. Between Varela and Kin Hon they are moderate and run at most 1.5 miles an hour; between Kin Hon and Kulao Rai, about 2 miles, and about the same between the latter and Tourane. In August and September the current is feeble between 'Varela and Tourane; a current setting south-southeast about \(\frac{2}{4}\) mile has been observed. During the strength of the southwest monsoon

the current sometimes attains a rate of 2 to 2.5 miles, between Kulao Rai and Chumai.

Tides.—The tides are very irregular on this coast, as well as all over the China Sea, depending mostly on the declination of the moon.

Caution.—The direction of the current is with the wind, and as a rule nearly parallel to the coast, but at times subject to sudden changes. The mail steamer Admiral Neilly reports that in July, 1906, on passage from Haifong to Saigon, a northerly set of 2 to 3 miles an hour was experienced, and 6 days later, on the return voyage, the current was running in the opposite direction at the same rate.

Fogs.—The coasts of Anam and Tonking are subject to fogs, and during the rainy season the high land is often masked and coupled with the varying currents renders it necessary to keep the lead going and to take every precaution when navigating near the shore.

Cape Ba Ke (Lat. 10° 29′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 31′ 00″ E.), 394 feet in height, is situated about 17 miles east-northeastward of Cape Ti wan, and is the boundary between lower Cochin China and Anam. A range of sandhills extends from it westward to Tram Point, which is from 120 to 150 feet in height and formed of yellowish-white sandhills.

Just westward of Tram Point is the village of Tuok ai xa, and farther westward in the bay formed between it and Cape Ti wan, are the villages of Xich Ram and Fuok ai (or Loi Re), the former at the mouth of a stream of the same name. This bay is fronted by a bank with less than 3 fathoms to the distance of 2 miles, seaward of which is an isolated bank 2.5 miles in length, with a least known depth of 3½ fathoms at 4 miles offshore.

A shoal, with 4 feet water within the 5-fathoms curve, lies 1.5 miles eastward of Tram Point.

Ba Ke Shoals, a number of isolated patches, having from 3½ to 5 fathoms water over them, and 6 to 8 fathoms around, lie immediately abreast Tram Point; the outermost, with 4½ fathoms, lies with Cape Ba Ke bearing 358°, distant 8 miles. The easternmost of these shoals is apparently a small pinnacle rock, with a depth of about 2 fathoms, and 7 to 10 fathoms close around, situated with Cape Ba Ke bearing 325°, distant 6 miles, and Cape Ti wan, about 261°. The steamer Glamorganshire was wrecked on it in 1897; it was not known before. The position given is from a French survey.

These dangers, from the water shoaling suddenly over a hard bottom, cause overfalls, particularly near the edge of the shore bank; but out in a depth of 10 to 12 fathoms the bottom is generally soft and the depths regular. These shoals will be avoided when proceeding eastward by keeping Cape Ti wan northward of 275° until Cape Ba Ke bears westward of 317°.

In hazy weather vessels should not get into less than 12 fathoms.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Cape Ba Ke at 1 hour 45 minutes. Springs rise 13 feet.

Britto Bank, named after a Portuguese captain who lost his vessel upon it, is about 1.5 miles in extent, and consists of four shoal patches, on which the least depth is 1½ fathoms, on the southern one, from which the summit of Cape Ba Ke bears 275°, distant about 20 miles, and Cow Island 348°, 10.8 miles, or in Lat. 10° 28′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 50′ 45″ E. There are depths of about 10 fathoms around the bank. The bank is not marked, as the buoys were being constantly washed away.

Channel within Britto Bank.—The depths for about 12 miles eastward of Cape Ba Ke decrease regularly toward the shore, but between Britto Bank and the coast there are known to be several shallow patches, and as others may exist, except in small craft this channel is better avoided.

The outermost of these, with 3\frac{3}{4} fathoms, lies about midway between and 6 miles from the nearest land, with the summit of Cape Ba K6 bearing 261°, distant about 15 miles.

A patch of 2½ fathoms lies about 2.2 miles 340° of it within the 5-fathoms curve, apparently the southwestern extremity of the shallow bank fronting the coast. Patches of 4½ fathoms lie without the 5-fathoms curve for about 3 miles to the westward of the shoals just described.

Directions.—Coming from the southwestward, the summit of Cape Ba Ké, bearing 268°, astern, will lead between Britto Bank and the 3\frac{3}{4}-fathoms patch 5 miles inshore of it; a vessel will be eastward of the latter when Cow Island bears 7° and off Britto Bank, when Kega Point Lighthouse bears 30°; the channel should only be used by small craft. Mount Tai Ku (Nui tra Kau), 9 miles within Kega Point, is a good mark for clearing these banks.

In thick weather it is not advisable to approach Britto Bank under a depth of 16 fathoms.

Cow Island (Lat. 10° 39′ N., Long. 107° 48′ E.), situated 20 miles east-northeastward of Cape Ba Ké, is a small round island with its summit covered with trees; it lies about a mile from the coast, and about 1.2 miles off the entrance of a stream; the depths decrease regularly toward it.

Between Cape Ba Ké and Cow Island the land is slow, and wooded in parts near the sea.

Laghi.—In the bight between Cow Island and Kega Point is the village of Laghi, at the mouth of a stream, northwest of which is a range of low hills. Patches of 4½ and 4½ fathoms lie 5 and 6 miles, respectively, 143° from the village, with depths of 7 and 8 fathoms around them.

Kega Point is the extremity of a tongue of low land the prolongation of a spur from Mount Tai Ku, terminating in Kega Islet, on which is a conspicuous lighthouse.

Inland the country is high, and the regular sloping mountain Tai Ku (Nui tra Kau) attains a height of 1,312 feet, at 9 miles northwest from Kega Point. This mountain is visible a considerable distance from seaward, being the most conspicuous land in this part of the coast, and detached from any other high land.

Shoals.—About 4 miles 258° from Kega Point, and 2.5 miles from the short, is a patch of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms, fine sand, within the 5-fathoms curve. Between it and the point, at  $\frac{1}{4}$  mile offshore, is a patch with  $2\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms. The lighthouse on Kega Islet, bearing 47° or northward of that bearing, leads eastward of these patches, and of the patches of  $4\frac{1}{4}$  and  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms southwestward of them.

Abreast and to the eastward Kega point is bold.

Light (Lat. 10° 42′ N., Long. 108° 1′ E.).—From an octagonal granite tower on Kega Islet, 115 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 213 feet above high water, a fixed white light, white flash; the flash is visible 21 miles, and the fixed light 17 miles.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Kega Point, at noon. Springs rise 13 to 14 feet. The tidal streams are only felt along this coast during calms; the flood sets southwestward, the ebb northeastward.

Pulo Cecir de Mer (Lat. 10° 33′ N., Long. 108° 37′ E.).—For the description of this island and the banks northwest of it, see pages 116, 118.

Madge Bank, discovered by Capt. C. D. Madge, steamer Recorder, 1887, lies with Kega Point Lighthouse 276°, and Viné Point 356°, distant 15 miles. It is about 1.5 miles in extent, with depths of 8 to 10 fathoms over a coral bottom.

The least depth found to date (1913) on Madge Bank is 7 fathoms at a point 19.5 miles 96° from Kega Point Lighthouse.

This bank, which is surrounded by depths of 15 to 16 fathoms, sandy bottom, has a breadth of about 1,600 yards.

Fanthit Bay lies between Kega Point and Viné Point, 22 miles to the northeastward; with the town of same name on a stream, about midway between.

Rocks, some above water, lie ½ mile southwestward of the entrance to the river; a conical white buoy is placed southeastward of them, in a depth of 3 fathoms, with the customhouse at Fanthit bearing 7°. About 2.5 miles southwestward of Fanthit, and about 1.5 miles from the shore, there is anchorage in 4 to 5 fathoms.

The south coast railroad, from Saigon, is completed to Fanthit (1910).

The village of Fogia is situated on the western side of the mouth of a stream about 3 miles eastward of Fanthit; a wooded hill lies eastward of it.

Light (Lat. 10° 55′ N., Long. 108° 7′ E.).—A fixed white light, elevated 38 feet above high water, and visible 8 miles, is exhibited from an iron trellis-work structure on the northeast wall of the customhouse at Fanthit, on the eastern side of the entrance to the river.

Fishing nets may be found at the distance of about 10 miles from the land, abreast Fanthit Bay and Viné Point.

Viné Point is formed by a low hill, steep on its southern side, and surmounted by tall trees; it is the southern extremity of a peninsula projecting nearly 3 miles from the adjacent coast. There is anchorage in 3½ fathoms in the bay westward of the point, during the northeast monsoon, opposite a fishing village.

Anchorage can be obtained in the southwest monsoon in the bay on the eastern side of Viné Point, in depths of 3 to 5 fathoms. There is a fishing village at the northern end of this bay.

Tiger Island (Hon lao) lies close to the eastern side of Viné Point, with a boat passage between; it is not conspicuous from the offing. Vine Point is fairly steep-to on its eastern side.

Guio Point (Lat. 11° 3′ N., Long. 108° 29′ E.), situated about 13 miles norteastward of Vine Point, forms the southern point of Fanri Bay; Mount Guio (Nui hon hong), a sandhill, 853 feet in height, near the coast, nearly 5 miles to the westward, serves to identify it. The bay in which the mount lies has not been sounded, but a rock above water is charted near the shore; the eastern side of Guio Point is fairly steep-to.

Fan ri Bay, between Guio Point and Logan Point, is about 15 miles wide, with depths gradually decreasing from the offing; its shore is fronted by a bank to about ½ mile, increased to nearly a mile off Fan ri Village, situated at the mouth of the Luong River.

From Guio Point the coast to Fan ri is formed of cliffs of a reddish color, but to the northward it is sloping and wooded.

A vessel may anchor in a depth of from 4 to 5 fathoms about 2 miles southwest of the mouth of Luong River, with Point Logan bearing 75°; the bar of the river has but about 3 feet water, and is only navigable by boats. Fan ri is a fishing village, the boats from which are seen in the offing, sometimes at a considerable distance from the shore.

Between Fan ri and Logan Point is a rocky point, with the village of Cho ginong close westward of it.

Point Logan is a narrow low neck of land, projecting a mile southward of the adjacent coast, with a ledge with less than 3 fathoms extending 1.5 miles southwestward from the point.

79795—15——15

A shoal, about a mile in extent, with  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms water, lies 1.5 miles southeastward of the extremity of the ledge, with the southern extremity of Point Logan 351° about 2 miles; it is possibly the prolongation of the shoal off the point.

On the western side of the point there is a bay with a fishing village; this bay affords good anchorage off Point Logan, in about 3½ fathoms, during the northeast monsoon period. There is also a village northnortheastward of the point, off which vessels may anchor in a depth of 5 to 6 fathoms in the southwest monsoon.

Amazon Shoal, one of several patches, with depths of 4½ to 4½ fathoms, and 6 to 8 fathoms close around, lies with Point Logan bearing 309°, distant 4 miles.

Duchaffaut Shoal, with 4½ fathoms, lies with Point Logan bearing 351°, distant 6.3 miles.

The Messageries Maritimes' steamer Melbourne reported a depth of 4½ fathoms about 2 miles 289° of Duchaffaut Shoal, with Point Logan 0°, distant 5.3 miles. Depths of 5½ fathoms were found 1.3 miles northeast and ¾ mile west-southwestward of that position. As rocky heads of 3¾ to 5 fathoms, upon banks of sand and coral, have been reported and charted southeastward of these, the locality should be given a wide berth.

Althea Bank, with 6 to 8 fathoms, and 3 miles or more in length in a northeast and southwest direction, is charted with its eastern end lying with Point Logan bearing about 340°, distant 13 miles; it has been unsuccessfully searched for, and its existence is doubtful. All the above dangers are probably on the same bank. A bearing of Cape Padaran, and of its light at night, will keep a vessel southward of these banks.

On and near the above banks are bamboo fishing stakes, at times in considerable depths, which will be avoided by giving Point Logan a berth of about 15 miles.

Caution.—The space between Point Logan dangers and Holland Bank, Pulo Cecir de Mer, has not been properly surveyed, and caution is necessary when in that locality.

Pulo Cecir de Terre or Kulao Kau (Lat. 11° 14′ N., Long. 108° 50′ E.).—Eastward of Point Logan is a bay about 13 miles wide, in which is situated Pulo Cecir de Terre, a low island, about 1 mile in length, bold on the eastern and southern sides, and having near its center a mass of rocks higher than the other parts, which is visible at the distance of about 15 miles. The island is rocky and barren, with the exception of a little grass on the flat part.

Rocks above and below water surround the island to a short distance, and there is a patch of 3 fathoms  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile northward of the eastern end, and another of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile southwest of the western end. The island stands on a tongue of the 5-fathoms curve fronting

the bay, but about 2 miles 103° from its northeastern point a sounding of 4¾ fathoms is reported as having been obtained.

Overfalls are met with from 6 to 12 miles southward of Cecir de Terre, where the depths are irregular, ranging from 8 to 16 fathoms.

Breda Bank.—Between Pulo Cecir de Terre and Padaran Gap lies Breda Bank, with a least known depth of 2 fathoms, coral bottom, with the island bearing 216°, distant 4 miles; the bank is 1.5 miles in extent, with depths under 5 fathoms, and less water than 2 fathoms may exist.

Padaran Gap, bearing westward of 351°, leads eastward of Breda Bank.

The coast—Aspect.—The coast between Point Logan and Cape Padaran is backed at a short distance by mountainous land, attaining a height of 3,051 feet westward of Padaran (Kana) Gap. Within Point Logan is a range attaining a height of 2,624 feet.

Padaran (Kana) Gap is situated near the eastern portion of the bay mentioned as being 13 miles wide, and is conspicuous from the southwestward only.

Kana anchorage.—Anchorage may be obtained in the northeast monsoon period of the gap, in a depth of 6 to 10 fathoms, sand. Two rocky heads, 22 yards apart, covered at high water, and which only break during bad weather, lie about 670 yards from the eastern shore, with the southern extremity of the land (off which is a rock) bearing 123°, and the pagoda of the village 348°.

Rocks above water front the shore on the western side of the gap. Cape Padaran (Mui Dinh) (Lat. 11° 22′ N., Long. 109° 1′ E.), is high land, steep and convex to seaward, forming the southeastern extremity of the continent. The high land of Cape Padaran extends about 7 miles west-southwestward from the cape, and attains a height about midway of 2,132 feet. Being separated from the Cecir Range to the westward by Padaran Gap, the land of Cape Padaran has an isolated appearance when approached from the southwest and from the northward.

Light.—From a white lighthouse, 33 feet in height, erected near the eastern extremity of Cape Padaran, is exhibited at an elevation of 610 feet above high water, an alternating light, showing four flashes, two white and two red. It may be visible 32 miles, but is cut off by the land when bearing eastward of 48°. The red flashes will not be visible so far as the white flashes of light. See Light List.

Storm signals are shown here.

The current runs strong to the southward during the northeast monsoon, northeastward of Cape Padaran.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage for large craft in a depth of about 9 fathoms off a small bay close northward of Cape Padaran, in the southwest monsoon period, with the extremity of the cape



bearing 157°; the bottom is foul nearer the shore. Good water may be found within the first ridge of sand hills.

There is small craft anchorage on a sand bank northeastward of a rock near the beach.

The coast, from Cape Padaran, takes a general northerly direction to Cape Varela, affording some sheltered anchorages, particularly that of Kam Ranh and Port Dayot in Van Fong Bay.

Fan Rang Bay lies between Cape Padaran and East Point, 14 miles apart. From Cape Padaran the coast trends northward 11 miles to the mouth of Fan Rang River, where is the town of Mantung; it is fronted by a coral ledge, and is backed by high land a mile within it. The mouth of the Fan Rang is fronted by a coral ledge to the distance of  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile, dry in places at low water, and forms the southern entrance point of Navan Bay.

Navan Bay lies between Fan Rang River and East Point; on its northern shore is the entrance to Navan River, leading to a lagoon. Eastward of the mouth is Haifong Bank, extending about <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile from the shore, with rocky heads with less than 3 feet of water over them

Vessels working against the northeast monsoon find good anchorage near the head of Navan Bay, in 4 fathoms, good holding ground.

Buoy.—A conical mooring buoy, painted white, is moored off the eastern side of entrance of Navan River, in a depth of 4 fathoms.

East Point is low, and surrounded by a sand bank, dry at low water.

Coral patches—Channel.—From East Point a coral ledge extends 3.5 miles west-southwestward, with shallow heads in places, one, having 1 foot of water, lies 1.2 miles from the point, and another awash at 3 miles from the point; the ledge extends about a mile westward of the latter patch, with depths of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 5 fathoms, and is steep-to. Between it and the reef off Fan Rang is the channel to Navan Bay, about a mile in breadth, with depths of 6 to 8 fathoms.

Light (Lat. 11° 35′ N., Long. 109° 3′ E.).—On the northern shore, at Khan Hoi, eastern side of entrance to the Navan River, is exhibited, from a dwelling house, at a height of 17 feet above the ground, at an elevation of 243 feet, a red fixed light, with white sectors visible 11 miles; it shows white in the southern channel and red over the dangers. See Light List.

Directions.—After passing Cape Padaran, if bound to Navan Bay, keep about 3 miles from the shore, to give a berth to the reef and foul ground, which extends a mile offshore for about 2.5 miles northward of the cape; then continue to the northward, with North Islet open of East Point until Navan Peak is approaching the line of the Morne. These objects in line 321° were used formerly as a leading mark, on which a depth of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms has been found near the end

of the ledge on the eastern side of the channel before referred to. The peak therefore must be kept open. The house on which the light is exhibited, if it can be distinguished, bearing 357°, will lead in the fairway of the channel, and to the anchorage off the mouth of Navan River. The church of Fan Rang, on the western side, is a good landmark.

Anchorages.—There is anchorage in 4 fathoms off the custom-house (red roof) at the village of Man Rang, northwestern corner of Navan Bay; also off the entrance to Navan River, southward of the buoy. The river is only accessible to boats 1½ feet at low water, but there is a carriage road from Ninh chu, within the entrance, to Fan Rang, about 6 miles distant, the center of the administration of the province of same name.

Telegraph.—Supplies of fowls, pigs, and vegetables and fruit are obtainable at Ninh chu; rice is grown extensively in this district. Ninh chu is connected with the telegraph and postal systems. Khan Hoi, a telegraph station, is at the eastern point of entrance to the river.

The coast railroad from Fan Rang to Nhatrang is completed.

Coast.—The bight between East Point of Fan Rang Bay and North Islet apparently affords temporary anchorage.

From North Islet to Vung Gang Bay, about 9 miles to the north-ward, the coast is mountainous and steep. It has not been surveyed, but the bay is stated to be encumbered with coral patches, and to be unpracticable. On nearing Vung Gang Bay the coast becomes abrupt, and the depths are considerable at a few hundred yards distant.

Vung Gang Bay, situated to the southwest of Davaich Head, or False Cape Varela, is difficult to distinguish from seaward, on account of the high mountains which surround it; there are depths of 9 fathoms in the entrance, decreasing gradually to 3 fathoms within 200 yards of the shore at the head of the bay.

The bay is divided into two basins; the outer affords good protection at all times, and is easy of access. Heavy squalls occur at times, but the holding ground is good. There is a rock above water on the southern side at about 100 yards northward of Entrance Island.

The inner basin, on the southern side of which is the fishing village of Vink Hi, is 800 yards in length by 400 yards in breadth, with depths of 3 to 5 fathoms in the middle portion, which is about 200 yards in width. There are a large number of fishing craft here at times in the fine season.

Davaich Head, or False Varela (Lat. 11° 44′ N., Long. 109° 13′ E.), the native name of which is Mui Davaich, rises steeply from the sea to a height of 1,014 feet and forms the eastern extremity of a

range some 5 miles in length; this range attains a height of 3,114 feet in False Varela summit, on which is an isolated rock or knob resembling that on the true cape. Eastward of the summit is a cone 2,490 feet in height, and some 10 miles within is Table Mount, 5,248 feet in height.

The cape slopes regularly from the summit, and is wooded to the steep cliffs that front the sea. There is a conspicuous rock 20 feet high close to the southern extremity of the head, and a depth of 17 fathoms within ½ mile of the head.

Hon Chut.—Between the coast and the small bare and rocky island, Hon Chut, 391 feet high, which lies about 3 miles northward of the cape, is a narrow passage, available for junks.

The island is connected with the shore by a ridge with a depth of about 2 fathoms in the center, but there is a rock awash in the fairway of its southern approach 211°, distant 1,750 yards from Hon Chut Lighthouse, and a patch of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms 187°, 1.3 miles from the lighthouse.

A patch of 5 fathoms lies 55°, 650 yards from the lighthouse, with foul ground between it and the shore.

Milieu, a small rocky islet, 40 feet high, lies ‡ mile from the north-western point of Hon Chut, and from it a spit extends halfway to the island, with a depth of 1 foot only on its outer edge. About ‡ mile westward of Milieu Islet there is a shoal patch, 600 yards in length, with a patch with less than 6 feet water over its eastern end.

There is an islet 50 feet high off its southern end, with a rock above water beyond it.

De la Prise Island, about 2 miles northward of Hon Chut, is 115 feet in height, composed of dark rock, and its summit is covered with scrub and vegetation.

Kam Ranh Bay (Camraigne of the French), between Davaich Head and the southern extremity of a peninsula 1,538 feet in height, off which is Tagne Island, is one of the finest harbors on the coast of Anam; it is available for all classes of vessels, and offers secure anchorage at all times of the year. The bay is composed of an outer and inner port, the latter being known as the harbor, and surrounded by mountains.

The entrance between Tagne on the north and Hon Chut and De la Prise Islands on the south is about 1.5 miles wide, with depths of 12 to 14 fathoms, and the fairway is free from danger.

Dangers.—A patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and steep-to, lies  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile 30° from Milieu Island, northwestward of Hon Chut, and a rock awash at low water at 600 yards off the point northward of De la Prise Island; and there is also a patch of  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the southwestern extremity of Tagne Island, but they are all out of the fairway.

Outer rocks, 8 feet high, lie on the western side of the bay southward of Kam Ranh Point.

Tagne Island is about 1.5 miles in length in a north and south direction, and of the shape of a horseshoe, its coast consisting of large bowlders; its summit, near the southwestern side, is 916 feet in height.

The land connecting the two high southern portions of the island is low, with palms growing on it; the east coast southward of Little Pass is fronted by coral reef.

There are two rocks, 55 and 100 feet high, on its southeastern side, and a small one on its western side, and there is a sunken rock at 100 yards westward of its northwestern extremity.

Little Pass, the opening between Tagne Island and the northern shore, is but 200 yards wide, and is further reduced by sunken rocks on both sides; it has a depth of about 3½ fathoms in the fairway, with rocks on both sides, and should only be used by small craft with local knowledge.

The rock or islet about a mile eastward of Little Pass has a patch of 1½ fathoms between it and the islet close to the shore, and a patch of 2½ fathoms at 300 yards southward of it.

Lights.—From a gray masonry tower 19 feet in height near the northeastern extremity of Hon Chut, is exhibited, at an elevation of 192 feet, a fixed white light, visible 12 miles, from 38°, through north, to 128°; obscured elsewhere. Increased power between 308° and 218°. (See Light List.)

On the northeastern point of entrance to Kam Ranh Harbor, from a gray masonry structure, 4 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 251 feet, a fixed white light, visible about 8 miles, from 323°, through north, to 233°. (See Light List.)

A red light is shown at the pier of the French settlement in the harbor.

Directions—Anchorage.—There are no dangers near the fairway of the outer harbor or bay, and there is good anchorage in depths of about 10 fathoms, mud, about a mile northwestward of the northwestern end of Tagne Island; also in the bay on the northern side of Tagne in depths of 7 to 8 fathoms, not too near the shoal, which extends ½ mile from its head.

Kam Ranh Harbor, entered from Kam Ranh Bay, is 8 miles in length by about 2 miles in breadth, with depths of 6 to 8 fathoms over a space 3 miles in length by about 1.3 miles in breadth; this latter portion is free from shoals, the known dangers being within the 5-fathom curve, and affords good and land-locked anchorage over mud. The entrance is nearly \(^3\_4\) mile wide, with depths of 13 fathoms; the point on the eastern side is bordered by sand, and is fairly steep-to, and has a lighthouse on it, before mentioned; that on the western side,

Kam Ranh Point, is shallow to the distance of 300 yards. Within it lies the Doigt, a hill 423 feet in height.

Shoals—Buoys.—The southwestern head of the harbor is shallow, with less than 3 fathoms to 1.5 miles offshore, with a sunken rock 500 yards within the 3-fathom curve.

A sand bank, with two rocky heads nearly awash at low water, and about 200 yards apart, lies 166° about 1,200 yards from Southwest rock, western side of the harbor, southward of the railway pier. The bank is marked by four buoys, as charted, namely, red buoy with conical top mark, at southwestern extremity; red and white horizontally striped buoy with two cones, points together, at northwestern extremity; black conical buoy, with cylindrical top mark at northeastern extremity; and black and white horizontally striped buoy with diamond top mark at the southeastern extremity.

A rock, which dries 2 feet, with a rock awash at 200 yards eastward, lies 84° about 1.3 miles from the Southwest rock. A red buoy with triangular top mark lies eastward of the rock awash.

A patch of 2½ fathoms lies 39° 800 yards from the rock which dries, with a rock which dries 3 feet inshore of it, at the extremity of the coral flat fronting the shore.

On the eastern side, a sandbank projects  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile westward of Sandy Point, northern extremity of the settlement. A rock with less than 6 feet water lies at its extremity 1,400 yards 276° from the point. For dangers northward to the head of the harbor, see the chart.

From Verte Point, at the northern extremity of the harbor, a stream runs northward parallel to the coast for about 12 miles, to a marsh, said to be very unhealthful, separated from the sea by Dgiai Beach, a narrow neck of land, consisting of sand hills and a barren, sandy plain. It is of no use for navigation; the banks are covered with fishing stakes.

Some mountains lie about 3 miles within Bangai, the highest of which are La Pele, 2,425 feet, and the Asses Back, 2,294 feet in height.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at 8h. 30m.; springs rise 6 feet; generally only one tide in the 24 hours.

Anchorage—Directions.—Vessels can anchor anywhere in the harbor, according to draft, but the best place is on the eastern side, northward of the entrance, near the coaling establishment, in depths of about 8 fathoms; not too near the shore, as in the event of an onshore squall or strong breezes there would not be much room to rear cable; the holding ground is good.

The old French vessel of war Vaubon, used as a harbor depot for torpedo craft, and two lights are moored on this anchorage.

There is no difficulty in reaching it from sea, the fairway eastward of Hon Chut in the bay or outer harbor being free from danger; the channel is wide and deep between Tagne and De la Prise Islands, and

BANGAI. 221

the entrance to the harbor has a depth of 13 fathoms, over a breadth of about ½ mile. The lights on Hon Chut and on the eastern side of entrance to the harbor are sufficient guide at night for those acquainted with the place.

Settlement—Piers.—There is a French settlement (Pinghai) on the eastern side of the harbor, with a customhouse and telegraph station.

It is said to be healthful and to be free from mosquitoes.

There is a village of 300 Anamese northward of the point, employed by the coal firm.

There is a stone pier, 100 yards long, abreast the coal depot, with red light, as before mentioned, and a depth of 20 feet alongside the small cranes at its head. There is another pier northward of it.

The French man-of-war Vaubon, used for a depot for torpedo craft, is moored off the coal depot, as above mentioned.

Mooring buoy.—A conical mooring buoy lies in the anchorage, bearing 328° 1.3 miles from the light on the northeastern point of the entrance.

Bangai.—On the western side of the harbor is the village of Bangai, at the head of a shallow bay.

A railroad pier, about 700 yards in length, has been constructed from the point eastward of Bangai, in a southerly direction, beyond Southwest rock. There is apparently a depth of 4 fathoms at its extremity, and small craft can go alongside.

There are two cranes on the pier.

Buoy.—A black buoy with cylindrical topmark marks the 3-fathom curve, at ½ mile westward of the railroad pier at Bangai.

Communication.—The post and telegraph office is at Bangai. The cargo boats of the Messageries Maritimes call here. Bangai is connected by the coast railroad with Nhatrang to the northward, and Fan Rang to the southward; the portion between Fan Rang and Fan Thit will give direct communication with Saigon. There is a good road to Saigon.

Supplies—Coal.—The coal depot of Barthelemy and Pourtales on the eastern shore is reported to have in stock about 600 to 700 tons briquettes from Hongai, and Japanese coal; there are steam launches and coal lighters of about 100 tons. There is also a water tank of about 8 tons. Water is collected in a reservoir and conveyed by pipes to the pier. Beef, fruit, vegetables, fowls, wines, ships' stores, etc., are obtainable.

Coast.—The eastern coast of the peninsula forming the eastern side of Kam ranh Bay is mountainous and bold, with rocks above water off it in places. It has not yet been surveyed, and should be given a wide berth. The point nearly 2 miles northward of Han nai Point is

522 feet in height, rocky and bare. A patch of 2½ fathoms lies about 400 yards off Han nai Point.

Patches of 7 fathoms, steep-to, lies 353° 2.4 miles and 51° 1.2 miles from the 522-foot hill, and others probably exist.

**Dgiai Beach** commences close northward of the 522-foot hill; it is about 9 miles in length, and terminates at Dong ba Point in the southern approach to Nhatrang Bay; see view of the coast on H. O. chart 3149.

During the southwest monsoon anchorage can be obtained northward of the 522-foot hill forming the southern extremity of Dgiai Beach, which is backed by low sand dunes.

Fisherman Islands are situated from 4 to 6 miles northeastward of Han nai Point. The southernmost Hon Nai, Lat. 12° 00′ 00″ N., Long. 109° 18′ 30″ E., a steep, sharp island, is 394 feet high, with a sunken ledge extending nearly a mile northwestward of it. The largest Hon Ngai, 361 feet high, has some islets and rocks near its extremities.

Vulcan rock.—This sunken danger, with 6 feet water, is situated 1,300 yards north from Hon Nai; there are other shallow spots near it, and depths of 10 to 15 fathoms between it and Hon nai ledge.

Castlereagh Bank lies in mid-channel, between Hon Ngai and Dgiai Beach; the least depth originally reported was 6½ fathoms, with the summit of Hon Ngai 100°, about 3.5 miles. During an examination by the Bengali in 1902 depths of 3 to 6½ fathoms were found; less water may exist. Position of these depths not given.

Reefs.—A coral head, with a least depth of 2 fathoms, at the southern end of a reef 400 yards in extent, lies with Hon Ngai summit bearing 116° about 4.5 miles. A reef about 900 yards in extent lies northwestward of the above; the least depth, 2½ fathoms, lies with Hon Ngai summit 115° 5.3 miles.

These reefs, which are steep-to, are separated from Castlereagh Bank by depths of  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 10 fathoms. They may generally be distinguished by discolored water.

The passage inside Fisherman Island is thought to be safe, and to have depth of about 12 fathoms, avoiding Castlereagh Bank, but unless acquainted with the locality the prudent mariner will pass seaward of Fisherman Isles, until a survey has been made.

Nhatrang Bay—General remarks.—Five islands lie in the southern approach to Nhatrang Bay, forming four channels between Lon Island (Tré Island) the largest, and the mainland, all of which are available. The eastern approach is between Lon and Pyramid Islands; and the northern between Pyramid Island and Bourayne rock, or between the Grand Bank and Tortoise Island, in all of which the water is deep.

Lon Island, or Hon Lon (originally Tré Island), is 6.5 miles in length in an east and west direction by about 2.5 miles in breadth. It is formed of three mountainous ridges connected by rather low isthmuses; the eastern is 1,476 feet in height, the center 1,640 feet, and the western 689 feet. The island is densely wooded and abounds in game; and abundant harvests of swallows' nests are gathered in the fissures of its steep cliffs.

Villages.—There is a small village westward of Dam Lia, named Bai Tru, and another upon the tongue of shingle forming the entrance to Dam Chinh. No supplies are obtainable here. In the fishing season numerous fishing stakes encumber the approaches.

Dangers.—From the southeastern extremity of Lon Island, near the lighthouse, a ridge of rocks extends about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile; one of these, named Nok Islet, is 149 feet in height, and 600 yards from the extremity, which is steep-to. See view of the coast on H. O. chart 3149.

About 400 yards off the northwestern extremity of Lon Island is Black rock, above water; a reef extends about 600 yards west-southwestward from it. Many of the points of the island and its bays are fringed with rocks to the distance of 200 yards or more in places. All the known dangers will be seen on the chart.

Light.—On the southeastern extremity of Lon Island, from a gray conical tower, 48 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 336 feet, a group flashing white light. It is visible 24 miles, between the bearings 28° and 171°.

Anchorages.—Two deep bays on the northern side of Lon Island, named Dam Lia and Dam Tré, afford secure anchorage during the southwest monsoon; and two bays with a common entrance, on the southern side of Lon, named Dam Lom and Dam Chinh, afford anchorage during the northeast monsoons.

Mung Island, nearly a mile southward of Lon Island, is 590 feet in height, and apparently volcanic. It is inhabited.

Round rock, 148 feet, lies off its eastern extremity, and there is a rock with a double head 56 feet northwestward of it. There are no outlying dangers.

Mot Island lies northwestward of Mung Island, and near the southern point of Lon Island. It is 328 feet in height and wooded. There are many rocks above water off its northwestern and southeastern extremities.

Southern approach to Nhatrang Bay.—Toan Channel, the southern approach to Nhatrang, lies between Dong Ba Point and Mung and Mot Islands, above described, and on either side of Tam and Mieu Islands off the western shore. With the exception of Lion rock, westward of Mot Island, there are no hidden dangers.

Lion rock, with a depth of 2 fathoms, lies 700 yards westward of Mot Island; Triple Peak open of Nam Point, the northwestern extremity of Lon Island, leads westward of it.

Dong Ba Point, on the mainland, forms the western side of the southern approach; it is a bold cliff and the eastern termination of a mountainous ridge which separates the district of Kam Ranh from that of Nhatrang. La Tondu peak, 1.5 miles within the point, is 2,198 feet in height, and 3 miles westward is the summit of the range, elevated 3,314 feet, and densely wooded. The bight northward of Tondu peak is foul. See view of south entrance on H. O. chart 3149.

Tam Island lies northeastward of Dong Ba Point. It is 328 feet in height, with no definite peak, and is encircled by a narrow reef, steep-to.

Mieu Island, also 328 feet in height, lies northward of Tam Island, and protects Kua Bé anchorage. It has two villages.

Kua Be.—Within Mieu Island, is Kua Be, an inlet almost blocked by a sand and mud bank, leaving but a narrow boat channel at low water to Truong Dong, a rather large village within, and distinguished by coconut trees and pagodas. Farther in is the village of Binh Tan. Several small streams discharge into Kua Be, one of which connects with Nhatrang River.

Kua Be anchorage lies between the inlet and Mieu Island; it is much frequented by junks calling for the birds' nests collected by the inhabitants of the islands, who are principally Chinese. It is also used by the mail steamers during the northeast monsoon period, the mails being loaded at Kua Be, and conveyed by train to the Residency at Nhatrang. The customhouse is near Kua Be.

Note.—There is a channel of the same name, Kua Be, about 25 miles to the northward.

Chut Point is the northern point of entrance to Kua Be. On its summit, 492 feet in height, are the remains of an Anamite fort. From this point the coast is a sandy beach backed by sandhills as far as the entrance to Nhatrang River. The village of Chut is situated at the southern extremity of the beach; here there is a customhouse. Many junks visit this place in the fine or southwest monsoon period as for Kua Be.

Directions.—Approaching Nhatrang Bay from the southward, a vessel should pass seaward of the Fisherman Isles, unless acquainted with the inshore channel, and enter by either of the channels between the islets into Toan Channel, the named portion abreast Nam Point; avoiding Lion rock if entering between Mot and Tam Islands, the widest channel, by keeping Triple Peak open westward of Nam Point, eastern side of Toan Channel. Anchor where most desirable, according to the monsoon.

Northern Approach to Nhatrang Bay—Islands and dangers.—

Pyramid or Dune Island, 3.5 miles northeastward of Lon Island, is 754 feet in height, steep-to, and bordered at the base of its cliffs by a narrow ridge of shingle. There is but little vegetation on it. Pyramid Island forms a good mark for making Nhatrang Bay. See view of the coast on H. O. chart 3149.

Kau Island, 350 feet in height, about 1 mile northeastward of the Pyramid, is smaller than that islet, and is destitute of vegetation; it resembles a ruined castle from the offing. Three rocks above water lie off its southern extremity and one off its western extremity.

Shala Island situated about 4 miles northward of Kau Island, is 525 feet in height, 1 mile in length, and rocky. It is destitute of vegetation except for some scrub on its summit, and on which is a conspicuous bowlder. About midway between it and Cape Verte is a bank with 8 fathoms water, and with deeper water around it.

Seche Islet, situated about a mile east-southeastward of Seche Point, is very low, small, rocky, and flat; a rock awash at low water lies 50 yards off its northern extremity.

A rock, with 1½ fathoms, formerly charted nearly midway between the islet and Seche Point, is from a recent examination (1911) found to have no existence. It was reported by the Kega in 1897, but it could not be found by the Bengali; it is probable the vessel touched on the rocky ledge extending northeastward of Seche Point.

Grand Bank—Bourayne rock.—This bank, situated between Pyramid Island and Khe Ga Point or Cock's Crest, the northern point of Nhatrang Bay, is nearly 1\frac{3}{4} miles in extent with irregular depths. The shallowest water is on its northwestern portion, where there is but 3 feet, named Northwest rock. On its southwest portion is Bourayne rock, with 4 feet water, with Pyramid Peak bearing 100° distant 4.3 miles. Irregular depths extend from this rock about halfway to Pyramid Island to avoid which the whole of Bak Island should be kept well open of Cape Verte, keeping over toward Pyramid Island, which is steep-to. If passing westward of Bourayne rock, keep well over toward Tortoise Island.

Tortoise Island, about ½ mile offshore, southward of Khe Ga Point, is rocky, moderately high, and so named from its resemblance to a tortoise. Its eastern side is clear, but to the westward a sandbank extends a considerable distance. Between it and the main is a coral reef which obstructs the channel.

White rock, always above water, lies about 1 mile eastward of the northern point of entrance to Nhatrang River; shallow water extends nearly 200 yards southward of it. At 100 yards westnorthwestward of White rock there is a submerged rock with 6 feet water. Between White rock and the shore is Briere Island, low and covered with bushes from which shallow water extends about half-way to White rock. Vessels should keep outside White rock.

Khe ga Point, or the Cock's Crest, the northern extremity of Nhatrang Bay, is high, wooded, and jagged; the summit within it is about 1,200 feet in height. The bay between it and Nhatrang River is foul to nearly 1 mile offshore in its northern portion, and the remainder is fronted by a coral ledge. About midway is a beach about ½ mile in extent, affording good landing. Many woodcutters' huts are situated in this bay.

Nhatrang River and anchorage.—Nhatrang Bay affords good anchorage everywhere during the southwest monsoon period, over sand and mud. A convenient position for vessels of light draft is in a depth of 5 fathoms, abreast the settlement, with the summit of Mot Island touching Nam Point, the western extremity of Lon Island; and the western extremity of Tortoise Island in line with White rock. The anchorage southward of Chut Point is also available.

During the northeast monsoon the anchorages in Toan Channel are used, as then there is considerable sea in Nhatrang Bay. Landing is easily effected on the beach abreast, or by entering the river.

The river has a course of about 70 miles, chiefly through reeded banks, from whence it derives its name, and is navigable for boats and sampans for about 30 miles. About 7 miles from the mouth is Khanh Hoa, the capital of the Province; an Anamite viceroy resides there.

The mouth of the river is fronted by rocks, some of which are above water, to the distance of about 600 yards. Between their southern extremity and the shore the river discharges over a bar, in the fairway of which are two rocks, only visible at low water springs. Within the entrance points there is a pool with a depth of 8 feet at low water, and vessels of about 8 feet draft make use of it. The tide reaches about halfway to Khanh Hoa.

Tides.—There is but one high water daily; its maximum rise is about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  feet when the moon has its greatest declination; when the moon has no declination the rise is only about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet. The time of high water is said to be  $3\frac{1}{2}$  hours after Do Son, or at 8h. 30m. full and change.

The tide tables of the "Colonies françaises de Mers de Chine," published annually, state that the tides at Kin Hon are identical with those at Nhatrang.

Settlement (Lat. 12° 16′ N., Long. 109° 11′ E.).—The village of Ku Huan is situated on the low and sandy southern point of entrance to the river, and is mostly inhabited by fishermen; near it is the French residency, a small fort and other dwellings in connection with it. Within, on the river bank, is the large village of Xuong Huan, with groups of coconut trees. An isolated bluff, surmounted by a pagoda

within the village, is conspicuous from the offing, as are also other pagodas in the neighborhood.

Supplies.—Eggs, fowls, vegetables, and fruit are obtainable at Ku Huan, abreast the anchorage off Nhatrang River. Beef may be procured through the agency of the residency there.

Communication.—Nhatrang is connected with the telegraph system of Indo-China. Branch mail steamers call twice a month. The railroad is in progress from Saigon to it, and the section between Nhatrang and Fan Rang is completed.

Winds—Climate.—During the southwest monsoon the weather is fine at Nhatrang. Moderate southeast winds prevail, which calm down towards evening and give place to a cool land wind at night.

The months of June, July, and August are nowhere in Tonkin as healthful and agreeable with regard to temperature as here. Cyclones are quite exceptional, although their distance effects are observed by a notable change in the appearance of the weather and the state of the sea.

During the northeast monsoon, rain falls in abundance, accompanied at times by a gale. The sea is always heavy and breaks strongly on all coasts exposed to the monsoon.

Binkang Bay or Vung Thuk, northward of Nhatrang Bay, is a long inlet; the entrance is 3.5 miles wide, with depths of 6 to 10 fathoms, which decrease to 5 and then to 3 fathoms in front of some islets abreast Triple Peak. To the northwest of these islets is a marshy basin or inlet, in which there is generally not more than 5 feet of water; it is the estuary of the River Ninh hoa of growing importance.

The islands and dangers in the approach are mentioned on the preceding pages.

The bay affords good anchorage during both monsoons in depths as requisite.

The peninsula which separates the bays of Binkang and Van Fong is formed of high wooded mountains, the Central summit being 2,788 feet in height; it is separated near Hon Kohe from the moun tains of the interior by a low neck.

Xung Bay, which lies between Seche Point and Cape Spec (Mui Kai Sung), is foul, as charted.

A patch which dries, and is steep-to, lies midway between the entrance points. The bluff northeastward of Seche Point is foul to the distance of  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile.

Vessels proceeding northward from Binkang Bay should pass well outside the line joining these points, and within ½ mile of the northwestern extremity of Shala Island, where is the deepest water.

Van Fong and Bing Koi Bays—Aspect.—Between the mountainous peninsula which forms the north side of Binkang Bay and the

228 ANAM.

Hon Gom Peninsula, also mountainous, lies Van Fong Bay, the main entrance to Bing Koi Bay, which is available for all classes of vessels. The peninsula of Hon Gom is connected with the mainland by a low and narrow isthmus 5 miles in length, scarcely ½ mile wide in places. On the peninsula are several high and rugged peaks, the most conspicuous of which is Mount Dayot, 2,198 feet in height, and Table Mount, 950 feet high, eastward of Dayot; in the southern portion, the Finger and Mount Chauve are also conspicuous. On the mainland, about 16 miles from the coast, is a remarkable peak surmounted by two rocks which have the appearance of fingers of unequal size, named Mother and Child; it is 6,890 feet high, and visible in clear weather from a considerable distance.

Van Fong Bay (Lat. 12° 33′ N., Long. 109° 18′ E.) is about 6 miles wide between the mainland and Kua Island, with depths of 12 to 15 fathoms, mud. It has no known hidden dangers except a coral shoal 900 yards long and 400 yards broad, with a depth of 1½ fathoms over it, lying about 2.3 miles 150° from Hon Kohe Point. There is anchorage under Kua Island, in the northeast monsoon period, but it is open to the southwestward. See view of the coast on H. O. chart 3149.

Bak and Button Islets.—There are several islets or rocks in the southern approach to Van Fong Bay, the outermost of which, named Bak, rocky and bare, is 459 feet high; a rocky ledge, which dries, extends about 20 yards from its eastern extremity.

About a mile eastward of Bak is Button rock; a rock which dries 3 feet, lies about 160 yards off its northern extremity, and its southern side is reported to be foul.

Middle and Noire Islands.—Between Bak Island and the shore are Long, Middle, and Noire Islands; from Middle Island a reef extends more than halfway to Long Island, which is the northern extremity of a peninsula, as charted. Between Middle and Bak Islands there are depths of 14 to 16 fathoms apparently, but a rock with two pinnacle heads, covered by 6 feet water, lies about 1,400 yards 172° from the southern side of Middle Island. A coral patch of small extent, with 4 fathoms, is situated on a line joining the eastern end of Bak Island with Cape Vert, distant nearly 2 miles from the latter. Patches lie between it and the cape, and the shore of the bay for about 2 miles southward of Noire Island is foul to the distance of a mile or more.

Kua Island, on the northeastern side of Van Fong Bay, is wooded and mountainous, 8 miles in length, and with an average breadth of 2 miles; near its northwestern extremity is Mount Passage, a flat peak 1,870 feet high.

An islet lies a little westward of its southern extremity. Northwestward of Kua are several islets, the westernmost of which is Comete. Passage Island, 65 feet in height, lies nearly a mile off the southern side of the western end of Kua Island; it has a rock close off its northern end, and a patch of 4½ fathoms about 600 yards off its western side, with shoaler water between it and the island.

The coast between Cape Vert and Hon Kohe Point is reported to be incorrectly shown on the charts. A patch of 1½ fathoms is charted 150° 2.25 miles from the latter, with 8 to 9 fathoms around.

Hon Kohe port, on the mainland, just within Van Fong Bay, is sheltered by the peninsula of the same name, but it is shallow, with depths of less than 3 fathoms 1.5 miles from its head; a patch of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms lies between the 3 and 5 fathoms curves in the approach. It affords anchorage and shelter for small craft in about  $3\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms, good holding ground. Up the shallow creek at the head of the port is Hon Kohe Village.

The importance of the port is the production of salt. Several steamers load here annually from Singapore. There is a custom-house. Fowls and cattle are obtainable, but water is scarce.

**Tides.**—It is high water, full and change, at about 11h. 30m. The rise of tide is from  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to 6 feet when the moon has its highest declination, and about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet when the declination is nothing.

Bing Koi Bay (Lat. 12° 42′ N., Long. 109° 19′ E.), within Van Fong Bay, is 10 miles in length in a northeast and southwest direction, and about 5 miles in breadth, affording anchorage over a space of 5 miles by 2.5 miles, in depths of 6 to 9 fathoms, mud bottom.

Its western shore is fronted by several islands, lying parallel to it, to the distance of about 2 miles, all within the 5-fathoms curve; the largest is Mamelles Island. The head of the bay is shallow nearly out to North Islet.

On the shores of the bay are a number of fishing villages, where local products are obtainable; the water is bad.

Dangers in the entrance.—A patch of rocks, with a depth of 4 feet, lies about 1.3 miles eastward of Mangrove Island, western side of entrance, with a patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at 1,600 yards eastward, another of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at 1 mile southeast, and a third with  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile southward of it; and there is a patch which dries 1 foot at  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile 280° from Comete Islet, eastern side of entrance. There are depths of 7 to 9 fathoms between and around these dangers.

Directions.—There are two entrances to Bing Koi Bay, namely, that from Van Fong Bay, which is 4 miles wide, in which are the patches before mentioned, and by Kua Bé, the narrow channel eastward of Kua Island, which is deep throughout and seems to require no directions; Lion rock, in the entrance, off the southern extremity of Hon Gom Peninsula must, however, be given a berth.

To enter from Van Fong Bay, the best route is to pass between Comete Islet and patch (which dries at low tides) ½ mile westward

79795—15——16



of it, keeping fairly close to the islet; Da Bia Peak, situated within Cape Varela, kept in line with North Islet bearing 22°, leads in the fairway in about 9 fathoms.

Anchorage may be taken as convenient on that mark or near the peninsula. There are several fishing villages in the bay.

Kua Bë (Lat. 12° 34′ N. Long., 109° 24′ E.) is the channel which separates Kua Island from Hon Gom Peninsula; it is 670 yards wide in its narrowest part, with depths of not less than 11 fathoms throughout. Both sides of the channel are formed by high and wall-sided land, and small craft may warp in and fasten to the trees almost anywhere, as it is free from danger within Lion rock. It is the eastern entrance to Bing Koi Bay, as before stated. There is an inlet of the same name just south of Nhatrang Bay.

Lion Rock, on the eastern side of the entrance, with 8 feet water, lies about 400 yards 152° from the southern extremity of Hon Gom Peninsula, and has depths of 30 fathoms around it.

Port Dayot is the name of the bay within Kua Be, formed in Hon Gom Peninsula. It affords perfectly landlocked anchorage in several bays, and is easily entered by Kua Be, and fairly so through Van Fong Bay. Olivier Bay is the most frequented; it has depths of 10 fathoms, and is approached from between Chaigneau and Adran Islands.

Lutin Bay, northward of Lutin Island, in the western entrance, has several rocks nearly awash in it, and there is no object in entering it.

Dangers.—A reef with 1 foot water, marked by a stake, and steep-to, lies 255°, 575 yards from the northern extremites of Adran Island; and a coral reef of small extent, with a depth of 5 feet, lies at a distance of 250 yards 261° from the same point.

A rock with 5 feet water lies 269°, distant 500 yards from the southern point of Adran Island, marked by a wooden pile; it is situated on a bank about 50 yards long, on which are general depths of 2 to 6 fathoms; the bank is steep-to.

Supplies.—There are native villages in the neighborhood, where fowls, eggs, and fish may be procured.

Coast—The Three Kings (Lat. 12° 34′ 00″ N., Long. 109° 26′ 30″ E.), about 20 feet high, consist of a group of eight rocks, lying about 1 mile eastward of the southern extremity of Hon Gom Peninsula; sunken rocks extend about 450 yards northward of them. Fortin rock, with 6 feet water, lies 500 yards northwest of the Three Kings. There is a depth of 20 fathoms or more between these rocks and the coast, but it has not been properly surveyed.

Doi Moi, or Guerite Isle.—About 5 miles northward of the Three Kings, and close to a point of the mainland, lies the small island Doi Moi; both the island and point are fringed by sunken ledges,

with a channel between, with 11 fathoms water, but it is not recommended; sunken rocks border both sides of it.

Hon Gom Bight, 3 miles northwestward of Doi Moi, affords good anchorage in a depth of 8 or 10 fathoms southeastward of a small island; water is obtainable. The sandy flat, which connects the high land of the peninsula with that southward of Cape Varela, is only ½ mile wide in some places, separating the head of Bing Koi Bay from the sea as before stated; the islands in that bay may, in passing, be seen over it.

The eastern or seaward side of the sandy flat has apparently not been surveyed.

Hon Ro, 360 feet high, an island about ½ mile in extent, situated in the approach to Vung Ro, is bordered on its sea face by high perpendicular cliffs, steep-to; on its western side is a shingle beach with a fishing village; its southern end is prolonged by a ledge of rocks, partly under water, to the distance of 200 yards.

Vessels anchor between the island and Khanh hoa gia, the beach on the mainland, during the southwest monsoon or fine weather period. The great Mandarin Road passes at the back of this beach, and also the telegraph line from Hue to Saigon.

Vung Ro lies southward of the high land of Cape Varela, below Da Bia Peak, and is formed by the high peninsula extending some 3 miles southward of that cape. It is about 2 miles in length by 1 mile or more in breadth, with a depth of 10 fathoms at the entrance, decreasing gradually over a clay bottom toward the village at its end; it is free from danger. The land is high all round it.

Vung Ro, formerly a pirate haunt, is one of the safest harbors on this coast, and being near the inshore route up and down the China Sea is much resorted to in bad weather by the trading junks. No directions are necessary for entering it.

The tides range from  $\frac{1}{2}$  foot to 40 feet, according to moon's declination.

Many fishermen and wood cutters reside on its shores. Tigers and elephants are, or were, numerous in the forests.

Water.—On the western side of the harbor fresh water may be procured in several places, but the best watering place is at the north-western angle of the bay.

Cape Varela (Mui Nai) or Pagoda, the most eastern point of Anam, is formed of steep cliffs, with four rocky peaks extending nearly north and south for 3.5 miles, having in the middle a small sandy bay where a stream of good water descends from the mountain into the sea; it is safe to approach, there being depths of from 20 to 25 fathoms at a short distance.

The cape rises sharply to its summit, elevated 2,395 feet above high water, 2 miles within, on which is a conspicuous rock, resembling a

232 ANAM.

pagoda, named Da bia by the natives; it may be seen from a distance of about 50 miles in clear weather, but the summits of the mountains are frequently obscured by clouds or vapors, particularly in the northeast monsoon. See view B on B. A. chart 1342.

Light.—On the point south of Cape Varela, from a white masonry tower 46 feet in height and at an elevation of 318 feet above high water, is exhibited a group-flashing white light visible 24 miles, between the bearings of 356°, through west, and 171°.

Signal station—Semaphore.—A semaphore station has been established just eastward of the lighthouse. Vessels can communicate by the International Code both by day and night. Typhoon signals are also shown. The mast is 85 feet in height and 243 feet above the sea.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage northward of the cape in the southwest monsoon period, about ½ mile off a cove, in a depth of about 10 fathoms, with Da bia summit, bearing 233°.

There is good fresh water in this cove, and also in the creek southward of the northeastern point of the rocks forming the cape.

Perforated rock.—About 4 miles northward of Cape Varela lies a mass of rocks, some of them just awash; but the central rock is higher, with a large stone on its summit; in passing near it, when abreast, a hole through will be perceived near the top, which has given it the name of Perforated rock. There are depths of about 18 fathoms between it and the mainland.

Kua Da Rang (Lat. 13° 05′ N., Long. 109° 19′ E.).—The coast becomes low northward of Cape Varela; at the first rocky point there are low wooded hills with a village northward of it. Thence to Kua Da Rang the coast is formed of low sandhills, with regular depths of 12 to 14 fathoms at about a mile from the shore.

A plain some 30 miles broad extends back to the mountains.

Kua Da Rang enters the sea between Mamelon or Nipple Hill to the southward, and a mound, on which are the ruins of a pagoda, to the northward. Epervier Peak lies northward of it. The river flows through the extensive plain at the back, and is accessible to junks, but it has not yet been explored; it is apparently the longest in Anam. Both points of the entrance are foul to some distance, and there are a number of fishing stakes.

The bar had a depth of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  feet at low water in 1904, and presented no difficulty in entering. It is, however, subject to change during onshore winds. The water from the river discolors the sea at times to some distance.

There is anchorage off the river in about 9 fathoms. The winds are fairly strong on this coast during the greater part of the year.

There is a customhouse and telegraph office at Tui Hoa, within the entrance.

Coast.—Northward of Kua Da Rang, as far as Xuan Dai Point, a distance of 18 miles, the coast is chiefly low and sandy, interspersed with rocky points and sandhills, and with outlying islets and rocks in places. The plain within is well cultivated. The principal landmarks near Kua Da Rang are Epervier Peak, an isolated and sharp hill, 1,312 feet high, at about 2 miles from the coast, and Cone Hill, 1,870 feet in height, at about 7 miles northwest of it.

Bai Ma Lieng Islands (Lat. 13° 10′ N., Long. 109° 18′ E.), two in number, and surrounded by rocks, lie off the first rocky promontory northward of Kua Da Rang. The nearer to the shore is Verte Island, 131 feet in height, bare, and a brown color, except during the rainy season (northeast monsoon), when there is a little verdure. The other is named Coco Island. Between these islands is a rocky bank with a rock about 3 feet high. Rocks also extend 200 yards northeast and westward of Verte Island and southward of Coco Island. A reef of rocks covered at high water lies about 600 yards northward of Verte Island and the same distance from the coast.

Lam Tui, a thriving village, is situated on the mainland abreast Verte Island, surrounded by coconut trees.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage here for small craft in the southwest monsoon, the fine weather period. The islands afford a certain amount of protection to the anchorage even during the northeast monsoon period, but it is not recommended at that time.

The large fishing village of Chun Bien is situated near the northern extremity of the beach between Bai Ma Lieng Islands and Bonnet Island.

Bonnet Island, 197 feet in height, is small, black, and rugged in appearance, and connected to the point on the mainland which separates the sandy beaches by a reef.

The Trapeze is a black and prominent rock point between Bonnet Island and Mai Nha Island. It is 360 feet in height, and fronted by a reef, steep-to, on which the sea breaks at times. The coast northward is composed of low sandhills, interspersed with points of black rock here and there; a few scattered huts may be seen under clumps of coconut trees.

Mai Nha Island (Lat. 13° 17′ N., Long. 109° 18′ E.), 394 feet in height, situated about 1.5 miles from the coast, is wooded, irregular in outline, and resembles the roof of an Anamite house, hence its name. It is inhabited, and also frequented by fishermen from the neighboring coast. Rocky ledges front the points of the island to some distance.

The channel between the island and the mainland is reduced to 1,200 yards in width by the ledge from the island, and by the ledge extending 500 yards from the main shore, uncovered at about half

ebb. During the summer months the channel is blocked by fishing nets.

Olang lagoon, on the mainland, between Mai Nha Island and Xuan Dai Point, is about 5.5 miles in length, and situated at the back of the coast sandhills. Its shores are well cultivated, with rice chiefly, and populous. The southern entrance is a little northward of Mai Nha, and dries about ½ foot at low-water springs, which will give a depth of about 6 feet at high-water springs. Within the bar is a pool with about 7 feet at low water, abreast the village of Tan Kwi. The lagoon is only available for boats; at high water there is a boat channel to Xuan Dai.

The northern entrance is situated in a bend in the coast, southward of the southern extremity of Xuan Dai Point, off which there is temporary anchorage for small craft. This entrance, like the southern, has from 6 to 7 feet at high-water springs.

Fu Son, within the northern entrance to Olang lagoon, is a small harbor with about 2 fathoms at low water, fronting the town of Fu Son. A Chinese colony is formed here in the midst of the Anamites, and there is considerable coasting trade between this port and the ports in Canton Province. The numerous pagodas on this coast, and the table-topped hill, 443 feet in height, near Fu Son, render the bay and entrance easily recognizable. The tidal rise is about 6 feet at ordinary springs.

Xuan Dai Point (Lat. 13° 21' N., Long. 109° 16' E.), the southern point of entrance to Fuyen Bay, like the rest of the country hereabout, is well cultivated. Its southern extremity is a black and rocky bluff, with a ledge of coral and isolated rocks extending seaward about ½ mile. Thence northward toward its extremity detached rocks front the coast, which is moderately high.

Ilissus rock (Lat. 13° 21′ N., Long. 109° 17′ E.) is about 250 yards in length and 160 yards in breadth, within a depth of 5 fathoms; the least depth, 5 feet, is at its northwestern extremity, from which Xuan Dai Point bears 303° 1.3 miles, and is in line with the northern peak of Rocheux Island. The rock has depths of 12 to 13 fathoms around and about 11 fathoms between it and the shore.

Clearing marks.—The whole of Pulo Gambir seen open of Gain Ba Point, bearing 2°, leads eastward or seaward of the rock. The whole of Rocheux Island well open of Xuan Dai Point leads northward, and the eastern peak of Cape Varela, a little open westward of the western extremity of Mai Nha Island, leads between the rock and the shore.

Fuyen Bay, also named Dayot, from the name of the province, is the finest in Anam.

The entrance to Fuyen Bay is about 2 miles wide, between Xuan Dai Point and Vung Chao Peninsula, with depths of 9 to 10 fathoms on either side of Ile aux Nids.

It has several anchorages, the principal of which are Xuan Dai, on the southern side of the entrance, the most easily accessible; Vung la, on the northern side, either available for large vessels according to the monsoon; and Vung Lam, within Xuan Dai. Vung Chao Port, the head of Fuyen Bay, is available for vessels of moderate draft, affording good and sheltered anchorage over a considerable space in a depth of 4 fathoms mud, easy of access.

The principal landmarks are the peaks of Vung Chao Peninsula, the high and bold point Gain Ba, and the high hills around Vung Trikh. See view B on B. A. chart 1342.

The country around Fuyen is well cultivated, and on its shores are many landing places for the fishermen. There are numerous villages dotted about, surrounded by coconut groves and backed by high ranges of hills forming a magnificent lanscape. The province is very prosperous, and its capital is situated in the interior, southwestward of the bay.

Vung Chao Peninsula.—The southern portion of the peninsula, forming the northeastern side of Fuyen Bay, is a mountainous ridge with three peaks. The southernmost, lower than the others, is conical; the other two are each about 1,181 feet in height. See view B on B. A. chart 1342.

Vung la point, the southern termination of the peninsula, is a perpendicular cliff about 230 feet high.

Gain Mong Point, about 3 mile to the northeastward, has a rock above water about 200 yards off it. The bight between these points is foul, except at its northern extremity. Its sandy shore is divided by a black bluff.

Gain Ba Point (Lat. 13° 28′ N., Long. 109° 18′ E.) is a peninsula connected to the larger one by a sand isthmus; it has two sharp peaks of nearly equal height, about 656 feet. Rocks, some above water, extend about 200 yards seaward of the southern peak, with deep water beyond them.

Vessels may find temporary anchorage in the bays on either side of the point, according to the prevailing monsoon, but much obstructed by fishing stakes or nets; in the southern one is a fishing village.

Islands and dangers.—Ile aux Nids (Nest Island) is a small bold island situated in the entrance to Fuyen Bay, at about 1 mile northwestward of Xuan Dai Point. A reef with 2½ fathoms, extends 200 yards from its western side.

A shoal of 5 fathoms, with a depth of 2½ fathoms on its south extremity lies 1,200 yards 257° from Ile aux Nids.

Rocheux Island, about ½ mile in length, and 174 feet in height, separates Xuan Dai Bay from Vung Lam Road; it is situated on a ledge fronting the point off which it lies, over which there is only a depth of 3 feet at low water. There is a rock above water close off the northeastern extremity of the island.

236 ANAM.

Volga rock, with a least depth of 2½ fathoms, consists of two rocky heads, 85 yards apart; it lies on the southern side of the fairway to Vung Chao Port, with the summit of Rocheux Island bearing 199°, distant 1,100 yards; it has depths of 5½ fathoms around it.

Bouee rock barely covers at the highest tides, and is therefore always discernible; it lies on the northern side of the fairway abreast and 1,600 yards northeastward of Volga rock, with South Vung Nie Point bearing 89°, distant 800 yards.

Outer anchorages—Xuan Dai (Lat. 13° 23′ N., Long. 109° 14′ E.) anchorage is convenient during the northeast monsoon, the fine season, and affords anchorage in a depth of 6 fathoms, mud, with the mouth of the river bearing 179°, and Ile aux Nids 61°, avoiding the 2½-fathom patch westward of Ile aux Nids before mentioned, when entering or leaving.

The river at the head of the bay is fronted by a bar with 1 foot at low water, to the distance of ½ mile, with deeper water within; it has several arms, but is only available for boats. Provisions are obtainable at Ba Binh and Kau Villages, on either side of the entrance.

Vung La.—Anchorage may be taken under Vung La Peninsula, northern side of Fuyen Bay, in from 7 to 8 fathoms, about  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile southwestward of the village of the same name. Small craft can careen in the cove northward of the village, sheltered by an islet; there is anchorage off it in from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 fathoms.

Vung Lam Road affords anchorage in a depth of 4½ fathoms, with Rouge Point bearing 2°, and the northern extremity of Rocheux Island 117°; from thence the depths decrease gradually toward the shore. Rocheux Island may be rounded at the distance of about 400 yards, or midway between it and Volga rock; the head of the bay is shallow for a considerable distance.

At the village, supplies or provisions are obtainable. There is a customhouse here, and a good road to Song Kau, in Vung Chao Port, the chief town of the province.

Ving La Bay and Islet lie northward of Vung Lam Road; the bay is very shallow, adapted for small junks or boats; there is a village on its northern shore. A patch of 2\frac{3}{4} fathoms lies \frac{1}{4} mile seaward of the islet, with a fathom deeper water around it. Jaune Peak, 440 feet in height, lies southward of this bay.

Vung Chao Port, the head of Fuyen Bay, is about 3.5 miles in length by about the same in breadth, with an entrance about a mile wide; it has depths of about 4 fathoms over a considerable part of it, and is therefore available for vessels of moderate draft. It may be considered a typhoon anchorage.

Rouge Point is the western point of entrance to Vung Chao Port; a rock with  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms lies 300 yards 160° from it, near the 3-fathom curve; a rock that dries 5 feet, and therefore nearly always visible, lies on the shore ledge at 80 yards eastward of the point.

Pluvier Reef, in the center of the port, is about 800 yards in extent; a rock on the northern part of the large part of it dries 4 feet, and other parts from 1 to 2 feet.

A reef, 670 yards in length, dry from 1 to 2 feet at low water, lies on the shore flat about from 600 to 1,000 yards off the northern side of approach to Vung Vong Village.

Several patches, dry at low water, front the shore northward to the head of the bay.

Rouge Islet, 85 feet high, lies near the head of the bay; patches which dry lie southward and westward of it, all within the 2-fathom curve, as charted.

Directions.—The best approach to Fuyen Bay and Vung Chao Port, having passed Ilissus rock by the clearing marks previously given for it, if coming from the southward, is between Ile aux Nids (Nest) and Vung Chao Peninsula; thence steering to bring Xuan Dai Point in line with the western side of that island, bearing 139°, which mark astern will lead midway between Volga and Bouee rocks; the latter is almost always visible.

When within these dangers, bring the rock off the northeastern end of Rocheux Island to bear 174° astern, which mark leads to the anchorage off the principal village, Song Kau, on the western side of the port, and westward of Pluvier Reef, where there is anchorage in about 3 fathoms. The eastern part of the port has better water, 3½ to 4 fathoms.

Settlements.—Vung Vong (Chao) (Lat. 13° 28′ N., Cong. 109° 16′ E.) is situated on the eastern side of the port. The principal village is Song Kau on the western shore, through which the main road between Hue and Saigon Passes. It is connected with the telegraph system of Indo-China.

Supplies.—The branch mail steamers call here bimonthly, and supplies of provisions can be procured. Water is obtainable near the village in the bay southwestward of Vung Vong, and in Vung La Creek, and probably at Song Kau.

Tides.—The rise of tide in Vung Chao port, at springs (or moon's greatest declination), is about 6½ feet.

Coast—Vung Trikh.—From Gain Ba Point, the eastern extremity of the peninsula, northward, the coast forms a sandy bay nearly 3 miles in length, backed by sand hills about 120 feet in height, and a table-topped hill above them highly cultivated. At the northern extremity of this bay is a rocky peninsula, similar to Gain Ba, 1.3 miles in length and 371 feet in height, the northern extremity of which forms the southern point of entrance to Ku Mong Harbor.

Within Vung Trikh Point, the southern extremity of this peninsula, is Vung Trikh Bay, which affords anchorage in the fine weather season (southwest monsoon) in a depth of from 3 to 5 fathoms, 600 yards

offshore, and temporary anchorage in the northeast monsoon period for small vessels when the wind does not blow in.

The village of Vin Hoa is situated at its head under a group of coconut trees. The village of Vung Trikh is situated in the plain to the westward, with Verte Hill, 492 feet high, southward of it.

Ku Mong Harbor.—Close northward of Vung Trikh Peninsula is the entrance to Ku Mong Harbor, both points of which are foul to the distance of 200 yards. The channel between is very narrow, but is said to have a depth of 8 fathoms; just within it is reduced to 4 and 3 fathoms, mud bottom, affording secure anchorage for small craft. All the western portion of the harbor is shallow.

A mark for the fairway of the entrance is Verte Hill, a saddle hill, covered with vegetation, situated about 1.3 miles southwestward of Vung Trikh Point, bearing 187°, until well within the entrance points. Thence the fairway course is about 204°, or for a group of coconut trees just visible above the sand hills, anchoring where desirable. There is a depth of 3½ fathoms in a pool southward of Ku Mong Island.

Within and northward of Ku Mong Harbor is a large lagoon. The water is fairly deep in places, but it is mostly shallow. Small vessels of about 6 feet draft can enter with local knowledge. Large quantities of salt are obtained from the lagoon, many steamers calling at Ku Mong for it.

The village of Ving ho is situated among the coconut trees on the northern shore of the harbor.

Coast—Vung Mong Point, 2.5 miles northward of the entrance to Ku Mong Harbor, like of that Gain Ba, has a bay on each side, with a fishing village in the northern one; a vessel intending to anchor there must give a berth to the northern extremity of the point, as rocks project from it above and under water, having 10 fathoms close to them; the anchorage also is in a depth of 10 fathoms.

From Vung Mong Point to opposite Hon Dat the coast is steep and mountainous, forming Kambir or Gambir Bay.

Pulo Gambir, or Kambir, situated about 4 miles northeastward of Vung Mong Point, is narrow, about 2 miles in length, and has two peaks about 360 feet in height, visible about 18 miles in clear weather; there are a few fishermen's huts on the southwest side.

A ridge extends 500 yards southward of its southwestern point, with a depth of 3 feet on its extremity. Some sharp-peaked rocks, named the Two Paps, lie about a mile southeast of Pulo Gambir.

Light.—On the summit of the eastern point of Pulo Gambir, a group flashing white light is exhibited from a white conical granite tower, 52 feet high, at an elevation of 387 feet above high water. The light is obscured by the land from the bearing of 138° to 103°; it is otherwise visible 26 miles.

Paques, a coral bank with 2 fathoms water, lies about 1.3 miles from the west side of Pulo Gambir, with the northern point of the island bearing 30°, and the Paps in line 112°. There is a safe passage apparently on either side of this bank.

Hon Dat, 243 feet in height, lyng about 6 miles north-north-westward of Vung Mong Point, and 1 mile distant from the mainland, is of round form, and covered with trees. Between it and Hon Roi, another round island nearer the shore, there is a passage with a depth of 5 and 6 fathoms, and there are some rocks above water to the northward of the latter island. There is anchorage northwestward of Hon Dat in 6 to 8 fathoms.

Cape San Ho, forming the northern side of the approach to Kin Hon Harbor, is a high bluff headland, with patches of 3½ and 3¾ fathoms, steep-to, at distances of 400 and 600 yards southwestward and westward of it, as charted. At 1 mile northeastward of the cape is Kulao Han, an island connected to the shore by a reef, two other islands lie within its northern end; see view on B. A. chart 264.

Kin Hon, or Thi Nai Harbor, lies between the high peninsula of Huong Mai, terminating southeastward in Cape San Ho and the extremity of a neck of sand about 1.5 miles in length, on which is the town of Kin Hon, which has been formed around the village of Gia. It forms a secure anchorage for such vessels as can cross the bar.

Depths.—The entrance is ½ mile wide between the points, but it is reduced to about 200 yards by a crescent-shaped spit extending 670 yards from the western point. It is fronted by a bar at ¼ mile seaward of South Point, on which there is a depth at low water of 11 feet (1910), and at high water springs about 16 feet, subject to change during heavy freshets or strong winds, and is therefore not to be depended on. The steamer Bengali, in 1903, is reported to have carried 15 feet least depth over the bar at low water, with the western side of K Hill (295 feet) bearing 4°.

Within the bar there are depths of 5 to 6 fathoms over a length of 1 mile by \(\frac{1}{4}\) mile in breadth. Northward of the town the harbor opens out to a shallow lagoon, about 2 miles in length and breadth; several streams discharge into it, one of which communicates with Bind Dinh Hon, situated about 18 miles to the westward.

Light.—From an iron gibbet 30 feet high on the wall of a lodge on South Point, entrance to Kin Hon Harbor, a fixed white light is exhibited at an elevation of 178 feet above high water, visible 7 miles. The light is obscured by Huong Mai Peninsula, between the bearings of 233°, through west, and 304°.

**Buoys.**—Red buoys, with conical topmarks, mark the eastern side of the channel, and black buoys with cylindrical topmarks the west side of the channel; the positions are subject to change; see the chart.



Outer anchorage—Directions.—The entrance to the port is easily recognized; see view on chart. The state of the bar should be ascertained before attempting to enter. The entrance is between No. 1 black and No. 2 red buoys; the chart is not to be relied on. There are no pilots.

A vessel not intending to go into the harbor may anchor outside the bar in a depth of 4 fathoms, good holding ground, with Cape San Ho, the southeastern extremity of Huong Mai Peninsula, bearing 86°, and the flagstaff on South Point, the eastern point of entrance, 24°. This anchorage is not recommended during the northeast monsoon period.

The harbor is subject to a strong downward current in the rainy season which much reduces its security at that time, which is also the typhoon season. The best position then would be well up into the lagoon, away from the narrow entrance.

Loading can only be carried on before noon during the northeast monsoon period, as fresh breezes with considerable sea prevail after that time.

Railroad.—A railroad is under construction from Kin Hon to Tourane and Hue; also another line inland to Attopeu.

Tides.—The time of high water, full and change, in Kin Hon Harbor is somewhat irregular; springs rise about 4½ to 5½ feet, neaps 2 to 3½ feet, but see tides, page —.

Settlement—Kin Hon.—The town of Kin Hon, formerly the village of Gia, is situated on the spit of the western side of the entrance, and is the residence of the administrator of the Province of Binh Dinh.

It has a customhouse and other public offices, and is connected with the telegraph system of Indo China; there is a good road to Binh Dinh, the capital of the province. The Messageries Maritime have an agent here, and there are several European and Chinese trading establishments.

Communication.—The branch mail steamers of the Messageries line, running weekly between Saigon and Haifong, call here both going and returning.

There is a lookout station on the hill eastward of South Point, and a battery with flagstaff on South Point.

A jetty of wood has been constructed on the seaward side of Kin Hon, abreast the post office.

Trade—Supplies.—The population of the port of Kin Hon is 3,000, of whom about 20 are French civilians. The chief articles of export are: Salt, silk, crêpes, beans, sugar, etc. A considerable trade is carried on with Hongkong, Singapore, Saigon, and Haifong, chiefly in the hands of the Chinese.

Merchandise is brought here by small steamers and junks for shipment from smaller ports in the neighborhood.

Fresh provisions are cheap, but water is very scarce, and practically not obtainable.

Coast.—From Cape San Ho the coast to Vung Bak Point, 8.5 miles northward, is steep and high. About 3.5 miles northward of the cape is a remarkable gap between two hills 994 and 554 feet in height. Vung Bak Point is rocky and moderately high, with some rocks lying off it.

Koni Islets—Hon Kan (Juan Prieto), 295 feet high, is a steep pyramidal rock, lying 1.5 miles eastward of Vung Bak Point; and 2 miles farther eastward there are some rocky islets, named Koni or Black Jack Islands, about 120 feet high. Vessels may pass between these and Hon Kan, and also within the latter, there being 15 to 20 fathoms water around them. During the southwest monsoon there is good anchorage in the southwestern corner of the bay abreast these islets.

Vung Tang.—For 5 miles northward of Hon Kan the coast forms a bay backed by sand hillocks to the rocky promontory of Vung Tang, which rises to a height of 2,231 feet at 3 miles within it. This peak, and the one 2,887 feet in height, 4 miles northwestward, have each a single rock on the summit.

On the coast, at 2 miles southward of Vung Tang, is a conspicuous cone, 689 feet in height; to the northward the coast is high and rocky to Nuok Ngot.

Nuck Ngot, a prominent headland, 590 feet in height, and steep-to, has several peaks of reddish granite, on the slopes of which are streaks of sand which serve to identify the point. In the bay to the southward is a stream of fresh water, and a village off which vessels can anchor in a depth of 8 to 10 fathoms. Northward of the point is a plain bordered by sand dunes, with isolated hills in places.

Buffalo Island (Hon Tran), 4 miles distant from Nuok Ngot, is a barren granite rock with two peaks, about 98 feet high. Two detached rocks lie about 400 yards east of Buffalo Island, with a breaking rock between them and the island. A tide-rip was observed near the western point of Buffalo Island, but no bottom was found at a depth of 16 fathoms all around the island. Between it and the shore the depths are said to be regular, from 12 to 14 fathoms.

Vung Moe, at 6 miles northward of Nuok Ngot, is a small bay, in which there is a village and a stream where fresh water is obtainable. Within the village are two hills, one of which, 2,198 feet in height, has a round top.

Anchorage can be obtained, in the northeast monsoon, off the village in Vung Moe in a depth of 5 fathoms, sand, at ½ mile from the shore.

At 3 miles northward of the village of Vung Moe is a rocky point from which the coast, bordered by sand hills, trends northwestward to the mountain, forming An Yo Point. Ta Ho Lagoon lies within the sand hills.

Light.—A fixed white light (provisionally established), exhibited 168 feet above high water from a white house a little northward of the summit of Nuok Nord, on a hill near the coast, and illuminates an arc of 176° from 162° to 338°.

Nuck Islet (Lat. 14° 15′ N., Long. 109° 11′ E.).—From Vung Moe the coast trends eastward about 1 mile to a remarkable cliff, off which are several black rocky islets; the largest, Nuck Islet, lies 1 mile northeastward of the cliff, and has two peaks, the eastern being 150 feet high. The channel which separates these islets from the mainland is encumbered with rocks.

During the southwest monsoon there is good anchorage under shelter of the islets, in  $8\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms. It is necessary to pass 1 mile northward of Nuok Islet on account of the rocks which extend from it in that direction.

Hara (Tortue) is a small black islet, 33 feet high, lying 6 miles northward of Nuok Islet and 4 miles off the sandy coast. A reef extends 150 yards northward of it.

An Yo Point is formed by two rocky spurs projecting from a summiv, 2,624 feet high, lying to the southwestward. A village lies south of the southern spur, and a little distance off the northern one are sunken rocks, extending about 100 yards.

About a mile southward of An Yo Point there are two submerged rocks,  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile offshore, with a least depth of 2 fathoms and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms around; vessels must pass outside.

From An Yo Point the coast northward is sandy.

Laigiang, or Tifu River, enters the sea in the middle of the sandy coast; there is a village on it surrounded by palms. The anchorage off the river has a depth of 7 to 8 fathoms, sandy bottom. At 2 miles westward of the river is a hill with a reddish summit and about 11 miles to the northward, northwestward of Tam Kwam, is a flat summit, 2,854 feet high.

Tam Kwam River (Lat. 14° 35′ N., Long. 109° 3′ E.) discharges at the northern extremity of the sandy coast, at the foot of a series of hills which terminate in Tam Kwam Point; the bar at the entrance is passable only by boats at high water. The anchorage, in 7 fathoms, mud and sand, is partly sheltered from northerly winds by Tam Kwam Point, which stretches about 1 mile eastward from the northern side of the entrance, with a shallow spot beyond it.

There is a village on its banks surrounded by plantations of coco and areca nuts, where some provisions can be procured. A pagoda, encircled by trees, is situated on a low hill.

The coast from Tam Kwam Point trends northward 5 miles to Cape Sa Hoi, and presents alternately rocky points and sandy bays; thence northward to Cape Batangan the coast is backed by sand dunes of much the same character; that named Mia, 197 feet in height, over the cape of the same name, at 10 miles from Sa Hoi, and one of 200 feet in height 4 miles southward of the Black rock, and 7 miles southward from the Kwang Ngai River, are the only noticeable ones. There is a rock close under Mia Hill, and from the northern (200 feet) sand hill a bank fronts the shore as far as Cape Batangan to about ½ mile distance, otherwise the coast is apparently bold to approach. The country is high inland. There is temporary anchorage off the Kwang Ngai River in about 7 fathoms.

Cape Batangan (Lat. 15° 15′ N., Long. 108° 54′ E.), about 6 miles north-northeast of Kwang Ngai River, is about 65 feet high; rocks above water extend 800 yards from its northern side. At about 1.8 miles southeastward of the southern extremity of the cape lies Flat rock, showing just above high water; and between this rock and the cape lies Indre rock, with 2½ fathoms water.

Rocks above water extend about 800 yards off its northern side.

It is recommended to give this cape a berth of a mile.

In the bay northward of the cape there is good anchorage in the southwest monsoon in 5½ fathoms, with the rocks off the cape bearing 92°. A rock, which dries 3 feet, and surrounded by depths of 5½ fathoms, is reported (1903) to lie ½ mile off the shore in the northern end of this bay, about 4.5 miles 320° from Cape Batangan.

Cape Bantan.—The coast from Batangan trends northwestward for 12 miles to Cape Bantan, which is 502 feet in height; there are several high and salient points between, off which there are said to be depths of 20 to 25 fathoms at a short distance, but the chart is bare of soundings. In the interior are several ranges of mountains. See view on H. O. Chart 3155.

Kulao Rai, or Pulo Canton, about 15 miles eastward of Cape Bantan, is nearly 3 miles in length, east and west, and about 1.3 miles in breadth. It is formed of several craters and peaks, appearing isolated when seen from a distance of 25 miles, but has a level aspect when viewed from the southward.

The island is surrounded by a coral reef, which extends a mile from the northwest and southeast points; and to the northward there are overfalls and rocky bottom, extending about 3 miles from it.

North Island, which is low and rocky, lies 2.5 miles northward of its western extremity, with deep water between.

The northeastern sides of these two islands should not be closely approached, on account of the unsurveyed ground. See Volta Bank below.

The holding ground is rocky and bad everywhere, but temporary anchorage may be taken on the southern side of Kulao Rai, as shown on the chart.

Light (Lat. 15° 23′ 30″ N., Long. 109° 6′ 00″ E.)—From a gray pyramidal tower, 165 feet high, situated about 400 yards within the northeastern point of Kulao Rai, and at an elevation of 172 feet above high water, a flashing white light is exhibited; it is visible 20 miles between the bearing of 57°, through north, west, and south, to 107° (310°).

Villages.—There are villages on the western and southern sides of Kulao Rai, and fresh water is procurable; the island is well cultivated.

The wide channel between Kulao Rai and the mainland is apparently clear, with the exception of Volta Bank, and has a depth of about 30 fathoms.

Volta Bank, reported in 1874, with a depth of 2½ fathoms, coral, is charted 323° 7.5 miles from the northwestern extremity of Kulao Rai.

The shoal has been partly examined and two heads covered with 8 feet of water were found. It is frequented by fishermen during the southwest monsoon period; with any sea the rocks break heavily.

Overfalls over a rocky ridge, with charted depths of 7 to 10 fathoms, and deeper water around, extend eastward of Volta Bank.

Caution.—It may be proper to observe that sailing vessels adopting the inner passage to China, during the strength of the southwest monsoon, in June, July, and August, ought not to edge off from the coast of Cochin China until they pass within sight of Kulao Rai, particularly if the winds are light and baffling. In such case it is advisable to steer well to the northward toward the southern part of Hainan, to prevent being driven near the northwest extremity of the Paracels, should a northwesterly storm happen to blow from the Gulf of Tonkin, which has been frequently experienced in June and July.

Ki Kik Bay (Vung Kit), on the western side of Cape Bantan, close to the foot of high hills, is about 6 miles in length and 3 miles in breadth. A bank with less than 3 fathoms fronts the shore to the distance of 800 to 1,000 yards, toward which the depths decrease gradually from 12 fathoms at 2.5 miles off. There are some rocks above water on the eastern side of the bay near Inner Point, within the 5-fathoms curve.

The Kan River, the mouth of which is shallow with several rocky islets in it, discharges into the southeast part of the bay. In the western corner of the bay is the village of Bai ran at the foot of a hill, and off the point to the northward are two rocks above water.

At 12 miles inland is the summit of the range which trends nearly parallel to the coast, being 3,707 feet in height and named Grand Ki Kik.

Anchorage (Lat. 15° 25′ N., Long. 108° 45′ E.).—During the southwest monsoon, good anchorage can be obtained in the southeast part of the bay. A large vessel should anchor in a depth of about 8 fathoms, southwestward of Inner Point; a small vessel could anchor nearer the shore in 3 to 4 fathoms, well sheltered. Anchorage can also be taken during the southwest monsoon, off Bai ran Village, in 6 fathoms, sand, at  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile from the shore.

Water can be obtained in the creeks, or at the watering place north of Bai ran, but here the coast is steep and rocky.

Hapoix or Little Bay.—Westward of the northwestern extremity of Ki Kik Bay there is a shallow bay under Cape Hapoix, into which Hapoix or An hoa River discharges; it is encumbered with several sunken reefs, and is only available for boats or junks. A sunken ledge extends about a mile northwestward of Cape Hapoix, at which distance it breaks occasionally. There is a patch of 4½ fathoms ½ mile westward of it.

At the mouth of the river, on the western side, is the village of Fu Xuan. This river trends northward parallel to the low sandy coast, from which it is distant 2 miles, for about 30 miles, where it connects with the Fai foh.

The coast northward of Cape Hapoix is apparently free from danger, the depths decreasing gradually toward it; villages occur here and there; in the interior are several high mountain chains.

Hon Ong.—About 18 miles northward from Cape Hapoix, and 14 miles off the coast, lies Hon Ong, a round island, 656 feet in height, about ½ mile in diameter, and steep-to.

Kulao Cham is an island 1,230 feet high, situated 11 miles north-westward from Hon Ong, and about 7 miles from the mouth of the Fai foh River; it is visible from a considerable distance in clear weather, and forms a useful landmark for vessels running between Saigon and Haifong.

It is about 4 miles in length north-northwest and south-southeast, and about 1.8 miles in breadth, having some islands adjoining its south-west side, and others between 2 and 4 miles westward from its north-western side. These are charted as South Island, Southwest Island, Middle or Goat, North, and Northwest Island from their positions with regard to the main island, failing native names.

The island is inhabited and well cultivated. See view on chart.

Anchorage (Lat. 15° 57′ N., Long. 108° 30′ E.).—The eastern and northern coasts are steep, but the bay on the western side affords good shelter during the northeast monsoon, with a convenient watering

79795—15——17

place, and anchorage in a depth of 4 to 4½ fathoms, sand and mud, good holding ground, with deeper water outside the line of the points. There is a village at the head of the bay.

D'Entrecasteaux Rock (Ran man), situated 1,600 yards westward of South Island, has a least depth of 1½ fathoms; within the depths of 5 fathoms it is 1,000 yards in length by 600 yards in breadth, and steep-to around. From the shallow head the western extremities of North and Goat Islands are in line, and the southern peak of South Island bears 81° distant about 1.2 miles. Northwest Island, open westward of Southwest Island, leads westward of the rock.

The outer anchorage.—Southeast of Goat or Middle Island is a bank of sand and mud, a mile in extent in a northwest and southeast direction, with a least-known depth of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms near its center from which Southwest Island bears  $269^{\circ}$ , distant 1 mile. Small craft may anchor on this bank in 4 to 5 fathoms, well protected during the northeast monsoon. There is anchorage in 9 fathoms, sand and mud, southward of the bank, with the extremities of Kulao Cham bearing  $345^{\circ}$  and  $86^{\circ}$ .

Caution.—The bottom is irregular between the anchorage and the mainland, depths of  $5\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms being charted in several places, with 10 fathoms around them; there may be less water, as the space has not been properly surveyed.

Tides.—The tides are feeble except during springs, and then there is only one high water in 24 hours, which occurs about 9 a.m., and low water at 10 p.m., with a range of 1 to 6 feet. The flood runs south-southwestward. The currents are feeble and irregular; that during the southwest monsoon is scarcely felt.

Coast—Fai foh or Kua Doi River (Lat. 15° 53′ N., Long. 108° 22′ E.).—The entrance of the Fai foh lies about 8 miles southwest of Kulao Cham, and is about ‡ mile in breadth between a low sandy point to the east and a higher point to the west; the masts of the junks at anchor inside are visible from the offing. See sketch on plan.

A shifting bar of sand extends nearly 1 mile off its entrance, with about 5 feet over it at low water. Vessels should anchor well off the entrance in depths of 8 to 10 fathoms, as the holding ground is bad.

A branch of this river, the Song Thu Bon, connects with Tourane Bay via Tourane River, and another branch with Hapoix to the southward.

The river is much frequented by junks, which carry on a considerable trade with places inland, the principal of which is Kuang Nam, the capital of the Province.

Tides.—The times and heights of high water are irregular; the flood sets southward in the offing.

The coast from the Fai foh is low, trends northwestward, and forms with the peninsula of Tien sha a large bay with a low shore, in

the middle of which there stands a mass of marble rock, conspicuous when sailing along the coast. See view on B. A. chart 1342.

Tien sha Peninsula.—Cape Tourane is the eastern extremity of Tien sha Peninsula that forms the eastern side of Tourane Bay. This peninsula is about 6 miles in length in an east and west direction, and is mountainous, attaining a height of 2,050 and 2,183 feet at its northern and southern extremities, respectively. The isthmus connecting it with the mainland is low and its eastern side is steep-to. See view on B. A. chart 1342.

Canton rock (page 248) lies off its northern extremity, and the point under the lighthouse is foul to a short distance.

Light (Lat. 16° 8′ N., Long. 108° 18′ E.).—On the eastern side of Tien sha Peninsula, from a white cylindrical masonry tower 28 feet high, and at an elevation of 518 feet above high water, a group flashing white light is exhibited. The light is visible 20 miles from the bearing of 323°, through west and south, to 129°.

Signal station.—There is a signal station on the cape with which vessels can communicate by International Code.

Storm signals are also shown when necessary.

Anchorage.—There is sheltered anchorage in Lutin Bay, south side of the peninsula, in about 6 fathoms, and westward of this in the little bay of Black rock, so named from the rock above water in it; the approach is by the lead. Tourane is easily reached from across the isthmus.

Tourane Bay, between Tien sha Peninsula and the point within Kulao Han, is 3.5 miles wide in the entrance, with depths of 11 to 12 fathoms, sand and mud. Within the entrance it is 6 miles in length and the same in breadth at its head, toward which the depths gradually decrease. Excepting Canton rock, there are no dangers outside the 5-fathom curve, which at the mouth of the river extends 1.5 miles off, decreasing to half that distance toward the western part of the bay, within which are some patches of 2 fathoms.

Aspect.—The head of the bay is low, but the northern shore is mountainous, attaining a height of 3,970 feet at the Asses Ears, some 7 miles within, and about 6 miles westward of the Ears is a peak 4,888 feet high. See view on B. A. chart 1342.

The northern point of the bay is rocky, and within it are two peaks; the westernmost, Sud des Portes, is 3,904 feet in height and conical in form. Between the two is a fortified pass, 1,870 feet above the sea, through which run the road and railroad to Hue.

Kulao Han, a bold island, about a mile in length and 853 feet in height, lies on the northern side of the entrance to Tourane Bay, separated from the point abreast by a channel nearly 800 yards wide, with depths of 13 to 14 fathoms. A patch with 4 feet least water lies on the eastern side of the fairway, about 350 yards distant from the

southwestern side of the island; there are some rocks above water, and a patch of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms nearer the shore northward of it; the western side of the channel is clear. The island is steep-to on its seaward side.

Canton rock.—Canton rock, with two heads, the northern one dry 1½ feet at low water, and the southern 25 yards sotheastward of it, with 1½ feet water, lies nearly 500 yards off the northern extremity of Tien sha peninsula. It is unmarked. Vessels should pass outside the rock. See clearing marks with the directions, below.

Light—Observatory light (Lat. 16° 7′ N., Long. 108° 13′ E.), fixed white, shown from the North Fort (ruin) at the eastern side of Tourane Bay, is exhibited, from a white masonry tower, at an elevation of 136 feet above high water. It is visible 10 miles when bearing from 210° through south and east to 300°.

Leading marks for anchorage.—On the beach, about 1.3 miles west of Tourane River entrance, is a white conical stone turret, with triangular topmark, 18 feet high, at an elevation of 49 feet above high water.

A similar turret, with cylindrical topmark, 29 feet high, is situated 150°, 650 yards from the above.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Tourane Bay, at about 9h. 30m.; springs rise 4 feet; there is only one tide in the 24 hours, at springs.

Directions—Anchorages.—The high peninsula of Tien sha and Kulao Han will identify Tourane Bay. There are no known dangers in the approach, other than Canton rock, off the northern shore of the peninsula, and which will be generally visible. Observatory Lighthouse, on the North Fort, open of the point between it and the rock, or the light in sight at night, leads northward of it.

The best anchorage is in the eastern part of the bay; vessels of light or moderate draft may anchor about 600 yards southward of Observatory Fort, in about 4 fathoms, mud, or mud and shells, with protection from all winds.

Vessels of deep draft must anchor southwestward or westward of the North Fort, in depths of 6 to 8 fathoms, a more exposed position during the northeast monsoon period.

If wishing to anchor off the town, westward of the river, steer in, with the white leading beacons on the shore in line, 150°; bring up according to draft. The depths decrease gradually here.

Tourane River is obstructed by a shifting bar which extends about 1.3 miles seaward of the entrance, and it is often impossible to cross it during the northeast monsoon period. The river is navigable for junks and other small craft to the coal mines at Nang son, 34 miles from the entrance. At 14 miles up the Song Thu bon a branch

connects with the Fai foh. The river should only be entered by those acquainted with it.

Dredged channel—Buoyage.—A channel about 50 yards wide, 1,600 yards in length, and with a least depth of  $7\frac{1}{2}$  feet at low water, has been dredged through the bar into the river. It is marked on the starboard hand, on entering, by red beacons, with triangular top-marks, numbered from 1 to 6, inwards. At night, when the weather permits, small white lights are exhibited from Nos. 1, 3, 4, and 6 beacons. The river should only be entered by those having local knowledge or with a pilot.

The western edge of the bank fronting the river is marked by black beacons, as charted.

Beacons.—A beacon below the town consisting of a post about 10 feet high, painted red, surmounted by a conical topmark, erected in 6½ feet of water.

A beacon above the town consisting of a post about 10 feet high, painted red and black in horizontal bands, surmounted by a spherical topmark, erected in 10 feet of water.

Observatory Islet—Moles.—Observatory Islet is joined to the mainland by a reef of rocks over which a roadway has been built.

Small craft under 8 feet draft can find good shelter between the moles on the northern side of the islet.

There are also small piers on the island for coaling and other purposes, with depths of 8 feet alongside.

Light.—A fixed red light, elevated 19½ feet above high water and visible over an arc of 180° from 270° to 90°, on the southern point of Observatory Islet. This light is exhibited from a lantern on a small white masonry tower.

Supplies—Coal.—The Dock & Coal Co., established on Observatory Island afford a plentiful supply of all sorts of provisions from their warehouses, and requisites for shipping, including gasoline and coal; about 2,000 tons usually in stock.

Japanese and Nang son coal and briquettes from Hongai are kept in stock on the island.

Tugs and barges convey the coal to vessels in the anchorages.

Coal wharf, 345 feet in length, with 18 feet alongside at low water springs.

Small repairs to machinery are undertaken. Water both drinkable and otherwise is supplied. Mariners are cautioned against using the water from the streams for drinking purposes.

There is a light railroad between Observatory Island and Tourane. The town (Lat. 16° 4′ N., Long. 108° 12′ E.) of Tourane is situated on the western point of the river entrance, with a river frontage of about 2 miles; it is of some importance from being the

outlet from the coal mines of Nang son, 34 miles up river. The town possesses many public buildings, including the French residency, a military hospital, barracks, customhouse, public offices, and a number of well-appointed business establishments.

Trade.—The trade is considerable, and several steamers arrive from Hongkong every month, taking cargoes of sugar, rattans, bamboo, areca nut, silk, cassia, etc.; about a dozen enter the anchorages every month, in addition to a large number of junks.

Population about 6,900, of whom about 400 are Europeans.

Communication.—The branch vessel of the Messageries Maritimes calls at the anchorage here en route from Saigon to Tonkin and Hongkong, weekly, both going and returning. There is a good road to Hue, distant 68 miles. The railroad is completed from Tourane to Kwang tri, via Hue, 108.5 miles (1910).

A service of Chinese vessels assures regular communication with Hue when the weather permits. There is also boat communication by the lagoons.

Telegraph.—Tourane is connected with the Indo-China systems, and by cable with Amoy, China.

Climate.—The climate is healthful during the northeast monsoon period, November to March, when fresh breezes prevail. In February squalls from the northward occur, warning of which is given by the clouds collecting on the mountains to the northward. The remainder of the year is hot, and exposure to the sun should be avoided. In April and May the heat is stifling and calms prevail. At this time vessels should anchor well out in the bay away from the highland of the peninsula for the benefit of any light airs that may be experienced there, and to avoid the inshore anchorages which are there unheathful. In June land and sea breezes prevail. Rain is abundant at all times, especially at the beginning of the northeast monsoon, and it is a rare event if a typhoon is not experienced in the months of September or October.

The coast from Kulao Han, off the northern point of Tourane Bay, is rocky as far as the mouth of Fu Ya lagoon, marked by a pagoda, a distance of 6 miles, beyond which, to Chumai East Cape, it is low.

From Chumai West Cape the coast northwestward to Hon Tseu, a distance of about 140 miles, is known to the Anamites as the "iron coast;" it is a low sandy coast with sand hills in places, and backed at a considerable distance inland by high mountains, which are often, particularly in the northeast monsoon season, enveloped in fog. It offers an anchorage during the northeast monsoon period, but in the opposite season vessels may anchor anywhere in suitable depth; there are no known sunken dangers.

Chumai East Cape, situated 12 miles northwestward from Kulao Han, is the extremity of a steep and wooded peninsula, 820 feet high, united to the coast by an isthmus of sand.

Tua moi Bay lies between Chumai East and West Capes; the latter has two peaks, 1,640 and 2,000 feet in height. At the head of the bay is a nearly straight sandy shore, and the village of Chumai, which is visible from the offing; two small rivers discharge at the extremities of this beach, and fresh water can be procured at the eastern one.

Anchorage can be obtained in this bay under the eastern cape, in a depth of 7 fathoms, good holding ground, but when the northeast monsoon is fairly established it is hardly tenable.

Truoi lagoon.—Close westward of Chumai West Cape is Tu Hien Pass, the mouth of Truoi lagoon, which connects with Hue River, near its mouth, at Thuan An; at low water there is only 3 feet of water on the bar, and there is apparently but little more in the lagoon. West of the entrance are two hills; the one near the shore is 462 feet in height, the other is cone-shaped.

Hue River Approach.—Between Chumai West Cape and Hue River the coast is formed of sandhills, on the summits of which are villages surrounded by trees and cultivated fields; a peculiarity which it is said will prevent mistaking this part of the coast for that north of Hue, where the villages are on the sides and not on the summits of the sand hills.

The position of the river may be identified by Fort Nord, with a flagstaff, situated about 1.3 miles southeastward of the present newly formed entrance, and by the beacons for leading over Thuan An bar in the deepest water.

Anchorage, Thuan An (Lat. 16° 33′ N., Long. 107° 38′ E).— There is a good anchorage about 1.3 miles 16° from Fort Nord in a depth of about 10 fathoms, sand, but it is very insecure during the northeast monsoon. This anchorage is known as Thuan An, from the name of the settlement that formerly existed about 670 yards westward of the fort; see below. There are no dangers in the approach, but the lead should be kept going.

Hue River—Depths.—A complete change has recently (1907) occurred in the position of the Hue River approach, the former entrance having completely closed, and a new channel formed in the prolongation of the river; a similar occurrence took place some years ago, when the settlement Thuan An and the hospital were washed away, only Fort Nord remaining.

Hue River is about 200 yards wide in the entrance channel, with a depth of about 9 feet at low water, and is fronted by a bar of varying width and extending about a mile seaward, on which there is about the same depth, subject to great and frequent alteration. There is considerable sea on the bar during the northeast monsoon period, causing it to break, and it may be then considered impracticable.

During the southwest monsoon period, vessels of 12 feet draft can probably enter in charge of a pilot; the last of the flood is the proper 252 ANAM.

time to enter. Craft of 5 feet draft can go up to Hue, but the river is much encumbered with sand banks and fishing stakes. In February the river is at its lowest, and in November at its highest. The stream is strong both on the bar and in the river.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Hue River at noon; springs rise from 13 to 5 feet, depending on the declination of the moon.

Pilots—Bar signals.—The services of a native pilot can be obtained. He generally boards the craft outside the bar in the fine season (southwest monsoon); the pilots keep the best channel marked with bamboo poles.

The under-mentioned signals are made from Fort Nord flagstaff: Four balls indicate that the bar is in good condition; three balls that it is practicable; two balls that it is practicable with difficulty; one ball that it is dangerous.

Caution.—As the bar is constantly changing both in position and depth, no directions can be given for it; craft should not attempt to cross without the aid of a pilot, or recent local knowledge.

The city of Hue, or Hue Fu, situated about 12 miles from the mouth of the river, is the capital of the kingdom of Anam, and the residence of the king. It is composed of two parts, the inner and the outer town; in the latter the mass of the population resides; the inner town is a large square fortress, built after Vauban, according to the plans of the French engineers. The river incloses it on two sides, besides a canal 130 feet wide, by which it is entirely surrounded.

The principal Europeans are the French resident, his staff and guard, consisting of 300 French soldiers.

Population about 65,000, including 153 Europeans.

Communication.—Hue is connected with the telegraph and postal system of Indo China.

The mail steamers of the Messageries call at Tourane, to which place there is a railroad and a good road from Hue. The bar is usually impracticable in the northeast monsoon period.

Hospital.—There is a hospital at Hue, with 130 beds.

Weather—Climate.—At Hue the maximum temperature in summer is about 101°, and the minimum during winter 57°.

The rain commences in May and continues till August, September, or October. The heat during summer is often very trying and the cold during December, January, and February is very keen, disagreeable, and accompanied by fogs. September, October, and November are mild. The variations of temperature are very sudden.

Coast.—The coast northwestward of Hue to Cape Lay, a distance of about 45 miles, is a sandy plain with fishing villages here and there on the coast, as before stated; the only distinguishing marks are the mountains in the interior, some 25 miles distant, the

principal of which is Double Peak, 5,940 feet in height, often hidden in the clouds or by haze. Midi Peak, 2,297 feet in height, lies seaward of it at about 13 miles from the coast, and nearer Cape Lay about 15 miles from the coast is Cachalot Peak, about 2,300 feet in height, with the Tiger's Tooth, 4,260 feet in height, about 10 miles within it.

There are no known dangers off the coast, excepting a patch of 43 fathoms at 2.5 miles offshore and 6 miles 151° from Cape Lay, so that the land can be approached by the lead.

Palms River, or Kua Viet enters the sea at about 13 miles southward of Cape Lay.

The chart shows a depth of about 10 feet on the bar at low water, which extends about 1,400 yards off, probably subject to change. In 1902, craft of 13 feet could enter during the fine weather (southwest monsoon) period. Its entrance is often marked by breakers.

Within the entrance the river widens and has depths of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 5 fathoms up to the pagoda on southern side,  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the entrance. Above this it is again barred and probably only available by boats. It leads to Kuang Tri, chief town of an important province, and from which there is railroad communication with Saigon. Hue can be reached in sampans by the inland waterways from this river.

Kua Tung enters the sea 4.5 miles southward of Cape Lay. It may be entered at high water during the southwest monsoon period by craft drawing 6 feet water; it breaks at times.

On the northern side of the entrance, on a wooded slope, is the sanatorium, a house of European construction, with a village near it. Farther up river is the church of Di Loan, under the Bishopric of Hue; it also forms an excellent landmark. Local supplies are procurable through the missionaries.

## CHAPTER VI.

## TONKIN GULF.

## CAPE LAY TO CAPE KAMI.

General remarks—Tonkin Gulf is the great bight comprised between the parallels of Lat. 17° and 22° N., the coast of Tonkin on the west and the peninsula of Lei chau and the island of Hainan on the east. The entrance between Cape Lay and the southwestern part of Hainan is about 120 miles wide, which is the general width of the Gulf itself. Several islands lie contiguous to the western shore, and numerous small islands and shoals at its head. The depths are from 45 to 40 fathoms in the middle of the Gulf, decreasing toward either shore; the bottom is generally soft and suitable for anchorage.

Fishing stakes, consisting of several long poles weighted at the bottom with large stones, are met with occasionally from 25 to 30 miles from the land.

Vigias.—On the shores of the Gulf and of Hainan Island large patches of muddy water resembling banks are seen at times, but on examination deep water is almost invariably obtained.

Tides.—The tides on the coast of Tonkin are subject to a large diurnal inequality, one high and one low water generally occurring in the 24 hours. At springs the high tide occurs in the evening in the summer and in the morning in winter, with a rise of about 10 feet. On the coast between Hon Tsu and Hon Me, 80 miles to the northward, the times and heights are similar to those at Hon Me, Bien Shon, and Kua Hoi, or 1h. 30m. earlier than Do Son at springs, and 3 hours earlier at neaps, the times of low water are the same as at Do Son. See Do Son tides, page 273. The tidal wave comes from the southward.

Weather.—The northeast monsoon blows strong on this coast, with long periods of calms, and in general the weather is hazy and the mountains hidden by clouds.

Cape Lay (Lat. 17° 05′ 30″ N., Long., 107° 06′ 00″ E.), is rocky, about 70 to 100 feet high, covered with vegetation, and has a cluster of rocks projecting from it. The southern side of the cape is bold, and in a small creek is a fishing village named Ving Banh. The church of Di Loan, in Kua Trung, to the westward, is a good mark for vessels in the neighborhood, as before mentioned. On the northern side of the cape are red and yellow cliffs, and some rocks about ½ mile

from the shore; westward of these cliffs is a large, bare sandhill. Cape Lay is the only rocky projection between Chumai Capes and Da Nhai Point, on the parallel of 17° 40′ N., a distance of about 114 miles.

Tiger Island, distant about 13 miles east-northeastward from Cape Lay, is about a mile in extent, 230 feet in height, and visible in clear weather at a distance of 20 miles. The island is fringed with rocks, principally on its northern and western sides, where the ground slopes toward the sea; the southern point is bold and has a large detached rock. The bottom around the island is rocky and uneven. The channel which separates it from the coast is clear, with from 17 to 23 fathoms water; along the coast at a distance of about 3 miles there are depths of 12 to 16 fathoms, blue mud, or mud and sand.

The coast from Cape Lay continues in a northwesterly direction for 37 miles to Kua Dong Hoi, and is sandy and low, with villages and a few palms in places.

A bank of 8 to 9 fathoms is charted as extending about 4 miles offshore at 9 miles northwestward of Cape Lay.

Aspect.—When abreast of Tiger Island during fine weather, the whole range of mountains from Double Peak to the southward to the peaks in the neighborhood of Kua Dong Hoi can be seen. The most conspicuous of the range is a high peak 3,675 feet high, lying 25 miles west-southwestward of Cape Lay, and more to the southward a jagged mountain named Tiger's Tooth.

A little southward of the Dong Hoi the mountains, which are wooded, approach nearer the coast, with several isolated and rugged summits, namely, the North and South Cones, the Three Summits, and the Nose, 2,362 feet in height; these form an amphitheater in the neighborhood of the river. More inland may be seen the jagged peaks of another range, with the Great Summit, flat-topped, and 5,446 feet in height. The mountain chain continues northward of the Dong Hoi, gradually receding from the coast and becoming lower.

Kua Dong Hoi (Lat. 17° 30′ N., Long. 106° 36′ E.).—This river debouches at 37 miles northwestward of Cape Lay, and the town of Dong Hoi, chief town of the Province of Kuang Binh, is situated on its left or western bank.

The church of Dong Hoi, with two square towers, rises above the sandhills, and is an excellent mark from the offing. On a nearer approach the chapel belfries, on the right bank, and the old fort, on the left bank seaward of it, and the red-roofed houses of the town will be seen.

Bar.—The river is fronted by shallow water to the distance of ½ mile, and a rocky ledge, partly dry at low water, extends ½ mile off the northern point.

In 1902 there was a depth of 10½ feet at low water over the bar, by a winding channel, marked by buoys not to be depended on; the chart shows a patch of 3 feet near the center. It should not be attempted without local knowledge. Within the bar there are low water depths of about 2½ fathoms abreast the town, as far up as the church and chapel, between which there is anchorage in about 2 fathoms.

The bar is probably but rarely available during the northeast monsoon season. There is good anchorage off it in the fine weather or southwest monsoon season.

The river is navigable for small craft for about 12 miles, and for boats to the foot of the mountains.

Town.—Around the residency are various public offices. The town is connected with the telegraph system of Indo China.

Railroad.—A railroad is under construction which will connect Dong Hoi with Tourane and Kin Hon to the southward and with Hanoi to the northward.

The coast from Kua Dong Hoi trends northwestward about 12 miles to Da Nhai Point, and is sandy with low cliffs in places; it is backed by sandhills.

A rock which dries 6 feet lies 2 miles northward of the mouth of Kua Dong Hoi, abreast the first of these cliffs. At 2 miles farther is another cliff of red color, then a wooded mound, with a pagoda, fronted by a rocky point. The lower slopes of the mountains, and the plain behind this part of the coast, are cultivated, and the summits are wooded.

Kua Li Hoa.—At about 10 miles northwestward of Kua Dong Hoi is the mouth of the Li Hoa, with the village of same name on its northern point, a center for the curing of fish.

The bar has a depth of about 5 feet at high water, and is not practicable for anything but boats; the fishermen open the channel after the northeast monsoon by dredging.

Within the bar there are low water depths of about 9 feet off the village; the river is shallow above and rocky in places.

Da Nhai Point (Lat. 17° 40′ 00″ N., Long. 106° 29′ 30″ E.), lying 1 mile northward of Li Hoa, has two rocky points edged with sand; a white pagoda lies at the foot of the northern. The mountains approach the coast here and with the point from a promontory, rendering it easily recognized.

The coast from Da Nhai to Vung Chua is lined with sandhills, and borders a large plain.

Song Giang, 2 miles northward of Da Nhai Point, is fronted by a bar which is steep-to to the distance of 1,350 yards. Shallow water extends 1,200 yards off the northern point, and about half that distance off the southern point, breaking during strong winds. A patch of 1 fathom lies on the southern side of the fairway.

In 1902 there was a depth at high water of 13 feet on the bar, and it presented no difficulty in the southwest monsoon period. It should not be entered, however, without local knowledge, being subject to change. The chart shows buoys, but they are not to be depended on.

There are depths of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to 6 fathoms at the anchorage in the river off the village on the northern shore.

Mi Hoa Village, on the left bank, was the former residence of the French bishop; fowls, pigs, fish, and other local produce are obtainable. Kuang Khe Village, on the right bank, is important as a place where junks are built from trees floated down the river from the mountains inland. The river continues a westerly course, and is fairly deep to the Anamite Mountains.

The coast from Song Giang to Kua Rone is low and sandy; within is a vast plain, cultivated and inhabited. Marble mount is an isolated peak on the plain, within which are the mountains in the distance.

Kua Rone is situated near the northern extremity of the sandy shore at about 5 miles southwest of Vung Chua. It may be recognized by a pagoda and some houses. Both points of the entrance are foul, as charted; the channel is only available for junks at high water, and is subject to change. The tidal stream runs strong but the sea is broken by the northern point reef; it is probably only practicable in the fine season.

Two villages are situated on the southern bank, Kam Giang and Rone; the former is nearer the mouth. It is a center of a considerable salt industry. The Mandarin Road and the telegraph line from Hue to Hanoi, etc., pass through Rone, but there is no telegraph office.

Outer danger.—A rocky flat extends 2 miles eastward of Kua Rone, at which distance there is a coral reef, which dries 3 feet at low water; this rocky flat is connected with Hon Tu ut Reef, to the northward, all of which should be given a wide berth.

Cape Vung Chua (Lat. 17° 57′ N., Long. 106° 29′ E.), easily known by its large red spots, is formed of elevated land, the two wooded summits of which each attain a height of about 3,380 feet at 6 and 10 miles within it; these and other mountain tops inland form excellent marks of recognition.

Islets.—There are two islands near the cape, forming the anchorage of Vung Chua; Hon La, the eastern of these two islands, is 384 feet high; Hon Kau, between it and the cape, is smaller. Between these there is a narrow winding channel, with 5 fathoms water, and a narrow and shallower passage between Hon Kau and the cape.

Hon Tu ut, or Boissieux Island, to the southwestward, has two peaks; on its western side is a sunken reef from which a ridge, with from 1 to 2½ fathoms over it, connects the island with the reef off

Kua Rone. Junks find shelter between it and the land, and by an inshore shallow channel to Kua Rone.

The anchorage of Vung Chua, the only place along this coast where protection can be obtained during the northeast monsoon, affords good holding ground, but the swell comes in; the best entrance is southward and westward of Hon La. A small vessel can anchor in a depth of 3 to 5 fathoms, muddy bottom, under shelter of the islands, with the summit of Hon Tseu seen between the cape and Hon Kau, bearing 242°. Hon Dio should be kept open by vessels of moderate or deep draft. Le Bourayne anchored in 10 fathoms, mud, with the Pap southwestward of Hon Tu ut, 232°, and the point westward of Hon Kau, 350°.

There is a fishing village surrounded by verdure at the head of the bay, which is bordered by a sandy beach. There is a road near the beach to Rone.

Doubtful Shoal.—A shoal of 10 fathoms, the position and even the existence of which is doubtful, is charted in about Lat. 17° 51′ N., Long. 107° 2′ E. It was unsuccessfully searched for in 1888, and is not shown on French charts.

Hon Dio, or South Watcher, situated 9 miles 103° from Cape Vung Chua, is a rugged rock, 272 feet high, and steep-to; there is a depth of 17 fathoms at less than 200 yards from its western side, decreasing to 8 or 9 fathoms near the islands off the cape.

The coast northward from Cape Vung Chua is rocky. One mile north of the point with a pagoda, abreast Hon Kau, is a projecting point 1,000 feet in height, and about 2 or 3 miles northwestward of this are two low points; thence a sandy coast trends northnorthwestward 6 miles, to the promontory of Mui Duong, the summit of which is 1,148 feet high. On the sandy coast mentioned are several isolated clumps of trees, and at 3 miles southward of Mui Duong is the village of Eo.

Mui Duong (Lat. 18° 7′ N., Long. 106° 25′ E.) is steep-to and rocky, rising to a height of 574 feet immediately over it, and to 1,148 feet, in Vung Han Hill, 3.5 miles to the southwestward, and is a prominent object. There is but little vegetation on the cape.

Hon Tseu or Hon Duong, <sup>2</sup> mile in length east and west, and wooded, lies 1.5 miles southeast of Mui Duong. Seen from the eastward it appears like three pointed hummocks, with a perpendicular cliff toward the north, and sloping to the southwestward. Its eastern and highest peak is 476 feet in height.

A reef, which partly dries, extends 800 yards from its southeast point; and Hamelin Reef, about 100 yards wide, with 6 feet least water, and steep-to on its northern and southern sides, extends 500 yards west-southwestward from its western extremity.

The channel which separates Hon Tseu from the coast has uneven bottom, and the sea has been seen to break there.

Anchorage.—There is good anchorage, in a depth of 6 fathoms, mud, ½ mile south of Hon Tseu, which is fairly steep-to. The island and the reefs which project from its extremities shelter this anchorage, but in the northeast monsoon the swell would be considerable.

Hon Chim, 112 feet high, is a rocky islet, with a number of pointed peaks, lying 1.5 miles east-northeastward of Hon Tseu, with a depth of 10 fathoms between.

Aspect.—The coast between Cape Mui Duong and Hon Ne, a distance of 120 miles, forms a regular curve, composed in general of sandy plains backed in the interior by high ranges of mountains. These mountains, which touch the coast at Cape Vung Chua, curve westward and thence northward, somewhat similar to the curve of the coast. The most conspicuous peak is Mount Borie, in Lat. 18° 10′ N., 8,956 feet in height, but being 35 miles from the coast, is from its great elevation often obscured. Seen from the northward, it presents a remarkable double summit. There are isolated peaks on the plains near the coast forming good landmarks for vessels in the offing.

Vung Han Bay is sheltered from easterly and southerly winds by Mui Duong Cape, but is open to those from northeast to west, and is therefore only available during the southwest monsoon period, but there is some shelter in the northeast monsoon period for very small craft, close under a rocky projection of the cape, on the eastern side of the bay.

Vessels can approach the low and sandy shore at its head according to draft. At the southwestern corner of the bay is a large village backed by Vung Han, a conical peak. The country around is mountainous, and seems to be thinly inhabited.

Kua Kau.—To the westward, and separated from Vung Han Bay by a point from 500 to 650 feet in height, is the Kua Kau, a small river with a bar, which dries at low water. Within is a large lagoon with a village at its head.

Canal.—In the Kua Kau is the entrance to the canal which skirts the shore of the Gulf as far as the Song Ka River, but it is only navigable for native boats, being dry in certain places at times. It has been proposed to deepen it.

The coast—Aspect.—The coast from Vung Han trends northwestward, and is composed of sand occasionally interrupted by isolated mountains, the southernmost of which, named the Paps, in Lat. 18° 09′ N., Long. 106° 16′ E., is easily distinguished by its two peaks, 1,444 feet high. A third, but lower peak, lies a little southeastward of the others, visible between the bearings of about 204°

and 272°, whence the Anamite name of Rubado, or Three Peaks. The two high peaks are in line when bearing 283°.

A plain extends from the Paps to the foot of the mountains in the interior; it appears well cultivated and covered with hamlets. Further to the northwestward the coast hills increase in height, and are bold to seaward as far as Ru Nuong, a regular cone, 1,492 feet in height, which presents a bold cliff to seaward, and forms a conspicuous landmark for this neighborhood.

There are no dangers beyond the 3-fathom curve, excepting the doubtful breaker referred to with Hon Nuong, below. At 2 to 4 miles from the shore are depths of 9 to 13 fathoms, over a bottom of mud and sand.

Hon Nuong, or North Watcher (Lat. 18° 18′ N., Long. 106° 09′ E.) is an islet 121 feet in height lying 2.5 miles off Ru Nuong cliffs. It is precipitous, and has depths of 8 to 11 fathoms around. To the eastward is a ridge of rocks 300 yards in extent, east and west, and 26 feet in height; a short distance southeast of them the sea has been seen to break.

Inshore channel.—In the channels which separates Hon Nuong from the 5-fathom curve fronting the coast there are dpeths of 6 to 8 fathoms.

Breakers were reported in 1860, 148° distant about 2 miles from Hon Nuong; position approximate.

Kua Nuong, situated at the foot of the western extremity of Ru Nuong cliffs, has a very narrow entrance blocked by a bar with only a depth of 1 foot on it at low water. At 1 mile 351° from this entrance is a group of rocks from 16 to 20 feet high, and about ½ mile in extent, with sunken rocks extending a short distance around them; these afford partial shelter to small craft during northerly winds in about 3 fathoms, with the eastern large rock bearing 13° about 600 yards and Mount Besson 280°; the holding ground is not good.

A patch of 2 fathoms lies 58° about 1 mile from the eastern point of the entrance to the river.

Anchorage may be taken seaward of these dangers in a depth of 5 to 6 fathoms during the southwest monsoon.

On the coast, at 2 miles westward of the entrance, is Mount Besson, 361 feet in height, with a pagoda on its eastern side; westward of the mount is a hill 167 feet in height.

Coast—Mai Shott.—Northwestward of Mount Besson the coast is low and sandy, without hills and bare of vegetation, for a distance of 12 miles, to Ru Shott; this mount, 1,273 feet in height, is the summit of a ridge terminating 2 miles to the northward in Mai Shott, which is about 328 feet in height, bold, and only connected with the mainland by a very narrow isthmus. A rock dries 5 feet in a short distance northward of it.

Kua Shott lies close westward of the high ridge of Ru Shott, between it and the sandy tongue which extends 2 miles southwestward of Kindoy Hill, 722 feet in height; a sandy spit dries out from Kindoy village, reducing the entrance to 400 yards or less in width.

There is a depth of 6 feet on the bar at low water; inside the water is deeper, affording shelter for such small craft as can pass the bar; the anchorage is narrow.

There are several large villages on the western bank; one, Kindoy, is a missionary station.

Coast—Nui Ong.—Between Kua Shott and Kua Hoi the depths decrease gradually toward the shore, and there are no known sunken dangers.

To the northwestward of Kua Shott in Nui Ong, 2,290 feet in height, the most prominent point on this coast, with four peaks of nearly equal height.

Hon Matt (Lat. 18° 48' N., Long. 105° 56' E.), an islet situated 19 miles northward of Kua Shott, and about 10 miles from the coast, is 1 mile in length, 679 feet in height, and precipitous on all sides except the southern; it is a good landmark.

Rocks.—At 200 yards southward of its southeastern extremity is a rock, awash at low water. A rock, with 6 feet water, and depths of 11 to 12 fathoms around, lies 320°, distant 1.5 miles from the summit of Hon Matt.

Hon Truan, 144 feet in height, is the eastern and highest of the rocks situated 1,600 yards eastward of the southeastern end of Hon Matt.

A small vessel could obtain shelter in the northeast monsoon under Hon Matt in depths of 15 fathoms.

Islets.—There are two islets or rocks, between Hon Matt and the Kua Hoi; the southern rock, distant about 7 miles, southwestward of Hon Matt, is 39 feet high, with some detached rocks off its western end; the other, at about 1.3 miles north-northwestward of the southern rock, is low and flat. In the middle of the channel between them and Hon Matt the depth is from 9 to 10 fathoms.

Kua Hoi—Depths (Lat. 18° 45′ N., Long. 105° 46′ E.).—The Kua Hoi is considered next in importance only to the Song Ka or Red River of those that discharge into the Gulf. It takes its rise in some of the mountains to the southward, but its upper part is so much encumbered with rocks as to be unnavigable.

Vessels able to cross the bar can ascend to Bin Tui, 10 miles up, and the limit practically of navigation.

During high river the French gunboat Estoc, of 4½ feet draft, ascended a considerable distance.

The entrance points are both low and sandy; on the southern one is a pagoda, and on the other a small fort. There is a customhouse about 2 miles above the fort.

Digitized by Google

The bar, which is a shifting one, subject to considerable alteration, extends a mile or more seaward of the southern point of the entrance, and may usually be crossed at high water by vessels under 10 feet draft. At exceptionally high tides, during high river, it may be available for vessels of 15 feet draft.

Buoyage—Directions.—The channel over the bar into the river is subject to frequent and considerable changes; the stakes marking it are shifted, withdrawn, or added to as may be necessary in consequence of any alteration in the passage.

A red spindle buoy, 16 feet in height, is moored in 4½ fathoms off the entrance; within it the channel is marked by stakes.

Vessels should only enter with local knowledge.

Anchorage may be obtained inside the bar under the fort in 3 to 3½ fathoms, mud bottom; the tidal stream is very strong here at springs.

At 3 miles above the customhouse, on the western bank, is a creek with a pagoda on its southern point, and fronted by a bank. Abreast, near the opposite, or eastern, bank, is a rock which dries half a foot, a black conical buoy is placed 60 yards westward of it; this is the only danger. There is a straight channel between the buoy and the west bank.

There is anchorage off Bin Tui in about 3 fathoms, avoiding a position off the fort, as there is a rock with 1 fathom water abreast it near the opposite shore.

Bin Tui is of some commercial importance; the Mandarin Road between Hue and Hanoi passes through it and across the river. It is one hour's walk from Vinh, the capital of the Province of Nge An, and situated at the foot of the mountains; the hill over it is surmounted by a fort. It is connected with the telegraph systems.

Hon Nieu—Anchorage (Lat. 18° 48′ N., Long. 105° 45′ E.).—Hon Nieu, 486 feet in height, at 2.5 miles northward of the Kua Hoi entrance, consists of two hills separated by a neck of low land, so that from a distance, when bearing about 182° it will appear like two islands. There is good anchorage close under its western end in 5 fathoms, with shelter from northeast winds, much frequented by junks and vessels that can not enter Kua Hoi. In the passage between the island and coast there is a depth of 3 to 5 fathoms.

Rocks.—A rock, which covers at high water springs, lies about 1.5 miles 24° from the northeastern point of Hon Nieu; breakers have also been observed between this rock and Hon Nieu, about 13°, distant 1,400 yards from the northeastern point of the island.

A cluster of rocks, awash at half tide, lies about 2.5 miles 349° from Hon Nieu, and 100°, distant 3 miles from Cape St. Anne.

Vessels proceeding to Hon Nieu anchorage should pass southward of the island.

Tides.—See page 273.

Coast—Cape St. Anne is bold, and situated 5 miles northward of the Kua Hoi. The sandy plain through which the Song Hoi flows is terminated by a mountain chain of which Nui Yen, 1,414 feet in height, is the summit, situated about 2.5 miles from the coast northwestward of Cape St. Anne.

Kua Lo discharges at 1 mile southward of Cape St. Anne, and is only practicable for native boats. It connects with the Song Hoi at Bin Tui by a canal or creek leading past Vinh, the capital of the Province, previously referred to.

Rocks.—The northern point of the entrance is foul to the distance of nearly a mile, with one or more rocks dry at low water; the southern point is foul to about ½ mile. At ½ mile southward of the southern point is a remarkable high black rock attached to the shore, named Kau Lo Rock.

From Cape St. Anne the coast is bold, and backed by hills for a distance of 5 miles, to Brandon Bay, where it is again low.

Brandon Bay, northward of Cape St. Anne, is about 15 miles wide with depths decreasing gradually toward the shore; the 3-fathoms edge of the bank fronting its head is 2 miles off. The bay affords but little shelter, as it is open to the northeastward, and during the southwest monsoon the wind blows in from the southeastward.

The Kua Vann discharges near the center of the bay, but it is only available for native boats. A considerable number of fishing boats may be seen entering or leaving toward high water, and they will be met with from 10 to 15 miles offshore during the fine season, also the fishing stakes are met with many miles offshore.

The mountains are distant from the head of the bay, and there are no landmarks near the coast other than an isolated peak of regular form, named the Pate.

A sunken rock lies nearly a mile offshore at about 2 miles southwest of Lakh Kuen entrance, and the shore between is bordered by rocks.

Eastward of the entrance the shore is free from dangers.

Lakh Kuen or Mahn Son River discharges into the northern end of Brandon Bay, near Cape Falaise; it is about 400 yards wide in the entrance, but Kon Cho or Dog Rock, situated nearly 200 yards from the western shore, with which it is connected by a bank, reduces the breadth to 200 yards. There is a depth of 4½ feet on the bar at low water, which extends about ½ mile seaward of the eastern point of the entrance, and being somewhat protected from the northeast monsoon by the formation of the coast, is often practicable when the bars of other rivers are not.

An artificial barrier, nearly dry at low water, extends from a little to the north of Dog Rock, toward the opposite point of the river, narrowing the channel to about 45 yards.



The anchorage within, abreast Mahn Son, is perfectly sheltered, and has about 1 fathom least water; the depths increase, about 1 mile up, to 2 to 4 fathoms in places.

Cape Falaise, the northern extremity of Brandon Bay, is a bold point 561 feet in height, with a white stripe on its northern face.

At 4 miles northward of the cape are two conspicuous rocks close to the shore, or about midway in the bay lying between Cape Falaise and Kua Trapp. Hon Tru, the northern, is the higher; rocks front the shore in places.

Kua Trapp, close westward of Cape Buton, has a large estuary, at the head of which is a village with a pagoda surrounded by trees. At low water the estuary almost dries, but there is a channel on the eastern side used by fishing boats.

Coast—Aspect.—North of Cape Buton the coast is bordered by a chain of hills attaining a height of 1,430 feet, in Nui Tiep, under which is Bien Shon and the Hon Me group.

Bien Shon Island, separated from the coast by a channel 600 yards wide, is 2 miles in length north and south, by ½ mile in breadth, and 557 feet in height at its northern end, decreasing toward the southward. There is a remarkable vertical rock nearly detached from its southern extremity.

Westward of its northern extremity is a bay, which affords anchorage for small craft. It is frequented by Chinese junks in the fine season, but is not tenable during the northeast monsoon period. The depths are said to have decreased, there being only 10 feet on the line joining the points of the bay.

The principal village on the island is situated on the northwestern side, and affords supplies of fresh provisions and water.

Light (Lat. 19° 20′ N., Long. 105° 47′ E.).—From a white house situated on a hill on the eastern side of Bien Shon Bay, a fixed white light is exhibited from a white house at an elevation of 82 feet above high water, and 16 feet above the ground, visible 9 miles, when bearing from 0°, through west and south, to 90°.

Shoals.—There is a patch of 2 fathoms distant 800 yards from the eastern side of Bien Shon, and 1 mile from its northern point.

Extending some distance from the southern point of the island is a bank, which breaks, and 670 yards southward of the same point is a rock, dry at low water.

Hien Hoa.—On the coast abreast Bien Shon is the mouth of the Hien Hoa, which dries.

Inner channel.—The channel between Bien Shon and the coast is reduced to less than 100 yards in width in places by the bank extending from the mangroves on the mainland. This channel affords shelter for junks and other craft of light draft (from 8 to 13 feet, according to whether it is springs or neaps) entering from the north-

ward. There is a bar with 6 feet water over it, about 800 yards southward of the western point of the northern bay of Bien Shon, off which point, at the distance of 200 yards, is a rock which dries 5 feet, generally marked by a stake. Junk Point, nearly under the summit of the island, in line with Finger Point, on the southwestern side of the island, bearing 165°, leads in over the bar, having approached this leading mark from the northeastward with the summit of Hon Me open of the northern point of Bien Shon. Junk Point is steep-to. Here small craft may anchor or proceed farther southward to abreast the village.

The southern entrance appears to be impracticable.

Hon Me (Lat. 19° 22′ N., Long. 105° 54′ E.).—This group is known by the name of Sapatma by the Chinese, and also by the inhabitants of the coast, who often adopt the Chinese names in preference to the Anamite. They are nearly all precipitous.

Hon Me, or Van Shon, distant 7 miles from the coast, the most important and northernmost of the group, has several wooded peaks, the westernmost being 773 feet in height. It is fairly steep-to on its northern and eastern sides, with depths of 11 fathoms at a short distance; there is fairly good anchorage on its southwestern side, in a depth of 4 to 4½ fathoms, between Hon Vat and Hon Vong; and there is said to be anchorage between Hon Vong or Vang and the southwestern coast of Hon Me, in 8 to 10 fathoms, sheltered from northeast winds.

Hon Bong, the westernmost island, which is flat and precipitous, has rocks extending 800 yards westward of it. A ridge with less than 5 fathoms extends about 1,400 yards southwestward of Hon Gok, situated 600 yards southeastward of Hon Bong, and about 1 mile northwestward of Hon Dot; the latter is the highest of these smaller islets, and is cone shaped. Hon Neu lies about 1.5 miles southward of Hon Dot.

Nui Kong Peak in line with Cape Bang, leads between Bien Shon and the group, clear of danger.

The coast from abreast Bien Shon Island trends northward 6 miles to Kua Bang, is composed of sand, and fronted by a bank to the distance of a mile or more. The northern point of the entrance, Cape Bang, 295 feet in height, has a peak in the shape of a finger above the sandhills.

Kua Bang has a very narrow entrance, and is only accessible to boats. Within are several villages, the most important of which is Lang Diann, a Christian village; the tower of the church is visible over the trees, in the offing.

Northward of Cape Bang is a sandy plain, which continues as far as Cape Kiao. At 3 miles northward of Cape Bang, within the 3-fathoms curve, are two rocky heads; the outer, at ½ mile offshore, dries 4 feet.

Aspect.—A range of hills backs the coast, the southern peak of which is Nui Tu vi, 1,854 feet in height, and cone-shaped; Nui Diaz, 1,696 feet, in Lat. 19°29' N., Long. 105°41' E., is the northern highest peak; these two serve to identify the neighborhood. At Nui Diaz the range turns abruptly to the west; here the plain of Than Hoa commences, through which run two rivers, the Lakh Yapp and the Song Ma, besides numerous canals.

Lakh Yapp or Kua Mom has a depth of 4 feet on its bar at low water springs; vessels of less than 10 feet draft can usually enter at high water, but the banks break on both sides of the passage, which is about 200 yards in breadth. There is good anchorage within for such craft as can cross the bar in the bend near the southern point; farther up a bank nearly bars the river, but there is a channel near the left bank with a depth of 6 to 10 feet. The river turns sharply northward within the bar for about 2 miles, to the foot of Nui Voh Hill, which is 426 feet in height and a good landmark, the land all around being low and sandy.

The villages of Ko Kheann and Ko Nian are situated on either side within the entrance.

Cape Kiao or Nui Gam (Lat. 19° 43′ N., Long. 105° 52′ E.) is somewhat conspicuous, being about 150 feet in height, and with a pagoda on its northern side visible from the offing. There is a sandy bight close under it on either side, dry at low water, but affording good landing at high water according to the prevailing monsoon.

Lakh Kiao or Song Ma is next in importance to the Kua Hoi of those southward of the delta of the Song Ka. It has two entrances, separated by a bank which breaks at low water. The deepest channel over the bar, which is subject to change, has a depth of about 5 feet at low water at times. In 1903 the minimum depth was 2 feet. About 8 miles above the entrance is the town of Than Hoa, which is the chief town of the Province, the most important between Hue and Hanoi.

The only conspicuous hill is La Dent, some 15 miles inland, which rises from the plain around. The plain near the coast is cultivated and wooded, with numerous villages scattered about it.

Beacon and buoys.—On the northern entrance point there is an iron pyramidal beacon, about 30 feet high, painted red, erected to identify the locality, the coast being devoid of landmarks.

In the approach is a black buoy, with cylindrical topmark. The bar is subject to considerable change, and any buoys moored on it are moved as required to mark the channel.

Lakh Tran (Lat. 19° 53′ N., Long. 105° 55′ E.).—At about 6 miles northward of Lakh Kiao, is a remarkably steep and isolated hill, 689 feet in height, forming the southern side of the entrance to Lakh Tran. The river communicates with Lakh Kiao, in the interior, and

is accessible by vessels under 11 feet draft at high water, but is liable to change, like the others on this coast. The entrance is between the high southern point and the islet, 88 feet in height, at 200 yards off it. There is only a boat passage northward of the islet.

The points on either side of the entrance are foul to the distance of 50 yards; a rock, with 2 feet water, near the left or north bank is marked by a red buoy, in 6 feet water. In the fairway there is a depth of about 5 feet at low water, and the course in is 341°, with the summit of an isolated cone hill, 360 feet high, kept midway between the high land and the islet. When abreast, the point of the high land haul to 294°, and gradually 249° to the anchorage off the village on the southern shore, in 9 to 10 feet. There is a rock nearly dry at low water at about 50 yards southward of the southern point of the anchorage.

This river can be easily entered during the northeast monsoon period, which gives it an advantage over other rivers of greater depth, which are often then not practicable. Without local knowledge a pilot is necessary, the entrance being subject to change.

The village of Truong Xo is on the northern shore.

Outer anchorage.—There is an islet, 19 feet high, about 1 mile eastward of the entrance to the river, southward of which there is anchorage in a depth of about 4 fathoms.

Tides.—On the coast between Hon Tseu and Hon Ne the tides present the same characteristics as those farther north, except that the range is about 1 foot less. The heights and times of the tides are nearly the same along this coast, being from 3h. to 3h. 30m. at full and change, with a rise of about 9 feet, or from 1½ to 2 hours in advance of Do Son; at neaps the tides are 3 hours earlier than at Do Son.

Winds.—Between Lat. 18° and 20° N. the northeast monsoon is not so strong as further south, and there are often periods of calm. In general the atmosphere is misty, and the mountains inland are hidden during this monsoon. The southwest monsoon blows along the coast from southeast or south-southeast; it is not very fresh as a rule, and does not cause any sea on the bars of the rivers. The mornings are calm, the wind freshens about noon, and continues so until about 4 p.m.; it dies away toward sunset.

Hon Ne, 282 feet high, lying about 3 miles northeast of the entrance to Lakh Tran, affords a temporary shelter from northerly winds in about 6 fathoms water; it lies off the edge of the shallow water fronting the Kua Dai.

Delta of the Song Ka—General remarks.—About 7 miles northward of Hon Ne is the southern extremity of a chain of serrated mountains, northeastward of which the country for a considerable distance inland is entirely flat, forming the delta and the valley of the Song Ka; nothing is to be seen from the offing but a low shore,

relieved at a distance by trees which here and there appear to rise out of the sea.

The mouths of the several branches of the Song Ka and the Thai Binh form a great delta between the parallels of Lat. 20° N. and 20° 50′ N.; and the several branches communicate with each other, partly by natural means and partly by canals.

Fronting the several mouths are extensive shallow banks; the 5-fathoms curve in 1897, off the Ba Lakh Dong, being as much as 15 miles southeastward of the entrance points. On approaching the delta the lead should be constantly used, and none of the mouths should be attempted without a pilot.

The Song Ka or Red River, which has its source in the center of the table-land of Yunnan, flows through Hanoi and waters the whole of the valley of Tonkin. Its principal tributaries are: On the right bank, the Black River, which also comes from Yunnan, and joins the Song Ka near Hung Hao; on the left, the Bo De or Clear River, which comes from the southeastern corner of Yunnan and empties itself into the Song Ka above Song tai. Some miles above Hanoi the main river separates, forming two branches, the southern being named Dai; the northern branch is again divided into several others, of which the principal are the Kua Lakh, the Kua Ha lan, the Kua Ba Lakh Dong, and the Kua Trali. The Song Ka is also joined to the Dai by several canals, two of the principal being the Fu li and the Nam Dinh.

Steamers of very light draft run on the Song Ka as far as Laokai, near the Yunnan frontier, and a considerable transit trade is developing.

Navigable depths.—Vessels of about 9 feet draft can navigate to Hanoi by the Kua Dai, which has a depth of 10 feet on its bar at high-water springs; at low water they can not get beyond the Fuli Canal. The Trali mouth is more accessible, but at some distance up it is also barred, there being only water enough for boats. The other mouths are considered impracticable.

From December to May the Song Ka is at its lowest. About May the melting of the snows in Upper Tonkin and Yunnan causes the river to rise rapidly, frequently washing away the banks. The rise at Hanoi at high river is from 16 to 20 feet.

Mouths of the Song Ka—Kua Dai route to Hanoi.—The Kua Dai is fronted by sandbanks which dry in places from 1 to 3 feet to the distance of 7.5 miles southward of the entrance, or to about the parallel of Hon Ne. There is a narrow gutter through these banks, just dry in places at low-water springs, which will give a depth of about 10 feet at high-water springs.

Immediately within the river there is deep water, and it is possible for a small craft, with the aid of a pilot, to reach Hanoi, either by the Fu li Canal or that of Nam Dinh, at high water, as above mentioned.

HANOI. 269

Tides.—The time and rise of tide is about the same as at Do Son. The tides are felt some miles above Hanoi.

Buoyage.—A black spindle buoy, with cylindrical topmark, No. 1, is moored in 3½ fathoms water (1911), off the bar, at about 8.5 miles 189° from the mouth of the river, with Hon Ne bearing 276° about 5.5 miles. The channel within the bar is marked by three red conical buoys, numbered 2, 4, and 6; between No. 1 black and No. 2 red the channel is marked by bamboos. The bar is gradually extending seaward, and the passage over it is subject to frequent changes; the buoys are shifted as necessary.

Hon Ne is a good mark when approaching the bar.

Northeastward of the mouth of the Dai and 5 miles offshore, a vessel, in 1878, touched on a bank of soft mud, dry at low water, as charted. Immediately before touching the bank a depth of 9½ fathoms was obtained. It is probably the edge of the shore bank.

Kua Lakh and Kua Ba Lakh Dong.—These two mouths are considered to be impracticable for vessels; shallow banks, which break, extend many miles to seaward, the 5-fathoms curve (1897) being 14 miles off the mouth of the latter, as charted.

Kua Trali is considered as the easiest of access of the mouths of the Song Ka; but, unfortunately, in proceeding toward the main branch of the Song Ka it becomes so shoal that even junks are obliged to stop and transport their cargoes in sampans. An active trade in salt and rice is carried on.

Kua Dien ho, situated 5 miles northward of the Trali, is considered impracticable.

Hanoi (Lat. 21° 2′ N., Long. 105° 50′ E.), the capital of Tonkin and the seat of government of Indo-China, is situated on the Song Ka at about 100 miles from its mouths. The fortified towns of Nam Dinh and Hung Yen are situated 30 and 50 miles, respectively, from the entrances.

The city of Hanoi is built close to the river, which here is 670 yards in width, and owing to the lakes and trees interspersed, presents a rather picturesque appearance. The citadel occupies the highest site, and is surrounded by a brick wall 12 feet high and a moat. It contains the barracks, arsenals, and magazines, and the Royal Pagoda stands within its inclosure. The ancient city is situated between the citadel and the river.

Since the occupation by the French in 1882, great improvements have been effected in the laying out of the town and the formation of roads and streets. Long wide streets have been constructed and lighted by electricity. The cathedral, with three towers, is a conspicuous object. The Petit Lac is a sheet of water in the middle of the new city, near which are the town hall, treasury, and post office.

Of the temples, that of the Grand Bhudda, on the shore of the Grand Lac, is, perhaps, the most important.

The residence of the governor general and commander of the troops, the Government offices and hospital are situated on what was formerly the concession, near the river bank.

**Population.**—The population of Hanoi last census was 61,486, of whom about 2,727 were Europeans (exclusive of the military); including suburbs the population is apparently about 150,000.

Communication—Telegraph—Railroad.—Hanoi is connected with Haifong by telegraph, which place is connected by submarine telegraph cable with Hongkong, etc. There is a radio telegraph, call letters H. A. N., open to the general public between the hours of 6 to 11 a. m., and 2 to 6 p. m.

Mails are bimonthly, via Haifong, by the inland waterways or natural canals. Cargo destined for Hanoi comes from Haifong chiefly by the same route.

The railroad runs from Hanoi, via Langson, to the frontier of China (Kwang Si); from Hanoi to Haifong; from Hanoi to Ninh Binh, hence to Hue via Vinh; and from Hanoi to Vietri and Laokai.

The Thai Binh rises in the mountains to the southwestward of the Chinese Province of Kwang Si. In the Province of Hai Dzung it divides into numerous branches, of which the most important are: The Kua Thai Binh, the Kua Van Uk, the Kua Trai, the Kua Kam, the Kua Nam Trieu, and the Lakh Huen. It is also joined to the Song Ka by several canals; the two most important being the Kua Lok and the Song Chi or Bak Ninh. The tides are felt throughout its whole length, and contrary to what happens in the Song Ka, the yearly rise of the river is small.

The different arms of the Song Ka, of the Thai Binh, and the canals which join them encompass a vast tract of low marshy country of great fertility. All the trade of this district passes through Haifong, at the confluence of the Kua Kam and the Song Tam Bak, the other branches of the delta being only frequented by coasters.

Mouths—Kua Thai Binh.—The Thai Binh is navigable for vessels of 13 to 14 feet draft. Its principal mouth, named Kua Thai Binh, is encumbered with banks and divided into two channels. The eastern channel has 5 feet on the bar at low water, but the want of natural leading marks renders access dangerous. Upon the bar of the western channel there is only  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet at low water; springs rise about 10 feet.

Kua Van Uk—Channel to Hai Dzung.—The Kua Van Uk has about 7 feet on the bar at low water, and deep water within. The marks for crossing the bar from the latest information are the peak, 394 feet in height (about 8 miles inland), just open eastward of Conical Hill, bearing 336°. The Gua Canal, by which the Kua Van

Uk is joined to the Thai Binh, makes this river the shortest route to Hai Dzung.

The four other branches of the Thai Binh discharge in the large estuary comprised between Do Son Peninsula and the island Nui Kak Ba.

Hai Dzung, 21 miles westward of Haifong, the chief town of the Province of that name, is one of the largest in Anam, and possesses a citadel.

Current.—Between the Delta and Hai Dzung there is usually a current running out of the river at the rate of a half to one knot. Above Hai Dzung, in the narrow portion of the channel leading to Bak Ninh, the current runs from 1½ to 2 knots an hour.

Kua Trai.—The Kua Trai flows into the channel of the Kua Kam, and has a bar with a depth of about 3 feet on it at low water.

Kua Kam—Old route to Haifong.—The Kua Kam lies close eastward of Do Son Peninsula, which attains a height of 430 feet, at its extremity.

It was formerly the only frequented channel for vessels of moderate draft proceeding to Haifong. In recent years the bar and the lower part of the river have so altered and diminished in depth that it is practically abandoned for other than light drafts. The chart shows a depth of about 9 feet on the bar seaward of Do Son Point, and only 6 feet between lights A and B within that point.

Within the bars the river is navigable as far as its junction with the Thai Binh, 30 miles above Haifong and 46 miles from the sea, for vessels of 10 feet draft.

A canal has been cut through Dinh Vu Peninsula from the Kua Nam Trieu to the Kua Kam, some 20 miles above the bars, thus avoiding the Kua Kam entrance, from whence there is a dredged channel along the southern bank of the Kua Kam to Haifong.

Range lights established—Buoys established.—Two fixed red range lights have been established near the western entrance of the Vang Chau, Kua Kam River, to lead through the dredged channel in the Kua Kam between the western end of the Dinh Vu Cut and the western entrance of the Vang Chau.

The front light is exhibited 21 feet above high water from a white cement beacon located 800 yards 102° from Vang Thau West Light.

The rear light is exhibited 28 feet above high water from a beacon similar to the above located 700 yards 317° from the front light.

A fixed green light, which in line with Vang Chau West Light forms a range for leading through the upper reach of the channel between Dinh Vu and the Vang Chau, has been established 29 feet above high water on a white wooden beacon about 400 yards 299° from Vang Chau West Light.

A red buoy has been established near the intersection of the alignments AB and BC and a black buoy near the intersection of the alignments BC and CD.

Dredgers signals.—Vessels are required to pass dredgers when at work in the approaches to Haifong, or elsewhere in French Indo-China, at slow speed, and to give their mooring chains as wide a berth as possible.

Vessels approaching dredgers are required to sound their siren or whistle at intervals to attract attention, when the dredger will signal on which side the channel is free.

During the day, a red flag denotes that the vessel is to keep the starboard side of the river when going up, and a green flag to the port side. At night, two vertical lights, of same colors as the flags, denote the same course.

Depth.—The department of public works is endeavoring to maintain a minimum depth of about 2½ fathoms for a width of about 85 yards. The construction of dikes is under consideration. During the intervals between the yearly dredgings it may be that depths of less than 2½ fathoms will be found in the channel.

Hon Dau lies about ½ mile off the Little Mirador, with a rock which uncovers in the channel between. It is a pilot station, with a steam tender, and there is semaphore communication between the station and Haifong.

Lights.—On Hon Dau, from a gray octagonal tower, 65 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 203 feet above high water, a fixed white light, visible between the bearings of 50°, through north and west, to 140°, which in clear weather should be seen from a distance of 20 miles.

From a beacon (A) situated 343°, distant 1.1 miles from Do Son Point, is exhibited a fixed white light, visible when bearing from 301° through north and east, to 181°.

From a red pile structure (B), surmounted by a hut, situated 347° distant 3.3 miles from Do Son Point, is exhibited, at an elevation of 30 feet above high water, a fixed white light, visible from the bearing of 314°, through north and east, to 194°.

A fixed red light is shown from a black iron beacon, surmounted by a hut (C), situated 3.5 miles 326° from the preceding, visible when bearing from 1°, through west and south, to 121°.

Canal or cut.—A fixed white light, elevated 32 feet above water and visible from the bearing 137°, through east and north, to 277°, is shown from a pile structure, 44 feet high, painted red, erected on Dinh Vu Island on the northern side of the western entrance to the cut connecting the Kua Kam with the Kua Nam Trieu.

A fixed red light is exhibited on the southern side of the western entrance to the cut, 330 yards from the preceding light; it is shown

from a black iron support at an elevation of 23 feet above high water, and is visible when bearing from 92°, through south, to 312°. For lights at east entrance to cut, see page 277.

A fixed white light, elevated 28 feet above high water, is shown from a beacon 47 feet in height, situated on the western side of the western entrance to Vang Chau, visible when bearing from 73°, through north and west, to 193°.

Pilots.—The pilots cruise between the Norway Islands, Kak Ba, and the entrances to the rivers. They fly the French flag, and have a black anchor, their number, and the letter H painted on their sails. When waiting for the tide, vessels should anchor, in fine weather, about 3 miles 81° from Hon Dau, in a depth of 4½ fathoms or farther off. Hon Dau is a pilot station.

If there is a heavy swell on the bars of the Kua Kam and Kua Nam Trieu, it may be advisable to go and wait at the anchorage of Kak Ba which is accessible to vessels under 19 feet draft.

Buoys.—A red buoy is charted <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile eastward of Do Son Point, and a black bouy on the western bank, between A and B Lights within that point. Above the cut leading from the Kua Nam Trieu red buoys mark the starboard side of the dredged channel through the upper bar, and black buoys the port side, as charted.

Landmarks.—The principal landmarks coming from the southward are Hon Dau with its lighthouse; the Mirador Hills on the Do Son Peninsula, which will be seen before the island; also Nui Voi or Elephant Mount, 525 feet in height, situated 17 miles northwestward of Do Son; the summit of the Pagoda Range; a conical hill, 853 feet in height, 12 miles north-northwestward of the Elephant; and the Nui Deo, 476 feet high, northeastward of the Elephant. The Meteorological Observatory at Fu Lien also forms an excellent mark; it appears as a tower on a very clearly-defined hill (Lat. 20° 48′ 30″ N., Long. 106° 47″ 30″ E.).

Tides.—In the approaches to Haifong (Do Son) and also in the approaches to Hanoi, the tides are subject to a large diurnal inequality, only one high and one low water generally occurring in the 24 hours.

The highest tides are found about three days after the moon has attained her greatest north or south declination, and the tides are least about three days after the moon has crossed the equator, at which period the ordinary two complete tides in the day are generally observed.

It is high water about five hours after the moon's superior transit when the moon has north declination, and about five hours after the inferior transit when she has south declination. The tides are higher in the northeast than in the southwest monsoon. At Do Son Peninsula it is high water, full and change, at about 5 hours p. m. in June, and 5 hours a. m. in December. The maximum rise that has been observed is 12½ feet; ordinary rise about 10½ feet; when the tides are very weak the water often remains all day at about mean water level with irregular oscillations. The tide at Haifong is about an hour later.

The flood stream runs to the northward, and the ebb to the southward in the offing.

The difference in time and height of the tide at Do Son, the Norway Islands, and other ports in this neighborhood, is but little.

Directions.—These remarks apply to the approach to the Kua Nam Trieu, which is now the main channel to Haifong, as well as the approach to the Kua Kam. The landmarks have been previously mentioned. Coming from the southward, especially in hazy weather or at night, the lead should be carefully attended to on account of the shallow water off the delta. From the eastward, Bacht Long vi and the Norway Islands are good marks. See view on B. A. Chart 1965.

The bank of soundings of about 15 fathoms, between the parallels of Lats. 20° 15′ and 20° 26′ N., and the meridians of Longs. 106° 45′ and 107° 12′ E., is said to be a good guide in thick weather; as approaching Hon Dau when bearing about 340°, the bottom is sand and mud, while to the westward nearer the delta, it is nearly all mud, with broken shells in places; and eastward of the line it is chiefly sand with black speckles. Northward of this area the bottom is mud or sand and mud. The 10-fathoms curve off Hon Dau is 7 miles distant, and appears to be permanent.

If a pilot has not been picked up in the offing, a vessel should approach Hon Dau lighthouse on about a 317° bearing, anchoring to the eastward of it if necessary, as mentioned under the heading of Pilots, page 273, until one has been obtained.

Entering the river.—The channel is available for small craft. Deeper drafts use the Kua Nam Trieu, page 277. The channel is marked by red buoys on starboard hand and black buoys on the port hand, as before mentioned with the buoyage; within the bar there is no difficulty. The summit of Pagoda Range in line with the trees on the eastern point of the entrance, bearing 314°, leads in from seaward between Do Son Point and the outer red buoy.

Anchorage.—The river at Haifong is 500 yards wide, with depths of 4 to 6 and 8 fathoms; a number of vessels could be berthed there.

Vessels can anchor either above or below the mouth of the Song Tam Bak; the former seems preferable; it is advisable to moor.

Moorings.—A mooring buoy for the use of the steamers of the Messageries Maritimes Co. is placed in the anchorage above Haifong, and there are several moorings for small craft.

The Song Tam Bak connects Kua Kam with Kua Trai, and is available for small craft under 6 feet draft. The two mouths of the Song Tam Bak encircle the town of Haifong; the upper mouth is the Tra lo, and the lower is the Bonnal Canal.

Haifong (Lat. 20° 52′ N., Long. 106° 40′ E.), on the right bank of the Kua Kam, between the two mouths of the Song Tam Bak, about 16 miles above the entrance, is the shipping port for Hanoi, Hai Dzung, and Nam dinh, the commercial centers of Tonkin. It is connected by canals or creeks with the Thai Binh and Song Ka, for which see the charts. The banks of the river are low and consist of alluvial mud, from which the present town has been reclaimed. The native part of the town consists of wretchedly built huts of bamboo, but the European part has broad boulevards lighted by electricity. The Hotel de Commerce is a large and conspicuous building fronting the creek and river; there are large barracks, and a fine hospital at Luang yen.

In the distance are rugged limestone hills, and beyond these to the northward, some 18 miles, is a range of mountains culminating in the Grand Summit, 3,609 feet in height.

Depth to.—Vessels of 24 feet draft can, at high water springs, reach Haifong by the Kua Nam Trieu, page 277. It is stated that a vessel of 27 feet draft has been seen there.

**Population.**—The population of Haifong (1910) was 20,000, of whom 1,000 were Europeans (not including the officials and garrison), 5,000 Chinese, 12,000 Anamites.

Communication.—The following steamship lines call at Haifong. The Messageries Maritimes from Saigon, Europe, etc., run weekly, with a cargo boat once a month, and several other French steamship companies call frequently. The Messageries Fluviales steam vessels ply between all the navigable ports of Tonkin, and a company runs vessels between Haifong and Hongkong. A bimonthly postal service is run between Haifong and Kwang chau wan, calling at Pakhoi and Hoi hau. A branch steamer of the Messageries Maritimes, which conducts the service between Saigon and Hongkong, calls here bimonthly.

A regular river service of steamers is maintained between Haifong and Hanoi, through the inland waterways. Cargo destined for Hanoi goes the same way. Hanoi (and therefore Haifong) has steam communication along the Song Ka or Red River to Laokai, the nearest frontier town to Mengtsz, and where there is a railroad to various parts.

Railroad.—Haifong is connected by railroad with Hanoi, thence with Langson, Laokai, and the frontier Province of Kwang si, China; from Hanoi to Vinh.

Telegraph.—Haifong is connected with the telegraph system of Indo-China, and by submarine cable with Saigon. Office always open. There is a radio station at Kien au, or Fu Lien, 1 mile southwestward of the observatory, open to the general public between the hours of 6 to 11 a. m. and 2 to 6 p. m.

Time.—Correct time, for chronometer comparisons, may be obtained at the post office by telephone from Fu Lien Observatory.

**Products.**—The exportation of rice is the most important article of commerce; other exports are silk, gambier, mother-of-pearl, etc. The imports are chiefly cotton goods and manufactured articles.

Supplies can be easily obtained. Water for drinking purposes is good; it is brought to the town by an aqueduct from the source of the Song Huong, situated in the mountains of Dong Trieu, 19 miles distant.

Wharves.—There is a wooden wharf at Haifong, 300 yards long and 10 yards broad, with a depth of 22 feet alongside at low water; it is connected to the mainland and the railroad system by three bridges.

There is a fixed 15-ton crane at the northern end of this wharf, which, in 1908, was being extended 160 yards to the westward. There are other fine wharves, and sheers capable of lifting 20 tons.

There are two wharves on the right bank of the Bonnal Canal for small craft, and one lower down for larger vessels.

Repairs.—Vessels over 300 tons capacity are built here, and repairs to vessels and machinery can be effected. A steam crane is available for lifting a weight of 50 tons; there is a patent slip for small craft.

Docks.—A dock 455 feet on the blocks and 500 feet over all, carrying 22½ feet over the sill has been proposed.

There is a patent slip 130 feet long with 6 feet forward and 10 feet aft.

There is a floating dock 200 feet long 73 feet wide, capable of lifting 1,500 tons.

Coal.—There is generally a considerable stock of coal kept here.

Storm signals.—The system of typhoon and storm-warning signals now in use at the semaphores of the Imperial Maritime Customs on the coast of China and at Hongkong has been established with slight additions (shown in italics in series 6) by the French Government at the semaphores in Indo China. See page 46.

The signals at Haifong are shown from a flagstaff upon the old tower of the semaphore station.

Local signal.—The B flag of the International Code above a black ball signifies: Order to the vessels moored to the wharves at . Haifong to haul off.

Kua Nam Trieu—Channel to Haifong—Depths.—Since the silting up of the Kua Kam, vessels of moderate draft use the Kua Nam Trieu, thence proceeding through the Dinh Vu Canal into the Kua Kam, which it enters about 4 miles below Haifong. The depth on the bar has been dredged to 15½ feet at low water springs (1911); above the bar the water is deeper in the river and in the canal; from thence there is a dredged channel in the Kua Kam, marked by buoys, in which there is a low-water depth of about 16½ feet, above this the channel deepens to Haifong. Vessels of about 24 feet draft can go to Haifong at high water springs, and those of about 15 feet at all times, day or night, in charge of a pilot.

Dinh Vu Canal is an artificial cut through the center of Dinh Vu Island, and connecting the Kua Kam with the Kua Nam Trieu, thus affording deeper water to Haifong. It is nearly a mile in length, 131 feet in width at high water, and has a depth of 19½ feet at low water.

Every steamer desiring to pass through the canal must conform to the following rules, and possibly others which will be known to the pilot:

Vessels are not permitted to enter the canal unless the weather is sufficiently clear to enable them to see its farther end, and to be assured that no other vessel has entered from the opposite direction. When two steamers arrive at the same time from opposite directions for the canal, the one arriving by the Kua Nam Trieu must wait until the steamer coming from the Kua Kam has passed through, and must anchor if necessary.

Vessels in the canal are to proceed at the lowest possible speed.

Four mooring posts for securing vessels to are in position on each side of the canal; a pathway runs along both sides.

Note.—If possible, the captain of the port of Haifong should be informed beforehand by the agents of the vessel as to the date and time of their expected arrival, so that necessary instructions may be given to the dredgers when dredging is in progress and to the pilots. See Signals from dredgers, page 271.

Lights.—The following lights are exhibited in the Kua Nam Trieu and the eastern entrance to the canal or cut:

Hon Dau, on the western side of the approach, has been described with the Kua Kam.

Southeastward of Dinh Vu Island, on the sand bank extending therefrom, at the distance of 3.8 and 2.3 miles, respectively, are two fixed leading lights for the bar, each visible at the distance of about 6 miles.

The front light is red, elevated 27 feet above high water, shown from a black shed on piles, and visible from the bearing of 318°, through

79795—15——19

west and south, to 138°; the rear (or inner) light is white, elevated 46 feet above high water, shown from a black lantern on piles 63 feet high, and visible between the bearings of 316° and 291°. These lights in line, bearing 303°, lead over the bar.

About 4.5 miles north-northwestward of the preceding are two fixed white lights, exhibited from lanterns on red piles, to lead up the fairway after crossing the bar to the first bend. The front light, elevated 27 feet above high water, is visible from the bearing of 300°, through north and east, to 120°; the rear light, elevated 54 feet above high water, is visible between the bearings of 343° and 318°. The light structures are in line when bearing 330°.

From a red pile structure, 52 feet high, at the eastern entrance of the canal cut through Dinh Vu Island to the Kua Kam, a fixed light is exhibited at an elevation of 29 feet above high water, showing red from the bearing of 240°, through south, to 150°; white elsewhere.

A fixed red light is exhibited on the southern point of this entrance, 330 yards from the light last mentioned; it is shown from a black iron support at an elevation of 24 feet above high water, and is visible 2 miles when bearing from 312°, through west and south, to 92°.

(For the lights at the western end of the canal or cut, see p. 272.) At the southern point of the eastern entrance to Vang Chau, a fixed red light is exhibited from a black beacon, on piles, 51 feet in height, at an elevation of 30 feet above high water, visible when bearing from 340°, through west and south, to 55°.

On the Bancs d'Anam, situated 33°, 2.8 miles from the preceding, a fixed white light, elevated 31 feet above high water, is exhibited on the eastern side of the channel, from a pole over a shed on pile structure, painted red; it is visible when bearing from 344°, through north and east, to 224°.

On the northern side of the junction of the Song Chang with the Kua Nam Trieu, a fixed green light, elevated 28 feet above high water, is exhibited from an iron pile structure, painted red, visible when bearing from 276°, through north and east, to 186°.

Shoal—Buoy established.—A black, conical, iron buoy, with cylindrical topmark, is moored in 3 fathoms of water, on the eastern edge of a 2½ fathom shoal, in the Kua Nam Trieu.

Song Chang Light	100
Anam Rocks Light	30°

Buoys at entrance.—Four conical iron buoys, each painted red and surmounted with staff and cone, are moored at about equal distances on the bar of the river, in a direction nearly parallel to the line of the leading lights over the bar. The outer buoy is charted 6.5 miles, 121°, of the outer light-structure, in a depth of 21 feet, near the edge of the 3-fathoms curve. For others see the charts; the

positions have probably been changed to meet the alterations effected by the dredging of the channel.

A black conical buoy is moored in a depth of 13 feet, near the southeastern extremity of the sand bank extending from Dinh Vu Island, abreast the inner red buoy.

**Directions.**—See the directions for approaching the Kua Kam, page 273, which apply also to this river; also view from the offing on B. A. chart 1965.

The bar of the Kua Nam Trieu is formed of rather hard muddy sand. Nui Deo summit, in line with a clump of trees on the western point of the entrance bearing 311°, formerly led over the bar in 10½ feet at low water springs; the bar has been dredged (1910) to a low-water depth of 15¾ feet, or 26¼ feet at ordinary high-water springs, probably the same leading mark applies, but the vessel should be in charge of a pilot. Vessels of 24 feet draft can proceed to Haifong as before mentioned.

Proceeding up the river, keep the above marks on until the large tree near the eastern point bears 44°, then the east bank should be approached and steered along at a distance of 400 to 600 yards (or the light-structures above in line may be steered for if they can be made out). When about 800 yards from the red pile light, steer a mid-channel course to the entrance to Dinh Vu Canal.

At night.—Vessels in charge of a pilot can enter at night; the outer pair of leading lights in line lead over the bar.

Dredged channel to Haifong.—Having passed through the canal, the dredged channel, 16½ feet at low water, through the inner bar along the southern bank of the Kua Kam, marked by a red buoy on the starboard hand and a black buoy on the port hand should be followed; above which the water is deeper to Haifong.

Directions.—When vessels coming from seaward reach the western end of the Dinh Vu Cut, they should run about 1 mile on the first course, AB, which makes an angle of about 2° to the northward of the axis of the cut, or, say, about 295°, then turn to starboard and come on the alignment BC, 317°, marked by the fixed red range lights. After running about 1,200 yards on this range turn to port and get on the alignment CD, 299°, marked by the fixed green light in line with Vang Chau West Light.

(See p. 277 for range lights.)

Anchorage.—See page 274.

Nam Trieu above the canal.—From abreast the canal a midchannel course will lead to the Vang Chua, referred to below; before arriving abreast it, keep toward the eastern bank, steering along it until abreast the clump south of Kwang Yen. Here the river is nearly blocked by rocks, leaving a passage near the eastern shore



between the Bancs d'Anam Light structure, painted red, and the conical buoys with cylindrical topmarks, painted black, marking the rocks westward of it.

There is anchorage abreast the creek of Kwang Yen in about 4 fathoms, muddy sand.

Above Kwang Yen the Nam Trieu becomes a creek, and communicates with the Kua Kam by several watercourses encumbered with rocks and very shallow; the principal of these is the Song Gia, which flows between mountains, among which seams of coal have been found.

The Vang Chau, a narrow and winding creek, situated 3 miles below Kwang Yen, connects the Nam Trieu and the Kau Kam 1 mile below Haifong. The banks are low and covered at high water, so that the passage would be difficult if stakes were not placed to show the channel; for depths see the chart. The entrances are lighted, as mentioned with the rivers in which they are situated.

Lakh Huen (Lat. 20° 50′ 00″ N., Long. 106° 52′ 15″ E.).—The Lakh Huen is the most northern and eastern mouth of the Thai Binh. It communicates with the Nam Trieu by the Song Chang, 5 miles up which is Kwang Yen, the chief town of the province of that name, mentioned above.

Light.—A fixed white light, elevated 30 feet above high water and visible from the bearing of 226°, through west and north, to 136°, is exhibited from a column surmounting an iron pile structure, painted red, elected to the southward of Mangue Island.

Bar—Directions.—Vessels drawing 16 feet can cross the bar at high water springs, and proceed in deeper water to the mouth of the Song Chang. There is not less than 10 feet at low water to within 2 miles of Kwang Yen, but from thence into the Nam Trieu there is as little as 2 feet.

The channel across the bar is narrow, and but little protected from the sea; the marks also are distant and often indistinct. The small rock marked A (the southwesternmost of those off Port Kak Ba) in line with the eastern part of the second group of the Norway Islands, bearing 126°, astern, leads over the bar in from 19 to 21 feet at high water springs. (Rock A should be approached from the southwestward to avoid the dangerous rocks southward of the islands of Kak Ba Bay.) When Pirates Point bears 332°, steer midway between the entrance points, and when approaching the pile light beacon off Pirates Point, keep the western bank if bound to the anchorage below Kwang Yen, before mentioned.

Channel to Ha Long Bay.—There is a channel with about 6 feet at low water, marked by stakes or beacons, eastward of Mangue Island leading to Ha Long Bay, available by small craft with local knowledge.

Kak Ba Island and anchorage.—Nui Kak Ba is about 11 miles in length in a north and south direction, about 6 miles in breadth, and attains a height of 1,083 feet, near the center of the range running through it. Off its southern extremity are several high and rocky islets, the outermost of which are named the Quille and Oreilles Islets. B Island, one of the group, is 410 feet in height.

Between these islets and the southern side of Nui Kak Ba is Kak Ba anchorage, with the Chinese village of Apowan on its northeastern shore. Vessels under 20 feet draft find good anchorage here in the northeast monsoon period, but it is exposed to the southwestward. The entrance is about ½ mile wide between H Island and the one westward of it, with depths of 4 fathoms, shoaling gradually toward the village.

For eight months in the year, during the northeast monsoon, this harbor affords shelter to numerous Chinese fishing junks. Supplies can be obtained at the Chinese village at the head of the harbor, and water from a well, but it is sometimes dry at the end of the northeast monsoon. Bengali Bay to the northwestward is shallow.

There is a customhouse and a blockhouse at the village.

A patch of 1½ fathoms lies on the edge of the 3-fathoms curve westward of the anchorage, 85°, distant 1,400 yards from the summit of B Island.

Shoals in the approach—Ta Lao Pai (Offing rock) lies nearly midway between Quille Islet and the Norway Islands; it is low compared with those islands, and about 3 miles from either.

There is a patch of  $6\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at about  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile west-southwestward of it, with 12 to 13 fathoms around, uneven bottom.

Pinnacle rock, with 5 feet water, and steep-to, lies about ½ mile 323° from Ta Lao Pai; there is a patch of 1½ fathoms at 400 yards southeastward of Pinnacle rock; others may exist in this neighborhood.

A ledge of 2 fathoms extends 300 yards northwestward of Oreilles Islets, and one of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at about the same distance southward of Quille Islet or Ninepin rock.

At about 1,200 yards south-southeastward of the Quille is a rocky bank, with 3½ fathoms least water. It forms part of a rocky plateau about 600 yards in extent. The passage between it and Quille Islet is not recommended.

Dangerous rock, with 1½ fathoms least water, lies 1 mile 263° from the Quille, with depths of 4 to 7 fathoms close around. Rock A in line with F Island leads well to the westward of it.

A rock with 1 fathom water lies 200 yards westward of the northern end of the islet, situated about 400 yards southeastward from the southern end of H Island.

A rock, that has been named "Banc du Passage," with 4<sup>2</sup>/<sub>4</sub> fathoms over it, lies 2,700 yards 158° from Quille Islet.

Note.—To pass southward of Banc du Passage, Norway Islands Lighthouse should be kept well open to the southward of Ta Lao Pai (Offing rock).

Directions.—To enter Kak Ba anchorage, steer for H Island, on the eastern side of the entrance, easily recognizable by its conical summit. The western extremity of H Island, kept northward of the bearing 7°, leads eastward of Dangerous rock; and the same point kept eastward of 27° leads to the westward. The northwestern extremity of H Island should be passed at about the distance of 200 yards. Vessels drawing less than 14 feet can enter the harbor from the southeastward, passing between high precipitous islets about 150 yards apart. See view on B. A. Chart 1169.

Norway Islands or Sui Nong Tao are situated about 6 miles from the archipelago of the Kak Ba; they consist of two groups, the easternmost of which is visible from a distance of 20 miles in clear weather, and is a natural landfall for vessels going to Haifong. The islands are high, inaccessible, and free from danger on the south. The largest island has a creek on its eastern side which affords shelter to small craft. See view of the coast westward on B. A. Chart 1965.

At 300 yards westward of the northwesternmost island there is a rock, with a depth of 4 feet, situated 1.7 miles 274° from the lighthouse.

Light.—From a gray circular tower, 98 feet in height, erected on the eastern side of the largest of the Norway Islands, is exhibited at an elevation of 361 feet above high water, a flashing white light, visible 26 miles. This light is sometimes obscured by mist, owing to its elevation, when the weather appears clear from an approaching vessel. It is also occasionally obscured on certain bearings by the other islands of the group.

Sam poni tsao, or False Ninepin, lies 325° 2.3 miles from the lighthouse; it is a pointed rock, the eastern of a group of three islets. A patch of 2 fathoms lies 200 yards southward of it; and a rocky ledge, with less than 6 feet water, extends about the same distance northward of the western islets. The dangers between them and Kak Ba are described on pages 280, 281.

Bacht Long VI (Lat. 20° 08′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 42′ 00″ E.), White-tailed Dragon or Nightingale Island, is situated about 43 miles southeastward of the Norway Islands, near the middle of Tonkin Gulf, and from its position is a good landmark for vessels bound to Haifong, Hongai Bay, or the head of the Gulf. It is about 1.5 miles in length, triangular in shape, and 190 feet in height; its summit is a plateau and its sides are precipitous in places, with trees in other parts on the slopes. The island is surrounded by sunken rocks ex-

tending from ½ to ¾ mile, with depths of from 7 to 10 fathoms beyond; it is advisable to give it a berth of about 2 miles. Shoals of fish are very plentiful in the neighborhood, and have been taken for breakers when seen from some distance.

## THE FAI TSI LONG ARCHIPELAGO.

General remarks.—Anchorages.—Northeastward of the Song Ka delta, the coast of Tonkin to the Chinese frontier is bordered by innumerable high rocky islands and islets of limestone formation, presenting a most varied form, with sharp or rounded, though distinct summits, some of them attaining a height of about 1,000 feet. The Norway Islands make a good landfall, whilst the island of Lai Tao, with its conical summit on the eastern side of the approach to Ha Long Bay, and the look-out hill, 980 feet in height, on the northern side of Ha Long Bay, are conspicuous objects.

Among these islands are several deep-water channels which lead to secure anchorages, the only ones available for large vessels on the coast of Tonkin. The principal channels are:

Henriette Pass, which leads to Ha Long Bay, where there is good and secure anchorage, in depths of 5 to 8 fathoms, northward of Surprise Island, with not less water in the approach.

The Tai co tai Channel, westward of Henriette Pass and of Paix Island, leading from Lan ha Bay to Crapaud Road, and thence to Ha Long Bay.

The Casque and Mouche Passes, which lead into Saone Channel and Fai Tsi Long Bay, where there are depths of 7 to 12 fathoms; the approach is common to both, and has a depth of 4 to 5 fathoms at low water over a flat, about 5 miles in length; the Casque Pass is the wider and deeper of the two.

Pak ha mun also affords secure anchorage in about 8 fathoms, with 6 to 7 fathoms in the approach.

These anchorages afford fair shelter during typhoons, being practically landlocked; the holding ground is good. Within them and along the coast to the northeastward are other secure anchorages, and a smooth water channel available for vessels of light draft with local knowledge.

During the strength of the northeast monsoon there is a considerable swell in Fai Tsi Long Bay, but in the others it is scarcely felt.

From a distance, these islands appear to form a compact mass, but on being approached the channels through them will be distinguished. Some of the islands are inhabited, but no supplies are obtainable, and water is scarce.

The channels are described in detail in the following pages.

Climate.—The heat in summer is greater among the islands than in the delta or to seaward, on account of the islands obstructing the

breeze; the thermometer at this season sometimes shows  $100^{\circ}$ . The lowest temperature in the winter is  $46^{\circ}$  to  $50^{\circ}$ .

From December to March fogs are frequent and persistent.

Pilots.—A vessel is certain to obtain a pilot for the archipelago at Hon Dau, off the entrance to the Kua Kam.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Fai Tsi Long archipelago at about 5 hours, the same as at Do Son, but the rise is somewhat greater and increasing toward the north, it being 12½ feet at Ha Long, and 14 feet at Kebao.

The tidal streams among the islands attain a rate of 2 knots an hour in places where confined; in the offing the streams run from 1 to 1½ knots an hour; the flood coming from the southwestward, and the ebb from the northeastward; off Kebao the streams run nearly tide and half tide.

Southern approach—Dangers.—The dangers on the western side of the approach to Henriette, the main channel to Ha Long Bay, namely, the Norway Islands, and the dangers between them and the coast are described on pages 280, 281. The following lie on the eastern side of the approach, namely:

Chi li pai, situated in Lat. 20° 41′ N., Long. 107° 20′ E., about 9 miles 58° from the most eastern of the Norway Islands, is the outermost danger of those extending about 6 miles westward of Lai Tao Island, forming the eastern side of the approach. It consists of a group of rocks nearly a mile in length in an east and west direction, some of which are always covered; the bottom is foul to the distance of ½ mile from it in places; a patch of 3 fathoms is charted nearly ¼ mile northward of the rocks.

Salpes Reef, which dries 11 feet at low water springs, lies 344° 1.4 miles from Chi li pai, with foul ground between; at 1 mile 333° from Salpes Reef is a patch of 13 fathoms, and at 1,200 yards 32° from Salpes Reef is a rock which dries 2 feet; there is irregular bottom all around these shoals, and no vessels should pass between them and the islands eastward of them, as no doubt other dangerous patches may exist.

Cape Koan Lan or Koan Lan Islands.—The southwestern and outermost of the Fai Tsi Long Archipelago comprise four lofty and precipitous islands, several smaller ones, and the dangers above described, and are as follows:

Lai Tao (Lat. 20° 43′ N., Long. 107° 26′ E.), the southernmost island, lies about 6 miles southward of Cape Koan Lan, the southwestern extremity of the long and narrow island named Koan Lan. It is 2 miles in length, and is steep-to on its southern side beyond the fringing reef, but a patch of 2½ fathoms, with deep water around, lies 11.6 cables 226° from the southern summit of Lai Tao.

Siong Lai Tao, northeastward of it, is somewhat smaller, with outlying rocks; northward, between it and Cape Koan Lan, is the islet of Kao pui Tao, with rocks above and below water between it and Siong Lai Tao, and a reef extending northwestward of it.

Fong Wong.—Between Cape Koan Lan and Fong Wong Island, 771 feet high, 3 miles westward of it, the water is shallow and dry in places. Fong Wong is rocky, wooded, and inhabited.

Maolintao Islet lies on the flat, extending eastward of Fong Wong, eastward of which the chart shows anchorage in about 5½ fathoms.

Timatao and Baou Tao, westward of it, lie on the same shallow flat, from 1 to 2 miles southwestward of Fong Wong, with depths under 3 fathoms southward of them. Between Timatao and Lai Tao are several shoal heads; the least known depth, 1½ fathoms, lies about ¾ mile northward of the western extremity of Lai Tao.

Danh Do la and Dao Trao lie between Fong Wong and the western extremity of Longue Island, and form the eastern side of approach to Casque Pass.

There is an important village on Koan Lan (Van hai) Island, a long and narrow island 10 miles in length between its southern extremity, Cape Koan Lan, and the entrance to Kua Doi. The village is under a chief—a dependent of the administrator of Kwang Yen. Supplies of poultry and pigs are procurable, but the water is scarce and of doubtful quality. Boats can reach it through gullies in the banks fronting the village.

Caution.—Craft, with local knowledge, pass between the islands, and there is temporary anchorage among them, but the locality is better avoided by strangers. The bay westward of the cape between it and Danh do la and Dao Trao Islands is shallow, with numerous fishing stakes.

Ha Long Bay and Port Courbet approaches.—Ha Long Bay, situated northward of the island of Kak Ba at the northwestern extremity of the Fai Tsi Long Archipelago, is about 5 miles in extent, and very shallow, except the narrow southern portion of it, which part is available from seaward for all classes of vessels. On its northeastern side is Hamelin Channel leading to Port Courbet, in which there is a least depth of about 11½ feet at low water.

There are also channels leading eastward through Fai Tsi Long Bay and archipelago, and to the westward is a channel for vessels of light draft, with 6 feet of low water, leading to Lakh Huen and the delta of the Song Ka, before mentioned.

Entrances.—The principal entrance to Ha Long Bay is the Henriette Pass, page 287, which is available for all classes of vessels, with anchorage between Surprise and Index Islands, 9 miles above the entrance, in depths of from 6 to 8 fathoms; at 1 mile above this, the

depths are under 3 fathoms, with less than 1 fathom over the greater portion of Ha Long Bay; there is, however, a channel, the Hamelin, n the eastern part of the bay, leading through the flats to Hongai Bay and Port Courbet, above mentioned.

The Tai co tai Channel, or Entree Profunde, westward of Henriette Pass and of Union and Paix Islands, and leading from Lan ha Bay, is narrow, but deep as far as Crapaud Road, whence to Ha Long Bay by either the Volta Channel or Arche Pass, there is at low water as little as  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms in places. All these channels are equally used and said to be easily navigable after a first visit, but the Henriette only should be used by vessels above moderate draft, not only on account of its greater depth, but being much wider there is less tidal stream.

Pilots.—There is a pilot station at Hongai, at the entrance of Port Courbet, from whence pilots go out to the mouth of the Henriette Channel when a vessel is expected.

To ensure having a pilot for entering Fai Tsi Long Bay, a vessel should take one in off the Kau Kam, from or near Hon Dau, a pilot and semaphore station, page 272.

Lan Ha Bay, the westernmost channel to Ha Long Bay, is about 2 miles wide between Paix Island and the islets fronting the mainland to the westward, with good anchorage, in depths of 8 to 9 fathoms, easy of access. The eastern side of the bay, formed by Paix, Union, and other islands, is high, steep, and nearly continuous; on the western side are deep inlets and numerous islets, also affording secure anchorage. The passage between Union and Paix Islands is barred by a ledge of rocks.

Su li pai reef (Lat. 20° 42′ 45″ N., Long. 107° 04′ 20″ E.), which dries 9 feet, is the only danger on the west side of the bay; it lies 1,800 yards 57° from M Island, and about 1,600 yards southward of Cornu Islet. A rock about 300 yards in diameter, with a depth of 4 feet, lies 170° about 350 yards from Su li pai Reef.

Oreilles Islets open northward, or the Ninepin rock open southward, of M Island, leads clear of Su li pai reef.

The outer danger on the eastern side is the  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms patch, 1,300 yards southward of Henriette Islet.

A rock, with a depth of 4½ fathoms over it, lies 1,000 yards 144° from the northeastern extremity of M Island.

Anchorages.—There is good anchorage for small vessels in about 4 fathoms about 1.5 miles to the northward of M Island, and westward of the outer islets on the western side of Lan ha Bay. A rock, uncovered at low water, lies in the southern channel leading to this anchorage and a second rock, which dries 2 feet, lies in the northeastern channel; both these rocks will be avoided by keeping toward the island on the starboard hand when entering either channel.

Parseval Bay and Port Bayard, on the western side of Lan ha Bay, afford excellent protection to vessels of light draft, in 2 to 3 fathoms, in case of a typhoon; but the entrances are narrow, especially that of the latter, the width between the rocks on either side being only 80 yards.

Tai co tai (Entrée Profonde) is the channel leading northward from Lan ha Bay to Crapaud Road, and has not less than 8 fathoms water, though it is narrow, avoiding charted dangers on either side.

A rock, with 1½ fathoms water, lies 150 yards 254° from the southwestern islet, situated westward of Saddle Mountain on Union Island.

Crapaud Road, entered from Lan ha Bay by the Tai co tai, or from the eastward by Crochet Pass, affords good and sheltered anchorage in 7 fathoms, mud, with Crapaud rock, bearing 150°, distant about 1,350 yards. This sheltered anchorage is the most accessible for a large vessel, expecting a typhoon, when in the neighborhood of Kak Ba or the Norway Islands.

Volta Channel and Arche Pass.—Either of these lead to Ha Long Bay, and each have a least depth of 3½ fathoms at low water springs; the former is the straighter of the two, and it is only necessary to keep in mid-channel.

To enter the Arche Pass from Crapaud Road, keep close along all the islets on the southern side of Crochet Pass, until nearly abreast those northward of Grottes Island, following the pecked line on the chart. Then steer up through the fairway into Ha Long Bay. A vessel could continue through Crochet Pass into the Henriette, thence to Ha Long Bay.

Henriette Pass, the best approach to Ha Long Bay and Port Courbet, lies between Henriette Islet and Orange Islet, 150 feet high, 1 mile eastward of it. Orange, Epieu, Sentinelle, Fantome, 154 feet high, Jonque Islets, 203 feet high, and others on the eastern side, appear detached when approaching the channel, while those to the westward seem to form with Paix Island a compact mass.

Dangers.—The dangers near the track through Henriette Pass are as follows: The reef extending 800 yards southward of Henriette Islet, with a patch of 1½ fathoms and steep-to, at 1,300 yards 167°, from the islet. A patch of 6½ fathoms at 300 yards southward of Orange Islet, and one of 4½ fathoms or less at 400 yards southeastward of Epieu or Southeast Islet, on the eastern side of the approach.

In the pass is a rock, with less than 6 feet water, at a distance of 500 yards, 248°, and another at 900 yards, 278°, from Jonque islet; patches of one and 3½ fathoms lie, respectively, at 800 yards and 400 yards, 212°, from Yuyu, and a patch of 4½ fathoms at nearly 200 yards northward of that islet; a ledge with 2 fathoms water extends 100 yards eastward of Nez Islet, and close westward of the

track; other patches are too near the islands to require attention, and will be seen on the chart.

Tides.—At high water there is a slight northerly set in the pass, gradually turning westward and southwestward; at about 3 hours after high water the ebb stream is established, running southward in the direction of the pass; it attains its maximum rate of one to 1½ knots at 7 hours after high water.

Directions.—To enter Henriette Pass, having given a berth to the eastern island of the Norway Group, bring that island to bear 161° astern, which will lead to the middle of the fairway between Henriette and Orange Islets.

The summit of Banane Island in line with the low plateau on the western edge of Index Island, bearing about 338°, leads from abreast Orange Islet direct to Index Island clear of all dangers, but a berth should be given to the 2-fathom ledge extending off Nez Islet when passing it. Views B on B. A. Chart 1169. When near Index Island, haul to the westward for the anchorage unless proceeding to Port Courbet by Hamelin Channel, for which see page 289.

The least breadth of the channel is about 670 yards, and in the fairway there is not less than 7 fathoms until abreast Moine Island, above which, abreast and westward of Index Island, is good anchorage, as below described.

Anchorages.—There is secure anchorage for vessels of deep draft in depths of 6 to 8 fathoms, mud, good holding ground, in Noix Islet anchorage, between Surprise and Index Islands, where Henriette Pass is 1 mile wide, and it is much cooler here than farther in, being more open to the sea breeze.

About 1 mile above there is anchorage in 5 to 6 fathoms abreast Hopital Island; above this there is anchorage for vessels of light draft as convenient. The other channels leading from these anchorages are marked by pecked lines.

To Port Courbet.—The anchorages mentioned above are about 6 miles, in a direct line across the banks, from the coaling station in Port Courbet.

Buoy.—Light-draft vessels can cross the banks with a depth of 6 feet at low-water springs, and from 16 to 18 feet at high-water springs, by passing eastward of the red and black conical buoy marking a rock awash at low water, situated 2.4 miles 281° from the summit of Banane Island; between it and Palourde Islet, 9 feet high, at 1.5 miles northeastward of it. Hamelin Channel is 6 feet deeper.

Supplies.—Fishermen frequent Ha Long Bay, from whom fish are procurable. Provisions are obtainable from Hongai, also from Haifong. Fresh water for the French vessels of war is brought to this anchorage from Haifong.

Channel to Haifong.—There is a channel for small craft, with about 6 feet at low water, beaconed or marked by stakes, leading from Ha Long Bay anchorages, through Cathedral Channel and its continuation westward to Lakh Huen and Nam Trieu, and thence to Haifong, available with local knowledge, as before mentioned.

Port Courbet or Hongai Bay—Hamelin Channel—Depths—Buoyage.—The deepest channel to Port Courbet is the Hamelin, which connects with Henriette Channel eastward of Index Island, and has a not less depth than 15 feet at low-water springs, except between Lionne Islet, 217 feet high, and Toque Islet, where the depth is 12 feet. From Index Island it leads southeastward of Tourelle and of Casemate Islets northeastward of it, westward of Frange Islet, 174 feet high, and Toque Islet, 85 feet high, between Porte-fanal, 89 feet high, and Polichinelle, and southward of Lionne, Campement, Repos, and Chenal Islands.

The only known sunken dangers are a rock, with 1.5 feet water, situated about 600 yards 234° from the southern end of Tourelle Island, and a rock which dries 2 feet, situated on the northern side of the fairway, at about 200 yards southeastward of the southeastern end of Campement Island, about a mile below the bar; by keeping close to the northern side of Encrier the latter will be avoided.

The bar southward of Repos and Chenal Islands has been dredged to 15 feet at low water, over a breadth of 40 yards, and its southern side is marked by black buoys with cylindrical top marks, which should be passed at a distance of 50 yards. Above Chenal Island, 436 feet in height, the water deepens to 6, 8, and 10 fathoms in Kua Luk, the entrance to Port Courbet.

Tides.—The flood stream in Hamelin Channel ceases about 3 hours before high water (tide and half tide); the maximum rate of the streams is about 1 knot.

Entrance (Lat. 20° 57′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 3′ 00″ E.).—Kua Luk, the entrance to Port Courbet, is about 400 yards wide, with depths of 9 to 10 fathoms, but at a mile to the northward the bay is all dry at low water, and there are extensive banks dry at low water on either side within the entrance.

Anchorage.—Vessels should anchor inside the entrance at about 800 yards westward of Bayard Island, in from 6 to 8 fathoms, or outside, in Kua Luk, southwestward of the settlement, in from 7 to 10 fathoms, and not in the narrow entrance, as the tidal streams are very strong there; the bottom is mud.

The fort on the western point of the entrance, Mount Buisson, and Jaune Hill, on the eastern side of the bay, are conspicuous objects.

Port Courbet—Buoy established.—A conical black buoy, with cylindrical top mark, has been moored in 2.5 fathoms of water at the

southeastern extremity of the bank, with 2.4 fathoms of water over it, 840 yards 31° from the fort, Port Courbet.

Coal mines.—The Mines River, on the eastern side of the port, is only practicable for boats for about a mile up. The Nagot Na or Hatsu coal mines are situated about 3 to 4 miles up this river, connected with the coaling wharf at Hongai by a tramway. The output from the mines was about 267,333 tons in the year 1903; the coal was said to be of good quality.

About 60 Europeans are employed here in connection with the mines, and there is a club, post office, telegraph office, and customhouse.

Supplies—Coal—Wharves.—There are two coaling wharves at Hongai, eastern side of entrance to the port, each 270 feet in length, with a depth of 22 feet alongside at low water springs. These wharves are provided with hydraulic and motor cranes, and from 100 to 200 tons of coal an hour can be delivered to vessels alongside; the trucks run onto the wharves. Vessels in the roadstead can be coaled by steam and other lighters at the rate of 50 tons an hour.

Slaughtered and live stock, poultry, game, vegetables, fruit, and fish can be procured at Hongai. Water is scarce, but can be obtained of good quality through the Chinese, who bring it from the river northward of Mines River in native craft; the process of watering, however, is tedious.

Repairs.—There is a workshop here with forges, foundries, and fitting shops, and the repairing of ships is undertaken.

Communication.—There is postal and telegraphic communication with other ports in Indo-China, and there is regular steamer communication with Haifong three times a week, 6 hours' journey, by the inland waterways.

Fai Tsi Long Bay is the largest bay of the archipelago, but on account of its distance from the delta of the Song Ka is not of so much importance as Ha Long Bay; it is more a thoroughfare to the channels within the islands which afford smooth water to craft with local knowledge proceeding up or down the coast; there are no hidden dangers known in the bay itself.

The bay is accessible from Ha Long Bay by the Ducouëdic and Chateau Renaud Channels; from seaward by the Henriette via the Ducouëdic, and by the Aspic, Casque, and Mouche Channels. Vessels of moderate draft can proceed to within 4 miles of Port Kamfa by the three last mentioned; the Henriette has been described.

Ducouëdic Channel is the deepest channel from Henriette Pass and Ha Long Bay to Fai Tsi Long Bay. It has a least depth of about 4 fathoms at low water, by following the pecked line, but there is less on entering the bay, northward of Entrée Islet, about 3½

fathoms, and there is still less water in the Chateau Renaud, its continuation eastward.

It connects with Henriette Pass between Sac Island and Noisette Islet, 121 feet high, ½ mile westward of it; there are only two known dangers in it, namely, Sampan rock, which dries 11 feet, and may be avoided by keeping Echelle Island open westward of Sac Island, bearing 196°, and a rock which dries 9 feet, bearing 232°, distant 800 yards, from Entrée Island, in the northern part, which is avoided by keeping Kepi Island open westward of Enclume rock, bearing 38°. The 3-fathoms patch northward of the western end of Commune Island should be given a berth; the western extremity of Sac Isle in line with the eastern extremity of Oiseau Islet (the islet westward of Commune Island), bearing 196°, leads westward of it. There is a channel on either side of Enclume rock (above water) and of Kepi Island.

Chateau Renaud Channel is the continuation northeastward of Ducouëdic Channel, and is the inshore channel through Fai Tsi Long Bay northeastward. It carries about 16 feet at low water into the Bourayne Channel. The only sunken danger is a rock which dries 3 feet, situated on the bar with 16 feet least water, distant 1,400 yards, 70°, from Dome Island, and 400 yards distant from the island southward of it; it is avoided by keeping the latter island close aboard; the water is then deeper until the bar, with 3 fathoms of water, is reached, eastward of Aigle Island; from thence the vessel passes into Bourayne Channel.

Aspic Pass is straight, about 5 miles in length, and with a depth of 3½ fathoms at low water (but deeper elsewhere) on the pecked line eastward of Escargot; the inner island, which depth, however, is ample for all vessels likely to enter.

Approaching from the southwestward, and being off Southeastern Islet of Henriette Channel, that island should be gradually brought in line with Sam poni tsao (False Ninepin), 211° astern, which will lead to the entrance of the pass, westward of Mere Island, Enfant rock and of Arche Islet. From abreast Mere Islet, Escargot Island will be seen between Pont Island and the islet westward of it, bearing 9°, which being steered for will lead up the fair way of the pass clear of danger, into Saone Channel, the eastern part of Fai Tsi Long Bay, with deeper water, about 6 fathoms; thence by Bourayne Channel if bound northeastward, or anchoring in 7 or 9 fathoms eastward of Milieu Island if requisite. The tidal streams are very strong in Aspic Pass, abreast Pont Island, where the channel is only 200 yards in breadth.

The Brandon Channel leads from the Aspic to the Ducouëdic Channel, with not less than 16 feet water on the pecked line, and thence to Ha Long Bay or Fai Tsi Long Bay.

Pluvier Pass is entered from seaward westward of Aspic Pass, continuing into Brandon Channel; its southern branch, the Vaico Pass, leads into the Ducouëdic.

Casque Pass and Mouche Pass have a common approach, which is between Entrée Island on the west and Deux Passes and other islands lying off Danh do la Island on the east. The only known dangers are a rocky patch of 3 feet, situated near the eastern side of the fairway, at 800 yards, 209° of Haute Island; a rocky ridge with one head dry 6 feet at low water, which extends from off the northeast point of Entrée Island to Verte Island northward of it; and a patch of 44 fathoms close to the westernside of fairway, northeastward of Verte Island.

Sam poni tsao or False Ninepin bearing 226°, astern, leads to off the entrance, about 1.3 miles southward of Entrée Island; and when Mouche rock, which is low, is seen just open of the eastern end of Deux Passes Island, bearing 10°, steer for it on that bearing (or the rock may be shut in again), which leads westward of the 3-foot patch and to the junction of Casque and Mouche Passes.

Casque pass is straight and available, as far as draft is concerned, for all classes of vessels. Casque Island, seen between the islands on either side of the channel, bearing 313°, leads up clear of danger. When at about ½ mile from that island, edge to the esatwrad to pass midway between it and the islands to the eastward, to avoid the 3½-fathom bank southward of the Casque; thence into Saone channel in deep water. A 4½-fathom patch lies close westward of the fairway 400 yards east northeastward of Verte Island.

Mouche pass is also deep and straight, but the tidal streams are very strong, especially abreast the southern end of Biches Island, and the Casque is preferable. From the junction with the Casque at Deux Passes Island, steer to pass between that island and the one eastward of it, and also eastward of Mouche rock. Then, steer with the rock in line with the eastern extremity of Deux Passes Island, astern, until the summit of Aigle Island is touching the northwestern extremity of the narrow island forming the northeastern end of the pass, bearing 345°, which leads up the fairway; thence keep the western shore aboard into Saone Channel.

Inshore channels from Fai Tsi Long Bay.—General remarks.—There are several channels leading along shore northeastward from Fai Tsi Long Bay for a distance of about 30 miles, to the Kua Mo. About midway is Colosse Island, 738 feet in height, upon which the channels converge.

The depths on the several bars are not anywhere less than 14 feet at low water springs, but the Bruyères Pass which leads to sea, via the Tsieng Mun and the bar from the inshore route to the Kua Mo, have only the depth mentioned. The inshore route can be resumed

by entering the Ko Kai Mun, 3 miles eastward of the Kua Mo, for a further distance of about 25 miles, within Grand Singe, Chateau Renaud, and Tsieng Mui Islands, emerging at Kua Tam eastward of the last-mentioned island.

The sunken dangers are very few, steep-to islands generally forming the channels, but the tidal streams are strong in the narrow portions. This route offers considerable advantages during the northeast monsoon period for light-draft or small-powered steamers, but it is not recommended to those without local knowledge or without the assistance of a pilot. The rise of tide at springs is from 12 to 14 feet. The tracks to be followed are marked by pecked lines which will afford better information than any written description. The following are the principal channels:

Saone and Bourayne Channels.—Vessels of moderate draft can reach Saone Channel and the Bourayne, its continuation eastward, from sea by the Aspic, Casque, and Mouche Passes, before described, and deeper vessels could enter by the Casque with a good pilot; and there is good anchorage in depths of 5 to 10 fathoms in them. The Bourayne is the approach to Port Kamfa; Pouce Islet, touching the southern side of Dent Island, bearing 61°, leads through it.

At 1 mile eastward of Dent Island is a bar with 14 feet at low water, leading into Kersaint Channel.

Kersaint Channel leading from Saone Channel southward of Bourayne Channel and close northward of Roussé Island, has about 3\frac{3}{4} fathoms over a bar near the center of that island, and in other places from 6 to 8 fathoms. It is free from sunken dangers other than a rock which nearly covers at the highest springs, situated 1,200 yards northward of Dome Island (442 feet in height, Lat. 21° 0′ N., Long. 107° 24′ E.), eastward of the fairway and near its junction with the Bouranye Channel.

Roc aux Aigles Channel, southward of Roussé Island, also leads eastward from Saone Channel, and nearly parallel to the north coast of Longue Island. The shoalest water is over the bar ½ mile in length, situated about a mile westward of Roc aux Aigles, a rocky mass 672 feet in height on the north coast of Longue Island, and one of the most conspicuous objects in the archipelago. The only danger is the sunken rock on the bank which extends northeastward of Boisé Island, westward of Moustique rock; it will be avoided by keeping the Roc aux Aigles summit in line with the northern side of Coin Islet, bearing 65°, until Brioche Island bears 92°.

Carabine Channel is the continuation northeastward of the Roc aux Aigles Channel; it leads to sea through Surprise Channel and Kua Doi or Pak ha mun pass in not less than 3½ fathoms water. The only dangers are, the rock, with 2 feet water, situated 450 yards, 230° from Meurtriére Island, on the edge of the 3-fathoms curve, and the

79795---15----20

shallow bank, situated 350 yards southward of Touffe Island; the latter will be avoided by keeping close to the island.

Port des Sylphes—Lutin Channel, southward of Longue Island may be entered at either end of that island; it has an entrance from the southward, between the Koan Lan Group, between Loutres Point and Dao Trao Island. It has not been properly surveyed.

On its southern side is Port des Sylphes, the western entrance of which is very narrow, with a depth of 16 feet in it, close to the northern shore. Its northern entrance has about 10 feet water. There are depths apparently of 2 to 4 fathoms in the port.

In the northeastern part is a path leading to the principal village on Table Island; its existence was for a long time unknown, and it formerly was a pirate haunt.

Kamfa port and channel.—Vessels of any draft, with a good pilot, can approach Kamfa from the sea by Casque Pass, as far as Bourayne Channel, about 3 miles from the entrance to the port; lighter drafts may approach by several of the passes before described.

Kamfa Channel, in the entrance of which is Port Kamfa, leads to Tien yen, distant about 16 miles, and is available for small steam craft toward high water; thence it leads to sea by the Kua Mo.

The entrance to the port is about a mile wide, but is nearly all occupied by Jaune and Parseval Islands. The entrance points are fronted by spits mostly dry at low water to the distance of 3.5 miles to the southward, to Bourayne Channel, between which is a narrow channel with 3½ fathoms at low water. Eastward of Jaune Island there is but 3½ fathoms in the channel, but above it deepens to 6 and 8 fathoms abreast Parseval Island, being again reduced to 3½ fathoms northward of that island; farther up there is anchorage in a depth of 4 to 5 fathoms, good holding ground.

The passage westward of Jaune and Parseval Islands is shallow, only about 1 fathom at low water.

Directions.—From Bourayne Channel the course is close along Angle Islet and the islets southward of it, until the whole of Jaune Island is open of Sud de la Pass Point, when Jaune Island bearing 3° will lead up the fairway. From abreast Sud de la Pass Point, steer midway between Jaune and Verte Islands, avoiding the reefs extending southward from both. If proceeding above Parseval Island, care must be taken in passing between the reef extending from that island and the rock which dries 8 feet abreast it.

The anchorage of Kamfa being of small extent diminishes the importance which it might have if the outcrop of coal which is visible in many places on the surface should prove rich enough for being worked extensively, and to call for the construction of wharves.

Inner channels—From Colosse Island eastward.

Duchaffaut Channel is the continuation northeastward of the Bourayne and Kersaint Channels; it is straight, easily navigated, and has a bar with 3 fathoms at low water over it, between Doigt and Echelle Islets (Lat. 21° 4′ N., Long. 107° 27½′ E.), but there is scarcely better water in the fairway beyond until near its junction with the Lynx Channel at Donjon Island. There is only a depth of 14 feet over the bars giving access to the sea to the northeastward.

Lynx Channel is the continuation northward of Roc aux Aigles; it has a bar with 3 fathoms at low water northeastward of Colosse Island (738 feet high). The principal dangers are Echelle rock, in Lat. 21° 4′ 00′′ N., Long. 107° 27′ 30′′ E., which dries 6 feet, on the western side of fairway, between Echelle and Saone Islands; and Lynx rock, having less than 6 feet water, 2.3 miles northeastward of it, on the west side of fairway, with Diadème rock of 2½ fathoms abreast on the eastern side of fairway, both lying between Lion and Diadème Islands.

The northern side of Castel Island, in line with the southern side of Chat Island, bearing 45°, leads eastward of Echelle rock, and the summit of Colosse Island seen midway between Coude and Chat Islands, bearing 221° (astern) leads between Lynx and Diadème rocks.

About 2 miles northeastward, the Lynx connects with the other channels at Donjon Island.

Kebao, an inlet in the inshore channel, situated about 8.5 miles northeastward of Port Kamfa, acquired importance from the coal mines found at that place, but it has not proved profitable. There is still an agent of the company at Port Wallut, on the southern shore of the Kua Mo, southward of Pirates Island, distant about 6 miles. Chinese coolies are working at the mines, but there is not much being done apparently.

Pak ha Mun or Kua Doi—This pass, situated in Lat. 20° 58′ 00″ N., Long. 107° 32′ 30″ E., near the center of the sea face of Fai Tsi Long Archipelago, affords access to the inner route by Surprise and Carabine Channels.

The island forming the eastern shore is high and completely wooded, while that to the westward presents grassy slopes, topped by clumps of trees. The western shore is shallow to a line joining the western point of entrance to the Fer-à-Cheval, a group of rocks rendered conspicuous by the sandy shore behind them.

Directions—Anchorage.—Its entrance is about 600 yards wide between Entrée and Bosse Peaks, and may be distinguished by Mount Pak ha mun, 1,302 feet in height, directly within it, and by Table Mount, 1,444 feet in height, about 2.5 miles to the southward of the former. There are depths of 6 to 7 fathoms in the approach, and there are no known dangers; in the entrance the water is much deeper,

but a short distance within it is reduced to about 7 fathoms, and here there is good anchorage. Mount Pak ha mun, bearing 314°, leads in through the entrance, from whence the eastern shore should be kept, anchoring when Bosse Peak bears 86°.

Better shelter, however, is obtained by keeping along the eastern shore to abreast Pirate Bay, where there is anchorage in about 4 fathoms. The anchorage is secure here even during typhoons, but the tidal stream runs with considerable strength. The Middle Ground, about 1.5 miles in length, with as little as 2 feet in places, occupies the greater portion of the channel.

Proceeding northward from Pirate Bay, abreast Nord Bay, is the junction of Surprise Channel with the Carabine Channel, which leads to the inshore channels. By keeping the summit of Cone Island just open of the west side of Gourde Island, bearing 358°, a vessel will be in the fairway marked by the pecked line; when about ½ mile from the latter island, steer to pass about 200 yards eastward of it; thence by the pecked line for Carabine Channel, or as requisite through Surprise Channel.

Tides.—See page 297.

Supplies.—Water is obtainable in Pirate Bay; oysters and game are abundant, and fish is procurable from the fishermen.

Surprise Channel leads from Pak ha mun northeastward to Tsieng Mun and Bruyères Pass, and has apparently not less than 3 fathoms in the fairway. A patch with 23 fathoms lies 800 yards southeastward of the southern point of Noire Island.

Nonexistence of shoal.—The 11-fathom shoal shown on the charts and marked E D, about 600 yards southeastward of Jumeaux Island, Surprise Channel, has been found not to exist.

Madeleine is the name of the large island which separates Surprise Channel from the Lynx and others inshore.

Jaguar Channel leads from Pak ha mun southwestward, between Table and Koan Lan Islands. It is only available for very light drafts, and its western end leads into the shallow space between the Koan Lan group, and from thence into Lutin Channel to the northward and to sea to the southward; it is of no importance. Near its center, abreast La Tortue Island, it is nearly closed by ledges from both shores, with rocks above water on them, that on the northern side being named Robinson rock.

Coast—General remarks.—The Fai Tsi Long Archipelago may be said to end near the Pak ha mun entrance. From this point northward to Cape Pak Lung, the curiously shaped rocks of the archipelago are succeeded by hills covered with trees and dense jungle, extending to the shore. Inland are mountains ranging from 4,000 to 5,000 feet in height, only visible in clear weather, while at varying distances from the shore are long and narrow islands, ranging from

400 to 500 feet in height and lying parallel to the shore, within which is a smooth water channel similar to that through the archipelago, and affording also well-sheltered anchorages.

Fogs are more frequent at the end of the northeast monsoon on this coast than in the Fai Tsi Long Archipelago.

Tides.—The range of the tide increases toward the northeast. From 14 feet at springs at Kebao, it attains to 16½ feet at Tsieng Mui Point, Pak Lung, and Pakhoi. The tidal streams are stronger, more especially in the narrow passages between the islands. Slack stream corresponds nearly with high and low water, the flood setting northeastward and the ebb southward, at about 2 knots in the offing, except at Kebao, where the stream runs northeastward for about 4 hours before low water to 3 or 4 hours after low water.

At Tsieng Mui Island, Kua Tam entrance, it is stated to be high water at full and change one hour in advance of Do Son, or at 4h. At neaps there are two high waters in the 24 hours, with a rise of about 6½ feet, but very irregular. See the "Table des Marees des Colonies Francaises des Mers de Chine."

Tsieng Mun (Lat. 21° 8′ N., Long. 107° 38′ E.) entrance to the inshore passages is situated about 10 miles northward of Pak ha mun, and westward of the Kao Tao Islands.

Its entrance is about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile wide between Tsieng Mun Point and Boisée Island, with a depth of 8 to 10 fathoms, with good holding ground a short distance within, in the same depths. Vessels of light draft can proceed farther in to Surprise Channel, and find more complete shelter.

The deepest approach is from the southward, close along Ba Mun Island, where the depth is apparently from 6 to 7 fathoms within the dangers westward of the offlying islands; the approach northward of the island is over a bank with depths of  $3\frac{3}{4}$  to 5 fathoms.

Rocks.—The following rocks have been discovered in the vicinity of the Kao Tao Islands and Tsing Mun Pass:

A bank with depths of 5 to 5½ fathoms, about 2,180 yards long in a 10°-190° direction and 165 yards wide, lying parallel with the coast line of Ba Mun Island. The least depth on this bank, 5 fathoms, was found 1.17 miles 176° 30′ from the northern extremity of Ba Mun Island.

A rock covered with  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms of water, 1.89 miles 142° from the northern extremity of Ba Mun Island.

Dangers.—Hugon rock, with 1½ fathoms water, lies ½ mile 114° from the southern point of Sanglier Island, on the northern side of the approach. A bank with less than 6 feet is charted bearing 178°, 4.5 miles; a sand bank, with rocky heads of 1½ fathoms, 136°, distant 2.8 miles, and another of same depth (P. D.) 114°, distant 4.5

miles, all from the south point of Sanglier Island. Other dangers may exist, as the ground has not been thoroughly examined.

Bruyères Pass leads from Tsieng Mun to the inshore channels to Kebao. It lies between Bruyères Island and the extensive banks eastward of it, has a depth of 14 feet at low water, and 29 feet at high water springs over its bar. A vessel must be prepared to meet a strong tidal stream when abreast the island.

The remarkable tree on the northern extremity of Ba Mun Island, which in line with Tsieng Mun rock served to guide through Bruyères Pass, no longer exists and under existing conditions this pass should not be used.

Little Tsieng Mun is the narrow passage between Boisée and Sanglier or Tsieng san Island, northern side of the Tsieng Mun, and is of no importance.

Little Kuai Shin Mun is the channel between the northern end of Sanglier Island and Singes Island; the depths in the seaward approach are not above 3 fathoms, but there are depths of 10 fathoms in the pass, shoaling again to less than 4 fathoms abreast Marble rock, abreast which is a patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms in the fairway; it is probably never used as there is no advantage in doing so.

From Bruyères Island, southward, the inshore channels, Duchaffaut and Lynx, lead to Kebao, Port Kamfa, etc., as previously described.

From Bruyères Island, northward, the inshore channel is barred by a bank which connects Longue Island with the southern point of entrance to the Kua Mo, over which is a depth of about 14 feet at low water, or the same as in Bruyères Pass. This bar, though narrow, is composed of sand and gravel, unlike the bars in the Fai Tsi Long Archipelago, which are of mud. The half-wooded summit of Grand Singe Island, in line with the eastern extremity of Plage Island, bearing 38°, leads over it in the best water.

The Kao Tao Islands are a cluster of bare islands situated in the approach to Tsieng Mun, and from 7 to 14 miles offshore. They occupy a space about 15 miles in length in a northeastern and southwestern direction, and about half that distance in breadth; the spaces between the islands are mostly encumbered with dangers, for which see the charts. The islands are almost denuded of trees, which serve to distinguish them from the group off Cape Koan Loan, which are thickly wooded.

Shum Lan Shan, the largest and easternmost islet, is 5 miles in length by about 1.5 miles in breadth, and 650 feet in height. Its southern extremity is composed of red steep cliffs. Smaller islands lie near its extremities and within it.

Sha Pak wan is an irregularly-shaped island 3.5 miles in length, with a cone summit 552 feet in height on its northern end in Lat.

21° 01′ 00′′ N., Long. 107° 43′ 30′′ E. The southern portion is composed of red cliffs about 100 feet high, and is connected with the northern end by a low isthmus. Dangers extend 2 miles or more westward of this island, the limit of which has not been defined. See Anchorage, below.

Uli pai Reef lies about 2.5 miles northwestward of Sha Pak Wan, and dries at low water. The dangers between this reef and Tsieng Mun have been previously mentioned.

A rock covered with 2½ fathoms of water, 1.3 miles 297° from the summit of Ulipai Reef.

A rock covered with 1½ fathoms of water, 1.51 miles 72° from the summit of Ulipai Reef.

A rock covered with 3 fathoms of water, 1.29 miles 33° from the summit of Ulipai Reef.

Afo shao.—Other islands of the southern group are Afo shao, 335 feet high, westward of Shum Lan shan, with Katoi sha, 210 feet high between, and Lui shao, 207 feet high, northward of Afo shao.

Tankan shao, 309 feet high, lies between Lui shao and Tshim shan before mentioned.

Caution.—There are many reefs and rocks above and below water, as charted, and it is advisable not to venture among them.

Mashao and Tshim shan, 296 feet and 466 feet in height, respectively, the latter with a cone summit, are the northeasternmost of the group. Patches of 5½ fathoms are charted between these islands and Lo shu shan Islands, with depths of 9 to 10 fathoms in their vicinity; shoaler water may exist.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage for vessels of about 15 feet draft in Sha Pak Wan anchorage, the space between Shum Lan Shan and Sha Pak Wan. The southern extrance is about ½ mile wide between the reefs extending from the islets on either side, with a depth of 5 fathoms, decreasing within to 4 fathoms. A rock nearly awash at low water lies on the extremity of the flat, which extends about 400 yards westward of the islet on the eastern side; and a patch of 1½ fathoms lies in the fairway, about a mile within the entrance. The anchorage is northward of this patch, in about 4 fathoms, sheltered from northerly winds, but is open to the wind and swell from the southward. Vessels could, however, cross the bar, which has about 3 fathoms at low water, northward of the anchorage, and anchor in about 4 fathoms, and could leave that way, passing out westward of Katoi sha Island.

The islands were formerly but little inhabited on account of the incursions of pirates, who destroyed the houses and crops. Since they came under French protection, the islands have been well cultivated, and salt from the lagoon in the southwest island forms an article of export. There is a landing place on the beach here, and on a

mound is the residence of a European, who has a detachment of soldiers.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at about 7h.; springs rise 13 feet. See note on B. A. Chart 776.

Lo shu shan Islands.—This group, consisting of three islands and several rocks, is situated about 7 miles northeastward of the Kai Tao group, and about the same distance southward of Tsieng Mun Island.

Lo shu shan is inhabited by Chinese; during the fishing season fishing craft from Pak hoi often seek shelter here during the night.

Lo shu shan (Lat. 21° 14′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 56′ 30″ E.), the largest and northernmost islet of the group, is 2 miles in length, east and west, 1 mile in breadth, and 614 feet in height near the center. The northern shore is foul to the distance of nearly a mile, there being a patch of 7 feet at 1,600 yards off the center of the northern shore.

The eastern shore is foul to the distance of about 1,200 yards. Pluvier Bank, awash at low water, is situated near the extremity, with a reef which dries 4 feet at ½ mile north of it. Rocks uncovered at half tide lie off the northeast point, with Pyramid rock, 59 feet high, close to the point. Ledges, dry in places, extend ½ mile off the southeastern point.

A shoal with from  $3\frac{3}{4}$  to 5 fathoms extends beyond these ledges to a distance of 1.3 miles southeastward from the point, with depths of 6 to 8 fathoms between it and Im shan.

Anchorages.—There is anchorage in about 6 fathoms, sand and mud, with tolerable shelter during the northeast monsoon, under Rat Point, the southwestern extremity of the island, avoiding the patch of  $4\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms situated about 400 yards off the shore.

Im shan, the center island, lies 2.5 miles southeastward of Lo shu shan. It is about 670 yards in extent, 207 feet in height, with an islet 148 feet in height near its western point. It is surrounded by foul ground to the distance of about 400 yards, and a reef which dries 8 feet lies 800 yards 102° of its southern extremity. About 400 yards farther eastward is a group of rocks always above water, and which serves as a guard to the reef.

Tai chan tao, about 1,200 yards in extent and 453 feet in height, lies about 600 yards southward of Im shan, with a depth of 6 fathoms between. Except for a short distance off its northwestern side it is free from danger. West rock, 30 feet high, lies \frac{1}{2} mile westward of it.

Sam ha pai is a reef about 400 yards in extent, with three heads dry at low-water springs, the highest being then 3 feet above water. It lies 66°, distant 5.5 miles from Pyramid rock, Lo shu shan.

Breakers have been reported 1 mile southward of the reef. The western extremity of Tai chan tao, in line with or shut in with the eastern extremity of Im shan, leads westward of these dangers.

Coast—Kua Mo approach—Outlying shoals.—Within the Kao Tao and Lao shu shan Islands is the Kuai Shin Mun, a channel nearly 2 miles wide, between Singes and Cigales Islands, leading to Kua Mo, the approach to Tien yen, and to Ko Kai Mun, the continuation of the inner route northeastward.

Within the 5-fathom curve, which lies 5.5 miles seaward of Singes Island and of the islands northeastward of it, or for about halfway toward the offlying islands, are numerous patches with depths of 1½ to 3 fathoms, one of which, with 2½ fathoms, situated about 7 miles 76° from the northern extremity of Singes Island, is named Clocheterie Bank (Lat. 21° 15′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 45′ 15″ E.).

A sand patch 300 yards in extent, with a depth of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, lies 2.5 miles southwestward of Clocheterie Bank, with the northern point of Singes Island bearing 465°, distant 4.7 miles.

A patch of 1\frac{3}{4} fathoms lies with the northern extremity of Singes Island bearing 295°, distant 4 miles. On a bank with less than 3 fathoms nearer the shore are patches of 1\frac{1}{4} and 2 fathoms, as charted.

The chart will afford the best information on the position of these shoals; others may exist.

Kua Mo and Tien Yen Road.—Kua Mo (Lat. 21° 13′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 35′ 00″ E.) is about ½ mile wide between Verte Island and the point of the peninsula forming its southern point, with a depth of 9 to 10 fathoms, shoaling gradually within to 5 and 6 fathoms westward of Pirates Island and in Tien Yen Road above it. Abreast Pirates Island the deep channel is but 400 yards wide, there being a bank about 1 mile in length, with depths of 5 to 9 feet, forming the northern side of the fairway.

Directions-Anchorages.-The Kua Mo is entered from seaward through the Kuai Shin Mun, the approach to which is over the bank before mentioned, in depths of about 3 fathoms at low water springs and 5½ fathoms at high water springs, avoiding the patches of less water shown on the chart. The summit of Deux Chaines Island in line with the northern extremity of Singes Island, bearing about 283°, apparently leads in the best water, but this information is derived only from the chart. Round the northern point of Singes Island at the distance of about 1 mile, to avoid the ledge extending 400 yards off it, thence steer direct for Kua Mo, southward of Verte Island, within which the northern side of Pirates Island should be kept aboard; Verte Island touching the northern end of Pirates Island leads between Pirates Island and the Middle Bank. the southern end of Pirates Island bears 91°, steer 271°, anchoring in 5 to 6 fathoms, good holding ground of sand and mud when the island is distant nearly a mile. The banks in the river are covered with fishing stakes at times.

There is not less water for 3 miles farther northwestward, in Tien Yen Road; above this it is shallow and intricate.

Tien Yen (Lat. 21° 18′ 30″ N., Long. 107° 24′ 00″ E.), about 11 miles above Pirates Island, is apparently barely accessible for boats at low water; at spring tides the streams run very strong and are much increased during the rainy season. At the latter period the river is nothing but a torrent; in the dry season boats can scarcely ascend it, and they have to be dragged from one portion to another. Tien Yen is of military importance as commanding the road from Nui Ngok to Langson; it is connected with the telegraph system, and there is constant communication with Haifong by small craft.

Tien Yen has a market offering a few supplies; above, the country is fertile and picturesque.

Anchorage.—Pagoda Point anchorage is the port of Tien Yen; it is frequented by the small craft which run to Haifong, Nui Ngok, etc., about three times a week. It should only be approached with local knowledge. The below-mentioned lights probably lead up the fairway; thence southward of the white light. See the anchorage westward of Coq Point on B. A. Chart 776.

Lights.—On Pagoda Point pier, on the southern side of approach to Tien Yen River, a fixed red light is exhibited from a pole on a gray shed, at an elevation of 23 feet above high water; it is visible about 5 miles when bearing from 59°, through north and west, to 239°.

A fixed white light is shown, from an iron pole with ball painted red, on the shoal extending from Pagoda Point; it is charted 1,800 yards east-southeastward from the preceding light, is elevated 10 feet above high water, and can be seen from a distance of about 4 miles.

Port Wallut (Lat. 21° 12′ 20″ N., Long. 107° 33′ 30″ E.).—Within Kua Mo Point, southern side of the entrance, between it and Pirates Island, is Port Wallut, formerly the coal depot for the mines at Kebao, now but little worked, though there is an agent of the company here. There is a small wharf, to which the intended railway from the mines was to have connected. There is a customhouse on the northern end of Pirates Island. The port is connected with the telegraph system of Indo China, and there is frequent communication by small craft with Haifong. It affords no supplies.

The port is not recommended as an anchorage, as the tide runs strongly, and violent gusts of wind sweep through it; the depths are about 4 fathoms.

Directions.—To reach Port Wallut by the small pass of Kuai Shin Mun, the best water (3 fathoms) will be found by keeping the northern summit (conical) of Amis Island in one with the little hill forming the southern point of Ile Verte. This alignment passes 165 yards northward of Marbre Rock.

Rocks.—A rock covered with 2 fathoms of water in the channel between Pirates Island and Ke Boa Island (Port Wallut), with the summit of Pirates Island bearing 305°, distant 0.4 mile, 800 yards.



The rock shown on the chart about 330 yards south-southeastward of the southwestern extremity of Pirates Island does not exist. A sounding of 4½ fathoms was obtained in this position.

Inshore channel.—Northward of the Kua Mo are the long and high islands named Deux Chaines, Grand Singe, Chateau Renaud, and Tsieng Mui, within which is a smooth-water channel during the northeast monsoon period for light-draft vessels. The entrance is at Ko Kai Mun, from whence it is about 23 miles to the Kua Tam, where vessels come out again. See Inshore channels from Fai Tsi Long Bay to the southwestward, page 292.

Ko Kai Mun, or Kua Van Muk, is the continuation of the inshore channel northeastward from the Kua Mo or for small vessels from the southwestward. It is about ½ mile wide in the entrance, with depths of 7 to 8 fathoms, but the approach from seaward, over the offshore bank, has not more than 3 fathoms at low water.

A reef of rocks, always above water, lies in the fairway 500 yards southward of the eastern point of entrance; the only known danger is a patch of 4 feet situated in the fairway 500 yards 272° of the island with a bare summit, just within the northern point of entrance.

Directions.—To enter, having passed ½ mile northward of Singes Island as for Kua Mo, steer for the western extremity of the island on the northern side of entrance, bearing 319°, in line with the left slope of a distant hill, until the southern end of Cigales Island is over the middle of the low rocks in the channel, which mark kept astern leads southward of the 4-foot patch; course may be altered for the anchorage in 7 to 8 fathoms, sand, when the western extremity of Tir Island bears 311°, or shaped northward for the inshore channel, when the eastern extremity of the Two Brothers bears 40°.

Mirmidon Hill over the center of the eastern island of the Two Brothers also leads westward of the 4-foot patch. If there is a strong southerly stream is is recommended to pass between the patch and the islet by hauling close around the latter.

Ho Lai Mun (Lat. 21° 18′ N., Long. 107° 41′ E.) is the entrance to the inshore channel eastward of Ko Kai Mun, between Grand Singe and Chateau Renaud Islands. It is about 400 yards wide, with a depth of about 9 fathoms, but its approach is the same as for Ko Kai Mun and Kua Mo, over the bank fronting the shore with 3 fathoms water. The only dangers are a rock which dries at low water between the island on the southern side of the approach and the western part of the entrance, and the rock which dries 2 feet 1,700 yards eastward of it, and 131° from the western end of Chateau Renaud Island. The entrance bearing 330°, with Garceau Island seen through it, seems (from the chart) to lead midway between those dangers. Within the entrance there is good anchorage for small craft.

Proceeding northeastward, the best water, about 12 feet, is close to Chateau Renaud Island; a rock which dries 5 feet lies 800 yards from that island at 2.5 miles northeastward of its western extremity.

Chinese Cap, 623 feet in height, is a conspicuous island in the inshore channel on the bank fronting the mainland. Fishing stakes will be seen on these banks.

Fu Tai Mun (Lat. 21° 21′ 00″ N., Long. 107° 48′ 30″ E.) is the entrance between Chateau Renaud and Tsieng Mui Islands; it is about 1,400 yards wide, with a depth of about 9 fathoms and good sheltered anchorage in 5 to 10 fathoms over an area of a mile in extent within. The southwestern point of Tsieng Mui, eastern side of the entrance, is 558 feet in height.

The entrance is approached, like the other entrances, by a bank over which there is from 3 to 4 fathoms at low water; springs rise about 16 feet.

Dangers.—Clocheterie Bank, before mentioned, with  $2\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms, and patches of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  and 3 fathoms eastward of it, lie on the western side of the approach; a patch of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms lies on the eastern side of approach, 4 miles  $164^{\circ}$  from the hill over the eastern point of entrance. Eastward of a line joining the hill and the last-mentioned patch the water is shallow,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 fathoms; a rock which dries 8 feet lies 400 yards southeastward of the inner eastern point of the entrance.

A patch of 3½ fathoms lies near the fairway in the northern end of the entrance, 600 yards from the western point.

Directions—Anchorage.—The inner eastern point of the entrance bearing 349° leads in over the bank fronting it, between the shallow banks, in about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at low water; the approach, however, has not been closely sounded and other banks may possibly exist. The above mark should be steered for until within 800 yards of the point, when course should be altered to pass about 400 yards off, or midway between it and the  $3\frac{1}{4}$ -fathom patch in the fairway. From abreast the point steer for Mirmidon Hill (Nui Nghanh) (a bare summit rising above the mangroves to the northwestward), anchoring as requisite. Small craft may go as far northward as Verte Island (Nui Soka) or beyond in depths of 3 to 4 fathoms.

Ak hoi, on the mainland, is situated about 6 miles from the anchorage just mentioned. Fishing stakes line the channel to this place, but they are constantly displaced, and a boat could only ascend to it with the assistance of a native toward high water apparently; there is a depth of a few feet near the town, but outside it dries as charted.

Ak hoi is the most populous center of the northern coast of Tonkin; the inhabitants are principally Chinese; the Anamite village opposite it is very poor; the most convenient place for landing is near the limekilns below the town. The freshets in the river are less violent than in the Tien Yen during and after the summer rains, but the large bowlders covering its bed testify to the rapidity of the stream at that time.

The inshore channel eastward is close along Tsieng Mui Island and has not less than 3½ fathoms if the fairway be kept, but it is more difficult to do so here than to the westward, as it varies in its distance from the island; low water is the best time, as the banks are more defined. The northern banks have numerous fishing stakes.

Tsieng Mui Island is the easternmost island of those forming the inshore channel; it is about 10 miles in length, 1.5 miles in breadth, with a ridge of hills extending along its northern side for its whole length, attaining a height of 577 feet in Needle Peak, distant 2.5 miles from its eastern extremity. There are a few miserable villages on its eastern portion.

Kua Tam (Lat. 21° 24′ N., Long. 107° 59′ E.) is the eastern entrance to the inshore channel; it is about 400 yards wide between the banks on either side, with a depth of 3¾ fathoms in the fairway, and there is about the same depth in the approach; the 5-fathom curve, however, is but 1 mile offshore.

Directions—Anchorage.—Arequier rock, about 65 feet in height, situated on a reef extending about 600 yards off Tsieng Mui, the western point of the entrance, is a good mark. It may be steered for, bearing about 1° until within 600 or 800 yards of it, when course should be shaped to pass eastward of it at the distance of 300 yards; haul to the westward as soon as within it, and give the point of the island a berth of 400 to 600 yards.

The swell penetrates a considerable distance during the northeast monsoon period and during the flood stream, rendering it advisable to anchor at about 2 miles within the entrance, where there are depths of 5 to 6 fathoms, as charted.

Tides.—Springs rise 16½ feet at the Kua Tam, see page 297.

Monkai River (Lat. 21° 26′ N., Long. 107° 56′ E.) lies northward of the Kua Tam anchorage and westward of Nui Ngok, 360 feet high, the western extremity of Tra Ko Island; it can only be ascended by boats, with local knowledge; about 7 miles up is the village of the same name.

Beacons.—The fairway, leading to Monkai River from Arequier rock to Nui Ngok, is marked by pole beacons; the outer one is black, with a cylindrical topmark, and two others above are red, with conical topmarks. The outer part of the channel, marked by the black beacon, is liable to change under the influence of gales of wind and strong tides; when necessary the position of the beacon is altered. Red beacons should be kept to starboard, and black beacons to port on entering.

Communication.—Nui Ngok settlement, at the southwestern end of Tra Ko Island, is the eastern terminus of the Messageries Flu-

viales, which run from Haifong through the inshore channel, calling at the several places en route about three times a week. It is connected with the telegraph system, and is important as being the French frontier station. Local supplies are obtainable. There is a customhouse.

Coast—Tra Ko Island.—The coast northeastward of the Kua Tam is fronted by Tra Ko Island, 7 miles in length by 1 mile in width, with a channel within it into which some of the mouths of Monkai River discharge. Toward the eastern end of the island is a Christian village and church.

The whole coast, to Cape Pak Lung, is fronted by a shallow bank extending out to a line joining the cape to Tsieng Mui Island.

Shuk shan River enters the sea close eastward of Tra Ko Island, between shallow banks marked by breakers, nearly 2 miles beyond the island. The channel is about 1 mile wide between these banks; a little farther seaward is the bar, with a depth of 4 feet over it at low water springs and 20 feet at high water springs, accessible to small craft with local knowledge.

The somewhat old directions for entering are: Bring the tree just to the right of the summit of Shuk shan Hill in line with the mission church, bearing 340°, which leads over the bar and up the channel to abreast Tra Ko East Point, whence the course is 0° for 1 mile, at which distance there is anchorage for small craft in 6 to 10 feet at low water. Boat channels lead to Monkai River, Oanh Xuan Bay.

There is anchorage in fine weather seaward of the entrance in 5 to 6 fathoms, with Cape Pak Lung about 4°.

Oanh Xuan Bay.—The entrance to this bay lies between banks of sand to the westward, and the high land of Cape Pak Lung to the eastward. It extends to the northeastward about 3 miles, and then opens out and forms a large bay, mostly dry at low water, at the head of which the River Vai han long discharges. The bay affords secure anchorage for vessels of light or moderate draft in a depth of 5 to 6 fathoms, good holding ground.

The entrance is about ½ mile wide between the foul ground extending 1,600 yards from the cape and the banks to the westward; there is a patch of 1½ fathoms in the fairway, westward of the cape. The bar, which extends nearly a mile seaward of the cape, has about 4½ fathoms at low water, and there are depths of 6 to 7 fathoms within, with good holding ground over a length of about 2 miles by ¼ mile in breadth, with a further considerable space for vessels of light draft.

To enter, the extremity of the ledge off the cape should be previously buoyed unless a pilot is obtainable, or until a chart of the place is published.

The place offers no supplies.

General remarks.—The northern shore of Tonkin Gulf has not been surveyed, except Pak hoi, a treaty port, of importance as a trading center. The island of Guie chau is situated about 25 miles southward of Pak hoi, and about the same distance from the eastern shore of the head of the gulf. Vessels should pass westward of this island, as, in addition to the unsurveyed adjacent waters, numerous fishing stakes extend off the mainland. These fishing stakes at times extend some 30 miles or more off Pak hoi.

Tidal streams.—In the northern part of Ton kin Gulf, the set of the stream the day is easterly for 8 hours, and westerly for 16 hours throughout the year.

On full and change days in summer the east set commences at 3h. p. m.;

On full and change days in summer the west set commences at 11h. p. m.;

On full and change days in winter the east set commences at 3h. a. m.;

On full and change days in winter the west set commences at 11h. a. m.;

and occurring about one hour later every day.

The rate is from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  knots an hour, being accelerated or retarded by the prevailing monsoon.

Cape Pak Lung (Lat. 21° 29′ N., Long. 108° 11′ E.), situated 6.5 miles eastward of the Shuk shan River entrance is a prominent point 295 feet in height; the land recedes sharply on both sides, that to the west forming Oanh Xuan Bay.

Inland is a chain of mountains from 5,000 to 6,000 feet in height. Foul ground extends  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile off the cape.

Pak lung rock or Pak son kong pai is a rock which never covers, situated 6.5 miles southward from the cape; being so far from the cape, it renders the neighborhood dangerous at night.

Tiao Tan.—The coast between Cape Pak lung and Tiao Tan Island, 82 feet in height, at 14 miles to the eastward, is but little known; a patch of 2½ fathoms is charted 103°, distant 3 miles from the cape, near the edge of the 5-fathom curve, which here is from 4 to 5 miles offshore. Between Tiao Tan and the islet, 26 feet in height, to the westward of it, the 5-fathom curve is charted about 3 miles offshore. Westward of this islet is a deep bay into which the Ngan Nan Kiang discharges, apparently encumbered with shallow banks and extending some miles off.

Long Mun River.—Between Tiao Tan Islet and Tui Mui tiao Islet, 65 feet in height, a distance of 17 miles, lies the estuary of the Long Mun, about 10 miles wide, and encumbered with numerous shallow banks with narrow channels between. Good and secure

anchorage may be obtained about 12 miles above the bar, abreast and below Long Mun, in depths of 4 to 5 fathoms.

The bar, which has a low-water depth of about 12 feet over a breadth of about ½ mile, is situated about 6.5 miles eastward of Tiao Tan Islet. It is not advisable to attempt the entrance without local knowledge or a chart of the place. No directions can be offered for it.

Yam tiao fu.—The town of Yam tiao fu is situated about 15 miles above Long Mun, on the river Yam tiao; it is only accessible by boats.

Coast.—From Tui Mui tiao, off the eastern point of the estuary of the Long Mun, the coast eastward forms a shallow bay into which the river on which Lein tiao fu is situated, discharges in its northeastern portion. Kwantau Point is the eastern point of the bay, within which is Pak hoi. The bay has a charted depth of less than 3 fathoms out to a line joining Tui Mui tiao to Kwantau Point, and there is a patch of 3 fathoms at 8 miles west from the point, but within the 5-fathom curve. This coast has not been surveyed, and no vessel should venture within the 5-fathom curve.

Pak hoi approach.—Kwantau Point (Lat. 21° 27′ N., Long. 109° 2′ E.) in the approach to Pak hoi, is prominent from the offing; it is remarkable as forming the western extremity of a low peninsula, being a range of hills nearly 1.5 miles in length attaining a height of 374 feet, and from a distance appears as an island.

Nautilus Hill, 363 feet high, near the shore northeastward of the point, is conspicuous from seaward on certain bearings.

The western side of the peninsula is composed of cliffs from 67 to 70 feet high, while farther northward there are sand cliffs from 50 to 60 feet high, and fronted by a bank with less than 6 feet of water over it to nearly  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile.

Offlying shoals.—There are depths of about 3 fathoms at a short distance westward and southward of the point, but to the eastward there is a bank with shallow water, which gradually increases its distance from the shore to 5 miles or more. A patch which dries at low water, named Pak fu tau sha, is charted on this bank, with Kwantau Point bearing 294°, distant 10 miles; another shoal is charted from 2 to 3 miles eastward of it, and breaks at times. A shoal with 1½ fathoms on its southern end and extending north-northeastward about 2 miles, was reported, in 1898, to lie with Kwantau Point bearing 311°, distant 13.5 miles, and Guie chau summit 201°. This coast should be given a wide berth.

Pak hoi anchorage, situated northward of Kwantau Point, affords anchorage for vessels of moderate draft; it is sheltered from the sea during the northeast monsoon period, and is protected by sand banks on its northern side, but it is open to the southwest.

BUOYAGE. 309

Entrance—Buoyage.—The channel is about a mile wide, with depths of 3 to 3½ fathoms abreast Kwantau Point reduced to about half that width abreast Tikoff, off which there is anchorage in 4 to 5 fathoms; above the fishing stakes, which here stretch across the channel, there is anchorage in 3½ to 4 fathoms. The channel between the fishing stakes is generally about 90 yards wide, though the stakes are not always laid out in the same direction. The black and white striped buoy in the anchorage is in 2½ fathoms, near the edge of the 3-fathom curve within which the water shoals quickly.

The buoy marking the starboard side of the entrance to Pak hoi Anchorage is a red gas buoy with conical superstructure, showing a flashing white acetylene light moored on the following bearings:

New customhouse	94°	30′
Conspicuous clump	135°	30'
Kwantau Point, tangent	209°	

This gas buoy is moored at the southern side of the break in the fishing stakes, the northern side of which is marked by a black buoy.

From this gas buoy the fishing stakes extend in a 137° direction to the point at Tikok.

Caution.—The approach to Pak hoi is encumbered with fishing stakes, which in some place extend as much as 30 to 40 miles from the coast, dangerous to the screws of vessels not keeping a good lookout.

Directions.—Access to Pak hoi Anchorage is easy. Kwantau Point may be approached on a 350° bearing until about a mile from it, when course should be shaped to give it a berth of about ½ mile; from abreast the point course should be gradually altered to 0°, to round the bank extending off Nautilus Hill and the sand cliffs; when Tikok bears 80°, steer 69° for the anchorage. If going to the inner anchorage, pass between the two buoys marking the passage through the fishing stakes, anchoring westward of the black and white buoys unless of very light draft.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at 5h. 10m.; springs rise 16 feet, neaps 11 feet, approximately. The streams set through the anchorage at the rate of 2 knots at springs, and half a knot at neaps.

Pak hoi, situated 4 miles northeastward of Kwantau Point, immediately under a low sand ridge on the southern side of the anchorage, is a treaty port, opened in 1877. The town, formed of two long irregular streets, is unsanitary; it has a population of about 20,000 persons. The landing is good at high water.

The smaller settlement of Tikok, a fishing village, is situated on the point nearly midway between Pak hoi and Kwantau Point.

There is a customhouse, as charted.

79795 - 15 - - 21

Trade.—The exports consist of indigo, hides, fish, pigs, tobacco, sugar, etc.; and the imports of Indian cotton yarn, shirtings, opium, metals, flour, kerosene oil, and woolens.

Communication.—There is telegraphic connection with Hong-kong. The French mail steamers running between Kwang chau wan and Haifong, bimonthly, call here, and others; and there is constant communication by trading steamers.

Supplies of meat and vegetables are obtainable at moderate prices; the water is unwholesome. No coal is obtainable.

Climate—Winds.—The rainy season at Pak hoi is from January to June, but it does not rain uninterruptedly or heavily; from January to April heavy northerly gales blow frequently and rise suddenly, lasting sometimes three days. Warning, however, of these gales will be given by the barometer rising, and the opposite coast becoming visible, which, under other circumstances, can not be distinctly seen from Pak hoi.

Typhoons occur occasionally from June to October; their centers, however, are said always to pass southward.

Guie chau, an island situated about 23 miles southward from . Kwantau Point, Pak hoi, is 4.5 miles in length northeast and southwest, and 3 miles in breadth. The southern and western sides of Guie chau are composed of hills rising abruptly from the water and sloping gradually to the northeastern shore. Humpel Hill, the summit, 279 feet in height, is near the southeastern extermity of the island, and has a small building on it, which makes an excellent mark; it is situated in Lat. 21° 01′ 15″ N., Long. 109° 06′ 30″ E. (See view on chart.)

The island is inhabited, fertile, and well cultivated.

The western, northern, and northeastern sides of Guie chau have not been surveyed, and should not be approached within 2 to 3 miles; the general B. A. chart, 2062, shows it foul northward to the distance of 2 miles. At night, when in the vicinity of this island, do not shoul the water to less than 10 fathoms.

The head of the Gulf within Guie chau is shallow, and numerous fixed fishing stakes encumber it. Vessels should not venture eastward of the island.

Discolored patches of small diameter, having an appearance of shoal water, are very common between Guie chau and Pak hoi. They are only detached mud whirls, or weed patches.

Nam Wan, a bay situated on the southern side of Guie chau, is about a mile in extent, with depths of 4 to 5 fathoms good holding ground, and sheltered from all winds except those between south-southeast and east-southeast. Southerly winds, however, seldom blow home, and are never very strong.

The entrance of Nam Wan is about 1.3 miles wide; it is, however, contracted to  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile by a shoal of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 fathoms which surrounds and extends  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in a southeasterly direction from Petit Cochon, a rocky islet 95 feet high, on the eastern side of the entrance. From the eastern entrance point a shoal of 1 to 2 fathoms extends 400 yards off; and from the western entrance point foul ground extends nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in a southeasterly direction.

On the beach at the head of Nam Wan there is a village, a short distance westward of which, and about halfway up the cliff, stands a Chinese temple; it is now hidden from seaward by plantations of trees, and is no longer available as a landmark.

**Population.**—The population of Guie chau is about 4,500, the principal occupation being the cultivation of sugarcane and bananas.

Supplies.—Fish and fruit are plentiful, a few fowls also can be procured.

Chai une Island, about 500 feet high, lies 6 miles southeastward from Guie chau. It is a mile in length, and except from the eastward, shows a high bold cliff at its western extremity, above which is the summit. A village is situated in the valley in the middle of the island. Chai une affords no anchorage.

Soundings.—At 28 miles southeastward of Chai une Island, there are general depths of 7 to 8 fathoms, increasing toward the island, near which long streaks of weed and patches of discolored water may be seen, which have the appearance of shoal ground, but the soundings only indicated a gradual change of depths. The neighborhood is better avoided until properly surveyed.

Coast.—At about 30 miles eastward of Kwantau Point, Pak hoi, is a bay about 20 miles wide, the northeastern head of Tonkin Gulf, with Guie chau Island in its approach, above described. It is encumbered with numerous shallow banks, between which is a shallow channel usually marked by stakes, leading to Skek tau po (Lat. 21° 36′ N., Long. 109° 33′ E.) and Shan hau, with Chinese villages on its shores.

Um po, on the eastern side, is approached between the banks Teo shin sha and Tam kon sha; these channels are available by small craft in charge of a pilot or a fisherman of the neighborhood.

Inland is a mountain range, Pak mah chong (White Horse Hill); the western summit is about 2,000 feet in height; the eastern summit, Ku Kun chong (Cockscomb Hill), is 2,390 feet, and charted in Lat. 20° 58′ N., Long. 109° 52′ E.

Caution.—This bay, as well as the western coast of Lei chau Peninsula, has not been surveyed, and every care must be taken should it be found necessary to visit this locality, and to avoid the fishing stakes, which extend to or beyond Guie chau Island, as before mentioned.

Rough outlines of banks are shown, namely, the Teo shin sha, Tam kon sha, Sam sha, and Bau cum sha, bare of soundings.

Mong tau Point, about 25 miles northward of Cape Kami, the north-western extremity of Hainan Strait, is said to be foul to the distance of 5 or 6 miles.

Nausa Bay (Lat. 20° 17′ N., Long. 109° 52′ E.) lies southward of Ushek Point, and has a river and a village of same name at its head; it has not been sounded.

Nausa Point is low and shelving. It is a ridge of lava about 1.5 miles in length, the outer part of which is covered at high water.

Aspect—Carpenter Range.—The coast near Nausa Bay is low and wooded, rising gradually to Carpenter Hill, the flat summit of a range visible from near Cape Kami in Hainan Strait.

Approaching from the westward or northwestward, Carpenter Hill will first appear; the Shenwen Range, 510 feet in height, will be seen some time before Cape Kami comes in sigh'.

The coast southward is considered with Hainan Strait, page 331.

# CHAPTER VII.

#### HAINAN ISLAND AND STRAIT.

Hainan Island—General remarks.—Hainan Island, bounding the Tonkin Gulf to the eastward, is about 155 miles in extent northeast and southwest, and about 90 miles in breadth.

It forms part of the Province of Kwang tung, but the authority of the Chinese is not effective at any distance inland; it is almost without roads.

Its southern half is entirely mountainous, attaining a height of 5,870 feet in the Great Ng chi Range (five large fingers, locally known as Loi Mother or Loi Vöi, from a remarkable peak with five nipples), and visible from Hainan Strait at times; the northern portion of the island is low, with a few scattered hills, presenting totally different geological characteristics from the southern half, giving the impression that the two have at sometime been united by a volcanic upheaval. While the fauna and flora of the northern half resemble in every respect those of the Lei chau Peninsula (on the opposite side of Hainan Strait), the southern part is entirely different, exhibiting the most tropical forms of life and vegetation. The mountains are covered with a dense vegetation, and in the plains are cultivated rice, sugarcane, areca, or betal-nut trees, and tobacco.

The mineral resources which are known to exist consist of gold, tin, iron, and copper. There are extensive fisheries. Apart from its commercial aspect it has a political importance, situated, as it is, fairly close to Haifong, Hongkong, and Macao.

Kiung chau fu or K'ing Tao (Lat. 20° 2′ N., Long. 110° 22′ E.), the capital of Hainan, and its sole treaty port, Hoi hau, are situated on and near the banks of the Kim Kang, or de l'Or, on the north coast of the island, and connected by a broad road and rough paths. It is a walled city, the walls being 30 feet high, with four gates. The merchandise that comes down the river in junks from the interior is transhipped at Pak siang, the head of the delta, and has a yearly value of about \$5,000,000. Probably not 5 per cent of the total area of the island is under cultivation.

There are great possibilities for the trade of the island if the port of Hoi hau were deepened; the improvement of the channel to admit steam launches and large, covered lighters at all stages of tide would preclude delay to steamers and damage to cargo. (See population and trade of Hoi hau, p. 340.)

Digitized by Google

Coasts.—The southeast and southern coasts of this island are generally bold to approach, but banks have been reported in places and others may exist. Off the western coast are several shallow banks, the farthest known of which is about 18 miles off Southwest Point.

The southern coast is indented with several bays, affording good anchorage and shelter during the northeast monsoon period, but they are partly open to southerly winds; the northwestern coast also affords good anchorage.

Caution.—The island, with the exception of the portion forming Hainan Strait, has not been surveyed; consequently the position of a vessel is not to be accurately obtained by cross-bearings.

Population.—The population is composed of three distinct classes of inhabitants; those in the interior, known as the Loi, about half a million, as a rough estimate, are supposed to have originally come from Cochin, China; the Miaos, considered to be the original inhabitants, are scattered through all the southern districts of Hainan, migrating when the soil gets poor. They live at higher levels than the Lois and pay no taxes, regarding themselves as the rightful owners of the land; they are very hospitable. The coast population, at the northeastern and southern and southwestern sides, consists mainly of a low class of Chinese, who obtain their living by cultivating the soil, fishing, and by occasional acts of piracy; those at the northern end of the island are known as the Tai people.

There are numerous fast-sailing fishing boats and junks belonging to the island; many of them go every year on fishing voyages and navigate to 700 or 800 miles from home to collect the bêche-de-mer, and procure dry turtle and sharks' fins, which they find among the numerous shoals and sand cays in the southeastern part of the China Sea. Their voyages commence in March, and they continue to fish until the early part of June, when they return, picking up their small parties left on various cays and their collections.

The population of the island in 1896 was estimated to consist of 1,700,000 Chinese (including the Lois), 100,000 Sai and other tribes of the same origin, and 5,000 Miou (Miaos), two races still independent. The foreign, that is, non-Chinese, population of the island at the end of 1911 was 91, of whom 30 were British subjects.

Fauna.—The fauna of Hainan is entirely different from that of south China. There are three species of deer, leopards, bears (the latter, according to the Lois, attaining the size of a pony in the Five Finger district and exceedingly ferocious), monkeys, squirrels, porcupines, anteaters, and flying foxes. Of reptiles there is a large variety; pythons attain a length of 30 feet or more; boaconstrictors, lizards, cobra, bamboo and coral snakes, which are deadly. Fish in endless variety—the Hainan whale, sharks, and a quantity of tropical

fish; carp, roach, dace, and barbel are found in the rivers. There are some 170 species of birds, 19 of which are new to science, among which are the silver pheasant, jungle fowl, partridges, and almost every kind of water bird.

Flora.—The flora of the island offers a practically new field to the botanist; the types found are more akin to the growths of Malay and the Philippines than those of the southern Provinces of China. Among the fruits are the coconut, which is shipped from all the eastern ports to Hongkong, the papaya, mango, lichee, pineapple, custard apple, oranges, bananas, etc. The betel nut is largely exported; the bamboo is the most valuable; everything in Hainan, as in China generally, seems to be built of bamboo—from a house to a toothpick. The rattan is a permanent industry in the Lois country; sugar-cane is largely grown in the plains; tobacco is grown inland; also indigo and hemp. There is an immense quantity of timber almost untouched on the hills, consisting mainly of oak.

Minerals.—There are various minerals in the island.

Missions.—An American Presbyterian mission is established in the island, inaugurated in 1881. Its personnel includes 3 doctors, at least 7 ordained clergymen, and about 10 lady missionaries, distributed through the four stations of Hoi hau, Kiung chau fu, Nodoa, and Kachek. At each of these is a school, and at Hoi hau and the last two towns a hospital. At Hoi hau is an imposing church, accommodating 500 persons.

Romanist missions were established in the island by the Jesuits as far back as 1630, and which flourished until the time the Jesuits were suppressed. The number of Romanists now on the northern part of the island is very small; altogether there are about 1,000 on the island. Two priests and two sisters (all French) are stationed here.

Climate—Winds.—The northeast monsoon in Hainan brings rain and is the cool period, but fogs are frequent; that of the southwest, on the contrary, brings a high temperature with almost daily squalls. The typhoon months are from June to October, those which occur in August and September being considered the worst.

The most agreeable months in Hainan are December and January, when the temperature is at its minimum, namely, about 50° at 6 a. m., and 57° at 2 p. m. In February it rises to about 52° and 59°; in March 63° and 73° at the same hours.

In April there is but little wind, and the temperature rises to 82°. May is very hot, and June scarcely bearable, the shade temperature reaching 95° and keeping up to 82° during the night. The records received do not go beyond this.

The average heat during the summer is not exceptionally high, but it is aggravated by the continual calms; the nights are cool. A thunderstorm usually occurs between 1 and 4 p. m., lasting from

one to three hours, with occasionally a sharp squall. At the end of August and in September westerly winds blow as often as easterly, but the former always bring rain or thick weather. During the winter months easterly winds prevail. Sharp squalls, lasting from 10 to 20 minutes, are common in Hainan Strait during the months of June and July, often blowing with a force of 6 to 8; the squalls are generally preceded by a blue haze or tint over the land, and are dangerous to boats under sail or with awnings spread.

The following shows the average direction and force of the wind from May to September.

May.—From south to southeast; force 1 to 4. A short rain squall nearly every afternoon.

June.—From south to southeast; force 1 to 4. Rain squalls as in May. A heavy gale from south, experienced on June 28, force 10, lasted for 12 hours.

July.—From south to southeast; force 1 to 4. Occasionally northeasterly and calm, the latter part of the month westerly 2 to 4. Rain squalls less frequent. July 17, a heavy gale from north continued for 12 hours, when it shifted to south and blew just as hard (force 9 to 10) for 12 hours.

August.—From south to west; force 1 to 4. Occasionally southeast, 2 to 3. A few rain squalls. August 1, heavy gale, as on July 17. August 31, typhoon for 24 hours, force 11 to 12. Barometer, 28.83 inches.

September.—Variable northeasterly to southeasterly; force 1 to 4. Hardly any rain squalls.

## SOUTHERN AND EASTERN COASTS.

Cape Bastion (Lat. 18° 9′ N., Long. 109° 35′ E.), the southern extremity of Hainan and the southern point of a high, bold, and rocky peninsula, is visible from a distance of 25 or 26 miles in clear weather. The water is deep at a short distance off it.

Gaalong Bay.—At 3.3 miles eastward of Cape Bastion is a black rocky point, named Cape Rhinoceros, forming the western extremity of Gaalong Bay, which is about 5 miles wide and 3 miles deep. In the eastern part of the entrance are two round islands, 300 and 340 feet in height, named East and West Brother, and near the middle of the northern part of the bay lies St. Peter or Middle Island, 300 feet in height. Westward of St. Peter Island there are three rocky islets, distant about \(\frac{3}{4}\) and 1.5 miles. The bottom along the western side of the bay is said to be generally foul. A reef is reported to extend off the northeastern extremity of the East Brother.

The usual anchorage is off Gaalong Village, in Sampan Bay, eastward of St. Peter Island, in 7 to 8 fathoms water, sand and mud

bottom. Here vessels are sheltered from all winds by the highland, except those between south and southwest, which force a considerable swell into the bay. A small vessel might moor close under the northern side of St. Peter Island in 4 to 5 fathoms, mud, and be sheltered from all winds; the depth is said to decrease to 3 fathoms halfway toward the northern shore of the bay, and the bottom is sandy.

Directions.—The bay is but scantily sounded, and should be entered with caution. All the three channels are said to be equally safe, guarding against the reef, which is said to extend from the northeastern point of the East Brother.

Supplies.—Small bullocks, fowls, and sweet potatoes are procurable at Gaalong village. Water is obtainable from the small stream northward of the anchorage. Firewood is abundant. Sampan village, in the northeastern corner of the bay, is the base of a small fishing fleet.

Leong soi (Ling sui) Bay, eastward of Gaalong Bay, is about 15 miles wide by 4 miles in depth, and open to the southwest monsoon.

Leong soi (Ling sui) Point (Lat. 18° 24′ N., Long. 110° 3′ E.), its eastern extremity, is formed by several high hummocks having a sandy plain to the northward; a reef extends some distance off the point, and a sunken rock, which breaks, is charted near the shore at about 1.3 miles 40° of the point, reported by the Chinese gunboat Sui tsing. The bay has several sandy beaches, and near its western shore are two islands, but they are too small to afford shelter for vessels anchoring between them and the coast; near them is the large village of Ton kin on a small stream.

Sugar Loaf Point lies 2 miles westward of Leong soi Point, with a hill of that shape over it; and about 2 miles farther to the northwest are several dry rocks, steep-to, which extend <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile from another point.

Lagoon.—At 1.5 miles northward of this latter point is a narrow passage, which leads between two sandy points into an extensive salt-water lagoon of an oval form extending about 7 miles northeastward, but banks of coral and sand render its navigation difficult; it can be entered by junks of 8 feet draft. There is a small fort on the western point of the entrance.

At the back of the lagoon rise the high and unpenetrated Leong soi Mountains, which harbor the wild Lois (natives) who subsist on the rich products which are brought down the river.

The town of Leong soi (Ling sui), the residence of a mandarin, is 7 miles up the Leong soi River, which enters the head of the lagoon. There are two large villages in the lagoon.

Anchorage.—Vessels will be sheltered in Leong soi Bay during the northeast monsoon period by anchoring well in toward Table Mount in about 10 or 12 fathoms, with the fort bearing 34° about 3 miles.

Water of good quality can be obtained from the point near the anchorage.

Doubtful dangers have been reported and are charted at 6 miles and 12 miles southeastward of Leong soi Point. Caution should be exercised when in this neighborhood.

The coast between Leong soi Point and Malautau Point, about 25 miles northeastward, forms a large bay, in which may be seen many sandy beaches and high land near the shores, but it affords no safe anchorage during the southerly monsoon. In the vicinity of the coast near the middle part of the bay, are three prominent peaks of a range of mountains, the center one being the most pointed, a little higher than the others, and 2 miles from the shore. About 18 miles inland there is another mountain of similar appearance, but higher; it was seen from the eastward nearly 90 miles distant, forming three peaks. Malautau Point, 820 feet in height, is the southern extremity of a range of hills; one within it is 940 feet high.

Islands.—Tien Fung (Lat. 18° 26′ N., Long. 110° 8′ E.), or Sail rock, 121 feet in height, lying northeastward, 5.5 miles from Leong soi Point, is one of a cluster of large rocks which, from its being higher and whiter than the others, with the appearance of a junk, has acquired the name of Sail rock. There is a depth of 14 fathoms charted between it and the shore, from which it is distant nearly 3 miles.

Islets.—There are three islets northeastward of Tien Fung, the western of which, the Saddle, 338 feet in height, has two hummocks on it.

The eastern island, Namking chau, is 526 feet high, and the Middle Island 260 feet in height. All three islands are about 1.5 miles offshore, but they are too small to afford shelter from the sea.

About 5 miles southwest of Saddle Island lies Hau tau wan, but it is too shallow for an anchorage. About 2 miles 333° from Namking chau, westward of Chue tau, or Pigs Head, is the entrance to Chue tau kong, an inlet leading to the village of Shing lau and to the town of Mun chau; there are two remarkable rocks at the entrance of the lagoon, where there is a bar upon which the sea breaks.

Fishing nets.—In moderate weather bamboos may frequently be seen standing erect above the surface of the sea; they are the buoys of drift nets which the fishermen place sometimes a long distance from the land to catch flying fish.

Anchorages.—There is anchorage, during the northeast monsoon only, off Nam hoi chun, at about 2 miles northeastward of Namking chau, westward of Malautau Point, in depths of 6 to 9 fathoms, at

from  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile to 2 miles off the sandy beach on the shore northward; also northward of Namking chau, in the bight westward of Chue tau, in 2 to 3 fathoms.

The coast, from Malautau Point, trends 13 miles northeastward to Sifa or False Point, showing a flat country faced with sand beach, with here and there hills rising like islands close over the shore; some of these hills project slightly seaward, and form slight shelter for junks during the northeast monsoon.

Tai Chau or Tinhosa Island, is 2.5 miles in extent in a north and south direction; it is formed by two ridges united by a sandy isthmus (Lat. 18° 42′ N., Long. 110° 27′ E.), which partly covers at high water springs.

The highest hill charted on the southern portion is 797 feet in height; the highest hill on the northern part is charted as being 453 feet in height. They are covered with thick foliage, chiefly pandanus and palmettos.

A detached sand bank, with 3½ to 5 fathoms water and possibly less, lies between ½ and 2 miles westward of the northern part of the island.

The channel between Tai chau and the coast is about 3 miles wide, and the depth of water is stated to be from 9 to 14 fathoms westward of the sand bank mentioned, but it is better avoided until surveyed.

Water and firewood can be obtained at Tai chau; the beaches are the headquarters of a fishing fleet which feed the neighborhood.

Anchorages.—There is sheltered anchorage westward of the island in about 7 fathoms, at about 670 yards off the isthmus, known as the West Anchorage.

Tai chau is of importance as an anchorage or refuge when the northeast monsoon is blowing strong, for small-powered steam vessels proceeding by this, the direct route from Singapore to Hongkong. It affords a perfect lee, and with the exception of Ch'unlan is the last anchorage before a vessel leaves the shelter of the coast and steers out for Hongkong.

The anchorage off the eastern side of the island, abreast the isthmus, will afford anchorage in the opposite season in a depth of 11 to 12 fathoms.

Coast—Sifa Point 494 feet in height, lies 13 miles northeastward of Malautau Point, and has a sunken rock off it. The coast between is chiefly sandy beach, divided by two or three high rocky points; the southernmost, Baker Hill, 390 feet high, has or had a pagoda on it.

Round Islet, 340 feet high, lies 3 miles westward of Sifa Point, and has a rock awash at low water at 100 yards southeastward of it.

False Tinhosa is an islet 150 feet high, 2 miles northeastward of Sifa Point, and from a north or south bearing a pillar rock shows

at its eastern extremity. A rock, 10 feet high, stands on the end of a ledge extending north-northwest of False Tinhosa. There is little or no shelter under this island.

A bank, the existence of which is doubtful, is charted 68° about 5.5 miles from False Tinhosa.

The coast from Sifa Point trends in a northeasterly direction 57 miles, to Tonkon Point, and is low; it is, however, marked by a conspicuous pagoda at Pak ngo, situated 20 miles northward of Sifa Point, and by another at Kachek, 10 miles northward of Pak ngo, and nearly as far inland.

At about 6.5 miles northward of Sifa Point, and within a mile of the coast, are the Twin Black rocks, known also as the Jumeaux, 20 and 30 feet high. Abreast them is a stream, with plantations of coconut trees. The country around is flat, with hills here and there.

Northward of Pak ngo, to Tonkon Point, the shore is lined with coconut groves, and is protected by a barrier reef from 1 to 3 miles seaward, having passages through the reef opposite to fresh-water streams on the coast. Junks work up inside the barrier in smooth water, calling at several small ports. The northern of these ports, named Fung ka, is about 8 miles southwestward from Chun lan fort. Anchorage southward of Fung ka may be obtained during the northeast monsoon in 4 fathoms, sand, under the lee of the reef, which here forms an elbow and joins the land.

The coral reefs are awash at half tide, having depths of from 5 to 6 fathoms water close outside them.

Chun lan (Ch'unlan) (Lat. 19° 32′ N., Long. 110° 49′ E.), situated about 15 miles southwestward from Tonkon Point, at the mouth of Wench'ang River, is the only sheltered port between Yu lin kan and Nau chau, and is a capital typhoon harbor for such craft as can cross the bar, which has a depth of 9 feet at low water, with a spring rise of about 6 feet.

A vessel drawing 11 feet has entered at half tide, when the banks were visible on either side.

Reefs, which break, extend from both points of the entrance to a distance of 1 mile seaward of the fort on the eastern side, leaving a channel to the river about 200 yards wide between them; a ridge of rocks, dry at low water, extends about ½ mile from the fort on the northwest entrance point nearly half way across the channel.

The shore in the vicinity of the entrance is composed of a low sand ridge with coconut trees extending almost to the water's edge.

Directions.—To enter, bring the fort to bear 2°, as in view on chart, when distant about 2 miles, and steer for it on that bearing, until the first joss house to the eastward of the entrance bears 42°, when the vessel will be close to the shoalest part of the channel. Then shape a course 355° for the joss house up the river (the roof

only of which is visible above the bank), which leads between the breakers on either side and within 100 yards of the fort; following the bend of the river will then lead eastward of the rocks extending from the western shore. There is but 9 feet in the channel here at low water over a rocky bottom, the same depth as on the bar; the chart is but a sketch, and must be used with caution.

Anchorage.—There is a somewhat confined anchorage for a small vessel, in 3 fathoms, just inside Fort Point.

H. M. S. Egeria anchored off Chun lan River in a depth of 7 fathoms hard sand, with the fort on the eastern point of entrance to the river bearing 327°, and Mount Tonkon 52°.

Chun lan (Ch'unlan) is the headquarters of a considerable junk trade to Singapore and Siam. The people though quiet were not friendly (1894), and the natives should not be trusted as pilots.

Coast—Tonkon Point (Tungku shan)—Mount Tonkon (Tungku) (Lat. 19° 40′ N., Long. 111° 2′ E.), the summit of a range of hills, 1,229 feet high, is a dark-colored mountain, from which a point with three or four hillocks stretches 2.5 miles south-southeast to Tonkon Point. A cluster of rocks above water, one of which is 15 feet high, extends ½ mile from the point, southward of which is the barrier reef.

There is but little shelter under the point in a strong northeast monsoon, at which time the swell rolls in heavily along the whole line of shore; rocks just above water exist in the most sheltered portion, and the bay is encumbered with discolored patches.

Lorne rock is a pinnacle rock with a depth of 6 feet at low water, situated with Chun lan Fort bearing 290°, distant 12.5 miles, and Mount Tonkon 356°. The rock is 60 feet long and 15 feet wide, and is surrounded by depths of 30 fathoms.

Caution.—This coast has not been surveyed; other reefs may exist beyond those charted. Vessels, therefore, proceeding along the land to avoid the strength of either monsoon, should exercise caution; and the use of the lead is enjoined. If standing northward, by night, Tonkon Point should be given a wide berth, as there is usually a set toward the shore.

The coast from Tonkon Point apparently trends in a northerly direction, 24 miles to Mofu Point, but it is only shown in hair line; northward of Tonkon Point for some distance the shore is said to be low and sandy, beyond which it becomes again high.

Mofu Point (Lat. 20° 1′ N., Long. 110° 56′ E.), the northeastern extremity of Hainan Island, when seen from the eastward, resembles Tonkon Point. It is backed by a double-peaked black hill of the same name, 655 feet in height, and visible from a considerable distance in clear weather. The point is sandy, and is bordered by a reef, to a distance of about 2 miles, steep-to.

Owing to the prevailing thick weather during the northeast monsoon, Mofu Point is frequently difficult to distinguish by vessels making it from the northeastward; it may be recognized by a conspicuous conical tomb close to its extremity; also by the hills westward of the point being of a reddish soil, while those to the southward are higher and covered with black patches.

The coast from Mofu Point to the westward, forming the south side of Hainan Strait, is referred to on page 340.

Taya Islands, separated from Hainan Island by a channel about 13 miles wide, with depths under 20 fathoms, consist of two groups of high, almost inaccessible, barren islands, seven in number, with some offlying rocks.

The northeastern group consists of four islands. North Taya Island, 648 feet high, the northernmost and largest, can be seen in clear weather from a considerable distance. At ½ mile southward of it is Perforated Island, 375 feet high, with sunken rocks between. A cone-shaped islet of the same height lies close off its southwestern end, with sunken rocks close southward of both. The southwesternmost island of this group lies about 1.3 miles from North Taya Island, and is 388 feet high.

The southwestern group consists of three islands, the northern-most of which, 175 feet high, is very small. The middle and largest of this group,  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile from the northernmost island, has three peaks, the highest being 456 feet high; there is a sunken rock close off its northern extremity. South Taya Island, 276 feet high, at 2.8 miles from the northernmost of this group, makes as two islets from the northward and eastward; there is a sunken rock off its north side.

The depths in the passage, 3.3 miles wide between the two groups, range from 23 to 33 fathoms.

Anchorage.—Temporary anchorage may be obtained in 20 fathoms, mud, about 1 mile southwestward of North Taya Island, but a swell rolls round the island during the northeast monsoon.

### SOUTH AND WEST COASTS.

Aspect.—On the southern and western coasts are several mountain summits, useful for identifying the coast when approaching it. About 20 miles northwestward of Cape Bastion, the southern extremity of Hainan, is Mount Horn, 3,160 feet in height, so named from its appearance from the eastward. From the westward it appears as a round summit. It is situated in Lat. 18° 26′ N., Long. 109° 22′ E. Southeastward of it is Pagoda Mountain. About 17 miles within southwestern point is the pinnacle summit of Mount Etna, 4,967 feet in height, and farther northeastward the Great Ng chi Range, the highest peak of which, 5,870 feet, is the summit of the island; there are many peaks in this range over 4,000 feet in

height, but they will probably be enveloped in clouds at most times. See also page 327, and view at the bottom of B. A. Chart 2062.

Whirlpools, or eddies, caused by the tidal stream or current rushing over uneven bottom, are frequently met with off these coasts, and have been reported as breakers; no opportunity should be lost of getting a cast of the lead when seen to avoid them being charted as dangers if reported without doing so.

Yu lin kan Bay (Lat. 18° 11' N., Long. 109° 32' E.), situated on the west side of Cape Bastion, affords in the harbor at its head, the best anchorage on the southern coast of Hainan.

The bay is separated from Sama Bay to the westward by a long narrow strip of land, which terminates in Cape Salomon, between which and Tomb Point, 147 feet high, is the entrance, 4.5 miles wide. About 1 mile northward of Tomb Point is Belier Island, connected with the shore by a reef; a sunken rock lies off its northwestern extremity.

Anchorage.—The bay offers good anchorage in the northeast monsoon period only, in depths of 6 to 7 fathoms, good holding ground, eastward, or within Yu lin kan Point, over a space of a mile or more in extent, with a sand and mud bottom mixed with broken shells. There is a spacious anchorage farther out, in 9 or 10 fathoms, on a mud and sand bottom, good holding ground, about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile northwestward of Belier Island, but the whole of the bay is exposed to the wind and swell during the southwest monsoon period. There appear to be no hidden dangers in the bay, excepting the small reefs that extend a short distance off the shores.

During the northeast monsoon the wind blows from east-northeast across the bay, so that a sailing vessel can make the inner harbor.

The harbor at the head of the bay is surrounded by hills, affords secure shelter at all seasons, and is available for vessels of moderate draft; the entrance, though narrow, has a low-water depth of 4½ fathoms over a breadth of about 100 yards; the depths in the southern or outer are from 3½ to 5 fathoms, but not over any great extent; the bottom is soft mud; the northeastern part affords good anchorage for small craft in about 2 fathoms.

Reefs.—The eastern point of the harbor entrance is fronted by a rocky reef which extends more than 200 yards into the channel, and 400 yards to the northwestward of the point; southeastward it extends about 200 yards.

The western point has 4 fathoms within a short distance of it. Southward of the western point a reef extends about 200 yards from the shore, as far as Yu lin kan Point.

The shores of the harbor are fronted by shallow banks to distances varying from 200 to 500 yards; there is an isolated bank in the center of the harbor, nearly dry at low water springs.



The harbor forms the outlet of a river which falls into its northeast part, toward which the depths decrease gradually.

Directions.—The best time to enter is at low water, the dangers being then more conspicuous. The peak, 86 feet in height, on the northern shore of the harbor, or two white marks under it, bearing 329°, lead through the entrance in 4½ fathoms water, at 100 yards distant from the western point of the entrance (see view on chart). Haul to the westward round the western point, and anchor as convenient in about 4½ fathoms, near the customs hulk.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at 9h. 5m.; maximum mean rise about 2½ feet.

Supplies.—Water is abundant near the coconut trees on the southwestern side of the harbor, westward of the entrance; beef and poultry are also obtainable there. The native dialect is not understood by the Cantonese.

Cape Salomon separates Yu lin kan Bay from Sama Bay; it is the extremity of a peninsula some 3 miles in length, attaining a height of 853 feet, and is connected with the mainland by a low isthmus.

Sama Bay (Lat. 18° 14′ 30′′ N., Long. 109° 31′ 00′′ E.), situated westward of Cape Salomon, has several rocks and islets in it, with anchorage in Sama port for small vessels.

East Island, 3 miles westward of the cape, is 207 feet in height, with a bank of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at about 1 mile southeastward of it.

West Island, 384 feet in height, lies 3 miles westward of East Island, and is fairly wooded; a reef extends southward of it. There are some fishermen's huts on the north part of the island.

A reef with two rocky heads lies nearly midway and southward of a line joining the two islands; the passage between is not recommended.

Sama port, at the head of the bay, affords anchorage during the northeast monsoon period in depths of 2 to 5 fathoms, and should be approached with the high rock on the southern shore westward of the village bearing 86° to the required depth.

A small river falls into the eastern part of the port, affording shelter to junks and boats.

The town of Sama is the residence of a mandarin; it is practically the market of Yu lin kan, a good road connecting the two, and is a large fishing station. Some 3 miles from Sama is a colony of Mohammedans, of whose origin little is known. An East Indian Co.'s vessel was wrecked here in 1819, which might be the solution. The crew possibly founded their own settlement, Ton mei koi, and by intermarrying with the Lois natives their numbers have increased to 1,000 persons. They are visited from time to time by priests from Macao.

Some rocks above water form the northern side of the port, distant about 800 yards from the southern point of its entrance. An islet lies 400 yards westward of the southern point of the entrance; the space between is foul.

Great Cape (Lat. 18° 18′ N., Long. 109° 11′ E.), situated 20 miles westward of Sama Bay, is bold, and has a flat summit 1,740 feet high, with a slight saddle in it. A hill, with pagoda, is situated about 5 miles eastward of the cape.

Rock.—A rock, awash at low water, lies 3.5 miles southwestward from Great Cape, with depths of 5 to 10 fathoms between.

Horn Mountain, before mentioned, lies about 12 miles northeast of Great Cape.

Yaichu Bay, between Great Cape and Snake Point, is exposed to southerly and southwesterly winds, but affords good anchorage during the northeast monsoon in  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, about 2 miles from the beach at its head; from this anchorage to the shore the water shoals gradually.

A good position for anchoring is with Yaichu Fort bearing 24° and Mud Islet in line with Button Islet.

Yaichu Town is the capital of an independent magistracy; it is some miles up the river, which is only navigable by boats in the rainy season. The river is barred, with 7 feet water over it, within which there is anchorage for small craft.

Tui mui kok (Snake Point) has on its extremity two hummocks 90 feet in height. The high land closes the shore at this point in one or two peaks, and then recedes and forms a background to the level plain of Yaichu, which appears to be fertile and well watered, closing the coast again at Great Cape.

Islets.—Off Snake Point are two islets—Mud Islet, 223 feet high, distant 2 miles southward, and Button or Siku Islet, 256 feet high, distant 3 miles to the southwestward. Maddock rock, which dries, lies 400 yards northeast of Button Isle.

Yaichu is the principal trading place on the southern coast of Hainan. At the entrance to the river, Nai Tsiu, is a bar with 7 feet water, within which is a good but small and shallow harbor.

A little way up the river, said to be only navigable for boats in the rainy season, though apparently it extends a long way northeastward, stands the town of Yaichu, with a citadel or fort to the westward. The country is fertile and well watered.

Winds.—Within 5 or 6 miles of this part of the coast, the northeast monsoon blows from northeast to east-northeast off Yu lin kan; northeast to southeast off Great Cape; light and variable off Snake Point; north to north-northwest off Southwest Point; north to north by east off Shoal Point; with a tendency to blow off the land at night.

79795 - 15 - - 22

Reported dangers.—Tide rips and eddies are very frequent in the neighborhood of this coast, and their appearance has often been reported as shoals, through not investigating them at the time, by getting a cast of the lead.

The coast from Snake Point trends west-northwestward for 20 miles to Southwest Point. The low coast line forms a long bay fronted with sandy hillocks from 20 to 40 feet high and with the village of Pau Ping and others.

A sand bank apparently nearly awash is charted 260° 6 miles from Snake Point, with other shallow banks nearer the shore. At 10 miles westward of Snake Point the 5-fathom curve is 6 miles offshore, with shallow patches within. Great Cape, open southward of Button Islet, leads southward of these dangers.

A patch of 4\frac{3}{4} fathoms, sand, reported in 1897, steep-to, is charted 251°, distant 10 miles from Button Islet.

Three-tree anchorage, 2 miles southeastward of Southwest Point, affords shelter in a depth of about 6 to 8 fathoms, sandy bottom, during the northeast monsoon period, but it is open to the wind and swell at the opposite season, and is then untenable. On the coast abreast is a white pagoda surrounded by trees. Owing to the increase of vegetation, the three trees which gave the name to the anchorage are no longer discernible.

False Hill, 400 feet, and Flat Hill, 700 feet high, are in the foreground northward of Three-tree anchorage.

Southwest Point (Lat. 18° 31' N., Long. 108° 41' E.), on which is situated Ying Khoa Village, is bare and sandy, and the country is flat; but toward Southwest Hill to the northward foliage commences and coconut plantations are common.

Ying Khoa, on Southwest Point, is a large fishing village built of stone. A reef fronts the village, and there are numerous fishing stakes extending a considerable distance off it. Lights are exhibited on some of the trees here for the use of the fishermen out at night.

The people were not hospitable (1881). Landing should be effected in native boats.

Southwest Bank, two patches, with about 2 fathoms water, is situated 256°, distant 4.5 miles from Southwest Point, and is 1.5 miles in length in a northwest and southeast direction. It breaks with a moderate swell, is steep-to on its offshore side, and is connected by a shallow ridge to a shoal of 1 fathom, lying 299° from it, distant 3.5 miles. A patch of 4½ fathoms is charted 285°, distant 5 miles from the 1-fathom patch, or about halfway to Outer Bank.

Outer Bank, of sand, lies 288°, about 18 miles off Southwest Point, and is a dangerous, isolated shoal of about 1½ fathoms. It is steep-to both northward and southward and breaks in a moderate swell, but would not show in smooth water.

Cométe Bank is a patch of 4½ fathoms, situated about 2 miles northward of the center of Outer Bank.

Coast—Kam yan koh or Shoal Point.—From Ying Khoa Village the coast trends in a general northerly direction to Kam yan koh, a distance of 22 miles; Southwest Hill, 690 feet in height, with a village on its southern side, lies about midway between, with a hill 1,085 feet high within it. Near and northward of Southwest Hill are many trees, particularly the coconut. Near Kam yan koh sand again predominates; thence to Shin chim koh, which lies 11 miles northward, there is a long sandy plain, with occasional scrub and lagoons.

Reefs.—Foul ground, named Kam yan sha, extends for several miles off Kam yan koh, with numerous tide rips over and seaward of it. A patch of 3 feet is charted 6.5 miles 215° from the point.

Tan shin sha patches, with depths of 3 and 3\frac{3}{4} fathoms, are situated about 8 miles offshore and 10 miles northward of Southwest Point; others may exist.

Directions.—If steering to the northwestward and desirous of visiting Ying Khoa Village on Southwest Point, steer in for Mount Etna in line with the village bearing 40°; or, if that mount is obscured, steer in with the eastern end of the village in line with Flat Hill, bearing 49°, to avoid Southwest Bank.

False Hill in line with the village leads on to Southwest Bank.

Deep water exists between Southwest Bank and Ying Khoa Village, and it is probable there is a channel leading seaward from here passing northward of Outer Bank, but it has not been surveyed, and is therefore better avoided, more especially during the southwest monsoon period.

In navigating along the coast it would be prudent to keep outside a depth of 20 fathoms.

Coast—Aspect—Mount Etna, 4,967 feet high (Lat. 18° 45′ N., Long. 108° 53′ E.), is a remarkable mountain and a capital landmark. It shows as a precipitous crater from southeast or northwestward, but viewed from the westward it appears as a single pinnacle. Between Pyramid Point and the land a few miles to the southward Mount Etna is not visible when within 15 miles of the coast, being hidden by mountains in the foreground. The mountain ranges are continuous from the vicinity of Tai chau Island, on the southeast coast, round to Southwest Hill, which marks the extremity of the Etna Range. Several fine valleys occur, notably at the head of Yu lin kan Harbor, at Yaichu Bay, and westward of Snake Point. From Southwest Hill northward as far as Hoita the ranges lie far inland, and although they close the coast somewhat at that port from there they turn away eastward, leaving only detached hills between them and the north coast. See view of Mount Etna, bottom of B. A. chart 2062.

The coast northward of Kam yan koh, or Shoal Point, is fronted by a shallow bank to 4 or 5 miles, but its limit is uncertain. A patch of 5 fathoms is charted 9 miles offshore about midway between Shoal and Pyramid Points, with many tide rips in this neighborhood.

Shinchim koh or Pyramid Point (Telanchau) (Lat. 19° 05′ N., Long. 108° 37′ E.), the southern limit of Bakli Bay, is a low flat sandy point having a steep rock, 138 feet high, on it.

A rock, 10 feet high, lies near the coast a few miles southward of Shinchim koh.

Anchorage.—Shinchim koh Point affords some protection for junks on either side depending on the monsoon, the anchorage being in 3 fathoms, mud. A reef fringes the shore northward of the point at a distance of 400 yards, and a depth of 3 fathoms will be obtained close up to it. The rock, 138 feet high, on the point bearing southward of 215° clears the reef. Landing may be effected at about 1,200 yards eastward of the point. The place offers no supplies, but it is the only anchorage for communicating with Bakli Village.

Bakli Bay, with the village and a fort at its head, lies between Shinchim koh and Sikongsha (Segansha) Point, 7 miles northward of it. A low sandy beach extends eastward from the latter point to a reef abreast the village, which covers at high water, and extends about 200 yards off; the depths are not more than 2 fathoms at 2 miles offshore; shallow water is charted as extending 5 miles off Sikongsha or Segansha Point. The bay is not known to afford anchorage except under Pyramid Point, before mentioned, and extreme caution should be used if necessary to enter it.

Chun yan Bay (Ch'aughua) is small and shallow, with a river discharging into it by several mouths. There is the walled town of same name at 4 miles southward of Bluff Point.

Bluff Point (Lat. 19° 21' N., Long. 108° 41' E.), 120 feet high, is bold and rocky, with 8 fathoms water close to its western shoulder and 4 fathoms off the northern shoulder entering Chun yan Bay. There is a high sand cliff on both faces, that on the southern face falling abruptly into Chun yan Bay. This declivity, kept on a bearing of 61°, will, it is stated, allowing for the set of the tidal stream, lead between the northern and southern sandbanks off this coast.

Banks.—The extent of the northern bank is doubtful, and it seldom breaks, but the southern bank extends out from Sikongsha Point about 5 miles, as above stated; it generally shows by the discoloration of the water, and breaks in a fresh breeze.

There is probably shelter from the southwest monsoon immediately northward of Bluff Point.

Hoita.—From Bluff Point the coast trends northeastward for 15 miles to Hoita, commencing with a high sandy beach, and getting low and darker colored toward the Saddle Hills, which are 1,060 feet

high. On both sides of Hoita the coast is foul. On the northern side is a sunken reef about 3 miles in length extending \frac{3}{4} mile from the shore, and fairly steep-to.

The estuary of the river on which Hoita is situated is dry at low water, with the exception of a small portion in which one small vessel can lie when moored head and stern. The least water on the bar was 6 feet when last examined, the deepest water being on the village side, but it is subject to change, and the port could only be entered with local knowledge; springs rise about 9 feet.

The town is conspicuous with its white houses and junks at the anchorage; the Saddle Hills are the best guide from any distance, they being the only isolated coast hills between Bluff Point and Pingmar.

Hoita is the largest fishing station on the coast, and is the nearest port to the copper mines formerly worked by the Chinese. Water and an abundant supply of wood can be procured.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage off Hoita in a depth of 7 fathoms with the fort bearing 114°, distant about 3 miles or more.

The coast from Hoita trends northeastward 7 miles to Flat Point, which is about 200 feet in height, whence it trends more eastward into Chappu Bay.

Chappu Bay lies between Flat Point and Cape Pillar, 15 miles apart, and is open to all westerly winds, but affords anchorage during the northeast monsoon.

Tamchau Reef, situated in the center of the bay, is about 2.5 miles in length in a northeast and southwest direction, and has a sand cay 6 feet high near its southwestern extremity. The bay between the reef and the shore dangers has an average depth of 5 fathoms.

Hiong Po (Yang P'u) Harbor (Lat. 19° 42′ N., Long. 109° 10′ E.) is a well-sheltered harbor at the head of Chappu Bay, and is available for vessels of moderate draft, there being a low-water depth of about 15 feet over the bar, situated ½ mile southward of the western point, with better water off Hiong Po. The entrance to Tam chau lagoon, within Hiong Po, is 600 yards wide between the forts on either side, with a depth of 5 fathoms, within which there is shelter from all winds.

Banks—Anchorage.—Hiong Po Point, the western side of the entrance, is a narrow peninsula 1.5 miles in length, and covered with groups of coconut trees, and bamboos with a reef dry at low water about a mile to the westward with which it is connected by a bank of sand; the eastern or harbor side of the peninsula is foul to the distance of 200 yards only.

A sandbank, which dries 12 feet, near its northwestern extremity, where it borders the channel, extends 1.5 miles from the southern fort, reducing the channel to the harbor to a width of about 400 yards.

This bank affords excellent shelter to the anchorage in 5 or 6 fathoms off Hiong Po (Yang P'u).

Tides.—The time of high water, full and change, is about 5h., and the rise at springs 15 feet.

Directions.—Coming from the northwestward, Mount Ungo, 148 feet high, bearing 143°, leads between Tamchau Reef and the reef off the western point of the entrance. When Kung chin Hill is seen midway between the forts at the entrance to the harbor, bearing 69°, steer for it, which will lead over the bar in about 15 feet at low water. When Mount Pingmar bears 35° (in line with the right part of a group of coconut trees), steer for it, passing midway between the western shore and the sandbank, to the anchorage off Hiong Po; or continue along the northern shore at a distance of about 200 yards to the anchorage in the lagoon within the forts; just within the forts there is a depth of 7 fathoms, but how far the deep water extends is not stated. The lagoon, however, is said to be encumbered with sandbanks. A pier is being built in it by the Chiao Hsing Mining Concession (1910).

The tidal streams run with considerable strength at springs, therefore toward low or high water would seem to be the best time to enter the harbor. It could not be entered without a chart, unless with local assistance.

Hiong Po (Yang P'u), on the northern side of the approach to the lagoon, is a fishing village. Many junks are anchored off here at times.

Tamchau, situated about 6 miles above the head of the lagoon on the southern bank of the river, is one of the most important trading places in Hainan.

Cape Pillar (Lat. 19° 47' N., Long. 109° 09' E.) the northern point of approach to Chappu Bay, is the extremity of a range of red bare hills, and has a peculiar pillar rock on it. Two islets, named the Thumb and the Mandarin's Cap, the latter 40 feet high, lie on the reef fronting the coast, which is steep-to. A pagoda stands near the point.

The coast.—From Cape Pillar the coast is low and sandy, with coconut trees to Pingmar Point, a steep coast cliff surmounted by a two-peaked hill. A reef fronts it to the distance of about \( \frac{3}{4} \) mile for about 4 miles from Cape Pillar; the remainder is apparently free from danger beyond a short distance.

Hau sui Bay lies between Pingmar Point and the point below Lamko Hill, south side of western approach to Hainan Strait, and is about 12 miles wide.

Reefs.—A reef, dry at low water, and about 4 miles in length, occupies the center of the bay, and is steep-to on its northern side; on its inner or southern side is a sand cay, named Chung kwan yan, only a little above high water.

A coral patch which dries about 6 feet, lies ½ mile southward of the sand cay. There is a patch which dries about 3 feet at 1.5 miles west of the village of Hau sui.

Directions—Anchorage.—Good sheltered anchorage at all seasons may be obtained within the long detached reef, by small craft, in 4 fathoms, at ½ mile southwestward of the sand cay. To enter the bay from the westward, steer in with Kung chin Hill bearing 170° until the sand cay bears 91°, when haul up, with it a little on the port bow, anchoring as above. To enter from the eastward, steer in with Kung chin Hill bearing 213°, anchoring as requisite; if wishing to anchor under the reef, as before mentioned, haul to the westward when southward of the patch which dries, situated southward of the sand cay, thence as requisite.

The village of Hau sui is on the eastern side of the bay, at the entrance to the creek.

Hau sui Creek, at the southeastern extremity of the bay, has depths of 2 to 3 fathoms, with good shelter for junks and other light craft within. Sand banks extend a mile or more southwestward of the village and the southern point of entrance, leaving only a narrow channel about dry at low water springs. A large number of junks use the creek and the anchorage outside; it can only be entered at high water with local knowledge.

### HAINAN STRAIT.

General remarks.—Hainan Strait, situated between the northern coast of Hainan Island and the southern coast of Lei chau Peninsula, is about 50 miles in length east and west, and from 10 to 14 miles in breadth; it has numerous sand banks extending in a northeasterly direction for a distance of about 25 miles from its eastern entrance, and a few isolated banks in its western entrance.

There are three entrances from the eastward, namely, the North, Middle, and South Channels, all with deep water.

The South Channel, or inner passage, being near the shore, though narrow, is chiefly used; it is buoyed, and should always be taken in thick weather.

Middle Channel is strongly recommended in clear weather.

North Channel is not recommended when coming from the eastward.

There is an inshore passage northeastward to Nau chau available for vessels of light draft in charge of a pilot.

The western entrance is common to them all.

**Directions.**—For banks in the western approach and directions for the strait, see pages 343, 347.

Landmarks.—Approaching Hainan Strait from the westward, the following hills form useful landmarks for ascertaining the position of a vessel; and on a nearer approach those mentioned on page 344 with the directions.



Mounts Pingmar.—About 4 miles within Pingmar Point are Mounts Pingmar, two conical peaks about a mile apart, and about 656 feet in height, capital landmarks, in Lat. 19° 51′ N., Long. 109° 17′ E.; there is a pagoda on the highest, but it can not easily be made out.

Kung chin.—At 7 miles east-southeast of the Pingmar Mounts, is the wooded, conical hill Kung chin, 683 feet high, standing isolated in the plain.

Limkou or Lamko Hill, 614 feet in height, about 20 miles eastward of Mounts Pingmar, has a summit somewhat flat with two little peaks. The village of Limkou lies about 2 miles eastward of it.

South shore.—Lamko Point may be considered to be the south-western point of Hainan Strait; it is distant about 17 miles south-westward from Cape Kami, which forms the northwestern point of the strait.

Reef.—From Lamko Point westward, to the entrance to Hau sui Bay, the shore is fronted by reef, dry at low water to a distance of about ½ mile, outside which shallow water, less than 3 fathoms, extends 1.5 miles offshore in places; it should not be approached within a depth of 10 fathoms, or to a less distance than 2 miles.

Reported Reef.—A reef, depth not stated, has been reported in Lat. 20° 2′ 40″ N., Long. 109° 36′ 5″ E., or 6.3 miles 290° from Lamko Point Lighthouse. It is charted as a rock with less than 6 feet, outside the 10 fathoms curve. Position extremely doubtful.

Light (Lat. 20° 0′ N., Long. 109° 42′ E.).—From an iron tower on piles, 67 feet high, painted white, with two red horizontal bands, situated about 250 yards within Lamko Point, is exhibited, at an elevation of 63 feet above high water, a flashing white light, visible 13 miles. The light keeper's dwellings are white.

Coast.—Eastward of Lamko Point is a bay 6 miles wide, with depths of 7 to 8 fathoms in the entrance, shoaling gradually toward the shore. There is a harbor suitable for junks in its southeastern corner, with a small fort on the western point of the entrance.

Western Cap, a hill 46 feet high, is near the western shore of this bay, 1 mile southeastward of Lamko Point.

Maniu Harbor (Lat. 19° 58′ N., Long. 109° 51′ E.) is situated about 8 miles eastward of Lamko Point. Its entrance, between Hong pi kok and the islet off Sad Point, is 3.5 miles wide, with depths of about 5 fathoms; within Pao yu Point the depths are under 3 fathoms, rapidly shoaling to the shore. A small fort marks the head of the harbor, and near it is a creek, up which small junks entering at high water find shelter. Eastward of Hong pi kok, the bottom is foul and shallow for the distance of 1 mile, and there is a patch of 5 fathoms between this foul ground and Sad Point Islet, off the eastern extremity of the harbor.

The land around and at the back of Maniu Harbor is low, and well cultivated.

Anchorage.—Good shelter will be found in Maniu Harbor from easterly winds, in 4 fathoms, blue clay, ½ mile northward of Pao yu Point, with Sad Point Islet bearing 21°. There is also good anchorage during westerly winds in the western part of the harbor, in about the same depth.

Magpie Point.—From Sad Point the coast trends eastward for about 3 miles, in a line of red cliffs, to Magpie Point, rendered conspicuous by a detached piece of cliff 48 feet high off it. These cliffs, which are steep-to, range from 50 to 60 feet in height, and the black lava underlying the soil appears like a high-water mark.

Ching mae Bay lies between Magpie and Ching mae Points. The head or southwestern corner is marked by Fah yung, a hill 200 feet high, which overlooks a lagoon that affords shelter to junks, and extends for some miles inland.

About 6 or 7 miles inland are two extinct craters, named the Hummocks, 564 and 705 feet in height, and visible about 25 miles in clear weather. Between Fah yung and the Hummocks stands Tong sui mun, a solitary hill, 470 feet high.

The land is low around this bay, rising gradually toward the Hummocks; the country is fertile and well cultivated, and the beach is fringed with trees and bushes.

Bank.—The head of the bay, between Magpie and Tong sui Points, has a sand bank, with as little as 4 feet water, extending for a distance of 4 miles east and west within the 3-fathom curve, leaving a channel between it and the points, as charted.

From Tong sui Point, for a distance of 4 miles to the eastward, the shallow water extends a mile from the shore.

Fishing stakes.—There are several fishing villages in the eastern part of the bay, and the nets, some of which are floating and some fixed, barricade the shore for a considerable distance.

Anchorage.—Good anchorage may be obtained in the south-western part of Ching mae Bay, in a depth of 3½ fathoms, mud, about a mile 338° of Shak ket long Fort; and in the eastern part about ¾ mile southwestward of the village near Ching mae Point, in 4 fathoms, mud, passing in between the two sets of fishing stakes, where an opening is usually left for the trading junks; at any rate avoid fouling them.

This village, built of black bricks or lava, forms a conspicuous dark patch against the sand hills.

The town of Ching mae is situated about 1.5 miles within the shore of the bay, 5 miles southward of Ching mae Point.

Ching mae Point (Lat. 20° 4′ N., Long. 110° 10′ E.), the eastern limit of Ching mae Bay, is low and sandy, with shallow water extend-

ing nearly a mile off it. The point is difficult to distinguish after dark, as the hills stand so far back; it is better, therefore, to give it a wide berth in passing and trust to making out vessels' lights for a guide into Hoi hau Bay.

Fishing stakes extend from this point for a distance of about a mile.

Mandarins Cap, a remarkable cone-shaped mound within the eastern part of Ching mae Point, about ½ mile from the beach, is a conspicuous object, and forms the western extremity of a range of sand hills from 70 to 80 feet high.

Hoi hau Bay (Lat. 20° 4′ N., Long., 110° 17′ E.), situated between Ching mae Point and Baksha Point, 8.5 miles eastward of it, is nearly all shallow.

Dale Banks.—Depths of less than 3 fathoms extend in a tongue for about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile northwestward of a line joining those points; the shallow portion just within the edge, which has depths of 7 to 9 feet, and the patches eastward of it, with depths under 12 feet, are named Dale Banks. Banks of sand and mud, with sand islets in places, extend 1.5 miles off the shore abreast Hoi hau, on the eastern side of the bay.

Baksha, or Hoi hau Point, is low and sandy, with occasional hillocks and patches of green scrub. The village of Baksha, a cluster of houses built of lava and black bricks, is situated about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile back from the low-water mud flats, and about a mile southward of the point. Fishing stakes extend about 2 miles off Baksha Point, into 8 and 9 fathoms water, at times.

Sand and mud flats, almost covered at high water, front the coast southwestward of the point, with shallow channels between, leading to Baksha and Hoi hau; these flats are subject to change during bad weather.

Aspect.—The land in the neighborhood of Hoi hau is low, and appears well wooded; midway between Ching mae Point and Hoi hau there are some red cliffs, with barren sand hills on the west, and wooded hills, 50 to 60 feet high, on the eastern side. An obelisk, with a fort near it, lies on the shore to the eastward of the wooded hills. There are two remarkable palms eastward of Baksha Village. Kiung chau pagoda, 154 feet high, northeastward of the capital, forms a good landmark, but is hidden by trees for a certain distance eastward of Baksha Point, reappearing again apparently when abreast the point.

Light.—From a cylindrical iron tower, 22 feet high, painted white, situated near the head of Hoi hau Bay, is exhibited, at an elevation of 73 feet above high water, an alternating white and red group flashing light, visible 10 miles.

The lighthouse itself is difficult to make out, as it stands in front of a low white building, which latter is easily seen.

Anchorage—Directions.—The anchorage in the eastern part of Hoi hau Bay is partially protected by Baksha sand flats, especially for small craft and junks anchored well in towards the river, but it is open from northeast, round by north, to west.

Coming from the eastward, after rounding the fishing stakes off Baksha Point, a course 206° for the Hummocks will lead to the anchorage; when Kiung chau pagoda bears 130° anchor in a depth of 4 fathoms. A heavy and confused sea gets up here at times, but the holding ground is said to be good, a mixture of mud and sand.

Vessels from the westward steer for Baksha Point, bearing southward of 91° until Kiung chau pagoda bears 130°, when it should be steered for, anchoring when the Hummocks bear 209° true, as before.

Junks and other small craft usually anchor about 2 miles farther inshore, in about 10 feet, 1.5 miles northeastward of the light.

Landing or embarking cargo is greatly impeded by the long mud flats stretching off Hoi hau Town. The facilities for transhipment are not good, owing to the necessary small size of the cargo boats from want of sufficient depth in the channel to the town.

Tides and tidal streams.—It is high water, full and change, at Hoi hau, at 7h.; springs rise from 6 to 10 feet. Time and height is very irregular.

The flood makes to the northeast for about 16 hours, the ebb to the southwest for about 8 hours; velocity 1½ or 2 knots an hour. In like manner the tidal stream through Hainan Strait sets to the westward for 16 hours, to the eastward for about 8 hours; greatest strength 2 to 3 knots an hour. On the Hainan shore the stream is said to turn an hour earlier than in the offing.

Hoi hau River.—The entrance of Hoi hau River is between two whitewashed forts. At low water the shallow flat-bottomed native boats can not enter, but large junks are taken up for repairs at high tides.

The shore on both sides of the channel is broken up into a succession of islands by various creeks leading into the river. On the northern side, approaching the customs jetty, are the Standard Oil Co.'s godown, that of Messrs. Schomberg & Co., and the French consulate; on the south are the German consulate and other foreign residences and Hongs. On a creek are the British consulate, the commissioner's house, and the American mission. The land in the vicinity is very flat and low, the buildings being hemmed in by creeks to the northwest. On the east is a mass of native houses adjoining the walled town of Hoi hau. To the south and west are creeks, salt pans, and paddy fields which cut off the foreign houses from the ridges which rise to 40 or 50 feet all round, utilized as positions for forts. Near the river is a pagoda 150 feet in height.

Craft of 2½ feet draft can proceed to Fahi, a market town of 2,000 persons, the usual terminus of the traffic on this river, 42 miles from Kiung chau fu. There are wattle dams in places opened for craft to pass through. The river rises from 6 to 8 feet in the rainy season, but not more than 3 feet can be depended on in the openings in the dams.

Hoi hau is the seaport and treaty port of the city of Kiung chau (the seat of government in Hainan Island, and distant from its port about 3.5 miles), which was opened to foreign trade in 1876. Vessels, on account of the shallowness of the bay and river, are compelled to anchor from 3 to 4 miles from the town.

**Population—The town** of Hoi hau contains about 12,000 persons, and has a governor; the population of Kiung chau is about 35,000.

Trade.—The principal exports comprise pigs, sugar, grass cloth, betel nuts, seeds, sesamum, eggs, fish, and ground-nut cakes; rubber, cassia, camphor, and tobacco could be remuneratively cultivated. The imports consist of opium, rice, cotton yarn, shirtings, flour, kerosene, ginseng, Japanese matches, and vermicelli. Most of the exports are brought from up river by the trading junks and boats.

Communication—Telegraph.—There are three or four lines of steamers running to Hongkong and Pakhoi, etc., at intervals of a few days, and also to Haifong, Tourane, Singapore, and Bangkok. The bimonthly steamers between Kwang chau wan and Haifong call here. The China-Siam steamers also call here. There are three separate postal systems, viz, the British postal agency, the French imperial post office, and the imperial Chinese post. There are branch offices at important places.

There is a radio station at Hoi hau, connecting with Hsu wen on the mainland, about 13 miles distant, said to be constantly out of order; typhoon warnings often come after the storm has passed.

A land line connects Hoi hau with Kiung chau fu, the capital, 4 miles distant.

Supplies are fairly plentiful, prices moderate; notice to procure them is required. Water is brought off in water boats and reported (1903) to be of good quality.

Coal.—Messrs. Schomberg, the agents for Messrs. Butterfield and Swire, keep a supply of 100 tons, other firms about 200 tons, and the Chinese Government from 100 to 200 tons; it is shipped from lighters at the anchorage.

Winds.—Hoi hau is frequently visited by hard squalls, lasting only a few minutes, but with such force as to be very destructive to small craft.

Temperature.—During June at Hoi hau the temperature on the deck in the shade is about 95° between noon and 3 p. m., and 83° at night; see pages 315-316.

Climate.—As regards health, Hoi hau compares favorably with other parts of Hainan, though fever and ague prevail to some extent.

Pochin Bay lies between Baksha and Pochin Points and affords good anchorage.

The coast from Baksha Point to Pochin Lagoon at the head of the bay is low and sandy, intersected by creeks and backed by trees from 1.5 to 2 miles inland; from the lagoon to Pochin Point it is fronted by reefs, with small heads from 3 to 4 feet high. Pochin River discharges at about 2 miles eastward of Baksha Point; its mouth is apparently dry at low water. Probably at high water boats could proceed to Hoi hau by it, but we have no information on this point.

Baksha Banks extend 9.5 miles in an east-northeast direction from Baksha Point, or about halfway across the entrance to Pochin Bay; about midway a portion dries 1 foot at low spring tides. Nearly 1 mile within the eastern extremity of the banks there is but 1 foot of water; the western part may be crossed in 2½ fathoms at low water about 3 miles from Baksha Point. Numerous fishing stakes are on the banks and in Pochin Bay. These banks shelter Kiung chau roads.

**Pochin Point** is composed of sand, with a reef extending  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile off and steep-to; a rock 10 feet high lies within its western extremity.

From the northern side of the point a shallow ridge extends nearly a mile northward, with a patch of 6 feet within its extremity. The shore eastward is rocky, with shallow patches at ½ mile off.

Pochin Hill or Seven Star Mount (Lat. 20° 5′ 30″ N., Long. 110° 36′ 00″ E.).—Pochin Hill, situated 1.5 miles within Pochin Point, has seven peaks (but seldom more than four are visible at the same time), the highest of which, 459 feet high, has on it a pagoda.

**Directions—Anchorages.**—There is a good holding ground in a depth of 6 fathoms, sand and mud, southeastward of Baksha Banks, with Pochin Point rock bearing 91° distant about 1.3 miles.

Also in about 3 fathoms for small craft off Pochin Lagoon, with Pochin Point rock bearing 46° distant 3 miles; but these are not at all protected from northerly winds, and consequently a sea soon gets up.

The best anchorage in bad weather is in Kiung chau road, which lies southward of the Baksha Banks in about 4½ fathoms, stiff mud, with Pochin pagoda bearing 88° and Kiung chau pagoda 226°, or the Hummocks, if visible from here, 234°. H. M. S. Magpie rode out a typhoon at this anchorage, being protected by the banks.

Approaching from the eastward, when within Pochin Point, the extreme of Baksha Point bearing 271° will lead to this anchorage. The western entrance, within Baksha Banks, is only available with local knowledge.

Pochin Lagoon and Village.—Pochin Lagoon is fronted by a bar to the distance of about 2 miles, nearly dry at low water and with about 10 feet at high water, at which time it is available for junks and



other light craft. Abreast the village, within the fort on the eastern side, there is a low-water depth of about 3 fathoms, decreasing again in the lagoon. The large trading junks from Singapore and China lie here waiting the change of the monsoon or during typhoon weather. The village of Pochin is small and unimportant.

Hainan Bay.—The coast from Pochin Point curves gradually northeastward to Hainan Head, with Hainan Bay between, which affords anchorage in a depth of 7 fathoms at about a mile southwest of the bluff. At ½ mile westward of Hainan Bluff is a rock 7 feet high, with another rock, 2 feet high, at about the same distance northward of it. The bay is foul to the distance of about ½ mile offshore, with rocks above water in places. A rock, 10 feet high, lies ½ mile offshore westward of the head of the bay, and is foul to a somewhat greater distance as far westward as Pochin Point before mentioned.

The shore of the bay is sand, backed by sandhills from 50 to 70 feet high, and covered with scrub, with a tree here and there.

Little Bank (Lat. 20° 12′ N., Long. 110° 37′ E.).—Northward of Hainan Bay lies Little Bank, on the western side of Hainan Head. Within a depth of 5 fathoms it is about 2 miles in length in an east and west direction. Near its western end is a patch of 1¾ fathoms, and at its eastern extremity one of 3 fathoms, with Hainan Bluff bearing 130° distant 4 miles from the first-mentioned patch.

Hainan Head (Lao Hu Shan).—Hainan Head, the northern extremity of Hainan Island, is composed chiefly of sand, and attains a height of about 180 feet at 1 mile within the point; it is covered with short scrub, almost to the water, which continues for about 1 mile to the southeastward, where vegetation ceases, except a few isolated green patches.

Hainan Bluff, its northwestern extremity, is a flat-topped mound, 173 feet high.

Inner passage, the western entrance to South Channel, between Hainan Head and the banks eastward of it, is buoyed, and the channel recommended for vessels passing through Hainan Strait in thick or hazy weather.

Directions.—See page 346.

Dangers.—A rocky ridge, dry 4 feet at low water, at its extremity, extends ½ mile northward of Hainan Point. Detached rocks skirt the shore at ½ mile distant for 1.5 miles in a southeasterly direction from the point.

The bottom is foul and rocky northward of Hainan Bluff, within the 10-fathoms curve; a patch of 4½ fathoms has been found (1912) at a distance of 1,300 yards, 334°, from the bluff, with a patch of 3¾ fathoms at 250 yards, 206°, from the 4½-fathoms patch.

Magpie rock, a pinnacle, with 3 feet water, is situated near the extremity of a spit at 1.5 miles  $142^{\circ}$  from Hainan Point, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile from the shore; there is a rock awash at low water about midway between.

Riversdale patch, of 2½ fathoms, lies 800 yards 46° of Magpie rock.

A bank, 2.5 miles in length, with a least depth of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms, lies southeastward of Magpie rock. Its southeastern extremity is about 2 miles offshore, and has a depth of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms.

The sandy point, 89 feet high, situated 8 miles southeastward of Hainan Point, is fronted by a rock ridge, dry at low water to the distance of a mile, with a rock, 2 feet high, on it; the ridge extends under water for the further distance of a mile, fairly steep-to beyond. Eastward of this point is a sandy bay, beyond which the coast is fronted by reef and foul ground to the distance of 2 miles, decreasing to about 1 mile off Mofu Point. (For Mofu Point and coast southward, see p. 321.)

The preceding dangers form the western and southern sides of inner passage and South Channel, the channel between them, and Hainan Head Bank, with depths over 5 fathoms being about ½ mile wide.

Hainan Head Bank forms the eastern side of inner passage. It is about 9 miles in length in an east-southeast and opposite direction, within a depth of 5 fathoms, and is steep-to on the northern side, but its southern or channel side has several detached patches near its 5-fathoms curve. The nearest patch to Hainan Point, 1\frac{3}{4} fathoms, is distant 1.2 miles. One spot dries 3 feet at low water springs at 2.5 miles from its western end.

The deep bight on the southern side of the bank has apparently filled up, as shallow water has been reported nearly out to the 2 fathoms below mentioned.

A patch of 2 fathoms, hard sand, was reported by the Hanoi in 1896, to exist on the 10-fathoms curve, on the southern side of the bank, distant 1.6 miles eastward of Magpie rock, or with Hainan Point bearing 295°, distant 2.8 miles; it should be given a berth.

Buoys.—A black buoy, with ball, marks the reef extending northwards off Hainan Point, in about 10 fathoms water. A black buoy, with triangle, marks the northern side of Riversdale patch, situated northeastward of Magpie rock. A red buoy, with an inverted cone, is moored 600 yards westward of the 1½-fathoms patch, within the 5-fathoms curve of the western end of Hainan Head Bank, and lies with Hainan Point 249°, distant about 1,400 yards. The pilots have stone beacons as direction lines on Hainan Point, by which they know if the buoys are out of position. If not, they are attended to, but are not to be altogether relied on.

A wreck (1909) lies eastward of the 13-fathoms patch, as charted. Anchorage.—At 5 miles southeastward from Hainan Point there is anchorage in a depth of 8 fathoms, mud and sand, at the distance of 2 miles offshore, which is slightly protected by Hainan Head Bank.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Hainan Bluff, at 10h. 35m.; springs rise 6 feet, neaps 4 feet. There are two high and two low tides in the 24 hours, which are regular at full and change, but not so near the neaps. The flood stream generally runs for about 12 hours, as also does the ebb stream (there being hardly any slack water); the latter commences between the fifth and sixth hour after high water by the shore. The velocity is from 4 to 5 knots at springs off the bluff; see tidal streams, page 346.

Hainan Strait.—North shore.—Lei Chau Peninsula (continued from page 312).—Tong Chong, or Safe Bay, lies on the western side of Lei Chau Peninsula, between Cape Kami and Nau sa Point. It is about 5 miles in length, fronted by reef and shallow water to the distance of about ½ mile, and with a depth of 5 fathoms, mud, from 1 to 1.5 miles offshore. The bay affords shelter with winds from northwest, round by north and east, to about south. There is an islet with a few trees, near the northwestern point of the bay, and a few villages to the eastward of it. Its shores are level and cultivated, with sandy beaches in places and clusters of trees.

Cape Kami, the northwestern point of entrance to Hainan Strait, is the southwestern extremity of a sand islet about 40 feet in height, situated about ½ mile within the edge of the reef, which extends nearly 2 miles southwest of the mainland.

Light (Lat. 20° 13′ N., Long. 109° 55′ E.).—From an iron tower, on piles, painted white, with a black horizontal band, erected 83 yards from the extremity of Cape Kami, is exhibited at an elevation of 67 feet above high water a group flashing white light visible 13 miles.

The lightkeepers' dwellings are white.

A rock, with 6 feet water and 2 fathoms around, lies on the southern extremity of the reef, distant 1 mile south-southwest from the lighthouse, and a patch of 3 fathoms lies about 1.3 miles west-south-westward of the lighthouse. There are considerable overfalls for some distance outside the rock, which is steep-to.

A ridge with  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms lies southeastward, distant about 2.8 miles from the lighthouse.

For banks in the approach see page 343.

Anchorage.—Good anchorage may be obtained with shelter from northwest winds, in a depth of 5 fathoms, mud, with Cape Kami Lighthouse bearing 277°, distant 1.5 miles; and from northeast winds, in 9 fathoms, mud, with Cape Kami bearing 128°, distant 1.5 miles.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, during the summer, at Cape Kami, at 2h. 45m. p. m., and during the winter at 2h. 45m.

a. m.; springs rise 9½ feet, neaps rise 7 feet. They are single day tides, one high water only in 24 hours, and regular except at neaps, when for about three days they are double and irregular.

Kami Bay, situated east of Cape Kami, is 11 miles wide, fringed by reef from ½ to 1.5 miles offshore, and is shallow, the 3-fathoms curve being at an average distance of 3 miles from the shore; it presents no features of interest. The eastern part rises gradually to the Shenwen Range, but the western part is low, consisting of sand hills topped with bush, which become bare as Cape Kami is approached.

Islet Point is the eastern limit of Kami Bay, off which there are several islets, one of which is 20 feet in height; shallow patches, with as little as 1 foot water, extend for a distance of 2 miles southwestward of the fort on Islet Point.

Three-fathoms patch.—The outer danger off Islet Point is the Three-fathoms patch, situated 226°, distant 3 miles from Islet Point Fort. There are heavy overfalls in the vicinity of this bank, and vessels should not attempt to pass inside of it, as there are other patches with less water there.

Palm Point.—From Islet Point, the coast trends eastward about 3.3 miles to Palm Point, the western extremity of Hai an Bay, rendered conspicuous by several trees; shallow water extends off the point for a distance of ½ mile.

Shenwen Range (Lat. 20° 20′ N., Long. 110° 07′ E.), about 3 miles in length in an east and west direction, attains a height of 510 feet, and is conspicuous from the westward. Southeastward of it is Shenwen Pagoda, 385 feet above the sea.

Hai an Bay lies between Palm Point and a projecting point with a conical mound 60 feet high, southward of which on the reef surrounding the point is an islet 4 feet high.

The bay is shallow, the 1-fathom curve extending 1 mile from the shore and nearly straight between the entrance points, affording little shelter except from northerly winds.

Hai an Village lies near the center of the head of the bay, with an inlet northward of it. Baksha Village is situated in a white sandy bay, nearly 3 miles eastward of Hai an.

Hongham Bay.—From Hai an Bay to Hongham Bay, situated 6 miles northeastward, the coast is formed of sandhills surmounted by patches of scrub; it has not been surveyed.

Anchorages.—There are two good anchorages during northerly winds on the northern side of the Strait; in Hai an Bay, with the white fort at Hai an bearing 338° distant about 1.8 miles, in a depth of 5 fathoms, mud; and in Hongham Bay, with the eastern point of that bay bearing 68° distant 1.5 miles, in 7 fathoms, mud.

Coast—Gopai Point.—From Hongham Bay the coast trends northeastward for about 12 miles, to Gopai Point, the eastern ex-

79795—15——23



tremity of Lei chau Peninsula. Mound Point lies 2 miles southwestward of it, faced by a steep cliff. The mound on it is 160 feet in height. For 3 or 4 miles southward of this mound, reef extends about 3 miles offshore; from thence to Hongham Bay the coast has not been examined; the neighborhood should be avoided unless locally acquainted or in charge of a pilot.

Black Rocks, a group about a mile in extent, are situated about 1.5 miles northeastward of Gopai Point; one of them is 4 feet high. Eastward of these rocks, about 2 miles, is a line of breakers extending north and south, the latter extremity being 3 miles 147° of Black Rocks. The inshore passage, here called Gopai Narrows, lies between Black Rocks and the breakers.

La tao sah (Sheldrake sand cay), about 7 feet in height, is on the eastern or seaward side of the inshore channel to Nau chau, below mentioned. It is situated about 5 miles southeastward of Mound Point, with other cays or banks, San sah and Kan sah, close westward of it; it is charted as being about 5 miles in extent, with shallow water extending some 2 miles southward of it. Shallow banks continue about 11 miles or more northeastward, northward of the Seal Banks, but they have not been properly surveyed.

Malu hau is a port on the eastern side of Lei chau Peninsula, protected by a bar with a depth of 4 feet at low-water spring tides. It has a good trade in sugar and oil. It is approached from the southward by the inshore channel below mentioned.

To the eastward of Malu hau are extensve flats, which have not yet been thoroughly surveyed.

Inshore or Mala hau Passage.—Northeastward of Hongham Bay, before mentioned, along the northern shore of Hainan Strait, is the Malu hau Passage leading to Nau chau Island, available at high water with local knowledge for vessels of about 12 feet draft. A pilot is probably obtainable at Hoi hau, though too much reliance should not be placed in him. The following remarks may be of some use as a check on the pilot:

The entrance from the southward is between Sheldrake sand cay and Lei chau Peninsula, thence close eastward of Black Rocks situated northward of Gopai Point. The chart affords but little guide, as the channel has not been surveyed. Anchorage may be taken about a mile southeastward of the Black Rocks, in about 6 fathoms, if waiting for tide.

Northward of Black Rock the channel is over sand flats, which have as little as 4½ feet at low-water springs, or about 16 feet at high-water springs. The channel is very narrow, apparently, though deep, 5 to 7 fathoms, when Malu hau bears 249°, and the banks are numerous. Farther northward the channel is between Lui ta sah and Tong sah Banks, with (according to the B. A. Chart 2062) about 1½ to 3 fath-

oms water. When northeastward of this bar, Nau chau Island may be steered for, about 356°, and when about 7 miles from it the vessel will be in the Surprise Pass, leading to Nau chau, and in surveyed ground.

Mount Kam Lung, 900 feet in height, on the peninsula, may be useful in checking the position of the vessel, but its position may be doubtful.

Tidal streams.—In the Malu hau Channel the flood sets northward and the ebb southward, but off the entrance to the Malu hau River they set strongly across the channel on both tides, adding to the difficulty and danger of the navigation. Where the Malu hau and Hainan Strait streams meet there are sometimes eddies which have the appearance of breakers.

The maximum strength of the stream that has been observed is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  knots.

Banks in and near the fairway—Western approach.—The westernmost bank in the approach to Hainan Strait is a narrow ridge of sand 9 miles in length, east and west, and 1 mile in breadth within the 5-fathoms curve with the shoalest spot, 3 fathoms, 1.5 miles from its western end, situated with Cape Kami Lighthouse bearing 80° distant 30 miles; it is fairly steep-to.

A bank of sand 2 miles in extent east and west, and about a mile or more wide at the western end, with a depth of 4 fathoms on its shoalest part, lies with Cape Kami bearing 94° distant 18 miles from that extremity.

A French naval vessel, in 1898, with a draft of 27 feet, touched bottom in a position from which Lamko Hill bore 171°; distant 18 miles. This is about 2 miles 249° from the position given for the depth of 4 fathoms mentioned above, and considering the difficulty of fixing the position, it may be a portion of the same bank, as no soundings have been taken between these positions. Shoal water appeared to extend still further to the southward.

A bank of sand ½ mile in extent, with a least depth of 3½ fathoms lies with Cape Kami bearing 111°, distant about 12.3 miles. Depths of 6 to 7 fathoms will be found a short distance from it.

A narrow ridge of sand 1 mile in length, with a least depth of 43 fathoms, lies with Cape Kami bearing 97°, distant about 6.8 miles.

Eastern approach.—The dangerous sandbanks in the eastern approach, upon which the sea usually (but not always) breaks during the northeast monsoon, or with easterly swell, have deep-water channels between them, but extreme caution is necessary in using these passages, as the tidal streams are uncertain, and the shoals in most cases far from land. These channels should not be used at night, or in thick weather.

The following is a general description of the different banks:

Northeast and North Banks separate North Channel from Middle Channel; Seal Bank forms the Western side of North Channel.

Northeast Bank, with 4 fathoms water, is the northern extremity of the 10-fathoms curve encircling North Bank. It is 1 mile in length north and south, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile in breadth.

North Bank, within the 5-fathom curve, and including outlying patches, is about 10 miles in length in a northeast and opposite direction; near the center of the bank is a shoal 4 miles in length, with less than 2 fathoms water; and there is a rock with 3 feet water close to its western extremity, with Hainan Bluff bearing 225°, distant nearly 15 miles, in Lat. 20° 20′ 00″ N., Long. 110° 51′ 30″ E. There are several places on North Bank with depths of 1 to 2 fathoms.

Seal Bank, northwestward of North Bank, is within the 5-fathoms curve, 5 miles in length in an east and west direction, 3 miles in breadth at is western end, and ½ mile at its eastern. The least water upon the bank is 2 fathoms, with Hainan Bluff bearing 203°, distant 14.5 miles.

Shoal patches exist at a distance of 5 miles northward of Seal Bank, with depths of 3 feet to 3 fathoms. Westward of them are the shoals which extend northeastward of Sheldrake sand cay.

West Bank lies nearly midway between Seal Bank and Hainan Head. It is about 5 miles in length east and west, and 1.5 miles in breadth toward its western end, with several patches of 3 feet. From the central shallow portion, Hainan Bluff bears 183°, distant 7.5 miles. Little bank between West Bank and the bluff, has been mentioned with inner passage.

South Banks, two groups, lie between the Middle and South Channels; the northernmost bank, with 2 fathoms least water, is 8 miles in length in an east and west direction, and 1,350 yards in breadth within the 5-fathoms curve. Its western 2-fathoms patch lies with Hainan Bluff bearing 251°, about 7.5 miles.

The southernmost bank is about 13 miles in length east and west, with a breadth varying from ½ to 2 miles, and depths of 2 feet to 3 fathoms. Near its eastern extremity is a patch of 2½ fathoms, with Mofu Hill bearing 189°, distant about 13.5 miles. Its western portion is the Hainan Head Bank, described on page 339, with inner passage.

Directions—Aspect—Landmarks.—The following objects will be found useful in fixing the position when passing through Hainan Strait from the westward, namely, Lamko Hill, Lamko Point Lighthouse, the Hummocks, Kiung chau pagoda, Pochin Hill pagoda, Hainan Head and Mofu Hill on the southern side; while on the north side are Cape Kami Lighthouse, the Shenwen Range, and the conical

mound at Hai an Bay; see also landmarks, when approaching the western entrance, on page 331.

In the eastern approach the Taya Islands are invaluable.

Entering Hainan Strait from the westward, the best channel is that between the westernmost bank, which has a least depth of 3 fathoms, and the coast of Hainan, giving a berth of about 4 miles to the island. If bound to Hoi hau, the treaty port of Kiung chau, directions for entering will be found on page 335. The lights on Lamko Point, Cape Kami, and at Hoi hau render the navigation fairly safe at night as far eastward as the latter place.

Proceeding eastward from Hainan Strait there is no great difficulty in taking either the North or Middle Channels, or the South Channel (through inner passage), the vessel's departure having been carefully taken from off Hainan Head, and course shaped accordingly, but the Middle Channel, being much the widest, is preferable. The directions for Middle and also South Channels, given on following pages, reversed, will suffice to take a vessel safely through.

The pagoda on Pochin Hill bearing 220°, astern, leads out through North Channel to sea, but it must be visible 20 miles or more to insure passing westward of North Bank.

For the inshore passage northward, to Nau chau, see pages 342.

Low-powered steamers bound from Hainan Strait to Hongkong, finding the northeast monsoon strong, may, on clearing the banks, shape course under fore-and-aft sails for Tien pak, on nearing which the wind and sea usually moderate. They should then pass northward of Round Island by day, or outside Mandarins Cap by night, and close past Waikaup Island, when they can haul up for Great Ladrone Island. Fine weather will generally be experienced between Nau chau and St. John Islands.

Entering Hainan Strait from the eastward the Middle Channel is preferable in clear weather; in hazy weather South Channel (inner passage), which is buoyed and near the land, should be taken.

The banks do not always break, and the depths, being irregular, give but little warning of approach.

North Channel, for which there are no marks, is not recommended.

Middle Channel is the widest, deepest, shortest, and therefore the best approach to Hainan Strait from the northeastward in clear weather. The North Taya Island, 648 feet in height, will be seen from a distance of about 30 miles, and should be approached from the northward when bearing about 209°. Mofu Hill will be visible shortly after Taya is sighted, being about the same height, and cross bearings of these two objects will, when the vessel is abreast the entrance to Middle Channel, be broad enough to give a good position of

the vessel. The course through the fairway is about 265°, which course also leads between West Bank and Little Bank, situated northward of Hainan Head; thence keep in mid-channel unless bound to Hoi hau.

Vessels proceeding to Pak hoi should round Cape Kami at a distance of 3 to 4 miles, avoiding the banks with 4\frac{3}{4} and 3\frac{1}{4} fathoms westward of Tong Chong Bay; then haul up for Chia une Island, sighting it, and thence passing westward of Guie chau Island before steering for Pak hoi.

Those bound to Haifong should keep the southern shore of the strait until abreast Hau Sui Bay, then steer for Bacht long VI (Nightingale Island), and from thence to the Norway Islands Lighthouse. Easterly or westerly currents of considerable strength may be experienced on this track, but very little north or south set need be feared, unless the monsoon is very strong.

The lights at Cape Kami, Lamko Point, and Hoi hau will be of great service to vessels navigating the western part of the strait at night, as before remarked.

South Channel and inner passage trends close to the north-eastern coast of Hainan Island, and is recommended in hazy weather. The Taya Islands should be sighted, whence course may be shaped for Mofu Hill, the northeastern extremity of Hainan.

A vessel will be in the fairway when North Taya bears 108°, and Mofu Hill 215°, distant 8.5 miles; from whence a 268° course should be steered with Pochin pagoda right ahead, until Hainan Point bears 302°, which being steered for leads in between the 2-fathom patch at the southern extremity of Hainan Head Bank to the northward and the Riversdale patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, marked by a black buoy with triangle, to the southward. It would be advisable to have the point a little northward of the bearing given when abreast the 2-fathom patch, more especially as the bank is apparently extending; and a little westward when near the Riversdale, to give each of them a wider berth.

When Hainan Bluff (which apparently shows over the land within the point) bears 280°, or the 180-foot summit of the head 268°, the vessel will be northward of Riversdale, and should steer about 325° for the black buoy with ball topmark, on Hainan Point Spit, passing close westward of the red buoy, with inverted cone topmark; from abreast this red buoy haul more to the northward to pass eastward and northward of the black buoy, to avoid the spit, from whence course may be shaped to the westward, passing northward of Baksha Banks.

In the inner passage caution is necessary on the flood or northwesterly stream, which sets strongly toward Hainan Point Reef, and when westward of Hainan Bluff the indraft into Pochin Bay must be allowed for. The tidal stream also sets very strong, 4 to 5 knots at times, across this western entrance to inner passage, rendering it advisable at times to go eastward and northward of Little Bank; a danger angle of 40° between Hainan Bluff and Pochin pagoda will carry the vessel round the bank well southward of West Bank, whence course may be shaped westward through the fairway as from Middle Channel.

**Tidal streams.**—In North Channel the flood sets southwest by west from 1 to 3 knots an hour, and the ebb northeast by east from 1 to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  knots.

In Middle Channel, at the position charted (12 miles 66° from Hainan Point), the flood sets north-northwest from 1½ to 3 knots, and the ebb northeast by east 1 to 3 knots. (This is probably for only a portion of the time of flood and ebb.)

In inner passage the flood sets north-northwest from 1 to 3 knots, and the ebb south-southeast from 1½ to 3 knots, but at Hainan Point the tide is very strong, 4 to 5 knots at springs, as above mentioned, and irregular.

Southward of Little Bank the flood sets to the southwestward at the rate of 3 knots toward Pochin Lagoon.

A full knowledge of the set of the stream in the western approach to Hainan Strait, with the rise and fall of the tide, has not yet been arrived at. In every 24 hours the set is easterly for about 8 hours and westerly for about 16 hours throughout the year at the rate of 1 to 2½ knots, and off Cape Kami as much as 3 knots.

On full and change days in summer the easterly set commences at 3 p. m.; westerly set commences at 11 p. m.; winter, easterly set commences at 3 a. m.; westerly set commences at 11 a. m.; and occurs about one hour later every day.

The following table has been compiled, which gives the time of the change of set of the tide in Hainan Strait for every day in the year.

This table holds good from the eastern banks in Hainan Strait to Bacht Long VI, or Nightingale Island in the Gulf of Siam. It was found correct by H. M. surveying vessel Magpie while surveying the strait during the summer and autumn of 1881.

When the stream is running to the westward a wide berth must be given to Cape Kami, as in that vicinity there is considerable northing in the set.

Overfalls.—Heavy overfalls or tide rips exist all over Hainan Strait, but especially in the western approach to inner passage—that is, between Hainan Point and Little Bank, and to the northward of Little Bank.

There are also patches of discolored water, which usually consist of vegetable matter from the several rivers, and which have the appearance of shoals, which a cast of the lead will clear up if passing through any of them.

Table showing the time of the commencement of the easterly and westerly set of the tidal stream in Bainan Strait.

[Compiled from observations extending over several years by Capt. de Longueville, of H. I. C. M. gunboat Tsing-Po, 1876.]

Past		Janua	ary.	February.	ary.	March.	-fi	April.	ii	Мау.	у.	June.	e.
3am         11 am         Slack         2 p.m.         11 p.m.         3 p.m.         11 p.m.         3 p.m.         Midnight         4 p.m.         Midnight         4 p.m.         Midnight         4 p.m.         Midnight         4 p.m.         11 p.m.         4 p.m.         11 p.m.         4 p.m.         Midnight         4 p.m.         11 p.m.         4 p.m.         14 p.m.         15 p.m.         2 p.m.         2 p.m.         15 p.m. <t< th=""><th>Moon's age.</th><th>East.</th><th>West.</th><th>East.</th><th>West.</th><th>East.</th><th>West.</th><th>East.</th><th>West.</th><th>East.</th><th>West.</th><th>East.</th><th>West.</th></t<>	Moon's age.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.
4a.m         10 mm         Sack. Sack. Sp.m         5 p.m         11 p.m         4 p.m         Midnight. Sp.m         4 p.m         11 p.m         4 p.m         11 p.m         4 p.m         11 p.m         4 p.m         11 p.m         1 p.m         2 a.m         3 p.m         2 a.m         3 p.m         3 p.m <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>0100</td><td><u></u></td><td></td><td>101</td><td>1 6</td><td>  E</td><td>3.0</td><td>  E</td></t<>						0100	<u></u>		101	1 6	E	3.0	E
5 a m         1 p m         5 a m         1 p m         5 p m         1 a m         5 p m         1 a m         5 p m         1 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m         2 a m         5 p m <th< td=""><td>2</td><td></td><td>Noon</td><td>4 g. H.</td><td>Noon</td><td>Slac</td><td>ند ب</td><td>3 D. m.</td><td>11 p. m</td><td>4 D. III</td><td>Midnight</td><td>4 p.m.</td><td>Midnight.</td></th<>	2		Noon	4 g. H.	Noon	Slac	ند ب	3 D. m.	11 p. m	4 D. III	Midnight	4 p.m.	Midnight.
6a m         2 p m         6p m         1a m         6p m         2a m         6p m         5a m         6p m         5a m         6p m         5a m         6b m         10p m         6a m         10p m         6a m         10p m         6a m         10p m         8p m         10p m         8p m         10p m         8p m         10p m	3		1 p.m	5 a. m	1 p. m	Slac	ķ.	4 p. m	Midnight	5 p.m	1 a. m	5 p. m	1 s. m.
7a.m         3p.m         Slack.         5p.m         4a.m         6p.m         5a.m         7p.m         5a.m         5p.m         <	4	6 a. m	2 p.m	6 a. m	2	4 p.m	Midnight	5 p.m	I a. m	6 p.m	2 a. m	6 p.m	28.II.
8 a.m.         Sp.m.         5 a.m.         6 p.m.         5 a.m.         6 a.m.         10 p.m.         6 a.m.         11 p.m.         7 a.m.         10 p.m.         6 a.m.         11 p.m.         11 a.m.         11 a.m. </td <td>5</td> <td>7 a. m</td> <td>3 p.m</td> <td>Slaci</td> <td>ئىد</td> <td>5 p.m</td> <td>1 8. m</td> <td>6 p. m</td> <td>2 a. m.</td> <td>n.d.</td> <td>38.m.</td> <td></td> <td>38.II.</td>	5	7 a. m	3 p.m	Slaci	ئىد	5 p.m	1 8. m	6 p. m	2 a. m.	n.d.	38.m.		38.II.
Spinck.         5 a.m.         5 p.m.         5 a.m.         5 p.m.         5 a.m.         5 p.m.         5 a.m.         5 p.m.         5 a.m.         5 a.m.         5 a.m.         5 a.m.         10 p.m.         5 a.m.         11 a.m.         5 a.m.         11 a.m.         5 a.m.         11 a.m.         5 a.m.         11 a.m.         2 a.m.         11 a.m.         2 a.m.         11 a.m.         3 a.m.		8 8. m	4 p.m	Slac	,	-	2 8. III	, p. III	0 B. III	0 P	2 to 11	0 p. m.	
8pm         5am         9pm         5am         10pm         6am         11pm         7am         Midnight         8am         13ack           9pm         6am         10pm         6am         11pm         7am         Midnight         8am         13ack         9am         8am         13ack         9am         13ack         1am         9am         1am         9am         1am	~ ~		4 14	: :	3 a. m.	8 0 11		9 D. m.	5 a. m.	10 p.m.	6 a. m.		
9p.m.         6a.m.         9p.m.         5a.m.         10 p.m.         6a.m.         11 p.m.         7 a.m.         Midnight         8 a.m.         Black         11 a.m.         9 a.m.         Black           10 p.m.         8 a.m.         11 p.m.         7 a.m.         11 p.m.         7 a.m.         10 p.m.         9 a.m.         10 p.m.         9 a.m.         10 p.m.	6	8 p.m	5 a. m		4 a. m	9 p.m.		10 p.m	6 a. m	11 p.m	7 a. m	Slac	, ķ.
10 p.m   7 a m   10 p.m   6 a m   11 p.m   8 a m   Slack   8 a m   11 a m   10 a m	10		6 a. m	:	5 a. m	2	6 a. m	11 p.m.	7 a. m	Midnight	æ	Slac	، ني
1 p.m	٠	10 p.m	7 a. m		6 a. m	=;	7 a. m	Midnight	8 a. m	Slac	. k.	9 a. m.	6 p. m.
Midnight, Sa, m.         19a, m.         Stack.         10pm.         Sp.m.         Noon.         Sp.m.         10pm.         Sp.m.         11pm.         Sp.m.         1pm.         Sp.m.         Sp.m. <td>•</td> <td>11 p.m.</td> <td>8 a. m</td> <td>:</td> <td>7 a. m</td> <td>_</td> <td>8 a. m</td> <td>1 a. m</td> <td>9 a. m</td> <td></td> <td>,K.</td> <td>п. а. ш.</td> <td>, p. m.</td>	•	11 p.m.	8 a. m	:	7 a. m	_	8 a. m	1 a. m	9 a. m		,K.	п. а. ш.	, p. m.
19.m         19.m <th< td=""><td>13</td><td>Midnight</td><td>8 a. m</td><td>ht</td><td>8 a. m</td><td>_,</td><td>9 a. m</td><td>Slac</td><td>نرند</td><td>Noon</td><td>S p. m</td><td>Noon.</td><td>8 p.m.</td></th<>	13	Midnight	8 a. m	ht	8 a. m	_,	9 a. m	Slac	نرند	Noon	S p. m	Noon.	8 p.m.
2a m         10 a m         Stack         1 p m         3 p m         10 a m         3 p m         10 a m	•	I a. m	9 a. m	I a. m	9 a. m.	28.m	•	Jam Siac		P. III	9 p. m.		10 p. III.
9.4 mm         Noon         9.4 mm         Nidnight         4 p.m.         Midnight         4 p.m.         1 a.m.         5 p.m.         1 a.m.         6 p.m.         2 a.m.         7 p.m.         3 a.m.         7 p.m.         8 p.m.         7 p.m.         8 p.m.         8 p.m.         1 p.m.	er		10 a. m.	2 a. m.	10 & III	Sign	¥, 7.			2 P. E.	110	3.0	
Sam         1 p.m.         Slack         3 p.m.         11 p.m.         5 p.m.         12 m.m.         5 p.m.         12 m.m.         5 p.m.         12 m.m.         5 p.m.         13 m.m.         5 p.m.         13 m.m.         5 p.m.         15 p.m.         16 p.m.	17		Noon	4 a m	Noon	Slac			Midnight	4 d	Midnight	4 D. III	Midnight.
Ga m         2pm         Slack         4pm         Midnight         6pm         2am         6pm         2           Slack         5pm         1am         7pm         4am         7pm         3am         6pm         3           Slack         6pm         2am         6pm         4am         9pm         5am         9pm         5am           7pm         3am         9pm         6am         9pm         5am         9pm         5lack           8pm         4am         10pm         6am         10pm         6am         8pm         5lack           9pm         5am         9pm         7am         8am         8pm         5lack         10pm         6am         10pm         6am         10pm         6am         10pm         10pm <td>~</td> <td></td> <td>1 p. m.</td> <td>Slaci</td> <td>-</td> <td>3 D. m</td> <td>11 p.m</td> <td></td> <td>1 a. m</td> <td>5 p.m</td> <td>1 a. m</td> <td>5 p.m</td> <td></td>	~		1 p. m.	Slaci	-	3 D. m	11 p.m		1 a. m	5 p.m	1 a. m	5 p.m	
Slack	19	6 a. m	2 p. m	Slace	ند	4 p.m	Midnight	6 p. m	2 a. m	6 p.m	2 a. m	6 p. m	
Slack   5pm   Slack   5pm   2am   7pm   2am   5pm   5am   5pm	20		أبد	$\ddot{\mathbf{z}}$	ند	5 p.m	I a. m	7 p.m	3 a. m	7 p.m	3 a. m	7 p.m	
7p.m         Slack.         7p.m         2a.m         4p.m         8p.m         Slack.           8p.m         4a.m         8p.m         10p.m         6a.m         11p.m         7a.m         11p.m         7a.m         13ack.           8p.m         5a.m         10p.m         6a.m         Midnight         8a.m         11p.m         7a.m         10a.m         7a.m         10a.m         7a.m         11a.m         7a.m         10a.m	21		7.	:	1 a. m	6 p.m.	2.8. m	т.б.	# 8. H	8 p. m.	4 B	o p	_~
8pm         4am         8pm         5am         9pm         5am         9pm         Slack           9pm         5am         9pm         6am         Midnight         8am         10pm         6am         10am         6am           10pm         6am         10pm         8am         Slack         10am         10am         7am         10am           Midnight         8am         Slack         1pm         9pm         1pm         8pm         1pm         1pm         1pm         1pm         1pm         1pm         1pm         2pm         1pm	93	Tr m m c	. W.	7.0	3 a m		4 9 1	10 m m	6 a m	10 m	E 6	Silso	
9p.m         5a.m         9p.m         5a.m         10p.m         6a.m         Midnight         6a.m         Midnight         9a.m         5a.m           10p.m         6a.m         10p.m         7a.m         11a.m         1a.m         1a.m <td>24</td> <td></td> <td>H 8</td> <td>2 C</td> <td>4 a. m.</td> <td>m 0 6</td> <td>5 a. m.</td> <td>11 p. m.</td> <td>7 a. m.</td> <td></td> <td>7 8. m.</td> <td>Slac</td> <td>بد</td>	24		H 8	2 C	4 a. m.	m 0 6	5 a. m.	11 p. m.	7 a. m.		7 8. m.	Slac	بد
10 p.m.         6 a.m.         10 p.m.         7 a.m.         7 a.m.         11 p.m.         7 p.m.         11 a.m.         7 p.m.         12 p.m.         13 p.m.         14 p.m.	25	9 p. m.	5 a. m.	0 p. m.	5 a. m.	10 р. ш.	6 a. m	Midnight	8 a. m.		ik.	9 a. m	z,
11 p.m.   7a.m.   11 p.m.   7a.m.   7a.m.   Midnight.   8a.m.   Slack.   11a.m.   7 p.m.   1 p.m.   2 p.m.	26.	10 p. m.	6 a. m	10 p.m	6 a. m	11 p. m	7 a. m	Slac	نيد	Slac	Jk.	10 a, m	9
Midnight         8 a.m.         Midnight         8 a.m.         Slack         1 p.m.         8 a.m.         8 p.m.         1 p.m.         9 p.m.         1 p.m.         9 p.m.         1 p.m.         9 p.m.         1 p.m.         1 p.m.         1 p.m.         1 p.m.         2 p.m.         1 p.m.         1 p.m.         2 p.m.         1 p.m.         1 p.m.         1 p.m.         2 p.m.         1 p.m.         2 p.m.         1 p.m.         2 p.m.         2 p.m.         1 p.m.	27	11 p. m	7 a. m	11 p. m	7 a. m	Midnight	æ	Slac	<u>.</u>	11 a. m	7 p.m	11 a. m	7
1a.m       9a.m       1a.m       9a.m       1p.m	28	Midnight	8 a. m	Midnight	8 a. m	Slac	, kr	Slac	، يد	Noon	8 p.m	Noon	S.D.B.
a. m 10 a. m 2 a. m 10 a. m	29	I a. m	9 a. m	- 0	9 a. m	Slac	, k	I p.m.		1 p. m	9 p. m.	1 p. m.	10 p. m.
	30	m	10 a.m	z a. m	то в. ш	Siac	¥.	7 p. m			p. mr. o		to p.m.

Mon's	July		August	ıst.	September.	ıber.	October.	er.	November.	ber.	December.	ber.
	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.	East.	West.
	3 p. m	=	3 p.m	11 р. т	Slac	ند	2 a. m	10 a. m	3 в. ш	11 a. m	3 a. m	11 s. m.
	4 p.m	Midnight	4 p.m	Midnight	Slack.		3 a. m	11 a. m	48.m.	Noon	4 8. m	Noon.
:	6 p. m	2 a. m.	•			Noon	5 8. m.	1 p.m.	68.1	2 p.m.	6 a. m.	2 p.m.
	7 p.m	3 a. m.	Slack.		5 a. m	1 p.m	6 a. m	2 p.m	7 a. m	3 p.m	7 a. m	3 p. m.
7	Slac	k.	6 a. m	p.m	7 a. m.	3 p.m	8 a. m.	4 p. m	98.11	5 p.m.	9 B. III	**
	Slac 8.8 m	k. 4 n m	7 a. m	3 p.m	8 B. M	4 p.m.	9 a. m	5 p.m	10 a. m	6 p.m	Slac	د ند
	9 a. m	5 p.m	9 a. m.	5 p.m	10 а. ш.	6 p. m	11 8. m	7 p.m	Slac	т. Т.	Slac	ندن
:	10 a. m	6 p.m	10 a. m	9,	11 a. m	7 p.m	•	σo.	Slack.		10 p.m.	6 a. m.
13.	Noon	- 00	Noon.	- 00	I p. m.	9 D. III.	Slack	ن ن	Midnight	a.m	Midnight.	. E. S.
	1 p.m	σ,	•	6	2 p. m.	10 p.m	Slac		1 <b>a.</b> m	:	1 a. m.	
	2 p. m	10 p.m	2 p. m	10 p.m		. ند	1 a. m	:	2 a. m	10 a. m	2 a. m	
	4 D. m.	Midnight.	4 D. III	3	Slack.	ير ي	3 a. m	10 s H	38. M.	Noon	38. m.	
	5 p.m	1 a. m				11 a. m	4 a. m	: :	5 a. m.	1 p.m	5 a. m.	-
	6 p. m	, 2 a. m	Slack		4 a. m	Noon.	5 a. m	:	6 a. m	2 p.m	6 a. m	2 p.m.
	Slac	ند ۽	5 a. m	m a	6.8	2 n.m.	7 s m	:		o p. III	/ B. III	o 4
		, K	6 a. m.	:	7 a. m	3 p.m	8 a. m	4 p.m.	9 a. m.	5 p.m.	Slac	۲,
:	7 a. m	3 p.m	7 a. m	:	8 a. m	4 p.m	9 a. m	:	10 a. m	.=	Slac	k.
	88. m.	4 p. m.	88. H.	:	98 m.	5 p.m	10 a. m	6 p. m	Slack.	د ند	Slac	ا د ند
	10 a. m.	6 0 11	10 a. m.	6 0 11	11 a m	7 p. m.	:	b. m.c. ,	Slac	د. ي	9 p. III	. H
	11 a. m	7 p.m	11 a. m.	7 p.m		ď	Slack.	:;	11 p. m	7 a. m	11 p.m.	7 8. m.
	Noon.	8 p.m.	Noon.	8 p.m.	Slack.	د ند	Slaci	ا ن <u>ن</u>	Midnight	8 a. m	Midnight	8 a. m.
	2 p. m.	10 p. m.	2 p. m.	10 m	Slac		2 a m	98. III	1 8. m	9 8. m.	1 8. m.	98.m.
				1		_ :		•			2 0. III.	, o o

Note.-The time of high water at full and change must not be taken from this table.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## SOUTHEAST COAST OF CHINA-HAINAN STRAIT TO CANTON RIVER, INCLUDING WEST RIVER.

Lei chau Peninsula—East coast.—The eastern coast of the peninsula, with the inshore channel along it from Hainan Strait, as far northward as Malu hau, from which that channel takes its name, is described in the last chapter.

Northward of Malu hau the coast has not been surveyed; it takes a general north-northwest trend to Becassines Point, a distance of about 18 miles, fronted by reefs to the distance of 6 miles or more.

From Becassines Point the coast turns westward and thence northward, forming an extensive but shallow bight, into which a river discharges. The western portion of Tan hai Island occupies a large portion of the bight, its western extremity, Sata hopeng, being less than a mile from the peninsula, abreast Tuman Fort.

Nearly the whole space between Becassines Point and the southern coast of Tan hai Island is blocked by shallow flats, but there is a narrow channel through them, apparently with 4 fathoms water, up to and above the point, whence it becomes very shallow, about 3 feet, again deepening off the southern extremity of the island to 4 to 8 fathoms, from whence there is a tortuous channel to Kwang chau wan, with probably a depth of 1 fathom at low water. This is written from the chart, which is on a very small scale and of little value.

Lei chau—Depths.—Lei chau, the principal town in the peninsula, is charted about 4 miles within the head of the bight above described, in about Lat. 20° 54′ N., Long. 110° 5′ E. The river before mentioned flows past it on its southern side and is navigable by vessels of about 10 feet draft; high water should be taken for crossing the banks in the approach. The chart shows about 1½ fathoms water in the entrance. Its exports consist of oil, bean cake, and matting for sails.

Telegraph.—Lei chau is connected with the telegraph system; a French Catholic mission is established here.

Nau chau Island—General remarks—Depths.—Nau chau Island, and Tan hai Island, within it, occupy a considerable portion of the bight between Gopai Point on the northern side of Hainan Strait and the fort on a point about 46 miles north of it; the remainder of the bight is almost filled with banks with narrow channels between

The channel southward of the islands is Surprise Pass and leads to Nau chau anchorage from seaward in not less than 4 fathoms at low water; it is buoyed.

Above Nau chau anchorage it has not been properly charted, but it leads to Lei chau, and also by a channel between Tan hai Island and the coast of the peninsula to Kwang chau wan, before mentioned.

The channel northward of Nau chau and Tan hai Islands is the direct approach to the Kwang chau wan, described on page 354.

Nau chau Island is about 5 miles in length, and on its summit, 279 feet in height, situated on the eastern side, is the lighthouse. The northern end of the island is composed of sand hills, from 40 to 50 feet high; the shore is fronted by rocky ledges extending to the distance of one-half mile in places.

The island is well cultivated and is separated from the island within it, Tan hai, by Northwest, or Nau chau, Channel. The channel along the eastern side of Nau chau is the Bengali Pass. The island is fringed with reef, with outlying dangers, the most important of which will be described.

When seen from the offing, Nau chau appears as a flattened cone, distinguished by its white stone lighthouse, which affords a good landmark for vessels approaching it. Nau chau and Tan hai Islands are leased to the French. (See p. 354.)

Light (Lat. 20° 54′ N., Long. 110° 35′ E.).—On the summit of the island, from a cylindrical stone tower, 63 feet high, a flashing white light is exhibited at an elevation of 338 feet above high water, visible 25 miles. The light is sometimes hidden by fog between 150 and 350 feet above the sea, while below it the atmosphere is clear.

Beacons.—At the northern end of the island there are two towers, 1,400 yards apart, used as front marks for crossing the bar of the approach to the Kwang chau wan, as described on page 353. There are white leading marks on the southern side of the island, as charted.

Surprise Pass—Dangers.—From the southeastern end of Nau chau Island foul ground, consisting of numerous sand banks with deep-water channels between them in places, extends to a distance of from 3½ to 5 miles in a southerly, southeasterly, and easterly direction, within which area lies the Grand Plateau and many other isolated rocky ledges, some of which show at or before low water. The southernmost of these form the northeastern side of Surprise Pass.

Spit.—Between the southwestern extremity of Nau chau and Tam sui. northward of it, a sandy spit, with less than 1 fathom water, extends about 1.3 miles from the shore, and within a depth of 3 fathoms to 1.6 miles offshore, forming the eastern side of the southwest anchorage.

Timosa Bank, about 8 miles in length, tapers to a point at its southeastern extremity, which forms the western side of entrance to



352 CHINA.

Surprise Pass; it is almost dry in places, and has an average depth of 1 to 2 fathoms, but it has not been completely surveyed.

Liu chan sah Bank lies about 2.5 miles southward of the east extreme of Timosa Bank; the chart shows depths of 1\frac{3}{4} to 3 fathoms. It has only been imperfectly examined and breaks in heavy weather. It lies out of the recommended track.

Buoyage.—Surprise Pass is marked by three red conical buoys on the northern or island side, placed as follows: The outer buoy, in about 4½ fathoms, lies 1 mile 265° from the southernmost shoal patch (2½ fathoms), with Si wei loi, a white house on the southern side of the island, bearing 338°, distant 4.5 miles. The second red buoy lies westward of a 3-fathom patch, in about 4 fathoms, about 1.5 miles 308° from the outer buoy. The third buoy lies, in about 4½ fathoms, at about 800 yards westward of the 3 fathoms point of the spit extending from the western side of the island; it also marks the southern side of approach to Northwest Channel.

**Directions.**—These directions are written from the chart, and therefore must be used with caution.

Coming from Hainan Strait, and having given a wide berth to the banks on its northeastern side. Nau chau Island may be steered for. With the lighthouse on the summit of the island in sight, it may be approached on a 316° bearing until Mount Kamlung, 900 feet in height, on Lei chau Peninsula, bears 271° (supposing it to be correctly charted), from which position a course 296°, allowing for tide, will lead to the outer red buoy. Pass about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile southward of it, and about the same or less distance westward of the second red buoy, in not less than 4 fathoms. B. A. Chart 3349 gives a line for crossing the bar here, namely, a white cone on the southern side of Nau chau in line with a white house near the shore, bearing 1°, with a fairway depth of about 3\(\frac{3}{4}\) to 4 fathoms. When about a mile northward of the buoy, or 2.3 miles from the white house mentioned, a course about 305° will lead to southwest anchorage, about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile southward of the red buoy there.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change at Fort Boutet Point, south entrance to Northwest Channel at 10h. 20m.; springs rise 12<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> feet, neaps 8 feet.

In the channel the stream runs  $2\frac{1}{2}$  knots at springs, changing about one hour after high and low water, the flood setting to the southward, and the ebb to the northward. Off Tam sui, outside the southern entrance, the flood stream from the northward through the channel meets the flood stream coming from the southeastward through Surprise Pass; the streams separate at the same spot.

Anchorages—Southwest.—There are depths of 5 to 9 fathoms in southwest anchorage southwestward of the red buoy, and on

the line of the lighthouse with the mark on the shore, which is the mark for approaching the entrance of Northwest Channel.

North anchorage.—There is anchorage off the northern end of the island in the southwest monsoon period in 6 to 7 fathoms, off the black and white leading mark towers, eastward of the northern entrance to Northwest Channel of Nau chau.

Beacons.—Abreast this anchorage, on the northern part of Nau chau, are two beacons, used as front leading marks for Kwang chau Bar. The eastern one is a tower, 23 feet in height, painted in black and white bands; it is known as North-northeast Beacon, and is in line with Nau chau Lighthouse when bearing 181°. The other, known as North-northwest Beacon, is a cone-shaped structure painted white, with one horizontal black band.

There are no dangers in the approach from seaward to the north anchorage; Jacquelin Hill, on Tan hai, bearing 294°, leads in.

Vessels of moderate draft can proceed at high water through Northwest Channel to Nau chau Port and the southwest anchorage off Tam sui, through Northwest Channel, below mentioned.

The Port—Northwest Channel separates Nau chau from Tan hai Island. The southern entrance is ½ mile wide between Fort Boutet and Horseshoe Bank, and it is about the same breadth throughout between Middle Bank, which nearly dries in places, and Northwest Bank. Both entrances are barred with a low-water depth of  $3\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms in the northern and  $2\frac{3}{4}$  to 3 fathoms in the southern.

Shallow water (not surveyed) extends about 3 miles off the eastern side of Tan hai Island, western side of northern approach to Northwest Channel, referred to on page 354.

Buoys.—The channel is marked by red buoys on its eastern side, apparently, but a black buoy, resembling a mooring buoy, is charted on the eastern side, off the extremity of a sunken ridge of rock. It is not advisable in other than small craft to enter this channel without local knowledge.

Bouquet Point—Horseshoe Bank, which nearly dries at its eastern extremity, is situated on the shallow flat which surrounds Bouquet or Clump Point, the western point of southern entrance to Northwest Channel; the point is low and sandy, with a clump of trees within it.

Fort Boutet.—The eastern point of the southern entrance ends abruptly in a high clump of trees, at the extremity of which Fort Boutet, in ruins, is just visible; the point is steep-to.

Anchorage.—There is well-sheltered anchorage in Northwest Channel, which is the Port of Nau chau, in from 5 to 10 fathoms, mud and sand, at about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile within Fort Boutet, approached over the bar, with from  $2\frac{3}{4}$  to 3 fathoms water, before mentioned.

Nau chau.—The town of Nau chau is situated on the western side of the island, off which there is good anchorage, used as a port of call by the junks trading to Tonkin Gulf. It is governed by a civil mandarin. The town is not shown on the chart, but it is apparently northeastward of Fort Boutet, in Northwest Channel, referred to as the port.

Tam sui is charted on the shore southward of Fort Boutet; Fort Portier, a military post, lies just within it. The village of A mio lies northward of Tam sui, and A kong southward of it, with a new fort and pagoda.

Kwang chau wan approach.—The approach to this bay is between the northern side of Nau chau Island and the dangers extending about 7 miles southeastward of the southern extremity of Aigrettes Island, which island forms the northern side of Le Goulet, the entrance to the bay, 1 mile wide; the Goulet lies between Aigrettes Island and the northern extremity of Tan hai Island, and it is about 1.3 miles wide, with depths of 10 to 20 fathoms, and from 7 to 15 fathoms in the bay within it.

Aspect—Beacons.—Jacquelin Hill, 364 feet in height, on Tan hai Island, southern side of the approach, is probably the first object seen from the offing, from which it would be visible about 25 miles in clear weather; a series of sand dunes extend from it to the coast, where there is a black leading beacon.

The southern point of the entrance is low, sandy, and rounded; within it is a sand dune. Red Hill, 98 feet in height.

The summit of Nau chau, with its lighthouse, also on the southern side of the approach, will appear about the same time. On the northern side of the island are two towers, painted black and white, used as leading beacons.

On the northern side of the entrance to Kwang chau wan are several wooded hills, which are prolonged toward the north by high sand dunes. The most remarkable of these, Colline Verte (Green Hill), is wooded only on its southern and western sides; there is a black and white tower on it, visible as soon as it appears above the horizon, and there is a black and white seamark (wall) between it and the shore.

Morne de Bouquet, westward of it, close to the northern side of the entrance, is a wooded hill with a pagoda on it.

Bar—Dangers.—The approach is over a bar with a low-water depth of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms over it at low water, eastward of the central patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and about  $3\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms westward of that patch, on the separate pairs of leading marks. The western side of the bar is formed by the shallow banks extending about 3 miles eastward of the shore under Jacquelin Hill; and the eastern side by the shoals extending southeastward of Aigrettes Island; the western extremity of the outer or southernmost bank (which is about 1.5 miles in length,

east and west, within a depth of 3 fathoms) lies with Jacquelin Hill bearing 277°, about 5.5 miles.

At 2.5 miles northward of this position are shoals marked by breakers, and which are continuous up to Aigrettes Island.

Between the 3-fathom edge of the bank mentioned and the nearest breakers northward are several patches of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  and 3 fathoms, and one with 6 feet only; the southwesternmost has a depth of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms, and is 500 yards eastward of the eastern track over the bar.

There is a channel between the outer bank and these patches, with 3½ fathoms water, the mark for which is Jacquelin Hill (nothern end of table top), in line with the black tower on the shore, 273°.

Buoy.—A black buoy, with cylindrical top mark, lies in 4 fathoms on the eastern side of the bar channel, at 1 mile 147° from the fairway patch of 2½ fathoms.

The fairway patch, with 2½ fathoms least water, lies with Jacquelin Hill bearing 276°, distant 4.4 miles.

The chart will afford better information than any written description of the other shoals, the survey of which is incomplete.

Kwang chau Wan—General remarks.—The bay and the territory of Kwang chau was leased to France in 1899 for 99 years, and in the same year the two islands in the approach, Nau chau and Tan hai, were included in the arrangement. The whole are under the administration of the governor general of Indo-China.

Depths.—The bay of Kwang chau is about 6.5 miles in length in an east-southeast and opposite direction, between Le Goulet, its entrance, and Tat chin Island, abreast Portalis Point (between which is the entrance to Matshe River), by about 5.5 miles in breadth; the navigable portion is reduced to a comparatively narrow channel, but not anywhere less than 600 yards wide between the 5-fathoms curve, and which is a continuation seaward of the Matshe. Its entrance, Le Goulet, is rather over a mile wide, with depths of 7 to 20 fathoms; within it the fairway depths are irregular, but not less than 7 fathoms at low water on the leading marks.

In the approach, over the bar, the low-water depth is from 3½ to 3½ fathoms, respectively, west and east of the fairway patch, with a maximum rise of 12¾ feet, neaps 8 feet, so that the bay is available for nearly all classes of vessels at high water springs.

The bay affords anchorage for all drafts in most of the reaches; at 3 miles above the entrance to Matshe River, and 1 mile above Fort Bayard and the military station of Hoi Teou, is Hoi Teou Road, about 800 yards wide, with depths of 16 fathoms.

The Matshe, above Hoi Teou Road, has depths of not less than 5 fathoms up to the northern end of Taocien Island, but it gradually decreases in width; thence to Matshe (Mapum) Town, about 2.5 miles, the depths decrease to 3 fathoms. Thence to Montao, 3.5

356 CHINA.

miles above, the depths are probably under 7 feet in places at low water springs; see the charts, and also page 359.

Above Montao it is not navigable by large junks.

The shores of the bay are low and sandy, fronted almost everywhere by long banks of soft mud and by shingle, which uncover at low water. There are, however, some reddish cliffs, and numerous clumps of trees which shelter villages.

Directions.—See page 360.

Southern shore of the bay.—This shore, which is the northern coast of Tan hai Island, consists at first of a low sandy point, uncovering at low water and forming the northern side of the mouth of a creek; a sand dune, 98 feet in height, is situated within this point, before mentioned with the approach.

To the southwestward of the creek, the coast, for a distance of 2 miles, consists of cliffs, much broken up, and about 65 feet in height; along the foreshore are patches of rocks.

The coast is then low and sandy as far as Cylindre Point, where it again rises to a low cliff.

An observation spot, situated on the cliff, 79 feet high, is marked by a black stone beacon.

Beacon.—A leading mark, a white pyramid, is erected on the cliff about 335 yards to the westward of the observatory beacon.

Lin fa than Island, situated about ½ mile to the northward of Cylindre Point, southern side of the bay, is well cultivated. In the center is a wood in which is a village.

The northern and eastern sides of the island are bordered by banks of rock and mud; from the southeastern point a long strip of sand, which uncovers for a distance of nearly 1,200 yards, extends to the southeastward.

Patch.—A 1-fathom patch, steep-to, lies on the 3-fathoms curve bordering the channel, at 1,200 yards 85° from the southern extremity of the island.

The passage between the island and Cylindre Point is encumbered with rocks and mud banks.

Beacons.—On the northern coast of Lin fa than Island is a white stone pyramid, and within it is another white beacon, consisting of a pyramid of bamboos covered with wickerwork; it is situated 273 yards 179° from the former.

Chenal de l'Estoc lies between Lin fa than Island and Lei chau Peninsula; it leads to the town of Lei chau, but is only available by small craft with local knowledge. It has been used by gunboats, but it is full of dangers, rendering it imprudent to use it unless possessing good local knowledge. It has the advantage of being sheltered throughout its length, and of avoiding the bar, on which at times during the northeast monsoon there is a nasty sea.

Western shore of the bay.—Between Fishers Rock, western side of L'Estoc Channel, and Portalis Point the coast is fronted by a sand bank, extending to a distance of 1 mile from the high-water mark, with patches of rock which dry 6 feet at its extremity, between which and Tat chin Island the mouth of the Matshe is only 550 yards wide between the 5-fathoms curve.

Portalis Point—Beacons.—The right bank of Matshe River terminates at Portalis Point, which is a red cliff.

About 1,100 yards to the westward of this point are two white pyramidal beacons, which, when in line, bear 317°.

Northern shore of the bay—Aigrettes Island.—This shore, which is the southern coast of Aigrettes Island, lies northwestward of Morne du Bouquet, is low and swampy, and intersected by several waterways used by trading junks. There is a swatchway leading to Port Beaumont, and from thence out to the main stream.

Beacons.—On Colline Verte, within the southern extremity of Aigrettes Island, is a black and white tower 56 feet high; on the shore westward of it is a black and white pyramid beacon; these in line, 70°, form a leading mark from the Goulet southwestward into the bay.

There is a black and white mark on a wall ½ mile southeastward of the tower on Colline Verte, before referred to with the aspect of the approach.

At Pyramide Point, situated about 3.3 miles northwestward of the Morne, the coast consists of red cliffs.

Port Beaumont is situated about 2 miles northwestward of Pyramide Point on Beaumont or South Pak hai Island. The port office was formerly here, also huts for about 100 men, and a small workshop containing the necessary tools and material for the maintenance of the buoys in the bay.

There is a small landing pier, dry at low water, at Port Beaumont. Tat chin Island, situated on the southern side of Port Beaumont, forms the eastern side of the entrance to Matshe River; it is well cultivated and has several villages. Shallow water extends 800 yards northward of Fillette Point, its northwestern extremity, between which and the flat extending off Beaumont Island is a channel with 15 feet water into Port Beaumont.

Tat chin Bank, of sand and rocks, which uncovers at spring tides, extends for a distance of 1.5 miles southeastward of the island, with a rock which dries 11 feet near its extremity.

Detached shoals lie outside the 5-fathoms curve of Tat chin Bank on the eastern side of the fairway as follows: A patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at 800 yards 186° from the western extremity of Tat chin Island; and a patch with  $1\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms, 174°, 1.4 miles from the same point.

79795-15--24



Shoals—Yuyu Bank—Beacon.—Southeastward of Tat chin Bank are the Yuyu and Middle Banks; the latter has several patches which dry from 5 to 8 feet.

On the northeastern side of Yuyu Bank is a wooden beacon 20 feet high surmounted by a circular topmark, a guide, with local knowledge, through Yuyu swatchway. Southward of these banks are other banks, with rocks awash and above water at times, extending a distance of 2 miles, forming the northern side of the fairway into the bay.

The southwesternmost patch, 2½ fathoms, lies 316° nearly 1.5 miles from Observatory Beacon, on the southern shore; it is marked by a buoy.

Between these and Morne du Bouquet Point to the eastward is the southern entrance to the inshore swatchway for small craft, just referred to.

Buoys.—A red conical buoy, with cylindrical topmark, marks the southwestern patch of 2½ fathoms (the Fisheries) at the elbow of the fairway, at 1.4 miles 316° from the Observatory Beacon. A similar buoy marks the western extremity of a spit extending southwestward of Middle Bank, close to a 1-fathom patch. Nearly midway between these buoys is a third red buoy, marking a 2½-fathoms patch.

A red buoy with cylindrical topmark lies 300 yards northwestward of the 1½-fathoms patch close east of the fairway, 1.4 miles southward of the western extremity of Tat chin Island.

Matshe River.—For depths see Kwang chau wan, page 355. Matshe River is nearly a mile in width at its mouth where it enters the bay between Portalis Point and Tat chin Island. The navigable channel within the 5-fathoms curve is about 600 yards wide, with depths of 14 to 17 fathoms on the island side, which is steep-to, while Portalis Point is fronted by a mud bank, with rocks dry at low water some 6 feet, at its extremity.

Nivet Point, situated about 2 miles northward of Tat chin Island, is steep-to; behind it is a large clump of trees sheltering a village. This is one of the spots proposed for the port office, referred to with Port Beaumont.

Chenal des Aigrettes lies between Nivet Point and North Pak hai Island; it is apparently dry at low water within the center of that island

Fort Bayard.—Opposite Nivet Point, on the right bank of the river, is Fort Bayard, the flagstaff of which can be seen as far as the mouth of the river. There is a military post here.

Extending from the flagstaff is a bank of mud which at spring tides dries for more than 100 yards beyond the end of the pier constructed in front of the fort.

There is a mooring buoy off this pier (not on chart).

Alouette rock is situated nearly in the middle of the river, about 1,800 yards 163° from Fort Bayard flagstaff. It consists of two shoals about 200 yards apart in the direction of the channel; on the southern one there is a depth of 1 foot at low water, and on the northern one 13 fathoms.

Buoy.—A buoy, painted black, with cylindrical topmark, is moored in deep water on the eastern side of these dangers; the fairway is eastward of the buoy, on the leading marks, Northern (Nord) peak in line with Nivet Point, 22°.

The western bank of the river, to the northward of Fort Bayard, forms a curve, at the head of which is seen Bonheur tower, an isolated monument easily recognizable. In the background a chain of heights, on which is situated the military post of Hoi tau, approaches gradually to the river, and terminates at Caravan Point, which is on the southern side of the approach to Chekam Creek.

On the bank, midway between Bonheur tower and Caravan Point, are two small twin hills about 50 feet in height.

The eastern bank of the river, to the northward of Nivet Point, for about 2 miles, consists of a low cliff, nearly horizontal, on the summit of which is cultivated ground and numerous clumps of trees containing villages. Abreast is Hoi Teou Road.

Thence northward the deep bight in the coast line is fronted by a mud flat to the distance of  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile.

On the northern shore of this bight is a green isolated hillock, about 40 feet in height, known as the Tumulus. Behind appears in the distance Nord Peak, an isolated conspicuous mountain, probably that shown on B. A. Chart 2062 as 460 feet high.

The channel to Montao.—To the northward of Caravan Point the channel of the river narrows; nevertheless large vessels can find good anchorage in not less than 5 fathoms off the mouth of the Chekam, in a position about 2 miles northward of Caravan Point.

The river is easily navigable for gunboats as far as the passes of Shekmun, a short distance below the Chinese town of Montao. These passes are very narrow and strewn with rocks. The French gunboat Comete ascended them in 1899 and anchored off Montao, but the anchorage there is very narrow, and the current runs strongly.

The survey of the river has not been carried beyond Montao; above this point it ceases to be navigable for large junks.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage almost anywhere in Kwang chau Bay and the Matshe River, as before stated. The usual anchorage apparently is in Hoi Teou Road (Lat. 20° 12′ N., Long. 110° 25′ E.), in about 10 fathoms.

A submarine cable is laid in the Matshe River above Fort Bayard from near Bonheur tower to a position nearly ½ mile above Nivet Point, as charted. Its position is indicated by four red beacons

with triangles on the shore, two on each side, marking a rectangular space within which anchorage is prohibited.

Tides.—There is a great diurnal inequality in the tides in Kwang chau wan, a difference of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet between two consecutive high waters having been observed; the range of tide is sometimes as much as 18 feet, the least being about 10 feet; the above is a note on the chart. According to the French tide tables for this neighborhood it is high water, full and change, at about 10h. 30m., with a rise of  $11\frac{1}{2}$  feet, which does not differ much from Nau chau.

Directions—Kwang chau wan and Matshe River.—From seaward steer for Jacquelin Hill, keeping it between the bearings of about 271° and 299°. Depending on the direction from which a vessel is approaching, Nau chau Lighthouse, on the summit of that island, may be seen before sighting Jacquelin Hill. When within about 10 miles of the northern end of Nau chau, Jacquelin Hill being steered for, bearing 299°, will lead to the northern anchorage of Nau chau, and to the approach to Kwang chau wan bar.

(If not crossing the bar at once anchorage can be taken in about 7 fathoms with Jacquelin Hill bearing about 301° and Nau chau Lighthouse in line with the north-northeastern black-and-white tower bearing 181°.)

To cross the bar: When Nau chau Lighthouse bears about 192° the vessel will be about 1½ miles southeastward of the bar buoy; course should then be gradually altered to the northward to pass westward of the buoy, with Nau chau Lighthouse in line with the northnortheastern tower (black-and-white horizontal bands, near the shore) bearin: 181°, keeping these beacons in line astern, until the eastern end of the flat top of Jacquelin Hill is in line with the black beacon on the shore, bearing 273°, at which intersection the vessel will be nearly midway between the fairway patch and the 2¾-fathoms northeastward of it and on the center of the bar. From this position a course 345° (allowing for tide) should be steered until the black-and-white tower on Colline Verte is in line with the black-and-white mark below it, bearing 327°, when the vessel will be within the bar and in deep water.

The leading mark westward of the fairway patch has about 1½ feet less water or 3¼ fathoms at low-water springs; it has the advantage over the eastern track of running straight on a line of beacons across the bar and immediately on another line of beacons within the bar, whereas on the eastern line a course has to be steered for 1½ miles without marks. The bar mark is the clump of trees westward of Nau chau Lighthouse, in line with the north-northwestern beacon, white conical, with one black band, on the northern end of Nau chau, astern, bearing 182° until Colline Verte tower is in line with the mark southeastward of it, bearing 327°, as before.

The above transit line, 327°, should be followed until Jacquelin Hill bears 257°. From this position, Lon tain, a distant summit, will be seen through the Goulet or entrance, if the weather be clear, between the wooded ridge and the north point of Lin fa than Island, bearing 285°, which course will lead through the Goulet, but there are no dangers in it, and it is only necessary to keep in the fairway until near the next line of beacons, namely, Colline Verte tower, in line with the black and white pyramid southward of Morne du Bouquet Point, bearing 70°, which, kept astern, leads up the first reach until near the red buoy at the southwestern extremity of the mass of shoals on the northern side of the bay, when Jacquelin Hill will be in line with the white pyramid eastward of the Observatory beacon, bearing 133°, which, kept astern, leads westward of the buoy.

When the red pagoda on the southern side of Lin fa than Island bears 285°, or Colline Verte beacon is in line with the pagoda on Morne du Bouquet Point, 84°, steer 344° for 1,200 yards for the red buoy on the spit to give a good berth to the 6-foot patch eastward of Lin fa than Island until Cylinder Point is touching the southern extremity of Lin fa than Island, when the white pyramids westward of Portalis Point will be in line bearing 317°, and being steered for will lead up the next reach westward of the red buoy, and westward of the detached patches off Tai chin Island, up to and southward of the red buoy with trianlge topmark, marking them.

(The western end of the summit of Jacquelin Hill in line with the Observatory beacon, 137°, is a better mark for coming out on, as they will be ahead and the objects are much farther apart.)

Approaching the red buoy with triangular topmark, just mentioned, course should be altered gradually to bring the pyramid beacons on Lin fa than Island in line, astern, 179°, which leads up the channel westward of the buoy, and about 200 yards westward of the 2½-fathom patch southward of the western extremity of Tat chin Island, and where a vessel might be a little westward of the line with advantage.

From abreast Portalis Point, the western point of entrance to Matshé River, Nord Peak (probably the 460-foot hill shown on B. A. Chart 2062) in line with Nivet Point, bearing 22°, will lead up eastward of Alouette rocks, marked by a black buoy, from abreast which the fairway should be kept to Nivet Point, with Caravan Point 2°, which will insure a good berth to the rock which dries southward of Fort Bayard Pier and on the edge of the 3-fathom curve. Above Fort Bayard, Tumulus Hill, situated northeastward of Caravan Point on the eastern shore open to the westward of Nord Peak, leads in not less than 23 feet abreast Bonheur tower, on the western side of the river.

There is anchorage off Nivet Point or in Hoi teou Road, northward of the telegraph cable.

Communication.—A bimonthly mail steamer runs between Kwang chau wan and Haifong, calling at Hoi hau and Pak hoi both going and returning.

The coast northeastward from Kwang chau wan is low and sandy for a distance of 10 miles, at which distance is a fort. Westward of the fort is an estuary fronted by breakers to the distance of 2 or 3 miles, and which has not been surveyed. About 10 miles within the fort is a peaked hill 460 feet in height, the only one in this neighborhood, and probably the one referred to as the Nord or northern peak in Kwang chau wan.

Thence the coast continues low for 24 miles in a northeasterly direction to An kang shan Hill, situated close to the shore. This coast has not been sounded, and therefore should be given a wide berth.

An kang shan, at about 5 miles southwestward of Sui tung, is a bold hill, 515 feet high, with a steep cliff on its sea face. A sunken rock is charted about ½ mile off it, with others extending 4 miles to the westward; unsurveyed ground.

Sui tung Harbor (Lat. 21° 28′ N., Long. 111° 5′ E.).—The entrance to this harbor is narrow and dangerous; the outer bar, upon which there is a depth of 6 feet at low water, is situated 6 miles eastward of An kang shan Hill, and 2 miles 147° from the entrance to the harbor; the banks in the vicinity of the bar shift during strong winds, and the sea breaks heavily upon them.

The flat coast between the entrance and the An kang shan Hill is a peninsula, with two remarkable rocky cones from 30 to 60 feet high,

Within the entrance, a narrow channel between mud banks leads to the village of Sui tung, about 5 miles up.

The capital town of the district is named Um cheun, and is situated 12 miles northwestward of Sui tung.

Coast.—About midway between Sui tung and Tien pak is Chun san, a white hummock about 70 feet in height. This coast is fronted by a shallow bank to the distance of 2 to 3 miles.

Tien pak (Lat. 21° 30′ N., Long. 111° 15′ E.) is the principal place on the southern coast of China where salt is produced; several hundred junks are employed in transporting it.

The outer portion of the peninsula forming the eastern side of the harbor is known as the high land of Lamtau; it is connected by an isthmus of sand with the high land within it, and has the appearance of a round mountain in coming from the eastward; its southern extremity is Sie ho Point.

Islets and dangers—Sie ho Reef.—At about 1 mile off the point eastward of Sie ho Point is Sie ho Reef, about a mile in extent,

with a rock always above water near its center. There is a depth of 10 fathoms close to its southern side, and 7 fathoms between it and the shore.

At ½ mile southwestward of Sie ho Point lies Pauk piah, a large white rock, with 6 fathoms water between, and a rock awash at times westward of it.

Fung ki chau, a small island, lies about 1.5 miles to the westward of Pauk piah; about midway between is a sunken reef.

Ti fung kioh, about 2 miles southwestward of Fung ki chau, is of considerable height, and the outermost island in the approach. A shallow bank extends about 1.5 miles northward of it, with a sunken rock 150 yards offshore. Marble and Black Rocks are situated on the edge of the shallow bank, which extends from 1.5 to 3 miles offshore westward of the harbor.

Outer anchorage.—A small vessel in want of shelter in the northeast monsoon period may anchor in 4 fathoms, sand and mud, westward of Sie ho Point, between Pauk piah and the sunken rocks northward of it, in the approach to the harbor.

Larger vessels may anchor in a depth of 6 fathoms within a line joining Fung ki chau, and Ti fung kioh, with shelter from the southwest winds; Fung ki chau and Sie ho Point will break the force of the northeast winds.

Tien pak Harbor.—The entrance to the harbor is about 670 yards wide between the northwestern extremity of Lamtau Peninsula and the triangular sandbank extending southward from the western part. The channel to the river is between flats, dry at low water, with depths of 5 to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and 2 fathoms in the river abreast the forts. The approach, apparently, has from 2 to 3 fathoms water, northward of the outer islets, and westward of the sunken rocks extending from the peninsula.

Directions.—A small craft wishing to enter should first anchor near the north side of Pauk piah, to be ready to cross the bar after having examined the channel if a pilot is not obtainable. The best time to enter would be near low water, as the banks on either side are then discernible usually from aloft.

The trading junks enter the river between the forts, where they load salt.

A village is situated on the northern bank within the forts.

The town of Tien pak is walled round, and is of considerable extent; it stands at the head of the shallow bight eastward of the inlet, and can only be approached in boats at high water, through the creeks that intersect the extensive flat between it and the entrance.

Supplies of provisions may be obtained from the villages contiguous to the harbor. Water may be obtained on the island Ti fung-

kioh, at a small spring near the shore; but the Chinese boats will bring it from the city at a very moderate rate.

**Tides.**—It is high water, full and change, on the bar of Tien pak Harbor at about noon; springs rise  $8\frac{1}{2}$  feet. During the northeast monsoon period there is almost a constant westerly current along this coast, with a velocity of from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1.5 miles per hour.

Offlying islands—Tai chuk chau (Lat. 21° 26′ N., Long. 111° 24′ E.) is an island 285 feet in height, situated about 7 miles eastward of Sie ho Point, and about 2.8 miles from the coast. There is anchorage within ½ mile of, or farther off, its western side, in a depth of 4 to 6 fathoms, fine sand, with shelter from easterly winds. A reef of rocks lies between the island and the shore, with a depth of 4 to 5 fathoms inshore of it.

Chin chau, situated about 5 miles eastward of Tai chuk chau, and 1 mile offshore, is 415 feet high, and covered with grass and bush.

A reef, with a rock awash, on which the sea generally breaks, extends about a mile southward of it, and a rock, with a depth of 4 feet, lies 321°, distant about 1.5 miles from the island.

Near the eastern side of the island there is a depth of 8 fathoms, foul ground; to the westward, between it and Tai chuk chau, there are depths of 7 to 8 fathoms, gravel.

Gui tong.—Rocks from 20 to 50 feet high lie inshore of Chin chau, within which is a shallow bay, having on the eastern side a fort and an inlet available for boats, named Gui tong, or Fish Pass.

Song yui Point, about 10 miles eastward of Chin chau, is a low sandy point forming the southwestern extremity of the bay, at the northeastern part of which is Hui ling san Harbor. Some islets or rocks lie off the point with sunken rocks just beyond, near which there are depths of 8 to 10 fathoms. About 2 miles within it is the southwestern extremity of the Rugged Mountains, which back the coast as far as the entrance to Hui ling san Harbor.

The bay on the western side of Song yui Point is shallow, and Song yui Town is situated at its head.

The Brothers, situated 2 to 3 miles northeastward of Song yui Point, are two islets about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile offshore, having sunken rocks projecting from them to the distance of from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 mile.

Hui ling san Island is 12.5 miles in length, east and west, from about 2 to 4 miles in breadth, and 1,350 feet in height near its center; the Sugar Loaf, appearing of that shape when seen from the westward of Bluff Point; it is separated from the coast by a narrow passage not surveyed; the harbor of the same name is on its southwestern side.

Two islets, named Mame chau, lie close to the southwestern point of the island connected to it and with Deep-water Point to the northward by a sand flat. At about a mile northeastward of Deep-water

Point is a hill covered with trees, with the small fort of Hui ling Potoi on its summit, nearly hidden.

Bluff Point, 3 miles eastward of the islets, is high, with a depth of 9 to 10 fathoms water near it.

At 4 miles eastward of Bluff Point, and abreast the Sugar Loaf Hill, are three rocky islets about ½ mile offshore, with a reef, steep-to, extending a short distance beyond.

At  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile southward of the eastern point of Hui ling san, there is a reef of rocks nearly covered at high water, with 6 fathoms close-to. Off the eastern point is an islet. On the eastern part of Hui ling san there is a patch of red sand, discernible when off the Mandarins Cap, to the southeastward.

Hui ling san Harbor (Lat. 21° 35′ N., Long. 111° 47′ E.), open to the southwestward, is situated close to the southwestern extremity of the island of the same name; it affords good shelter to one or two vessels of moderate draft in a depth of 4 to 6 fathoms, in the northeast monsoon period, with plenty of room and shelter for small craft at all times.

The harbor is 1.5 miles wide in the entrance between the Mame chau Islets and the reef which breaks off the western shore, but the deep water, 5 fathoms and above, lies close toward the islets, and is but ½ mile wide; a depth of 4 fathoms will be carried up as far as the fort at Hui ling Potoi, above which the depths rapidly decrease.

Shoals.—A shoal about 600 yards in length, with from 2½ to 3 fathoms, lies from 800 to 1,200 yards westward of Deep-water Point, with the channel between. Mame chau Islets are connected with Deep-water Point by a sand flat, as before stated; thence eastward of a line joining Deep-water Point to Tip chau, and to the fort, the water is shallow.

A bank with less than 3 fathoms projects southward toward the anchorage from about the middle of the bay; its southeastern extremity, bordering the anchorage, lies 1,200 yards southwestward from the fort.

Directions.—There is no difficulty in entering Hui ling san Harbor; the only danger is the shoal with 2½ fathoms water on the port hand, westward of Deep-water Point.

Mame chau Island and Deep-water Point should be passed at the distance of rather over 200 yards, and anchorage taken in about 7 fathoms, with the southern extremity of Tip chau bearing 73° about 800 yards. There is anchorage as far up as abreast the fort in 4 to 5 fathoms. Vessels of light draft can haul in under Deep-water Point, where there is anchorage in the bight in about 2½ fathoms, or in the boat harbor within Tip chau, where there are depths of 8 to 9 feet.

Supplies.—In the bay between Tip chau and Deep-water Point, adjacent to a joss house in ruins, fresh water may be procured.

Chino village, situated on the southeastern side of the boat harbor, affords supplies of water and provisions. Carpenters and calkers may be got to work on board, and smith's work can be executed at the village.

Off-lying islets—Mandarins Cap (Lat. 21° 28′ 00″ N., Long. 112° 21′ 30″ E.), or Fan shi ak, is a barren white rock, about 200 feet high, with a sharp summit, situated about 28 miles east-south-westward of the Sugar Loaf on Hui ling san. At ½ mile northward of it is a high rock with a rock awash between; in other places there are depths of 13 to 16 fathoms around the cap.

Currents.—During the northeast monsoon period, and also in August and September, when easterly winds frequently prevail, the current sometimes sets to the westward at the rate of 3 miles an hour off Mandarins Cap, abating only to 1.5 miles when the tidal stream under ordinary circumstances, would be setting to the eastward. Frequently in the southwest monsoon, if the wind shifts to the eastward, a westerly set is experienced.

Nampang Island, 10 miles northwestward of Mandarins Cap, is about 1.5 miles in length and 780 feet high at its western end. It is safe to approach, having 9 to 10 fathoms near the shore all round, but is destitute of fresh water.

Round Island, 3.3 miles westward of Nampang, 310 feet in height, is small and named from its appearance. About 2 miles south-southwestward of it there are two rocks; the southern is about 30 feet in height and the northern about 10 feet. Between the nearest rock and the island there is a depth of 10 fathoms.

Quoin is an islet, 270 feet high, resembling a gunner's quoin, lying near the eastern side of Ni wok Island, about 2.8 miles northward of Nampang; in the passage between it and the latter the depth is 8 to 9 fathoms. There is a rock 40 feet high westward of the Quoin.

Ni wok is 390 feet in height and about a mile in length, with a sunken rock south of its eastern extremity.

Tai wok, about 1.5 miles northward of Ni wok, is 345 feet high, appearing like a saddle when viewed from the southwestward. At 1 mile 214° from Tai wok there is a rock awash at low water with a depth of about 8 fathoms all around, and on which the sea sometimes breaks.

Westward of a small temple near the beach, in the little bay on the northern side of Tai wok, fresh water can be procured.

Coast—Tai oa Point and Bay.—Tai oa Point lies about 16 miles eastward of Hui ling san Island; between is Deep Bay. The depths decrease regularly from Mandarins Cap, 15 miles in the offing, to 4 fathoms close to Tai oa Point.



In Tai oa Bay, close northwestward of the point, the water is shallow; but small craft find shelter close off the village, in 2 fathoms. Rocks covered at high water lie about a mile southwestward of the island in Tai oa Bay, with 4 to 5 fathoms around them, and there are sunken rocks eastward of the island and in the bay, which has not been surveyed.

The village of the same name within the point is the residence of a mandarin.

Deep Bay, westward of Tai oa Point, is fronted by shallow water extending about 2 miles in its eastern and 4 to 5 miles in its western part, but it has not been surveyed. The village of Yong Kong is shown on the chart as being situated about 3 miles up the river which enters the bay between the forts on either side of the entrance.

Shallow Bay—Mong chau (Lat. 21° 39′ N., Long. 112° 7′ E.), situated about 6.5 miles southeastward of the point of the bay eastward of Tai oa Point, is on the edge of the 3-fathom curve stretching out to Haucheun, distant 5 miles southeastward of it. The bay extending northeastward of Mong chau, within Haucheun and St. John Islands, is mostly shallow. Hai yu Island occupies a portion of it, westward of which there is an inlet to Tai wu san, with depths of 4 to 5 fathoms, but with only from 1 to 2 fathoms in its approach on either side of Mong chau.

Mong chau is a high island, about 2.5 miles in length, and covered with verdure. There is a village near its summit, only visible from the southeastward; some rocks extend off its northeastern point to the distance of nearly 1.5 miles. A rock 30 feet high lies about a mile southeastward of its southern extremity.

Small vessels may anchor in 3 fathoms at low water, on the western side of this island during easterly winds; and fresh water may be procured at a small beach on that side, near the southern point.

Haucheun Island, situated about 12 miles northeastward of Mandarins Cap, is a high island, 10.5 miles in length in a northeast and southwest direction, by about 3 miles in breadth.

Anchorage.—Its southwestern extremity, Haucheun Bluff, has a depth of 7 to 8 fathoms close-to; and close around it on the western side there are two small bights, with sandy beaches, having 3 fathoms water, where small vessels may take shelter during the northeast monsoon period; larger vessels also will be sheltered from easterly winds by anchoring in 5 or 6 fathoms, soft mud, about a mile off the southern bight.

This anchorage is generally known as Haucheun Road or Bay.

A few bullocks may be obtainable at the village, and fresh water in the southernmost bight. The town of Haucheun is on the eastern side of the island, and where supplies are also obtainable.

Namo Harbor (Lat. 21° 36′ N., Long. 112° 33′ E.) lies between the southwestern end of Haucheun and Namo Island, and although



small, it is safe and convenient for refitting a vessel of small or even moderate draft, or one otherwise requiring shelter.

Namo Island is 1.3 miles in length, and 500 feet in height, with Passage Islet close off its southwestern extremity, which is connected with it by reef; rocks extend 100 yards westward of Passage Island. Rocks, some above water, extend about 600 yards off the southeastern side of Namo.

The southern entrance is preferable to the eastern entrance for vessels above 16 feet draft, having 6 fathoms water, gradually decreasing to the sandy beach at Namo Village, at the head of the harbor, and is free from danger. This entrance is  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile wide, having Passage Islet on the eastern side, and the eastern extremity of Haucheun Bluff Peninsula on the west.

Anchorage—Directions.—With an easterly wind, the best anchorage is under Namo Island, at about midway between Passage Islet and Green Point; here the depth is 4½ fathoms, soft mud, about ½ mile off. When it blows strong, a long ground swell rolls in, rendering it necessary to anchor in the western part of the harbor, where there are depths of 4½ fathoms, mud bottom.

In entering it is only necessary to give a berth of about 400 yards to Passage Islet, to avoid the rocks that extend half that distance from it.

The eastern entrance, between Namo Island and the southeastern part of Haucheun, has a depth of 3 fathoms on the bar which connects the island with Haucheun; this passage is much encumbered with fishing stakes, but there are openings about 100 feet wide in places.

Anchorage—Directions.—The best berth for a small vessel is abreast the sandy beach on the northern side of Namo, which forms Green Point; not so far northward as to open the southern entrance. In this berth there is not less than 3 fathoms at low-water springs. Although slightly exposed to the easterly wind, no swell of consequence comes in.

In entering, the rocks, mostly above water, extending 600 vards southeastward of Namo Island at 600 vards from its eastern extremity should be given a berth. Coming from the eastward, pass southward of Boat Rock, always above water; thence in mid-channel to the anchorage mentioned, or farther westward off the village, if desired.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Namo Harbor, at about 10h.; springs rise 7 to 8 feet.

Supplies.—There are several watering places about the harbor, the largest and most convenient of which is in Watering Bay, a sandy bay on Haucheun; here the water comes close to the beach.

Namo village is situated at the northern head of Namo Harbor-westward of Watering Bay. Fish and poultry are procurable. There is considerable surf on the beach during strong southerly winds; it is then advisable to land at Watering Bay.

The five islands, situated off the eastern side of Haucheun, are mostly small, and form the western side of the channel between it and St. John. Boat Rock, situated in Lat. 21° 35′ 00″ N., Long. 112° 38′ 45″ E., about ½ mile southward of Round Islet, the southernmost of the group, is never quite covered, and the sea generally breaks over it.

Wasp Island, the next northward of Round Islet, is the largest of the group, and has some rocks close to its southeastern side. Cricket, the third island, is high and covered with grass. The fourth, Pipachau, is covered with grass, having rocks above and below water extending from its southern end.

Anchorages.—There is no hidden danger near these islands, and a vessel of 15 feet draft will find sheltered anchorage between them and Haucheun, in 3 fathoms. soft ground.

Supplies may be obtained from the town of Haucheun, situated in the bay fronting the islands.

All the space between these islands and St. John is apparently free from danger, with depths of 5 to 6 fathoms, soft ground, and where vessels can find shelter according to the prevailing wind. The tidal streams are strong at springs, the ebb setting southward and the flood northward through the channel; at neaps they are weak.

St. John Island, or Chang Cheun Cham, is about 14 miles in length, in a north and south direction; near its center it is nearly divided into two islands, the low sandy isthmus connecting the two high portions being less than a mile wide.

The bay eastward of the isthmus is known as Sanki Bay. while that to the westward is Sandy Bay.

Waikaup is a high, rocky island. fronting the southeastern end of St. John Island. being separated from it by a narrow passage. There are said to be depths of 13 to 14 fathoms water close to this island.

Shito Bay, on the southwestern side of St. John, is about 2 miles in length and \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile in breadth at the entrance, with a depth of 6 to 7 fathoms. decreasing to 4 fathoms abreast a rock 4 feet high \(\frac{1}{2}\) mile below Satie Village; it has not been closely sounded.

There is a watering place at the southern side of the entrance.

Between Shito Bay and the southern point of St. John there is a small bay. having 6 fathoms water; some rocks, which are steep-to, extend about a mile off its southwestern point.

Gunjavar Channel is the passage between St. John Island and the bank fronting the mainland to a distance of about 6 miles; it is 370 CHINA.

about 2 to 3 miles wide, with depths of 4 to 4½ fathoms over soft bottom, and somewhat deeper in the entrances; it is probably a good typhoon anchorage. Its western end has been mentioned in connection with the five islands.

The only known dangers are the patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, situated  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile northwestward of the outer islet in the bay on the northwestern side and in which is the village of Samtong, and the rocks awash or above water and steep-to, about a mile off the northeastern point of St. John Island, southern side of the eastern entrance.

The village of Samtong affords small quantities of supplies.

Eastern side of St. John—Rocks.—A rock, visible only at low water, lies about ½ mile off the northeastern point of Chau wan. Islets and rocks extend 1.5 miles off the southern point of Sanki Bay, as charted, and there is a reef on which the sea breaks at times, marked P. D., at about ½ mile off the southeastern shore, abreast Satie. The general depths off the eastern side of the island are from 9 to 10 fathoms.

Liuchiu (Lat. 21° 36′ N., Long. 112° 52′ E.) is an island 2.5 miles in length east and west, of moderate height and barren aspect, separated from the southeastern part of St. John by a channel 2.5 miles wide, with a depth of about 12 fathoms; there is said to be deep water close to the island all around. A rock above water lies close off its northwestern end.

**Tidal streams.**—Outside these islands the flood stream runs eastward from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 knots an hour. Inside it is rather stronger. The rise is about 6 feet.

Taikam Island, situated about 11 miles northeastward of St. John Island, is of considerable height, of dark aspect, and in clear weather appears with red streaks. On the southern part, in a small bay, behind a mound of sand near the beach, there is a village, and fresh water may be obtained at the western side of the beach. Between this island and Tonkwa, the large island to the northwestward, the depths are 3 fathoms and less.

Wizard rocks lie off the southern end of Taikam; the White Wizard lies 1 mile and the South Wizard 3 miles southward of Taikam. About 3 mile southwestward from the White Wizard there is a rock covered at high water. There is another rock, always above water, 1 mile 282° from the White Wizard.

The Flies, from \(^3\) mile to 1.5 miles southward of the South Wizard, consist of a group of rocks about 30 feet high, with a depth of 10 fathoms, mud bottom, at the distance of 200 yards seaward of them. They should be given a wide berth, as there are no soundings charted for many miles seaward.

Kukok (Bullock horn), the next island eastward of Taikam, is high, and 4.5 miles in length east and west. Its southwestern point,

in Lat. 21° 51′ N., Long. 113° 8′ E., has a rock about 15 feet high close to it. Under the high western side of the island there is a good anchorage in a depth of 5 fathoms, with shelter from northeasterly winds, at 1.5 miles off; a patch of 4½ fathoms is charted, with 6 fathoms around, at 3 miles westward of the island.

Fresh water may be obtained at the westernmost bay on the northern side of the island.

Kau lan, a high island, is separated from Kukok by a channel about 2 miles wide, with 3 fathoms water, decreasing gradually to the northward, and affording sheltered anchorage for small craft. Sunken rocks extend a short distance off the southeastern side of the island in places.

Sam long Islet (Lat. 21° 55′ N., Long. 113° 19′ E.) lies 1.5 miles eastward of the eastern point of Kau lan, with two islets situated from to 1 mile northeast of it.

Within Kukok and Kau lan are Tai mong, Sam hoi chuk, Talong kong, Tai lum, Tai fu, Cone, and other islets, all surrounded by shallow water, for which see the charts. Sam chau, the easternmost island, forms the western side of the approach to Si kiang or West River, and is dealt with below.

Nam sui Harbor, about 2.5 miles long and from 1 to 1.5 miles broad, is situated between the islands of Lam puk sui and Sam hoi chuk, at the western side of the entrance to the Si kiang or West River.

The harbor affords anchorage in depths of from 9 to 16 feet over a space about 2 miles long, in a northeast and southwest direction, and from 400 to 600 yards broad, sheltered from all winds except northeast. The entrance is from the eastward, avoiding a shoal with a depth of 6 feet extending from the southern entrance point; the western entrance is obstructed by the small island of Kie sum chau and the shoal water extending to the reclaimed land on either side of it.

Puk sui is a village situated on the southwestern point of Lam Puk sui; Nam sui, with a population of about 1,000, is built on the northern side of Sam hoi chuk. Both these islands are hilly.

Si kiang or West River—General remarks.—This river, also known as the Blue River, is some 700 miles in length from its source to the mouth of the Broadway, its principal entrance, between Wung kum Island and Ross Island.

Just westward of Samshui reach, 75 miles from the sea (which connects West River with North River), the river trends westward past Wu chau fu, Teng hsien, Ping nan, etc., to near Hsun chau fu, where it turns southward past that city under the name of the Yu kiang. At Hsun chau fu the main river, known as the Wu or Hong kiang, turns sharply northwestward and northward, and is joined a long distance up by the Liau chau River; the main stream westward

of this is known as the Hong chui kiang, or Red Water River; it continues in a northwesterly direction to its source on the borders of Yun nan.

The Yu kiang, or Nan ning River, from Hsun chau fu, trends in a westerly direction to Nan ning fu, near which it is joined from the southward by the Tso kiang, or Lung chau River. From near Nan ning fu the Yu kiang trends northwestward to Pose, known also as Pose River. The trade of the Province of Kwangsi follows the course of the Si kiang, or West River, excepting that from Lung chau, which owes its importance (but little, apparently) to its trade through Tonkin by the French railroad system.

From Samshui reach, which, as above mentioned, connects the Pe kiang or North River with West River, are the Fat shan and other branches leading to Canton River. At the towns and villages on the rivers the British and Mexican dollar are current.

Navigability.—Vessels of 13 feet draft can reach Wu chau fu, about 180 miles above the entrance, at high river (June), and 6 to 7 feet at low river. To cross second bar and the shoal water below Wu chau at all times of the year vessels should have a draft not exceeding 5 feet, and good steering qualities. For rise of river and navigability above Wu chau fu, see page 386.

### WEST RIVER REGULATIONS, 1905.

[Taken from the China Coasters' Tide Book and Nautical Pocket Manual, 1911.]

ART. I. Former regulations rescinded.—The regulations of trade on the West River hitherto in force are hereby abrogated.

ART. II. Ports, stages, or ports of call, and passenger stations.—The merchant vessels of the treaty powers are authorized to trade on the West River at the following four treaty ports:

Canton (directly connected with the West River), Kong mun, Samshui, and Wu chau fu.

Steamers are authorized to land and ship goods in accordance with regulations hereinafter set forth at the following six stages or ports of call: Kum chuk, Paktauhau, Shiu hing, Lotinghau, Tak hing, and Do sing; and to land and ship passengers and their luggage at any of the following 10 regular passenger stations: Yung ki (in Tailung Channel), Mahning (in Junction Channel), Kau kong, Kulau, Wingon, Howlik, Luk pu, Yuetsing, Luk to, and Fungchuen (in West River).

Passengers' luggage must not contain articles subject to duty, and the presence of dutiable articles will render the whole liable to confiscation.

ART. III. Arms certificate.—Vessels proposing to trade on the West River must provide themselves with an arms certificate. This certificate, which is to be made out on a form supplied by the customs and signed by the captain, must state the number of muskets, guns, swords, etc., and the quantity of ammunition carried for self-defense, and be produced for inspection and verification when required.

ART. IV. Classes of vessels.—Merchant vessels trading on the West River are to be divided into the following classes:

A. Steamers.—(1) Inland-water steamers trading to permitted inland places. (2) Local river steamers running from Canton, Kong mun, or Samshui to ports up river

without leaving Liang Kwang waters. (3) Foreign-going steamers from and to Hongkong, Macao, etc., trading for the voyage up and down river.

B.—Small craft, lorchas, papicos, junks, etc.

- ART. V. A. Steamers.—(1) Inland-water steamers are to comply with the Inland Waters Steam Navigation Regulations.
- (2) Local river steamers, which do not leave Liang Kwang waters, but which running from Canton, Kong mun, or Samshui are to trade only at treaty ports and ports of call, and take passengers to and from the authorized passenger stations, are to deposit their registers with their consul or (if consularly unrepresented) with the customs at Canton, Kong mun, or Samshui, where the customs, on receipt of a consular application or on deposit of her papers, will issue a certificate to the steamer, to be called the "River pass," on which shall be entered the steamer's name, flag, and registered tonnage, the said "River pass" to be valid for the year during which issued, on expiration of which it must be either surrendered or renewed at the port of issue.
- (3) Foreign-going steamers from and to Hongkong, Macao, etc., proceeding to the West River, must enter either by (a) Mo to mun (Broadway), (b) Wang mun, or (c) via Canton.
- (a) If entering by Mo to mun they must report at the Malow chau station (Lappa customs) and produce for inspection and verification a general import manifest of all cargo on board, showing destination. The customs official will inspect the vessel on arrival, note the quantity of arms, etc., on board, and issue the "Kong mun pass," upon receipt of which the vessel will proceed direct and without anchoring, landing or shipping cargo or passengers, to Kong mun and surrender the pass. If proceeding farther up the West River, steamers will deposit their registers with their consul or (if consularly unrepresented) with the customs. Upon receipt of the consular report, or on deposit of her papers, the customs will issue a certificate to the steamer, to be called the "Special river pass," on which shall be entered the steamer's name, flag, and registered tonnage, and without which she may not proceed to any treaty port (the original port of entry excepted), port of call, or passenger station on the river. On the return to Kong mun, and when all dues and duties are either paid or accounted for, the customs on surrender of the "Special river pass" will issue a clearance which will entitle the vessel to the return of her register and Kong mun pass. The vessel is then free to depart via the Mo to mun (Broadway) or via the Wang mun as provided for below (b). Proceeding via the Mo to mun (Broadway), the Kong mun pass will be surrendered at the Malow chau station (Lappa customs), where the general export manifest of all cargo on board will be produced for inspection and verification.
- (b) If entering by Wang mun, steamers must report at the Wang mun station and comply with the requirements set forth above (a). According to the destination declared the "Kong mun (Samshui pass)" will then be issued, upon receipt of which the vessel will proceed by the authorized route, direct and without anchoring, landing, or shipping cargo or passengers, to the port indicated on the pass, where the latter will be surrendered. If proceeding elsewhere on the West River, steamers will deposit their registers with their consul or (if consularly unrepresented) with the customs. Upon receipt of the consular report, or on deposit of her papers, the customs will issue a certificate to the steamer, to be called the "Special river pass," on which shall be entered the steamer's name, flag, and registered tonnage, and without which she may not proceed to any treaty port (the original port of entry excepted), port of call, or passenger station on the river. On return to the original port of entry, and when all dues and duties are either paid or accounted for, the customs on surrender of the "Special river pass" will issue a clearance which will entitle the vessel to the return of her register and "Kong mun (Samshui pass)." The vessel is then free to depart via the Wang mun or via the Mo to mun (Broadway), as provided for above (a). Proceeding via the Wang mun, the "Kong mun (Samshui pass)" will be surrendered

79795—15——25

at the Wang mun station, where the general export manifest of all cargo on board will be produced for inspection and verification.

- (c) If entering via Canton, vessels will proceed by the authorized Bogue (main river) route direct and without anchoring, landing, or shipping cargo or passengers, and deposit their register with consul or customs at Canton in order to obtain the "Special river pass," without which they may not proceed to any treaty port, port of call, or passenger station on the West River, and the surrender of which on return, all dues and duties having either been paid or accounted for, will entitle them to customs clearance and return of register.
- (4) Shipment and discharge of cargo by local river steamers and foreign-going steamers at any other points on the river than the treaty ports and ports of call enumerated in article 2 is prohibited, and any violation of this prohibition will be dealt with in accordance with the treaty provisions applicable to clandestine trade along the coast.
- (5) Local river steamers and foreign-going steamers trading at the West River ports—Canton, Kong mun, Samshui, and Wu chau fu—must report and clear and load and discharge cargo in the same manner as at other treaty ports along the coast, and in accordance with the customs regulations of the river ports concerned.
- (6) Duty treatment of merchandise carried by local river steamers and foreign-going steamers:

#### A.—Foreign trade.

Import duty shall be payable as follows: On cargo from abroad for-

- (a) a treaty port, at destination treaty port.
- (b) a port of call, at port of entry from abroad (Kong mun, Samshui, or Canton). Export duty shall be payable as follows: On cargo for abroad from—
  - (a) a treaty port, at port of shipment.
  - (b) a port of call, at port of clearance for abroad (Kong mun, Samshui, or Canton).

### B.—Domestic trade.

Export (full) and coast trade (half) duties shall be payable as follows: On cargo from—

- (a) Treaty port to treaty port: Full at port of shipment and half at port of discharge.
- (b) Treaty port to port of call: If another treaty port is to be passed en route, full and half at port of shipment, otherwise full only at said port of shipment.
- (c) Port of call to treaty port: If another treaty port has been passed en route, full and half at destination treaty port, otherwise full only at said port.
- (d) Port of call to port of call: If a treaty port is passed en route, full at said port in passing.
- (7) Tonnage dues are payable once every four months at the treaty port first touched at after expiration of certificate.
- (8) Dues and duties are in general payable at other treaty ports and reexports and goods under transit certificate entitled to usual customs treatment. Native goods, if shipped to a treaty port and subsequently reexported to a foreign port within 13 months, with no unauthorized change of package and marks, will be entitled to the refund of any customs duty paid in excess of one full export duty.
- (9) Routes: The following are the authorized routes to the West River: Foreigngoing steamers proceeding from the sea direct must either enter by (a) the Mo to mun (Broadway) route or by (b) the Wang mun route, taking the Sailam Channel and Junction Channel and passing into the West River at First Cliffs.

Such steamers may also proceed (c) via Canton, in which case they will be required, together with local river steamers, to take the following route on leaving Canton, viz: Hill Passage, Saiwan Channel, Tailung Channel, and Junction Channel (H. O. chart 3171), and enter the West River at First Cliffs. Returning abroad, or to Canton, the same routes are to be adhered to.

- (10) Miscellaneous: The customs officials will be at liberty to seal the hatches of vessels entering or trading on the West River, and seals must not be broken before the vessel reaches the next port or port of call at which she wishes to work cargo. Any trading vessel falling in with a revenue cruiser or customs boat is to produce her papers for inspection, if examination of them is required, and customs officials may be put on board vessels to search them or accompany them for the purpose of surveillance.
- (11) Penalties: Vessels taking other than the prescribed routes into or out from the West River, or found in waters between Canton and Kong mun on the Bogue Passage (Boca Tigris), and Kong mun anywhere off the said routes, are liable to a fine not exceeding 500 taels. In the event of any vessel so found, or discovered anywhere on the West River and routes thereto inside Malow chau or Wang mun stations, being without proper papers as provided for by the present regulations, she will be dealt with under the treaty articles penalizing clandestine trade along the coast.

Foreign-going vessels bound out and failing to surrender the "Kong mun/Samshui Pass" at "Malow chau/Wang mun" are liable to a fine not exceeding 100 taels.

Infringement of river port regulations by local river steamers will be punished by the infliction of penalties in force at other treaty ports. For a second offense the "River pass" may be canceled, and the steamer refused permission to trade on the West River. Unauthorized opening of sealed hatches or breaking of seals will entail liability to a fine not exceeding 500 Haikwan taels.

ART. VI. B. Small craft (lorchas, papicos, junks, etc.), entitled to trade at treaty ports, but not at ports of call nor at passenger stations on the West River.

- (a) Lorchas, etc., owned by foreigners, if provided with registers and entitled to fly national flags, are required to take out a "Special river pass," either through the consulate or through the customs direct at Kong mun, Samshui, or Canton if proceeding to other river treaty ports; they will report, work cargo, pay duties, and observe all conditions as regards papers, routes, etc., and be subject to the same penalties for the infringement of rules and regulations as foreign-going steamers on the West River.
- (b) Papicos, etc., owned by foreigners but not provided with registers or entitled to fly national flags, are to take out customs registers at the port they belong to and report, work cargo, and pay duties in the same way as lorchas. They are subject to the same penalties for infringement of rules and regulations.
- (c) Chartered junks.—Chinese junks chartered by foreigners must take out special junk papers at the customs to be obtained in exchange for bonds executed at and deposited with the customs, the condition of the bond being that cargoes are bona fide foreign property, and will be landed and pay duty at a treaty port, and the penalty that if the cargo fails to be so landed and pay duty no chartered junk will thereafter be cleared for the foreigner in question. Such junks to report, work cargo, observe all conditions, fulfill all requirements, and pay duties in the same way as lorchas, papicos, etc.

The above regulations are open to revision when and if necessary. Customhouse, Canton, April, 1905.

Treaty ports.—Samshui, with Kong mun, Kongkun, Wu chau fu, and Nanning, are treaty ports, with freedom for navigation between Samshui, Wu chau fu, Hongkong, and Canton by a route from each of these latter places to be selected and notified in advance by the imperial maritime customs.

Also Kum chuk, Shau king, Lu pu, Yuet sing, Luk tau, Tak hing, and Do sing, are all ports of call for goods and passengers. For position of these, refer to index, and see the preceding Regulations for West River.

The Broadway is the main estuary of the Si Kiang, and its east-ern entrance.

(The Fu Tui mun and the Ngage mun, westward of it, are the other mouths, the latter leading to Kong mun and joining the main stream at Chau lin Island; they are probably available by boats or small junks, but there is no information at hand concerning these entrances.)

Lu lu Creek, the continuation northward of the Fu Tui mun, from about Lat. 22° 21′ N., was examined by the Sandpiper in passing through in November, 1908. From Oyster barrier, with 6 feet water, leading eastward to Holmes Creek at its southern end, it is about 6 miles long to where it connects with Holmes Creek, and from thence it runs northward past Moorhen Creek to the main river. There is apparently only 6 feet water in the fairway abreast Chung sui shan northward of the island which divides the fairway, and there is a rock with 2 feet water at 1.5 miles from its southern entrance; the eastern shore should be kept proceeding northward; the channel used, that westward of the island, has about 8 feet least water, but is very narrow, and obstructed by sunken groynes. It should not be used without the assistance of a pilot.

The approach to the Broadway is between Ross Island, eastward of San chau Island, and Morgan Point, the western extremity of Wung kum Island, where it is about 2 miles wide. The fairway depth in the Broadway is reported to be not less than 10 feet (1911), but in the approach there are many isolated patches, so that it is only available with local knowledge; it is used by small steamers up to about 9 feet draft and trading junks, during daylight. The best time to enter is with the first of the flood. There are usually lines of fishing stakes across the entrance, with passages between them.

## Islands in the approach.

San chau (Lat. 22° 02′ N., Long. 113° 22′ E.), an island about 5 miles in extent, is situated on the western side of the entrance. Ross Island lies off its northeastern extremity, narrowing the entrance; southward of Ross are the Double Islands, Coffin, Southwest Island, and the Stragglers, the latter lying within a mile of the southeastern extremity of San chau. The 3-fathom curve is reported to extend farther off the entrance to the Broadway than is charted, but this does not affect vessels entering the river.

Wongkam or Wung kum Island, or Lu wan hao shan, on the eastern side of the Broadway entrance, is 3 miles in extent and 1,950 feet high; Colowan or Koho Island, 410 feet in height, lies close northeastward of it.

Water islets, or Ching lung shan, two in number, lie close off the southern end of Wung kum; inside islet is 1 mile northwestward of

them, and Lark Bay is a bight between it and Morgan Point, the western extremity of Wung kum.

Dom João, Macarira Island, or Toi ko ke tou, lies northward of Wung kum, Massie Point, its western end, being about 1.8 miles from Morgan Point.

Mong chau, or Ballast Island, lies  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile northwestward of Massie Point. The old fort on Ballast Island is conspicuous; it is a square white tower, and a custom's station, consisting of white buildings on the middle hill of the island, is also noticeable.

Lappa, Tui lien shan or Patera Island, lies northward of the above-mentioned island, and is separated from Macao Island northward of it by a boat passage. Westward of it, on the eastern side of the Broadway, is Ma on shan, a hill 695 feet in height.

Taipa Island, eastward of Macarira, and the Malo chau Pass from Macao to the Broadway, are described on pages 419 and 421.

Shoals.—From a recent examination of the entrance (1911), a shallow sand bank 2 miles in length has formed in the entrance to the Broadway, its northern extremity being about midway between Ross Island and Inside Island; the best water is eastward of it.

Rocks awash at low water lie about midway between Inside Island and Morgan Point, eastern side of the channel.

A rock awash at low water lies on the eastern side of the channel, 321°, about 1.3 miles from Morgan Point; and a rock awash at low water, on the western side of the channel, at 1.1 miles westward of the other.

A patch of 2 feet is charted in the fairway about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile above those rocks; no marks can be given for avoiding them.

Tides and tidal streams.—It is high water, full and change, at the entrance of the Broadway, at 11h. 0m.; springs rise 7½ feet. The neaps are very irregular, there being then only one tide during the 24 hours. The rise apparently is very much greater at Macao, only about 7 miles to the eastward.

The direction of the flood stream outside is governed principally by the winds; with strong easterly winds it runs west-northwestward, and with southwesterly winds it runs northward. The ebb stream runs generally southwestward. Inside the river the tidal streams take the direction of the channel.

General directions.—The Broadway should not be entered without a pilot, unless acquainted with it. The best channel, according to the chart, is to approach with Morgan Point open of Inside Island about 338°, and from abreast Water Island steer to pass across the bar, with 10 feet at low water (1911), subject to change at about ½ mile westward of Inside Island and of Morgan Point. From abreast the latter, Inside Island summit bearing 138° astern, apparently leads

378 SI KIANG.

between the two rocks awash and close westward of the 2-feet patch. When Old Fort, on Mong chau, bears 34°, steer up for western extremity of Ma on shan, bearing 349° until abreast of Old Fort, when a course of about 328° for the fort on the western extremity of Mo to leads to the entrance of West River, abreast the joss house.

Si kiang, or West River.—From the Broadway the mouth of the Si kiang is entered between the joss house on Sheong ma kok and the reclaimed land southeastward of Creeper Island, and eastward of Tai kok.

Above this, Mo to mun or Mo to Pass, the main channel, is on the western side, between Creeper Island and the reclaimed land northward of Mo to; it has about 4 fathoms water.

Proceeding up river, from about ½ mile westward of the joss house above mentioned, steer for Stripe cliff, westward of the central shoal of 6 to 8 feet, which is said to be extending southward. A large portion of the bank in midstream northward of this shoal has been reclaimed to a little below Mo to Fort, and is under cultivation; give the southern part of it a fair berth, passing westward of it. Above Stripe cliff keep the western bank aboard to the northern end of Chuk chau, where a sand bank, on which the greatest depth at low river is about 7 feet, is crossed. From Chuk chau, pass on either side of the island in the fairway, thence follow the eastern bank to Kep seang Island (Lat. 22° 29′ N.), abreast which the depth is 2 fathoms.

(Close westward of Mo to Fort is the approach to the narrow Nemesis Channel, leading into Wang mun, Canton River.)

Chuk chau forms the western side of entrance to Moorhen Channel, which trends northwestward, more or less parallel to the main river, and reentering it in about Lat. 22° 32′ N. A spit extends about ¾ mile from Chuk chau in the direction of the creek, leaving a narrow channel only between it and the eastern point of the entrance abreast.

At 11 miles above Lo chau or Creeper Island, on the western bank, is a branch leading to the district town Sun wei (Lat. 22° 27′ N., Long. 113° 3′ E.), the position of which is marked by a conspicuous pagoda on a hill; and from the vicinity of Kep seang Island the pagodas of Liau si wan eastward, and the hill pagoda of Tai lung to the northward, are remarkable.

(In November, 1902, H. M. S. Sandpiper visited Sun wei, and Sun cheong, 27 miles farther westward; navigation was easy.)

From abreast Kep seang Island keep in mid-channel, where the depths are about 4 fathoms and more, to Ngai hai Village, on the point on the southern side of the channel leading westward to Kong mun Creek, southward of Chau lin Island.

Approach to Kong mun.—The eastern channel to Kong mun, southward of Chau lin Island, is said to have a least depth of 2½ fathoms off the southern part of Edgell Island (not borne out by the

chart, which gives 7 to 9 feet). Entering from the river, keep in mid-channel until abreast a large joss house on the southern bank, then haul over to that bank to avoid a spit extending from the southeastern part of Chau lin, and keep this side passing southward of Edgell Island into the anchorage between that island and Kong mun Creek. The depth decreases from 4 fathoms off the joss house to 2½ fathoms in the narrow pass, southward of Edgell Island; this pass, through which the stream runs rapidly, is named Li yuk tsui (The corps mouth). After passing Li yuk tsui anchor in 12 feet between it and Pak shik haon (White stone mouth), the northern entrance point to Kong mun Creek.

In the approach to Kong mun Creek, northward of Chau lin, there is a patch of 8 feet in the fairway, and a shoal, with from 1 to 2 feet water, extends nearly a mile northwestward of Edgell Island, westward of which the depth in the channel is about 9 feet.

Kong mun Creek being shallow, cargo is transshipped from steamers and junks into boats for conveyance to the town, which is about 2 miles up the creek. Timber and bamboo rafts are also found there. The chief exports are apparently timber, bricks, bamboo fans, and furniture; the main import, rice. Provisions are scarce at Kong mun.

Kong mun City has a population of about 62,000. The foreign settlement is on the right bank of the Si kiang, at the mouth of the channel leading to the city; it consists of a few houses and numerous mat sheds standing on some filled-in ground in the mulberry fields, which extend along the river banks and a considerable distance inland. The port is in telegraphic communication with all parts of China, and steamers regularly visit it; there is daily communication with Macao and Hongkong. The largest and fastest steamers are owned by the combined companies of Messrs. Butterfield & Swire, Messrs. Jardine, Matheson & Co., and the Hong Kong, Canton, & Macao Steamboat Co.; there are several French, Italian, and Chinese vessels.

Railroad.—The railroad to connect Kong mun with the Sunning road was opened in January, 1912.

The main channel up West River, above Kong mun, is eastward of Chau lin, with a least depth of 12 feet. It is said that there are rocks off Chau lin opposite Bamboo Island. There is a stone pier at Chau kwan, above Bamboo Island, on the opposite shore.

Sandiper Creek, the southern entrance to which is opposite the channel leading to Kong mun, runs northward and northwestward, and joins the main stream a little below Plover Island. The creek varies from 7 to 30 feet in depth, and there formerly was a 6-feet bar at its northern entrance, but from latest information there is a depth of 22 feet northward of the rock on the southern side.

Sandiper rock, which dries 2 feet, lies about 1 mile eastward of Kitau joss house, and about a third the distance from the northern shore across the river. The passage is southward of it; that northward is foul.

Off Hoi chau Village, and about 200 yards from each bank, is Sheung lung rock, with 3 feet water.

Plover Island (lat. 22° 41′ 30″ N.; long. 113° 06′ 30″ E.), about 40 feet high, with a conspicuous house on it, is about 3 miles northward of Chau lin; pass in midchannel eastward of the island. There is a depth of 2½ fathoms just below the island, and some rocks at Sam niong miu (not charted).

Staunch Island.—About 4 miles above Plover Island is Staunch Island, which is small and so low that when the river is 15 feet above low river at Kum chuk it is covered.

Light.—A fixed red light is exhibited from a pole surmounted by a black ball on a wooden hut built on iron piles and painted white, erected on Staunch Island. The light is elevated 21 feet and visible 1 mile.

A rock is situated close to the northern edge of the bank, extending mile northward from Staunch Island.

Channel.—Pass westward of Staunch Island; just northeastward of Staunch Island is Lo sa tau, the southern entrance point of the western end of Junction Channel, leading to Canton River (see p. 456); a shoal extends about ½ mile northward of the point.

Fa chiau.—About 2 miles northward of this point is Fa chiau Island, with navigable channels on both sides of it.

Northward of Fa chiau the river bends westward, and at a distance of about 1.5 miles is Tam kong chao, or Opossum Island; the channel is northward of it.

Kum chuk, on the creek of same name abreast Fa chiau, and Hau kong, northwestward of Opossum Island, ports of call, are towns important as centers of a great silk-producing district.

From Opossum Island (lat. 22° 49′ N.; long. 113° 3′ E.) there are two channels, one on either side of the two low, flat Ho shan Islands, for a distance of about 4 miles. Two rocks, one on each bank, are reported to exist in the eastern channel at about ½ to ¾ mile southward of the northern end of the channel. In using this channel, which has been navigated by a vessel of 9 feet draft, keep midway between Ho shan Island and the northern bank.

In the western channel, at 1.5 miles westward of Opossum Island, is a small creek with a pagoda on its eastern bank and what appeared to be a fort on its western bank.

Off Ku lo wa, on the western bank of the river, there is a considerable ledge of rocks above water; and 2.5 miles above Ku lo wa, on the same side of the river, is Sam chau town, behind a seven-storied

pagoda on a low hill near it; there is also a pagoda in ruins on low land at about 1.3 miles above Ku lo wa, but on the opposite bank.

Rattler Channel.—From abreast the seven-storied pagoda at Sam chau, the best channel is Rattler Channel, eastward of Rattler Islet, which has a depth of 9 to 10 feet at low river (1910). Rattler Islet is situated near the middle of a sand bank 2 miles in length, only a small portion of which is uncovered at high river. Using this channel, after giving a berth to Tit ngao Point, steer between the southern end of the islet sand bank and the bank fronting the shore northward of the point. Keep close to the islet bank until the depths decrease, when cross to the eastern shore, keeping it until near Taiping hii, thence in mid-channel. There is a channel on each side of Taiping chau, that to the westward is not recommended, being narrow and shallow at each end; the eastern is navigable, and has a depth of 5 feet; a rock, with 2 feet water at low river, lies 300 feet off the eastern bank, nearly abreast the northern end of Taiping chau.

Abreast the northern end of Taiping chau, and on the western side of the river, is a black pagoda of three stories with white bands. At nearly 2 miles above this pagoda is a rock, awash at low water, a short distance offshore.

At nearly 4 miles above the three-storied pagoda, abreast Rocky Point, the width of the channel is considerably reduced by rocky ledges on both shores, and there is a ledge extending from the western shore at 1,200 yards above the pagoda abreast Rocky Point.

From abreast Rocky Point to Samshui junction keep in midchannel, passing eastward of Sik lung tsi or Campbell Island (Lat. 23° 2′ N., Long. 112° 51′ E.), which is about 40 feet high, rocky, and situated 6 miles above the three-storied pagoda. Mar dau or Pak nai Village is about 1 mile below Sik lung tsi, on the eastern bank, and there is a seven-storied pagoda on the western bank, just below Sik lung tsi. Westward of Sik lung tsi is a creek with a rocky patch, probably covered at high water, off its entrance. At 3 miles above Sik lung tsi, on the western bank, is Cum le pagoda, which is situated in a village surrounded by trees, and not easily seen from a vessel entering till past it; at 6 miles above the island is Samshui reach, the junction of the Si kiang and Pe kiang, and also the Fat shan Branch to Canton River.

Samshui to Shau king.—Just above the entrance to Samshui reach (Lat. 23° 7′ N., Long. 112° 52′ E.) the river is divided by Fort Island (Kwang sai), which is flat. For the northeastern channel, pass the southern end of Fort Island in mid-channel, then follow the eastern shore at the distance of about 200 yards. At the northern end of this channel there are two rocks off the red cliffs, and close inshore. Depths of 5 to 7 fathoms were found in this channel, and the pilots prefer it to the southwestern and wider channel.



New reach, the channel southwestward of Kwang sai, has depths of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 7 fathoms, a little to the mainland side of the center of the channel, giving a berth to the rocks eastward of the Red Banks.

Ching ki Creek connects West River with Bamboo River, a branch of Pe kiang; it is entered at Ching ki hii, immediately above Fort or Kwang sai Island. H. M. S. Sandpiper, in July, 1909, when neither Bamboo River nor West River were particularly high, ascended this creek without difficulty to Au ti, a distance of about 6 miles, but above that village, to the junction with Bamboo River, a further distance of about 6 miles, the creek can only be navigated during summer freshets.

Between Ching ki hii and Au ti the creek flows through flat country, and is embanked to prevent floods; the width varies from 60 to 100 yards, and the channel is obstructed by many sand banks a depth of 3 feet was found off Au ti. Ta sha is a large village on the right bank, about 1 mile below Au ti.

Channel.—Above the mouth of the Ching ki Creek keep along the northern shore of Kwangli reach till abreast Wing on Village, then get into mid-channel. Pass close along the southern shore of Kwangli Island until nearing the western end, when steer for a wooded point on the southern bank of the river below Tau kai.

If proceeding by Kwangli bend, keep near the northern shore of Kwangli Island, and after passing Kwangli Town keep on the northern side of the river.

Long spits extend from the eastern and western extremities of Kwangli Island.

First bar (Lat. 23° 8′ N., Long. 112° 37′ E.).—Above Kwangli Island, and where the river is broad abreast Tau kai town, is the First bar; there is 6 feet of water here at low river.

Ling yang gorge.—Four miles above Kwangli is the entrance of Great Pass (Ling yang), the river flowing amongst mountain ranges, which rise to the height of 2,814 feet in Mount Parkes. This pass is 3.5 miles in length and nearly straight, and in its narrowest part from 200 to 300 yards wide; the greatest depth in the pass is 30 fathoms at its northeastern end.

When abreast the pagoda at the southwestern end of this gorge, keep over toward the eastern side of the river to avoid a shoal extending a considerable distance from the western shore.

Shau king (Lat. 23° 1′ N., Long. 112° 28′ E.), a large walled town and a military station, with an extensive suburb lying westward of it, stands on the left bank of the river, surrounded by hills and waterways, at 26 miles above Sam shui junction, and 5 miles above Great Pass. Provisions are scarce, and no meat can be obtained. It is connected by telegraph. The population is about 20,000. It exports straw mats and bags; carved steatite ware is a local industry.

The river here is over a mile wide, with a least depth of 4 fathoms along the northern or town side, but a sand bank, awash at low river, over 2.5 miles in length, encumbers the southern portion; it is said to be extending northward at its eastern part.

There is good anchorage off the southern gates of the city, at about half a mile above the main steps.

The water is said to rise when in flood about 40 feet above winter level, and to reach the roofs of the houses on the bank, and even the town gates.

The tidal influence was felt at Shiuhing, there being a rise and fall of 3 feet or more in February, but the stream, though completely checked by the flood, does not turn.

Shiuhing to Wu chau fu.—For about 22 miles above Shiuhing the river winds through a hilly country, opening out again near Narrow Island, which appears in the center of the river covered with bamboos, but is joined by sand banks to the left bank. The sands off this island are said to have increased; it is therefore advisable to keep over near Tree Head on the right or south bank; the channel is difficult with dangers on both sides, as charted. The hills, varying from 100 to 1,500 feet in height, are in general densely wooded, and many of them are highly cultivated. Occasional rugged hills of marble are seen, one of which, of most picturesque form, crops out on the left bank of the river at 32 miles above Shiuhing, and is called Kai kwan shek, or the Cockscomb, which it strikingly resembles (Lat. 23° 7′ N., Long. 112° 0′ E.). There is also a marble range inland 2 miles northward of Shiuhing, named the Seven Stars, after the constellation of the Great Bear.

Luk pu, 16 miles above Shiuhing, and Yuet sing, 12 miles farther up, are open to trade.

From Kai kwan shek, by an easy navigation of 16 miles, the walled city Tak hing is reached.

Tak hing (Lat. 23° 7′ N., Long. 111° 48′ E.) is a town of about 6,000 persons, on the northern bank of the river. It exports a little cheap matting, and has telegraphic communication. Provisions are scarce, and no meat can be obtained. The river here is about ½ mile wide, but a bank extends off the town to about mid-channel; southward of the bank there is a depth of 5 fathoms. There are several American missionaries in this town, and also a hospital; some conspicuous buildings have been erected close to the river eastward of the town, the military station.

The river, at about 3 miles above Tak hing, takes a short, sharp twist round Steep Point, on the right or south bank, which must be closely and carefully passed to avoid Flat rocks and the chowchow water, which may turn a vessel's head against the helm. Flat rocks



lie off the northern bank a little above Steep Point, and are said to be pinnacles, awash at low river.

In Fa piu reach, 4 miles above, there are two rocks in mid-stream, about 200 yards apart; and immediately under Sheong ti temple, on the southern bank, 2 miles above, are three rocky heads, 80 feet from the bank, which uncover 7 feet at low river.

Monks Head.—At about 10 miles above Tak hing, and on the left or northern bank of the river, a single mass of granite, in the form of a thumb, rises perpendicularly some 300 feet out of a range of hills 1,410 feet in height. Its local name is Kum kwo shek, but it is also called Fa piu, or the Monks Head, and it is most remarkable. After passing this, navigation becomes dangerous, as the river bed is studded with rocks.

Fa piu Rocks (Kum pei) lie in mid-river, entrance to Tuching (Do sing) reach, southwestward of the mountain of the same name, and to clear them keep the right or southern bank aboard.

At the first bend above this, Fairies Bridge Reef (Sun sin kiu) is charted as extending two-thirds across the river from the point on the left bank which lies opposite Tuch Do sing (Tu sing) village, and rocks are charted northward of it; the extremity of the spit is marked by a red buoy during low river, as mentioned below.

Do sing (Lat. 23° 14′ N., Long. 111° 34′ E.) is a large modern town with a population of about 20,000; it is the center of a considerable trade in rice, ground-nut oil, and cake; it was opened to commerce in 1903.

Do sing to Wu chau—Buoyage.—From Do sing to Wu chau, a distance of about 27 miles, the river has been buoyed and beacons placed by the customs authorities. Some 16 buoys indicate during the low-river season all the most dangerous rocks and shoals that obstruct the approach to Wu chau.

The buoys are generally placed in position when the river gauge at Wu chau shows 15 feet after the high-river season (October), and are removed when the river has risen again to that level.

Red triangular buoys, surmounted by a red wicker cage, mark the starboard hand, and black spar buoys with black cage, the port side of the channel when going up river. The first red buoy is on the end of Fairies Bridge, abreast Do sing; the first black spar buoys are off Do sing and Pa chung Bank, as charted.

When the river is high the passage is difficult to make.

Channel—Second bar.—After passing Fairies Bridge, keep on the left or Pa chung Bank to Tu lok heu, 3 miles above, to clear Pa chung Bank and Tu lok spit, then steer for the joss house just below Szi pi, westward of the rocks situated northward of Tu lok heu, in a least depth of 1½ fathoms, and when abreast of Chiong kong keep on the right bank until near second bar, which cross in mid-

stream. The least water at lowest river over second bar and past Janus and Webster rocks is said to be 6 feet; the channel is reported to shift. See River level, page 386.

Bullock rock is not noticeable, but Kopi joss house, northwestward of it, which has bamboos in front of it, is a good mark for second bar.

Leading mark.—Fa piu (or the Monks Head, 1,410 feet high), in line with the hollow between two hills, astern, bearing 151°, is said to lead in the best water across second bar and between the Koh heu Banks on the left bank, and Robinson, Janus, and Webster rocks on the other, in 2½ fathoms.

Fong chuen (Lat. 23° 24' N., Long. 111° 31' E.).—When past the rock above Webster rocks, keep toward the right bank, past the small walled city Fong chuen (about 28 miles above Tak hing), 2 miles above which Kai River or Ho yune, a tributary, falls into the river; at the entrance of the Kai is a military station.

(In July, 1903, H. M. S. Sandpiper proceeded about 32 miles up the Ho yune without difficulty.)

Channels.—From about ½ mile above Fong chuen keep on that shore until about a mile above Kai River entrance, then pass close under the bamboo plantation on the right or south bank to clear the Twin rocks (Sheong yu) in midstream, which are sometimes submerged, when their positions may be marked by ripples; keep close round the point and under the High Bank.

The rocks between High Bank and Wu chau fu are marked in low-river season, as stated on page 384; apparently there are nine of them, as charted; the third above High Bank is the Kwang tung, on the northern side of the fairway.

Kilong Islet, with joss house, is on the southern side of the fairway, about 1.5 miles below Wu chau fu.

Wu chau fu (Lat. 23° 29′ N., Long. 111° 20′ E.), a treaty port, and the frontier city of Kuangsi, is 75 miles above Shau king, about 180 miles from the sea, and stands on the left bank of the Si kiang at its confluence with the Fu ho (Kweiling River). Wu chau is an old city (592 A. D.), and is surrounded by a high brick wall 1.5 miles in circumference, inclosing the southwestern side of a low hill. The upper part of the hill is not built on, except for the magazine, a conspicuous building on the northeastern part; the lower part consists of mean streets and official residences. The business quarter lies between the city wall and the left banks of the Si kiang and Kweiling. The British consulate is situated on a hill on the western bank of the Kweiling River, and the antimony works is a conspicuous brick building 1 mile westward of it.

The population of the city and suburbs is 65,000.

386 SI KIANG.

In winter the Si kiang, opposite the city, has a breadth of 800 to 900 yards, while in summer, when it overflows its sloping left bank (on the right bank is a range of sparsely wooded hills 400 to 500 feet high), it has a breadth of about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile.

River level.—The rise of the Si kiang, or West River, is irregular. In 1897 the lowest water was taken as a datum for the zero mark at Wu chau fu; since that time the river has fallen 2 feet 10 inches below the zero and risen 68 feet above it, so at the time of low river vessels drawing over 7 feet run the risk of grounding in several places in the river.

The period of low river appears to last from the beginning of December to the middle of March, after which the river rises rapidly, attaining its highest level in June, and falls again gradually from the end of September. In February, 1903, the river rose 22 feet in 24 hours without warning.

In 1904 the first rise occurred about May 24 and the second about June 20; the water level was 28 feet above the zero at Wu chau on May 25.

On August 1, 1906, the river level was only 13 feet above zero, but by August 17 it had risen to 42 feet above.

Wu chau fu can be reached by vessels drawing 13 feet at high river, and 6 to 7 feet at low river. A gauge placed on the right bank of the river indicates the zero and the depth of water exceeding 9 feet on second bar, 20 miles below the port.

Tides and current.—Springs, rise 12 to 18 inches at Wu chau. The rate of the stream during high floods in the gorges is 5 to 8 knots with bad swirls; the average rate in winter is 1½ knots.

Supplies.—Provisions are generally plentiful except meat. Coal of an inferior quality can usually be obtained.

Communication.—A daily steam service is maintained between Wu chau and Hongkong; there is also frequent service with Canton.

One or more stern wheelers, of about 350 tons, and 4 feet draft, carrying about 200 tons of cargo, with native passenger accommodation, ply on this route.

Steam launches ply on the upper reaches of the West River as far as Long chau in the extreme west, on the Tsu kiang, a branch of the Yu kiang, joining it above Nan ning fu; also to Pose, on the Yunnan frontier; and Liau chau, in the north. A British launch made several trips to Pose during the year 1910, ond one to Long chau.

The Wu chau-Nan ning fleet of motor boats number seven, and one owned by the Chinese company was added in 1910. The river is patrolled by Chinese gunboats.

River distances.—The distances above Wu chau fu are approximately as follows (Wu chau fu being about 180 miles from the entrance to West River): Teng hsien, 30 miles; Meng kiang hiu, 44 miles;

387

Pak ma, 56 miles; Ping nan, 74 miles; Ta huang, 90 miles; Hsun chau fu, 106 miles; Kwei hsien, 167 miles; Great Rapid, 200 miles; Wang chau, 230 miles; Nan hiang hiu, 243 miles; Yung hsun hien, 277 miles; Nan ning fu, 345 miles; Sin ning chau, 400 miles; Tai ping fu, 475 miles; Long chau, 550 miles; Pose, 570 miles.

Telegraph.—Wu chau fu is connected with the principal towns up and down the river by telegraph.

The Chinese postal system extends to Nan ning fu, Pose, etc.

Trade.—The exports go to Canton, Sam sui, Fat shan, and other towns in the delta, and include bamboo, firewood, indigo, paper, rice, raw silk, planks, cassia, firecrackers, various oils, etc. The tin mines west of Wu chau are doing well.

The imports include salt, which is a Government monopoly.

Goods from Hongkong and Canton are conveyed in steamers and junks by independent routes to Wu chau, either through the Si kiang entrance or by the various channels leading into it from Canton River.

Fu ho, or Kweiling ho, on the western side of Wu chau fu, is navigable by junks as far as Kweiling, the capital of Kwangsi Province, and by boats of light draft as far as the Yangtse, for the Fu ho and the Siang of Hunan Province are connected by a canal northeastward of Kweiling. In June, 1903, the river was ascended by H. M. S. Sandpiper for 55 miles, when a 10-knots stream was met; three rapids were passed.

Wu chau fu to Nan ning fu.—From Wu chau fu the channel is southward of Cheang cha; there is a channel northward of Cheang cha at high river only.

For the first 14 miles to Yong chu tan sin, a Banyan village on the left bank, the river flows between two ranges of hills, the bases of which sometimes reach the water's edge, and sometimes recede, leaving open spaces, where farmhouses or small villages stand in the midst of cultivated patches, planted for the greater part with mulberry. In a few places small clearings have been made upon the hill slopes, but the hills are usually either bare or overgrown with shrubs and small trees. Clumps of splendid bamboos grow along the river banks.

At the village named, the river winds between fine cliffs about 1,000 feet high, on the summits of those on the right bank is a conspicuous five-storied pagoda. The Yan cha tan, or Oil-press rapid, is charted just above the village.

Teng hsien (Tung huen) (Lat. 23° 19′ N., Long. 110° 55′ E.), 27 miles above Wu chau, is a large village, with about 5,000 persons, situated on the right bank at the junction of the Yong (Yuen) River. It lies in a space of more open country, and has well-built houses and a set of stone steps leading down to the river.

388 SI KIANG.

Teng (Tang) chau, a wooded island 250 feet high at its western end, is situated about 2.5 miles above Teng hsien.

For 30 miles above Teng hsien, the river trends through a narrow valley, the hills never attaining much above 400 feet, until just beyond Pak ma, when a bold chain trends northwestward, curving round and reaching the river again at Ta huang.

Meng kiang hiu, 41 miles above Wu chau, is a large village on the left bank at the junction of the Yong ngan; Pai ma (Pakma), a likin station, 11 miles farther up, is a small village, and the outlet for the cassia produced in the district. Above Pai ma the land opens out into a wide stretch of undulating country. Maize and mulberry are the principal crops. Considerable quantities of silk are produced in the neighborhood. Villages are larger and more numerous, but a good part of the land is apparently too poor to be worth cultivating.

Rapids—Kau wei yau tan, or Dog's Tail Rapid, about 5 miles above Meng kiang hiu and abreast Huang tuo chau, is about a mile long, with a current running about 8 knots and very strong swirls when the water level at Wu chau was 28 feet above zero; the channel passes between rocks only a few yards apart. This rapid improves with a rise of the river.

In May, 1909, with the water level at 25 feet on the gauge at Wu chau, H. M. S. Sandpiper avoided this rapid by proceeding between Huang tuo chau and the small island to the southward.

Ta kio miao, or Great Tusk Rapid, is about a mile below Pak ma (Pai ma); the current and eddies are very strong here at high river, but there are none with the water level at 28 feet above zero at Wu chau.

Mo lam, with a conspicuous white joss house, is situated on the right bank, just above Shallow Rapid; above this village the country is more level and navigation less intricate.

Tan chu, 2 miles above Serpent Rapid, is situated on the left bank, and has a large brick and earthenware factory.

Ping nan is a walled prefectured city, about 74 miles above Wu chau. Population about 5,000; on market days, two or three times a week, there may be 10,000 people in the city, most of whom come in from the country round, but the actual population of the place is very much less. Hides are the chief export, while rice and cotton piece goods are the chief imports.

Navigation—Rapids.—From Wu chau to Ping nan the navigation of the river is extremely intricate. Most of the rocks in or near the channel are marked with cairns, some standing well out of the water, some awash, and others submerged, with dangerous swirls and eddies over them. Most of the rapids give but little trouble, with the exception of Kau wei yau tan. There is light traffic on this section of the river compared with that below Wu chau.

River.—Above Ping nan the river traverses a broad plain bounded on the northwestward by the range of hills above mentioned.

Ku yong tan Rapid, about 5 miles above Ping nan, is only 1 mile long; the whirls and eddies in it are very strong, and the current had a rate of about 9 knots when the water was 28 feet above zero at Wu chau. This rapid improves on the rise of the river.

Kong hau fu (Ta huang) is a large and important town at the junction, and on the left banks of the Si kiang and Ta huang kiang, 90 miles above Wu chau, and is the port of Hsan chau fu, 16 miles above it.

The Ta huang kiang is connected with Liau chau River by a tortuous passage, much frequented by small craft.

There is daily steam communication with Wu chau.

Anchorage.—The best anchorage is southward of the entrance to the Ta huang, the bottom being of mud, free from rocks.

Yu kiang, or Nan ning River.—Above Hong hau fu (Ta huang), above mentioned, the Si kiang, or West River, is known as the Yu kiang, or Nan ning River.

Tong ku tan, or Brazen Drum Rapid, is just below the junction of the Yu kiang River and Liau chau River; there are many rocks in it and strong whirls and eddies, but it improves with a rise of the river.

The navigation of this rapid is said not to be so intricate as those previously mentioned, but in August, 1906, H. M. S. *Moorhen* found the current in it to be running about 10 knots, which was the greatest velocity experienced anywhere between Wu chau and Kwei hsien.

Just above this rapid the change in color from the dark-brown water of the West River to the clear blue of the Nan ning River is very marked.

Approaching Hsun chau fu, the rush of water out of the mouth of the Liau chau must be guarded against.

Wu kiang, or Liau chau River, see page 399.

Hsun chau fu, 16 miles above Ta huang, is beautifully situated at the junction of the Wu kiang, or Liau chau River, the northern branch of the Si kiang, with the Yu kiang, or South Branch. It lies at the southwestern end of a range of bare hills, 2,000 feet high. The height of water in the Yu kiang depends to a great extent upon the supply from the Liau chau Branch, as a great flood from the latter has the effect of checking the exit of water from the former.

Hsun chau fu is a prosperous city, with 30,000 to 40,000 persons, where many wealthy firms of merchants are established. It is a center for the timber trade and a collecting place for the silk produced in the prefecture.

Yu kiang—Between Hsun chau fu and Kwei hsien this river is from 350 to 150 yards wide; it flows across a large plain

79795—15——**26** 

between high banks, which at the level of the ordinary river are about 40 feet high; the shores are in many places rocky.

Mountains are visible over the banks in some parts, and after passing the village of Fuk shan (? Fu chan tsuen, 10 miles above Hsun chau fu) a remarkable rock, rising steeply to a height of about 2,000 feet, is visible to the southeastward at a distance of about 5 miles.

The country above Hsun chau is desolate, and consists of rolling downs covered with long grass and pines. The villages are few and small. Some sugar is grown, and many ponies are reared.

Ma pu tan, a rapid about 2 miles above Hsun chau fu, sometimes has a bad swirl in it between a point and a reef of rocks; this rapid improves with a rise of the river.

Kwei hsien (Lat. 22° 54′ N., Long. 109° 31′ E.) is a district city of some 30,000 persons, situated at the foot of a range of mountains, which extends northward in a great curve. It appears from the river a pretty and most prosperous little city, with some fine buildings. The majority of the inhabitants live outside the city in the eastern suburb, where all business is transacted. The southern part of the city contains one principal street, running parallel to the south wall; the northern part consists of small cottages surrounded by gardens and fruit trees. Two of the principal articles of trade are ground-nut oil, and a manure made from the refuse of the nuts after pressing.

At low river, Kwei hsien, about 350 miles from the sea, is the limit of navigation except for small motor boats.

Good anchorage is found off the southern bank, opposite the main steps.

Telegraph.—There is a telegraph station at Kwei hsien; the telegraph wire follows the left bank of the river from Wu chau. There are two schools, and also a French mission in the city.

About a mile above Kwei hsien the telegraph line to Pak hoi is carried over the river on high poles.

Silver mines exist at Sam cha san, about 15 miles northward of Kwei hsien; they have not been worked for some time, but are said to be rich.

River.—From Kwei hsien to Nga tong siu, a small village on the south bank at a distance of 16 miles, the river continues to pass between high banks, but above that village it flows through a valley having low hills on the northern side and hills about 1,500 feet high at about 1 mile inland on the southern side.

Miao men tan and Goa tan (the latter not charted under this name) are rapids situated 4 and 10 miles, respectively, above Kwei hsien, both of which at low river can only be passed by boats.

Ta ki tan, another rapid, is situated 2 miles above Nga tong siu rapid (Ta yin tan), and above this the river enters a narrow gorge, having a depth of 3 feet at low river.

Hiang kiang hiu is a small village on the right bank, 4 miles above Ta ki tan rapid, having a conspicuous temple.

Tai po tan.—This rapid, about ½ mile long, not charted, is entered at about 2 miles above Hiang kiang hiu.

Lei kung hsu (Lat. 22° 40′ N., Long. 109° 26′ E.) is a village 30 miles above Kwei hsien.

Great rapid, or Kiang kiun tan (Great Rapid of the General who Quells the Waves), about ½ mile above Lei kung hsu, is apparently about 2.5 miles in length; it is really a series of rapids caused by rocky barriers in the river, where it passes through a gorge. There are three rapids; the first, straight, but with a strong current and heavy swirls; the second, the worst, has a very narrow channel, about 80 feet wide between the rocks, with nearly a 90° turn, and the water rushing down in whirlpools with huge eddies; the third is not so bad, but the channel bends toward the right bank and passes between rocks, which makes it awkward, the current being very strong.

On the bank just above the second rapid, known as Ni pi tan (Mud wall Rapid), (Kan lo tan), where the channel curls into a corner on the northern side, is a fine temple in a grove of firs, used by the pilots and junkmen to pray in for a safe crossing. Beyond the range forming the gorge is a wide open plain, with mountains in the distance, the plain being cultivated principally with maize.

The third is apparently the Tupu tan, and the upper end of it the Ku tu tan, some 20 miles below Wang chau; the chart is most confusing.

Another and later account is as follows (a variation in the time of the visits will account for any apparent differences, but hardly so with names):

Great rapid (Fu po ti tan).—Good anchorage is found in midchannel at the foot of this rapid if waiting for the water to rise in order to ascend; it is necessary to have a reading of 15 feet on the river gauge at Nan ning before descending Great Rapid, but the ascent can be made with 6 feet less water.

The channel for the first 2 miles is close along the left bank till abreast the upper end of Tsing chao chau Island; it then turns off this bank for 300 yards and passes between two rocks about 40 feet apart, through strong whirls and eddies, when it makes a sharp turn toward the left bank, and crosses a second rapid close to it. Thence the channel is in mid-stream, and crosses a third rapid on a course rather toward the right bank.

Great Rapid improves with a rise of the river, but is always dangerous, and a great obstacle to navigation. At 5 miles above the Great Rapid a remarkable cave in the marble rock on the western bank is passed.



392 SI KIANG.

Wang (Heng) chau (Lat. 22° 32′ N., Long. 109° 11′ E.) is situated picturesquely on the left bank of the river at about 20 miles above the Ku tu tan Rapid above mentioned.

It is a small walled town on the northern bank with post and telegraph office; telegraph wires to Pak hoi cross the river at 1.5 miles below this town.

Good anchorage is found off the southern bank of the river, opposite the main steps of the town.

Above Wang chau the river widens until Long Rapid is passed.

San chau tan (San che li chang tan), or Long Rapid, commences a little above Wang chau, and is 7.5 miles long; the channel is close to the right bank, and it is fairly easy to navigate.

A few miles beyond Heng chau the river flows between two ranges of high hills covered with fine trees, and with much vegetation. At the foot of the hills by the riverside, and on the numerous islands are lines and clusters of bamboos.

Nan hiang hiu is a riverside village off which junks anchor, situated 14 miles above Wang chau, and 2 miles above San men tan (Three gates rapid). This is the terminus of the old route, partly by land and partly by water between the West River and Pak hoi, and is a likin station. Goods going from Nan ning to Pak hoi all pass Nan hiang hiu, which is practically the nearest point on the river to the sea, from which it is distant 85 miles, as the crow flies.

Fei long tsuen, 13 miles above Nan hiang hiu, is a small village situated on a point marking a sharp turn in the river. For 10 miles above it the country on both sides of the river is hilly, and densely wooded in many places, the vegetation reaching to the water. Farther up the hills gradually become lower, and in many places are terraced for cultivation, finally sinking into plains.

Ta uang miao is about 5 miles below Yung hsun hien; there is a short rapid here with a very strong current.

Yung hsun hien is 21 miles above Fei long tsuen, and here the river takes a 90° turn and leads toward a range of mountains consisting of two parts, one trending north-northeastward and the other westward, which latter the river follows closely until the hills fall into gently sloping downs. There is good anchorage close to the west bank southward of the town.

Telegraph.—Yung hsun hien is connected with the Chinese telegraph system.

River—Above Yung hsun hien.—At 8 miles above Yung hsun hien the river becomes very narrow, with rocky banks, flowing between high hills on the northern side and low hills on the south; but few villages are passed, and the country is more uncultivated than below that town.

Ling li hiu, 13 miles above Yung hsun hien and Man tau tsuen, 2 miles above it, afford good anchorage.

Pu miao hiu Village is about 30 miles below Nan ning fu, in a sharp bend of the river.

Ping tang Rapid, about 12 miles below Nan ning fu, has a dangerous rock in mid-channel.

Choang chong hiu, about 10 miles below Nan ning fu, affords good anchorage.

Landmark.—A large pagoda is situated on a high hill about 7 miles below Nan ning fu.

Nan ning fu—Aspect.—The approach to this city is very pretty, the river running with many windings through an open plain, and the banks, consisting of almost level grassland, leading to groves of splendid bamboos and to picturesque villages shaded by trees.

The first view of Nan ning fu shows a very large and prosperous city; it is situated on the left or north bank of the river, and the southern wall follows the bank closely at the eastern end, but recedes some distance from it at the western. The walled inclosure is small for a prefectural city, and the greater part of the inhabitants live in the suburbs outside. The French cathedral, a red building with two towers, and the city gates, are conspicuous objects. The population is about 50,000, the foreign settlement being on the southern side of the river.

It was opened as a treaty port on January 1, 1907, and a branch of the Imperial Maritime Customs established; it is about 350 miles above Wu chau fu and about 530 miles from the sea.

Telegraph.—Nan ning fu is connected with the Chinese telegraph system, and there is a post office.

Anchorage.—There is good anchorage abreast the foreign settlement.

Trade.—The principal importance of Nan ning fu lies in its position as a center for the collection and distribution of goods and commerce of the four Provinces—Yunnan, Kueichau, Kuangtung, and Kuangsi; it is, unfortunately, liable to inundation at high river. Small quantities of tobacco and star aniseed are produced in the prefecture, but Nan ning is not a great producing center. The principal articles passing through Nan ning are opium, white sugar, aniseed, artemisia, paper, ox hides, horns and bones, cotton yarn, and kerosene.

In 1911 the net value of the imports and exports amounted to 4,700,517 Hk. taels.

Navigability.—Above Wu chau fu the Si kiang, with the Yu kiang, is navigated by motor boats and large cargo boats of 2 to 4 feet draft up to Nan ning fu, and by smaller boats to Pose, an impor-

tant district town, approximately in Lat. 24° N., Long. 106° E.; the Tso branch, which joins the Yu kiang at about 12 miles westward of Nan ning fu, is navigable by boats to Long chau.

Steamer navigation presents few difficulties for vessels of light draft as far as Hsun chau fu, at the junction of the two branches of the Si kiang, the Wu kiang and Liau chau fu River together forming the northern branch, and the Yu kiang, or Nan ning River, the southern. Above Hsun chau fu the principal difficulty is the Great Rapid; this, however, is constantly taken by heavily laden cargo boats.

The level of the river at Nan ning fu varies about 24 feet between summer and winter; there are usually three rises of over 15 feet during the summer, but they are irregular and uncertain, occurring generally on the third day after heavy rain. The stream runs with a velocity of about 2 knots at low river and about 5 knots at high river.

There is no doubt that navigation above Wu chau is dangerous and is only possible with a thorough knowledge of the river.

From Wu chau to Ta huang the river is much encumbered with rocks, but there are good channels and no bad rapids. At Hsun chau there are many banks of sand and stones, and a current running 8 knots has been experienced here in May, the rate below this being about 4 knots.

Thence the channel continues good to Kwei hsien, which can be reached by launches drawing 5 feet at all times of the year. From Kwei hsien to Nan ning fu there are many difficult places, the worst being the Great Rapid, and the river is tortuous at 50 miles, and also at 10 miles below Nan ning. Junks have to lighten to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet at low river. There is a great difference in the navigability of the river at low or at high river, and a very great difference also in the appearance of the river banks and rapids at these times.

The Great Rapid is believed to form an effective bar to anything like regular communication with Nan ning fu.

At a first glance the river above Wu chau appears almost deserted; the banks are high, and the junks deeply laden, and the river is so wide that it is quite possible from one side to overlook boats being tracked up river on the opposite side. The shipping consists almost entirely of large junks making journeys to Hsun chau, Kwei hsien, and Nan ning. These craft are of a practically uniform type, well and strongly built, 75 feet long, 15 feet beam, and some draw from 5 to 6 feet of water. The rudder is 15 to 20 feet long, and the junks are also steered from the bows by means of a large oar, unusual steering power being necessary. The carrying capacity is 40 to 47 tons. On the upriver journey they are hauled by trackers, and sail when the wind is favorable; on the downward journey sweeps are sometimes worked. The average rate of traveling upstream is 20 miles

a day—it sometimes reaches 30 miles; the rate down stream is of course much faster.

. H. M. S. Sandpiper, drawing 2 feet 8 inches, ascended the river to Nan ning fu in June, 1901, leaving Wu chau with 30 feet on the water gauge. Difficulty was experienced in crossing the Great Rapid, not so much in the want of a sufficiently deep channel as in making the sharp turns among the rocks. Above the rapid the river was not found difficult. The people were found to be quiet and friendly.

H. M. S. Moorhen, drawing 3 feet water, ascended the Si kiang from Wu chau to Nan ning fu in May, 1908, the water being 25 feet above zero at Wu chau, or at medium height. There are no leading marks for the channels. The most difficult rapids in ascending the river were Kau wei yau (Dogs' Tails), Mo Lam (Shallow), Ko yuen, and Tong ku; the others were not found to be dangerous.

Navigation to Nan ning fu was maintained from April to the beginning of December, 1905, by vessels drawing 4 feet of water; and after that, until the middle of February, 1906, by a motor launch drawing 1½ feet, which, but for an accident to her machinery, would have continued running.

As rapid movements of the helm are necessary when navigating this river, the steering gear should be in good order in every respect.

Pilots.—Pilots are necessary; those employed by the Sandpiper were very good, their knowledge of the river was excellent, and the information they gave as to the positions of rocks, the depth over them, and such information, was correct. Pilots can be obtained through H. M. consul at Wu chau, or Messrs. Jardine, Matheson & Co., Wu chau.

The pilotage charge is \$250 and a present of \$50 to take a vessel of 3 feet draft from Wu chau to Nan ning and back, but only \$70 should the vessel be unable to proceed above Kwei hsien.

Coal can be sent up the river by junk; a plentiful supply of wood is always obtainable.

Yu kiang—Nan ning fu to Posé.—When the reading on the river gauge at Nan ning is 15 feet there is no great difficulty in ascending to Posé, but at dead low river, January, the channels in many places have only depths of 3 feet.

Above Nan ning the river flows through a plain, the right bank for a distance of 10 miles being well wooded and the left bank more bare.

At 4 miles above Nan ning a bar is crossed by keeping near the right bank, and at 14 miles above that town the channel narrows, passing northward of Kok chau (Tuo chau), a small wooded island between rocks to the northward and a sand bank extending from the island; a strong current is experienced in this channel.

Between this island and San kiang kau, 10 miles above, there are no dangers, and the adjoining country is high; the telegraph wire

crosses the river at Yi li, a small village on the right bank 3 miles above Tuo chau.

At San kiang kau, charted in about Lat. 22° 38′ N., Long. 107° 48′ E., the river divides, the western branch being known as the Long chau; the northern or main stream is still known as the Yu kiang and also as the Posé River.

The Long chau, or Tso kiang, leading to Long chau, is described on page 397.

From San kiang kau the Posé River trends in a northwesterly direction between low red hills, the channel passing through a shallow rapid about 3 miles above the junction, where the telegraph wires cross the river.

Kum ling, a village on the right bank of the Yu kiang or Posé, is situated 7 miles above the junction with the Tso kiang, and the river for a distance of 10 miles is wide, and presents no difficulty; the wooded banks are generally well cultivated, and there are many villages.

A foreign office report (1910) refers to a rapid at Kam ling (Kum ling) as being difficult on account of the tortuous nature of the channel among partially submerged rocks; it is possibly one of those below referred to.

A conspicuous five-storied pagoda stands on a low hill on the left bank, 3 miles above which Lo lung tsa rapid is formed by a large wooded island in mid-channel.

Lo lung hiu is a picturesque village, with many brickkilns on the left bank.

Mo yune kiang, a large tributary from the northward, joins Posé River at 20 miles above San kiang hui, and at the junction the Posé takes a sharp turn to the westward for 10 miles.

Nga tung, where Sheong goi kai tan Rapid is passed, and Lung cheong, off which is a rock in mid-channel, are villages passed in ascending to Lung on yuen, at which a pagoda, standing on a hill 3 miles to the southeastward, is seen; the river here widens, and passing through a range of hills extending in a northwest and southeast direction, presents no difficulty.

Kum gi kok tan, a rocky rapid, is situated between the village of Tsin ha kuan and Ah gan; at 8 miles above the latter, and extending for a distance of 10 miles, the river passes through a succession of narrow gorges, with sharp turns, while rocky hills on either side attain a height of from 1,000 to 1,500 feet, and a range of mountains to the northward is nearly 2,500 feet high in places.

Fo Fa cheung is a large village on the right bank, at 3 miles below which is a narrow, dangerous passage, where a rocky island divides the channel, the passage being situated westward of the island.

Above Kum gi kok tan the river forms long reaches, with easy curves, to within a few miles of Posé.

Yung long yuen, with a population of about 5,000, is the largest town between San Kiang kau and Posé; it has a large trade in hides.

Ti tung, Nga pan, and Tung kong are villages between Yung long yuen and Yi hong kiu; at the latter the river is joined by the tributary stream Tin gau kiang, above which the channel is divided at Hong kai la by a large cultivated island, the northern passage being the deeper.

Yi hong kiu is a village where there are several brickkilns and a small range of hills, 1,000 feet high, to the northward; on the south side the hills are of a remarkable red color.

Above this point to Posé there are several very narrow, intricate passages, the country being undulating, with high hills to the westward, and large aniseed plantations.

Posé.—This walled city has a population of 15,000, and is situated at the mouth of a large tributary known as the Sze cheng kiang. It is at the head of navigation, other than by small boats, and is a distributing center. There is a large trade, conducted chiefly by junks. Probably a motor boat 60 feet in length can reach Posé with but little risk from April to November or December.

Supplies of wood must be ordered in advance. There is a conspicuous pagoda at 1 mile below the city on the left bank.

Anchorage is found on a large bank off the mouth of the Sze cheng kiang; the river at Pose generally rises about 24 hours after heavy rain.

Tso kiang or Long chau (Lung chau) River.—This river connects with the Yu kiang, at San kiang kau, which river leads to Pose and beyond, its source being on the western border of Tun nan Province. The Tso kiang leads to Long chau fu, a treaty port on the Kwangsi-Tong King frontier, apparently of but little importance as a trade center.

Navigability.—When the reading on the river gauge at Nan ning fu is 15 feet, navigating to Long chau is not difficult, and that place may be reached in two days from Nan ning fu, a distance of about 205 miles. From Nan ning fu, see Nan ning fu to Pose, as far as San kiang kau, the junction with the Tso kiang.

Leung mei hui (Yang uei hiu).—At about 2 miles above the entrance or junction with the Yu kiang, is a large village and important market, below which are many shingle islands covered at high river, and among which the current runs strongly.

Aspect.—At 8 miles above Leung mei the river, with rocky wooded banks, narrows and winds between rocky mountains; there are but few villages.

398 SI KIANG.

Long tau hiu, about 44 miles above Nan ning, and Chuei pien tsuen are small villages on opposite sides of the river (apparently 5 miles apart), and above them perpendicular cliffs rise to a height of nearly 1,000 feet.

Sin ning chau, a walled town about 55 miles above Nan ning standing back from the right bank of the river, is not seen when passing; the channel for 4 miles below that town to the village of Chang cha tsuen is tortuous.

Tuo lu hiu, a large village, with likin station, is situated on the left bank about 18 miles above Sin ning, or 57 miles below Tai ping, and off it there is good anchorage.

The telegraph wires cross the river at about 1 mile above this village, and there is a sharp turn of the river at Pao ya tang, a waterfall, about 5 miles above.

Wong cheong (Long uang tsuen), about 7 miles below Tai ping fu, affords good anchorage close to the left bank of the river.

At 5 miles above this village a bar is crossed, and there is a dangerous narrow passage at Kwei long ta, where a five-storied pagoda stands on a rocky point projecting into mid-channel.

Tai ping fu, a walled city, with about 9,000 persons, is surrounded by the river except on the northern side.

Telegraph.—There is a telegraph and post office at the city, and a conspicuous white schoolhouse is situated just below it.

Anchorage is found above the gravel bank off the main steps.

Black Water River (Bo chuei ho), so named from the dark color of the stream, is a large tributary, with a pagoda marking its entrance, flowing from the northward into Long chau River about 24 miles above Tai ping, the channel between being obstructed by many small islands, sand banks, and rapids. Niau tan (Ox Rapid) is about midway.

Tuo mein hiu is a village on the left bank about 2 miles above Black Water River; in this vicinity the banks are covered by groups of bamboos; at Hiang chuei hiu, 5 miles farther up, is a fine waterfall.

San chau tan (Three Islands Rapid), about 3 miles above Hiang chuei hiu, is a narrow and intricate passage with a strong current; vessels when ascending should leave the wooded island on the port hand.

From San chau tan to Long chau fu the river is narrow and shoal, with many small islets and sand banks.

Ming kong, a large tributary, joins the river from the southward at about 14 miles below Long chau.

Long chau fu, charted in Lat. 22° 10′ N., Long. 106° 40′ E., a treaty port, is a walled city, with about 12,000 persons, standing on the north bank of the river, and connected with the foreign settlement on the opposite shore by a bridge of boats. There is

good communication with Hongkong via Tonkin, the distance to Lang son, from which there is railroad communication, being only about 20 miles. A railroad is being constructed, or proposed, to Nan ning fu from Lang son. There is communication by courier with Nan ning.

Anchorage—Rise of river.—There is no good anchorage, but the best is near the bridge. The river rises rapidly; in June, 1908, the level altered 8 feet in 5 hours; a rise generally occurs within 24 hours after heavy rain. About July 20, 1911, the water was 37 feet above zero.

The river gunboats Moorhen (British), Vigilante (French), and the Tsingtau (German), taking advantage of the high river, visited the port.

Wu kiang, or Liau chau River, joins the Yu kiang or Nan ning River, the southern branch of the Si kiang or West River, just below Hsien chau fu, or in about Lat. 23° 15′ N., Long. 109° 56′ E.

The following remarks are a summary of the report of the commander of the Moorhen, who ascended the Liau chau River in June, 1910; the distances are probably only very approximate.

The Lieu kiang (Liau chau) is the northern branch of the Wu or Hong kiang, the western portion of which is the Hong chui kiang, or Red Water River, which takes its rise near Mengtz, about Lat. 23½° N., Long. 104° E.

There seems to be no great difficulty in ascending in small craft up to the one hundred and forty-second mile from the entrance, 13 miles below the city of Liau chau, at all times, but here the river is barred. See the one hundred and forty-second mile below for details; and means of communication, with the account of the city.

There is anchorage just within its mouth off the northern end of Hsun chau suburbs, abreast a small creek.

# Miles from entrance.

- 4. No tan Rapid, 1 mile in length, zigzag, current 10 knots. Above the rapid is the Mo shan Gorge, 3 to 4 miles in length and from 50 to 100 yards in breadth, the banks rising precipitously on both sides and are clothed with jungle.
- 11. Tai tong Gorge, current 6 knots.
- 121. Pik tan, or Barrier Rapid, current 7 to 8 knots.
- 17. Hung shek Rapid.
- 21. Rapid, village on right bank and spit running out from left bank, river widens considerably.
- 21-30. A series of rapids, and the river much encumbered with rocks and small islands; it is bounded on the north by wooded hills, with a peak 2,000 feet in height, forming a tongue of land round which the river curves.
  - 23. Guard boat here (patrol).
  - 30. Village of Lak ma tong, 3,000 persons.
  - 30½. Rapid between Sz Village and the right bank.
  - 35. Cheung shan chau Village.

# Miles from entrance.

- 40. City of Mo shun, capital of district of same name; river above flows between banks 40 feet high, flat country both sides.
- 50. Sharp bend. Guard boat here. Anchored in 4 fathoms, sand. River had fallen 12 feet, and there was some doubt as to the possibility of reaching Liau chau City.
- 55. Military station and guard boat, and then the Lung kau tu, a rapid running 9 knots; from thence a series of small rapids up to 60 miles.
- 66. Sam kong hau, junction of West and Liau chau Rivers (presumably the Ta huang kiang leading into West River). It is full of rapids, 150 yards wide, but deep.
- 70. Shek lung, market town, military station.
- 76. Im cheung Village, rapid, 6 knots, 8 feet water.
- 80. Walled city of Cheung chau, the capital of the department. Ngau kok chau, an islet 30 feet high, with a rapid between it and the right bank, above which is Ku toi tan, a rapid, 6 to 7 knots current.
- 93. Wan kong hiu, a market town, built on an island 50 feet high, at junction of Tsung ping River, on left bank.
- 103. Kau pin shan, 1,400 feet high, the last 600 feet of which is sheer rock; it was seen from the twentieth mile, bearing 20° true.
- 105. Two islands in river; river very tortuous, a series of short turns following until the city of Liau chau is reached at the one hundred and fifty-fifth mile. Just above these islands the Pak tsai River joins from the north on the left bank, and at the junction is the town of Kong hau, with the village of Pak sha and a guard boat opposite.
- 122. Wang la tan, a rapid running 7 knots and having a right-angled turn, as well as two rocks 40 feet apart, through which a vessel must pass. This rapid, though not so strong as others, is the most difficult, and although, on ascending, the water was only 3 feet above low-water level and these rocks were showing, it is not possible to descend until there is sufficient water to pass over them.
- 131. Young hot Village, on left bank. At 2 miles above, during heavy rains, a cataract pours over the rocky hills on the right bank close to the village of Kai lak tsun and presents a fine spectacle. There is a road to Liau chau fu, 4.5 miles as the crow flies, 24 miles by river.
- 142. River is here shallow, only 4 feet below the wooded islet. A rocky bar above, with two passages; the one in the center less than 30 feet wide, has 7 feet water and is used by the steam launches going up and down. Too narrow for Moorhen, which had to take the other, close to right bank, with 4 feet water only when passing up. It is this bar which closes the river to steam traffic in the winter. On the left bank is the market town of Lok kau hiu, with a temple on a hill near.
- 150. Telegraph line from Kwei lam follows the left bank here to Liau chau fu. There is a bar, with 4 feet water, at northern end of island, on right bank, abreast Tu po Village.
- 155. Liau chau fu, or Ma ping, is a walled city, 1,400 yards by 300 yards in extent, on left bank, with a population of 35,000. There is a mission house near the southern gate.

Communication.—Four steam launches ran for seven months in the year (1910) between the city and Kong hau, whence the Ta huang kiang leads into West River, taking five days to come up and

two days down. Junk traffic continues all the year round, uninterrupted.

Both launches and junks are supplied with long ropes for negotiating the rapids, the ropes being taken some distance ahead and the craft hove up by the windlass; 10 or 12 junks arrived per day during the few days' stay of Moorhen in June, 1910.

Telegraph.—The city is connected with Nan ning fu and other chief places. Postal service by runners to Wu chau, four or five days' journey.

Supplies of beef, pork, sweet potatoes, and fruit are obtainable. Principal trade is in timber, oil, and ground nuts. The timber and bamboos are floated down in large rafts, with men living on them.

Missions.—There is a mission station of the Christian Alliance here, United States citizens.

Business is in the hands of the Cantonese. Chong language is spoken chiefly in the city, Mandarin in the country, and Cantonese on the river banks. The natives are friendly.

Samshui reach (Lat. 23° 7′ N., Long. 112° 52′ E.) connects West River with North River, and with Fat shan branch, eastward of it, through Sai nam reach, to Canton River.

The depth in the reach is reported to change considerably every year after the summer freshets, ranging from 15 to 17 feet on the bar within Inner Point to as little as 6 feet; the deeper water is on the southern shore.

Pe kiang, or North River, enters on the northern side of Samshui reach, on either side of Rattler Island.

Shoals—Lights.—A sand bank lies about 200 yards off the western entrance from West River; it is marked by a sampan, which carries a red flag by day and a red light at night, but the sampan is withdrawn in squally weather. A short distance off Tweed Point, south side of the eastern entrance, is a rock awash, and also one just covered at low water.

The bank extending into the channel between Tweed Point and Frazers Hill is marked by Kong kun beacon, a white beacon surmounted by a basket; a fixed red light is exhibited from it at night. The channel is northward of it, between it and Rattler Island.

A sand bank, which dries 6 feet, extends halfway across the channel westward of Rattler Island; its edge is occasionally marked by a sampan, showing a red flag by day and a red light at night. The eastern channel is reported to dry at low river (1905).

There is a rock 11 feet high near the center of the fairway east-ward of the customhouse at Hokau Village, north side of the reach.

Tidal signal.—A black ball is hoisted at the customhouse flagstaff at Hokau when there is a less depth than 8 feet on the bar. Tides.—The tides are uncertain; the greatest rise does not exceed 2 feet; in Samshui reach the current apparently does not cease running out, but slackens at times.

River level.—Floods may be expected once, if not twice, a year, and then only if the Pe kiang and Si kiang are in freshet at the same time. They usually occur in June and July. The highest levels above a zero of 8 feet on the bar were 26 feet in 1897, 14 feet in 1898, and 22 feet in 1899. The river in 1900 was remarkable for the earliness (end of July) and sustained lowness of its fall. The bar showed its maximum, 18 feet 10 inches, in July, and its minimum, 3 feet 7 inches, in December. The freshets are usually accompanied with violent squalls, and the river becomes a sea of wild, turbulent waters sweeping past like a mill race.

See general remarks on Pe kiang.

Anchorages.—The anchorage for gunboats off the commissioner's house at Hokau has good holding ground, but is exposed in summer to sudden heavy squalls from the southeastward; it is obstructed in winter by shifting sand banks, so that it is closed at that season to vessels drawing over 5 feet. The anchorage outside the bar off Kong kun, where steamers anchor during the winter season, can with difficulty accommodate more than three vessels at one time. Both anchorages are liable in summer to sudden freshets from the Pe kiang.

Directions.—The chart is unreliable, but the following directions may be some guide. A pilot should be employed unless locally acquainted, but it is only available for small craft. Entering Samshui reach, great attention must be paid to the steering on account of the strong swirls and eddies. Keep close to the northern shore at Mandarin Point, and thence in midchannel until nearly up to Inner Point; follow the southern shore to the lower end of the stone wall of Kong kun, keep midstream around Tweed Point, and along the southern coast of Rattler Island, northward of Kong kun beacon, a white basket on a white pole, till nearly up to Low Point, then edge to the center of the channel, and anchor off Hokau or where advisable.

When leaving, and abreast of Mandarin Point, the helm should be put hard-a-port, or the ship will be set down on Entrance Point.

Numbers of native craft and immense rafts are met with in the entrance; as the rafts are kedged up, their progress is very slow, and impedes navigation.

The large rafts, measuring perhaps 400 feet by 150 feet, which sometimes come down North River three or four at a time, and occupy almost the entire width of the river, as well as large stacks of pine-tree branches, measuring 30 feet by 15 feet, which are floated down to abreast on boats lashed together, for burning in limekilns

and factories, are dangerous to navigation. Sometimes 20 or more of these rafts and stacks are in close proximity to one another, and several collisions occurred during the year 1900.

Samshui is a treaty port on the eastern side of the mouth of Pe kiang or North River, the town being situated about \(\frac{2}{4}\) mile inland, with a population (1910) of 6,000; it is a place of considerable trade, but the greater part of the business is said to be carried on at Sainam, about 2 miles eastward of Samshui on the Fat shan branch, which town, however, is not included in the treaty port. Sainam has a telegraph station; its population is 40,000 to 50,000. The actual port of Samshui is Hokau (Hohau), a straggling street extending about 670 yards along the river bank; for six months of the year, being outside the embankment, it is more or less flooded.

On the eastern side of Samshui junction is Kong kun, one of the ports of call, and so made because steamers are unable at all seasons to reach the anchorage off Samshui customhouse, in consequence of the bar between Rattler Island and Frazers Hill.

Trade.—The principal articles of native produce are sugar and tea (from the Pe kiang), straw bags, paper, and rice birds; the latter appears to be indigenous to the Samshui district; thousands of them are snared in nets during autumn, tinned in Sainam, and sent to Hongkong for shipment to the Straits Settlements.

Telegraph.—The nearest telegraph station is at Sainam.

Communication.—Five trains run daily each way between Canton and Samshui; there is also daily steam communication with Hongkong.

Supplies.—Provisions are not plentiful, and no meat can be obtained. There is any quantity of firewood, which is cut and tied in bundles of about 12 pounds weight. Local coal is unsuitable for steamers.

The water at Samshui and above is not good for drinking, but is suitable for water-tube boilers; in summer it is muddy.

Pe kiang or North River—General remarks.—Pe kiang or North River, locally known as Pakkong, rises in the northeastern corner of Kuangtung Province, flows southwestward for about 70 miles as far as Shao chau fu, where it turns southward, and, after a course of about 130 miles through the middle of the Province, passes westward and southward of Samshui into Sainam Creek, at about 1.5 miles eastward of Samshui junction with the Si kiang. Except at certain times in the spring, when a freshet forces the Pe kiang to run into the Si kiang, these two rivers never really mingle. The rises seldom occur simultaneously; thus, in July, 1904, the Si kiang was in flood, with the water gauge at Wu chau showing 51 feet, whereas the Pe kiang was only 5 feet above its winter level.

Although the Pe kiang can hardly be classed among the large rivers of China, it may claim to be considered an important waterway, having served for many centuries as part of the great trade route between Canton and the cities in the Yangtse Valley. The ruins of temples, rest houses, and jetties, met with all along its course, bear witness to the trade which at one time existed, but at the present day, although the junk traffic between Canton and the towns in the Pe kiang basin is still considerable, the only through trade worthy of mention is that in Kiangsi porcelain and Hunan tobacco.

The country of the Pe kiang basin northward as far as Tsing yuen, a distance of 43 miles from Samshui, is flat, fertile, and well populated; the conditions of trade seem to be identical with those prevailing in the Canton delta.

Above Tsing yuen the country is mountainous and produces little of any value, but there is excellent grazing country, especially near Shao chau fu. The river valley is sparsely populated; its trade is entirely with Canton. Piracy is now almost unknown.

Navigability.—Below Ying te, 90 miles from the entrance, the Pe kiang, although shallow in places, presents no exceptional difficulties to small vessels, as navigation is not impeded by rocks and rapids. Steam launches, not drawing over 4 feet water and under normal conditions of the river, can reach Tsing yuen, 47 miles up, during about seven months of the year, and Ying te during about five months (or from May to September).

From Ying te to Shao chau fu, about 147 miles up, the river narrows considerably and becomes extremely intricate, with many shallows and rapids. There are few rocks, and these being close to the banks are not dangerous, but the frequently shifting sand and gravel banks cause great difficulty. Navigation in this part of the river, even for native craft, depends entirely on the rainfall; a heavy rainfall causes the river to rise from 12 to 18 inches in 24 hours. April, May, and June are the only months when a vessel of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet draft could depend on reaching Shao chau.

H. M. S. Robin, with 2 feet 6 inches draft, ascended to Shao chau in June, 1901; and again in July, 1904, when the river was 5 feet above winter level at Samshui. Considerable difficulty was experienced above Ying te, the rapids in places being very strong, attaining a velocity of 7 knots. On the return, on July 17, at about 4 miles below Shao chau fu the river rose 9 feet in 11 hours.

In April, 1905, H. M. S. Robin again ascended to Shao chau fu. The river was 8 feet above winter level on leaving Samshui, and the current setting around Rattler Island was practically a race. On reaching Wu shih, 124 miles up, the vessel was delayed 8 days, owing to a fall in the river, and another 7 days at Tung kwn chau, 138 miles

up, for the same reason. Shao chau fu was reached on May 15, the passage having occupied 23 days.

Caution.—Inconvenience was experienced throughout the river from weeds fouling the screws and choking the condenser inlet. As sandbanks shift, silt up, or disappear, and the channels alter with every heavy flood, a pilot with local knowledge is indispensable to navigate the Pe kiang.

No rule of the road is observed, and junks pass each other on either side at will; sometimes a man in the bow of a junk will indicate by waving the side he wishes you to go. The plan of whistling first, and then waving to any junk that seemed to be taking an indefinite course, has been successfully carried out. The stone-carrying junks are laden to the water's edge, and are almost unmanageable, generally drifting down broadside to the current.

Pilots for the river can usually be obtained at Samshui, but another must be taken at Ying te, 90 miles up, as the banks above that town are constantly on the move.

Current.—The current down the Pe kiang runs from 2½ to 3 knots an hour, much accelerated during the rainy season. It is divided by Rattler Island in the entrance, and sets directly on Tweed Point, Samshui reach. For the greater part of the year the current runs from the Pe kiang into West River, but during the height of the rainy season it may be reversed.

(It is stated in other sailing directions that between Wang fu kang and Shao chau fu there are 14 places where the river flows at a rate of about 7 knots, over beds of large stones covered by 3 to 4 feet water, the channel at these places being only about 40 feet broad.)

Description.—The following description of the river is from the visits of H. M. S. Robin and Sandpiper, June and July, 1901, 1904, 1905; the depths, etc., apply to the river at those times.

Bamboo River.—This stream rises in the northeastern corner of Kuangsi, and is a principal tributary of the Pe kiang; it flows from the westward, and enters the Pe kiang at about 6 miles above Samshui; H. M. gunboat Sandpiper, in July, 1909, when both this river and North River were fairly low, ascended to Szi Wui, a distance of 14 miles.

The channel was narrow and shoal, with many sandbanks, the river having a breadth of from 200 yards to 300 yards; a shifting bar obstructs the entrance, and several bars, with a depth of 3 feet, were crossed. Wang kong is a village on the left bank, about 7 miles within the entrance, the intervening country being flat; above Wang kong the banks are fringed with bamboos, and on the southern side the country is hilly and picturesque. A rock is situated in midchannel just below Wang kong.

79795--15----27

Szi Wui is a walled town situated on the left bank of the river and has a population of about 10,000; the channel off the town is narrow, with a depth of from 4 to 5 feet, and is the limit of navigation for ordinary steam launches.

The large market town of Shek kou, at the entrance of the bamboo country, 7 miles above Szi Wui, is the chief center of trade in the district, and here great rafts are put together, which, dropping down to Fat shan and Canton through the narrow creeks in the delta, form serious impediments to steam navigation in those waters. The towns of the delta derive their supplies of bamboo from this river.

Ching hi Creek, connecting Bamboo River with West River, is entered at 9.5 miles within the entrance of Bamboo River.

Lu pu (Lu pao) is a busy town on the left bank of the Pe kiang at 15 miles above Samshui, and the seat of a likin station. Launches run daily almost throughout the year between Canton and Lu pu, via Fat shan and Sainam reach.

Shih kio (Shek kok), 16 miles above Lu pu, is a large town on the left bank of the Pe kiang, having considerable shipping; there is a well-preserved pagoda on the opposite bank. The surrounding country is low, and a fine embankment stretches for over 1.5 miles below the town.

Tsing yuen is a well-built prosperous looking town extending about 1.3 miles along the right bank of the river at about 11 miles above Shih kio. Its water front is occupied by shipping and boats, and its population is estimated at 3,000. The celebrated Tsing yuen tea is grown on the hills northward of the town; pan (or brown) sugar is the other chief product of the district. The principal industries are the manufacture of flour, and of peanut oil; there are extensive fish ponds in the suburbs.

American Baptist and Roman Catholic missionaries have their headquarters in the town.

The hills in the vicinity of Tsing yuen are fairly rich in timber, and tigers are said to be numerous on their jungle-covered slopes. Here the plain abruptly ends and the river flows through a mountainous country, practically without interruption, to the borders of Hunan and Kiangsi.

Launches run daily between Canton and Tsing yuen for about seven months in the year.

Between Tsing yuen and Ying te, which is the next town of any importance on the river, the scenery is of the most beautiful description, and the country begins to be hilly and well wooded. The river banks are covered with bamboo groves, which are cut annually and rafted down to Canton.

Fei loi tze gorge (Fi loy tze) is about 9 miles above Tsing yuen and 58 miles from the entrance; here the river narrows and flows

through a curved pass between hills rising abruptly some 500 feet. At the entrance to the gorge and on the right bank is the salt station of Ta miao or Pai miao (Pak miu), where salt for the Lienchau district is transferred from large Canton junks into smaller craft. The fishing village on the opposite side has an evil reputation for piracy. At about \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile above Ta miao stands the famous Buddhist monastery of F\(\epsilon\) io itze, forming with its halls, shrines, and kiosks, picturesquely placed in the midst of a thickly-wooded ravine, a notable example of Chinese coclesiastical architecture. There are limestone quarries on either side of the gorge, and these occur at short intervals on both banks of the river for the next 50 miles. A succession of boats deeply laden with limestone passes daily down the river to the limekilns of the delta.

The river above the gorge, which is 3 miles long, widens; the hills recode from the bank, becoming higher and more wooded than before.

Pak kong kiau (kou) is on the left bank of the river just above the gorge, about 62 miles from the entrance; there is a telegraph station at Kwan chin, 4 miles inland. The railroad from Canton to Hankau is intended to meet the Pe kiang near this town.

Wong shih, or Wong shek, a small market town, is on the right bank of the river at 7.5 miles above Pak kong kiau and about 70 miles from the entrance. Both banks above Wong shih are lined with bamboo groves as far as Ta miu hap (Great Temple Pass), where the river again winds between high hills and precipitous cliffs. At about 6 miles above this pass are the Censer Gorges, and a little further up is the entrance to Mong si hap Gorge; here Lienchau River, flowing from the westward, joins the Pe kiang. At the junction is the busy shipping port of Kong ho (hau).

Railroad.—Wong shek is connected with Canton by a railroad.

Lienchau River, the second principal tributary of the Pe kiang, 82 miles above the entrance, rises in the northwestern corner of Kuangtung Province and flows for about 90 miles through a mountainous country inhabited by the Miao tze aborigines, who, secure in their inaccessible mountain homes, to a great extent defy all efforts of the Chinese to control them. The principal towns on the river are Lienchau, situated in a fertile plain, a prefectural city of some 50,000 persons, and the center of trade in northwestern Kuangtung; Yungshan, a district city; Taiwan and Howkong, the latter a large likin station, with a bridge of boats.

Roman Catholic missionaries have for some years past had stations all along the river, and recently American missionaries have established themselves at Lienchau.

Vessels can ascend the Lienchau without difficulty for about 8 miles to the first rapid, the breadth of the river being about 250 yards,

and the banks lined with thick bamboos, behind which rise well-wooded hills.

(H. M. S. Moorhen, of 2½ feet draft, tried in 1903 to ascend the Lienchau, presumably at high river, but that vessel only got 20 miles up, owing to the tortuousness and narrowness of the channel.)

Mong si hap (Blind Boy Pass), about 3 miles in length, and from 50 to 100 yards broad, is so called from the striking profile of a face, visible from certain directions, on a cliff on the right bank of the Pe kiang. It commences just above Lienchau River; at its north end is a sunken rock which is left to the westward.

Ta shih leng, or Lau tai wan, is on the right bank of the Pe kiang, at about 2.8 miles above Mong si hap; here limestone is carried down the sloping banks in wheelbarrows, and discharged into junks.

There is a sand bank in mid-channel, just below Ta shih leng.

Ying te, or Ying tak, on the right bank, at 3.5 miles farther up, and 90 miles from the entrance, is a small walled town, with about 3,000 persons, picturesquely situated in an amphitheater of rugged hills, just above a range of limestone cliffs, which, jutting out into the river, form one of the numerous "gates" of the Pe kiang. It was formerly the seat of government for this part of the Province, and a noted Buddhist center; it is now a busy shipping port, and the present limit of regular steam navigation on the Pe kiang. A steam launch runs every other day from Canton and Tsing yuen to Ying te from about May to September.

Telegraph—Railroad.—Ying te is a much smaller town than Tsing yuen; it has some fair shops in the main street. There is a telegraph station and railroad communication with Canton.

The district produces rice, sugar, and bamboo, and a large amount of barley is grown on the river banks between Ying te and Shao chau fu.

Yung yuen, or Copper River, joins the Pe kiang opposite Ying te; it is only navigable for small boats which bring down charcoal.

River.—The channels between Ying te and Mau yu shek, 3 miles above, are narrow and difficult. The Pe kiang for some miles above Ying te flows between high banks through a fertile country, cultivated with rice and sugar cane.

Wang fu kang village is on the left bank, at 6 miles above Ying te; there is said to be a small lake on the summit of a hill behind it. At 5 miles farther up on the right bank is the celebrated Kuan yin shan, a cliff of rock, covered with dense foliage, on the north side of entrance to Sulphur River or Creek, rising almost vertically some 600 feet from the river. Here are the cave temples dedicated to the Goddess of Mercy; at the foot of the hill a stone stairway leads into the caverns, which pierce the cliff in all directions.

Sha hau is 9 miles above Kuan yin shan; here the Canton salt junks transship their cargoes into small, flat-bottomed junks during the low-water season, and the small junks proceed past Shao chau into Hunan.

Wu shih (Wu shek) is a small town on the left bank of the river at about 10 miles above Sha hau, and 124 miles above the entrance; the country around Wu shih is sparsely populated.

Tan tze ki (Cannon Ball Barrier), not charted, above Wu shih, is a striking gorge, where the cliffs rise higher than at Kuan yin shan. There is another place called Tan tze ki, situated about 7 miles below Wu shih.

Tak tu (Pak to) is a large village on the right bank at 8 miles above Wu shih, and 134 miles above the entrance. In the hills above Tak tu coal can be seen outcropping in many places, but it is not now worked.

Lung kwei (Yu yuen) River joins the Pe kiang from the west-ward just above Tak tu; this river flows through a mountainous country, inhabited by several large aboriginal tribes. The productions of the Lung kwei district are maize, bamboo, and charcoal.

Shao chau fu (Shiu kaun), 12 miles above Tak tu, and 147 miles above the entrance, is the principal city in northern Kuantung, and is well situated on a peninsula, formed by the junction of Ching kiang with Pe kiang; it is surrounded by a crenelated wall in a good state of preservation, and contains about 80,000 persons. The principal business quarter is the Cantonese suburb outside the wall facing the Pe kiang. The yamens are in the native or Hakka quarter, near the West gate, off which there is anchorage; there are also a Hunanese and a Kiangsi quarter. Shao chau fu has no manufactories, but is a distributing center for the country around, and an important customs barrier; bridges of boats, stretched across the rivers just above the junction, facilitate the collection of duties. The imperial Chinese post has an office in the city, but the inhabitants prefer to use the native courier service, which is cheap and safe.

Railroad.—Shao chau is in railroad communication with Canton. There is also a telegraph station.

Trade.—The principal exports are various oils (chiefly ground-nut oil), coal, sugar, and cereals. The minerals existing, besides coal, are iron, silver, copper, lead, plumbago, and asbestos. A good deal of pottery, and also tea and tobacco, comes through from Nam heung. The imports are kerosene, American flour, piece goods, Bombay yarn, lamps, etc. The chief production is paper made from bamboo fiber, and coarse pottery is made in the neighborhood. Great quantities of firewood are floated down in rafts. Game abounds.

Coal.—The coal fields of Hunan extend southward to Shao chau, and there are coal mines situated within 5 miles of that city up both

rivers, which have been worked for some years past by native methods. The present output is inconsiderable, and the coal, which is taken from the surface, is of poor quality. In Kuantung Province, generallys supplies of coal are derived from Japan. There is silver in the hill, near Shao chau, but it is not worked.

Missions.—Three missionary societies are working in this part of the country: The Roman Catholics, with headquarters at Nam heung, who devote themselves chiefly to work among the country people; the Berlin mission, with stations at Nam heung, Chihsien, Yen fa, and Shao chau; and the Wesleyans, with stations at Shao chau, Locheng, Lung kwei, Mong fu kong, and Ying te.

Climate.—The climate of Shao chau is hot in summer, and, owing to the sudden changes in temperature, caused by alternating northerly and southerly winds, is unhealthful for Europeans. The winter is cold, frost and snow being of frequent occurrence.

Plague is unknown; cholera and smallpox are common.

Fauna.—The surrounding country, besides being extremely picturesque, abounds in wild animals of all kinds, among which deer, wild boar, porcupines, monkeys, leopards, and tigers may be mentioned. The last-named are reported to be numerous; they frequently descend on outlying villages, and carry off dogs, buffalo, and sometimes children. The Siberian wolf is also found near Shao chau fu-Snipe and partridge are fairly plentiful.

Ching kiang, or Clear River, which joins the Pe kiang at Shao chau fu, leads to Locheng, and through the Chiling Pass into Hunan; it is impeded by rapids, and is navigable only for light-draft junks.

Upper River—The Pe kiang, about Shao chau fu, leads to Nam heung and through the Meiling Pass into Kiangsi; it is impeded by rapids, and is navigable only for light-draft junks.

## CHAPTER IX.

CHU KIANG OR CANTON RIVER AND THE VARIOUS CHANNELS CONNECTING THE RIVER WITH THE SI KIANG OR WEST RIVER.

General remarks—Caution—Offlying islands.—The islands and dangers in the approaches to Hongkong and Canton cover a space of about 50 miles, between Wung kum, or Montanha Island, on the western side of Great West Channel and Basalt and other islands eastward of the island of Hongkong. Bearings of the islands are all that are necessary for avoiding any of the sunken dangers, but as few of the small islands lying in the approaches have been closely surveyed they should not be approached within 1 mile.

The Ladrone Islands are useful landmarks for vessels approaching from the southwestward; and the light on Gap rock, the southwesternmost of the Kaipong Islands, is the object that should be made for at night. The outer groups are the Ladrones, Kaipong Islands, and the Lema Islands eastward of them; within these are several smaller groups.

Enormous fleets of fishing junks cruise in the approaches to Canton River and Hongkong; these junks show no lights; as a rule, they carry the smallest square sail forward; they are stoutly built, and serious damage would probably be caused to an iron vessel by a collision with one of them; they are sometimes found 40 miles offshore. This caution also applies to all the coast of China, but the large trading junks are differently rigged, having five masts with two small sails aft.

Kaipong Islands, the southern and outermost group of the archipelago fronting the Chu kiang, or Canton River estuary, and Hongkong approaches, extend northeast and southwest about 10 miles.

Gap rock (Lat. 21° 49′ N., Long. 113° 56′ E.), or Man mi chau, the southwestern of the Kaipong-Islands, is 97 feet high; several rocks extend for the distance of 200 yards around Gap rock, and patches of 10 fathoms steep-to, lie at 600 yards southward and 1,600 yards northward of the rock. At a mile off, southward and westward, the depths are from 17 to 20 fathoms.

Light.—From a white tower on the eastern corner of the keeper's house on Gap rock, 62 feet high from ground to vane, is exhibited, at an elevation of 140 feet above high water, a revolving white light, visible 18 miles.

Digitized by Google

The lighthouse buildings are painted white.

Fog signal.—A fog explosive is fired in thick weather.

Signal station.—There is a signal station, International Code, on Gap rock, which is connected with the post office and harbor master's office at Hongkong by a submarine telephone cable; passing vessels are reported.

Storm signals are shown here.

Buoys for lighthouse purposes are moored northeastward and southeastward of the rock.

Jubilee Islet, 200 feet high, lies about a mile northeastward of Gap rock, with Nut Islet, 280 feet high, a mile beyond. Reef Islet, 90 feet high, lies nearly a mile southeastward of Jubilee, with a sunken rock off its southern extremity; islets lie northeastward of the last two, as charted. The channel between Gap rock and Jubilee Islet and Reef Islet, is about a mile wide, has depths of 10 to 18 fathoms, and is safely navigable with a steady wind.

Peaked rock, 160 feet high, and the easternmost of the cluster, lies 1.5 miles northeastward of Reef Islet.

Others are rocks close off its southern side.

Rugged rock, 50 feet high, the northernmost, lies 2 miles northnortheastward of Nut Island.

Tsi mi wan, the westernmost of the two large islands of the Kaipong Group, separated from the southwestern point of Pak tsim by a channel about ½ mile wide, is about 2 miles long, northeast and southwest, narrow, of very irregular shape, and 750 feet high.

Pak tsim is the northeastern and largest island of the group; the Asses Ears, two remarkable peaks near its western end, rise almost perpendicularly 940 feet, and falling suddenly on the northeastern side, unite to the moderately high land which forms that part of the island.

Kwei tau, or Tortoise Head, a white rocky islet, lies about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile eastward of the eastern point of Pak tsim; there is a rock awash at times, between it and the point, and all the vicinity should be given a wide berth, as it has not been surveyed.

Gai une, an islet 130 feet high, is rather over one mile northward of the northern end of Pak tsim; the passage between is unsafe, for some rocks on which the sea sometimes breaks are said to exist in it.

Cambridge rock is a pinnacle with 2½ fathoms water, and on which the sea sometimes breaks, lying 50°, one mile from Gai une. There are depths of 4 to 5 fathoms on the rocks which surround the pinnacle. Caution is required when navigating in its vicinity.

Tai ta mi Channel.—Kwei tau, Pak tsim, and Cambridge rock bound the southwestern side of Tai ta mi Channel, about 3 miles wide with depths of 18 to 20 fathoms.

Lema Islands, eastward of the Kaipong Group, five in number, extend east-northeast and west-southwest nearly 13 miles.

The islands on their southern sides are all steep and rocky, with not even a single bight that a boat could shelter in.

Notwithstanding their barren appearance a few men reside on them, preparing small quantities of charcoal from brushwood found between the rocks, which is sold at Macao.

Tai ta mi, a small but high islet, the southwesternmost of the group, lies on the eastern side of the channel of same name, above mentioned, southward of Pun tin, with a channel ½ mile wide between it and Pun tin.

Mosquito rock, 50 feet long, east and west, and 30 feet wide, with a depth of 2 fathoms, lies about 400 yards southward of the southern end of Tai ta mi Islet. The southeastern extremities of Tamkan and Ye chau Islands in line lead southeastward, and Ichau Head and hummock well open of the western point of Tai ta mi Islet leads westward of it.

Pun tin Island, 1,210 feet high, northward of Tai ta mi, has a more peaked formation than the others, and Ichau Head, its western projecting point, has a hummock on it.

Ye chau, the highest and central of the Lema Islands, when viewed from most positions, appears flat-topped. Round Island, a small rocky islet, lies close to its northeastern point.

This island is separated from Pun tin by Ye chau Channel, about 800 yards wide, with depths of 10 to 30 fathoms, but it is not recommended, and should not be taken by a sailing vessel except from necessity.

Tamkan, the eastern and largest of the Lema Islands, is 6 miles long, one mile broad, 852 feet high at its western end, and separated from Ye chau by Yat mun, below mentioned.

Water may be obtained on the northern coast of Tamkan at several places.

Joss House Bay.—Close westward of Northeast head, in Joss House Bay, is a Chinese place of worship, and about this part the compradores' boats await sailing vessels after the end of August, when easterly winds set in.

Yat mun is clear, and 12 to 19 fathoms deep, but this channel is not recommended, and should not be taken by sailing vessels except from necessity. Round Islet lies on the western side of the fairway.

Ladrone Islands—Great Ladrone, or Man shan (Lat. 21° 56′ N., Long. 113° 44′ E.), is the outermost island directly fronting the Chu kiang or Canton.River estuary. This island, with Little Ladrone westward of it, and Potue 6 miles northwestward, bounds the eastward side of Great West Channel, leading to the river.

The northwestern part of this steep, bold island forms a round dome, 1,468 feet high, and its appearance differs from all the other islands, although most of them are high. It is about 2 miles in diameter, and rocky.

Pumice Stone Bay is a small inlet at its southwestern end, where fishing boats shelter in the northeast monsoon.

Little Ladrone, or Poking han, lying westward of Great Ladrone, and separated by a narrow channel from 9 to 18 fathoms deep, which should not be used except in necessity, is 1,083 feet high, and of convex sloping form; rocks lie close to its southeastern extremity,

Black rock.—A small rocky islet lies close to the northeastern point of Little Ladrone, and 1,400 yards northward of this islet is Black rock, which is covered at high water, with 9 fathoms close around; to clear the rock when it is covered, keep about midway between Little Ladrone and Tong ho Island.

Potue, or Passage Island, about 5 miles northwestward of Little Ladrone, is a sloping rock visible about 9 miles. There are depths of 5 to 6 fathoms around it, but it must not be approached in light winds by a sailing vessel, as the eddies occasioned by the stream out of the river might render her unmanageable and drift her toward it, or Wong mu.

Wong mu Island, lying 1.5 miles east-northeastward of Potue is 1.3 miles long, north and south, with a greatest width of 800 yards and has a peaked hill on its northern part; nearly ½ mile westward of its middle part is Rock Island, ½ mile northward of which are some sunken rocks.

Liungnib, 1,400 yards long and 600 yards wide, lying 1 mile eastward of Wong mu, has a round islet off its southern end. Nearly 1 mile 287° from the northern point of Liungnib are some rocks, which cover at springs and break in bad weather; and a rock, awash, lies nearly ½ mile westward of the same point; therefore do not close the northern end of this island within 1.5 miles.

Tong ho Island, about 2.8 miles northward of Little Ladrone, is about 1.5 miles long, east and west, about 1.3 miles wide, and 561 feet high near its center.

Bodam Cove, on the northeastern side of Tong ho, is ½ mile in length by 300 yards wide, with 23 feet water at the entrance abreast Fort Point, 18 fect well inside, and the bottom all soft mud. On either side the land rises steeply and terminates in a valley at the head of the cove, where there is a sandy beach. The cove affords good shelter to small vessels at all times, for although open to the northeast monsoon, the seas break at the entrance, and the rocks offer facilities for securing small craft with warps, rendering it a rendezvous for fishing junks in bad weather. Here a vessel may anchor, or be run into the mud toward the head without risk.

Rocks—North rock, with less than 6 feet water, and steep-to, lies 400 yards off the northeastern extremity of Tong ho; and a rock with 1½ fathoms water, also steep-to, lies in the eastern approach to Boddam Cove, with North rock bearing 288°, distant 1,400 yards; this rock is off the limits of the chart.

Bouncer rocks, two in number and close together, lie 130 yards northeastward of the southern entrance point; the outer rock is awash at low water. Rocks extend southwestward of Fort Point, and also about 70 yards off the point within it, some of these being above water, and one 11 feet high. About 90 yards southwest of the highest is a rock awash at high water.

Directions.—Boddam Cove is not readily distinguished until within about 2 miles of the northeastern part of Tong ho. Give a berth to North rock if coming from northward, and to the 1½-fathoms patch if coming from the eastward, and bring the cove fairly open, bearing 236°; steer in on that bearing, keeping the apex of Round Hill at the head of the cove just open of two high-water points on the southeastern shore to clear Bouncer rocks.

Supplies.—Water may be obtained, also small supplies of beef, fish, poultry, and fruit.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Boddam Cove, at 9h. 40m.; springs rise 4½ feet. The flood stream sets northwest outside the entrance, and the ebb stream southeast, pretty strongly, but the streams are very weak inside.

Nam sha Bay is an indentation on the southwestern side of Tong ho, and affords shelter during the northeast monsoon season.

A bank, with less than 3 fathoms, about 200 yards in extent, lies from 200 yards to 400 yards off its southern point, with a rock with less than 6 feet water near its western edge. A rock with less than 6 feet lies 100 yards off the northern point of the bay, within the edge of the 3-fathom curve. There is a sandy beach at the head of the bay, from which a road leads to Boddam Cove.

Pak leak Island, or Putoi, about 2 miles across and 875 feet high, lies nearly 1.5 miles northward of Great Ladrone, and on its northeastern part is a remarkable conical hill. The hills on its southern side are studded with black rocks. On its eastern side and fronting Hoa ok Islet is a cove where fishing junks shelter; on its northern side are some small bays in which water may be procured; and near its northeastern point is a rock islet named House Islet.

A rock, awash, lies close off South head, the southern point of the island.

Clio rock lies about 400 yards from the western side of Pak leak, with the northwestern extremity of the island bearing 351°, distant 800 yards.

Chuk wan shan and Chuk chau Islands lie 1.5 to 3.5 miles eastward of Pak leak. Chuk wan shan, the larger and eastern island, has a small bay on its northern side, and Sharp Islet, high and rocky, lies off its southeastern point.

Raleigh rock, lying 11°, distant 1.8 miles from House Islet, and nearly in mid-channel between Pak leak and White rocks, is a small pinnacle, with depths of 7 to 9 fathoms close-to, and which breaks, when there is a moderate sea, at low-water springs.

White rocks, about 2.8 miles northeastward of Raleigh rock, are two high rocks ½ mile apart, with a third and smaller rock above water, rather westward of the mid-position between them. About 1 mile 132° from the southern rock is a rock awash at low-water springs with 9 fathoms close around.

Channel caution.—The depth is about 9 fathoms in the channel between White rocks and Chuk wan Islands, but this channel should not be used until it has been further examined.

Tai lo Island, the southern of the range of small islands northward of Ladrone Islands, is 590 feet high near its northwestern part, sloping a little eastward, and lies northward from Liungnib, from which it is separated by a channel 2.8 miles wide and clear, excepting the rocks off the northern point of the latter.

Tai lok, about ½ mile northward of Tai lo, is a rocky islet, 395 feet high, with a large rock on its summit.

Sam kok, or Pyramid Island, lying 1.8 miles north-northeast-ward from Tai lok, is 460 feet in height and rugged in appearance. On its northern side there is a small bay or cove for boats, and the island affords fresh water.

Between Sam kok and Tai lok is Sai lok, a small islet, and Ellis and Bird rocks, both above water; the channels between these are narrow, and the eddies so strong as frequently to render sailing craft unmanageable, therefore they should not be attempted.

Chung chau si, or West Water Island, the northern of this range, lies 34° 1.3 miles from Sam kok, and is 415 feet high. The depths are 4½ to 5½ fathoms about ½ mile westward of the islands from Tai lo to Chung chau si, and 5 to 7 fathoms off the eastern side, but it has not been properly sounded.

The ebb stream sets strongly southward along the western side, and the flood in eddies northwestward.

Chuk tu aan, or Phillpott Island, lies east-northeastward about 3 miles from Tai lo; a reef extends 400 yards from its northern side, and a detached reef, partly above water, lies about 400 yards northwestward of it.

Four-feet rock, a small pinnacle, with 4 feet water and 10 fathoms in its neighborhood, lies 25°, distant 1.8 miles from Chuk

tu aan, and nearly midway between that island and the western end of Chung chau.

Chung chau, or Lueng Island, which, with the islands southeastward of it, bound the southwestern side of Lantau Channel, lies 2.5 miles southwestward of the southwestern point of Lantau; it is 1.5 miles long, northwest and southeast, and 490 feet high, with a peaked hill near its northern point. There is a boat cove on the northern side of the island, and a short distance off its northwestern point is a high round islet, with a large rock on its summit.

A rock, with 1½ fathoms, apparently steep-to, lies about 400 yards off the northwestern side of the island. There are strong eddies between Chung chau and Lantau.

Nau tau is small but high, and separated from Chung chau by a narrow channel 600 yards wide, named Nau tau mun, or Bullock Head gate, in which there is shoal water close to Chung chau. The depths in the bay to the southward, which it forms with Lafsami, are 3 to 5 fathoms, but it has not been surveyed.

Lafsami Island, close southward of Nau tau, is 785 feet high, and on some bearings appears as a peak; about <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> mile eastward of its southern point is Rocky Islet, on which are some fishermen's huts.

Lafsami is inhabited on its southwestern side, where fresh water may be obtained in a small bay.

Chi chau, 3 miles east by south from Lafsami, forms the southern side of the eastern entrance of Lantau Channel. The island is 820 feet high, round in shape, inhabited, and separated by a narrow channel from Si chi chau, a smaller and lower island, on its western side. A sunken rock lies off its northeastern point, and a patch of 4 fathoms about ½ mile off its northern point.

Between Si chi chau and Rocky Islet is a safe channel 1.5 miles wide, which may be used when bound for Canton River after entering from the southward between Chuk wan shan and Ai chau.

Soko Islands.—A chau, the southern of the Soko Islands, and nearly 4 miles southeastward of the southwestern point of Lantau, forms the northern side of the eastern entrance of Lantau Channel. A chau rises very steeply to the height of 525 feet.

Water may be procured at a little sandy beach on the northern side of A chau.

North Soko Island, lying nearly ½ mile northward of A chau, is about 1 mile long, east and west, and very narrow in the middle.

A sand spit extends westward upward of 1.5 miles from its western side.

A rocky islet and two rocks above water lie between the Soko Islands; also, High Rocky Islet is \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile southeastward of A chau,

but the ground is foul between. The whole of the group apparently lies within the 5-fathom curve, extending southeastward of the southwestern extremity of Lantau.

Ai chau.—These islands, two in number, lie about 4.5 miles east-northeastward of Chuk wan shan, and the eastern and larger island is separated from the smaller by a very narrow channel, with 4 fathoms water.

Hill Islet, lying 1.5 miles northeastward of the eastern Ai chau, is surrounded by rocks, at a short distance from which is a depth of 11 fathoms.

Sa mun, or Three Gates, a group of three small islands, lies about 3.5 miles eastward of Ai chau, and extends about 3 miles northwest and southeast, with narrow passages between the islands. Close northwestward of Hak chau, the northwestern island, are the Peaked Islets, and ½ mile northeastward of the central island is Gauze, a high rocky islet, with a reef of rocks lying between; the southern end of the southeastern island, Hung kong chau, the highest part of the group, is a round hill, 492 feet high.

A small bay on the southwestern side of the central island affords shelter to two or three vessels during a northeast gale, with anchorage in 6 to 10 fathoms, mud.

Lingting Island, 3 miles northeastward of the Sa mun Group, is about 1.8 miles long, east and west, 1,400 yards wide, of a rugged appearance, and rise to a peak 1,181 feet high near its center.

Needle rocks are two sunken pinnacles close together, lying about 300 yards southwestward of the low rocky northwestern point of Lingting; there is a depth of about 6 feet on them, and with a swell they are probably marked by breakers or ripplings.

Rocks.—A rock, which dries 5 feet, lies  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile 84° from the north-eastern extremity of the island, and a rock 11 feet high lies the same distance 101° from the same extremity; both apparently steep-to, but foul ground between them.

Caution.—Give the northeastern side of Lingting a wide berth, especially at night.

## CHU KIANG OR CANTON RIVER ESTUARY.

General Remarks.—The approach to the estuary of Chu kiang or Canton River lies between Macao Island and others southward of it on the western side and Lantau Island on the eastern side. Great West Channel on the western or Macao side is used by sailing vessels during the southwest monsoon period; the low-water depths are not greater than 4 fathoms; one of the islands on the eastern side of this channel is included in the 5-fathoms curve, extending from the western shore, thus forming a bar.

MACAO. 419

Lantau Channel is deep, as is also Lema Channel, the approach from the eastward. There is a channel eastward of Lantau, leading northwestward from Hongkong; full details will be found of these in the following pages.

Caution.—The depths in the channel westward of Lintin bar, and in other parts of the entrance of Canton River are reported to have changed considerably since the date of the survey.

Western shore.—The island of Wung kum, or Montanha, and Ko ho, northward of it, have been described with West River. Northward of Taipa, the northern islet, is Macao Harbor.

Macao Harbor.—Macao, a Portuguese settlement in China, is situated eastward of the entrance to the Si kiang or West River, and close eastward of Lappa, Tui lien shan, or Patera Island, on a small peninsula projecting from the southeastern end of Macao Island. The peninsula is nearly 2 miles long, less than 1 mile wide at its broadest part, and is connected with the island by a low, narrow sandy isthmus, across which extends a barrier wall to exclude foreigners from the interior of the island. The town is built on the slope of the hills, which are 200 to 300 feet in height. Guia Fort, with its lighthouse, occupies the summit.

Taipa or Kaikong Island lies on the southern side of Macao roadstead; it consists of two parts, connected by a sand ridge. There are villages in the bay on the southwestern side of the eastern part.

Cabrita Point is its northeastern extremity; Colowan or Koho Island, southward of it, has been mentioned with West River approach. The depths seaward of it are reported to have shoaled 2 fathoms (June, 1910), as noted on the charts.

Outer anchorage.—There is anchorage, in about 4 fathoms, mud bottom, at from 7 to 8 miles 101° from Guia Fort Light.

Bank extended.—The 3-fathom curve of the bank forming the roadstead of Macao was reported in 1909 to have extended about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in a southeasterly direction; a depth of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms was found 1.8 miles east-northeastward of Lady Franklin rock. Vessels above 14 feet draft should not go inside or westward of the bearing of Koho Point, 225°.

Lady Franklin rock, with 13 feet water, lies between the outer anchorage and the roadstead, 1,600 yards 61° from Cabrita Point, the northeastern point of Taipa Island.

Lights.—From a circular tower with white lantern and red cupola, 44 feet high, at Fort Guia, on the southeastern side of Macao Peninsula, is exhibited, at an elevation of 333 feet above high water, a group flashing white light, visible 25 miles.

A signal mast and some yellow dwellings are near the lighthouse.

It will, naturally, not be visible over the high islands southward of it.



On the southern extremity of the peninsula, eastern side of the harbor entrance, from a stone column 10 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 50 feet, a fixed white light, visible about 6 miles.

On Barra Fort, at about 150 yards northwestward of the above, is exhibited, from a red iron structure 16 feet in height, a fixed red light at an elevation of 31 feet, visible 4 miles.

The harbor is formed between the peninsula and Tui lien shan or Patera Island, to the westward; it is about 1.5 miles in length and 600 yards in breadth, about ½ mile wide in the entrance, and has depths of 2 to 3 fathoms on the town side, but the western side is encumbered with sand banks. There is less water in the approach over the fairway bank, but a channel 111 feet wide, with a depth of 11 feet at low water, has been dredged from a point 2.5 mile; 25° from Cabrita Point, 6,758 yards 252° to a point 400 yards southward of the extremity of the peninsula. The bottom is soft mud.

There is an excellent landing pier.

Dangers—Pedra Arèca.—A bank with from 3 to 6 feet water fronts the peninsula at a distance of 600 to 1,000 yards, and which has not been properly surveyed; it is apparently about 2 miles in extent, but the depths seaward of it are probably less than charted, as above stated, with the outer anchorage.

Pedra Arèca, dry at low water, is situated at the western extremity of this bank, 800 yards southeastward of the southern extremity of the peninsula.

A patch of 1 fathom is charted 400 yards southward of the extremity of the peninsula, eastern point of the harbor entrance, and others as charted.

Buoys—Beacons.—Pedra Arèca is marked by a black can buoy. A fairway buoy, conical, painted red and black in horizontal stripes, is moored about 1,400 yards southeastward of Guia Lighthouse, on the bank above mentioned. The dredged channel is marked by four small black buoys and three conical red buoys; the black buoys show red lights.

Pedro de Meio, a rock situated 400 yards off Jolo Point, western side of northwest entrance to the channel southward of Taipa Island, is reported to be marked by an iron pole with a spherical cage, and painted red and white.

Directions.—There are no dangers outside the harbor for such vessels as can enter it. Guia Lighthouse, bearing 270°, should be steered for until Cabrita Point bears 180°, when the buoyage of the dredged channel should be picked up and followed, steering 252°. When abreast Pedra Arèca buoy, haul up for the entrance, passing not less than 200 yards from Fort Barra, from which a shoal extends westward from the fort.

MACAO. 421

Vessels using this channel must take a pilot, or the master of the vessel must have a local license approved by the captain of the port of Macao.

When entering the channel by day, vessels shall show two black cylinders, placed vertically, and at night two green lights, placed vertically.

In case the channel is closed, signals will be made to that effect at the semaphore station.

Moor northward of that fort in about 17 feet at low water.

Attention is necessary to the tidal streams, which run strongly round the eastern point of entrance.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at 10h. 2m.; with a spring rise of about 9½ feet, and a neap rise of about 6½ feet.

Macao—Population.—The population of Macao is about 78,000. Communication.—Macao is in telegraphic communication with Hongkong, and from thence to all parts. Daily communication by steamers is maintained with Hongkong and Canton.

Supplies.—No patent fuel or liquid fuel is obtainable, and there is only a small amount of coal, about 50 tons, in stock. About 1,200 tons are imported annually.

Time.—Standard time, corresponding to the one hundred and twentieth meridian of east longitude, or 8h. fast of Greenwich mean time, is kept at Macao.

Trade and shipping.—The principal articles of export are opium, cotton goods, flour, silk, tea, matches, and oil; and of import, fans, firewood, mats, silk, sugar, and tea. The shipping at the port is mostly confined to junks, and some 16,000 junks enter and clear annually, with a total tonnage of about 900,000 tons.

Climate.—Macao being open to the southwest monsoon is more agreeable and salubrious during the hot season than Hongkong, and although by no means exempt from the diseases prevalent in that colony, yet sanitary improvements have much increased the healthfulness of the town.

The mean temperature for the year is 75° F.; for January and February, 61°; for June to August, 85°; and the annual rainfall is 69 inches.

Inshore channel to West River—Malo chau Pass.—A vessel drawing 10 feet has passed through this channel northward of Taipa, Macarira, and Mong chau, into the Broadway, at high water.

Rock.—A rocky patch, about 400 feet long northeast and southwest, and 200 feet broad, with two pinnacles near its middle, on which there is a depth of 3 feet at low-water springs, lies about 100 yards southward of mid-channel between Malo chau and Macarira. A conical buoy, checkered black and red, is moored close eastward

79795-15-28

of the pinnacles. The passage northward of the buoy is the better of the two.

Coast.—Kau chau, or Nine Islands, a group of islets situated northeastward about 4 miles from Macao, lie close together, and the depth is 3 fathoms at about ½ mile eastward of the outermost islet; a rock always above water lies about ¼ mile southward of the southern islet of the group.

There is anchorage for small craft in from 5 to 6 fathoms westward of this group, with some shelter from the northeast monsoon; the approach has from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 fathoms water.

The rock above water is a good mark for approaching the anchorage. Heung chau Bay, northwestward of Kau chau Islands, has Yeh Lee Island in its southern part and White rock or islet at about 1.8 miles seaward of it; there is a rock which dries 3 feet at low water nearly midway between the two. Yeh Lee Island is foul, as charted.

The depths within Yeh Lee Island are less than 1 fathom, and the 3-fathom curve is at least 3 miles offshore.

Kum sing mun Harbor (Lat. 22° 23′ N., Long. 113° 38′ E.).—At Bluff Head, about 11 miles northward of Macao, the coast turns abruptly westward and forms Kum sing mun (Golden Sun-born Pass) Harbor, which is safe for small vessels. The approach from the southward has apparently about 3½ fathoms between the 3-fathom curve fronting the shore bank, and that inclosing a tongue with less than 3 fathoms, extending about 5 miles southward of Ki au Island, which forms the northern side of the entrance. The water deepens abreast Bluff Head to 10 fathoms, and to 10 to 16 in the actual entrance, ½ mile wide, north of the bluff, between it and Ki au, but it soon shallows to the half-tide rock situated near the edge of the 3-fathom curve.

Anchorage may be obtained at about ½ mile westward of the islet, off the southern extremity of Ki au, in about 5 fathoms, soft bottom, avoiding the shoal patches shown on the chart. The chart is not reliable.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Kum sing mun Harbor at 0h. 6m.; springs rise 6½ feet, neaps 5½ feet.

Coast.—For the coast northward and channels leading to West River, etc., see page 450.

Eastern shore.—The islands and dangers (Ladrone, etc.) forming the eastern side of the approach, southward of Lantau, have been described, page 411.

Lantau, or Tai ho Island, forms the eastern side of the approach northward of the islands before mentioned. It is separated from Hongkong Island, eastward of it, by West Lamma Channel, is nearly 15 miles in length, northeast and southwest, and its greatest breadth

is about 5 miles. The island is high, and about its center are several peaks, the summit being 3,064 feet above the sea.

Close to the western coast of Lantau, and 1.8 miles from the southern point, is Peaked Hill, which is insulated at high water.

A rock above water lies about 346°, 1 mile from Peaked Hill and ½ mile from the island. At 1.5 miles northeastward of this rock is Bluff Point, and southeastward of the latter a bay, in which is Tai ho Village, where there is a creek to which a boat can enter at high tide. South of the village are two bays, both of which are shallow, but fresh water may be procured in them.

Pa lo wang.—On the northern side of Lantau, and nearly 3 miles northeastward of Bluff Point, are two projecting points ½ mile apart, between which is Pa lo wang Bay and Village, and northward of the eastern point of the bay and about ½ mile distant is an islet 138 feet high, having a rock awash close off its northwestern extremity, and a rock 4 feet high about 300 yards southward of it. Eastward of the islet is Tung chung Bay, which is shallow and has Tung chung Village at its head. There are fishing stakes in this locality and elsewhere.

The continuation of the description of Lantau Island will be found on page 462.

The following islands and dangers lie in the western approach to Kap sing mun, leading to Hongkong.

Chu lu kok, an island about 2 miles north and south, of irregular shape, and 400 feet in height, lies northward of Tung chung Bay. Red Point, 142 feet high, its northeastern extremity, has a remarkable rocky appearance, and is frequented by stonecutters, who cut the granite into slabs for building.

The Brothers.—East-northeastward of Red Point, at 1.3 miles, is West Brother, 212 feet, and at 2.3 miles East Brother or Motoe Islet, 193 feet in height.

Reef Islet, 30 feet high, lies ½ mile southward of East Brother.

Saw chau, lying 3 miles northwestward of Red Point, is 198 feet high, and nearly 1 mile long; there is a sharp hillock at its northern end. Tree Islet, 30 feet high, lies about 1,400 yards 287° from the northern part of Saw chau, and White Rock, 7 feet high, lies about 800 yards 309°, from Tree Islet.

Tong ku, about 1 mile northward of Saw chau, is 267 feet high, and rocky in appearance.

The coast of the mainland westward of Kap sing mun, is high, and also steep-to as far as Brothers Point, at about 2 miles westward of Ma wan, southern side of the narrows; thence to Pillar Point, 4.5 miles further west, there are some creeks and Castle Peak Bay, which is shallow. A 3-fathom patch lies 101°, 1.5 miles from Pillar Point. From Pillar Point to a point 1.8 miles westward, the shore is fairly

steep at a distance of 400 yards; thence to Black Point, the north-western point of Chung saw wan, or Castle Peak promontory, shallow water extends over ½ mile off the land.

Tong ku Harbor or Urmston Road (Lat. 22° 22′ N., Long. 113° 54′ E.), between Tong ku and Saw chau on the west, and the coast of Chung saw wan on the east, is a safe and tolerably sheltered anchorage. Steamers bound to Canton anchor here and off Castle Peak Bay eastward of it at night. The best berth is in about 9 fathoms with Tong ku Peak just open southward of Lintin and nearer the mainland than Tong ku, where smooth water has been found during an easterly gale. The tidal streams are strong. Fresh water can be procured in abundance.

Hau hoi wan, or Deep Bay, has its entrance between Black Point and Southwest Point of Nam tau, about 4 miles northward, and it extends northeastward 9 miles; the bay is shallow, with a narrow 3½-fathom channel leading 5 miles into it.

Nam tau, a peninsula 3 miles long, northeast and southwest, 1.8 miles wide, and 1,100 feet high, juts out from the main with which it is connected by lower land. The southwestern coast of Nam tau outside the line of the points is fairly steep-to.

Ma chau, 1.5 miles 280° from the northwestern point of Nam tau, forms two connected islets, the southeastern being 152 feet and the northwestern 220 feet high. On the northwestern side of Ma chau is a settlement, the lights of which form a good mark at night; being close together they are easily distinguished from the numerous lights of the junks. A spit with from 1½ to 2½ fathoms extends a mile southward of the southern end of the islets.

Tai shan, an island 383 feet high, lies northeastward of Ma chau, from which it is separated by a channel about 800 yards broad. Junk patch, with less than 6 feet, lies about 1,200 yards northward of the east extremity of Tai shan.

Syah Islet, 83 feet high, lies northwestward about 2 miles from Tai shan.

Tai shan Bay is the shallow bight eastward of Tai shan and Syah Islets; in it are Ma un chau, 103 feet high, and Yau i chau, 206 feet, on the mud flat which fills it.

Kong su Bank, about 4 miles in length, with a rock near its northern end, has depths of less than 1 fathom; it is steep-to on the channel side.

Fishing stakes are placed in the channel leading westward of Ma chau, at about 1.5 miles northwestward of Syah Islet, and marked by fixed white lights at night (extremes probably, but see the chart).

Lintin Island (Lat. 22° 25′ 00″ N., Long. 113° 48′ 30″ E.), lying 3 miles west-northwestward from Tong ku, is about 6 miles in circumference, and it rises to a conical peak, 1,140 feet high. A rock

awash at high water lies about 400 yards off the middle of its north-eastern side.

South Sand spit, with depths of 1 to 3 fathoms, extends about 4.3 miles southward of the island, and within a depth of 5 fathoms to 6 miles; it is tolerably steep-to on its western side, with 6 to 10 fathoms near it.

There is anchorage off Lintin at about 1.5 miles from the sandy beach on its southwestern side, in 8 fathoms; from this depth the water shoals quickly toward the island.

Fresh water can be obtained at the eastern end of the beach on the southwestern side of Lintin; and occasionally a few bullocks and some vegetables may be procured from the inhabitants.

Lintin bar and sandbank.—A sandbank extends north-north-westward 12.5 miles from Lintin, and a narrow ridge with a least depth of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms on its northern part is named Lintin bar.

Fan si ak Bank is situated on Lintin sandbank, from 2 to 4.5 miles northward of Lintin Island; it is not much shallower than the bank, the least water charted being 1½ fathoms; Fan si ak rock, 61 feet high, and White rock, 40 feet high, westward of the latter, are situated near its northern extremity.

Fan si ak Channel is charted as leading from westward of Ma chau island, westward of the fishing stakes, which block the channel eastward of it, above mentioned, as carrying lights; about 14 feet seems the best water at low tide over the flats, but there is deeperwater close westward of the stakes, 3½ fathoms according to the charts.

Caution.—It has been reported that the fairways north-north-westward of Lintin Island are much changed since the survey was made; extreme caution is therefore necessary.

Tides and tidal streams.—In the entrance to Canton River, it is high water, full and change, at 10h. 0m.; springs rise about 8 feet. From October to March the neaps are irregular, sometimes only one tide in the 24 hours; the rate of the tidal stream is 3 to 4 knots at springs, increase during freshets. Southward of Lintin sandspit the chart states that the tides are irregular with under currents.

Lankit Island (Lat. 22° 41′ N., Long. 113° 39′ E.) lies 19 miles north-northwestward of Lintin Island; the hill on the western part attains a height of 220 feet. At the western end there is a well of fresh water near a small temple close to some trees; this part of the island is covered with earthen vessels containing human bones. Lankit hump, with less than 1 fathom water, extends 1.5 miles south-southeast of the island, continued under the name of Lankit spit, with less than 2 fathoms for a further distance of ¾ mile, according to the chart, but considerable alterations have taken place here, as before mentioned.

Frazer Bank with patches, dry at low water, are on the southern part of a narrow sand ridge, some 10 miles in length, westward of Lankit Island and parallel to Lankit entrance.

Fishing stakes.—There are usually some fishing stakes with boats made fast to them between Lintin and Lankit and in various other places; care must be taken not to run over the boats which generally show lights at night.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Lankit, at 11h. 20m.; springs rise 6½ feet, neaps 5½ feet, according to the Tide Tables.

Sam pan chau, or Boat Islet, 44 feet in height, north-northeast-ward 1.5 miles from Lankit, has a rounded summit, resembling a boat, bottom up. It is encircled by a rocky bank with patches which dry 7 to 8 feet for about ½ mile, and a bank with less than 2 fathoms extends 1¾ miles north-northwest of it, with scarcely better water between it and the flat extending southeastward from Tai kok tau.

Western shore of the estuary, continued from page 422.

Coast.—Between Kung sing mun Harbor and Tai kok tau Island, 22 miles to the northward, lie the entrance to the channels and creeks leading to West River.

Wang mun—Junk Fleet entrance.—Wang mun (Lat. 22° 35′ N., Long. 113° 35′ E.) is approached by Junk Fleet entrance, which lies between Wang mun Bank, dry at low water, fronting the shore on the west and the swashway spit and its extension, 8 miles southward of Wang mun Creek Light, on the east; about 2.5 miles within the extremity of this extension, is Entrance patch, dry at low water. The channel apparently has a low-water depth of about 8 feet on its bar between Ki au Island and Entrance patch, deepening within, but the entrance to Wang mun, northward of Cone and Crag Islands, has a charted depth of only 3 feet.

The entrance to Wang mun is marked by High Cone, 887 feet high, and Cone Island below it, on the southern side of it.

Lights.—On the western edge of Swashway Bank, from a mast over a white hut on a black pile structure, is exhibited, at an elevation of 40 feet above high water, a group occulting white light, visible 10 miles.

On the northern side of the entrance to Wang mun, from a pole, erected on a white hut on screw piles, a fixed red lantern light is exhibited, at a height of 34 feet, visible from 2 to 4 miles.

Wang mun is continued northwestward by Kerr Channel and Sailam Channel, and southwestward by Nemesis Creek, all eventually leading into West River.

Tam chau Channel discharges westward on Wang mun Creek Light on Swashway Bank, into Junk Fleet entrance.

The shore northward of Wang mun Creek Light consists of mud flats fronting rice fields, partly reclaimed land, and extending nearly to the bank westward of Lankit Island; this bank dries 2 feet at low water; on its southern end is Frazer Bank.

The channel between Lankit Island and this bank is known as the Lankit entrance, and it leads southward of Tai kok tau Island to the entrances of Tai kok tau, Barrier, Mount, and other channels, and under other names lead through the delta to West River and also to Canton.

See the general remarks and directions for all these on page 450.

Western shore continued on page 432.

Directions—Canton River Estuary—General remarks.—The following directions are for approaching the entrance to Canton River, which may be considered to commence abreast Lintin Island, in about Lat. 15° 25′ N., which is over 30 miles from the outer islands, the southwestern extremity of which is marked by Gap Rock Lighthouse. Owing to the changes in the channel about that island, vessels should not proceed without a pilot unless well acquainted with the river.

During the southwest monsoon the Great West Channel seems the most convenient approach for sailing vessels, and during the northeast monsoon the Lema, and its continuation, the Lantau Channel. Some of the passages between the outlying islands are also available, as below remarked. The directions mostly apply to sailing vessels, but the notes on the tidal streams are useful for all vessels. There seems no difficulty in entering in steamers during daylight.

Making the land—Aspect—Tidal streams.—The channels among the islands in the approach to Chu kiang estuary being mostly navigable the mariner need not hesitate to go through the nearest convenient channel without a pilot if the weather is not thick, avoiding such spots as are marked not recommended on the charts. The streams must be attended to as they set in varying directions among the islands lying southeastward according to the prevailing winds; a strong easterly wind generally producing a westerly current which the ebb tidal stream reduces in strength.

A pilot, if one be obtained, may be useful to run the vessel into a place of shelter in case of bad weather; Macao Road should not then be used, but the vessel should proceed up the river well above Lintin, or, better still, to Urmston Road on the eastern shore, southeastward of Lintin.

If making the land in thick weather it may be noted that the Kaipong and Lema Islands, excepting Tan kam, which is long and of an undulating form, are detached, high and uneven, with depths of 20 fathoms fairly close to, whereas the islands between Great Ladrone and St. John to the westward are large and of regular appearance, resembling a coast more than islands, with depths of only 10 and 11 fathoms at a considerable distance outside them.

The freshets out of Chu kiang, through Great West Channel, set almost constantly from the southern end of Wung kum, along the coasts of the islands to the westward, at the rate of 1 to 2 knots an hour, particularly with strong easterly winds, and although at times there seems to be a surface stream setting eastward or into the entrance of the river, the freshets underneath continue to run westward, by which sailing vessels are sometimes rendered unmanageable, even in fresh winds. Many vessels from this cause, after getting near Wung kum, or between it and Potue Island, have drifted nearly to St. John Island while endeavoring with moderate winds to keep eastward.

Steering, therefore, for the Great West Channel, to avoid being drifted westward, never borrow near San chau, or the other islands to the westward, unless it is blowing hard from the southwestward.

The freshets abate at times and then weak tidal streams set east-ward, but as these are not of long duration, keep on the eastern side of the channel toward the Ladrone Islands and Potue, and anchor at once if drifting westward.

In the strength of the southwest monsoon, if the wind be steady between southeast and southwest, make Great Ladrone bearing about 0°, and avoid the islands to the westward; this is especially necessary after the middle of August when easterly winds prevail for several days together, as they do more or less at all seasons. On falling to leeward about St. John in September or October, a tedious passage is generally made to Macao by keeping close along the islands, where the currents or freshets setting westward oblige frequent anchoring, but the best plan, as these freshets prevail only in shoal water near the islands, is to stand well off the land and take advantage of favorable shifts of wind to get eastward.

Between Macao Road and Lintin the streams are frequently irregular, setting in a different direction at the surface to what they do underneath, by which vessels are sometimes rendered unmanageable in light winds. The ebb is stronger and continues longer than the flood; the freshets often run out below when the flood stream is running at the surface.

When working up weigh instantly the stream slackens sufficiently to make any progress, in whatever part of the channel anchored.

Great West Channel, westward of the Ladrone Islands, is generally used when bound to Canton River during the strength of the southwest monsoon, or from about June to August, inclusive. A berth should be given to the islands southward of Macao, as the water is reported to have should 2 fathoms in that neighborhood.

Late in the season when the winds have easting in them, or at any time with northerly or easterly winds, as there is a risk of being driven westward by the freshets setting out of the Great West

Channel, a sailing vessel should proceed by Lema and Lantau Channels. Typhoons generally commence in a moderate gale from the northward, which is a leading wind for these channels, and as the wind commonly veers eastward before it blows hard, a vessel with the first of the gale may get up the river to or above Lintin, where these storms are less violent than outside among the islands. See also the anchorages mentioned with Lema and Lantau Channels, below.

Lema and Lantau Channels.—Lema Channel, between Lema Islands on the south, and Pu toi Group on the north, page 495 is about 6 miles wide; it should, if possible, be always adopted in sailing vessels bound to Hongkong Harbor, or Canton River, in the northeast monsoon, and therefore northeast head of Tamkan Island, the easternmost of the Lema Group, should be made on a westerly bearing.

In thick weather, when the land can not be discerned above 3 or 4 miles, with strong east to southeasterly winds it may be prudent to lay to outside the channel; do not then shoal the water to less than 26 fathoms, as in this depth a ship will drift seaward of all the islands.

Taitam Bay, Tathong Channel, and East Lamma Channel, all described with Hongkong, afford shelter in a typhoon, if an anchorage is gained before night.

From about 2 miles southward of Pu toi, the course to the entrance of Lantau Channel is about 270°, for 20 miles, passing northward of Lingting Island, which channel is preferable for working in, being wider and more direct. Give a wide berth to the rocks northeastward of Lingting and to Needle rocks off its northwestern point.

Lantau Channel, between Soko Islands and the southwestern end of Lantau on the north, and Chi chau, Lafsami and Chung chau on the south, is nearly 2 miles wide and clear, with a general northwesterly direction.

The water is shallow on the northern side within a line joining the southwestern point of Lantau and A chau, of the Soko Group; but the southern side is fairly steep-to westward of Chi chau. When clear of Lantau Channel, or about 2 miles off the western end of Lantau, if bound for Canton River, steer to pass about a mile westward of Lintin Island, but not proceeding above that island without local knowledge. Vessels can lie securely during a typhoon above Lintin bar.

Urmston road is easily reached, and from the position mentioned off Lantau, Castle Peak, 1,920 feet high, bearing 42°, if steered for, will lead in between San chau Island and Chu lu kok Bank in not less than 3½ fathoms at low water. When the 2,800-foot peak on Lantau bears 158°, or if the mountain is clouded over, Red Point,

the northern extremity of Chu lu kok, bearing 146°, haul to the northward, with either object astern, on the bearings given, and proceed on that line, anchoring as requisite. Vessels also can haul eastward from the bearings given, during the southwest monsoon period, finding more sheltered anchorage northward of the Brothers. The tidal streams must be considered, and keeping a good lookout for fishing stakes.

Tidal streams.—During southwesterly winds it is sometimes difficult to turn through Lema Channel from the eastward as there is generally an easterly set, the ebb stream out of the numerous channels setting eastward and the flood northeastward; with strong southwesterly winds the rate of the stream is about 1.5 knots an hour.

The ebb runs through Lantau Channel in strong eddies, particularly in July and August, when its rate is sometimes 4.5 knots an hour at springs. With a light wind at times, it is difficult to manage a sailing vessel here.

The ebb stream eastward of Lintin sets southward, but westward of the island it sets southeastward.

Tai ta mi Channel.—Coming from seaward through Tai ta mi Channel, between Lema and Kaipong Islands, pass well northeastward of Cambridge rock, and steer for Lingting; pass between it and the Sa mun Group, and then through Lantau Channel; or, pass between the Sa mun Group and Ai chau, and thence through Lantau Channel; or, as before mentioned, through any of the channels between the islands that are fairly wide and clear.

Chu kiang or Canton River.—The entrance of the Chu kiang, or Canton River, between the islands of Chuen pi and Tai kok tau (Lat. 22° 45′ N., Long. 113° 38′ E.), or perhaps more strictly between Anung hoi and Tai kok tau, is divided by the Wantong Islands into the two channels, Boca Tigris and Bremer Channel; Boca Tigris, the eastern, is generally used for navigation.

Navigable depths.—A draft of 17 feet 6 inches is the greatest that the pilots can take up to Canton at high water springs and 15 feet 6 inches at high water neaps, and this by Blenheim passage, in which is Tai shek barrier, and above it Parker Point bar; the least depth is 10½ feet (about 18½ feet at high water springs) over the natural barrier westward of Parker Point, or about 4 miles below the city. The Tai shek barrier, 2 miles below, has 12 feet on the northern side and 10 feet on the southern side, at low water springs.

Vessels above 17½ feet draft can not usually go above Hamilton creek, 6 miles below the city.

In the northeast monsoon season there will be about 1 foot more water with the night tide than with the day tide, and in the southwest monsoon the reverse.

In the southwest monsoon period the level of the river is apparently a foot higher than in the opposite season.

The tide gauges, below mentioned, should be looked at before passing them.

Second bar, about 20 miles below Canton, or that nearest the mouth of the river, can be crossed by vessels of 23 feet draft, which can also reach Whampoa, 8 miles below Canton. First bar, the Whampoa approach, is 7 miles above Second bar.

The passage between Whampoa and Canton by Whampoa Channel should not be attempted by vessels drawing over 11 feet.

Gunboats have ascended various arms of the river several miles above Canton.

The China Coaster's Tide Book and Nautical Pocket Manual, published annually, contains reliable information on matters relating to Chinese ports, up to date.

Tide gauges are established at Belcher reach (First bar), Tai shek barrier, Tai mai Light beacon (Parker or Twenty-sixth Point) and Shamien, Canton City; see those places for details.

River, above Lankit Island, continued from page 426.

Boca Tigris—Eastern shore.—Chuen pi and Anung hoi Islands form the eastern side of Chuen pi Channel and Boca Tigris, its continuation northward. The channel has not less than 5\frac{2}{4} fathoms, and abreast Chain rock, the narrowest part, 900 yards wide, it deepens to 16 to 18 fathoms.

Chuen pi Point (Lat. 22° 45′ N., Long. 113° 40′ E.), the southern extremity of Chuen pi Island, is an almost isolated peak situated at 1.8 miles north-northeastward of Sam pan chau and double that distance from Lankit, on about the same bearing. On Tower Hill, the northwestern point of the island, is a signal station, with Chuen pi Fort under it.

Pratt rock, which dries 11 feet (and therefore should be about 3 feet high), lies midway between the two points, and nearly 1 mile offshore, with deep water fairly close to.

A small bay with a sandy beach lies on each side of Chuen pi Point, and fresh water may be obtained in that on the eastern side.

There is anchorage in about 6 fathoms, about 600 yards south-westward of the point.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Chuen pi Point at 0h. 0m.; springs rise 73/4 feet.

Junk Creek.—The entrance to this creek is between Chuen pi Fort and Anung hoi Island, the deepest water, about 1½ fathoms, being near the fort, shallow banks extending from Anung hoi to within 600 yards of the fort. About 4 miles up is the town or city of Taiping. The creek affords shelter for junks above Junk Island and Pritchard rock.

Anung peak, the western extremity of Anung hoi is 576 feet in height; southward of it, on Anung Point, is a fort with flagstaff, with deep water close to the rocky shelf, which extends a short distance off it.

Anung hoi Creek lies close northwestward of the island, Fleming Point, the southern extremity of Senhouse Island, being the worthern point of its entrance; it is available for small junks.

Western shore (continued from page 427).—Bower Point is the southeastern extremity of Tai kok tau, and from it southward toward Sam pan chau, a flat extends about 1.3 miles. East Au chau, a small islet, is situated on this shallow flat; West Au chau is included in the reclaimed land.

Islands in fairway—Wantong Islands.—North and South Wantong are two small islands lying north-northwest and south-southeast 800 yards apart, nearly in mid-channel abreast Anung hoi Point, separating Boca Tigris from Bremer Channel. They are surrounded by a bank which also extends about 1.3 miles southeastward of the southern island, at which distance the depth is only 3 fathoms. The islands are strongly fortified, and with that on Anung hoi abreast are or were known as the Bogue Forts.

Chain rock, above water, lies about 1 mile east-southeast of North Wantong, and is foul to a short distance off its northeastern side.

Light.—From a red brick tower, 36 feet in height, erected on Chain rock, is exhibited, at an elevation of 33 feet above high water, a fixed red light, visible about 10 miles.

Directions—Anchorage.—The Boca Tigris is straight, and no directions are necessary for steamers other than to keep the fairway. Although the passage between it and Anung hoi Point is somewhat narrow for working a large vessel, it is practicable to back and fill through with the tidal stream. Vessels generally keep near the northeastern shore in passing, the tidal streams running strongly in eddies. If detained here by the Chinese authorities, the best position to anchor is about ½ mile northward of North Wantong in 7 to 8 fathoms, giving a berth to the flat which extends 300 yards northward of the island.

Bremer Channel, westward of the Wantong Islands, has a least depth of about 4 fathoms, over the ridge, which connects the Wantong Islands with Tai kok tau, southeastward of the fort of that name. It is probably only used by junks to cheat the tide.

Adventure Bank, with 1 fathom least water, lies on the western side of its northern entrance, within the 5-fathoms curve, extending southeastward of Blenheim Point.

Duff rock, a pinnacle with 3 fathoms water, is situated on a bank about 1,200 yards in length within a depth of 5 fathoms; it lies near

the fairway of the main channel, 332°, distant 1,900 yards from the northern extremity of North Wantong Island. Chain Rock Lighthouse, bearing southward of 152°, leads eastward of it.

Tiger Island, or Tai fu, the northern end of which is a remarkable mass of rounded granite with precipitous sides, is 572 feet high, and its summit appears cleft. From Tiger's Claw, the southeastern extremity of the island, a flat extends 400 yards off.

Above Tiger Island the river banks become more clearly defined, and assume the character of alluvial flats for many miles.

Bate rock, 400 yards northward of the northern side of Tiger Island, has 14 feet water, is steep-to, with 10 fathoms, mud, close eastward. The whole of North Wantong open of Tiger Island leads northeastward of the rock.

Tauling Island, on the eastern side of the fairway, and about 1.3 miles northeastward of Tiger Island, is covered with trees. Tauling flat extends southward and westward from the southern part of the island, and leaves a deep water fairway channel about 800 yards wide between it and Tiger Island. Both Tauling Island and flat are reported to be extending; the depths of 5 fathoms and above, abreast Bate rock, extend over a breadth of 600 yards.

Sailing vessels of large draft turning to windward from Boca Tigris should back and fill between Tiger Island and Tauling flat as the tidal streams are strong.

Sawshi Channel.—Within Tauling Island are Maitland, Bourchier, Dundas, and Staunton Islands, and between the latter and Blake Point Lighthouse, at the southern extremity of Parker Island, is Sawshi Channel, which leads to Tung kun Town and East River.

Calcutta Shoal, situated near the center of Small bar, a bank 1 mile in length, with depths of 2 to 3 fathoms, hard ground, lying in mid-channel, has a depth of 10 feet at low water springs. From the shoal Blake Point Lighthouse bears 88°, distant 1,300 yards. This shoal is said to be extending southwards. To avoid it pass within 600 yards of the eastern shore.

Northward of Calcutta Shoal, up to Second bar, the western shore is foul to the distance of ½ mile, and the 3-fathoms curve is ½ mile off in places; the eastern shore is fairly clear beyond the distance of 400 vards.

Lights—Blake Point.—A white group occulting light, occulted four times every 30 seconds, is exhibited from a white mast erected on Blake Point, south extremity of Parker Island, and entrance to Sawshi Channel. The light is elevated 40 feet, and should be visible 10 miles.

Amherst Point.—A fixed red light, elevated 40 feet, and visible 7 miles, is exhibited from a white mast erected on Amherst Point, western side of Parker Island, and 3 miles above Blake Point.

Second bar (Lat. 22° 58′ N., Long. 113° 33′ E.) is the southern extremity of a collection of shoals, 3 miles in length, lying off and above Second Bar Creek, and stretching right across the channel; the patches on it near the fairway have not less than 10 feet at low water springs, which is but little less than will be met with in the fairways of the barriers higher up; the general depths, avoiding these, are not less than 13 feet. The shallow patches are mentioned below, but the chart affords a much less confused idea of the bar, and it has probably much altered since the survey. It is stated that a vessel of 23 feet draft can cross this bar at high water in charge of a good pilot, who will know the best channel, which seems to vary. No permanent directions can be offered for it. See page 445.

Patches.—The following rocks and shallow patches lie in or near the fairway over the bar:

Patches of 13 and 15 fathoms lie 700 yards off the eastern shore, about 1,200 yards, 208°, of Malcolm Point.

A rock with 1½ fathoms water lies 400 yards westward of Malcolm Point.

Wang lan rock, with 1½ fathoms, lies 500 yards from the eastern bank of the river, at 800 yards northwestward of Malcolm Point; and two patches with 10½ and 11 feet lie within 400 yards west-southwestward of this rock; a patch of 15 fathoms at 1,600 yards southwestward of Wang lan.

Tai tub rock, with 2 fathoms at low water, lies nearly 200 yards north-northeast of Wang lan, Second bar pagoda bearing 291°.

Tai kweichan rock, with 13 fathoms, lies 500 yards from the shore and the same distance northward of Wang lan.

Second Bar Creek, the entrance to which is situated between Pottinger Island and Parker Island, joins East River at Cha ko; the navigation presents no difficulty for small vessels, but a shallow bar exists off an island about 3 miles within the entrance, and there is a rock in midstream at Cha ko bend, the channel lying close to the western bank.

Second bar pagoda, with a fort close northward of it, are conspicuous objects on the western shore when approaching Second bar.

Above Second bar—Dangers.—Sai sheklung rock is 150 feet in length, with a least depth of 9 feet; it lies 300 yards off the eastern bank at 1,600 yards southward of Tseki Creek, Pottinger Island. Fishing stakes are placed on and beyond this rock from November to March yearly.

Tai sheklung rock, about 150 feet in extent, with a least depth of 11 feet, lies near the fairway, 309°, 700 yards from Sai sheklung, and nearly 600 yards from the eastern bank.

The shallow water off the entrance to Escape Creek was (1877) reported to be extending westward.

Escape Creek—East River (Lat. 23° 3′ N., Long. 113° 32′ E.).— Escape Creek is the southern entrance to East River, which extends a considerable distance northeastward, and is of some importance; it lies between Artillery and Davis Islands, and its northern entrance is northward of Davis Island. It is described on page 459, with the inland waterways of the delta of Canton River.

Belcher reach—Light—Tide gauge.—On the western bank of the river in Belcher reach, opposite Davis Island, is a beacon, surmounted by a ball and painted black and white, on which is a tide gauge, showing the height of the tide above low water springs.

A fixed red light, elevated 40 feet, is exhibited from a white mast on a hut, near the tide pole beacon, visible about 4 miles.

Channels to Canton City.—Above Belcher reach the river is divided by Danes Island and the Flat Islands eastward of it, into two main branches, Whampoa Channel and Blenheim Passage; these meet again at Honan Point, just above the city of Canton.

By the southern or Blenheim Passage, and the deeper, the distance to Honan Point from the junction is about 17 miles, and by the northern or Whampoa Channel about 14 miles.

Canton lies on the latter, below Honan Point, and 8 miles below the city is Whampoa.

Whampoa Channel.—The channels between the Flat Islands and that between No. 4 Flat Island and Danes Island are shallow and not used by foreign vessels, the navigable passage into the northern or Whampoa Channel being immediately westward of First Bar Island, between it and No. 1 Flat Island, with not less than 20 feet water at low water springs. Vessels of 23 feet draft can reach Whampoa.

First Bar Island, low and flat, lies about 2 miles above Belcher Reach Light beacon, off the left or northern bank of the river; westward of it are the Flat Islands, four in number (numbered 1 to 4) from the eastward, smaller but similar to First Bar Island, and then the larger Danes Island, the western part of which is hilly ground, marking the position of Whampoa, which is situated on its northern side.

A spit, with less than 3 fathoms, extends 600 yards southeastward of the reclaimed land at the eastern end of No. 1 Flat Island, forming the western side of entrance to Whampoa Channel; the white mast which carries the light is a useful mark for avoiding it.

Light.—From a hut with a mast, painted white, erected on the western side of First Bar Island, about 400 yards from its north-western extremity, is exhibited, at a height of 40 feet, a group occulting white light. It is visible 10 miles, and is a useful mark for entering Whampoa Channel.

First bar, nearly ½ mile above First Bar Island, lies between a shallow sandbank, extending northwestward of First Bar Island, and the spit extending northward from No. 1 Flat Island. There is not a less depth than 20 feet in the fairway.

Brunswick patches, with depths of 11 to 12 feet, lie about 1,350 yards above the western end of First Bar Island, on the northern bank of the river.

There are channels between the patches and southward of them, but the narrow channel northward of the patches, and close along the northern or left bank, is generally used. Northern shore pagoda, in line with the bluff point inside Louisa Island, 295°, leads southward of the patches, but over 15 feet at low water on the edge of the bank off No. 1 Flat Island.

Cambridge Reach.—Above Brunswick patches, Cambridge Reach, which leads to Whampoa, is clear, with about 22 feet least water, excepting a shelf that extends northward from the Flat Islands, with only 18 feet on its edge in midc-hannel, and the barrier below mentioned.

Cambridge barrier—Light beacons.—The barrier in Cambridge Reach extends from the western extremity of No. 3 Flat Island across the river. There are two passages through the barrier, the southern for steamers, the northern for junks, each having a red spar carrying a red light at night on the northern side, and a black spar carrying a green light at night on the southern side. The steamer channel is 440 feet wide, with a depth of 16 feet at low-water springs.

A telegraph cable crosses the river from about midway between Watson and Louisa Islands to a little eastward of Bamboo Town. Its direction is marked by two pole beacons on each bank; those nearest the river have boards, with the words "telegraph cable" on them. Vessels should not anchor here.

Whampoa.—Whampoa is situated on the northern side of Danes Island, southern side of the river. At its eastern extremity is a jetty fronting some buildings formerly known as Chang chau Town, and to foreigners as Bamboo Town.

Farther westward lies the Chinese Government military and naval establishments, with small docks and workshops. Fronting these is English Reach, and above it, extending southwestward, is American Reach. Opposite is Sulphur Point, formed by the confluence of Elliot Passage, of which American Reach is a part, and Junk Creek.

Sanchau Town extends from Sulphur Point along the northern bank of American Reach.

The anchorage is in English and American reaches, in from 4½ to 7 fathoms, soft mud; it is safe, with a moderate tidal stream; there is not, however, room for two large vessels to moor abreast.

It is included between an imaginary line drawn from the north-western point of No. 3 Flat Island to a mound on the eastern end of Louisa Island, for the eastern or lower limit; and a similar line drawn from Gully Point to a creek on the northern side of American reach, and from Sulphur Point in a 67° direction to the northern bank of the main river, for the western or upper limit.

See Regulations with regard to berthing and explosives, under Canton (Shamien) anchorage, page 440; and the China Coasters' Manual for full details.

French River, between Danes Island and French Island, connects American reach with Collinson reach, and is much frequented by steam launches, which at the southern end use the channel between Powder Island and French Island, in which there is a depth of 7 feet at low water. A village is situated on the western side of this channel at  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile north of Calliope Point.

Tides.—At Whampoa the tides are effected by diumal inequality. The following table gives the average time and rise at high water, full and change, for each month:

Mónth.	Time of H. W., F. and C.				Average rise, spring tides.	
	Day (p. m.).		Night (a. m.).		Day.	Night.
	h.	m.	h.		Feet.	Feet.
January		30	1	10	61/2	81
February	2	35	1	40	6 <del>1</del>	81
March		25	1	30	7	8
April	1	45	1	15	73	8
May	1	10	1	10	9	8
June		00	1	10	91	8
${f J}{f u}{f l}{f y}$	1	00	1	10	9	7
August		50	1	50	9	71
September		15	1	55	81	7.1
October	l ī	$\overline{25}$	ī	30	8	8°
November		40	l î	25	8	81
December		ÕÕ	î	20	. 7	9°

There is a tide gauge at Whampoa customhouse showing the depth of water off Sulphur Point (not shown on charts).

Channel—Whampoa to Canton.—The lower part of the city of Canton is 8 miles, and the Shamien or foreign concession 10 miles, above Whampoa.

Rocks in Junk Creek and Whampoa Channel.—A rock which dries lies in the channel of Junk Creek, abreast the northwestern part of Pedder Island, as charted.

Pedder and Green Islands are cultivated; Green Island has small trees, and is more conspicuous than Pedder Island.

A pinnacle rock, with 8 feet water, lies in the channel abreast the southeast extremity of Green Island.

79795—15——29

Pa chau kok rock, about 40 feet square, with a depth of 8 to 9 feet, lies about 150 yards from the right bank of the river off the creek eastward of Pa chau kok or Whampoa small pagoda.

Hankau rock, about 140 feet east and west, with a breadth of 40 feet, has a depth of 8 feet over it, and lies about 250 yards from the right bank of the river, with Pa chau kok or Whampoa small pagoda bearing 128°, 450 yards.

A bank over 600 yards in length, with 5 feet water, lies northward of Hankau rock.

Powan rock, about 50 feet in extent, with a least depth of 8 feet, lies 180 yards from the left bank of the river, nearly 1,400 yards above Symons Island.

A rock, about 20 feet in area, with 7 feet at low water, lies in the fairway at 1.2 miles westward of Powan rock; and there are other patches of same or less depth in the channel, as charted.

Lighted beacon.—A beacon, painted red and exhibiting a red light, has been established to mark the end of the spit extending southeastward from Pedder Island. This beacon is erected in 7 feet at low water spring tides, 434 yards 322° from the eastern side of the Whampoa Dock gate, and marks the northern side of the Whampoa Channel.

The bar westward of the beacon has been scoured to a depth of 8 or 9 feet.

Whampoa barrier—Lights.—Whampoa old barrier, just below New Island, is under water; a new barrier of piles, just above water, with an opening for the passage of vessels, exists just westward of the old barrier. The opening is 400 feet wide, with a least depth of 9 feet at low water spring tides.

A fixed red light is shown from a spar beacon surmounted by a shape on the northern side, and a fixed green light from a spar beacon surmounted by a shape on the southern side of the steamer passage through the barrier, near the southern shore. A fixed red light is also shown from a spar beacon with shape on the western edge of the 3-foot bank, eastward of the barrier red light.

Fiddlers reach is situated between Whampoa Island and Honan Island, its northern entrance being abreast Whampoa barrier, and its southern in American reach. A long narrow, grassy island, from 1 to 2 feet high, has formed in this reach at about 2.3 miles westward of Hall point at the southern end, and also a smaller grassy island, awash at high water, ½ mile south of Hauqua Point at the northern end.

Reef.—A reef, with 5 feet over its outer edge, and less water inshore, projects about 200 yards from the eastern side of the entrance to a creek on the right bank of Whampoa Channel, and about 1,400 yards above the fort on the eastern end of Napier Island.

Dutch Folly Pass—Lights and beacons.—On the sunken rocks southwestward of Dutch Folly are three round beacons. Nos. 1 and 2, marking the northern side of the channel, are of stone, painted red, 26 feet in height from base to vane, and each is surmounted by a lantern from which is exhibited, at 15 feet above high water, a flashing red light, visible 1 mile in clear weather.

No. 3, on the southern side, is of brick and stone, painted black, 22 feet in height from base to vane, and from it is exhibited at 15 feet above high water, a flashing green light, visible 1 mile.

Light buoys.—A red conical buoy, carrying a red light at night, marks the northern side of the channel to Canton anchorage, and a black buoy on which is a green light the southern side, about 350 yards above the beacons.

Shamien rock, with 12 feet water, lies about 300 yards south-westward of the western end of the Shamien bund.

A red and black checkered conical buoy, carrying a fixed red light at night, is moored 367 yards 234° from the church on Shamien.

Fati rock, with 8 feet water, lies about 200 yards southward of Shamien rock, and is marked by a red and black checkered conical buoy, carrying a red light at night, moored 450 yards 210° from the church at Shamien.

Wongsha rock, above Shamien rock, and situated 620 yards 344° from Oliver Point, is marked on its northeastern side by a black conical buoy exhibiting a green light.

Vessels should pass eastward of these buoys.

Fongchuen rock.—A small flat rock, with a least depth of 7 feet at low water spring tides, lies 567 yards 191° from the church tower on Shamien. The northern edge of the rock has been marked by a black conical light buoy exhibiting a fixed green light.

Directions.—If proceeding from off Whampoa city by Junk Creek and Whampoa Channels it is better to take a pilot, although the charts are a sufficient guide for vessels of light draft if it can be ascertained that no important changes have occurred in the channels.

A vessel of a draft of 11 feet is about the limit that could go to Canton by these channels, which are stated to be shoaling.

Caution is required when passing Whampoa barrier if the tidal stream is strong, when hug the right bank at the mouth of Fiddlers reach.

To pass the Salt flats in Front reach, southward of the western part of Napier Island, in a depth of 11 feet, the gauge at Whampoa customhouse must show 12½ feet, and it must be within one hour of high water. Just above the Salt flats a reef, with less than 6 feet water, extends a distance of 150 yards into the river from the right bank, abreast the western extremity of Kuper Island; a vessel

should be in mid-river when passing it. Midway between this reef and the western end of Napier Island is a rock with 6 feet water, lying in the fairway, in the position charted.

Rock.—An uncharted rock, with a least depth of 5 feet over it at low-water springs, exists 13 miles 80° from the inclined pagoda, Front reach.

Above Dutch Folly.—The rocky ground above Dutch Folly, a small island with a fort on it, abreast the center of the city, is buoyed and lighted.

Canton or Shamien anchorage.—Off Shamien, the foreign settlement westward of the city of Canton, at the junction of the southern approach, by Blenheim Passage and Back reach, the river is broad, forming a commodious anchorage for steamers, the deepest water, 18 to 22 feet and good holding ground, being within 150 yards of the river wall of Shamien; sailing vessels are restricted to Whampoa anchorage.

Shamien anchorage is sometimes very crowded, at which times steam vessels can anchor below or southward of Honan spit.

Anchorage limits.—The anchorage has the following boundaries: On the south: An imaginary line drawn 90° and 270°, through the center of Macao Fort, in Back reach, the southern approach.

On the west: A similar line drawn 246° from the 5-storied pagoda, across the river on both sides of Belcher Island.

On the east: A line drawn from a small pier situated about 700 feet eastward from the western extremity of Kuper Island, in a 206° direction to the western side of a creek in Honan Island, Whampoa Channel.

Vessels entering Canton and Whampoa anchorages are boarded by the berthing officer, who will direct them to proper berths, and they must moor in accordance with the orders received from the harbor master.

Steam launches anchor eastward of an imaginary line joining the red buoy on Honan spit to Birds Nest buoy.

Vessels are required to exhibit lights as laid down in the regulations for preventing collisions at sea.

No vessels except men-of-war may use swinging booms; these shall be rigged in from sunset until sunrise.

Explosives—Quarantine.—Vessels with cargoes of explosives shall fly a red flag, and shall anchor below Macao Fort at Canton, or at a distance of not less than a mile outside the lower harbor limit at Whampoa. Those with inflammable goods are berthed in a special anchorage, which at present is between Birds Nest rock and Macao Fort at Canton, and outside the lower harbor limits at Whampoa. A vessel arriving with contagious disease on board must not come nearer than the lower limits of the anchorages, shall fly a yellow flag

at the fore, and not allow anyone to disembark or come on board without permission of the harbor authorities.

Port regulations.—Masters of vessels on arrival should obtain a copy of the Port Regulations from the harbor authorities. These will also be found in the China Coasters' Manual, published annually.

Mooring buoys.—Two mooring buoys for the use of the river gunboats have been placed opposite the British consulate; there is a depth of 7 feet at these buoys.

Eastward of these moorings are those established for the use of the French Navy.

Two mooring buoys for the use of vessels of the United States Navy have been placed at the upper end of Shamien Island, in 19 feet of water.

Between the British and American mooring buoys are established two rows of buoys for the use of coasting steamers.

Tide gauge.—A tide gauge, showing the height of tide above low-water springs, has been established on the river wall close to the landing steps, at about 350 yards eastward of the English church at Shamien.

To find the depth on Honan spit, add 10 feet to the depth shown by this gauge.

Blenheim Passage to Canton—Above First Bar Island.—The Blenheim or southern passage to Canton, through Blenheim, Collinson, and Kellett reaches, etc., southward of Danes and French Islands, which must be used by vessels proceeding to Canton drawing over 11 feet water; vessels of 21 feet draft ascend to the anchorage below Hamilton Creek, just below the Tai shek barrier, below mentioned, and 6 miles below the city, and it is generally considered that vessels drawing 17½ feet can proceed to Canton, but that there will be a sufficient depth for such vessels at high water on Tai shek barrier, Parker Point bar, or Honan Spit, can not be relied on. There are tide gauges near these places showing the height above low water springs.

Collinson barrier.—The iron barrier which separates Blenheim and Collinson reaches extends from No. 3 Flat Island at nearly ½ mile from the eastern end, southward across the river; it has two openings in it, the northern for steamers and the southern for junks. The old wooden barrier has been removed to a depth of 16 feet.

Lights.—The northern opening is 570 feet wide, with a least depth of 16 feet; the light on the northern side is an occulting red light, exhibited from a white hut surmounted by a bell; that on the southern side is a fixed green light.

Fog signal.—During thick or foggy weather a bell on the white hut is sounded.

Sin nanzing rock, small, and with 10 feet at low water, lies nearly in mid-channel in Collinson reach eastward of Rippon Point, about 200 yards from the eastern shore.

Fishing stakes.—A bank, which uncovers, extends for a short distance in a northeasterly direction from Calliope Point, above Collinson reach, on left bank. Fishing stakes are established off it every winter, extending from it to mid-channel.

Light buoy—Junk rock, lying 100 yards off the eastern shore of the river, about 300 yards below Larkins Point, in Kellett reach, is marked by a black conical buoy, on its northwestern side, which shows a fixed green light at night.

High Island, 88 feet high, with shallow water extending ½ mile eastward of it, lies in the middle of the river, the northern channel only being used. Comus rock, under water, at 60 yards from the northern shore and 250 yards eastward of the northern point of High Island, narrows this channel.

Light beacons.—On the northern point of High Island is a white quadrangular openwork beacon, from which is exhibited, at 14 feet above high water, a fixed green light visible 1 mile. A white hut close to the beacon is conspicuous.

A fixed red light is exhibited from a red beacon, surmounted by a red disk, on Comus rock.

Brown reach, above High Island, has a depth of 20 to 26 feet. Above Galbraith Point on the southern shore of Brown reach the river splits around the low flat island Changshan.

Senhouse reach, the channel southward of Changshan, formerly unnavigable, had a depth of 9 feet in 1908.

Maitland Passage, the northern channel, carries fairly deep water as far as the short cut which connects it with Elliot Passage; then the depth decreases to 13 feet (20 to 21 feet at high water springs) on either side a narrow middle ground of 10 feet, as charted.

Fenshuitau lighted beacon.—A red dolphin surmounted by a red disk on the left bank of the Canton River, in Maitland Passage, abreast of the lower end of Changshan Island.

A red light is exhibited from the beacon at night at a height of 26 feet above high water springs. This light should be visible 2 miles in clear weather.

Hamilton Creek.—The river abreast is broad and deep, and affords excellent anchorage, from the next hilly ground on the southern shore above Maitland Passage to Hamilton Creek. Vessels above 17½ feet draft can not usually go above this.

Tide gauge.—A spar beacon similar to the barrier beacons, and showing the depth of water on Tai shek barrier just above, stands on the northern shore of the river nearly opposite Hamilton Creek.

Tai shek barrier is an artificial obstruction of stones and piling constructed to prevent the approach of large vessels to Canton. The channel through it on the northern shore of the river has been widened to 400 feet, and has a depth of 12 feet on its northern side. The shoal southeastward of the barrier has extended down the river to a point abreast Hamilton Creek, and has a least depth at low water spring tides of 4 feet. The tide gauge above mentioned will show the depth in the channel. The depths up to Hamilton Point, about 1,200 yards above the bar, are apparently no better than the barrier channel, but the chart, probably, is not correct. There is said to be another tide gauge above the bar.

Lights—Buoy.—Two spar beacons each 46 feet high, painted red, white, and red, horizontally, and surmounted by a circular shape, mark the northern side of the passage; from each is exhibited a fixed red light, visible 1 mile.

The southern side is marked by a black conical buoy, exhibiting a fixed green light.

Parker Point bar is situated at the crossing from the southern branch of the river into that from Canton, of which Elliot Passage is the continuation eastward. It is shallow in consequence of being out of the scour of the streams of either branch. The chart shows a depth of 9 feet at low water springs in the fairway between the spits extending from Parker and Tai mei Points, but the latest account gives 10½ feet. Vessels of 17½ feet draft have passed over after examining the bar and buoying the channel.

Tai mei Beacon Light.—On a rock in the fairway between Parker Point and Tai mei (49th) Point, is a spar beacon, 27 feet high, painted black, white, and black, horizontally, and surmounted by a rectangular frame. From it is exhibited, at 21 feet above high water, a fixed green light, visible 1 mile.

The channel is between the beacon and Parker Point.

Tide gauge.—A tide gauge is attached to the beacon, showing the depth above low-water springs.

Macao Fort Passage is the reach leading from Parker Point bar to Shamien, Canton. Macao Fort is on an islet in the reach, and Macao Fort rock lies about 200 yards northeastward of it.

Light buoys.—Macao rock, with 8 feet water, is marked by a black conical buoy on its northeastern side, and from it is exhibited a fixed green light.

Haeshin Rock lies about 250 feet eastward of Macao Fort rock, and it is marked by a conical red buoy, with a fixed red light, moored in 10 feet at low water on its southwestern side.

Pak hin hok, a rock with 6 feet water, bearing 174° 300 yards from Butterford and Swire wharf, is marked by a similar light buoy.

Vessels pass between Macao Rock and Haeshin rock buoys.

Birds Nest rocks, abreast Birds Nest Fort, and 130 yards from the eastern shore of the river, are two sunken rocks close together; they are marked by a red conical buoy, which exhibits a fixed red light at night, moored in 13 feet at low water on their western side.

The ebb stream in Macao Fort passage runs 3 to 4 knots an hour at times.

Honan spit extends nearly across Canton Harbor from the western extremity of Honan Island; the chart shows a low water depth of 10 to 11 feet; but the depth at any time will be known by adding 10 feet to that shown on the Shamien gauge, page 446.

Buoy.—A red spar buoy is moored on Honan spit at 400 yards 253° from the customs signal station on Honan Island.

Elliot Passage is an intermediate branch of the river leading to Whampoa from Canton and the direct continuation of Macao Fort passage. It was a fine, deep-water channel, but the bed of the river has silted up for 1 mile on either side of the barrier crossing it from the western end of Bethune Island, and it is uncertain what depth there is now in the barrier channel. The eastern end of Elliot Passage leads into American reach, Whampoa anchorage.

The opening from Elliot passage, between Dent Point of French Island and Melgrund Point of Haddington Island, is said to have a tortuous channel, with 10 feet at low water; there are numerous fishing stakes in its north entrance.

Honan and Acteon Islands, together about 8 miles in length, form the northern side of Elliot Passage throughout; the northeastern side of Honan is separated from Whampoa Island by Fiddlers reach; and the northern side of Honan forms the southern side of Front reach, the channel from Whampoa anchorage to Canton.

General directions—Hongkong to Belcher reach and to Canton by Blenheim Passage.—These general directions are a summary of the detailed descriptions of the dangers and channels given in the preceding pages, and are meant as a rough guide to the route followed from Hongkong, and as a check on the pilot.

There is no information on tugs, other than at Canton. Steam launches are available for towing native craft.

The channels above Lintin Island are said to have much changed, so that the charts can not altogether be depended on.

The river is navigable at night by vessels in charge of a pilot.

Light-draft vessels, on leaving Hongkong Harbor, proceed by Kap sing mun, northward of the Brothers, through Tong ku Harbor or Urmston Road. From about ½ mile off Black Point, steer to pass about ½ mile westward of Ma chau; Syah Islet must not be opened of Ma chau until southwestern point of Nam tau bears about 101°, when it must be opened westward of Ma chau to clear Ma chau spit.



When Ma chau is abeam steer about 326°, passing through Fan si ak Channel, westward of the fishing stakes, to Chuen pi Channel, observing that the eastern end of Tiger Island, well open eastward of Sam pan chau, leads eastward of Lintin bar.

Give a sufficient berth to Pratt rock in Chuen pi Channel, pass through Boca Tigris and eastward of Duff rock, then close Tiger Island to avoid Tauling flat, and having passed eastward of Bate rock steer to pass 600 yards westward of Tauling Island, and about 400 yards off Blake Point Lighthouse, heading for the conspicuous clump of trees on the northern side of the creek beyond Blake Point, and keep this distance off the eastern shore for  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile northward of the point, when increase the distance to 800 yards.

When the trees on Malcolm Point, the northern point of Second Bar Creek, open clear of the land southward of it, steer towards the point, and thence follow Pottinger Island bank at about 300 yards distant, avoiding the rocks and shoal patches on Second bar.

This may lead through what is known as Eastern Channel of Sccond bar, eastward of Wang lan rock of 9 feet, in about 12 feet at low water, but owing to changes in the channel referred to on the page above quoted, it should not be attempted without the assistance of a pilot unless the tide has risen enough to take the vessel over the shallow heads in or near the passage.

(From the latest information, December 31, 1911, H. M. S. Clio crossed the bar at the first hour of the flood (neap tides) in a least depth of 21 feet, on the old leading mark for the western channel, namely, the western extremity of Tiger Island in line with Grassy tongue (abreast Calcutta Shoal) bearing 168° astern. The remark book of that vessel states that the western channel is now very little used, but appears to have washed away considerably.)

When Nimrod Creek, on the western shore, opens, the vessel will be close to Sai Sheklung (which is marked by a row of fishing stakes extending from Pottinger Island), then, giving a berth to Tai sheklung, steer across to pass 300 yards from the Tide-scale beacon (with red light), western side of Belcher reach, thence through Belcher reach and Blenheim reach to Collinson barrier.

Pass through the northern opening in Collinson barrier (at night between the group occulting red light on the northern side and fixed green light on the southern side), and thence southeastward of Sin nanzing rock, and westward of Junk rock buoy.

Round Bremer Point, thence passing between Comus rock and High Island Light beacons into Brown reach.

Continue through Brown reach and Maitland Passage, cross the northern part of Tai shek barrier, which, in other than small craft, should be reached at the time of high water, between the red and white beacons (with red lights) on the northern side, and the black

buoy (with green light) on the southern side; thence through Back reach and across Parker Point bar, between the ledge off the point and Tai mai (black, white, and red) beacon, with green light at night. Thence keep in about midchannel to Macao Fort Islet, and passing between Macao Fort rock and Haeshin rock buoys (green and red lights, respectively, at night). Again keep in midchannel to Shamien anchorage, passing westward of Pak hin hok and Birds Nest rocks buoys (red lights); thence over Honan spit, if proceeding to the Shamien anchorage, eastward of Fati rock and Shamien rock red light buoys. (The last two red light buoys mark the starboard side of the channel when approaching from Whampoa.) Honan spit, according to the chart, has about 11 feet in the fairway, which is about the same as Tai shek barrier, through which the vessel has come.

The depth shown on the Shamien gauge, directly ahead, with 10 feet added, is the depth over Honan spit.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Kuper Island, off Canton, in March at 2h. 40m., in May and June at 1h. 40m., in September and October 2h. 12m.; springs rise about 5½ feet, neaps 4½ feet. From April to October the day tides are sometimes about 2 leet higher than the night tides, but from November to February the day tides are the lower. See also Whampoa tides and China Coasters' Manual.

Pilots for the river can be obtained from the harbor master's office at Canton or from the pilot service.

Typhoon signals are the same as for Hongkong, with the exception of the "urgent signal," which in this case is two cones, points together, indicating wind of typhoon force at Hongkong. They are hoisted at the customs signal station, Honan.

Canton, Chinese Sheng cheng, the "city of perfection," or Kuang chau fu (the name Canton is a corruption by the Portuguese, the earliest European visitors, of the name of the Province Kuangtung, of which it is the capital), a city and seaport, stands on the left bank of the river, about 31 miles above Boca Tigris, about 80 miles from Macao and the same distance from Hongkong. It is surrounded by a wall 5 miles in circumference, the foundation of which is of red sandstone and the upper part brick. The wall varies from 25 to 40 feet in height, and is 20 feet thick, having an esplanade on the inside, and is accessible on three sides of the city.

The city is divided into two unequal parts by a partition wall 6 to 8 feet thick, extending east and west, having four gates, and two water gates at its extremities, through which boats pass east and west into and across the new city. The northern and larger division is called the old city, the western part of which is occupied by the Tartar population; the southern division is the new city. The suburbs are to the west, the houses being built close up to the walls. The country

northward and eastward of the walls is clear. There are 12 outer gates, each defended by a two-story guardhouse, which commands the wall on either side, the principal ones having an outwork in addition.

A ditch encompasses the wall, and is dry around the northern sides, which are rather elevated; nearer the river the ditch and the canals within the new city and western suburb fill with the tide and empty at low water. In the northern corner of the city stands Magazine or City Hill, commanding its interior and the outside surrounding hills on the north; immediately below it is a large square building of red brick, called the five-story pagoda, on the northern and most elevated angle of the wall. Gough Fort is outside the city, on the other side of a ravine about 500 yards northeastward of this building, and there is a rather lower ridge outside the northwestern part of the wall which it commands. The population of the city, according to a Chinese census, 1910, is 654,881, which includes a boat population of 25,973. The river is crowded with vessels and rafts of all kinds. The estimated foreign population, not included in the above figures, is 1,570, of which about 25 per cent are of British nationality.

Shamien, the foreign concession, is on the point westward and above the city southward of the western suburbs and facing Macao Fort passage or Back Reach, as it is sometimes called. Its frontage is of irregular oval form, 2,850 feet in length, its extreme breadth is 950 feet, and it is separated from the mainland by a canal 100 feet wide, faced with masonry, crossed by three stone bridges, and having a stone embankment on the river side. Of the inclosed area four-fifths at the western end has been appropriated to the British Government, and one-fifth at the eastern end to that of France. All the foreign consuls reside in the British concession.

The United States is represented by a consul general and two vice and deputy consuls general.

Besides the consular offices and the residence of the vice consul, there is a church, library, reading rooms, etc., and there are two cometeries within a moderate distance of the concessions. The English church has a tower and cupola.

For the Shamien anchorage, see page 440.

Lights.—The river front is lighted with electric lights, the landing steps being marked by red lights.

Supplies.—The markets of Canton are well supplied with provisions; beef, poultry, fish, fruit, and vegetables at all times, to which are added in winter, mutton and game in plenty.

The water is not suitable for drinking purposes.

Coal.—From 500 to 700 tons of Japanese coal are usually in stock at Canton. The coal is of inferior quality; the two wharves are 75 and 35 feet in length, with depths of 18 and 10 feet, respectively,

alongside. There are coal lighters for coaling from alongside the vessels.

Other supplies for shipping, such as oil, tinned provisions, and water must be obtained at Hongkong, a free port.

Wharves.—The bunding or embanking of the north bank (of the Pearl River) southward of the city, continues to make good progress. Up to March, 1910, about 2 miles had been completed, thus forming a highway upon which the jinricksha traffic has already appeared, from the Hongkong steamer wharves, situated to the eastward of Shamien, to Tai sha tau, the terminus of the Canton-Kowloon Railroad.

In connection with the bund, a new wharf was recently constructed by a British firm; it is a screw pile structure, projecting 72 feet beyond the bund, with a frontage of 156 feet, with a depth of 22 feet alongside at high water springs.

There are other wharves or piers between the Shamien and above Dutch Folly, close to the customhouse.

Wharves have also been constructed on either side of Macao Fort passage (Back Reach) at the upper end, used by the river steamers, alongside which there is a depth of about 8 feet at low water springs.

The China Navigation Co. own wharves at Pak hin hok; vessels approaching these wharves with the object of berthing blow a long and short blast on the whistle, and by day hoist their distinguishing flag at the fore. Signals will be made from the signal staff at the wharves, directing the vessel's movements. See China Coasters' Manual for full details.

Repairs.—Small repairs to hull and machinery can be executed, but there is no dock at Canton.

Hospital.—There is hospital accommodation at Canton for 10 or 12 seamen.

Tugs.—The launches as a rule do not carry cargo, but tow native craft.

Communication.—Between Canton and Hongkong there is a day and night service, carried out by about a dozen high-class steamers.

Railroad.—The Canton-Kowloon Railroad connecting Hongkong Harbor with Canton was opened in 1911.

A railroad connects Canton with Samshui via Fat shan and Sainam. The Canton-Hankau trunk line from Canton, 720 miles in length, strikes the Pe kiang just above Pak kong kiau, about 50 miles above Samshui, whence it runs along the left bank of the Pe kiang through Ying te and Shao chau fu, thence it continues along the left bank of the Ching River to Lo cheng, thence toward the Chiling Pass, and to the boundary of the Province. It is now open to traffic (1912) as far

as Lin kong hou, a station 74 miles from the Canton terminus.

Digitized by Google

A railroad from Canton to Sunning, in three sections, is probably completed; the first was opened in 1909; the second, to Tanshan, is (probably) finished; the third section, from Sunning to Kong mun, was opened in January, 1912.

Telegraph.—Canton is connected by telegraph with the important towns.

Climate.—Usually the temperature ranges from 42° in winter to 96° in summer; the extremity range, which is rarely reached, is from about 35° to 100°; the mean temperature for the year is 73°; for February 58°; and for August 84°. The seasons correspond with the period of the monsoons, the hot season being from May to October, and the cool season from mid-October to the end of April.

Southwesterly winds set in early in April, but are not strong until May, when rain becomes abundant, and the thermometer rises to 85°, and even higher. June is dry and sultry, while in July and August frequent showers occur almost daily, and with the strong monsoon temper the extreme heat, which averages 87° to 89°. September is again sultry, but the nights begin to grow cool, and October, though warm, is usually not unpleasant.

The first steady wind of the northeast monsoon, in the early part of November, sending down the temperature to about 55°, brings a sensation of bitter cold to Europeans, enfeebled by the preceding heat; but the weather of the ensuing months, in which constant sunshine, a moderately cold but agreeable temperature, and clear skies prevail almost uninterruptedly, is unsurpassable. Ice sometimes forms in January, and the thermometer registered 23° in January, 1893, on the river 28 miles below the city; this is, however, the lowest known.

Fogs are common in February and March.

Diseases.—Great precaution must necessarily be observed, even by long residents, to avoid exposure to the sun and chills, and this, with temperance in diet, will ordinarily secure immunity from sudden disease. Fever and ague and sunstroke are brought on by very slight exposures.

In China, besides dysentery and cholera, milder forms of intestinal diseases are common in summer, and occur probably from the promiscuous use of raw vegetables or from chills caught when lying on deck at night.

There is a peculiar form of intestinal catarrh, popularly known as sprue, which attacks Europeans predisposed to illness; the mucous membrane is affected, diarrhea is often profuse, and only fresh milk diet, and often hospital treatment or removal from the country, can cure the patient.

CHANNELS OR CREEKS CONNECTING CANTON RIVER WITH WEST RIVER
AND EAST RIVER.

General remarks.—Between Macao and Canton, on the western side of the Canton River and estuary, westward to Samshui at the junction of North and West Rivers, is a large tract of alluvial land, the delta of both rivers; it is intersected by a network of streams and canals, which, from the elevation of the land on the Si kiang or West River discharge into the Chu kiang or Canton River, and with the Tung kiang or Sawshi River (East River), which drains a large central portion of Kuangtung Province, and flows into Canton River on its eastern side, causes the great volume of water in its estuary to be so disproportionate to its size. A considerable portion of the delta has been reclaimed by embankments in past times, and the process is still being continued.

The principal channels traversing this delta fall into Canton estuary between Kum sing mun and Second bar; besides these some small upper branches about Fat shan fall into Back Reach, that portion of the river between Canton and the upper part of Blenheim Passage.

The chief of these streams, Tam chau Channel, traverses the entire delta southeastward from Samshui at the junction of the Si kiang or West River with Pe kiang or North River, with branches to all the principal towns and districts in the delta. In the central or Shun tuk district nearly all the channels are connected, and one, which passes southward of Tai lung (locally Shun tuk), joins them to the West River at 2 miles southward of Kum chuk. Besides these there is the narrow Nemesis Channel or Creek, which, entering from the Broadway (estuary of West River) in Lat. 22° 22′ N., runs through Sek ki and joins the Wang mun or first channel northward of Kum sing mun.

Wang mun, Tam chau, and Tai kok tau Channels (the latter said to be closing up) run through level land dotted with many islandlike hills and enter the western side of the estuary through extensive mud banks between Kum sing mun and Tai kok tau. The waters are kept in their channels by artificial embankments, without which almost the whole of the ricefields would be flooded at high water. The rice lands are principally eastward of Tai lung; westward of that town the land, although having the same features (level with islandlike hills), is more elevated, being above high-water level, and cultivated with mulberry plants.

The embankments are wide, but being planted with fruit trees, with here and there the houses of laborers, leave but a paved path, about 6 feet wide, for foot passengers. The rivers and numerous canals are the ordinary mode of transport, as every field is approachable by a canal. The towns are also entered by water, the channels being

TIDES. 451

staked across; in some cases an entrance is left wide enough to admit a large junk, the opening being closed by rude gates, as at Tam chau; in others these barriers consist of rows of stakes, with their heads above water, closely driven across the whole breadth of the river, leaving but a narrow and circuitous channel near one bank, through which the current runs with great strength, and often the stakes are level with low water, forming a considerable danger to navigation. A pilot should be employed.

Canton River Delta.—Tides—During the summer months (May-September) the heights of tide and set of tidal streams are uncertain and variable in the creeks of Canton River Delta, depending upon the levels of West and North Rivers.

From September to May, with the ordinary low level of these rivers, the following rises of tide may be expected:

Sam shui, 1½ to 2½ feet; Kong mun, 3 to 5 feet; Kum chuk, 2 to 4 feet; Kum chuk Creek, 3 to 5 feet; Tai ping Bar, 2 to 3½ feet; and at Brick-kiln Creek, 3½ to 5 feet.

The night tides are at this season always the higher, and in some of the smaller creeks, as in Kum chuk Creek, this is the only tide experienced.

In Saiwan, Tam chau, Tai lung, and Junction Channels the flood stream sets westward and the ebb eastward. In summer, when the day tides are the higher, the water is high nearly all day at springs in some of these channels, owing to the day tide only falling about 2 feet.

Traffic.—Passenger traffic on a large scale is carried on in the channels of the delta by means of junks about 80 feet long, 20 feet broad, and of 2½ feet draft; these are towed by steam launches, of which as many as 250 are in daily use.

The routes usually adopted are as follows:

Canton to Sheklung, on the East River, via Whampao, Junk passage, etc.

Canton to Tung Kwon, southward of East River, via Whampoa, Tai ping, and To kao.

Canton to Heung shan, on the West River, via Chunchune, Ho kao, Yung ki, Sailam (sui), and Kong hau.

Canton to Sun cheong and Kong mun, via Chunchune, Luk lao, Kum chuk, Kong mun, Sun wei, Shan sui hau, Kam shan, and Tam shui hau.

Canton to Shui Hing (at high water), via Moneypenny Creek, Lan shek, Tsze tung, Sui tong, Sainam, Samshui, Ching ki, Kwang li, and How lik.

Canton to Shui Hing (at low water), via Chunchune, Luk lao, Kum chuk, and West River to Samshui, etc.

Caution.—The charts are corrected from information received from time to time, which is rare, and they may not always in slight details be in agreement with this text, but they show the various waterways leading from Canton River through the delta. No vessel, however small, should attempt these channels without a pilot on a first visit.

In the channels are stone groins built out from the banks to reclaim the land, many of which extend nearly halfway across, some being marked at the end by a bamboo pole; those not marked are dangers.

Pilots can generally be obtained, but very few know all the creeks in the delta.

Wang mun and its entrance (the Junk Fleet entrance), with the Wang mun lights, are described with the western shore of Canton River.

Tam chau Channel is the largest stream in the delta and it discharges into Canton River estuary, westward of Swashway Bank, and thence by Junk Fleet, the common entrance to it and to Wang mun entrance.

The Saiwan Channel joins the Tam chau southward of Tsz nai Island, southwest of Saiwan Town, thence it continues northwestward, and under the name of Fat shan Branch it runs to Sainan and finally into West River. At 1.5 miles southward of its junction with the Saiwan two stone walls, each marked by a beacon, extend half-way across the river from its western bank.

Tam chau Channel to Blenheim Passage.—A small creek, narrow and generally full of small craft, leads from the junction of Tam chau Channel with Brickkiln Creek into Chunchune Channel. It turns sharply to the eastward, and at about 400 yards within this turn a stone barrier, just awash at low water, extends from the northern bank to midstream; there is some difficulty in rounding this barrier, as the bend in the creek allows very little room. A rock 1 foot dry at low water, lies close to the northern bank, near the eastern end of the creek. Signboards to go slow are placed at each entrance.

Tidal streams.—Between Tam chau Channel and Blenheim Passage the ebb stream sets to the eastward and the flood to the westward.

Chunchune Channel is comparatively broad and is tidal. Having entered this channel from the creek just described keep in midchannel until abreast of a small tree on the western bank (a light is fixed on this tree at night); then close the eastern bank until the channel begins to curve to the eastward at the mouth of a creek, when cross to the western bank and keep close to it until about ½ mile below the pagoda, which marks Chunchune Creek entrance, the



large mudbank on the eastern side of the channel is then passed; this bank extends four-fifths across the channel, and at half tide is awash, there never being more than 2 feet over it. A sounding pole should be kept going in this creek.

The channel lies near the western bank, and care should be taken to avoid the projecting wooden stakes.

Chunchune Creek is narrow and winding; there is a least depth of 4 feet in its fairway at low water. It runs through flat, cultivated country, and its banks are very low. The entrance from Chunchune Channel is marked by a pagoda on the edge of the southeastern bank. A rock, drying 1 foot at low water, lies at the entrance, and close to the southeastern bank. This creek always has a large amount of traffic on its waters; vessels should stop when passing other craft.

Abreast the first village on the eastern side is a sandbank, and here the opposite shore must be closed as nearly as possible; a curve in the creek makes this difficult. The bank ends before reaching the jetty when a mid-stream course is again taken. From abreast the jetty to some stone steps, ½ mile to the northward, the eastern bank is protected by groins, about 100 yards apart, which are covered about a foot, and project 10 feet. Two rocks, marked by small posts on the bank, are situated close to the eastern shore, one on each side of a sharp turn in the creek, where Fu lu kong Creek branches off to the eastward; these rocks are said to have 3 feet water over them, and are easily avoided by hugging the western bank while making the turn round the point opposite. At about 400 yards past this turn, and just before reaching a village on the western bank, there are two rocks, awash at low water, abreast of each other and close off opposite banks; they are marked by a small post on the banks; a careful midstream course clears them.

Three small creeks, fairly close together, open into Chunchune Creek at about ½ mile beyond the last turn, and a rock, which dries 1 foot at low water, is close to the southeastern bank, and opposite the middle of the three creeks. Near the mouth of this creek, and on the northwestern bank, a stone barrier projects 12 feet, and 30 yards or more beyond the barrier is a rock close to the same bank, which is awash at low water. Further eastward is a rock close to the southeastern bank, which dries 1 foot at low water; three small rocky hillocks in line lead over it; the hillock furthest inland is about 50 feet high, the middle one 20 feet, and that nearest the bank 7 feet.

Hamilton Creek.—There are no dangers in this creek, except two rows of fishing stakes, which present no difficulties. Hamilton Creek leads into Blenheim Passage, at about ½ mile southeastward of Tai shek barrier.

Fulu kong is one of the channels through which Chinese launches towing large flats proceed, from Tam chau Channel to Blenheim

79795—15——30

Passage, when the water does not admit of Chunchune Creek being used; least water charted is about 6 feet, but subject to change.

Wilder Passage, almost blocked up, leads westward of Tai kok tau in the main river; northward of it is Gutzlaff Channel, leading within Gifu and Whitcomb Islands, apparently also nearly blocked up.

Hill Passage, which runs northward and southward parallel to Canton River, westward of Bolton and Wardroper Islands, is navigated by steamers of about 9-feet draft; it enables craft going up or down Canton River to avoid the main traffic, and possibly to cheat the tide.

The banks around have been much reclaimed.

Saiwan Channel.—A barrier consisting of stones and stakes extends nearly across this channel at 3.5 miles westward of Forbes Point; the passage through it is about 70 feet wide, and lies close along its northern shore; care is required in passing through, as the streams are strong with swirls. The barrier is unmarked, and being generally covered is difficult of recognition; a few small trees on the northern bank of the river, abreast the barrier, form a useful mark, and at night a small unwatched white light is exhibited for the use of the junks.

This channel is easily navigated to Saiwan Town, which may be known by its pagodas. Numerous stone groins extend from the banks on both sides of Saiwan Channel.

Saiwan Bank no longer exists, and the existence of the rock awash at about 1.2 miles eastward of Tsz Nai is considered doubtful.

In July, 1909, a depth of 3 fathoms at low water was found off the eastern extremity of Tsz Nai; the rock formerly supposed to lie off the southern point of that island does not exist.

McCleverty and Tai kok chau Channels are reported to be silting up, having depths of only 3 feet at low water in places; the rock supposed to lie off the entrance to the former channel does not exist.

The eastern entrance to the channel north of Tsz Nai is obstructed by rocks, which are covered at low water and extend from the north shore more than half way across the channel.

Light.—The vicinity of these rocks is indicated at night by a small unwatched white light, exhibited for the guidance of junks.

Small steamers from Canton River to West River use this channel and creeks, and its continuation, the Tam chau, etc., northwestward.

Tai lung Channel, in the center of the delta, runs westward from Tam chau Channel at Bullock Point; it is broad for 3 miles, but Tai lung rocks bar the channel at the western point of Brine Island, which is flat. A passage, having 6 to 8 feet at low water, runs close to the bank northward of these rocks, which have about 4 feet on them, and lie abreast the entrance of a small creek with numerous trees growing on its bank, the only ones in sight for some

distance. This passage, which is about 50 yards wide, is used by small steamers drawing as much as 9 feet.

Between these rocks and Brine Island is a passage with about 12 feet water, very narrow and difficult, and made more so by the chow chow water. There is deeper water in the narrow channel southward of Brine Island, but the island must be kept aboard to avoid Tonze rock off the spur of Singletree Hill on the southern shore, and another on the same shore abreast the entrance of a cutting through the island. In this cutting are depths of 3 to 4 fathoms, but it is very narrow at its northern end, where Woodcock rock (dry at low water) lies nearly in mid-channel; pass westward of this rock.

About 2 miles westward of Tai lung rocks, on passing the mouth of the large Shun tuk branch, keep over to the northern shore to avoid Clown rock, on which the depth is only 3 feet at low water, lying rather southward of mid-channel; they are connected with the southern shore about 600 yards above the point.

Towns.—Southward of the mouth of the Shun tuk branch is the large town Yung ki, which is a port of call for passengers, and in front of it on the bank is a small fort. One mile up the latter branch, on the eastern bank, near a small fort, is a landing place, from which a road leads to the walled town of Tai lung or Shun tuk. The inhabitants of this town and district are apparently ill disposed to foreigners.

Yellow reach.—At 3 miles westward of Yung ki, the river trends southward for about 1.8 miles, the channel being very narrow; it then, turning eastward, suddenly emerges into Yellow reach, which is broad, and the connecting link of five channels.

Kerr Channel flows southeastward from the northern end of Yellow reach, leading directly to the sea by Wang mun. About 3 miles below Yellow reach, and 1.3 miles below the entrance of Yung ki junction, the channel splits round a low island, 800 yards northward of which, and stretching half way across the river from the eastern bank, is Hand rock, with 5 feet of water. After passing this, steer for the northern point of the island and pass close westward of it, to clear Mohr rock, with 4 feet water, situated 200 yards westward of the point of the island, and close to the western bank.

Wan tung junction.—At 4.5 miles southeastward of Mohr rock is the southern entrance of Wan tung junction, which connects Kerr Channel with Tam chau Channel. This junction, which is clear, and has not less than 7 feet water, runs up toward a range of hills 378 feet high, under which stands Whampoa town.

Yung ki junction, above mentioned, has only 6 feet at two places, but saves a distance of 3.5 miles in proceeding southeastward from abreast Yellow reach to Tam chau Channel; at about 2

miles before reaching Tam chau Channel it divides into three streams, the northern of which must be taken.

Sailam Channel flows from the southern end of Yellow reach directly into Wang mun by a course 19 miles in length, which is similar to that of Kerr Channel. It has two bars of 6 feet at 1 mile and 4 miles, respectively, from Yellow reach, and which are above and below Sailam town, northward of which this channel passes.

Sailam Channel is used by small steam craft bound from Hong-kong to Samshui; it is shorter, deeper, and safer than Kerr Channel.

Junction Channel joins all these passages with the Si kiang or West River. It is the northern of two, divided by a flat island; the southern, Junction bend, is longer and has less water.

Proceeding westward by this channel, and avoiding Mahning bar, as charted, by keeping to the southern shore, as soon as the western end of Junction bend opens, hug the northern bank to avoid the shoal water extending across the mouth of Junction bend, hauling over to the southern shore in time to clear Forester rock, apparently 3 pinnacles, with 1 fathom or less water, situated about one-third the width of the river from the northern bank. There are strong eddies in the vicinity.

The best guide for the position of these rocks is the commencement of some rocky hills which abut on the north bank of the river, and abreast which it lies.

Opposite Mahning Village, under the western part of these hills, is a low island with long spits from either end, and a rock on its northern side (not charted). The channel lies northward of it close to Mahning Village, which is a port of call for passengers, and continues close along the northern bank for a mile. Mahning bar lies about 1.5 miles westward of Mahning Village; it has a depth of about 7 feet at low water over it, and the river is said to be shallow right across (not charted). From the bar, keep in mid-channel until within a mile of First cliffs, 190 feet high, northern side of its entrance from West River, when haul toward the cliff to avoid the spit of Lo sa tau Point, southern side of the entrance.

Lung kong Creek connects with Junction Channel at 3 miles eastward of First cliffs, whence it trends southward past Kwang mi Village, finally connecting with West River in Lat. 22° 30′ N.; it appears to have a least depth of 3 feet at low river.

Kum chuk Creek—Si kiang, to Canton (Lat. 22° 48′ N., Long. 113° 5′ E.).—Kum chuk Creek has a few sharp turns in it, but its chief obstruction is the ridge of rocks which lies across its mouth, leaving a channel only about 75 yards wide.

The route via Kum chuk, Luk lao, and Brickkiln Creeks, Chunchune Channel and Creek, and Hamilton Creek, into Blenheim Passage from the Si kiang, is navigable for vessels up to 170 feet in

length, with about 26 feet beam, and a draft of 4 feet. This is the shortest route throughout the year, and it is much used by small trading craft. (Sometimes during the summer season vessels can not steam up the Kum chuk Rapids, but come from Canton, via Mahning, Junction Canal, into the Si kiang.) No attempt should be made to stem the rapid until after half flood.

The current in these channels usually runs toward Canton River, but occasionally in winter, when the Si kiang is low, it may run in the opposite direction; this is caused by a high flood tide at springs.

The sounding pole is always most necessary, but especially when hugging a bank in order to escape the full strentgh of the adverse current. The helmsman should be a picked man.

Rapid.—At the mouth of Kum chuk Creek is a rapid formed by the rush of water from the Si kiang. There are three rocks in this rapid, one at its head, close to the northwestern bank, and the others near the southeastern shore. The rate of the current at the mouth of the creek in summer, at times, when the Si kiang is high and it is low water in the delta, is about 10 knots, and to stem it a speed of at least 13 knots is necessary; this is only a bare sufficiency, owing to the rise in the water at the head of the rapid, up which the vessel has to be forced; at times the passage is impossible. The rapid is short, and dangerous only from the rocks in it. The course to be steered is clearly indicated by the lines of broken water, from each side of the opening, meeting and continuing together downstream; this line should be followed whether going up or down the rapid, and it is practically in midstream. The entrance is very narrow.

Kum chuk Creek, from this rapid, to Luk lao Creek presents no serious difficulty; a midstream course is safe. Close the northwestern bank when going against the stream, using the sounding pole.

Luk lao Creek.—The entrance to this creek from Kum chuk Creek is scarcely noticeable until nearly abreast of it; there is a small joss house with a few small trees on the eastern entrance point. The creek is narrow, varying in width from 70 yards to 40 yards, and there are four sharp turns in it. The current runs northward in summer, the velocity being at least 4 knots, and in winter 2 to 3 knots. When proceeding with the current in summer navigation is difficult, as, besides the intricacy of the channel, there are numerous rafts, junks, launches towing passenger junks, and small craft to avoid. All turns should be taken at as slow a speed as possible.

On entering the creek from Brickkiln Creek, the entrance is unnoticeable, and is only indicated by a small joss house and tree on its western bank. Proceeding southward against the current is easy, but slow speed round the turns is necessary.

Brickkiln Creek, leading northward from Kum chuk Creek, is tidal, with a rise of from 4 to 5 feet, except when the upper rivers are in flood; it presents no difficulties, being broad, with few dangers. A rock off Wang li is marked by a buoy, which should be left to the southward; a bank extends off the northern shore at 1.3 miles eastward of this rock, and a row of fishing stakes 2.3 miles eastward of this bank should be left to the southward. The stream usually flows eastward. Keep a midstream course, but in steaming against the stream hug the northern side, passing to midstream at the bank, and having passed the buoy at Wang li, cross to and keep the southern bank, returning to midstream when nearing the village and trees near the entrance of Luk lao Creek.

Tailung Creek, from Wang li Village, connects Brickkiln Creek with the eastern end of Tailung Channel, and with Tam chau Channel; it is clear of rocks, from 80 to 150 yards broad, and, except at the southern part, has a general depth of 5 feet at low river; the western part, as far as the creek leading to Tailung (Shun tuk), is much frequented by steam launches. The barrier in its southeastern portion, near Kerr Point, is very narrow, and has a depth of 2 feet at low river.

Fat shan Branch (the eastern end of which connects with Canton River near Parker Point), Moneypenny Creek, its continuation southwestward to Tam chau Channel; Tam chau Channel and Sainam Reach form the direct channel between Canton and Samshui; it is said to be unnavigable by vessels drawing more than 4 feet. About 2 miles below, or eastward of Samshui, on this branch, stands the flourishing commercial town Sainam.

In Fat shan Branch the best water is reported to the southward of Hyacinth Island, but there is a rock in the fairway there.

Moneypenny Creek makes some fairly sharp turns, but has a depth of not less than 10 feet throughout.

Tam chau Channel, just above the junction with Moneypenny Creek, has a depth of 5 to 6 feet; above this there is better water until near the junction with Fat shan branch (western end), where a bar crosses the channel with a depth of only 18 inches of water on it.

Sainam reach has varying depths, the least being 18 inches, and the worst place being just below Samshui, where a flat extends right across.

In summer these channels can be used without difficulty, but not too late in the year, when any case of grounding might entail the chance of remaining throughout the winter.

Rivers on eastern side of Canton River.—Tung kun River, or Sawshi Channel (Lat. 22° 53′ N., Long. 113° 35′ E.), is entered between Blake Point and Dundas Island; it is about 23 miles long, and joins East River at Sheklung, being connected with Second Bar

Creek by Junction Creek. The river flows through flat country, with paddy fields on either side, and has a general breadth of from 100 to 200 yards. On proceeding up the river it is found to narrow considerably after passing the third large creek on the western side, a position from which Ai kong, a shallow creek, branches to the eastward, rejoining the main stream at Tung kun, and with a southerly branch connecting with Taiping.

Tau kao is a large village on the northern bank at about 8 miles within the river; at the southern end of the island, below this village, there is a bar with a depth of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet at low water.

At Lung wan, 3 miles above Tau kao, the river is narrow, and takes a sharp turn, having stone walls extending from the southern bank.

Tung kun, situated 2 miles above Lung wan, is a large walled town on the southern bank, having a population of about 150,000; there is a post office and a large German mission hospital; daily communication is maintained by steam launches with Canton and Taiping (not on charts).

Sek ki is a large village on the northern bank, about 5.5 miles above Tung kun, and on the opposite bank is Lok Fa pagoda, conspicuously situated on a hill. A wide creek branches to the westward between Tung kun and Sek ki, passing through Chung tong and joining East River at Cha ko.

Between Tung kun and Sheklung the river is wider than below Tung kun, but has only a depth of 2 feet in places, with many sandbanks.

Junction Creek has in it a rocky shoal and sand bank, the channel, with a depth of 4 feet, being situated close to the eastern bank.

East River (Tung kiang).—The principal entrance to this river is through Escape Creek, southward of Davis Island; Junk Passage is a narrow shallow entrance north of that island.

East River is said to be navigable during the summer freshets for a distance of 40 miles above Hwei chau; rapid changes of level are experienced in it.

Escape Creek.—An extensive sand bank fronts the southern coast of Davis Island, to avoid which vessels should enter from well to the southward, keeping on the eastern side of the channel, but crossing to the western side before reaching the first village on the eastern bank; the western side should then be followed until arriving at the junction with Junk Passage, about 5 miles up, where there are some rocky hills faced by cliffs. In 1908 this channel was used by vessels of 8-foot draft at all times of tide.

Junk Passage has a depth of about 2 feet at low water, and is about 30 yards broad, with some sharp turns; it is free from dangers

except a rock, covered at high water, at the eastern end, situated at the foot of some low cliffs on the northern bank.

The paddy fields on both sides cover at high water, rendering the channel difficult of recognition, but it is much frequented by steam launches.

Escape Creek to Sheklung.—East River varies in breadth from 400 to 800 yards, and is shallow, having many islands and sand banks, but with few rocks. The surrounding country is flat and cultivated, with several large villages. From the junction of Escape Creek and Junk Passage, where a bank extends from the northern side, keep on the southern side as far as Lam goa, a small village with numerous brickkilns, immediately above which is a bar, with a depth of 6 feet; the channel here lies between two sand banks, the position of which is recognized by a creek on the northern shore having a tree on either side of its entrance.

From this bar follow the northern side of the river to San Tong, a town of 5,000 persons, passing a large creek on the southern side, and thence to Ti tung, between two islands, one cultivated and the other with a brickkiln on it. Above Ti tung the river divides into three channels, of which the southern is not used; the northern and deepest, with a depth of 4 feet at its western end, is tortuous, having on its northern bank the large village of Seung chin, with a wooden pier.

The middle channel is always used at high water, but is obstructed by a bar, with a depth of 2 feet, to the northward of Flat Island. At this bar the tidal rise is from 3 to 4 feet; above the bar only the ebb stream is experienced, below it the flood stream is met.

Above the bar keep southward of Grass Island, and then gradually cross to Sum Tong, to the eastward of which is a rock, always covered, which should be left on the port hand.

At the junction of the northern and middle channels a bar of 4 feet is crossed in mid-channel, when the southern side is followed to Wong Chong Creek, where Shektan Creek, shallow and not navigable, branches to the northeastward.

Pass southward of the island situated eastward of Wong Chong Creek, and then keep on the northern side, steering for the eastern end of the trees. A shingle bank extends from the northeastern point of the island, from which keep in mid-channel to Sheklung.

Sheklung is situated at the junction of East River, with the Tung kong and Wong ka san Rivers; the Kaulung-Canton Railroad passes through it; bridges are built across East River at the western end of the town, and also across Tung kong River.

Tung kong, on the river of the same name, is situated about 15 miles below Sheklung; it is approached from Canton River through Sawshi Channel.

Between Tung kong and Sheklung the river is shallow, and can only be navigated during the summer freshets.

Sheklung to Hwei chau.—Above Sheklung, East River bends sharply to the southward, and narrows considerably, again expanding on turning to the eastward; above this there are sharp turns, but the channel is much encumbered with sand banks, and in winter is almost dry.

As there are no leading marks, the service of a pilot is necessary. From Sheklung to Tung min the country is flat and cultivated, and above that point there are low hills on both sides.

Pok lo, a walled town with about 15,000 persons, is situated on the northern bank of the river, at 11 miles below Hwei chau.

Hwei chau is situated on the southern bank at about 55 miles above Sheklung, and 80 miles from the entrance to East River from Canton River. It is built in two parts, divided by a stream, over which there is a bridge of boats, and has a population of about 100,000. There is a telegraph and post office, and during the summer communication is maintained with Sheklung by steam launches.

Provisions are scarce, and meat can not be obtained.

The difference in the river level at Hwei chau in summer and winter is said to be 30 feet.

## CHAPTER X.

## HONGKONG AND ADJACENT ISLANDS AND ANCHOR-AGES.

West Lamma Channel—Depths.—West Lamma Channel lies between the islands fronting the eastern coast of Lantau Island and Hongkong Island. Its entrance, between Chung Island and Lamma Island, is about 4 miles wide, with depths of 5 to 7 fathoms; this channel leads to the western entrance of Hongkong Harbor, and to Kap sing mun, at its north end, which pass connects with Canton River.

From Pa pai Island (Tai ku chau) and Chau kung, a bank, with depths of 4½ to 4½ fathoms, stretches nearly across to the northern end of Lamma Island, leaving a channel ½ mile wide between that island and the bank.

Western shore—Lantau Island—South and east coasts.— The west and northern coasts are described on page 422.

Southward of Lantau Peak, there is on the coast a high and rounded point, 537 feet in height, to the eastward of which is situated a broad bay with general depths of 3 to 4 fathoms.

The eastern side of this bay is formed by a rugged peninsula which rises to a jagged summit, 996 feet in height, forming the southeastern point of Lantau.

Villages of a fair size are situated in both the eastern and western corners of the bay.

Rocky Islet, situated 1,600 yards eastward of the western point of the bay, is 95 feet in height.

Mid rocks, 1 mile northeastward of Rocky Islet, are a group of small wedge-shaped rocks which dry 4 feet, and have a depth of 3½ to 4 fathoms close around them.

Coast.—From the southcastern point of Lantau the coast trends to the northward, and is indented with bays of about a mile in depth. The southern of these trends in toward the narrow neck of the peninsula forming the southeastern point; the southern part is shallow, and affords but little shelter.

Silver Mine Bay.—At the northern part of this bay is situated Ngang kong (Silver Mine Bay), which takes its name from a small mine, now disused, situated on a hill at the back of the cultivated ground at the head of the bay. On the northern side of the head of this bay, and a little way up the hill, is a conspicuous tall chimney.

Digitized by Google

At the head of the bay the ground is well cultivated, and three fair-sized villages stand at the back of the fields.

The best landing is on the southern side of the head, where a small stream flows into the bay.

Dangers.—A rock, awash at low water, lies 470 yards from the head of the bay and 270 yards from the northern shore; it has 2 fathoms around it, and should be avoided by small craft anchoring in that vicinity.

A rock, which dries 6 feet, lies 500 yards south-southwestward of the northern entrance point of Silver Mine Bay; it is steep-to, with depths of 3\frac{3}{4} to 4 fathoms around.

The coast northward of Silver Mine Bay trends northward for about 2 miles, and then northeastward for about the same distance to the northeastern point of Lantau, forming in the latter part two bays.

The southern of these is nearly a mile in width, and has two small islets in its entrance, between which and the southern shore is a rock, which dries 6 feet at low water. There is only a depth of about 2 fathoms in this bay, but otherwise it appears free from dangers and available for small craft.

Comber rock lies 500 yards southeastward of the southern point of this bank; it dries 3 feet, and is marked by a staff with cage, placed by H. M. S. Rambler, not to be depended on.

Rock.—A rock, with a depth of 5 feet at low-water springs, lies 300 yards off the coast, at a distance of 1,400 yards 188° from Comber rock.

The northern bay is about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile in depth and 1,350 yards wide; it extends in a north-northwesterly direction, has  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms in its entrance, and shoals gradually to the head.

Islands on western shore—Sha ku chau (Patung Island) lies southward of the peninsula forming the southeastern extremity of Lantau Island, and is separated from it by a channel 1,200 yards wide, with depths of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to 7 fathoms. The island is 1,700 yards long and of varying width, with two peaks, of which the northwestern (609 feet) is the higher, and is surmounted by large bowlders; the southeastern summit is 511 feet high. On the northwestern side of the island, and extending 350 yards from the shore, is a ledge of rocks 7 feet high. Between them and the shore of the island is a channel about 100 yards wide, with depths of 2 to 3 fathoms.

Chung Island, on the western side of entrance to West Lamma Channel is 1.8 miles in length, its northen and southern portions being joined by a narrow neck of sand, less than 200 yards wide, on which a populous and thriving fishing village is situated.

The northern summit is 350 feet high, and the southern 238 feet.

The bay on the western side of the narrow neck appears to offer good shelter, but as it is generally full of junks, there is little room for even a small vessel unless secured beside them.

The northern end of the island is separated from the southeastern point of Lantau by a channel 1,100 yards wide with depths of 3 to 4½ fathoms.

Beacon light.—Near the center of the above channel is a rock which dries 2 feet at low water. An iron staff beacon, with small cage, has been placed on this rock, from which a small fixed red light is shown at night.

Chung rock, which dries 5 feet at low water, lies 600 yards eastward of the eastern point of Chung Island; a head, with 12 fathoms over it, lies 670 yards westward of this rock.

Pa pai (Tai ku chau) lies off the entrance to Silver Mine Bay; it is 1.4 miles long, about 1,350 yards broad, and rises to a height of 598 feet near the center. To the westward of its southern summit (396 feet), and 350 yards from the shore, are three conspicuous pinnacle rocks, the highest 18 feet high.

Chau kung is situated northeastward of Pa pai, and separated from it by a channel 250 yards wide, with rocks which dry on both sides. The island is rather more than ½ mile long, northeastern and southwestern, 670 yards broad, and rises to a height of 354 feet near its northeastern end.

Peang chau, situated about 1 mile northward of Chau kung, rises on its northern part to a height of 149 feet, and on its southern to 321 feet; these two parts are connected by a low sandy neck forming a sandy bight open to the eastward. On this neck is a fair-sized village, with limeworks at its northern end.

Tai pak Island lies close westward of the northern end of Peang chau. It is about 200 yards in extent and 65 feet high. Off its southwestern and southern sides are two conspicuous rocks, 15 feet and 21 feet high, respectively.

Cheang chau ching, 113 feet high, with a cairn on the summit, is about 400 yards long and 300 yards broad, being separated from Peang chau by a channel about \(\frac{3}{4}\)-mile wide.

Kau i chau, the outer island of the group extending eastward from Lantau, is somewhat square in shape, about 600 yards long and broad, attaining a height of 370 feet; it is separated from Cheang chau ching by a channel 1,350 yards broad, having a general depth of 5½ fathoms.

Douglas rock, awash at low water springs, is situated nearly in the middle of the northern part of this channel.

Eastern shore—Lamma Island is separated from the southwestern coast of Hongkong Island by East Lamma Channel, about 1 mile wide. The island, 1,160 feet in height, consists of a succession of steep hills of barren appearance, is of irregular shape, about 4 milcs UNKOK. 465

in length north and south, and nearly cut through by Sokku wan, a deep bay near the center of its eastern side, the low isthmus connecting the two portions being only 600 yards wide. It is cultivated where possible, but the population is scanty and poor.

Luk chau wan, the bay on the northeastern side of Lamma Island, lies between the bluff of Pa chau Hill, 447 feet high, over Pa kok, the northern extremity of the island, and Luk chau or George Island, 215 feet in height, off its eastern point. It affords good anchorage all over it during the southwest monsoon period, in depths of 5 to 6 fathoms, good holding ground; the southern head, within Luk chau, has depths of 4 to 5 fathoms, fairly close to the shore, and is free from danger.

There is a boat channel between Luk chau and the point off which it lies; both sides are rocky, and the fairway should be kept by heavy boats using it.

Sokku wan (Picnic Bay) lies between Luk chau Island and Wong chu kok, the eastern extremity of the island. It affords good anchorage for vessels of moderate size in 6 to 7 fathoms, and its outer part is free from dangers. At 600 yards from its head it narrows to about 600 yards in breadth, with a rocky flat extending nearly 200 yards from the southern side, and to a less distance off the northern side, but there is a depth of 5 and 4 fathoms nearly to its head.

On the southern side of the bay the hills rise steeply to the summit of the island named Pok lu chau or Mount Senhouse.

Unkok, the southeastern point of Lamma Island, is the termination of a rocky hilly promontory, and there is a depth of over 10 fathoms at a distance of 60 yards around it. The point rises suddenly to Unchau, a small round summit, 178 feet high, and conspicuous on northerly and southerly bearings. The promontory rises to a height of 370 feet.

Between Unkok and Wong chu kok, about 1.5 miles apart, is a deep bay, with a shallow cove at its head, fronted by rocks above and below water. It is of no value as an anchorage, as a constant swell sets in, and there is no landing except in the finest weather.

San wan, a narrow bay on the western side of Unkok, extends in a northwesterly direction for over \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile, and there is a sand beach at its head. It is clear of shoals in the middle, but it is not recommended, as the swell is almost continuous, and the landing, even at its head, is bad.

Tai kok, the western point of Sam wan, is high and rocky. The coast, high and rocky, with two small indentations, trends westward from it for 1.3 miles, and then turns northward for over 1 mile to Hamitsui, a rounded sloping point. There are no off-lying dangers.

Hami wan.—The coast from Hamitsui turns northeastward and northward, forming Hami wan, a bay 2 miles in length north and

south, and  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile deep, affording good anchorage for all vessels; it is well sheltered from easterly winds. The northern shore of Hami wan is a steep-sided promontory, rising 387 feet above the sea, locally called Ching lum leng; its western extremity, which is the northern point of the bay, is Wo lo tsui, composed of high rocks with no off-lying dangers, so that it may be safely closed.

Lung shui wan, a smaller bay which may be used by small vessels, lies on the northern side of Ching lum leng. There are several villages and cultivated valleys in this locality.

Otsi pai, a rock which dries 5 feet, lies about 150 yards off the center point of the bay.

Shek lok tsui, the northwestern point of Lamma Island, rises steeply within.

A reef extends 200 yards off the point, with a rock dry 2 feet at low water at its extremity; within it is a rock which dries 7 feet. The southwestern extremity of Lamma open of Wo lo tsui leads westward, and Magazine Island open of the northern extremity of Lamma Island, leads northward of the reef.

The coast from Shek lok tsui trends eastward to Pa kok, the northern extremity of Lamma, and is foul from 100 yards to 200 yards off.

Pa kok, the northern extremity, is prominent, and fairly steep-to. Pa chau Hill lies within it, before mentioned.

Fairway.—Northward of Lamma Island, West Lamma Channel is reduced to a breadth of 1.8 miles between the western end of Hongkong Island and Green Island, which lies off it, on the east, and Kau i chau, on the western side.

Tidal streams.—In the Lamma Channels the stream runs northward while the water is rising at Kap sing mun, and southward while it is falling there. The rate of the streams seldom exceeds 2 knots. The depth in West Lamma Channel being an important matter for vessels of deep draft, the tidal rise there can be determined from the Hongkong tide tables. The datum of the chart is nearly the same as that of the tables.

Directions.—West Lamma Channel is free from dangers in and near its fairway. Chung Rock, which dries 5 feet at about 600 yards eastward of Chung Island on the western side, and the reef which extends about 200 yards off the northwestern extremity of Lamma, should be given a berth. Vessels above 20-feet draft should keep within ½ mile of Lamma, where the depths are not less than 5½ fathoms.

Kap sing mun, or Kap shui mun (Throat Gates) between the eastern end of Lantau and Chung hue, leads from West Lamma Channel, and from the western entrance to Hongkong, to Canton River. It is divided into a broad channel to the eastward and a

narrow one to the westward by Ma wan, on the southern side of which is Kap sing Islet.

The western channel is that almost invariably used by vessels as it is shorter than the eastern, and as the tidal streams run with nearly the same velocity, from 3 to 4\frac{3}{4} knots, on the northern side of Ma wan as in that channel, there is a little to be gained by taking the longer route. It is only necessary to keep in mid-channel.

Bunsansiah Rock lies on the western side of the fairway of the southern entrance at 1,300 yards eastward of the nearest point (84 feet) of Lantau Island. It is a pinnacle awash at low water, with depths of 6 to 8 fathoms at a short distance.

Chung hue Island lies 1.5 miles eastward of the northeastern point of Lantau, the channel which separates them being known as the Kap sing mun (Throat Gates); between the island and the mainland to the eastward is Rambler Channel.

The island is hilly, and rises at its southern and higher end to a height of 1,091 feet, the northern end being 709 feet high; a neck of land, a little over 300 feet in height, divides these two ridges.

There are three small shallow bays on the western side of Chung hue; the entrance points, however, are steep-to, and may be passed at 200 yards distance.

Ma wan.—The east coast of this island is formed of sandy beaches and rocky points, with shoals and foul ground extending off them for a distance of 400 or 600 yards. A shoal, with a least depth of 4½ fathoms, and 8 and 9 fathoms around, lies 500 yards eastward of the southeastern point of the island.

A spit of foul and rocky ground extends eastward for 250 yards from the northeast point of Ma wan; at the outer end of this spit is a cluster of rocks which dry 7 feet at low water. Boats and small craft should not approach the spit too closely when rounding the point on the ebb tide, as the tidal stream sets strongly over it.

The northern coast of Ma wan is more or less steep-to; there is a sandy bay in the eastern part of it, off the western point of which the 3-fathoms curve extends for about 100 yards.

From the northwestern point to the western point of Ma wan is a distance of 800 yards, with an open bay between.

Close southward of the west point is a bight, with a stone pier and the fishing village of Ma wan; from this the coast trends southeastward to the southern point of the island, and is steep-to.

The southern summit of the island is 213 feet high and the northern 165 feet high.

Kap sing Islet, about 300 yards long, 200 yards wide, and 102 feet in height, lies 240 yards southeastward of the southern end of Ma wan, the channel between being shoal and foul.

Western Channel.—The Western Channel of Kap sing mun, between Ma wan and Lantau, is 380 yards wide at its narrowest part, and 280 yards broad between the 5-fathoms curve on either side. Both shores are fairly steep-to, the Ma wan shore being rather more so than the other.

Lights.—On the southern summit of Kap sing Islet, from a white skeleton tower, 28 feet in height, is exhibited, at an elevation of 124 feet above high water, a group flashing white light. It is visible 5 miles. For sector see Light List and Charts.

Fog bell.—There is a fog bell, operated by machinery.

A fixed red light, elevated 50 feet, and visible 6 miles, is exhibited from a white mast standing on the western point of Ma wan, western channel; there is a white hut at the foot of the mast.

Lantau—Coast (continued from page 462).—The coast of Lantau bordering Kap sing mun is indented, and trends in a general north-nortwest direction to a small bay abreast the fishing village on Ma wan, whence it trends more to the westward to the northern point of the island. From this point the coast turns to the southwestward, forming a shallow bay, which is divided into two parts by a narrow point. At 1,350 yards from this narrow point is situated a shallow bay \(\frac{3}{4}\) mile in extent. The western entrance point of this bay is a double point, off the eastern side of which is a small grassy island, 84 feet in height, connected with the point at low water.

Tides.—The times of high and low water in Kap sing mun and Rambler Channel vary considerably when compared with the times of high and low water at Hongkong dockyard, but the mean results are as follows:

At Cap Island, off the northeastern point of Chung hue, the time of high water is 40m. later than at Hongkong dockyard, and at a point on the northwestern coast of Lantau, abreast of East Brother Island, it is 1h. 12m. later than at Hongkong.

In the small bay just southward of the western point of Ma wan, the times of high and low water were found to vary considerably as compared with Cap Island, the difference in two days being from 30m. before to 1h. 5m. after the times at Cap Island.

There is but little difference in the range of tide in Kap sing mun as compared with the range at Hongkong dockyard.

Tidal streams.—The tidal streams in the vicinity of Kap sing mun are strong, and at the sides of the channels cause whirls and eddies sufficient to make a boat or small craft unmanageable.

The ebb stream flows to the eastward, parallel to the land past the Brothers Islands, increasing in velocity as the channel narrows at the north point of Lantau, where it runs with a velocity of over  $3\frac{1}{2}$  knots at springs.

The northern portion of this stream flows between the northern coast of Ma wan and the mainland, attaining a greater velocity, as much as  $4\frac{3}{4}$  knots having been obtained just north of the northeastern point of Ma wan. The stream divides at the northwestern point of Chung hue, one part passing northward of that island and turning southeastward and southward through Rambler Channel, with a velocity at springs of about  $2\frac{1}{4}$  knots; the other part turning southeastward and southward, flowing through the broad channel westward of Chung hue, with a velocity of from  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to  $2\frac{1}{4}$  knots. The latter stream is marked by tide-rips, which move through the channel and are generally found at no great distance from the Chung hue shore. At times, during the ebb, still water and occasionally a counter current to the northward may be found along the east side of Ma wan.

The southern portion of the ebb stream, after passing the north point of Lantau, strikes toward and to the westward of the west point of Ma wan, and is then deflected to the southward through the narrow channel westward of that island. In the bay between the northern and western points of Ma wan, the stream runs in all directions, part to the northward and part recurving to the southward in whirls. Close northwestward of the west point, it sets strongly toward that point, and into the little bay southward of it; further along it sets generally directly through the channel, the greatest velocity recorded being a little over 4 knots.

The flood stream in Rambler Channel is weak, and at times nonexistent. That through the channel between Chung hue and Ma wan is also weak compared with the ebb, running with a velocity of only 1½ knots in the center of the channel, and of 2¾ knots to the northnorthwestward, past the spit off the northeastern point of Ma wan. The main stream of the flood probably runs to the westward until it strikes the eastern coast of Lantau, and is there deflected through the channel between Ma wan and Lantau, where it attains a considerable velocity, as much as 5½ knots having been registered. meets the weaker current flowing to the westward at a line joining the northern point of Lantau and the northwestern point of Ma wan, but is only slightly deflected by it, and flows across in a north-northwest and northwest direction until it strikes the coast of the mainland. Here it turns to the westward and runs along parallel to the shore, the current in the southern part of the channel being but slight.

Rambler channel lies eastward of Chung hue, and connects Hongkong harbor with Canton River, similar to Kap sing mun, but is a longer and more difficult passage. It varies in width from 300 yards at its northern end to 1.9 miles at its southen end, is free from

79795—15——31

danger, but is not recommended except for small craft, as the tidal streams, especially the ebb, set strongly through, and it is much frequented by junks.

Gin Drinkers Bay.—The southeastern entrance point of Rambler Channel lies 1,450 yards northward of the northern point of Wan chu chau (Stonecutters Island), Hongkong Harbor. From this point the coast trends northwestward into Gin Drinkers Bay, which is 1,500 yards wide at the entrance, and extends back about the same distance. At 100 yards from the southern point of this bay, and connected with it by a drying reef, is an islet 92 feet high. Pillar Island, which is 159 feet high and 400 yards in length, lies nearly in the center of the bay; an isolated rock, 4 feet high, the outer side of which is steep-to, lies 100 yards from the southwestern side of Pillar Island.

Gin Drinkers Bay is shallow, drying out for nearly 600 yards at its head, where a small stream flows into it; on the southern side of this stream is a village, above which the ground rises steeply to Golden Hill.

Northward of Gin Drinkers Bay the coast trends northwestward, and then turns to the northeastward into the bay known as Chen wan.

Channel rocks are a group of rocks about 150 yards in extent, lying at the northern end of a patch of shallow and foul ground, extending 400 yards in a northwest and southeast direction, with a width of 200 yards. These rocks are covered at high water, and the highest of them, which dries 7 feet at low water, lies 1,150 yarks 332° from the summit of Pillar Island. The rocks are nearly steep-to on their western side, and may be passed on that side at a distance of 100 yards.

Cap Island lies off the northeast point of Chung hue. It is 550 yards long, 300 yards broad, and 106 feet high. Between it and Chung hue is a shallow junk harbor, known as Mun tsai tong, which in bad weather is crowded with junks. About 600 yards southward of this is Changi Bay, which is also used as a shelter. Off its entrance is a group of rocks, which dry 7 feet, with shoal water around. For other dangers, see the chart.

Chen wan.—Northward of Rambler Channel is Chen wan, a bay about ½ mile wide, the head of the inlet extending eastward of the Brothers, in Canton River; there is a lot of sand, dry at low water, off Chen wan Village, with rocks and shallow heads in places extending out to the 5-fathom curve.

There is good anchorage in this bay in 6 to 8 fathoms, mud bottom, to the northward of Cap Island, and the southeastern part of the bay is a good anchorage for small craft, in a depth of 2 to 4 fathoms; it is, however, difficult of access, being crowded with junks in bad weather or on the first approach of a typhoon.



In this latter anchorage there is very little tidal stream, but in the center of the bay the ebb runs to the eastward and southeastward with a velocity of 2½ knots a springs; the floodstream, however, is a good deal weaker, and at times disappears altogether.

Two small streams flow into the bay, one through the village of Chen wan, and the other on the northern side of the bay. On the latter stream are several mills for pounding camphor-wood chips into powder for the manufacture of joss sticks. In the northeastern corner of the bay is a fairly large samshu factory.

Tam o shan.—The land to the northward of Chen wan Village rises steeply, and at 2.3 miles in that direction is Tam o shan, 3,640 feet in height, and the highest point in this vicinity.

Channel into Canton River.—The channel west of Chen wan trends a little to the southward of west, the shores sloping steeply to the water on both sides. It is free from dangers, and the coast of the mainland may be approached within the distance of 200 yards and less in places. On the Chung hue side the coast falls back a little, forming a shallow bay, where shoal water extends 270 yards from the shore in places.

North shore.—Pak sha kiu, a hill 1,553 feet high, and surmounted by a few large bowlders, rises from the northern shore of the channel.

Tingkao Village is situated in a sandy bay on the mainland abreast the northwestern point of Chung hue. The 5-fathom curve here extends from the mainland for about 500 yards, and in the fairway to the southwestward of this is a bank of rather shoaler water, about 400 yards in extent, with a least depth of 3 fathoms. Between this bank and the northwestern point of Chung hue is a passage of about 200 yards in width, with deep water.

The coast from Tingkao Village, just westward of which is a rather conspicuous low hill, 138 feet high, with cultivation on the top, trends to the west-southwestward for ½ mile to a rounded, steep, and rocky point. From this point it trends northwestward to a sandy bay, with flat, cultivated ground at the back, on which are two villages; shoal water extends for about 300 yards off the shore at the head of this bay, at the mouths of two small streams which flow into the center. From this bay the coast again trends west-southwestward for ½ mile to another sandy bay very similar to the former, with shoal water extending for 200 yards offshore.

From this latter bay the coast is bold and steep-to, and trends gradually from west-southwest to west-northwest, for a distance of 1.5 miles, to Brothers Point. The inland hills are barren and forbidding-looking, being covered with large bowlders. Westward of Brothers Point the coast turns sharply northward for 300 yards,

forming a sandy bay, into which flows a small stream and various rivulets. Within the beach sand flats extend nearly ½ mile, within which are cultivated land and villages, the hills falling steeply to the plain on each side. Close westward of this bay is Coxcomb Hill, 171 feet high, which slopes, with three crests, to the western point.

Castle Peak Bay, the next westward, and the southern shore of the channel are described with the eastern shore of Canton River estuary, page —.

Hongkong—General remarks.—Hongkong Island is about 9 miles long, northwest and southeast, 2 to 5.5 miles broad, with an area of about 30 square miles, and is separated from the main by Hongkong Harbor, Lye mun, and Tathong Channel, the latter being the eastern entrance to the harbor. The appearance of the island is somewhat picturesque, but on the whole generally barren and unprepossessing. It consists generally of rocky ranges, the summit of which, Victoria Peak, at the northwestern part of the island, is 1,809 feet above high water. A good military road, about 22 statute miles in length, encircles the island. The city of Victoria extends 4 miles along the northern side of the island. The tower of the Hongkong University,  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile westward of Victoria Peak, is a conspicuous object from the harbor.

A full account of the island and its government will be found in the first chapter.

The island is indented by numerous bays, the most considerable of which are on its southern side, described later on. There is good anchorage throughout the channel between the island and the main, except in Lye mun, where the water is deep, but the best is in Hongkong Harbor.

Hongkong Harbor—Harbor limits.—The harbor, as defined by the port authorities, lies between the northern side of the island and the mainland, and extends between lines drawn from the western end of Green Island to the western side of Wan chu chau or Stonecutters Island, and from the northern point of that island eastward to the harbormaster's station at Sam shui po, on the west, and from North Point, on the island of Hongkong, to the inner end of Kowloon Pier, on the east.

Kowloon Peninsula projects about 2.5 miles southward from the mainland toward Hongkong. Kowloon Bay lies on its eastern and Hongham Bay on its southeastern sides.

Owing to the constant advance in the size, draft, and number of the vessels frequenting the harbor, it is probable that the water space as mentioned will soon be found inadequate for the berthing accommodation required.

As the harbor is only open to the westward, and the effect of westerly gales is mitigated by the large number of outlying islands, it is a very safe anchorage. Vessels can lie secure in the harbor dur-



ing an ordinary typhoon, and in certain anchorages in the vicinity, but unusually heavy typhoons at times cause great disaster to small craft not provided with the best of ground tackle.

Vessels on arrival should obtain a copy of the port regulations from the harbor office.

Searchlights.—Signals when inconvenienced by. See page 37.

Navigable depths.—The harbor is available at all times, both by day and by night. Heavy drafts, or vessels above 24 feet, are recommended to use the eastern entrance, namely, Tathong Channel and Lye mun, which has not less than 6 fathoms at low water in the fairway between the sea and the harbor, avoiding charted patches. The western entrance is barred by a flat extending across it within Green Island, between Wan chu chau (Stonecutters Island) and Hongkong Island, with depths of about 4 fathoms at lowest low water.

The rise of tide is from 6 to 9 feet, but see page 482.

Western entrance—General remarks—Depths.—The western entrance, within Green Island, is about 1.5 miles wide between Wan chu chau (Stonecutters Island) and the island of Hongkong, in which space there is a bar stretching right across with a least depth of 4 fathoms at lowest low water, as above mentioned, deepening in the harbor to 6 and 8 fathoms.

The approach by steam craft is usually by Sulphur Channel, between Green Island and the main, which has a fairway depth of not less than 9 fathoms. Vessels can approach through the Examination anchorage, northward of Kellett Bank, in depths of 7 to 8 fathoms, and small craft can cross the bank in from  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 fathoms northward of its shallowest part,  $2\frac{3}{4}$  to 3 fathoms. In any case the bar above mentioned has to be crossed to enter the harbor.

Vessels of deep draft should use the eastern entrance, as before remarked.

Green Island, about 1 mile in extent, 299 feet high, and wooded, is situated 1 mile northwestward of the northwestern end of Hongkong Island. An islet, 83 feet high, lies about 100 yards eastward of it.

Light.—From a white cylindrical tower, 58 feet in height, on the southwestern end of Green Island, is exhibited at 110 feet above high water, an occulting white light, with red sector. The keeper's dwelling house, adjacent, is white. For sectors, see Charts and Light List.

Various green and red lights are shown from the piers in the harbor, as charted.

Storm signals are hoisted at the lighthouse signal station.

Telephone.—The signal station is connected with the harbor master's office by telephone.

Sulphur Channel, between Hongkong and Green Island, though only 400 yards in width, is free from shoals; the least depth in the channel is 9 fathoms, reduced to about 4 fathoms at ½ mile within it.

Kellett Bank, with depths on it of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  to 4 fathoms, is the western portion of the flat which bars the harbor; it extends northward about 2 miles from Green Island, and protects Hongkong Harbor from the westward. Light drafts cross it in about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms beyond a mile northward of Green Island.

Wan chu chau, or Stonecutters Island, 2.2 miles northeast-ward of Green Island, is nearly a mile long, east and west, ‡ mile wide, and 231 feet high within its western extremity.

Landing on Wan chu chau is prohibited except to persons provided with passes.

Rocks.—The eastern side of Wan chu chau is foul, and a ledge extends 200 yards southeastward from the northeastern point, with rocks from 2 to 27 feet high on it; a rock awash at low water lies westward of its extremity, and there is a rock 17 feet high off the point southwestward of it. A rock which dries 3 feet lies 150 yards southward of White Point, and several small rocks from 3 to 7 feet high lie near the shore northwestward of that point.

Channels—Buoys.—There is a channel between the eastern end of Wan chu chau and Kau lung, barred to the southward by a flat which connects the island to the peninsula, with depths of about 2½ fathoms. The fairway is between the white buoy, northeastward of Pinnacle rock, with 3 fathoms, off the northeastern extremity of the island, and the white buoy southwestward of Trocas rock, with 3 fathoms.

Hankow rock, with 1 fathom water, lies near the edge of the 3-fathoms curve, northeastward of Trocas rock, with the sheers at the Cosmopolitan Dock 132°, distant 1,300 yards; a white buoy marked "Hankow" is on its northern side.

There are a number of buoys off the Cosmopolitan dock, as charted. Stonecutters anchorage, between Kau lung Peninsula and Wan chu chau, is much used during the typhoon season, all the large junks and many steamers taking refuge there on the storm signal being made.

A typhoon refuge harbor is under construction eastward of the anchorage.

Li chi kok.—Abreast the northern side of Wan chu wan is Li chi kok, a small peninsula on the mainland, off the southern end of which land has been reclaimed and a cross-headed pier built, with a depth of about 4 fathoms alongside.

The Standard Oil Co. have a depot there; there is also the Oriental Brewery, and a customhouse here.

The watering pier is situated at the northwestern side of the peninsula.

A torpedo range, with a floating structure close westward of it, has been established at the western point of the bay westward of Li chi kok.

Directions—Western entrance.—From the southward, having approached Gap Rock Lighthouse, a usual track is: From about 2 miles westward of Gap rock steer to pass 1.5 miles southeastward of Hungkong chau, and thence about 2 miles eastward of Lingting Island. Then steer northward into West Lamma Channel, giving a fair berth to the two rocks northeastward of Lingting Island, one of which is 11 feet high and the other dries 5 feet. In West Lamma Channel the deepest water is toward Lamma Island.

The best approach to the harbor for steamers of moderate draft is through Sulphur Channel.

Sailing vessels generally approach Hongkong Harbor from the westward, and either cross Kellett Bank or pass northward of it, according to their draft. Sulphur Channel should not be taken by sailing vessels, except with a fresh fair wind blowing right through, and, as the channel is narrow, it is well to avoid meeting vessels in it.

To proceed northward of Kellett Bank from abreast Green Island, keep Pok lu chau or Mount Senhouse, the summit of Lamma Island, open westward of Green Island, bearing 168°, until within ½ mile of Chinghue Island, then steer northeastward and bring Kweiling or Devils Peak, at the Lye mun, in line with White Point, the southern point of Wan chu chau bearing 102°. Keep this mark on until the eastern end of Green Island is in line with Shiktongtsui, the eastern point of Hongkong, bearing 175°, and then steer southeastward through the Examination Anchorage to the entrance of the Central fairway.

East Lamma Channel is shorter than West Lamma for vessels approaching the western entrance to Hongkong from the southeastward.

At night, or if approaching from the southeastward, see direction for approaching the eastern entrance, pages 411-416.

Eastern entrance.—Islands and dangers in the approach.—The approach to Tathong Channel, the eastern entrance to Hongkong Harbor, is 4.5 miles wide between Wag lan Light on the eastern island of the Pu toi Group and South Ninepin northeastward of it, and is free from dangers, with depths of 15 to 16 fathoms.

The Lema Islands in the offing, with Gap Rock Lighthouse southwestward of them, and also the Ladrone Islands, have been described with the approach to Canton River.

Pu toi Group lies about 3 miles southeastward and southward of Tailong Head, western side of entrance to Tathong Channel, and the southeastern extremity of Hongkong Island.

Pu toi, the southern and largest of the group, is 794 feet in height and of barren appearance, there being only a small quantity of brushwood in the valleys. On its southwestern side is a rocky islet, 167 feet high, and a boat cove. Eastward of its southern point is a rock

18 feet high, and eastward of the small bay on this side is a rock which dries 7 feet on a ridge connected with the shore. Rocks exist near the shore in places as charted. The island is inhabited.

Lo chau, or Beaufort Island, lying northwestward of Pu toi, and separated from it by a channel 670 yards wide, is described on page 498, with the southwestern coast of Hongkong.

Sun kong, nearly a mile eastward of Pu toi, is a small uninhabited island covered with grass and small bushes, and rising near its center to a peak 476 feet high.

Fury rocks, 15 feet high, with rocky and uneven ground around, lie 600 yards northwestward of Sun kong, with depths of 8 fathoms between.

Wag lan, about  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile eastward of Sun kong, and the easternmost of this group, is a barren rocky islet  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile long, north-northeast and south-southwest, about 120 yards wide, and divided into two parts by a small boat passage.

The landing place is at the northwestern part of the southern islet, and three buoys, for the use of vessels taking stores to the lighthouse, are moored off it.

Likin rock, of small extent and with 3 fathoms water, lies 400 yards westward of the western point of Wag lan.

Branch shoal is a small rocky patch of 6 fathoms 350 yards southwestward of the southern point of Wag lan.

Light.—From a round iron tower, 52 feet high, painted lower half white, upper half red, lantern and keepers' dwellings white, situated on the summit of the southern Wag lan Islet, is exhibited at an elevation of 225 feet above high water, a group flashing white light, which should be visible 22 miles where not obscured by land.

Fog signal.—A gun is fired at Wag lan Lighthouse in thick or foggy weather.

Signal station—Telephone.—Communication can be made by the international code of signals with Wag lan Lighthouse, which is connected with the harbor master's office at Hongkong by a submarine telephone cable. Storm signals are shown here.

Tathong Channel, the eastern approach to Hongkong Harbor lies between Hongkong Island and the conspicuous island Lamtong.

Western shore.—Tai long Head, or Cape d'Aguilar, is the western point of the entrance, and close southward of it are the two green islets, close together, named Kau pui chau, the highest of which is 140 feet high. An old light tower on the head is conspicuous.

Signal station.—There is a signal station on Tai long Head.

Bokhara Rocks are two sunken rocks on a triangular bank of sand and rock about 600 yards in extent, under 10 fathoms, surrounded by depths of 13 to 14 fathoms, and situated on the southwestern side of Tathong Channel.

Southwest Rock is a pinnacle with 2½ fathoms water near the southern part of the bank, and lying 70° distant 1,300 yards from the old tower on Tai long Head.

Northeast Rock is a pinnacle with 3½ fathoms water, situated about 350 yards northeastward of Southwest Rock.

Buoy.—A black and white checkered buoy is moored close westward of Southwest Rock.

Clearing marks.—Taitam Head open southward of Kau pui chau leads well southward; western end of Futau chau in line with Talong pai, bearing 357°, leads westward; Lo chau summit in line with eastern extremity of Kau pui chau, 201°, leads northwestward; and Pottinger Peak in line with Talong pai, 318°, leads northeastward of the rocks.

By night the white sector of Hak kok tau light leads eastward of the rocks.

Mfan chau, a flat-topped, steep, cliffy islet, 145 feet high, is situated 1.1 miles northward of Tai long Head. Two patches close to each other, with 3½ and 3½ fathoms water on them, lie 400 yards southwestward of this islet.

Taito chau, a steep, bold promontory, 174 feet high, covered with low scrub, is situated 300 yards northward of Mfan chau. The coast northward to Hak kok tau is rocky, and landing difficult except in a few places in the coves.

Shiak o wan is a rocky and open bight immediately northward of Taito chau. It affords no protection for anchoring, and a heavy swell usually sets into it during the northeast monsoon. The head of the bay is foul.

Talong pai, or Tathong rock, a flat rock 6 feet high, and with deep water at the distance of 100 yards around it, lies in the fairway of this channel at 260°, about 1.3 miles from Tathong Point and 800 yards off Taito chau.

By night, the white sector of Hak kok tau light leads eastward of the rock.

Hak kok tau, or Cape Collinson, lies 1.8 miles northward of Taito chau. A ledge of shallow water extends 50 yards off the cape.

Light.—From a white tower over a dwelling house on Hak kok tau is exhibited, at an elevation of 200 feet above high water, an occulting light. It shows red over the channel (180°), and white inshore of the bearings 338° and 158°. It is visible 16 miles in clear weather.

Storm signals are shown here.

Sai wan Bay lies nearly a mile northwestward of Hak kok tau, with depths of about 4 fathoms, mud bottom. A rocky ledge extends from the southeastern point of this bay, with a patch of 2½ fathoms beyond it; and a rock with 3 feet water lies 300 yards

northwestward of Kei pi ha, the point northwestward of Hak kok tau and the eastern point of Ma tong bight. Naiying pai, well open eastward of Hak kok tau extremity, leads eastward of the rocks awash, as does also the white sector of Hak kok tau light.

Eastern shore of Tathong Channel.—Lamtong Island, Tamtu, or Tunglung, 3.5 miles in circumference, and 818 feet high, is separated from the mainland by Fo tau mun. Tathong Point, or Lamtong mi, a rocky peninsula 203 feet high, with steep, black cliffs, juts out for about ½ mile on the southern side of the island with which it is connected by a low narrow neck of land.

Naiying pai, a flat rock 31 feet high, lies southward of the western point of Lamtong, and 200 yards offshore, with reefs inside it.

Fo tau mun is 250 yards wide between the rocks which lie off both points to about the distance of 200 yards, with 3 fathoms water in the channel between patches of 2 fathoms; it is only fit for small vessels.

Rock.—On the southern side of the eastern approach is a rock awash, at 600 yards southeastward of the northern extremity of Lamtong; it breaks during the northeast monsoon period.

A very remarkable fissure in the high land on the northeastern part of Hongkong, a little open southward of the low extremity of the promontory southward of Junk Town, leads through the center of the channel.

Tai miu—Anchorage.—There is good anchorage in Tai miu, the bay northward of Lamtong, in about 5½ fathoms, mud bottom, with the southeastern extremity of Jan chau bearing 245°, and the northern extremity of Lamtong 124°.

Jan chau (Slope Island), about 300 yards in length, is situated off the western point of Tai miu, with which it is connected by a shallow ridge; a rock above water lies off its western extremity, beyond which it is steep-to.

Futau chau, or Junk Island, situated about a mile northward of Jan chau, is 320 feet high, grassy, with here and there a few low trees. On its northwestern side is the Chinese customhouse, off which a considerable number of large junks are usually anchored. The island is connected with the mainland on its eastern side by a shallow, rocky ridge, with about 3 feet water over it.

Siak miu is the bight immediately northeastward of Futau chau, in the center of which there is anchorage for small vessels in 4 fathoms water. Larger vessels anchor northward of Futau chau in 4½ to 5 fathoms, mud, where good protection is said to be afforded in a typhoon.

Chung kwang o, an arm of the sea extending for 2.8 miles northward of Futau chau, gradually contracts in width, and divides into two small bays near its head.

The northeastern bay is Ap chai wan, with Kam chuk lan, a considerable village, on its shores. The water shoals gradually from 7 fathoms in the southern part of Chung kwang o to 3 fathoms within 3 mile of its head.

Tidal streams.—In Tathong Channel the stream sets northnorthwest during the rising, and south-southeast during the falling tide, the streams turning at about the times of high and low water. The greatest rate of these streams is 1 knot.

In Chung kwang o the streams are very weak and irregular.

In Fo tau mun the stream sets northwest during the rising and southeast during the falling tide, with a rate of 3 knots at springs, but its force is only felt in the pass itself, and between Lamtong and Jan chau there is but little stream.

Lye mun, the pass leading from Tathong Channel into Hongkong Harbor, between Pak sha wan and Kung am, the northeastern points of Hongkong on the south, and Lye mun Point and Siu chau wan Points on the mainland on the north, is 450 yards wide, with depths of 16 to 24 fathoms in the center. The shores on either side are nearly steep-to beyond a distance of about 50 yards.

Aldrich and Quarry Bays.—Within the southern points is Aldrich Bay, the head of which, Sai ki wan, is thickly packed with junks moored in regular lines; there are small building sheds here. Farther westward is Quarry Bay, and between is the Taikoo Dockyard & Engineering Co.'s docks, ships, workshops, foundry, and all requisites for repairs to steamships.

North side.—On the northern side, within Lye mun, are the small bays of Chong lui and Yau tong, with Kowloon Bay farther northwestward.

Westward of the police station, at the western extremity of Quarry Bay, shallow water extends about 200 yards off, to and westward of North Point, with rocks in places near the shore, as charted.

The tidal streams set straight through the Lye mun, flood northwestward, ebb southeastward, at the rate of 2 to 3 knots at springs.

Light.—A fixed red light, visible 1 mile, is exhibited from an iron gibbet on a rock close to the beach and near a joss house at about the center of the northern shore of Lye mun, at 400 yards westward of Lye mun Point.

Dangers in Hongkong Harbor—Rocks.—Pinnacle rock, with a least depth of 9 feet at low water, lies 314° distant 730 yards from Siu chau wan, the northwestern point of the western entrance to Lye mun.

Light beacon.—A white concrete pillar surmounted with a staff and red globe is erected on the 1½-fathom rock, from which is exhibited a fixed red light, visible about 1 mile.

Penguin Shoals, detached patches in the fairway of the eastern approach to the harbor within Lye mun, and with their southern end about 400 yards northward of Quarry Point, extend about 700 yards in a north-northwest and opposite direction, with a breadth of 150 yards. The depth on the shoals is 5 fathoms at lowest low water, over sand and shells, with 6 to 7 fathoms around them.

Channel rock, 9 feet high, lies northward of Penguin Shoals, and 342°, 1.1 miles from Quarry Point, the northeastern extremity of the Taikoo Dockyard in Quarry Bay. There are some 5-fathom patches within ½ mile southeastward and southward of it, and a tongue, with depths of 4½ to 5 fathoms, extends about 1,400 yards southwestward from the rock; there are many similar patches between this tongue and Kowloon.

Patches of 3 fathoms, with but little deeper water around, lie between Channel rock and the 3-fathom curve fronting Kowloon Bay.

Kowloon rock, 1 foot high, lies on the western side of Kowloon Bay just without the 3-fathom curve at about 800 yards eastward of the conspicuous bowlder, 72 feet high, and nearly 400 yards offshore, with which it is connected by a mud flat.

Buoy—Rumsey rock, 4 feet high, lies in Hongham Bay, nearly midway between Chinsalchui Point and No. 1 Admiralty Dock. Some sunken rocks lie northwestward of the Rumsey, the northern of which is marked by a white buoy with a black cross.

Light buoy—Cust rocks, a sunken patch about 130 yards southward of Rumsey rock, are marked by a buoy, painted red and white in horizontal bands, and shows a flashing white light.

Belcher Ridge, with a least depth of 28 feet, lies about 250 yards southward of Cust rocks, with depths of 8 to 14 fathoms between.

Leading mark.—The white sector of Chinsalchui Light, leads between Cust rocks and Belcher Ridge.

Rambler Shoal, within a depth of 5 fathoms is 600 yards in extent, with a least depth of 27 feet; it lies about midway between Belcher Ridge and North Point Battery.

Causeway Bay, fronted by a breakwater 9 feet high, lies eastward of Kellett Island; the deepening of it has been completed as a refuge harbor for small craft; see paragraphs on harbors of refuge and merchant vessels.

Pier.—There is a pier about 200 yards in length close northeastward of Causeway Bay eastern entrance, with about 20 feet at low water at its head.

Kellett Island, 38 feet high, with some buildings and a flagstaff, is about 100 yards in extent, and surrounded by sunken rocks; it lies within the 3-fathoms curve off East Point, at about 300 yards northward of the sheers.

Proserpine rocks, on the southern side of the harbor, on the outer limits of the foul ground extending off Morrison Hill, at about 700 yards southwestward from Kellett Island, are marked by three white nun buoys, forming a triangle.

Chinsalchui Point—Light.—From a red brick tower with white lantern, erected on Blackhead Hill, Chinsalchui Point, Kowloon, close northward of the weather signal staff, is exhibited, at an elevation of 141 feet, a group flashing red light, with a white sector, and visible 6 miles. For details and sectors, see Light List.

Fairways—Signal flags.—There are three fairways through the harbor.

The Southern, the western end of which commences off the gas works, is bounded on its southern side by the northern coast of Hongkong Island, and it terminates 400 feet westward of the Canton steamboat wharf, where it connects with the Central fairway. The northern side of this fairway is occupied by junks.

The Central fairway is marked at the western entrance by two mark buoys, painted red and white in horizontal stripes, each showing a small flashing white light. This fairway is defined by two lines of buoys extending in an east and westerly direction. These buoys are occupied by the various steamship companies' vessels calling here, as charted.

The line of bearing forming the southern limit of the Northern fairway is the breakwater in Causeway Bay open of Kellett Island, 113°. Vessels proceeding through the Southern fairway fly a red pendant, through the Central fairway a white pendant, and through the Northern fairway a blue pendant, or International Code flags F, C, D, respectively, at their highest masthead.

Directions—Eastern entrance.—Vessels above 25 feet draft should use Tathong Channel, the eastern entrance, when entering Hongkong Harbor. Approaching from the southward, Gap Rock Lighthouse, on the southwestern extremity of the Lema and Kaipong Islands in the offing, is a good landfall.

On a near approach a course may be shaped on either side of these islands in the daytime; at night pass southward of them, hauling up for the entrance, when Wag lan Light bears westward of 338°.

From the eastward, Wag lan Light, on the southern side of the approach, between the bearings of 236° and 338°, will lead in from seaward until Hak kok tau Light is seen through the entrance.

Tathong Channel and Lye mun are clear and deep, excepting Bokhara rocks and Talong pai, which may be passed on either side, but the main and wider channel is eastward of them. This entrance is used by steamers, and sometimes also by sailing vessels during the northeast monsoon, but not usually, as the winds are generally baffling under the high land.

For clearing marks for Bokhara rocks, see page 476. At night, Hak kok tau Light showing white leads eastward of Bokhara rocks, Talong pai and the rocks northwestward of Kei pi ha.

If entering Tathong Channel in misty weather, which is not recommended, hug Tathong Point, the dark headland of Lamtong, pass it at about 600 yards distance, and steer 293° until the western point of Lamtong is abeam, when alter course to 338°; if it is not desirable to proceed into Hongkong Harbor, haul over toward either shore, out of the fairway, and anchor as convenient, in 9 or 10 fathoms, but this vicinity is of very even depth, and the soundings, except within the line of projecting points, do not decrease, so caution is necessary in approaching the shore.

When through Lye mun, avoid the 9-foot rock northward of the western end of the pass and marked by a light beacon; pass on either side of Penguin Shoals, and give a sufficient berth to the shallow water extending off the island northward and eastward of North Point, thence to the anchorage.

For vessels of very heavy drafts, a good mark for passing between Belcher Ridge and Rambler Shoal is the southeastern extremity of Kingsclere, a conspicuous yellow house on the slope of Victoria Peak, in line with the dockyard electric light station, bearing 235°; the depth is not less than 31 feet on this line.

At Night.—Heavy-draft vessels should use the passage between Cust rocks buoy, with red light, and Belcher Ridge, in the white sector of Chinsalchui Point Light, then steering southwestward for the anchorage. See Extracts from Port Regulations, page 492.

See Signals when inconvenienced by searchlights, page 37.

Tides.—The tides at Hongkong are very complicated, being influenced by a large diurnal inequality or difference in height of high and low waters of each succeeding tide, which inequality varies throughout the lunation, from nothing at about neaps, to its greatest amount at springs, when there is practically only one tide in the day; but the actual minimum range of the smaller tide does not always occur precisely at springs.

The tides are also affected by the winds, which may increase or diminish the range by 1 foot or more.

The highest tide of the day nearly always precedes the lowest tide; that is to say, the sequence of the movements is as follows: Fall from the higher high tide to the lower tide, then rise to the lesser high low tide, then fall to the higher low tide, whence it rises to the higher high-tide level. For a few days, about neaps, the sequence becomes reversed.

When the sun has north declination, the higher tides about springs occur during the day; and when the sun has south declination, during the night, spring tides occurring at about 10 o'clock. High water at full and change is about 9 o'clock

The range of spring tide is at its maximum, 9 feet, shortly after the sun attains its greatest declination, north or south; and the minimum, about 6 feet, at the equinoxes.

The range of one spring tide during a lunation is generally greater than the other, and when this occurs the greater range is always caused by the high water following the inferior transit of the moon, and the low water next succeeding. This is usually at full moon when the sun has south declination, and at new moon when the sun has north declination.

Times at which the greater high tide at Hongkong occurs in the several months of the year:

January 5 p. m. to midnight	.   July 5 a. m. to 1 p. m.
February 3 p. m. to midnight	. August 3 a. m. to noon.
March Noon to 11 p. m.	September Midnight to 10 a. m.
April 9 a. m. to 6 p. m.	October 10 p. m. to 9 a. m.
May 7 a. m. to 5 p. m.	November 6 p. m. to 6 a. m.
June 6 a. m. to 3 p. m.	December 6 p. m. to 3 a. m.

The highest night tides, which occur between October and January, rise about 1 foot higher than the highest day tides, which latter occur from May to September.

Tide pole.—A tide pole is situated at the entrance of the new basin at the royal naval yard.

Tide tables for Hongkong are published in the General Tide Tables of the United States Coast Survey.

Tidal streams.—In the fairway of the channel and harbor between Lye mun and Green Island the stream sets westward with a rising, and eastward with a falling tide, changing in direction at about high and low water. The rate at times reaches 2 knots, and in Lye mun as much as 3 knots with favorable winds and tides. At the Tamar's moorings it is from 1 to 2 knots, and off the dry dock as much as 3 to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  knots has been observed during the westerly stream, and a nasty sea is caused between No. 6 buoy and the wall of the basin at times. During the strength of the stream it must be guarded against when going to a buoy. In the various bights the tidal stream is weak and irregular.

Pilots.—There are no licensed pilots at Hongkong, but most shipping firms have their own pilots.

Pilots for Macao, Canton, and West River can be obtained at Hong-kong.

Anchorages.—By the port regulations vessels are berthed under the superintendence of the harbor master; the harbor limits are mentioned on page 472.

The usual anchorage for merchant vessels is abreast the city; anchorages are reserved for His Majesty's vessels eastward of the city, and on the western side of Kowloon Peninsula.

Foreign men-of-war moor in Kowloon Bay, eastward of the prohibited anchorage, northward of a line drawn 81° from Chinsalchui signal station, and southward and westward of the 5-fathom curve, within which limits there are berths for 14 vessels. The depth is from 3 to 13 fathoms, good holding ground.

During the typhoon months the northern part of the harbor is considered preferable in consequence of the shelter afforded by Kowloon Peninsula northeastward, from which direction the wind blows hardest. Harbors of refuge for small craft, see page 486.

Vessels are prohibited from throwing ashes overboard anywhere within Hak kok tau to the eastward and within a line joining Green Island and Kau chau to the westward. Masters of vessels should obtain copies of the port regulations.

Moorings are laid down off the royal naval yard, Hongkong, and off the royal naval depot, Kowloon, for the use of His Majesty's vessels.

Mooring buoys for merchant vessels are laid in lines running in an east-southeasterly direction.

The limits of the anchorages and positions of the mooring buoys are shown on the charts.

**Examination anchorages.**—There is an examination anchorage in Chung kwang o in the eastern entrance, and also westward of Wan chu chau or Stonecutters Island, in the western entrance.

Caution.—The British Admiralty publishes as No. 1 Notice to Mariners of each year the following caution:

## CAUTION WHEN APPROACHING BRITISH PORTS.

- (1) My lords commissioners of the Admiralty, having taken into consideration the fact that circumstances may arise in which it may be necessary, on account of periodical exercises, maneuvers, or otherwise, to forbid all entrance to certain ports of the Empire, this is to give notice that on approaching the shores of the United Kingdom, or any port of the British Empire, a sharp lookout should be kept for the signals described in the following paragraph, and for the vessels mentioned in paragraph (2), Part II, of this notice, and the distinguishing and other signals made by them. In the event of such signals being displayed, the port should be approached with great caution, as it may be apprehended that obstructions may exist.
- (2) If entrance to a port is prohibited, three red vertical lights by night, or three red vertical balls by day, will be exhibited in some conspicuous position, in or near to its approach, which signals will also be shown by the vessels indicated in paragraph (2), Part II, of this notice.

If these signals are displayed, vessels must either proceed to the "Examination anchorage" and anchor there, or keep the sea.

## EXAMINATION SERVICE.

- (1) Under certain circumstances, it may become necessary to take special measures to examine vessels desiring to enter the ports or localities at home or abroad, referred to in Notice to Mariners No. 1, and republished on January 1 in every succeeding year as long as required.
- (2) In such case, vessels carrying the distinguishing flags or lights mentioned in paragraph (4) will be charged with the duty of examining ships which desire to enter the ports and of allotting positions in which they shall anchor.



- (3) As the institution of the examination service at any port will never be publicly advertised, especial care should be taken in approaching the ports, by day or night, to keep a sharp lookout for any vessel carrying the flags or lights mentioned in paragraph (4), and to be ready to "bring to" at once when hailed by her or warned by the firing of a gun or sound rocket.
- (4) By day the distinguishing flags of the examination steamer will be a special flag (white and red horizontal surrounded by a blue border) and a blue ensign.

Also, three red vertical balls if the port is closed.

By night the steamer will carry: (a) Three red vertical lights if the port is closed; (b) three white vertical lights if the port is open.

The above lights will be carried in addition to the ordinary navigation lights, and will show an unbroken light around the horizon.

- (5) Masters are warned that, before attempting to enter any of these ports when the examination service is in force, they must in their own interests strictly obey all instructions as to entry given to them by the examination steamer. In the absence of any instructions from the examination steamer they must proceed to the "Examination anchorage" and anchor there, or keep the sea.
- (6) In case of fog, masters of vessels are enjoined to use the utmost care, and the examination anchorage itself should be approached with caution.
- (7) The pilots attached to the ports will be acquainted with the regulations to be followed.

Prohibited anchorages—Lights.—The cable ground between the northern point of Hongkong Island and the southeastern point of Kowloon Peninsula is marked as follows:

Two white beacons on the shores of Kowloon and Hongkong Island, and two white masonry obelisks, situated northwestward and southeastward of them, respectively; when the beacons are in line with the obelisks, bearing 333° and 153°, respectively, they indicate the boundaries of the cable ground by imaginary lines 300 yards apart, within which anchorage is probibited.

By day the four beacons forming the front marks may be distinguished by their each carrying a red diamond shape; by night, each displays a red light.

The lights are so screened that the easternmost lights do not show to the eastward nor the westernmost lights to the westward of the prohibited area; when, therefore, the two lights on the same side are visible at the same time, vessels must proceed until one or other of the lights is obscured before anchoring.

The submarine cable between Tai kok tsui and the eastern part of Wan chu chau is marked by a white post with red diamond shape at each end.

No vessel of any description shall anchor within 50 yards on either side of this cable.

Quarantine anchorage.—The quarantine anchorage is within the following boundaries: Western boundary, a line from the western side of Green Island to the western side of Wan chu chau; southern boundary, that part of a line having the naval coal sheds at Kow loon, bearing 101°, lying between the eastern and western boundaries; eastern boundary, a line drawn 180° from a white mark on Wan chu

79795-15-32

chau, or Stonecutters Island, to the southern boundary; northern boundary limit is the depth of 5 fathoms.

"Dangerous goods anchorage," see Port Regulations, page 492. Harbors of refuge.—1. The harbors of refuge in Causeway Bay and elsewhere in the colony are for the purpose of affording shelter to small craft during bad weather, and are not to be used at any other time without the special permission of the harbor master.

- 2. No vessel, as long as any space remains vacant in a harbor of refuge, shall anchor, secure, or lie in such a position as may obstruct the free access of other vessels to such vacant space.
- 3. No vessel shall be prevented from using any recognized pier or landing place within the limits of a harbor of refuge, for the purpose of landing or embarking cargo or passengers, so long as such vessel shall not remain within such limits longer than is absolutely necessary for such purposes.

Merchant vessels arriving in the colony are only permitted to anchor in the following ports: Victoria (within harbor limits), Aberdeen, Sai ki wan (Aldrich Bay), Fo tau mun (Tai mui), Kap sing mun, Chung chau, Tai ho (Lantau), Tai po (Tolo Harbor), Deep Bay, and Sai kung (Port Shelter).

Harbor works.—Reclamation and sea wall extension works are in progress, as charted from latest information, and vessels must not approach the said works within 50 yards. The new ferroconcrete piers at Kowloon City and at the gunpowder depot on Green Island were completed in 1910, as well as the deepening of Causeway Bay.

A typhoon refuge is being constructed southward of the Cosmopolitan dock, by inclosing the bight between it and Yau ma ti; there will be an entrance at either end of a detached breakwater. See H. O. chart 2221.

Wharf lights.—Green or red lights mark the extremities of the principal wharves or piers on both sides of the harbor, as charted.

Royal naval yard is situated close eastward of the city and nearly abreast Kowloon Point on the opposite shore. It has a tidal basin of about 9 acres, with a depth of 33 to 35 feet near the center and not less than 30 feet alongside. Within and on either side of the basin are cranes, workshops, electric power and pumping stations, barracks, storehouses, docks, cambers, boat slips, etc.

Dry dock.—The new Admiralty dock, No. 1, for docking the largest vessels, is situated close westward of the basin.

Lights.—The entrance to the basin is marked by fixed red lights, one on each side.

Traffic regulations.—When the following signals are exhibited from a flagstaff situated near the head of the outer arm of the basin, these regulations are to be observed:

1. When a vessel is about to enter or leave the basin a red flag will be exhibited, and all vessels passing in the vicinity must proceed

northward of the docking buoys and of the line formed by buoys Nos. 6, 6a, and 11.

2. When a vessel is about to enter or leave the dry dock a blue flag will be exhibited, and all vessels must pass northward of the northern line of buoys in the man-of-war anchorage. When submarines are taking in gasoline at the Asiatic Petroleum Co.'s wharf at Tai Kok tsui, about a mile northward of the royal naval depot, a red flag will be hoisted at the flagstaff at the pierhead, also red flags will be placed on the buoys to north and west-northwest of such pier. No ship, launch, or other vessel shall approach this wharf within 250 yards of such when the red flags are hoisted, and all traffic shall pass to the westward of the buoys when flying red flags.

The chimney, 183 feet high, at the electric power station in the Royal Naval Yard, is a conspicuous object.

The torpedo depot is the royal naval depot, charted on the western side of Kowloon Peninsula. Fronting it is a camber dredged to a depth of 10 feet, with red and green lights at the entrance, and northward of it is the coaling camber, formed by a breakwater with a coaling jetty at its outer end, with green light at its extremity. Southward of the depot are the coaling wharves.

The torpedo mine field is periodically laid southward of Wan chu chau, the obstructed area being marked by buoys carrying red flags; the eastern buoy lying about 700 yards 180° from the southeastern point of the island, and the western buoy about 700 yards 270° from the eastern buoy—all vessels must keep southward of these buoys.

Obstructions are also sometimes placed northward of Wan chu chau, in an area bounded on the west by a line from the northern point of the island to the watering pier at Li chi kok, and on the east by a line drawn 22° from the Government pier to the mainland.

A torpedo range has been established at the point westward of Li chi kok.

Signal stations.—There are signal stations on Victoria Peak, Green Island, and Blackhead Hill, Kowloon, near Chinsalchui Lighthouse. The Commercial Code is used.

Time signal.—This signal is made daily, Sundays and Government holidays included, from a mast about 100 feet high northwestward of the signal station on Blackhead Hill, near Chinsalchui Lighthouse, Kowloon Peninsula.

A ball is hoisted halfway up at 0 h. 55 m. p. m., close up at 0 h. 57 m. p. m., and dropped by electricity from Kowloon Observatory at 1 h. 0 m. 0 sec. Hongkong standard time, corresponding to 17 h. Greenwich mean time. Should the signal fail the ball is slowly lowered, and, if possible, rehoisted and dropped at 2 h. 0 m. 0 sec. Hongkong standard mean time. The standard time of 120° E. or 8 hours fast of Greenwich has been adopted at Hongkong.

On the application of a shipmaster the time ball will be dropped at any other specified time.

Position.—The signal station is situated in Lat. 22° 17′ 52″ N., Long. 114° 10′ 26″ E., and the transit instrument at the Observatory, Kowloon Peninsula, is in Lat. 22° 18′ 13″ N., Long. 114° 10′ 25″ E.

Magnetic observations.—The magnetic observatory is a suitable place for magnetic observations, the only place noted as such in this volume.

Measured distances.—A measured distance of 6,055 feet, for trying the speed of steamers, is in the northeastern part of the harbor, on the western side of Kowloon Bay, the leading mark for which is Wanchai gap in line with the summit of Kellett Island, bearing 213°.

The mark for the southwestern limit is the southern bowlder of a barren hill in line with the head of Kowloon dock sheers, bearing 301°, and the mark for the northeastern limit is White patch, at the quarries, in line with Kowloon rock, 298°. There is also a measured distance in East Lamma Channel.

The city of Victoria is situated on the northern side of Hong-kong Island, and occupies nearly the whole of it, between Kellett Island and the western extremity of Hongkong Island. It is fronted by numerous wharves belonging to the several shipping companies; the principal ones are marked by lights.

The United States is represented by a consul general and two vice and deputy consul generals.

Supplies.—Stores and provisions of every kind can be obtained in abundance, and there is a well-regulated market. Excellent water from the waterworks is supplied to the city and shipping; there is a reservoir containing 33,000,000 gallons at Wong nei chung gap.

Works are in progress for supplying Kowloon peninsula with water by gravitation.

Hospital, etc.—There is a good hospital for seamen, a well-conducted sailors' home, and a naval seamen's club. There are also three Government hospitals in the city, besides others. There is an observation station capable of accommodating 1,500 persons in the event of an outbreak of infectious disease in a vessel arriving in the harbor. Infectious diseases are treated in the Kennedy Town hospital.

Coal.—A very large quantity of coal is kept at the naval depot at Kowloon, and also by local firms.

Coaling wharves.—Vessels of 20 feet draft can lie alongside the western side of the jetty forming the torpedo boat camber at Kowloon by placing lighters of 20 feet beam between them and the wall; the length of berthing is 540 feet; 22 feet is the least depth shown on the chart.

At the three piers (North, Middle, and South) southward of the camber there is berthing for six vessels of deep draft, as charted, and of 450 to 600 feet in length. North Pier, destroyed, is to be reconstructed.

Vessels of 20 feet draft, and 400 feet long, can be coaled alongside the sea wall northward of the three above piers, by placing lighters of 25 feet beam between them and the wall.

His Majesty's ships are coaled from lighters. There is a plentiful supply of junks, and some 130 launches suitable for towing.

There is a depth of 28½ feet alongside the coaling pier at Chinsalchui Point.

Vessels can not coal alongside any of the wharves on the Hongkong side of the harbor, but coal can be obtained in lighters from the Wanchai coal godown. Northerly gales and typhoons impede coaling.

Docks.—At the royal naval yard is a new dry dock, No. 1, capable of docking the largest of H. M. vessels, as before mentioned.

The following docks are the property of the Hongkong & Whampoa Dock Co. (Ltd.): Kowloon docks, eastern side of Hongham Bay; Nos. 1, 2, and 3 docks. There are also two patent slips.

On Kowloon, eastward of Wan chu chau or Stonecutters Island, is Cosmopolitan Dock.

In Aberdeen Harbor, or Shek pai wan, southern side of Hongkong Island, is Hope Dock and Lamont Dock. Hope and Lamont Docks are used principally for cleaning and painting ships' bottoms.

At Quarry Bay are the dock and slips of the Taikoo Dockyard & Engineering Co.

Name of dock.	Len	Length.		Depth at H.W.O.S.		Lifting
	On blocks.	Over all.	of entrance.	On sill.	On blocks.	power.
No. 1 Dock (Government)	Feet. 552. 6 (576)	Feet. 568. 6 (592)	Feet. 93. 5	Feet. 39. 2	Feet. 39. 2	Tons.
No. 1	$ \begin{cases} 561 \\ (573) \\ 371 \\ 264 \end{cases} $	563 (575) 371 264	83 74 49	29 19. 7 13. 2	27. 5 17. 2 10. 2	
Cosmopolitan Dock:  As two docks {Inner Outer  As one dock  Patent Slip—	435	210 210 460	61. 5 78 61. 5	20	18. 5	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
No. 1	$\begin{cases} 240 \\ (\text{cradle}) \\ 200 \\ (\text{cradle}) \end{cases}$	} }	$\begin{cases} 39\\ (cradle)\\ 37\\ (cradle) \end{cases}$	Forward	13 21 8 15	} 1,200 } 1,000
Hope Dock	430 333 787	430 340 790	81 64 86. 5	23 16 34. 5	21 13 34. 5	
No. 2	{ 250 (cradle) { 230 (cradle) { 230 (cradle)	l	{	Forward Aft Forward Aft Forward Aft	15. 3 25 15. 5 24 15. 5 24	\begin{cases} 2,700 \\ 2,000 \\ 2,000

Repairs.—The Hongkong & Whampoa Dock Co.'s Kowloon and Cosmopolitan establishments possess every appliance and facility for both the construction and repair of ships and machinery, under the supervision of European foremen. Vessels of 4,000 tons have been built. The machinery and plant at their Aberdeen establishment is not very extensive.

There is a length of 1,000 feet of wharfage in Hongham Bay, with a depth alongside of 5 to 45 feet, and steam shears of 100 and 15 tons; and at the Cosmopolitan Dock 550 feet of wharfage, with depths of 8 to 15 feet alongside, but deepening rapidly off, and there are steam shears of 20 tons.

The Taikoo Dock Co., in Quarry Bay, has a boiler shop, foundry, etc., and all appliances for repairs to machinery, etc. The large crane will lift a weight of 100 tons.

Railroad.—The Kowloon-Canton Railroad was opened in 1911; 21.78 miles are in British territory; it passes along the western shores of Tide cove and Tolo Harbor, Mirs Bay, to Sam chun on the frontier. There are over 9 miles of street railway lines in the city of Victoria.

Communication.—Hongkong is connected by submarine cable with Singapore, via Saigon, and also via Labuan, also with the principal China ports northward. It is also connected with the local lighthouses.

Numerous mail steamers make it a port of call.

Trade.—The principal articles of import are coal, rice, sugar, and flour; the principal exports are tea, kerosene oil, rice, paddy, and general cargo.

The industries of the colony include dock work, launch and boat building, cement manufacture, paper making, sugar refining, brick and tile making, rope making, iron foundries, boiler making, glass manufacture, vermilion manufacture, and opium boiling. A considerable part of the boat population is engaged in deep-sea fishing.

Fire.—The fire brigade of Hongkong possess a powerful floating fire engine for use in the harbor.

Storm signals.—The storm signals at Hongkong are made from a mast in front of the water police station at Kowloon Point, but do not necessarily imply that bad weather is expected at Hongkong. These signals are in addition to those given elsewhere in this volume and to the forecasts referred to as shown from Blackhead Hill.

Day signals.—1. A cone, point upward, indicates a typhoon to the northward of Hongkong.

- 2. A cone, point upward, and drum below indicates a typhoon to the northeastward of Hongkong.
  - 3. A drum indicates a typhoon to the eastward of Hongkong.
- 4. A cone, point downward, and a drum below indicates a typhoon to the southeastward of Hongkong.

- 5. A cone, point downward, indicates a typhoon to the southward of Hongkong.
- 6. A cone, point downward, and a ball below indicates a typhoon to the southwestward of Hongkong.
  - 7. A ball indicates a typhoon to the westward of Hongkong.
- 8. A cone, point upward, and ball below indicates a typhoon to the northwestward of Hongkong.

Red signals indicate that the center is believed to be more than 300 miles away from the colony.

Black signals indicate that the center is believed to be less than 300 miles away from the colony.

The above signals will, as heretofore, be hoisted only when typhoons exist in such position or are moving in such directions that information regarding them is considered to be of importance to the colony or to shipping leaving the harbor.

These signals are repeated at the harbor master's office, situated near the Canton steamboat pier, at H. M. S. *Tamar*, Green Island signal mast, and the flagstaff on the premises of the Hongkong and Kowloon wharf and Godown Co. at Kowloon.

Notice boards are placed at the cable company's offices, ferry company's pier, Blake Pier post office, harbor office, and ferry company's pier, Kowloon. Daily meteorological observations are posted at same place.

Urgent signal.—In addition to the above, when it is expected that the wind may increase to full typhoon force at any moment, the following urgent signal will be made at the water police station and repeated at the harbor office: Three explosive bombs, at intervals of 10 seconds.

A black cross will be hoisted at the same time, above the other shapes.

Night signals.—The following night signals will be exhibited from the flagstaff on the roof of the water police station at Kowloon, the harbor office flagstaff, Hongkong, and H. M. S. *Tamar*:

- 1. Three lights vertical, green, green, green. Indicates that a typhoon is believed to be situated more than 300 miles from the colony.
- 2. Three lights vertical, green, red, green. Indicates that a typhoon is believed to be situated less than 300 miles from the colony.
- 3. Three lights vertical, red, green, red. Indicates that the wind may be expected to increase to full typhoon force at any moment.

No. 3 signal will be accompanied by the explosive bombs, as above, in the event of the information conveyed by this signal being first published by night.

The above night signals will be substituted for the day signals at sunset, and will, when necessary, be altered during the night.

Supplementary warnings.—For the benefit of native vessels and passing ocean vessels, a cone will be exhibited at each of the following stations during the time that any of the above day signals are hoisted in the harbor:

Gap rock, Sau ki wan, Wag lan, Sai kung, Stanley, Sha tau kok, Hak kok tau or Cape Collinson, Aberdeen, and Tai po in Mirs Bay.

This will indicate that there is a depression somewhere in the China Sea, and that a storm warning is hoisted in the harbor.

Further details can always be given to ocean vessels, on demand, by signals, from the lighthouses.

Forecasts of weather, according to the Shanghai code, page 52, are exhibited by signals from the flagstaff on Blackhead Hill, and further information can be obtained at any time by telegraphing or telephoning (free) from the cable company's office in Connaught Road or from Kowloon police barracks to the observatory.

Outward-bound vessels.—When the red drum is hoisted, steamers, if bound to northern, western, or southern ports, should leave at once, and may expect more or less fine weather; if bound for the Philippine Islands they may expect to encounter the typhoon. Sailing ships bound for southern and western ports may sail immediately; but those bound to northern or eastern ports should remain in harbor, and await further information, even if the wind be westerly at the time.

When the cone, point upward, is hoisted, southwesterly winds may be expected, and ships leaving harbor are not likely to run any risk from the typhoon; sailing vessels, bound northward, should sail as soon as convenient, to benefit by the southwest breeze.

When the cone, point downward, is hoisted, to avoid bad weather, ships should remain in port until the barometer rises, when danger from the typhoon is past.

When the ball is hoisted, ships leaving for northern, eastern, or southern ports may expect winds from east, round by south, to southwest. Those leaving for western ports run no risk while the barometer continues rising; should the barometer fall, they should be hove-to, and subsequently take refuge in some typhoon harbor, but this will rarely occur.

EXTRACTS FROM PORT REGULATIONS.

[Taken from China Coasters' Manual.]

## DANGEROUS GOODS.

15. (3) For the purpose of this ordinance the expression "dangerous goods" means aquafortis, vitrol, naphtha, benzine, gunpowder, lucifer matches, nitroglycerine, petroleum, dynamite, guncotton, fulminate of mercury or of other metals, blasting powders, cheddite, gelignite, gelatine dynamite, blasting gelatine, bobbinite, and compressed gunpowder, fireworks, fuses, rockets, percussion caps, detonators, car-



tridges, ammunition of all descriptions and any other goods which are from time to time declared by the governor in council to be of a dangerous nature.

- (4) The master or owner of any ship may refuse to take on board any package or parcel which he suspects to contain goods of a dangerous nature, and may require it. to be opened to ascertain the fact.
- 1. Any ship or vessel arriving at this port having on board any dangerous goods within the meaning of the above-mentioned ordinance or to which such ordinance applies, and any ship or vessel to take on board any such goods for exportation, shall hoist a red flag at the fore-topgallant masthead, and shall keep it flying until such goods are removed from or received into such ship or vessel.
- 2. Every ship, vessel, lighter, or boat of any description whatever, having on board any dangerous goods as aforesaid, shall, whilst in the waters of the colony, hoist a red flag at the fore-topgallant masthead, or, where there is only one mast, at that masthead, or, where there is no mast, on a pole at her bows.
- 9. The "Dangerous goods anchorage" shall (unless and until the governor shall by notification in the Government Gazette appoint some other anchorage in addition to or in lieu of such anchorage) mean that portion of the harbor waters being within the following limits:

Eastward of a north-and-south line drawn through Kellett Island.

South of a line drawn from the checkered buoy marking the west edge of the men-ofwar anchorage to north point of Hongkong.

Bounded on the east by the western edge of the telegraph-cable ground.

# QUARANTINE REGULATIONS.

## [Under sec. 23.]

- 1. In these regulations the term "Health officer" means the health officer of the port or any other medical officer duly authorized to act for or assist him, or in charge of any place set apart for the detention and seclusion of persons actually suffering from disease; the term "Vessel" includes British and foreign ships of war, as well as all other vessels; the term "port or place of which any infectious or contagious disease prevailed" means a port or place proclaimed to be such by order of the governor in council published in the Gazette from the date of such proclamation. The words "infectious or contagious disease" shall, for the purposes of these regulations, meant cholera, choleraic diarrhea, smallpox, typhus fever, yellow fever, bubonic plague, and any such other epidemic disease as the health officer may consider to imperil the safety of the passengers or crew. The term "infected vessel" shall mean any vessel which has a case of any of the above-mentioned diseases on board or on which one or more cases of any such diseases shall have occurred within a period of 12 days previous to the date of arrival of the vessel in the waters of the colony, except in the case of cholera, when such period shall be 7 days instead of 12; the term "suspected vessel" shall mean any vessel on which one or more cases of any of the above-mentioned diseases shall have occurred at the time of departure or during the voyage, but on which no fresh case has occurred within a period of 12 days, or in the case of cholera 7 days, previous to the date of arrival of the vessel in the waters of this colony; the term "healthy vessel" shall mean any vessel which, having come from a port or place at which an infectious or contagious disease prevailed, has had no death from and no case of any such disease on board while at such port or place or during the voyage therefrom, or on arrival.
- 2. Every "infected," every "suspected," and every "healthy" vessel on entering the waters of this colony shall fly and keep flying a yellow flag (letter Q in the International Code of Signals), and shall not communicate with the shore until granted pratique by express written order of the health officer, who shall board every such vessel and shall examine all the passengers and crew thereof. Provided, nevertheless,



That any such vessel which is on a voyage to any other place and which has held no communication with the shore except as permitted by these regulations, may, with the written consent of the health officer, proceed on such voyage or transship her passengers for the purpose of completing such voyage.

3. Every "infected," every "suspected," and every "healthy" vessel shall, unless previously granted pratique, proceed at once to the quarantine anchorage, and shall not remove therefrom, except from stress of weather, until released by order of the health officer. No vessel which is compelled to leave the quarantine anchorage from stress of weather shall communicate, except by signals, with the shore or with any other vessel, and such vessel shall return to the quarantine anchorage immediately such stress of weather has subsided: *Provided*, That in case of stress of weather involving probable actual danger to the vessel, the vessel may remove for a time, but shall be deemed, nevertheless, for all purposes to be subject to all other regulations applicable to such vessels.

No such vessel shall enter the harbor limits before 6 a. m. or after 6 p. m.

4. The quarantine anchorage shall be within the following boundaries, and the master of every vessel shall remove his vessel to any part of the quarantine anchorage as and when required by the harbormaster:

Western boundary.—A line drawn from the western side of Stonecutters Island to the western side of Green Island (on the Admiralty chart marked as the harbor boundary).

Southern boundary.—That part of a line having the naval coal sheds at Kowloon bearing 101°, commencing where it meets the eastern boundary and terminating where it meets the western boundary.

Eastern boundary.—A north-and-south line, 180°, drawn from a white mark on south side of Stonecutters Island until it reaches the southern boundary.

Northern boundary.—The 5-fathoms line of soundings.

- 15. Where a vessel has passengers on board who are in a filthy or otherwise unwhole-some condition, or is overcrowded with passengers, emigrants or otherwise, the health officer may, if in his opinion it is desirable with a view to checking the introduction of any infectious or contagious disease, and on his certifying to that effect, order such vessel to proceed to the quarantine anchorage, or to such place as he may direct, and may detain under observation or surveillance the passengers and crew for such period, not exceeding 10 days from the arrival of the vessel, as he may direct; and if the vessel is also an "infected" or "suspected" vessel, the measures prescribed in regulation 6 (a) and (b), respectively, may also be enforced.
- 16. Any costs and expenses charged or incurred by the Government for the medical attendance and maintenance of any person, whether on the ship's articles or not, who is removed to the Hygerta or any other hospital or place from any vessel under these regulations for medical treatment or surveillance, or for the burial of any person who may die on any vessel, or of any dead body found on board any vessel, or for the cleansing and disinfection of any vessel or of the merchandise on board any vessel, or of any part of the vessel or of her merchandise, including the hire of any necessary labor, boats, junks, hulks, premises on shore, and disinfecting appliances, shall be paid to the Government on demand by the owners or agents of the vessel.
- 19. The preceding regulations (with the exception of Nos. 15 and 16) shall not apply to any vessel which has on board as surgeon or medical officer a medical practitioner who is entered on the articles of agreement or any similar document, if after entering the waters of this colony the master of the vessel signs a certificate, in the form A appended to these regulations, to the effect that there has been no sickness of an infectious or contagious nature on board such vessel within a period of 12 days previous to the date of arrival of the vessel within the waters of this colony, and if the surgeon or medical officer of the vessel, after entering the waters of this colony, signs a certificate, in the form B appended to these regulations, to the same effect, with the addition that



he has seen every person on board such vessel within the 12 hours immediately preceding his signature thereto. In default, however, of either of such certificates being signed the preceding regulations shall apply.

Any master, and any surgeon or medical officer of any such vessel who shall sign any such certificate as aforesaid containing any false statement and any person signing any such certificate as surgeon or medical officer of the vessel when not duly entered on such articles or document as aforesaid shall be deemed to be guilty of a breach of these regulations and may be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

- 24. No vessel of any description, whether a ship of war or otherwise, shall be allowed to anchor within any fairway which shall be set apart by the harbor master for the passage of vessels, and the master, or any other person in charge of any boat or other vessel dropping anchor in, or otherwise obstructing such fairway, shall for each offense be liable to a penalty not exceeding \$50, and in default of payment to imprisonment with or without hard labor not exceeding one month.
- (3) In the case of police assistance being required on board any ship, owing to an outbreak of fire, or to a riot or disturbance which the master and his officers are unable to quell, if by day, the signal flag S of the Commercial Code shall be hoisted, and, if by night, three lights in a vertical line, the highest and lowest red and the middle light white; the day signal may be supplemented by the signal NM, "I am on fire," or YF, "Want assistance—mutiny," and the night signal by a "Flare-up" every minute in the case of fire, or "Blue lights" in the case of disturbance. A continuous sounding with any fog-signal apparatus may, in addition, be adopted to attract attention in either case.

#### EXPLOSIVES.

- 36. (3) It shall not be lawful for the master of any vessel, without the permission of the harbor master, to anchor such vessel within 500 yards of any Government gunpowder depot.
- (6) The master of every vessel having on board as cargo gunpowder or other explosives, and while engaged in the transshipment of the same, shall exhibit a red flag at the highest masthead.
- (7) It shall not be lawful for the master of any vessel having on board as cargo gunpowder or other explosive to anchor within 500 yards of any other vessel except by permission of the harbor master.
- (9) No gunpowder or other explosives shall be shipped, landed, or transshipped within the waters of the colony between the hours of 6 p. m. and 6 a. m. from October to March, inclusive, nor between the hours of 7 p. m. and 5 a. m. from April to September, inclusive, without the written permission of the harbor master.
- (7) The expression "Gunpowder anchorage," as used in this section, shall mean the anchorage on the south side of Stonecutters Island (Wan chu chau) to the west a line from which the White rock bears 0°, and to the north of a line from which the sheers at the Kowloon (Kau lung) naval yard bear 90°.

### GOVERNING CASE OIL.

Every vessel arriving at any port in this colony having on board case oil, and every vessel being about to take on board such oil from licensed premises, shall hoist a red flag at her fore truck, and the flags THE of the International Code (signifying "Petroleum oil") at her main truck, and shall keep such flags flying during the hours of daylight while any petroleum is on board, and thereafter until the harbor master is satisfied that the holds are clean and ventilated. And during the same period every such vessel shall by night display two red lights vertically, where best seen, and at a height of not less than 20 feet above the deck.

2A. No case containing petroleum in a leaky or damaged condition shall be shipped or transshipped in any port in this colony, and should any such leakage be found to



have taken place from cases already shipped on board of any vessel, it shall be lawful for the harbor master to cause such vessel to be removed, at the expense of the owner, agent, or master thereof, to such place as he may deem necessary to safeguard the interests of the harbor.

3. Every vessel having on board case oil shall anchor either in the petroleum anchorage south of Stonecutters Island, or in the dangerous-goods anchorage east of Kellett Island, and shall obtain permission from the harbor master before going along-side any wharf or shifting berth.

The Standard Oil Wharf at Lap sap wan, the Royal Dutch Petroleum Co.'s Wharf at North Point, Messrs. Arnhold, Karberg, & Co.'s Wharf at Tai kok tsui, and such other places (if any) as the governor in council may by notification in the Gazette appoint, shall be the places to which vessels having, or being about to take on board, case oil, may proceed, with the permission of the harbor master. Otherwise such case oil must be discharged or taken in, in the petroleum anchorage south of Stonecutters Island, or in the dangerous-goods anchorage east of Kellett Island.

- 8. No discharge of petroleum, whether mixed with water or not, shall be permitted into the harbor from any ship, or boat, lighter, or vessel conveying case oil, or from the licensed premises.
- 9. Smoking and the use of any light or fire in any boat, lighter, or vessel which is used for landing case oil are prohibited.
- 10. After the discharge of case oil, the vessel, unless she at once goes to sea, shall remain at or proceed without delay to one of the anchorages specified in the third of these rules; and shall not remove therefrom until all her holds which have contained case oil shall have been thoroughly cleansed and ventilated by the removal of all oil and vapor, unless the special permission of the harbor master has been obtained, except for the purpose of proceeding to sea, or through stress of weather.

Climate.—Hongkong is subject to an excessively hot and a somewhat cool season, coinciding with the southwest and northeast monsoons; it has also a dry and a rainy season. The average annual range of temperature is from 55° to 86°. The mean maximum monthly temperature in 1909 was 87.5° in August, and the mean minimum 57° in February.

The climate for five months in the year is very good, though the temperature is rather subject to sudden fluctuations. The summer months are trying to Europeans, owing to the damp heat.

July and August are the hottest months, the temperature ranging from 72° to 97°, with a difference of 10° or more between day and night. The city, being situated on the northern side of the island under the peak, is completely sheltered from the southwest monsoon, which, on the southern side of the island, agreeably tempers the violent heat.

November to January is the coolest period, and the air is often bracing; the temperature occasionally falls to about 40°, and ice has been known on the peak, but this is rare; sudden changes frequently take place, a day of almost tropical heat being followed by a cutting northerly wind, for when calms and variables prevail it is hot even in winter, but the northeast wind and overcast sky reduces the temperature; northeasterly gales are common in autumn and spring and last two or three days.

In January, 1893, ice formed both at Hongkong and Kowloon at sea level. The lowest mean temperature registered at the observatory was on the 17th, air 36.2°, wet bulb 30.9°. On the Chu kiang, about 28 miles below Canton, 23° was recorded.

March and April are rainy and foggy and the damp is so penetrating that the greatest care is required to prevent clothes, books, instruments, stores, etc., from being destroyed or injured by mildew.

The wet season commences in May and continues until the beginning of August, and during this period the rain falls almost without intermission, frequently causing floods which do great damage.

The minimum annual rainfall from 1853 to 1891 was 59.72 inches in 1860, and the maximum 120.66 inches in 1883, the annual mean being 90.17 inches. The total rainfall in 1910 was 70.12 inches. The average during the 10 years preceding 1910 was 81.10.

Diseases.—Although visited by sickness caused by malaria, for salubrity Hongkong compares favorably with most of the ports of the East, and its healthfulness has been greatly increased of late years by sanitary arrangements and excellent water supply.

The most unhealthful years have been those most deficient in rainfall. Dysentery and intermittent fever are not uncommon, and the bilious remittent fever, sometimes nearly allied to yellow fever, occurs in the summer season; smallpox prevails from November to March.

The chief causes of death in 1901 among the non-Chinese resident civil community were plague, phthisis, malaria, and pneumonia. In that year there were more cases of smallpox than usual, and some cholera cases were imported.

The plague first made its appearance in the island in 1894; it recurred in 1898; in 1899 the number of deaths from this disease was 1,428; in 1900, 1,034; and in 1901, 1,562.

Beriberi is common among the Chinese, but the disease is not, as it now exists, very infectious, and does not become epidemic.

Neglect of the usual conditions of health, such as exercise, diet, proper clothing, and the like, conduce to, and exposure to the rays of the sun, even in winter, almost invariably results in sickness.

Hongkong Island—Southern coast.—The bays between Tai long Head, the southeastern extremity of the island, and the western point of Hongkong Island are, with two exceptions, available for anchorage during the northeast monsoon, but they are not recommended during the southwest monsoon in consequence of the swell, which makes landing difficult for boats. The bays are generally easy of access, with ample depths and good holding ground.

Taitam Bay, the easternmost of the bays, lies between the peninsula of which Tai long Head, or Cape d'Aguilar, forms the southern extremity, and Taitam Head to the westward. It is 2.5 miles in length, 1.3 miles wide at the entrance, clear, and with depths of 8 to

9 fathoms in the entrance, decreasing gradually to 4 and 3 fathoms near its head. Taitam Head, the western entrance point, is a high bluff, fairly steep-to. Anchorage and shelter in bad weather during the northeast monsoon can be obtained in Taitam Bay, in any required depth.

Water may be obtained at Taitam Village (Lat. 22° 13′ N., Long. 114° 13′ E.) on the western shore of the bay.

Beacons.—Two obelisks, each 30 feet high, have been erected toward the head of Taitam Bay and in line 357° lead 600 yards westward of Castle rock, mentioned below.

Lo chau, or Beaufort Island, lying about a mile off the entrance to Taitam Bay, and the northwesternmost of the Pu toi Group, is 878 feet high, flattened at the top, and steep around; its northwestern brow has a small peak, with a few large and remarkable bowlders on it. It is uninhabited.

Lo chau pak pai, or Castle rock, 50 feet high, and with 7 to 10 fathoms around, lies nearly ½ mile southwestward of Lo chau, with a rock which dries 2 feet at 100 yards westward of its northern extremity.

Oliver Shoals, the northern end of which lies 1,500 yards southward of Taitam Head, extend 500 yards south-southwestward; the least depth obtained on them is 6 fathoms, over coral.

Directions.—To enter Taitam Bay from the eastward pass through Shing shi mun, the channel between Hongkong Island on the north and Wag lan and Beaufort Islands on the south. From the southward pass through Lema Channel, and when approaching Lo chau, steer with the beacons in Taitam Bay, 357°, which leads westward of Castle rock and eastward of Oliver Shoals. Thence as requisite for the anchorage in 6 fathoms off Taitam Village, which position is well sheltered from all except southerly winds, and the islands and rocks contiguous to the entrance prevent much swell entering from this direction. In the upper part of the bay caution is required to avoid the numerous fishing stakes.

Stanley, or Chik chui Village, lies southwestward of Taitam Village. Tides and tidal streams.—It is high water, full and change, at Taitam, at 9h. 10m.; springs rise 8 feet; neaps 6 feet. There is very little tidal stream in Taitam Bay. The ebb stream sets eastward in Shing shi mun, but the streams are greatly influenced by the wind.

Coast.—Chik chui wan, known to Europeans as Stanley Bay, is immediately westward of Taitam Peninsula. The chart is a sufficient guide for anchoring. On the narrow neck at the head of the bay, separating it from Taitam Bay, is the village of Chik chui, or Stanley, mentioned with Taitam Bay, where the only conspicuous building is the police station, which is connected by telephone with Victoria. The head of the bay is foul to the distance of 200 yards.

On the higher part of the neck are the ruins of the barracks. The site was found to be very unhealthful, and was discarded; the cemetery is visible from the anchorage.

Storm signals are shown here.

Chung am wan.—A barren rocky promontory, rising to a height of 450 feet, and on the summit of which is a remarkable bowlder, separates Chik chui wan from Chung am wan. The point of the promontory is known locally as Chung am kok, and is free from offlying rocks. Chung am wan is of no importance.

Nganchau (Lat. 22° 13′ N., Long. 114° 11′ E.) is situated about if mile off the two points of Chung am wan, and the channel between can be used with care. This island is circular in form and 232 feet in height; a few patches of land on its northern side are cultivated. Its coast is fringed with bowlders, several sunken rocks lie off it, and it should be approached by large boats with caution.

Rocks.—The outer rocks off Nganchau are, on the western side: Nganchau am pai, a sunken rock with  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms water, situated 287° 500 yards from the summit of the island and 250 yards offshore; on the eastern side is Nganchau tan pai, with 2 feet water, lying 40 yards offshore just southward of the eastern point, and there are several scattered bowlders in this locality; also Tsui lan am pai, a rock with  $2\frac{1}{4}$  fathoms situated 70 yards off the southern point.

Tsin shui wan is the bay westward of Chung am wan, and off the point separating them are two steep rocky islets connected by a ridge of sand that covers and uncovers. The highest islet is 92 feet above high water, and is known locally as Makong. Between the islets and the point there is a safe but narrow boat passage, with a depth of 4½ feet. Makong mi pai, a sunken rock, with 3 fathoms water, lies 65 yards from the western point of Makong.

Tsin shui wan is clear of shoals, but there is generally a swell on, and landing is attended with inconvenience. There is a long sandy beach at the head of the bay, where boats may usefully practice landing and embarking through surf, and the bay can be recommended for running torpedoes, boat firing, etc.

Sam shui wan, or Deep Water Bay, the next bay westward of Tsin shui wan, is easy of access, and the chart is a sufficient guide. The anchorage is good and well sheltered, but it is unavailable for shipping, as several telegraph cables, which are not laid on any defined line, are landed at the beach at the head of the bay, where is the cable hut and also the pavilion of the Royal Hongkong Golf Club.

On the western side of the bay the chimneys of a tile manufactory are conspicuous, as well as several houses belonging to the establishment on the slopes above the works.

There are no shoals in the bay.



Tung bo chau is 389 feet high and forms a good shelter to Sam shui wan. A rock, which dries 7 feet, lies 40 yards off the western end of Tung bo chau, and Tung bo pai, a rock with 1½ fathoms of water, lies 50 yards off the southern point of the island.

The channel between Tung bo chau and Hongkong Island is 80 yards across, and there is a depth of only 3 feet in the fairway.

Sam shui kok.—A high peninsula with steep bold coasts, of which the southern point is Sam shui kok, separates Sam shui wan from Thint shui wan, the next indentation to the westward. A rocky patch lies just westward of Sam shui kok, and extends for 60 yards offshore, with a least depth of 1½ fathoms water.

Thint shui wan is the eastern end of the passage between Aplichau and Hongkong Island; Deep Pass, at its head, about 150 yards wide, connects it with Aberdeen Harbor.

The shores of Thint shui wan are foul, and it is not recommended for vessels. About 400 yards southward of Deep Pass the channel is much contracted by the flats extending from both sides, with a patch of 2¾ fathoms in the fairway between. On the eastern shore there are several small bays and many scattered rocks.

The northern small bay might be useful as a temporary anchorage for a small vessel, but great caution is necessary in using any of the indentations in Thint shui wan.

Aplichau (Aberdeen) Island is about 1 mile in length, northwest and southeast, and 639 feet high; its steep hills are barren of cultivation, but planted with trees on their northern slopes.

A village of some size is situated on its northern side fronting Shek pai, or Aberdeen.

Aplichai is a tongue of land at the southeastern end of Aplichau; it is about 200 feet in height, with a bold coast, and nearly isolated.

Immediately southward of the western point of Aplichau is a cove in which boats or destroyers can obtain sheltered anchorage.

Apli pai, or Assistance rock, lies about 200 yards 247° from th southern extremity of Aplichai. The southwestern extremity of Hongkong Island touching or shut in by the eastern extremity of Magazine Island leads southwestward of it, and if this mark can not be seen owing to the weather do not bring the eastern end of Magazine Island westward of 315°.

Magazine Island (Fo yo kok chau chai) is separated from the western extremity of Aplichau by a channel 300 yards in width. The island is 400 yards long, narrow, 79 feet high, and fringed by shallow water to about 40 yards; a rock, 4 feet high, lies close to its eastern extremity. On its highest part is a conspicuous building with an arched roof, which is a magazine for storing dynamite, and one or two small buildings adjoin it.

A small jetty, alongside which a lighter or small steamboat can lie, is situated in the middle of the northern side of the island.

West Reef (Lung shan pai) is a rocky cluster about 10 feet high, with a beacon on it, situated 197° 350 yards from the northwestern point of Aplichau. There are deep passages between this reef and both Aplichau and Magazine Island, which can be used if desired, but the tidal streams are strong and caution is necessary.

Aberdeen Harbor, or Shek pai wan, lies between the northern coast of Aplichau and Hongkong Island; it is safe and well sheltered. The harbor is so narrow that vessels over 200 feet long can not lie at anchor without blocking the fairway. Owing to the docks at Aberdeen, it is frequently visited by vessels of considerable size, but they either go directly into dock or secure between two mooring buoys off the dockyard.

Anchorage.—A short vessel can anchor on the northern side of the harbor in 5 fathoms at low water, with the northwestern point of Aplichau (Fo yo kok) bearing 213°; the dockyard manager's house 84°; and a conspicuous clump of bamboos in the Chinese cemetery, on the northern side of the entrance, 286°; this clump of bamboos is useful when anchoring at night. A long vessel can anchor in the middle, in about 5 fathoms, with Fo yo kok bearing 160°, distant 300 yards.

Storm signals are shown here.

Fishing vessels resort to Aberdeen in great numbers, and the harbor is generally crowded with them.

Rocks.—There are a few scattered rocks off the northwestern entrance point of the harbor which must be guarded against by boats. Pollux rock, the outer one, dries at low-water springs. The eastern end of Magazine Island in line with the western or middle point of Aplichau leads outside these rocks.

Tidal streams.—It is high water, full and change, at Aberdeen, at practically the same time as at Hongkong Harbor. The flood stream sets westward through Deep Pass, and attains a rate of 2 to 3 knots at springs; the stream in the pass turns at about high and low water. In the western part of the harbor there is very little stream. The flood stream sets westward across the channel between Magazine Island and Aplichau.

Directions.—By the western entrance keep in mid-channel. If using the passage between Magazine Island and Aplichau, take care, when the flood stream is running, to avoid being set on the eastern point of Magazine Island. The eastern approach, through Thint shui wan and Deep Pass, is not recommended for any vessel larger than a destroyer; Deep Pass is only about 150 yards across, and the course through is not straight, which makes the pass difficult for larger vessels except at slack water. It is generally crowded with fishing craft. There is plenty of water in the pass, and the following directions are given should it be necessary to use it:

79795---15-----33

Proceeding up Thint shui wan, as Deep Pass is approached, bear over to the eastward until the left extremity of the point under the police station at Shek pai bears 300°, when the high chimney of the dockyard will be in line with it. Steer toward the point, edging gradually northward as Deep Pass Point is neared till it bears 296°, and pass through the narrows with the point on this bearing.

A hard spit extends from the northern side of the eastern of the two islets on the southern side of the passage for 70 yards from highwater mark to the 1-fathom curve. To clear this spit, keep Deep Pass Point bearing 97°, astern, and when the islet is abeam steer through the middle of the harbor.

In using Deep Pass, ease the engines as much as possible to prevent damage done to boats by the wash from the propellers.

The western bays on the southwestern coast of Hongkong Island westward of Aberdeen Harbor are: Waterfall Bay, a mere bend in the coast, of no importance; Taiho wan or Pokfolum Bay, which might be useful if telegraph cables were not landed in it; and Sandy Bay, which is clear; a patch of 3 fathoms lies southward of it, at 400 yards, 202°, the point southward of Hoi chi village. These bays are not recommended, and Taiho wan should especially be avoided, as the cables are not laid on any defined line.

East Lamma Channel lies between Lamma Island and Aplichau or Aberdeen Island and Magazine Island off the southern coast of Hongkong, above described. Its least breadth is about 1,800 yards between the northern extremity of Lamma and Magazine Island, and the fairway depths are from 12 to 20 fathoms, soft mud bottom.

Lamma patch, with 5½ fathoms least water, lies in the fairway of the northwestern entrance, the shallow spot lying 34° about 870 yards from Pa kok, the northern extremity of Lamma Island.

East Lamma Channel is the shortest route to the western entrance of Hongkong Harbor from the eastward.

Measured distance—Beacons.—A distance of 5 miles is marked off in East Lamma Channel, the running line being marked by a white painted patch on Pu toi in line with the summit of Castle rock 123° 31′. The depths on the running line range from 12 to 20 fathoms.

The eastern portion, 2 miles, lies between the pair of beacons in line on Bluff Point, Taitam Peninsula and a pair on Nganchau; the western portion, 3 miles, between the latter beacons in line and the one on the eastern extremity of Magazine Island in line with that on the northern side of Aberdeen Harbor, as charted.

Eastward of Hongkong.—Ninepin Group is situated about 3 miles northeastward of Lamtong Island, eastern side of Tathong Channel, the eastern entrance to Hongkong Harbor.

North and South Ninepin, the two largest islets, lie north and south of each other, separated by a channel 400 yards wide. The

southern coast of South Ninepin is a precipitous cliff, 359 feet high, the northern part of the islet is lower; close to its southwestern side is a smaller islet, 178 feet high, and there are several small islets or rocks near its northeastern coast.

North Ninepin is 337 feet in height, and has a cleft near its northern end. Close off this end are two islets, the nearest being 280 feet high; there is a rock which dries 7 feet close outside the northern islet.

Close off the southwestern extremity of North Ninepin is a small islet.

North rock, about 12 feet high, lies ½ mile northeastward from North Ninepin Group; a reef which dries 6 feet lies southeastward of it, and a rock with 4½ fathoms lies nearly 100 yards 0°, with a spit of 8 fathoms extending 200 yards northwestward of it.

East Ninepin, shaped like a sugarloaf when seen from the north-westward and southeastward, is 208 feet high; it is much smaller than North or South Ninepin, being 200 yards long northwest and southeast, and little more than 100 yards broad. A smaller islet, 93 feet high, lies 200 yards off its northwestern end, and a rock 19 feet high is situated 200 yards from its western side.

One-foot rock, 186°, distant 1,400 yards from East Ninepin, has only 1 foot water; Fo tau Point in line with the southern point of South Ninepin, 278°, leads southward of it.

Victor rock, about 40 feet in extent, with a depth of 3 fathoms, 5½ to 6 fathoms close-to, and 14 fathoms around, lies in the track of vessels proceeding along the coast, 59°, distant 4.1 miles from East Ninepin, and about 3.8 miles from the summit of Basalt Island, nearly abreast it.

Clearing marks.—The summit of Lam tong Island in line with the northern extremity of North Ninepin Group bearing 245° leads ½ mile northwestward; and the summit of South Ninepin open of the southeastern extremity of East Ninepin bearing 242° leads about ¼ mile southeastward of Victor rock.

Caution.—The depths in the vicinity of the Ninepin Group give no indication of approach to them, and caution must be exercised in thick weather.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at the Ninepin Group at 10h. 0m.; springs rise 5 feet.

Coast—Aspect.—The mainland from Fo tau Point (the southern extremity of the peninsula forming the eastern side of entrance to Hongkong), northward to Port Shelter, is high, a ridge of hills traversing its whole length, and culminating in Tai u kong, 1,130 feet high, a remarkable peak when seen from the southeastward, with several other peaks of 800 to 900 feet. Hunchback Hills, 2,284 feet high, lie within Inner Port Shelter. There are numerous villages and patches of cultivation on the hillsides in the intermediate bays.

Yi bluff, 434 feet high, is a prominent bluff with a bight on either side, at about ? mile northeastward of Fo tau Point.

Steep Island, 330 feet high, is situated ½ mile northeastward from Yi bluff, and 1,200 yards offshore.

A bay is situated northwestward of Steep Island, about ? mile in length and ? mile in width, with depths of 6 to 9 fathoms, open to easterly winds and swell.

A rock, with a depth of 6 fathoms, lies in the approach to this bay at 1,200 yards northwestward of Steep Island; and a rock, with 1½ fathoms water, lies 250 yards off the western shore of that island.

Trio Islets are three in number. The eastern and largest is 136 feet high, and the next in size, 84 feet in height, lies 100 yards southwestward from it; these two islets are almost connected by a reef and rocks 8 feet high. At 400 yards northwestward of them is the northernmost islet of the group, which is 28 feet high, with a rock 4 feet high close to its eastern side.

Alexander Rock, with 3 fathoms at low water springs, lies 600 yards 53° from the summit of the largest Trio Islet.

Table Islet, 97 feet high, lies 1,350 yards northward of the Trio Group.

There are many detached rocks and reefs lying from 50 to 600 yards off the mainland westward of Trio and Table Islets, but there is a deep channel between.

Port Shelter.—About 1,600 yards northward of Table Islet is Jin Island (702 feet), with Keui Island (707 feet) lying close north of it, being joined together at low water. These two islands divide a deep bay into Port Shelter and Rocky Harbor, in either of which good anchorage, mud bottom, may be obtained by vessels of any size. Port Shelter, the western of the two, runs northward 5 miles, and is separated from Tolo Channel, Mirs Bay, by an isthmus 1.5 miles wide. Its entrance is nearly a mile wide between Jin and Shelter Islands, and it affords anchorage in 8 to 9 fathoms, and in the inner port in 6 to 7 fathoms.

Dangers—Peaked Rock, at 300 yards southward of Jin Island, is a double rock, 44 feet high. A rock which dries 6 feet, is situated 400 yards 67° from it, and 400 yards 101° from it is situated Ma chai pai, a rock with 3½ fathoms water.

The space between Peaked Rock and Jin Island is obstructed by foul ground and rocks, drying 3 feet at low water springs.

Ngong wan pai, a 53-fathom rocky patch, lies off the southwestern part of Jin Island at a distance of 600 yards.

Shelter Island, on the western side of the entrance, is 416 feet high; shoal water extends nearly 400 yards northward of the island, and to a distance of 300 yards from its western side.

Ho pai, a 3-fathom patch, lies 400 yards westward of the western point, and a shoal, with a least depth of 3\frac{3}{4} fathoms, lies in midchannel between the island and the mainland, to the westward.

Nan pai, a rock with 2\frac{3}{4} fathoms water, lies 450 yards southwestward of the southeastern extremity.

Shoal water extends about 400 yards off the mainland westward of Shelter Island.

Yi pai, a shoal of rock and sand, 600 yards long, north and south, and from 200 to 300 yards broad, lies near the center of Port Shelter, 1,200 yards northward of Shelter Island, and midway between it and the south end of Sharp Island. The depths over it vary from 1½ fathoms near the southern end, to 5 fathoms.

Sharp Island, 1.3 miles northward of Shelter Island, rises to a sharp summit 447 feet high. Off its western shore, and connected by a bank, which dries from 4 to 6 feet, is Kiau tau Islet, 95 feet high, with rocks extending 200 yards southwestward from it.

Inner Port Shelter, on the western side of Sharp Island, affords good anchorage in 7 fathoms, mud. Northward of it are numerous small islets, rocks, and shoals, which extend northward to the mainland.

On the northwestern side of Inner Port Shelter is the village of Sai kung, situated on the northern side of a small inlet or boat harbor. On the southern side of the same inlet, and conspicuous from the anchorage, is a police station, with white buildings, which is in telephonic communication with Hongkong.

Tide Islet, 84 feet high, lies about 600 yards northwestward of Sharp Island.

Hebe Haven, on the northwestern side of Port Shelter, is a snug anchorage for small vessels. A rock, with 2½ fathoms, lies 400 yards southeastward from the entrance, on Pak ma tsui Bank, which extends southward of the eastern point of entrance.

Channel—Head of the port.—There is a passage between Sharp Island and Keui Island, from 200 to 600 yards wide; toward its northern end is Yum tin pai, a rock with a depth of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, which lies about 300 yards from the Sharp Island shore. Off the point southward of rock, rocks apparently above water extend 300 yards into the channel.

About 600 yards northward of the northern extremity of Sharp Island is Cha yu pai, a rocky patch with a least depth of 12 fathoms.

Anchorage.—Vessels of moderate draft can proceed through the pass between Sharp and Keui Islands, and anchor in 4 fathoms to the northward of Sharp Island, or pass northward of Im tin tsz, Keui Island, and Urn Island, into Rocky Harbor, in a depth of not less than 19 feet at low water.

**Directions.**—The channel is narrow in places, and the chart is the best guide.

There is no channel, except for boats, between Inner Port Shelter and the anchorage north of Sharp Island.

Mission.—A Roman Catholic mission, with a conspicuous church, is established on Im tin tsz.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, in Port Shelter and Rocky harbor at 8h. 50m. (approximately); springs rise 7 to 9 feet, neaps rise 5 to 6 feet, but the tides are subject to a large diurnal inequality.

Rocky Harbor is between Keui and Jin Islands on the west, and High, Town, and Bluff Islands on the east and southeast.

The entrance of the harbor between Bluff and Jin Islands is 1 mile wide, with depths of 8 to 9 fathoms.

Islets—Dangers—Bay Islet, lying 400 yards eastward of Jin Island, is 147 feet high; midway between Bay Islet and the northern end of Bluff Island is Ngai kap pai, a rocky patch with a depth of 3 feet, and a shoal of 3 fathoms at 300 yards eastward of it, eastward of which the depths vary from 3½ to 4½ fathoms, over rocks and sand.

Pyramid rock, 123 feet high, open northward of Bluff Island leads northeastward of Ngai kap pai and the 3-foot patch.

Green Islet, 50 feet high, is situated on the eastern shore 100 yards westward of the southern portion of High Island. Wok tuk pai, a rocky patch with a least depth of 2\frac{3}{4} fathoms, lies about 500 yards westward of the islet.

Anchorage.—There is anchorage in the northeast monsoon on the eastern side of the harbor at the entrance to the cove northward of Green Islet, where there is a mandarin station and a village, but the space is confined, owing to sunken rocks. In the southwest monsoon there is better shelter northward of Bay Islet.

Basalt Island is 1,600 yards long, north and south, and 569 feet high; Bluff Island, about the same size, and 504 feet high, lies 800 yards westward of it; and the southern extremity is named Collinson Head; the southern coasts of both islands are precipitous, the summit of Steepcliff Head, the southern extremity of Basalt, being 307 feet high.

The depths in mid-channel between these two islands range from  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 10 fathoms, with the exception of a rocky patch of  $4\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms situated about 400 yards  $112^{\circ}$  from the northern end of Bluff Island.

Town Island, 232 feet high, lies 4 mile northeastward of Bluff Island, and at 300 yards eastward of Town Island is Hole Island. Pyramid rock, 123 feet high, lies off the northern side of Basalt Island.

The channel between Town and Basalt Islands is narrowed to less than 200 yards by Wei sam chau islets, and Wave rock, which dries 7 feet, and is situated at 300 yards from the southern shore of Town

Island; the tidal streams in this channel form chowchow water, or whirling eddies.

The channel between Town and High Islands is very narrow, and has a least depth of 19 feet. It is much used by local steam launches plying between Hongkong and Mirs Bay.

Hole Island, 309 feet high, is precipitous and bare; Wan chau kok, its eastern extremity, is perforated and the northern end is much broken up.

The channel between Hole and Town Islands is not navigable.

Hwang ngai chau is a small islet, 71 feet high, situated about 670 yards northward of Town Island.

Kwang tai pai is a small islet, 60 feet high, situated 670 yards northward of Hole Island; a rock which uncovers 2 feet lies 200 yards southeastward of its southern point.

High Island has a length of 2.5 miles, and at its northern end is of about the same breadth; it has a well-defined summit, 905 feet high.

Broken Head, the east point, is bold, and 155 feet high, appearing as a separate island when seen from the southward.

Between the northern side of High Island and the main is a channel which dries from 1 to 3 feet in some places.

Conic islet, 165 feet high, lies close off a point of the mainland, and 1,200 yards east-northeastward of the eastern point of High Island; immediately westward of it is a bay 700 yards wide and  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile deep, with depths of 4 to 8 fathoms, sandy bottom. There is a village at the head and a sandy beach, but landing is often difficult owing to the swell.

Ping Point lies 3 mile northward of Conic Islet. Ping Hill; over it, is 753 feet high and conspicuous from the southeastward.

Boole rock, with a depth of 4 fathoms, lies 300 yards northeastward of Ping Point, and about the same distance from the shore.

Fung Bay is 1.5 miles wide between Ping Hill and Fung Head; it has depths of 7 and 8 fathoms, is open to the eastward, and has the three Chin chau islets, 158, 132, and 31 feet in height, respectively, in its center, with a patch which dries 6 feet westward of the northern and smallest islet.

Fung Bay, within the head, is foul to about 300 yards offshore.

A heavy swell sets into this bay except during the summer months; Sai wan village is situated on the southwestern side and Tai long village on the western shore.

Landing can be effected at Sai wan.

Fung Head is a rocky point about 300 feet high and steep-to, with an islet 45 feet high close to it, outside of which is a rock 5 feet high.

Aspect.—In the vicinity of Fung Bay the mountains known as Tai yu shan (Whale), 1,030 feet high, and Tai mun shan, 1,201 feet high, are conspicuous.

Mirs Bay.—Mirs Point is situated east-northeastward 5.5 miles from Fung Head, and between is the entrance to Mirs Bay, which extends thence northwestward about 12 miles; Tolo Channel and Harbor extend southwestward about 12 miles from Middle Island on the southwestern side of the bay.

Vessels can lie securely in Mirs Bay during a typhoon, there being many well-sheltered anchorages available for all classes. Long Harbor is considered the best; Tolo Harbor is also good; and fairly good shelter may be obtained under Pengchau when the wind is southerly.

Aspect.—The land in the vicinity of Mirs Bay is high. Ma on shan or Hunchback Hills, 2,284 feet high, before mentioned, at 9 miles westward of Fung Head, and Sharp Peak, 1,525 feet high, at 2 miles within Fung Head, are conspicuous. Chong Hill, 3,095 feet high, and North Cone, 2,472 feet high, both on the northwestern side of this bay, also are conspicuous summits.

Islands and dangers—Shek ngau chau (Gau tau), a rocky islet, 86 feet high, lies in the fairway within the entrance and 22°, 3.5 miles from Fung Head.

Breaker Reef, a rocky ledge 600 yards long, northwest and southeast, lies ½ mile southwestward of Shek ngau chau. The central part of the reef dries 5 feet, and generally breaks.

Wong man chau (South Gau), an islet 60 feet high, surrounded by foul ground, is about ½ mile off the point within Bate Head, which is situated 1.5 miles northward of Fung Head.

Bate Head has two rocks, 37 and 69 feet high, near it, with deep water fairly close to them. The shore of the bay westward of Bate Head is foul to the distance of 400 to 600 yards westward of the point, which has two islets close off it, as charted.

There is a patch of 2½ fathoms on the northwest side of the bay 300 yards offshore under the 413-feet hill. There is anchorage near the head of the bay, off Nam tsin village, in about 8 fathoms, during southerly winds, or closer in according to draft.

South Channel, leading into Long Harbor, is barely 100 yards wide, with a depth of 3½ fathoms in its navigable part; shoals extend from both shores, and there is a rock which dries 1 foot at nearly 200 yards from the north shore.

Grass Island is about 1.3 miles in length north and south, 1,200 yards wide, and 401 feet high.

Kong chau, 700 yards eastward of Grass Island, is a steep black islet, 111 feet high; the passage between is blocked by a ridge of sunken rocks, some of which dry at low water, and is not navigable.

Waterwitch rock, with a depth of 13 fathoms, lies with the eastern extremity of Kong chau bearing 309°, distant 600 yards; it is steep-to on its eastern side. Bate Head, open eastward of Wong

mau chau, leads eastward of Waterwitch rock, and Bluff Head in line with the southern extremity of Port Island, 304°, leads 400 yards northeastward of that rock and close northward of Channel rock.

Fishing stakes and nets close together extend from the southern end of Grass Island to Shek ngau chau, or halfway across Mirs Bay.

Port Island, 422 feet high, is separated from Grass Island by Middle Channel, 1,200 yards wide; a narrow rocky ledge, with pinnacles on it, projects 200 yards northeastward from the island. There is a convenient watering place on its northern side.

Middle Channel has a fairway depth of 11 to 13 fathoms, with Channel rock its only danger.

Sam pai (Channel rock), awash at high water, and generally breaking, lies on the south side of Middle Channel, 600 yards northeastward of the northern part of Grass Island.

The leading mark through Middle Channel, between Channel rock and Port Island, is the north summit of Harbor Island in line with a large bowlder on Gruff Head, bearing 251°.

Long Harbor, the entrance to which is situated between Grass Island and Titau Peninsula, extends southward for 2.5 miles, with a breadth of from 1,200 yards to 1 mile, to Stokes Point, which is foul to the distance of 200 yards; here it divides into two narrow arms named East and West Arms, the heads of which are shallow for about ½ mile.

The harbor affords good anchorage in 5 to 8 fathoms, mud bottom. White cove lies in its northwestern corner, south of Titau Peninsula; it has depths of 5 to 6 fathoms, with a patch of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms at about 200 yards off the western shore.

Dangers in the approach.—Le Mottee Shoal, with a depth of 2 fathoms, extends 350 yards from the western shore of Grass Island; its western extremity is steep-to, and lies with the western extremity of Grass Island bearing 357°, distant just over 400 yards.

Junk rock, with a depth of 4 feet, lies with the western extremity of Grass Island bearing 346°, distant 1,300 yards.

Warburg rock, with 4½ fathoms in the fairway, with the western extremity of Grass Island bearing 0°, distant 1,800 yards.

Clearing mark.—The western extremity of Port Island in line with the western extremity of Grass Island, bearing 6°, leads 130 yards westward of Warburg rock.

**Phillimore rock,** with a depth of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, lies 250 yards from the western shore of the harbor and  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile southeastward from Ocean Point, the northern extremity of Titau.

Anchorage in Long Harbor and Jones cove is reserved exclusively for the use of H. M. ships.

Supplies.—Poultry, eggs, and fish may be obtained in limited quantities. Steam launches run every other day between Hongkong and Mirs Bay, calling at Sha u chung, Yim tim, and Tap mun.

Jones cove, westward of Long Harbor, is about 3 mile in length and 600 yards in width, with depths of 6 to 7 fathoms, mud bottom; but it, as well as Long Harbor during northerly winds, is open to a considerable northerly swell. On the western side of the approach are three islets on the same flat, and 350 yards northward of Flat Islet, the largest, lies Chu ma pai, 2 feet high, with a rock to the westward on the same flat, which dries 7 feet.

A rock, which dries 3 feet, lies 200 yards 247° from Flynn Point, eastern side of the harbor.

North Channel, leading into Tolo Channel and Harbor, between Port Island and Bluff Head, is 1.2 miles wide, with depths of 9 to 10 fathoms; Tolo Channel thence trends about 236° for 7 miles to White Head, and is not less than 1,400 yards wide, its shores being steep-to, with a depth varying from 6 to 14 fathoms on the northern shore.

Bluff Head separates North Channel from Wangchuk kop hoi; it is the extremity of a peninsula about 2 miles in length, with a ridge of hills from 500 to 900 feet in height running through it. There is a beacon within the bluff, and near the 661-foot summit about a mile to the westward is another beacon.

Reefs.—Within the channel at about 3.8 miles from Bluff Head is Knob Reef, with rocks on its western part from 4 to 15 feet high, with a rocky ledge extending northeastward 300 yards from them; Flat Reef dries from 3 to 6 feet and lies 600 yards southwestward of Knob Reef. Bush Reef lies 1.8 miles above Flat Reef and about 800 yards southward of Harbor Island. Although there is a navigable channel on either side of these reefs, the northern being the wider is preferable.

There are a number of fishing nets and stakes between Bush Reef and the eastern shore, as charted.

Harbor Island, 345 feet high and 6 miles within Bluff Head, terminates the northern side of the western end of Tolo Channel; here the inlet separates into four arms, Three-fathoms cove southward, Tide cove southwestward, Tolo Harbor westward, and Plover cove northeastward.

Sam chung a (Three-fathoms cove), the southern arm, about 1.5 miles in length, has depths of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 fathoms. There are two islands on the western side connected with the shore by shallow flats; the outermost is Sigan, 29 feet high.

Tide cove, westward of White Head (Tau tau jau), on the southern shore, is 3.5 miles in length, and the water shoals gradually from 5 fathoms to its head.



A rock, which dries 4 feet, lies in the fairway abreast a waterfall, about 1.8 miles southwestward from White Head. There is anchorage in Tide cove in 3 to 4 fathoms, protected in all winds.

There is a police station at the head of this cove, from whence there are several paths leading over the hills to Kowloon city, the principal of which are those passing over the Grasscutters, Shatin, and Kauloon Passes.

Railroad.—The Canton-Kowloon Railroad runs along the western shore of Tide cove.

Plover cove trends northeastward 2.5 miles within Harbor Island and has depths of 4 to 6 fathoms. It affords very good anchorage.

A patch dries 1 foot near its head and one which dries 4 feet off the point southward of Wang chuk kok, on the northern shore; and there is a reef with two rocks, 8 and 9 feet high, in the bay westward of this point, in the approach to Wang chung; Yeung chau lies in the circular bight in the western part of Plover cove.

Settlement.—Tolo Harbor lies at the head of Tolo Channel, with Center Island, 80 feet high, in its fairway, with depths of 4½ fathoms on either side, gradually shoaling to the settlement, Tai po, where are situated the governor's bungalow, the magistracy, and the police station. The frontier road, a broad macadamized road, 18 miles in length, leads from Tai po into Yau ma ti, through Lai chi kok Pass at the head of Tide cove.

A conspicuous red house stands on a small island 800 yards eastward of the police station; this island is connected with the mainland by a causeway. The cove, situated ½ mile eastward of the above island, is crossed by a conspicuous railroad bridge, westward of which there is a small pier.

A white beacon marks the rock eastward of the island.

Railroad.—The Canton-Kowloon Railroad runs along the head of Tolo Harbor.

Storm signals are shown here.

Islands—Northward of Bluff Head.—Northwestward of Bluff Head lie a group of islands, the largest of which are Tung wan to (Double Island), Lo kwai wan to (Crescent Island), and Crooked Island, the northernmost. Song to (Round Island), the easternmost of the group, lies 2 miles 349° from Bluff Head.

Cocks Head rock, with a depth of 3½ fathoms, lies 98° 650 yards from Kai kung tau (Peaked Head), the easternmost point of Crooked Island.

Wang chuk kok hoi, the inlet northward of Bluff Head, extends west-southwestward for 1.5 miles from its entrance between Bluff Head and Mit kok tsui, and has a breadth of 600 to 800 yards; it affords good anchorage in from 6 to 8 fathoms, mud bottom.

Kang mun, a boat channel, leads into Double Haven from its western end.

Double Haven, over a mile in extent, one of the best anchorages in Mirs Bay, is completely landlocked, and has an average depth of 7 fathoms over a mud bottom. There are three entrances:

Chut mun, between Crescent and Double Islands, having a least depth of 3½ fathoms, and 70 yards wide at its narrowest part, which is just eastward of Ku lun shek (Unicorn rock), a peaked rock, 22 feet high, jutting out from the shore of Tung wan to.

Deep Pass, between Lo kwai wan to (Crescent Island) on the east, and Tui mui chau and Crooked Island on the west, has depths of 11 to 15 fathoms; it is just over 200 yards wide and clear of danger.

Tsing chau la, the northwestern entrance, between Sandy Point and Table Island, is 400 yards wide, with depths of 6<sup>2</sup>/<sub>4</sub> fathoms.

Tsing cheuk (Table Island), Fung cheuk chau, and several other islands are situated on the western side of the entrance from the northward.

Dangers.—Village rock, which dries 6 feet, lies at the extremity of a rocky ledge extending 450 yards southward of Crooked Island and 110° 700 yards from Sandy Point, which point is foul to the distance of 200 yards.

Middle Ground, 350 yards long in an east and west direction and 100 yards broad, having near its western end a rock with a depth of 6 feet, lies 1,400 yards 152° from Sandy Point. Two rocks, drying 7 and 3 feet, respectively, are situated 200 yards southward of Yuen tsz chek, and 350 yards northwestward of Middle Ground.

Fu yung cheuk tau, a rocky ledge with depths of from 6 to 20 feet, and on which is a rock that dries 4 feet, extends nearly 400 yards southeastward from Fu yung cheuk.

Woodman reef, with 2 feet least water, extends 300 yards north-westward from Snake Island.

Horley rock, with a depth of 5 feet, lies 750 yards 59° from Snake Island.

Most of the islands are surrounded by reef, as charted.

Crooked Harbor, westward of Crooked Island, and northwestward of Double Haven, with which it is connected by Tsing chau la, is over a mile in length, and affords good anchorage in 6 to 7 fathoms, mud. The eastern shore is free from danger; off the western shore are several islets, of which Ap cheuk (Robinson Island), the northernmost, at the entrance, is 86 feet high, and has a reef extending 400 yards northeastward from it.

Young Hebe Shoal, with 3 fathoms least water, lies 1,750 yards 357° from the northern point of Crooked Island, midway between it and the northern shore of Mirs Bay. The bank, with depths of

4½ fathoms, on which it is situated, extends to within ½ mile of the northern shore of Mirs Bay, and between its southern end and Chek kok tau, the north point of Crooked Island, is a channel 1,000 yards wide, with depths of about 9 fathoms.

Starling Inlet, westward of Crooked Harbor, extends for 3 miles from Cheung pai tau (Ledge Point) in a southwesterly direction, with a breadth of about \( \frac{3}{4} \) mile, the depths gradually decreasing to its head, which is shallow.

There are three patches of 3 fathoms on the northern side of the approach, within the 3-fathom curve, off Im tin customhouse, but in the inlet there are no dangers outside the 2-fathom curve.

The town of Sha tau kok, where there is a Chinese customhouse, stands on its western shore; and a British police station is situated on the northern shore at U shek kok, at the head of the inlet.

The pawnshop tower and customhouse flagstaff at Sha tau kok, as well as a flagstaff and the police station at the head of the inlet, are conspicuous objects.

Northern shore of Mirs Bay.—Eastward of Im tin Town is a prominent point, steep-to; in the bight eastward of it is Peak Rock, 63 feet high, surrounded by sunken rocks, some of which dry at low water. Thence eastward the shore and also the bay are free from dangers, with depths of 7 to 9 fathoms.

Sha ne chung, with a customhouse, lies in the northeastern corner, whence the coast turns southeastward to Albion Point, off which is Peng chau.

Peng chau (Lat. 22° 32′ 30″ N., Long. 114° 25′ 30″ E.), from 100 to 138 feet in height, is a crescent-shaped island about a mile in length; its northwestern and southern sides are bold and fringed by reef to the distance of 200 yards and its eastern side is shallow to a distance of nearly 400 yards. A rock awash at low water lies 200 yards northward of its eastern extremity. A patch of 4 fathoms lies about ½ mile southward of its southern extremity.

The geological formation of the island is different from that of the adjacent land, being alluvial, and its beaches are of shale stones.

Aspect—East cone, a remarkable peak, 745 feet high, lies east-northeastward of Peng chau, and on the nothern part of the isthmus dividing Mirs from Taipung Bay; this isthmus is 1.3 miles across, and low.

Peng chau Road.—There is good anchorage in 7 fathoms during the northeast monsoon between it and the mainland northeastward, but it is much obstructed by fishing stakes.

Islets.—There is a peaked rock or islet, 40 feet high, with sunken rocks around it near the shore, west-northwest of East Cone; and there is one 50 feet high at 1,200 yards westward of the customhouse

in the bay 1.3 miles southward of East Cone, the water being all shallow within it.

A shoal, with a least depth of 4½ fathoms, lies 900 yards westward of the 50-foot islet, with depths 5½ to 8 fathoms around.

Mirs Point.—The coast from the islet trends southward to Mirs Point, 5.5 miles distant, close off which is Griffin Rock, 50 feet high. There are no off-lying dangers between. The land within the point rises to the height of 1,284 feet; at about a mile eastward of the rock and 400 yards offshore are some rocks, the point within which is perforated.

There is a boundary beacon near the point.

Caution is required to avoid the numerous fishing platforms on stakes in 6 to 9 fathoms, especially at night.

Tides and tidal streams.—In Tide Cove, southwestern corner of Mirs Bay, it is high water, full and change, at 9h. 20m. (approximately); springs rise 8 feet; at neaps the water remains nearly at the same level. A double high tide is experienced at times in the northwestern part of Mirs Bay. The first high water occurs three to four hours before the second high water, with a fall of about 1 foot in the interval.

There is a strong indraft into Mirs Bay and Rocky Harbor during the flood stream; in the bay the streams are almost inappreciable.

Directions.—No special directions are necessary for entering the various anchorages in Mirs Bay; the dangers with clearing marks have been described with the approaches and anchorages in the order in which they occur.

Offing streams.—The ebb stream runs southward along the western shore of the approach to Mirs Bay, and a sailing vessel working to windward against a southwesterly wind should keep near the land passing between Ninepin Group and Lamtong; but there is a very strong set eastward from Lema Channel when it opens.

During August and part of September from the eastward of Lema Islands it is difficult to work along shore westward; therefore, either stand off to the southward or anchor temporarily in Mirs Bay, easterly winds being usually frequent in these months near the coast.

Coast—Aspect.—The coast of the peninsula separating Mirs and Bias Bays trends east-northeastward 8 miles from Mirs Point to Teyi Point; Coast Islet, about 2.3 miles eastward of Mirs Point, lies 600 yards off the western point of a sandy bay. There is another sandy bay nearly 3 miles eastward of Coast Islet; White Rock, which is remarkable, lies ½ mile eastward of the eastern entrance point of this bay. The peninsula is mountainous, and reaches in Chiyung shan a height of 2,810 feet, with a peak of 2,630 feet in height between it and Teyi Point. At 6 miles eastward of Mirs Point, and separated

from the peninsula by a channel about 1.5 miles in width, is the Tuni ang Group.

Tuni ang, the northern island, is about 2 miles in length, east and west, 1 mile in breadth, and its southern part rises in a cone to the height of 960 feet; islets and rocks, with foul ground around, extend about 1,800 yards westward of the northwestern point of the island; Net Islet, the nearest, is sugar-loaf shaped; Peak rock, 80 feet high, lying ‡ mile westward of Net Islet, appears like two islets (shown as two in the plan) with a shingle beach connecting them; a rocky ledge extends 800 yards northwestward of Peak rock, near the northern edge of which there are rocks always above water.

The channel between Tuni ang Island and Teyi Point is clear, with the exception of the rocks above mentioned. Cone Islet and an islet westward of it are each about 400 yards southward of Tuni ang.

Samun Island is 1.3 miles in length, northeast and southwest, about 800 yards in breadth, 268 feet high, and distant 1 mile southward from Tuni ang; the channel between it and Cone Islet is not quite 400 yards wide, with 8 fathoms water in the fairway.

Anchorages.—In the northeast monsoon junks anchor in 9 fathoms, southward of Net Islet and of Peak rock, and abreast a fort on Tuni ang, but the ground is foul within 400 yards of the fort point.

The best anchorage is in Samun Road, westward of the southwestern point of Cone Islet in 7 to 8 fathoms, and sheltered from winds from between northwest, through north, to south.

During southwesterly winds there is anchorage in 9 and 10 fathoms on the northern side of Tuni ang, and also in 10 to 12 fathoms northeastward of Cone Islet, southern side of Tuni ang.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Tuni ang, at 9h. 0m.; springs rise 5½ feet.

Single Islet (Lat. 22° 24′ 30″ N., Long. 114° 40′ 00″ E.), about 1.8 miles south-southeastward of Samun Island, is 200 feet high, with a rounded top.

Akong, a remarkable pyramidal rock, 100 feet high, lies 1,200 yards northeastward of Single Islet, with 15 fathoms between.

Rock.—A rock with a depth of 2¾ fathoms, which rises abruptly from 13 fathoms, lies 34°, about 1 mile from Akong.

Bias Bay.—The approach from the southward to Bias Bay is between Tuni ang Islets and Mendoza Island, about 11 miles apart.

The entrance to the bay is between Teyi Point and Bias Point, 8 miles northeastward; the bay extends thence northward and northeastward for about 17 miles, to its head, where is the village of Fan lo kong. A chain of islands fronts its western shore, occupying nearly half the bay, and leaving a clear passage between Lokaup Island and

Bate Island off the eastern shore, about 3.3 miles wide, with depths of 8 fathoms. The western shore is indented by two large bays, at the head of the southern of which is Taipung Harbor; the northern is Dumbell Bay.

The bottom is of mud, and there are no dangers outside the 3-fathom curve except Thornton rock, 1 foot high, situated ½ mile northward of Bate Island on the eastern side, and Harry rock northward of the Pillars on the western side, and nearly abreast.

Middle rocks, awash at high water, are situated on the western side of the fairway of approach, 42°, distant 3.3 miles from Tuni ang, and nearly 4 miles eastward of Teyi Point. A reef, which breaks at low water, lies 600 yards southwestward of the rocks.

Fishing stakes.—The whole of the upper part of the bay, from Narrow Islet to its head, Fan lo kong Harbor, is often thickly studded with strong fishing stakes connected with stout rope gear, which are serious obstacles to navigation by night. A clear passage may be found on the eastern side of the bay, near Tsang chau.

Taipung Harbor, on the southwestern side of the bay, so named from the walled town Taipung on its northern shore, although contracted, affords good shelter to moderate-sized vessels, except with easterly winds. On the northern side of the harbor is Cone Hill, off which a shallow flat extends ½ mile; the southern side, which is bold-to, must therefore be kept aboard. Vessels above 15 feet draft should not proceed further westward than the third point on the southern side, as the head of the harbor is shallow.

**Dumbell Bay**, the inlet northward of Taipung Harbor, trends westward 6 miles from Big Island, and has a general depth of 2 to 3 fathoms.

Islands and dangers—Lokaup Island, the southernmost of the chain of islands in Bias Bay, is about 2 miles long, and nearly separated in two places; the highest part, 330 feet above the sea, is on the southern portion; off Pyramid Point, its southern extremity, are some pointed rocks. A reef extends 800 yards from the northern point of Lokaup, near the northern end of which is Lokaup rock, 4 feet high.

There is anchorage on either side of the island, according to the direction of the wind.

There are six islets around Lokaup, three on the southwest, two on the north, and one on the east, the latter named Flat or Cake Island. The Pillars, the northern islet 89 feet in height, is remarkable from two square pillars on its southern side.

Harry rock, with a depth of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  fathoms, and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to 7 fathoms around, is situated with the Pillars bearing 166°, distant 900 yards.

Middle Group, about 1 mile northward of the Pillars, consists of six islets. Green Islet, 262 feet high, the southern, has Hat rock

close southwestward of it, and there is a rock with 21 fathoms water 350 yards eastward of it.

Square Islet, 106 feet high, is about 800 yards north-northeastward of the eastern end of Green Islet, whence Hole Islet, 87 feet, Red Islet, 255 feet, and Tree Islet, 117 feet high, continue northward for about 1.3 miles.

Reef Islet, 179 feet high, lies about a mile northward of Green Islet; there is a reef that breaks at low water ‡ mile southeastward of it, and a rock, awash at low water, 600 yards northward of it.

Harbor Group consists of nine islets; the southern are the Twins, two small islets, 106 feet high, situate about 1,800 yards northward of Tree Islet; at ½ mile northeastward of the Twins is Shoal Islet, 236 feet high, with rocky ground extending 600 yards northwestward from it, on some parts of which the depth is only 3 feet. At ½ mile westward of the Twins is Tree-a-top Islet, 97 feet high, with Sugarloaf Island, 320 feet high, ½ mile farther westward.

Fairway rocks, awash at low water, lie nearly 1,200 yards south-westward of Tree-a-top Islet.

Narrow Islet,  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile long, north and south, 400 yards wide and 281 feet high, is 600 yards northward of Shoal Islet. A shoal with  $2\frac{3}{4}$  fathoms water extends west-northwestward nearly a mile from between Shoal and Narrow Islets, and there is a  $2\frac{1}{4}$ -fathom patch a mile westward of Narrow Islet.

Round Islet, 198 feet high, lies 500 yards northward of Narrow Islet, with a depth of 4½ fathoms between them; about 200 yards northward of it is Flat rock, nearly awash and steep-to. At 1,200 yards northwestward of Round Islet is Cone Islet, 113 feet high, surrounded by reefs; and groups of islets and rocks extend west-northwestward from Round Islet to the mainland northward of Dumbell Bay.

Big Island, 1,200 yards northeastward of the southern point of Dumbell Bay, is about 1,600 yards long, 800 yards wide, and 364 feet high. North Tree Islet, 132 feet high, is close off its northern side, and 600 yards farther northward is North rock, a flat rock with a reef, which shows only at low water. Sand Cay, a low rock surrounded by sand, lies 800 yards northwestward of Big Island, and there is a rock awash at high water near the southern side of Big Island.

Fisherman rock, nearly in mid-channel between Big Island and the main, shows at half tide.

Low Islet, 125 feet high, with another islet immediately north-westward of it, lies about 1.3 miles northward of Cone Islet; Kai pan rock, over which there is less than 6 feet at low water, lies 253°, 1 mile from Low Islet. For others westward, see the chart.

79795—15——34

Eastern shore—Bias Point, the eastern point of entrance to Bias Bay is the extremity of a peninsula with three peaks, the eastern and highest being 380 feet in height.

A rocky ridge extends about 1,200 yards south-southwest of the point, with a rock 3 feet high at its extremity, and others of 35 feet and 5 feet nearer the point. The point is foul to a distance of 500 yards westward of it. There is a flagstaff on the point, and there is a conspicuous sand patch, and also a glass-factory chimney in the bight northward of it.

The coast northward, from Bias Point to Whaler Point, is fronted by shallow water, including Triple Islet.

A rock with 8 feet water is situated 1,300 yards eastward of Bias Point.

Bate Island, 293 feet high, and wooded, is situated 1.5 miles westward of Bias Point; it is 1,400 yards long, north and south, and ½ mile broad. Foul ground extends 300 yards from the northern side, on the outer part of which is situated Maung pai, a rock awash.

Thornton rock, 1 foot high, lies 1,200 yards north-northeastward of the northern extremity of Bate Island.

Little Bate Island, a bare rock 55 feet high, is situated 600 yards southeastward of Bate Island, with depths of from 4½ to 8 fathoms in the channel between.

**Depths.**—In the channel between Bate Island and the foul ground off Bias Point are depths of from  $3\frac{3}{4}$  to 7 fathoms, mud and sand.

Triple Islet, with its highest and southern peak, 147 feet high, lies ½ mile offshore at 2.3 miles northward of Bate Island; at 200 yards eastward of its southern part is a rock awash at low water.

There is anchorage in the northeast monsoon, westward of Triple Islet, in about 6 fathoms.

Coast.—Northward of Whaler Point the eastern shore is fronted by shallow water out to a line joining the point with Tsang chau; near the shore there are numerous sunken rocks extending a distance of 2 miles southward of that island.

Tsang chau, a flat-topped, inconspicuous islet, 95 feet high, and about 670 yards long in an east and west direction, is situated 1.5 miles southward of the entrance to Fan lo kong; a narrow bank of stones, which dries, extends 300 yards from its northeastern extremity, and some rocks above water lie off the western end. A small islet, 64 feet high, and on which there is a conspicuous tree, is situated 300 yards southward of Tsang chau.

Fan lo kong Harbor is the head of Bias Bay; it is about 5 miles in length, 1.3 miles in breadth, with a depth of about 3½ fathoms over the central portion of it. It is barred by a flat, which extends across its entrance from Buffalo Point and Tsang chau, with a lowwater depth of 2¾ fathoms. The depths are under 6 feet for 1.5

miles off the town of Fan lo kong at its head. This is said to be the best anchorage in Bias Bay during a typhoon.

Aspect.—The harbor is surrounded by high hills. Sao chai shan, on the northern side, is 1,374 feet high, and the ranges near the southern side of the harbor attain an elevation of about 1,000 feet.

The hills within those on the southern side are high and well cultivated. Mount Bisbee, 1,989 feet high, and Mount Hewett, 1,918 feet high, are conspicuous.

There are numerous small villages on these hills, and the valleys between are well cultivated.

Buffalo Point, the southern entrance point of Fan lo kong Harbor, is situated 1 mile east-northeastward of Tsang chau, and from thence the coast, formed by rocky points and fronted by mud flats, trends northeastward to the head of the harbor.

Tai pai tau, the north entrance point of Fan lo kong Harbor, is a high rocky point, with rocks above water lying 150 yards off it; the 1-fathom curve extends from 400 to 800 yards offshore eastward of it, toward the head of the harbor.

Fan lo kong is situated on a well-cultivated plain, backed by high hills, and with a population of about 4,000, and a resident magistrate.

Supplies.—Fowls, eggs, and fruit are abundant, but wood is scarce. Fresh water for washing purposes can be obtained.

Communication.—There is daily communication by steam launches between Hongkong and Dumbell Bay, on the western side of Bias Bay.

Port Reef, with 4 feet water, lies on the northern side of the bar, at 900 yards southeasward of Tai pai tau.

• Northern shore of Bias Bay.—At 1 mile northwestward of Tai pai tau the coast becomes low and sandy for about 2.5 miles to Wu shan tau, a prominent headland 360 feet high.

Sai pai rock, with 5 feet water, and 2 fathoms around, lies 1,600 yards off the joss house in the bay westward of Tai pai tau.

Fu chau is a small islet, 130 feet high, connected with the mainland at low water, situated \(\frac{2}{4}\) mile westward of Wu shan tau.

Po top chau, 85 feet high, with a pagoda on its summit, lies about 700 yards off the northern shore of the bay, at about 4.3 miles westward of Tai pai tau, with sunken rocks extending southwest of it.

**Directions.**—Approaching Bias Bay the only danger, and that is generally visible, is Middle rocks, which will be avoided by keeping Bate Island northward of 6° until the summit of Mendoza Island boars southward of 96°.

Thence, in the northeast monsoon period, proceed up the bay to an anchorage in 5 to 6 fathoms, about a mile westward of Triple Island, on the eastern shore, or to Fan lo kong Harbor, at the head of the bay, but there is anchorage all over the eastern part of the bay in this monsoon, according to draft.

In the southwest monsoon there is anchorage on the western shore in and off Tai pung Harbor in any required depth.

There are several populous villages on the eastern shore where small supplies might be obtained, as well as at the head of the bay before mentioned.

Tides.—It is high water, full and change, at Tsang chau at 9h. 46m.; springs rise  $9\frac{1}{2}$  feet, and neaps rise  $7\frac{1}{2}$  feet. The tides are irregular, a double high water being observed in October and November, the second occurring from  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 hours later than the first, and the water level falling about 1 foot between the two.

This double tide was not so marked at the lower high water nor at neaps.

Tidal streams.—The directions of the tidal streams turn with the high and low waters by the shore, attaining at springs a velocity of  $\frac{3}{4}$  knot.

Mendoza Island lies in the eastern approach to Bias Bay, at 7.5 miles southeastward of Bate Island; it is 480 feet high, about a mile in extent, and from some directions shows two peaks rather like a saddle; shelter may be obtained from southwesterly winds on its northeastern side. On its western side is an islet, with a boat channel between.

Tsinku Islet, 167 feet high, lies 1,200 yards northward of Mendoza, with depths of 11 fathoms between; near its center is a remarkable cleft.

Coast—Fokai Point, 3.8 miles northeastward of Mendoza, is the southeastern extremity of a promontory connected with the main by a low, sandy isthmus; the promontory is 670 feet high and appears from a distance as an island on easterly or westerly bearings. On the hill over the southwestern point is a fort.

On the northwestern point of Fokai is a fort, with a tall chimney on the hill beyond it; northward of the fort is a creek, which runs northward through the sandy isthmus and which junks enter at high water.

Middle rock, 10 feet high, lies 1,200 yards westward of the southwestern point of Fokai Promontory and may be passed on either side.

Harlem Bay, westward of Fokai Isthmus and Promontory, affords anchorage, in the northeast monsoon, northward of Hebe Islet in any convenient depth of water.

Hebe Islet, 70 feet high, is flat topped, and is situated on a shallow flat extending from a ledge of rocks, covered at high water, which extends 600 yards northeastward of it. A 3½-fathom rocky patch lies 600 yards southwestward of Hebe Islet.

Supplies of fish and vegetables are usually obtainable from the native villages.

Tidal streams.—In April the current off Bias Bay was found to be setting constantly westward, its rate, which did not exceed 1 knot, increasing with the flood. When the monsoon drift current recedes from the coast tidal influences prevail, and the flood stream is said to set westward and the ebb eastward.

Directions.—Entering Harlem Bay from the eastward, round Fokai Point at the distance of about ½ mile. With easterly winds in a sailing vessel of moderate size pass eastward of Middle rock and fetch the anchorage without tacking, avoiding the 3½-fathoms patch southwestward of Hebe Islet; a large vessel should pass westward of Middle rock.

Offlying rocks—Whale rocks, 113°, distant 6.3 miles from Fokai Point, are two rocks, on which the sea sometimes breaks, with depths of 12 fathoms close around.

Pauk piah, a flat rock about 25 feet high, lies 90°, distant 6.5 miles from Fokai Point and 13° from Whale rocks.

Pedro Blanco (Tai sing cham) (Lat. 22° 19′ 00″ N., Long. 115° 07′ 30″ E.).—This rock, 140°, 18.5 miles from Fokai Point, is about 130 feet high, steep-to at the distance of ½ mile, with deep water beyond; on northerly bearings it appears as two rocks; the summit is white, hence its name.

For the Coast of China northeastward of Fokai Point see Asiatic Pilot, Vol. III.

	Page.	1	Page.
A Rock, Kak Ba	280	An koh wan	138
A chau, Soko	417	An Thoi Bay, Island	155
A mio, village	354	An Yo Point	242
Aberdeen Harbor	501		242
, anchorage	501	Anamba Islands	81
—————, directions	501		81
, tides	501	, general remarks	81
Abong, Pulo	99	, population	81
Actæon Island	444	, protectorate	81
Adran Island	230	, supplies	81
Adong, Gunong	84	, tides	82
Adventure Bank	432	, winds and weather	82
Afo shao Island	299	Ang Hin, anchorage	177
Ah gan	396	Angiang city	191
Ai chau, Lantau Island	418	Province	191
Ai kong Creek	459	Angkor, ancient city of	191
Aigle Island	291	Angle Islet	294
Aigrettes Island 354	, 358	Angtong, Koh	139
—, Chenal des	358	Ania, Pulo	86
Ak hoi	304	Aniak, Pulo	86
Akar, Pulo	99	Anam Coast, currents	209
Akong Rock	<b>5</b> 15	, caution	209
Alabaster Rocks	167	, fogs	209
Alacrity Bank	125		209
Alarm Bank	103	, typhoons	209
Albion Point	513	, signals	51
Aldrich Bay	479	, winds 48	5, 209
Alexandra Bank	106	Province, general remarks 32	
Alexander Rock	504	————, trade	32
Alhambra Rocks	170	—, Bancs d', light	278
Alouette Rock, buoy	359	Antaniu, Pulo	89
Althea Bank	214	Antelope Reef	124
Amazon Shoal	214	Anung hoi Creek	432
Ambong Reef	70	————— Hill, point	432
Amboyna Cay	107	Peak	432
, anchorage	107	Aor, Pulo	73
———, tides	107	Actibon Bay	143
American Reach, Whampoa	436	—— lai	143
Amherst Point, light	433	Ap chai wan	479
Amphitrite Group	121	Apli pai	500
An giang city	191	Aplichai Tongue	500
An Hoa River	245	Aplichau Island	500
An kang shan Hill	369	anchorago	500

	Page.		Page.
Apowan, village	281	Bak Islet	228
Arche Islet	291	—— Lieu	190
—— pass	286	Ninh	270
Arequiér Rock	305	Baker Hill, Hainan	319
Arethusa Reef	72	Bakli Bay, village	328
Aride Isle	116	Baksha Banks	337
Arroyo Chinois	206	—— Point	334
———, signal station	206	, village, Hainan	334
Arroyo de l'Avalanche	206	, Leichau	341
Artillery Island	435	Ballast Island, West River	377
Asadang Light	176	Baltu Rakil	133
Asiatic petroleum wharf	487	Baluntao, Tanjong	99
Aspic Pass, depths	291	Bamboo Island, Kong mun	379
Rock	150	— River, Pe kiang	405
Ass's Back Mountains	220	—, town, Whampoa	436
— Ears, Kaipong	412	Ban cha am Railway	28
, Tioman	74	—— Dara	187
, Tourane	247	— Koh Chang	165
Assistance Rock	500	— Koh Paw	164
Attopeu, railway	240	—— Pae	171
Au chau Islands	432	—— Prah	
— ti, Ching ki	382	—— Sarai	175
Avalanche, de l'	206	— Yao River.	167
Ayam, Pulo	85	Banane Islet	288
Ayer Abu, Pulo	88	Bancs d' Anam, light	278
Bandong, Telok	92	Bandon Bight	140
	96	. •	140
—— Bini, Telok	185		193
Ayuthea	100	Bandong, village, Mekong	190
·		Dana Vuo	965
		Bang, Kua	265
В.	901	— Chak Railway	184
B. B Island, Kak Ba	281	Chak Railway	184 173
B. B Island, Kak Ba Ba Binh, village	236	—— Chak Railway —— Kolem —— Pak Kong River	184 173 179
B. B Island, Kak Ba	236 210	Chak Railway	184 173 179 170
B. B Island, Kak Ba	236 210 210	—— Chak Railway  —— Kolem —— Pak Kong River —— Pla soi, mount	184 173 179 170 70, 179
B. B Island, Kak Ba	236 210 210 194		184 173 179 170 70, 179
B. B Island, Kak Ba Ba Binh, village Ba Ké Cape, shoals Ba lai River Lakh Dong	236 210 210 194 268		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape. ——————————, shoals. Ba lai River. ————————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143
B.  B Island, Kak Ba  Ba Binh, village  Ba Ké Cape  ——————, shoals  Ba lai River  —— Lakh Dong  —— long Canal  —— Mun Island	236 210 210 194 268 151 297		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 177 143
B.  B Island, Kak Ba.  Ba Binh, village.  Ba Ké Cape.  ——————, shoals.  Ba lai River.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 177 143 221
B.  B Island, Kak Ba.  Ba Binh, village.  Ba Ké Cape.  ——————, shoals.  Ba lai River.  —— Lakh Dong.  —— long Canal.  —— Mun Island.  —— tak mouth.  Baba, Pulo.	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99	—— Chak Railway.  —— Kolem.  —— Pak Kong River.  —— Pla soi, mount.  —— —— , town 1'  —— Pra, town.  Bang Pra, supplies.  —— San, village.  Bangai, village.  Bangkok, city.  —— —— , anchorage.	184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184
B.  B Island, Kak Ba.  Ba Binh, village.  Ba Ké Cape.  ———————, shoals.  Ba lai River.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72	—— Chak Railway.  —— Kolem.  —— Pak Kong River.  —— Pla soi, mount.  —— —— —— , town 1.  —— Pra, town.  Bang Pra, supplies.  —— San, village.  Bangai, village.  Bangkok, city.  —— —— , anchorage.  —— —— , climate.	184 173 179 170 70, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188
B.  B Island, Kak Ba  Ba Binh, village  Ba Ké Cape  ——————, shoals  Ba lai River  —— Lakh Dong  —— long Canal  —— Mun Island  —— tak mouth  Baba, Pulo  Babi, mid, north  ——, Pulo	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72	—— Chak Railway.  —— Kolem.  —— Pak Kong River.  —— Pla soi, mount.  —— —— , town 1'  —— Pra, town.  Bang Pra, supplies.  —— San, village.  Bangai, village.  Bangkok, city.  —— —— , anchorage.  —— —— , climate.  —— —— , population.	184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188
B.  B Island, Kak Ba.  Ba Binh, village.  Ba Ké Cape.  ——————, shoals.  Ba lai River.  —— Lakh Dong.  —— long Canal.  —— Mun Island.  —— tak mouth.  Baba, Pulo.  Babi, mid, north.  ——, Pulo.  Bacht Long VI Island.	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282	— Chak Railway — Kolem — Pak Kong River — Pla soi, mount — — — , town — Pra, town Bang Pra, supplies — San, village Bangai, village Bangkok, city — — , anchorage — — , climate — — , population — supplies	184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape. ——————————, shoals. Ba lai River. ————————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440	— Chak Railway — Kolem. — Pak Kong River. — Pla soi, mount. — — —, town 1' — Pra, town. Bang Pra, supplies. — San, village. Bangai, village. Bangkok, city. — —, anchorage. — —, climate. — —, population. — —, supplies. — —, tides.	184 173 179 170 70, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185 187
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape. ——————————, shoals. Ba lai River. ————————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196		184 173 179 170 70, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185 187
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape. ——————————, shoals. Ba lai River. ————————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116		184 173 179 170, 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185 187 183
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape.  —————————, shoals. Ba lai River.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116 93		184 173 179 170, 179 177 177 143 221 184 186 185 187 183 181
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape.  —————————, shoals. Ba lai River.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116 93 155	— Chak Railway — Kolem — Pak Kong River — Pla soi, mount — — — , town — Pra, town Bang Pra, supplies — San, village Bangai, village Bangkok, city — — , anchorage — — , climate — — , population — — , supplies — — , tides — — , trade — — , weather — River — — , caution	184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185 183 181
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116 93 155 232		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 185 187 183 181 182 181
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116 93 155 232 245		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185 187 183 181 182
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape.  —————————, shoals. Ba lai River.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116 93 155 232 245 223		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 185 187 183 181 182 28
B. B Island, Kak Ba. Ba Binh, village. Ba Ké Cape.  ———————————————————————————————————	236 210 210 194 268 151 297 193 99 72 72 282 440 196 116 93 155 232 245		184 173 179 170 170, 179 177 143 221 184 186 188 185 187 183 181 182

	Page.		Page.
Bangnara	26	Belcher Reach, light	435
Bangtaphan	186	, tide gauge	435
Banlam Point, village	144	Ridge, Hongkong	480
Bantan Cape	243	Belelei Islet	70
Bao Chang	207	Belier Island	323
Baou Tao Island	285	Ben Dinh, landing	197
Bar Island (K. Chula)	168	Ben ghé Branch, Saigon	206
Bara Rock	76	Nhau mouth	193
, Telok	97	Bengali Bay, Kak Ba	281
Barawa, Selat	98	—— Pass	351
Baria, village	198	Bennet Rock	90
Barnes Patch	91	Berela, Pulo	98
Barra Fort, light	420	Berhala, Pulo	77
Barrier Entrance, Canton delta	427	Berserah (Beserah), Telok, village.	78
— Rapid, Liau chau	399	Besson Mount	260
Barsak Province	25	Bethune Island	444
Basalt Island	506	Bias Bay	515
Bassac State	35	, directions	519
Bassok, or Kangio, Bank	199	, islands and dangers	516
Bastion Cape	316	—, tides	517
Batak Mouth	193	——, tidal streams	517
Batangan Cape	243	point	518
Bate Head, Mirs Bay	508	Biches Island	292
— Island, Bias Bay	518	Bidang, Koh	166
————, Little	518	Bien Hoa Province	195
Rock, Canton River	433	— Shon Island	264
Battambang Province	25	Big Island, Bias Bay	517
Batu Bini	99	Biliba, Pulo	94
— Birla	97	Bin Tui	262
—— ——, Selat	97	Bing Koi Bay	202
—— Itam	98		229
, islet	97	, dangers, directions	229
— Karang Sinki	91		239
T old		Binh dinh, city	
— Laki	99	—— Tan, village	224
Mamong	92	Binkang Bay	227
— Rakit	99	Bird Rock, Ladrones	416
Bau cum sha	312	Birds Nest Rocks, fort	444
—— Creek	167	————, buoy	444
Bau koh pau	164	Bisbee Mount	519
Baua, Pulo	87	Black Point, Castle Bay	424
Bay Island, Riem	160	River, Yunnan	268
Islet, Rocky Harbor	506	— Rock, Batangan	243
Bayard Island	289	, Ladrones	414
—— Fort 35		, Lon	223
—— Port.	287	——————————————————————————————————————	243
Beating China Shoal	134	————, Tien Pak	363
Beaufort Island, Hongkong 47		———, Tien sha	247
Beaumont Island	357	rocks, Gopai narrows	342
— Port	357	narrows	363
Bécassines Point	350	Black Jack Islands	241
Bedung, Pulo	130	—— Water River	398
Belayer, Tokong	93	Blackhead Hill, signal station	490
Belcher Island, Canton	440	Blair Harbor	72

	Page.		Page.
Blake Point, light	433	Brala, Pulo	80
Blenheim Passage	441	Branch Shoal	476
———, depths	441	Brandon Bay	263
————, barriers	441	—— Channel	291
, directions	444	—— Rocks	154
—— Point	432	Brazen Drum Rapid	389
Blinao, Tokong	92	Breaker Reef, Mirs Bay	508
Blind Boy Pass	408	Breda Bank	215
Bluff Head, Canton River	422	Breid Shoal	133
———, Tolo	510	Bremen Bank	120
— Island, Rocky Harbor	506	Bremer Channel	432
Point, Hainan W	328	Point	445
, Lantau	423	Brickkiln Creek	458
Hui ling san	365	Briere Island	226
, Taitam	502	Brine Island	454
Blumut Range	22	Brioche Islet	29 <b>3</b>
Bo chuei ho	398	Britto Bank, channel within	211
Bo De River	268	Broadway, West River	<b>376</b>
Boat Rock, Namo	368	, directions	377
— Islet, Canton River	426	, shoals	377
Boca Tigris	431	, tides	<b>377</b>
, directions	433	Broken Head	507
Boddam Cove, directions	414	Brothers, Condore	116
, tides	415	, Hainan	316
Bogue Forts, channel	432	—, Lantau	<b>423</b>
Passage	375	—— Point	423
Boisé Islet	293	—, Tron Island	156
Boisee Island	297	Brown Reach	442
Boissieux Island	257	Brownrigg Rock	88
Boiteu, Pulo	99	Brunswick Patches	436
Bokhara Rocks, buoy	476	Bruyères Island	298
Bolton Island	454	— Pass.	298
Bombay Reef, Paracels	120	Baun, Pulo	90
— Castle Shoal.	106	Buffalo Island	241
Bong, Hon	265	— Point.	519
Bonheur Tower	359	Buisson Mount	289
Bonnal Canal	276	Bukit (hill).	
Bonnet Island	232	—— Galing	78
Boole Rock	507	— Gebing.	78
Borie Mount	259	— Mara.	130
Bosse Peak	297	—— Tenga	79
Bosson Islet	102	— Trokit.	130
Botra, Hon	149	—— Tuna.	133
Bouée Rock	237	Bullock Head Gate	417
Bouncer Rocks	415	— Horn Island	370
Bouquet Point	353	—— Point, Delta	454
Bourchier Island		— Rock, West River	384
	433	Bulua Islands	151
Bourayne Channel	293	Bumbi Bluff, cone	156
— Bank, rock  Boutet Fort	225	Bunker Patch	87
	353	Bunsansiah Rock	467
Bower Point	432 76	Buot. Koh	143
LOUVAIL IMN'S	70	. 130000. INVII	110

	Page.		Page.
Buoyage, uniform system	38	Canton River, delta of	451
Burong Rock	76		452
Burrawas Bluff	133	———, pilots	452
Bush Reef, Tolo	510		451
—— Rock, Samit	171		451
Buton Cape	264	————, tidal streams	452
, Pulo	91	Rock, Tourane	248
Button Islet or Rock, Van Fong	228	Canton-Hankau Railway	448
—— Islet, Hainan	325	Kowloon Railway	448
_		Cap Island, Kap sing	470
С.		Cape Clear Rock	158
Cabrita Point	419	South	79
Cachalot Peak	253	Carabine Channel	293
Calcutta Shoal	433	Caravan Point	359
Calliope Point	437	Carpenter Hill, range	312
Cambodia Province, capital of	191	Casemate Islets	289
—, general remarks	33	Casque Pass	292
—— Point	146	Castel Island	295
—— River (see Mekong) 19	0, 191	Castle Islets, Samui	139
—, trade	33	—— Peak Bay 42	4, 472
Cambridge Barrier	436	—— —— Promontory	424
, lights	436	Rock, Hongkong	498
—— Reach	436	Castlereagh Bank	222
— Rock, Kaipong	412	Cathedral Channel	289
Campbell Island	381	Catwicks, The	117
Campement Island	289	Causeway Bay	480
Camraigne Bay	218	Cecir de Mer, Pulo	117
Cannon Ball barrier	409	—— Terre, overfalls	214
Canton, city	446	Censer Gorges	407
, anchorage	440	Center Island	511
—— ——, limits	440	Central Fairway, Hongkong	481
, channels to	435	Central Reef	108
————, climate	449	Summit, Binkang	227
, coal	417	Cha ko, East River	459
, directions, approaching		—— — Bend	434
river 42	27, 429	Cha yu pai	505
, from Hongkong	444	Chabrol Patches	101
, explosives	440	Chai une Island	311
———, mooring buoys	441	Chan, Koh, Siam Gulf, E	166
———, pilots	446	, Siam Gulf, W	143
———, port regulations	441	Chaigneau Island	230
, quarantine	440	Chain Rock, Bogue Pass	432
, railway	448	, light	432
, Shamien concession	447	Chaiya Province	27
, supplies	447	Chameau, Le	166
, tide gauge	441	Chang Islet, Siam Gulf, W	143
————, tides	446	, Koh, Siam Gulf, E	165
, wharves	448	, reported danger west of.	165
— , waterways to West		, channel within	165
River	450	—— cha tsuen	398
—, Pulo	243	chau, town	436
- River See Chu kiang	418	cheun cham	369

	Page.		Page
Chang shan Island	442	China, pilot vessels	4
Channel Island, Hon Ran	158	—, water, use of, caution	4
———, Rong	162	China Sea, general remarks	2
Rock, Long Harbor 486	0, 509	, currents	5
Rocks, Kap sing	476	, passages	6
Chappu Bay	329	, tides	5
Charts, etc., information on 1,3	3, 4, 5	, wind and weather.	4
Charum krung	185	—— Stream, Singora	134
Charlotte Bank	113	Chinese cap	30-
Chat Island	295	fishing vessels, caution re lights	4
Chateau Renaud Channel	291	— territory	3
Island	303	—— town, Saigon.	206
Chau kung		Ching hi Creek.	400
- kwan	379	— ki Creek.	382
— lin Island.	379	—— hii	382
	370		410
— wan	191	kiang	376
	328	lung shan	
Ch'aughua		— lum leng	466
Chauve Mount	228	Ching mae Bay, anchorage	333
Chava Stream	198	———, point, town	333
Cheang cha	387	Ching hue Island	475
—— chau ching	464	Chino village	366
Chék kok tau	513	Chinois, Arroyo	206
Chekam Creek	359	Chinsalchui Point, light	481
Chelaji, Pulo	134	—— Pier	489
Chen wan, Kap sing	470	Chiong kong	384
——, village	470	Chiya Province, river	140
Chenal Islands	289	sand	140
—— des Aigrettes	358	Chiyung shan Mountains	514
—— de l'Estoc	356	Cho ginong	213
Chentabun River	167	Cho lon (Chinese town)	206
———, anchorage	167	Choang chong hiu	393
, depths in	168	Chomporn Bay	142
————, tides	169	Chondong Islet	70
Cheuk, Koh	139	Chong Hill, Mirs Bay	508
Cheung chau, city	400	Chong lui Bay	479
—— pai tau	513	Chong Me san	171
	399	Chong Samit	170
Chi chau, Lafsami	417	Chong P'ra, Lem	133
—— li pai	284	Chu kiang (Canton River) 411	, 418
Chibeh Islet	76	—, aspect	427
Chiengmai, telegraph	185	, caution	419
Chihsien Mission	410	—, channels	435
Chik, Koh, light	167	—, depths to Canton	430
—— chiu wan, village	498	—, directions 420, 427,	
Chiling Pass.	410	—, general remarks	427
Chim, Hon.	259	Chu kiang, making the land	411
— chau, Fung Bay	507	———, pilots	446
Chin chau	364	————, phots	425
——————————————————————————————————————	507	, tides	425
China, buoyage, system of	39	————, tides.————, waterways to Si kiang or	120
	1	West River	450
, diseases	41		450
, open ports (treaty) 35	), 3/2	Chu lu kok	423

	Page.		Page.
Chu ma pai	510	Clump Point, Nau chau	<b>353</b>
Chue tau, anchorage	319	Coal, general	38
kong	318	Coast Islet	514
Chuei pien tsuen	398	Coast Piloting	16
Chuen Island	172	Cochin-China, canals	189
—, Koh, light	172	———, carital of	33
— pi Fort	431	, climate	3 <b>3</b>
——————————————————————————————————————	431	, communication 34	, 193
Point	431	——, general remarks 33	
, tides	431	, inland navigation	189
Chuk chau	378	, trade	34
——————————————————————————————————————	416	, winds, typhoons 45	
— tu aan	416	Cock's Comb, West River	383
— wan shan Island	416	— Crest.	225
	168	— Head Rock	511
Chula, Koh	74	Cockscomb Hill.	311
— Naga Peaks		Coco Island.	233
Chulai Point, peak	144		
Chumai, east cape	250	Cocca-Nut Bay, harbor	198
, west cape	250	Coffin Island	376
—, village	251	Coin Islet	293
Chumpawn (Chumporn) Province.	26	Colline Verte, beacons	354
— town	142	Collinson Barrier	441
Chun Bien Village	233	, lights	441
—— lan (Ch'un lan)	320	— , fog signal	441
————, directions	320	—— Cape, light	477
————, River, town	321	—— Head, rocky harbor	506
— san hummock	363	Collisions, Chinese regulations	40
—— Yan Bay	328	Colosse Island	294
Chunchune Channel	452	Colowan Island	376
—— Creek	453	Comber Rock	463
Chung am kok	499	Cométe Bank, Hainan	327
wan	499	Islet	229
chau, Ladrones	417	Commune Island	291
si, Ladrones	416	Compass, variation	17
—— Island, light	463	Comus Rock, light	442
—— Rock	463	Condor Reef	149
— hue Island	467	Condore Group, Pulo	113
kwang o	478	—, Little	113
saw wan	424	Cone Clump	143
— sui shan	376	— Hill, Da Rang	233
Chung tong	459	, Taipung	516
Chupa Islet	70	—— Island, Chentabun	167
Chut, Hon, light	218	, Wang mun	426
— mun, Mirs Bay	512	—— Islet, Bias Bay	515
Point, village	224	———, Kau lan	371
Cigales Island	301	, Tuni ang	515
Clear, or Ching, River	410	Conic Islet	507
— (Bo De) River	268	Conical Hill, Menara	132
Cliff Rock	208 175		270
Clio Rock, Ladrones		Connon Group.	113
Clocheterie Bank	415		408
	301	Copper River, Pe kiang	302
Clump Island Kamput	455 158	Coq Point, Tien Yen	203
VIUIDD ISBAID, NAIDDIL	105	TORAL DAILK, SHIPOH INTELLER,	400

	Page.	·	Page.
Coral Bank, tides	203	Davaich Head	217
Cornu Island	286	Davis Island	459
Cosmopolitan Dock	489	Dayong, Pulo	84
Coude Island	295	Dayot Bay	23€
Courbet, Port	285	Mount	228
Courier Patch	83	—— Port	230
Cow Island	211	De l'Estoc, channel	356
Coxcomb Hill	472	De la Prize Island	218
Crag Island, Wang mun	426	Deep Bay, Canton River	424
Crapaud Road, rock	287	, Tai oa	367
Creeper Island	378	—— Pass, Hongkong	500
Crescent Island	512	, Mirs Bay	512
—— Group	122	Deep-water Bay, Hongkong	499
, anchorage	122	Deep-Water Point	36
Cricket Island	369	Dekar, Pılo	90
Crochet Pass	287	Dent Hill, La	266
Crooked Harbor	512	Island	293
—— Island	512	Point, Canton	444
Cuarteron Reef	108	Depart Island	162
Cum le pagoda	381	Depond Reef	148
Currents, general, China Sea	8, 57	Deux Chaines Island	301
Currents, Siam Gulf	59	—— Passes Island	292
Cust Rocks, buoy	480	Devils Peak, Hongkong	475
Cylindre Point	356	—— Point	137
C <b>y</b> 2 0		Dewagougse Shoal	147
D.	,	Dgiai Beach	222
D'Aguilar Cape	476	Dhau, Hon	149
D'Entrecasteaux Rock	246	Dhaulle Reef	109
Da Bia Peak	230	Di Loan Church	253
Da Nhai Point	256	Diadème Islands, rocks	295
Da Rang, Kua	232	Dido Bank	121
Dai mouth of Songka	268	Dinh an Mouth	193
Dai thieu	196	Dinh Vu Canal	277
Dale Banks	334	— Island	277
Dam (anchorages).	001	Dinkor, Pulo	91
—— ('hinh	223	Dio, Hon	258
— Lia	223	Discovery Reef, Paracels	120
Lom	223	Great Reef.	109
—— Tré	223	— Small Reef	109
Dama Group, Pulo	149	Distances, on West River	386
Danes Island	435	Do sing Reach	384
Danger Reef, North	112	— town	384
Dangerous Rock, Kak Ba	281	— to Wu chau	384
1.5	$\frac{231}{285}$		384
Danh Do la Island		, buoyage	273
	285	Do Son Peninsula	
Daru, Pulo	84	——————Point	271
Dat, Hon	239	———— tides	273
Datsap River	160	Dog Rock	$\begin{array}{r} 263 \\ 388 \end{array}$
Datu, Gunong	84	Dogs Tail Rapid	230
, Pulo	86	Doi Moi Isle	220
— Sawa Dau. Hon	$\frac{78}{272}$	Doigt Hill	220 295

•	Page.	F	age.
Dom Joao Island	377	East Cone, Mirs Bay	513
Domar, Pulo	83	—— Island, Hainan	324
Dome Island	293	, Panjang	147
Don nai (see Saigon) River	195	—— Patch, Langsuen	141
	200	—— Point, Condore	114
Donai, reef	152	, Fan Rang	216
—, shoal	149	, Hongkong	480
Dong Ba Point	224	—— River (Tung Kiang) 435,	459
— Hoi River, town	255	Au chau	432
—— Ong To	205	— Brother 156,	423
— tranh, light	196	—— ——, Hainan	316
—— Trieu	276	Junk, Bankok	180
Donjon Island	295	— Lamma Channel	502
Don nai River	196	Lan Rock	175
Dot, Hon	265	(London) Reef	108
Double Haven, Mirs Bay	512	Ninepin Islet	503
— Island, Tolo	512	Eastern Channel, second bar, Can-	
, Śi kiang	376	ton River	444
— Peak, Hué	253	Echelle Islet, rock	295
, Tonkin	255	Edgell Island	378
Doubtful Shoal, Vung chau	258	Egeria Rock	99
Douglas Rock, W. Lamma	464	Elbow Island	161
Drummond Island	123	Eldad Reef	110
Dua, Hon	155	Elephant Mount	273
Duchaffaut Channel	295	— Range, Kamput	156
— Shoal	214	Ellen Bangka Rock	163
Duchong Islets	76	Elliott Passage	444
Ducouedic Channel	290	Ellis Rock, Ladrones	416
Dud, Koh	154	Enclume Rock	291
Duff Rock	432	Endau, Sungi	76
Dumbell Bay	516	Enemy Chaser Shoal	134
Duncan Islands	123	Enfant Rock	291
Dundas Island	433	English Reach, Whampoa	436
Dune (Pyramid) Island	225	Entrance Island, Vung Gang	217
Dungun, Sungi	80	—— Patch, Wang mun	426
—, Tanjong	80	Point, Samshui	402
, shoal off	80	Entrecasteaux Rock, D'	246
—, village	80	Entree Island	290
Duong, Hon	258	—— Peak	295
Duong dong, village	155	Profunde.	287
Durai, Pulo	92	Eo, village	258
Dutch Folly Pass	439	Epervier Peak	232
————, light buoys	439	Epieu Islet	287
Dyang Island	74	Escape Creek	
Dyang Island		Escargot Island	291
E.			101
•	500	Esperance Reef	356
East arm, Long Harbor	509	Etna Mount, Hainan 322	
— Bay, Condore	114	Eu, Pulo	., 327 70
———, anchorage	115	Eulo Rocks, village	129
———, dangers	114	Examination anchorages, Hong-	120
————, directions	114	l _	484
—— ——. uaes	115	kong	101

F.	Page.	•	Page.
F Island	281	First Bar Island, light	435
Fa chiau	380	Spit	435
— mi Point, signals	200	Cliffs, West River	456
— piu Reach, rocks	384	Fish Pass	364
Fah yung Hill	333	Fisheries, Kwang chau	358
Fahi, town	336	Fisherman Islands	222
, depths to	335	Rock	517
Fai foh River	246	Fishers Rock	356
Fai Tsi Long Archipelago	283	Five Islands, Hau cheun	369
, dangers	284	anchorage	369
, general remarks	283	————, supplies	369
Fai Tsi Long Bay	290	—— Devils Peaks	137
, in-shore chan-		Finger Mountains	313
nels	292	Fixing position	9
Fairies Bridge	384	Flat Hill, Hainan Strait	326
Fairway Rocks, Bias Bay	517	or Cake Island	516
Falaise Cape	264	Island, East River	460
Falcon Patch	141	—— Islands, Whampoa	435
False Hill, Hainan S	326	Islet, Jones Cove	510
— Ninepin	282	— Reef, Jones Cove	510
—— Pulo Obi	147	—— Point, Hainan	329
— (Sifa) Point	319	Rock, Batangan	243
— Tinhosa	319	——, Bias Bay	517
— Varela	217	——————————————————————————————————————	158
Fan lo kong Harbor	518	—— Rocks, West River	383
	519	Fleming Point	432
, town	519	Flies, The	370
— Rang Bay, river	216	Flora Temple Reef	109
ri Bay, village	213	Flynn Point	510
	366	Fo Fa cheung	396
— si ak Bank	425	Fo tau mun	478
— SI AK DANK	425	Fo tau Point.	503
Fanthit Bay	212	Fo yo kok	500
		Fogia, village	213
Fantome Islet	287	Fog signals	6, 7
Fat shan Branch	' 1	Fogs, Anam Coast.	210
Fati Rock, buoy	439	—, Canton River	449
Favorite Channel	98	—, Fai Tsi Long	297
Federated Malay States	21	Fokai Isthmus, Point	520
Fei loi tze Gorge	406	Fong chuen, city	385
— long tsuen	392	Fongchuen Rock	439
Fenshuitau Beacon	442	Fong Wong	285
Fer à Cheval	295	Forbes Point	454
Fi loy tze	406	Forester Rock	456
— — Monastery	407	Formosa Bank	199
Fiddlers Reach	438	Fort Island, West River	381
Fiery Cross Reef	109		321
Fillette Point	357	—— Point, Chun Lan	
Finger Mount	227	, Tong ho	414 250
— point	265	— Bayard	358 353
Firnenting, Selat	95	—— Boutet	
First Bar, West River	382		352 251
—— ——, Canton River	436 435	—— Nord, Hué —— Portier	251 354
ISIAHU, ITVEL	400	TUTUET	JUT

P	age.		Page.
Forty-ninth Point, Canton River	443	Fuok Binh Kiang	178
Fortin Rock	230	, navigability	198
Four-feet Rock, Ladrones	416	Fury Rocks	476
Fourmi Rock, light, La	166	Futau chau	478
Francis Garnier Rock	195	Fuyen Bay	6-237
Frangé Islet	289		
Frazer Bank	426	<b>G.</b>	
Frazers Hill	401	Gaalong Bay, anchorage	316
French Island, river	437	——, village	316
French Indo-China	189	Gading Rock	72
, buoyage system	38	Gai une, Kaipong	412
————, climate	33	Gain Ba Point	235
communication 35.	193	Mong Point	235
, harbors	31	Galbraith Point	442
, regulations for en-		Gales	50
tering French ports	29	Galing, Bukit	78
, regulations for sub-		Gambir, Pulo	238
marine vessels	29	Gang-hao	190
, political divisions.	28	Ganh Rai Bay	198
————, population	29	Gantang Islet	70
———, railways 31	, 36	Gap Rock	411
rivers	31	———. light	411
, shipping	32	——, signal stations	411
, telegraphs	32	——, storm signals	492
trade	32	Garceau Island	303
— , typhoon anchor-		Gau tau Islet	508
ages	31	Gauze Islet	418
, typhoons 208,	209	Gaven Reefs	110
, signals for	51	Gebang Rocks	71
, winds	208	Gelang, Tanjong	78
Frères, Les	166	Genting, Pulo	89
Front Reach, Whampoa	439	—, Uniot	90
Fu chau, Bias Bay	519	George Island	464
	390	Giá, River, town	150
Fu ho or Kweiling 385,	387	—, village	240
Fu kok (Tron)	155	Gian, Hon	149
Fu li Canal	268	Gifo Island	454
·	273	Giit Islet	75
	453	Gin Drinkers Bay	470
	391	Glamorganshire Rock	210
,	234	Gliga Besar, Tanjong	79
	304	Gnu, Koh	134
	376	Gnueh Cheu	139
, ,	245	Goa tan	390
•	250	Goal Islet	72
	512	Goat Island	246
. •	390	Goddess of Mercy Caves	408
	372	Gok, Hon	265
	507	Golden Sun-Born Pass	422
0	512	Golok River	24
	320	Gom Bight, peninsula	230
	363	Gough Fort, Canton	447
Fuok ai	210	Gopai Point, narrows	341

1	Page.		Page.
Gourde Island	296	Guie chau	310
Grainger Bank	105	Guio Mount, point	213
Grand Bank, Nhatrang	225	Gullet, The	113
—— Pass, Kamput	159	Gully Point, Whampoa	437
Bhudda Temple	269	Gulu, Pulo	130
— Ki Kik Range	245	Gumbong, Pulo	85
Lac	269	Gunjavar Channel	369
Plateau Ledge	351	Gunong Adong	84
—— Singe Island	303	Datu	84
Summit, Haifong	275	— Kwala	155
Grass Island, East River	460	Munjan	99
, Long Harbor	508	Peta	95
Grasscutters Pass	511	Puding	85
Great or East Bay	114	Sama	95
, anchorages. 101	, 115	Gutzlaff Channel	454
, dangers	114	—— Silvassi	85
, directions	114	—— Simangi	97
, tides	115	Susu	157
— Cape, Hainan	325	Tujoh	85
, rock off	325	Gurong Islet	72
—— Pass, Lingyang	382		
Rapid, West River	391	н.	
, distance to	387	H Island, Kak Ba	282
Summit, Tonkin	255	Ha Long Bay	285
Catwick	117		280
—— Ladrone Island	413	, channel to Haifong.	283
Ng chi Range 313	3, 322	Haddington Island	444
Pirate Island	154	Haeshin Rock, buoy	443
Redang Island	130	Hah, Koh	138
— Temple Pass	407	Hai an Bay, village	341
— Tusk Rapid	388	, channel to	270
— West Channel, Canton River.	428	Hai yu Island	367
, freshets	428	Haifong Bank, Navan	216
Green Hill (Colline Verte)	354	Haifong, city	275
Island, Hongkong	473	, anchorage	274
, light	473	, depths to, directions	274
, signal station	. 487	Hainan Bay	338
———, Junk Creek	437	Bluff	338
—— Islet, Bias Bay	517	Head	338
, Rocky Harbor	506	Bank	339
— Point, Namo Harbor	368	—— Island 31	3-331
Griffin Rock	514	—— Strait	331
Grigre Bluff	133	, aspect	344
Grottes Island	287	——, directions	344
Gruff Head	509	, eastern approach, banks.	345
Gua Canal	270	, fairway banks	343
Gua tau	508	, landmarks 33	
Guerite Isle	230	————, general remarks	331
Gueta, Pulo		, north shore	340
Gui tong	364	, anchorages	341
Guia Fort, light	419	, overfalls	347
— — signal station	419	———, south shore	322

	Page.		Page.
Hainan Strait, tidal streams 343	3, 347	Hau tau wan	318
, tides	340	Haucheun Bluff	367
, western approach, banks	345	—— Island	367
, winds	315	road, town	367
Inner Passage	338	Hauqua Point	438
—————— buovs	339	Haute Island	292
	338	Hebe Haven	505
, directions	345	Islet	520
, tidal streams, tides	347	Helen Shoal	124
, tides	340	Heng chau, West River	392
, inshore passage north-		Henriette Islet	287
ward from	342	Pass	287
————, tidal streams.	343	, directions, tides	288
, Middle Channel	345	Heo, Hon	152
————, North Channel	345	Heung chau Bay	422
, South Channel	346	Hewett Mount	519
Hak chau, Lantau	418	Hiang chuei hiu	398
kok tau, light	477	kiang hiu	391
, storm signals	477	Hien Hoa	264
Hale Patch	102	High Bank, West River	385
Hall Point, Whampoa	438	High Cone	426
Ham Long River	191	Island, Rocky Harbor	507
— Ninh, village	155	, Collinson Reach	442
Hamelin Channel	289	, Collinson Reach, lights	442
, tides	289	Rock, Cecir de Mer	118
—— Reef	258	, Printian	131
Hami wan, Lamma	465	—— Rocky Islet, Soko	417
Hamilton Creek, point 442		— Tree point	165
Hamit sui	465	Hill Islet, Lantau	418
Han nai Point	222	Passage; delta	454
Hand Rock	455	Hilly Cape	133
Hankau Rock, Whampoa	438	Hin (rock).	
Hankow Rock, Hongkong	474	—— ai eorp	169
Hanoi City	269	—— Chalan	171
Hapoix (Little) Bay	245	Kadai	173
Hara Islet	242	— Kong nok	176
Harbor Group, Bias Bay	517	Lawp	170
Island, Long Harbor	509	—— Luk kai	174
—————, Ťolo	510	Mun chang	166
Harlem Bay	520	sam mah yeu, light	176
, directions	521	Hiong Po Harbor	329
Harry Rock	516	Hiong Po Point	329
Hat Rock, Bias Bay	516	, village	330
Hatien Canal	153	Ho Lai mun	303
(Kankao) River	152	—— pai, Port Shelter	505
— town	153	—— shan Island	380
Hatsu Coal Mines	290	yune	385
Hau hoi wan	424	Hoa ok Islet	415
— kiang		Hohau, Samshui	403
Hau kong	380	Hoi chau, village	380
Hau sui Bay	330	chi	502
Han sui Crook	331	hau Bay	334

	Page.	I	Page
Hoi hau Bay, tides	335	Hou Mong Thai	15
—— Point	334	— Nai, ledge	222
—— River	335	— Nam Du	149
—— Town	336	— Né	267
, Kua	261	—— Ngai	222
—— Tau	359	—— Nhom	150
— teou, military post	355	— Nieu, anchorage	262
, road	355	Nuong	260
Hoita	328	, inshore channel	260
—, anchorage	328	—— Ong	245
—, town	329	Ran	158
Hokau, village	403	Ré	150
Hole Islands	507	Ro	231
—— Islet, Bias Bay	517	Roi	239
Holland Bank	118	—— Taé, Condore	116
———, clearing marks	119	Niao	116
Holmes Creek	376	Tai-leung	115
Hon (island).		— Tap, Condore	116
—— (See also proper name.)	114	—— Thom	156
—— Bai kan, light	114	— Trai Boi	158
Bong	265	— Tran	241
Botra	149	—— Trang	155 150
— Cha, Condore	115	Tre Tru, Tonkin	264
Chim	$\frac{259}{218}$	—— Truan	261
—— Chut	239	— Truok	149
— Dau	272	— Truong	149
— Dau	149	— Tseu.	258
— Dio	258	— Tu ut	257
do Moi	155	—— Vat	265
— Dot	265	— Vong	265
—— Dua	155	Honan Island	444
— Duong	258	—— Spit, buoy	444
—— Gian	149	, depth on	441
Gok	265	Hong Chong	152
—— Gom Bight	231	—— chu kiang	399
—— — Peninsula	228	kai la	397
— Gué, Condore	114	kiang, northern branch	399
Heo	152	— pikok Islet	332
—— Kan	241	Hongkong, city (Victoria)	488
— Kao, Condore	114	—, colony	36
Kau	257	, communication 37	7, 490
— Kohe Port	229	, population	37
Kolon	150	————, trade	37
—— La	257	, caution re submarines	37
Lao	213	— Harbor	472
—— Lap, Condore	114	, anchorages	483
—— Lon	223		484
—— Matt	261	, prohib	485
—— Mau	149	————, quar	485
—— Mé	265	, coal and coaling wharves	488
—— Mok	149	—— ——, dangers in	479
Mong tai	149	————, depths to	473



	Page.	!	Page
Hongkong Harbor, entrance, east.	475	Hui ling Potoi fort	364
, directions	481	Hui ling san Harbor 3	64, 36
, entrance, west	473	, directions	36
, depths	473	shoals	36
—————, directions 47-	4,475	, island	364
, fairways	481	Hull Rock	148
——, general remarks	472	Hummocks, Hainan	
, lights 479	9, 486	Humpel Hill	310
, limits	472	Hunan Coalfields, Pe kiang	409
———, moorings	484	Hunchback Hills	503
—— , pilots	483	Hung Hao	268
, refuge harbors	486	Kong chau	418
————, signal stations	487	shak Rapid	399
———, signals, searchlights	37	— Yen, town	269
———, submarine cables	485	Huong Mai Peninsula	239
, time signal	487	Hwang tai pai	507
———, tidal streams	483	Hwei chau, town	461
———, tides	482	, river level	461
——, traffic regulations	486	Hyacinth Island	458
—— Island 36, 472		Hydrographic Bulletins	3
, approach, caution	411		`
——————————————————————————————————————	36	I.	
——————————————————————————————————————	497	Ibul Islet	71
————, population	37	Ile aux Nids	236
, standard time	38	Ilissus Rock	234
Hongai Bay	289	Iltis Bank	122
Hongham Bay, Hainan Strait	341	Im cheung, village	400
	341	shan Island	300
——————————————————————————————————————	480	— tin, customhouse	513
Hooper patches	94	Im tin tsz	505
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	288	—————, mission	506
Hopital Island	512		
Horley Rock	137	Impul Passage	87 87
Horn Hill		—, Pulo Index Island	
	353	Indo-China, French	288
Horseshoe Bank		Indus Deals	
Hotspur Shoal	124	Indre Rock	243
House Islet, Ladrones	415	Inland Sea, Singora	136
— Rock	130		73
Howard Rock	99	—— Island, Samui	139
—— Shoal	80	Inner Passage, Hainan Strait	338
Howkong, city	407	, directions	345
Howlik	372	, tidal streams	347
Hsu wen, radio	336	———, tides	340
Hsun chau fu	389	Inner Point, Kikik	244
, distances	387	———, Samshui	401
to Kwei hsien	389	—— Port Shelter	505
Huang tuo chau	388	In-shore Channel, Fai Tsi Long	292
Hué city	252	————, continuation of	303
— River, approach	251	Passage, Hainan Strait	342
, caution	252	————, directions	343
, depths	251	— — , tidal streams	343
Hué Fu	252	Inside Islet	377
Hugon Rock	297	Investigator Reef, NW	109

	Page.	<b>K.</b>	Page.
Ipann, Pulo	83	K Hill	239
Ipil Islet	102	Kaban Island	72
Ira, Koh	174	Islet, Little	72
Isan, Pulo	101	Kachek Mission	315
Islet Point, Lei chau	341	Pagoda	320
Itu Aba Island	110	Kahdat, Koh	165
, sand cay	110	Kahten, Koh	138
_		Kahon, Rach	198
J.		Kai River	388
Jacquelin Hill	353	kung tau	511
Jaguar Channel	296	kwan shek	383
Jalan, Selat	98	lak tsun	400
Jan chau	478	—— Pan Rock	517
—— Peter Reef	149	Kaikong Island	419
Jankat, Pulo	97	Stream	190
Janus Rock	<b>3</b> 85	Kaipong Islands	41
Jaune Hill	<b>289</b>	Kak Ba Anchorage	<b>2</b> 8:
—— Island	294	Kak Ba Island	<b>2</b> 8:
—— Peak, Fuyen	236	Kalabang Islet	72
— Rock	166	Kam mouth of Song ka 2	71, 274
Jehangire Bank	120	—— chuk lan	479
Jibang, Tanjong	84	Giang village	257
Jimaya Island	83	ling	396
Jin Island, Port Shelter	504	Lung mount	343
Joara Bay	75	Noi, Koh	176
Johnson Shoal	106	Kam Ranh, bay	218
Johore State	22	, dangers	218
Jolo Point	420	, shoals	220
Jones Cove	510	—— —, harbor	219
Jonque Islet	<b>2</b> 87	———, directions	220
Joss-house bay	413	, settlements	221
Juan Prieto Island	241	, shoals	219
Jubilee Islet	412	Kam Yai, Koh	176
Julan, Tanjong	83	yan koh, shoals	327
Julia Shoal	117	Kam yan koh, directions	327
Jumeaux Island	296	—— yan sha	327
—— Rocks	320	Kamáo Point, river	146
Junction Bend	456	Kambir, Pulo, light	238
—— Channel	456	Kamfa Channel	294
—— Creek, Sawshi	459	Kamai Bay	341
Juniata Bank	119	—— Cape	340
Junk Creek, Anung hoi	431	, anchorage	340
, Whampoa	437	, light	340
Island, Hongkong	478	, tides	340
Patch, Ma chau	424	Kam lung Mount	343
—— Point	265	Kampong Kwala	85
—— Passage, East River	459	Tibu	
rock, Kellett reach	442	Kampongsom Bay	
, lightbuoy	442	Kamput Approaches	
————, Long harbor	509	, anchorages	158
, town, Hongkong	478	——, South Channel	157
— Fleet Entrance	426	———, West Channel	
Junks, lights, remarks on	40	, anchorages	158

	Page.		Page.
Kamput River	159	Kau wei yau tan	388
Town	159	yie, sand ridge	13 <b>6</b>
Kan, Hon	241	Kebao Inlet	295
—— River	244	Kecha, village	79
—— lo tan	391	Kega Islet	211
Kana Anchorage, gap	215	, shoals	211
Kang mun, Mirs Bay	512	— Rock	225
—— Sueh, Koh	142	Kei pi ha	478
Kangio Bank	199	Kelantan, Sungi	131
, light	200	—, State	23
Point	199	, climate	24
, village	202	, capital	24
Kangku Island		, town	132
	97	Kelemang Falls	23
Kangor, Tanjong Kankao (Hatien) River	152		474
	191	Kellett Bank	
— Canal		Island	480
Kao Pui Tao	285	Kelong, Pulo	93
— Tao Islands	298	Kem Nu River	169
Kaobang Bank	203	Kemarat; Mekong	192
Kap shui mun	466	Kenaman, Sungi	23
Kap sing Islet	467	Keng Luong	193
mun	466	Kep Point, peak	154
, lights	468	—— Seang Island	378
————, tidal streams	468	Kepi Island	291
, tides	468	Kerbat Stream	23
Kapas, Pulo	128	Kerr Channel	455
Karte, village	80	Kerr Point	458
Kasof, Klong	164	Kersaint Channel	293
Kasenga, reef	113	Keui Island	504
Katoi sha Island	299	Khan Hoi, light	217
Katong, Tanjong	96	Khanh Hoa, Nhatrang	226
Katu Islet	142	gia	231
Katukan, Pulo	84	Khe ga Point	226
Kau (Mountain)	143	Khone Rapids, Mekong	193
Kau, Hon	257	Khota Baru	
Kau Island	225	Ki au, Kum sing mun	422
— chau	422	— au Island, Wang mun	426
— Deng Yie	135	Kik Bay	
— i chau	464	Kiang Kiun tan	391
— Kong	372	Kiao, Cape, Lakh	266
Kwang	137	Kiau tau Islet	
— Kwang	137	Kie sum chau	371
— lan Island	371	Kien au, radio	276
— Lu Ong Range	137	l '	
		Kieng Kiang Kiev Bank	119
— Luang	143		
Maun'	143	Kiladi, Pulo	
—— pin shan	400	Kilong Islet	
——Pra nom Range	137	Kim Kang River	
Prong Range		Kin Hon Harbor	
— pui chau			
Rong, lem	134	Kindoy Hill, village	
—— <u>Sabap</u>	167	— Mission	
— Tang kwan	135	K'ing Tao. Hainan	313

<b>54</b> 0	INDEX.			
	Page.		Page.	
Kingsclare	482	Koh Kam yai, flat	176	
Kingston Shoal	106	Kang Sueh	142	
Kirpinis, Tanjong	94	Klam Yot	140	
Kiung chau	336	Klet Keo	175	
Kiung chau fu	313	Klian	139	
pagoda	334	Klum	166	
—— — road	337	Koi	170	
Klam Yot, Koh	140	Kong	164	
Klap Islet	142	Kra, Tung Yai	166	
Klet Keo, Koh	175	— Krah	136	
—— Kla	143	— Kram	174	
Klian, Koh	139	Kut	164	
Klong (river).		— Kwang	138	
—— Bang Krabu	186	noi	148	
—— Lampu Lang	186	— Kye	143	
— Bangkoi noi	186	Lak	143	
— Bau	167	— Lán, Siam Gulf, E	175	
Kasof	164	, W	139	
—— Koh Paw	164	Lim	139	
Pakinang	136	Loi	166	
—— Ra	136	Luem, Aotinau Bay	143	
—— Tapanhan	186	, Siam Gulf, E	174	
Klum, Koh	166	— Mak	165	
Knob Reef	510	Mate Yie	142	
Ko Kai Mun, directions	303	— Me san	172	
— Kheann, village	266	— Mon	169	
— Khien	194	— Mu, Sheltered Bay	172	
— Nian, village	266		134	
Ko yuen	395	, Singora	139	
•	$\frac{333}{284}$	Nak	175	
Koan Lan Cape			142	
——————————————————————————————————————	284	— Nam	168	
			144	
—— Antong	139	Num sau		
Bidang	166	Pahlicum	138	
— Buot	143	— Pai	174	
— Chameau, le	166	—— Pau, Klong	164	
—— Chan		—— Pennan	139	
Chang	165	—— Petak	142	
————, danger west	165	— Platin	170	
chau, West River	395	—— Phroet	167	
Cheuk	139	Plong	176	
Chik	167	—— Pra	172	
— Chuen, light	172	, quarantine station	173	
—— ( hula	168	—— Prap, light	140	
—— Dud (Tron)	154	—— Prins	148	
Gnu	134	— ran Dohmai	176	
—— Hah	138	Rang	143	
heu banks	385	Ranpahtat	142	
Ile du Pic	166	Rap	138	
—— Ira	174	Riat	171	
—— Kahdat	165	—— Rin	174	
— Kahten	138	—— Rong	161	
—— Kam noi	176	— Ronkon	171	

	Page.	·	Page.
Koh Saba	169	Kowloon Beacons	481
—— Sakait	171	Observatory	482
Samet	142	—— Peninsula	482
—— Samit, Kampongson 16	3, 170	—— Point	481
—— Samui	138	—— City	481
Sam Yot	139	—— Pass	511
Satahipjai	173	Rock	476
—— Sichang	176	Kra bang, Lem	175
——————————————————————————————————————	176	Krah, Koh	136
—— Simaha racha	177	Kram, Koh	174
Som	139	Kramat, Pulo	86
Ta Kut	143	Kratt, Lem	164
Taluei	139	Krat Port	24
—— Tang	148	Kratie	191
—— Tau	138	, rise of river	191
— Tki	172	Kring Badung	174
— Tlu	143	Ku Huan settlement	226
Tron	154	— Kun chong	311
, anchorages	154	lo wa	380
, villages	155	—— lun shek	512
— Tulu	170	— Mong Harbor	238
Wau	139	————, lagoon	238
Yoh Noi	173	— toi tan	400
Nok	173	—— tu tan	391
Kohe Port, Hon	229	—— yong tan	389
Koho, or Colowan Island	376	Kua (river or river's mouth).	000
Koi, Koh	170	—— Island	228
Koik Rock	149	— Ba lai	194
Kolam Puk, Lem	136	, Lakh Dong	269
Kolon, Hon	150	tak	193
Kompong Bai	159	—— Bang	265
Komponer lou		Kua Bë, Bing Koi	230
Kompongs leu	$\begin{array}{c} 162 \\ 263 \end{array}$		230
Kon cho, or Dog Rock		————, dangers	230 224
Kong, Koh, Siam Gulf, E	164	Kua Bë, Nhatrang	
— chau, Long Harbor	508	———, anchorage	224
—— Island, Mekong	193	Kua Ben Nhau	194
— hau fu	389	— bobé	190
, town	400	Kua Da Rang	232
— ho, Pekiang	407	Kua Dai, Song Ka	268
—— hau	194	Kua Dai, Mekong	194
— kun, Samshui	403	— Dien ho, Song Ka	269
———, beacon light	401	— Dinh an, Mekong	193
mun approach	378	— Doi	295
—— —— City, creek	379	River	246
, railway	379	Kua Dong Hoi	255
— su bank	424	Kua Dong tranh	196
yık, railway	36	—— Giang	155
Koni Islets	241	— Ha Lan	268
Koran, Pulo	95	— Hoi	261
Korat	185	Kua Kam	271
—, railway	187	Kua Kan, village	155
Kota Bahru	132	Kangio	196
Kowloon Bay	. 480	Kan canal	25.0

	Page.		Page.
Kua Ko Khien	194	Kulao Rai, caution	243
Kong hau	194	Kulau	<b>372</b>
—— Lakh, Song Ka	269	Kum chuk Creek	456
lap	209	Rapids	457
—— Li Hoa	256	route to Canton	456
Lo	263	, town	380
Rock	263	gi kok tan	396
—— Lok Canal	270	kwo shek	384
Lon	151	ling	396
Luk, Courbet	289	—— pei, West River	384
— Mo, point	301	sing mun Harbor	422
, anchorages	302	, tides	422
—— Mom	266	Kumama, Sungi	79
— Nam Trieu	277	Kung am.	479
, directions	279	—— chin Hill.	332
Nuong	260	— mau, Lem.	140
— Rome.	257	Kuper Island	439
Shin Mun	301	Kusrovie Rock	163
— Shott.		Kut, Koh.	164
— Tam	261	·	104
— Tam	305	Kwala (anchorage) (see proper	0=
	270	name)	85
—— Tieu	194	Kwala Point	158
, directions	195	Gunong	155
—— Trai	271	—— Patani	134
Trali	269	Tringano	23
Trapp	264	Tringano Ulu	23
Tung	253	Kwan, Lem	175
Van Muk	303	chin, telegraph	407
Uk	270	Kwang, Koh	138
Vann	263	—— Lem	137
Viet	253	— chau wan	350
Kuai Shin mun	298	, anchorage	359
Kuan yin shan	408	, approach	354
Kuang Binh Province	257	, aspect	354
chau fu (Canton)	446	—— —— bar. buov	354
— Khe Village	257	, beacons	354
—— Nam	246	, dangers	354
Tri, town	253	depths	355
tung (Kwang tung) Province. 35	5, 446	, directions	356
Kuantan River	78	, observation spot	356
, bar signals	79	, south shore	356
———, village	79	, west shore	357
Kudok Islet	102	————, tides	360
Kuen Lakh	263	Kwang mi, village	456
Kukok Island	370	—— Ngai River	243
Kulah Islet	142	—— noi, Koh	148
Kulao cham	245	sai (Fort Island)	381
———, caution	246	tai pai	507
— Fu loi	195	Kwang tung Province 36	
— Han, Sanho Cape	239	—— tung Rock	385
——————————————————————————————————————		— Yen	280
— Kau	214	Kwangli Bend	382
— , overfalls	214	—— Island, reach	382
, 0 , 0 , 1 , 1 , 1 , 1 , 1 , 1 , 1 , 1	#1T	1014114, 104(11	002

	Page.		Page.
Kwangli, town	382	Lakon Bight	136
Kwangsi, Tonkin frontier	397	—— Road	137
, Province	385	Lakon Sritamarat	26
, capital of	385	Lam goa, East River	459
Kwantau Point	308	— puk sui, village	371
Kwei hsien	390	—— Tui, village	233
, telegraph	390	Lamko Hill	332
, distances	387	Point	332
Kwei lam	400	, reefs off	332
—— long ta	398	Lamma Island	464
— tau, Kaipong	412	Patch	502
Kweiling, capital, West River 38	5, 387	, East Channel	502
ho	385	, measured dis-	
Peak, Hongkong	475	tance	502
Kye, Koh	143	, West Channel	462
_		Lamont Dock	489
L.		Lamtau, high land of	362
L'Estoc, Chenal de	356	Lamtong Headland	482
La, Hon	257	—— Island	478
La Dent Hill	236	Lamtong mui	478
— Fourmi, light	166	Lamun, Pulo	103
Lionne Islet	289	La, Hon; Vung Chua	257
Noix, anchorage	288	Lan, Koh; Siam, east shore	175
Paix Rock	117	, west shore	139
— Pelé Mount	220	Lan ha Bay	286
tao sah	342	— Kiam Cay and Reefs	111
Tondu Peak	223	Lang Islet	74
La Tortue Island	296	—— Diann	265
Labas Islet	76	son	399
Laboha, Tanjong	80	Langsuen River	141
Lac, Grand, Petite	269	Road	141
Ladd Reef	106	Lankit Entrance channel	427
Ladrone Island, Great	413	—— Hump	425
———, Little	414	Island	425
—— Islands	413	, tides	426
Lady Franklin Rock	419	Lantin Island	72
Lafsami Island	417	Lantau Channel, directions	429
Laghi, village	211	, tidal streams	430
Lai chi kok	511	Island, east coast	423
Laï Tao Island	<b>2</b> 84	, north and west coasts	422
Laigiang River	242	, south coast 465	<b>2, 468</b>
Lak (rocks).		Lantinga, Pulo	131
Lak, Koh	143	Lao, Hon	213
Lak ma tong	399		338
—— mat kra	142	Laokai, Yunnan	270
nam	142	Laos territory, general remarks	35
Lakh Huen, bar	280	Lap, Hon	114
Lakh Kiao	<b>2</b> 66	Lap sap wan	496
, buoyage	266	Lappa Island, Macao 37	
Kuen	263	Lark Bay	377
Tran	266	Larkins Point	442
, tides	266	Lau tai wan	408
— Yapp	266	Laut, Pulo; Natuna	104

	Page.		Page
Lay Cape 254	, 252	Leum, Koh	143
———, aspect	255	Leung mei hiu	39
Le Chameau	166	Li chi kok	474
Le Goulet	354	Li Hoa, village	256
Le Mottée Shoal	509	yuk tsui	379
Le Porte-fanal Islet	289	Liang Kwang waters	372
Le Soulier Rock	166	Liant Cape, light	17
Lei chau Peninsula 313	340	Liau chau fu	400
, east coast	350	, communication	400
town, depths to	350		399
kung hsu	391	, missions	401
Ledge Point, Mirs Bay	513	Liau chau fu River	399
Leiar Islet	73	Liau si wan Pagodas	378
Lem (cape or point; see also proper		Libih, Sungi	129
name).		Lidi, Pulo	94
— Bangman	141	Lien Kiang	399
—— Chong P'ra.	143	chau River, Pe kiang	407
— Kau Rong.	134	———————, depths	408
— Kolam Puk	136	— tiao fu	308
- Kra bang	175	Light buoys, caution (preliminary	300
— Kratt			5
Kratt	164	pages)	
Kung Mau	140	Light lists. 1	
Kwan	175	Likin Reck, Hongkong	476
— Kwang	137	Lim, Koh	139
— Ling	166	Lima Island, Malay Peninsula	70
— Miva, rocks	135	—, Pulo; Anamba Islands	91
Nam	165	Limkou Hill, village	332
— Ngop Light	166	Lin fa than Island, beacon	356
—— Patáya.	175	Lin Kong hou	37
—— Ple Dam	137	Linang, Tanjong	84
Pradoo	168	Lincoln Island	121
Putau	172	Ling, Lem	166
— Sah Muk	178	—— li hiu	393
—— Sahemsan, light	171	—— sui bay, point	317
—— Sie, light	134	——— River	317
—— Sing	167	— yang gorge	382
—— Tane	143	Lingai, Pulo	90
—— Tarote	176	Lingting Island	418
— Tong Lan 133	, 143	Lintin Bar	425
Woh	142	Lintin Bar, sand bank	425
— Wat, pier	177	—— Island	424
—— Ya, spit	171	——————————————————————————————————————	425
Lema Channel	429	, south sand spit	425
——————, directions	429	Lion Island, Lynx	295
———, tidal streams	429	—— Rock, Kua Bé 224	4, 230
—— Islands	413	—— ——, Toan Channel	223
Leong soi Bay, river	317	Lionne Islet, Le	289
——————, anchorage	317	Little bank, Hainan	338
dangers of	318	— Bate Island	518
——————————————————————————————————————	317	— Catwick	117
—— —— Mountains	317	— Condore	113
Town	317	— (Hapoix) Bay	245
Les Frères.	166	— Kaban Islet	72
	200		. ~

	Page.		Page.
Little Kuai shin mun	298	Low Point, Samshui	402
—— Mirador Hill	272	Lozin, Pulo	133
Pass, Kam Ranh	219	Lu lu Creek	376
—— Redang Island	130	Lu ong Mountains	137
Tsieng Mun	298	— pao, town	406
Liu chan sah bank	352	— pu, town	406
Liuchiu, St. John	370	wan hao shan	376
Liungnib Island	414	Luang Phrabang	192
Lizzie Webber Shoal	108	——, rise of Mekong.:	192
Lo chau, West River	378	—— — Territory	36
——————————————————————————————————————	6,498	Lubong Gaii, Pulo	102
pak pai	498	Luem, Koh	, 174
cheng Missions	410	Lueng Island, Ladrones	417
— Kwai wan	512	Lui shao Island	299
—— lung hiu	396	Lui ta sah Bank	342
tsa Rapid	396	Luk Islet	142
sa tau	380	—— chau	465
Point	456	wan	465
—— Shu shan Islands	300	—— lao Creek	457
Loai ta Island, bank	111	—— pu, town	383
Loctri Point, lights	153	Luk Mu Nai Rocks	134
Loftus Bank	133	Nok	134
Shoal.	141	Son	154
Logan Point	213	—— Sua	141
Loi country, Hainan	313	—— pu 372	, 383
——, Koh	166	— to	372
Mother Mountain	313	Lung chau (Tso kiang)	397
Rê	210	—— cheong	396
Voi Mountain	313	—— kau tu Rapid	400
Lok Fa Pagoda	459	— Kong Creek	456
—— kau hiu	400	kwei River	409
Lokaup Island, rock	516	, missions	410
Lon Island (Tré)	223	— on yuen	396
London Reefs	108	—— shan pai	501
Long chau (Tso kiang)	397	—— shui wan	466
, navigability	397	— wan, Sawshi	459
—— fu	398	Lueng River	213
———, anchorage	399	Lutin Bay, island, Dayot	230
————, distance to	387	(Tien Sha)	247
Long Harbor, Mirs Bay	509	— Channel, Sylphes	294
—— ——, anchorage —— ——, dangers	509	Luyong, Pulo	100
	509	Lye mun	479
—— Island, Van Fong	228	——, directions	482
— Mun River, town	307	———, light	479
—— Rapid, West River	392	———, tidal streams	479
— tau hiu	398	Point	479
— uang tsuen	398	Lynx Channel	295
Longue Island	285	Lys Shoal	113
Lorne Rock	321	м.	
Loting hau	372		000
Louisa Island	436	M Island, Fai Tsi Long	286
Loutres Point	294	Ma chai pai	504
Low Islet, Bias Bay	517	chau, Canton River	424

	Page.		Page.
Ma chau, fishing stakes, lights	424	Makong Islet	499
Ma on shan	377	— mi pai	499
	508	Mala hau Passage 34	2, 3 <b>43</b>
ping (Liáu chau)	400	Port	342
pu tan	390		343
tong Bight	478	Malautau Point	318
un chau	424	————, anchorage	318
wan Island, dangers	467	Malay Peninsula, general remarks.	21, 70
, light	468	——, Federated States	21
Village, pier	467	Malcolm Point	434
Macao Fort passage, Canton	443	Malo chau Pass, buoy	<b>4</b> 21
, light buoys	443	Malow chau, Wang mun	375
, tidal streams	444	Maluprey Province	24
Rock, buoy	444	Mame chau	364
Macao Harbor	419	Mamelles Island	229
, anchorage off	419	Mamelon Hill	232
, buoyage	420	Mampoh, Telok	85
, directions	420	, reefs	85
, lights	419	Man mi chau (Gap Rock)	411
, tides	421	Rang Anchorage	217
—— Island	419	shan (Ladrone)	413
Settlement	419	tau tsuen	393
Macarira Island	377	Mana Mechi	174
McCaulay Patch	87	Mandarin Point, Samshui	402
McCleverty Channel	454	Mandarin's Cap, Hainan	334
Macclesfield Bank	124	, Huiling san	366
Maddock Rock	325	, current	<b>366</b>
Madeleine Island	296	Manga, Pulo	92
Madge Bank	212	Mangrove Island, Bing Koi	229
Mæander Rock	89	, Siam Gulf	161
Magazine Hill, Canton	447	Manguan, Pulo	102
—— Island	500	Mangue Island	280
Magpie Point	333	Maniu Harbor, anchorage	332
Rock, In. passage	339	Manki, Pulo, light	86
Mahn son River	263	Kechil	86
, anchorage	264	Mankian, Pulo	102
Mahning Bar, village	456	Mankian Pandok	101
Mai Nha Island	233	Mantala (Mentala)	100
Shott	260	Mantanio, Pulo	89
Main channel to Saigon	202	Mantung, town	216
, anchorage	202	Mantong Besar	94
prohibited, directions	202	—— Kechil	94
, directions	203	Maolintao Island	285
Main route, China Sea, banks on		Mar dau, village	381
eastern side	105	Mara, Bukit	130
, banks on western side	113	Marble Mount	257
, caution	105	— Rock, Shin mun	297
, currents and tides 5	57,105	, Tien Pak	363
————, passages	60	Marbre Rock	302
, winds	41	Margaret Shoal	77
Maitland Island	433	Margesson Shoal	84
—— Passage	442	Marne Bank	119
Mak, Koh	165	Marsh Reef	145

•	Page.		Page.
Mashao	299	Mia Hill	243
Massie Point	377	Miao men tan	390
Mat Kra Islet	142	— tze aborigines	406
Sum Islet	138	Mid Rocks, Lantau S	462
Mata, Selat	93	Babi	72
, Telok	93	—— Junk, Bangkok	80
Mataphon Islet, light	142	, light vessel	180
Mate Yie, Koh	142	Midai, Pulo	91
Matiana Islet	103	Middle Bank, Kua Mo	301
Matshé River	358	, Kwang chau	358
, anchorage	359	, Nau chau	353
, depths	355	Channel, Hainan St 33	1, 345
, directions	360	, tidal stream	346
tides	360	——, Long Harbor	509
, town (Mapum)	355	ground, Double Haven	512
matt, Hon	261	, Pak ha mun	296
Mau, Hon	149	Group, Bias bay	516
—— yu shek	408	Island, Amphitrite	122
Maung pai	518	, Gaalong Bay	316
Mé, Hon	265	, Hainan, S. E	318
san Island	171	——————————————————————————————————————	158
——, Chong	171	, Kulao (`ham	246
Mé Nau	185		162
Ping	185	, Van Fong	228
Measured distances, Hongkong	488	Passage, Samui	138
Mei Ping Branch	185	Rock, Fokai	520
Meilung Pass	410	Rocks, Bias Bay	516
Mekong Reef	152	Babi Island	72
Mekong River	191	—— Sibu Island	71
, delta	190	Midi Peak, Hué	253
, caution	190	Mieu Island	224
, entrances	192	Milieu Island, Aspic Pass	291
——, height of	192	— Islet, Kam Ranh	218
, inland navigation	192	Minerva Bank	119
Meklong, railway	28	Mines River, Courbet	290
Melgrund Point	444	Ming Kong tributary, Long chau	398
Memperuk, Pulo	99	Mingar, Tanjong	86
Menam chau Fya or Bangkok		Minghue Island	151
River	179	Minjalin, Pulo	103
Menam Valley	26	Mirador Hills	273
—— Tachin	145	Point, light	194
Menara, village	132	— , Little	272
Menchat, village	131	Mirmidon Hill	303
Mendoza Island	520	Mirs Bay	508
Meng kiang hiu	388	, aspect	508
, distances	386	, dangers in approach	509
Mengtz, treaty port 3		, directions	514
Menjalin, Pulo	103	, north channel	510
Mensirip Islet	72	———, north shore	513
Mere Island	291	———, offing streams	514
Meurtriére Island	293	——————————————————————————————————————	514
Mfan chau	477	—— Point	514
Mi Hoa, village, Song Giang	257	Mirtang Islands	72

	Page.		Page.
Misabong, Pulo	97	Mud Islet, Yaichu	325
Mit kok tsui	511	Point, Bangkok	180
Mitho Road, town 19	4,195	Mud-wall Rapid	391
Mitho Road, tides	194	Mudai, Pulo	94
Miva, Lem	135	Mui Davaich	217
Mo lam	388	—— Dinh	215
shan Gorge	399	—— Dong, aspect	258
— shun City	400	— Kai sung	227
— to, island, fort	378	— Nai (Varela)	231
— — mun	378	Mukapau, Koh	139
Mo yune kiang	396	Mun chau Village	318
Mobur, Pulo	92	Mung Island	223
Moburi, Pulo	86	Muning, Tanjong	94
Mofu Point, Hainan	321	Munjan, Gunong	99
Mohr Rock	455	Muong Krat	166
Moine Island	288	Sing State	35
Mok, Hon	149		
Mokut Bay	75	N.	
Mon Klong	169	Nagot na`coal mines	290
—, Koh	169	Nai, Hon	222
—ni	169	—— Tsiu River	325
Money, weights, etc	хi	Naiying pai	478
— Island	124	Nak, Koh	175
Moneypenny Creek	458	Nakon Sritamarat	26
Mon chau, Shallow Bay	367	, harbors	26
, West River	377	Nakonchisi	145
Mong fu Kong Mission	410	Nam Islet	142
— Klong	169	—, Lem	165
—— si hap Gorge	408	Point	223
— tai, Hon	149	— Dinh Canal	268
— tau Point	312	, town	270
—— Thai, Hon	155	—— —— Du, Hon	149
Monkai River	305	heung	410
Monks Head	384	hoi chun	318
Monsoons, general remarks	42	, anchorage	318
Montao, channel to	359	— sau, Koh.	168
Moorhen Creek.	378	—— sha Bay	415
Morau Rocks	72	— sui Harbor	371
Morgan Point	376	— tau Peninsula	424
Morne Hill	217	Trieu, mouth of Song Ka	267
— de Bouquet, point	354	————, above canal	279
Morrison Hill	481	tsin, village	508
Moso, Pulo.	91	van	191
Mosquito Rock, Lema	413	wan	310
Mot Island	223	——, village	311
Mother and Child Peak	228	Yit Island	110
Motoe Islet	423	Namking chau	318
Mouche Pass	292	Namo Harbor	367
Mound Point, Gopai	$\frac{292}{342}$	———, anchorages.	368
Mount Channel	427	————, directions	368
Moustique Rock	293	————, tides	368
Mu, Koh; Singora	135	— Island	368
—, Koh; Pra.	172	, village, supplies	36 <b>9</b>
Mubur, Pulo	86	Tokong Nanas	92
Manual, 1 alv	90	TOROUG Manas	74

	Page.	1	Page.
Nampang Island	366	Ngai, Hon	222
Nan hiang hiu	392	— Kap pai	506
, distance to	387	Ngan ran Kiang	308
Nan ning fu, aspect	393	Nganchau	499
, distances	387	—, beacons	502
, telegraph	393	am pai	499
to Posé	395	tan pai	499
River	389	Ngang Kong	462
Nan pai, Port Shelter	505	Ngau kok chau	400
• •	248	Ngchi Range	313
Nang son, coal mines	139		262
Nang Yot.		Nge An Province	
Napier Island	439	Ngong wan pai	504
Narrow Island, West River	383	Nha Bé Reach	200
—— Islet, Bias Bay	516		201
Natuna Islands, North	104	————, signals	200
Nau chau Island	350	Nhatrang Bay	222
, anchorages	351	——, northern approach,	
————, beacons	353	dangers	225
, light	351	, southern approach,	
—— Port	353	dangers	223
, directions	352	, winds	227
, tides	352	River	226
town	354	, anchorage	226
, Inshore channel from		Nhom, Hon	150
Hainan	342	Ni pi tan	391
Nau sa Point	340	Ni wok Island	366
Nau tau Island, Ladrones	417	Niau tan	398
— mun	417	Nibong Islet	101
Nauan, Pulo.	91	_	262
		Nieu, Hon, anchorage	
Naung Chik	26	Nightingale Island	282
Nausa Bay, point	312	Nimrod Creek	445
Nautilus Hill	308	Nine Islands, Canton River	422
Navan Bay, river	216	Ninepin group, Hongkong	502
, anchorages	217	Rock, Kak Ba	281
, directions	216	———, False	282
————, patches	216	Ninh Binh, railway	269
Navigation, etc., notes on	1	Ninh chu	217
Né, Hon	267	—— hoa River	227
Needle Peak, Tsieng Mui	305	Nipah Bay	75
	137	Nipple Hill	232
Rocks, Lingting	418	Niulwan Matak	93
Nemesis Creek	450	———, Telok	93
Neratu, Telok	84	Nivet Point	358
Nest Island	235	No tan, Liau chau	399
Net Islet, Tuni ang	515	Nodoa Mission	315
New Island, Whampoa	438	Town	314
Reach, West River	382	Noire Island, Pak ha mun	296
Nez Islet	287	, Van Fong	228
Ng chi Range.	313	Noisette Islet	291
	397	Noix Islet Anchorage	288
Nga pan, village		Nok Islet	223
tong siu Rapid	390		186
tung	396	Nong Khai	
Ngage mun	376	Nonseu (Nonsiu)	100
Ngai hai, village	378	Noran Islet	92
79795—1 <b>5——36</b>			

	Page.		Page.
Nord Bay, Pak ha mun	296	Nose Mountain	255
Peak, Kwang chau	359	Notices to Mariners	2
Norodom, bank	194	Nui (mountain).	
North Babi Island	72	Deo, Song ka	279
Bank, Hainan Strait	344	—— Diaz	266
——, Singora	135	Gam	266
—— Channel, Hainan Strait 331	l, 345	Hon hong	213
, tidal stream	345	Kak Ba	<b>2</b> 81
———, Tolo	510	Kong	265
, Tung Yai	165	—— Nai Lights	153
Cone, Mirs Bay	<b>508</b>	—— Nghanh	304
Mount, Tonkin	255	Ngok	305
— Danger Reef	112	—— Ong	261
Fort Light, Tourane	248	Soka	304
—— Island, Amphitrite	122	—— Tiep	<b>264</b>
—— —, Kulao Cham	245	— tra kau	211
———, Kulao Rai	243	Tu vi	266
—— Islet, Bing koi	229	Voh	266
Fan Rang.	217	Voi (Elephant)	273
, Rong	162	Yen	263
—— Passage, Samui	139	Num Sau, Koh	144
Patch, Lang suen	141	Nuok Islet	242
(Pe kiang) River	406	Ngot	241
—— Reef, Paracels	124	Nuong Cliffs	260
Rock, Bias Bay	517	—, Hon	260
—— —, Ninepin	503	— Kua	260
, Tong ho	415	Nut Islet	412
— and South Horns	143	Nyamok, Pulo	97
— Lán Islet	175	, ,	
Natuna Islands	104	0.	
Ninepin	502	Oanh Xuan Bay	306
—— Pak hai Island	358	Obi, Pulo, light	145
—— Pirate Island	154	, caution	145
Soko Island	417	, False	147
—— Taya Island 322	2, 345	Observation Bank	123
Tree Islet, Bias Bay	517	———, cays	123
Vereker Bank	127	Observatory Beacon, Kwang chau.	358
Wantong Island	432	— Fort Islet, light	248
— Watcher	260	, moles	249
Northeast Bank, Hainan Strait	344	Ocean Point	509
— Bay, Condore	115	Offing Rock	281
Head, Tamkan	429	Oil Press Rapid	387
— Point, Samui	138	Oil, use of	68
Rock, Tathong	477	Oiseau Islet	291
Northwest Bank, Nau chau	353	Olang Lagoon	234
— Channel, Nau chau 352		Old Fort, Mong chau	378
———, buoyage	353	Oliver Point	439
— Investigator Reef	109	—— Shoals.	498
Island, Kulao Cham	245	Olivier Bay	230
	160	Omega Islet.	155
Rock, Nhatrang	225	Onass, Selat.	93
Northern Fairway, Hongkong	481	One-foot Rock, Ninepin	503
— Peak, Kwang chau	359	Ong, Hon.	245
Norway Islands	282	Ongtai Cape.	152

	Page.		Page.
Opossum Island	380	Pak hoi, off-lying shoals	308
Orange Islet	287	, town	309
Oreilles Islets	281	kong kiau	407
Orleana Shoal	106	—— leak Island	415
Oro oro Islet	98	Lung Cape	307
Otsi pai	466	Rock	307
Outer Bank, Hainan W	326	Pak ma	388
Island, Bulua	151	————, distances to	387
Owen Shoal	106	ma tsui Bank,	505
Ox Rapid	398	—- mah chong	311
Oyster Barrier	376	— miu, Pe kiang	407
•		nai	381
P.		— ngo pagoda	320
Pa chau Hill	465	—— sak Stream	134
kok, rock	438		379
chung Bank	384	sha kiu	471
kok, Lamma	466	sha, village, Liau chau	400
lo wang, bay, village	423	sha wan	479
— pai Island	464	siang	313
Sair River	169	— son kong pai	307
— Se River	170	— to, Pe king.	409
Paching Railway	37	— tsai River	400
Packa, Tanjong	80	— tsim, Kaipong	412
—, village	80	Paklat Bon	184
Padaran Cape	215	— Lang Canal	184
, anchorage	215	—, Upper	184
— Gap	215	Pakinang, Klong.	136
Pagoda (Varela) Cape	231	Paknam, Bangkok	184
— Hill, Singora	135	, village, Chentabun	168
—, mountain, Hainan	322	Paknampoh	185
— Point, anchorage, Tien Yen.	302	Paknum, Mekong	192
————, pier, light	302	Paktauhau	372
	273	Palm Point, Lei chau	341
	77	Palms River	253
Pahang River, anchorage	78	Palourde Islet.	288
, bar	77	Pananting, Selat, directions	96
	78	Panarai	26
, light , supplies	78		100
	22	Panginding, Pulo	100
Pahang State		Panjang, Pulo, Anamba Islands	
Pahat, Pulo	92	Panjang, Pulo (Obi)	147 148
Pahlicum, Koh	138	————, anchorage	
Pai (Chinese) Rock.	174	Panunyut, Tanjong	79
—, Koh	174	Pao, Telok	95
Pai Ma	388	—— ya tang	398
miao	407	—— yu Point	332
Paix Island	285	Paps, The, Kamput	157
— Rock, La	117	——————————————————————————————————————	132
Pajantai Island	92	———, Tonkin	260
Pak fu tau sha	308	Pâques, Bank	239
Pak ha mun	295	Paracel Islands and reefs	119
— hai Island	357	———, anchorages	120
— hin hok, buoy	443	———, currents, tides	120
Pak hoi, approach	308	Parat Bay, river	169

	Page.		Page.
Parker Island	. 433	Passu, Pulo, Anamba Islands	91
Point Bar, lights	. 443	Keah	120
Parkes Mount	. 382	Patalung, town	136
Parseval Bay		Patani, Kwala	134
—— Island	. 294	Province	26
Pascoe Rock		Road, tides	134
Pasop		, Tanjong	134
Passage Island, Ladrones		Patáya, Lem	175
, Van Fong	. 229	Pâté Peak	263
—— Islet, Namo	368	Patera Island	377
Mount, Van Fong		Pattle Island.	123
Passages, Bangkok-Saigon		Patung Island	463
—, main route.		Pau kleuh Islet	142
—, Palawan route	61,63	Pau ping, village	326
, sailing vessels	67, 70	Pauk Piah, Harlem Bay	521
homoward	67	————, Tien Pak	363
, homeward	. 07	Pe kiang (North River)	
			403
pore		, caution	405
, Saigon to Singapore	68	, current	405
, Siam Gulf to Singa-		———, general remarks	403
pore		, navigability	404
, outward	62	, pilots	405
, eastern route	63	, river level	403
, Hongkong to Chi-		Pe kiang, Upper River	410
nese ports	<b>61, 6</b> 5	Peak Islet, Panjang	147
, Hongkong to Japan.	61,65	Rock, Mirs Bay	513
, Hongkong to Ma-		, Tuni ang	51 <b>5</b>
nila		Peaked Head, Mirs Bay	511
, main route	66	Hill, Lantau	423
, Singapore to Hong-		Island, Pirate Bay	154
kong	62	Islets, Lantau	418
—— ——, Singapore to Saigon	63	Rock, Gap Rock	412
, Singapore to Siam		, Port Shelter	504
Gulf	61, 63	Peang chau	464
—, steamers.	J-, J	Pearl River, Canton	448
, homeward	66	Pechaburi River	145
, Hongkong to Singa-		—, town	145
pore	66	Pedass, Tanjong	95
—— ——, Saigon to Singapore	66	Pedder Island	437
	00	Pedra Arèca, buoy	420
pore	66	Pedro Blanco	521
———, outward	60	Pedro de Meio Beacon	420
, outward	00	Pejul, Pulo	100
	61 69	Pékan, town	77
nese ports			
——————————————————————————————————————	61, 62	Pelé Mount	220
	01 00	Pelor, Tanjong	80
nila	'	Pemangil, Pulo	74
— — , inner route	61	Pempang, Pulo	100
, Singapore so Hong-	00	Penanang, Pulo	85
kong	60	—, Tanjong	85
, Singapore to Saigon	61	Peng chau	513
, Singapore to Siam		———— Road	513
Culf	61	Pengarau, Kwala	77

	Page.	1	Page.
Penguin Shoals, Hongkong	480	Pingmar Point	332
Peniabong Point	72	Pinnacle Rock, Hongkong	474
Peniambang Islet	71		281
Peninsular Railway, Malay	28	Piogos, Pulo	94
Penjantan	92	Pipa chau	369
Pennan Channel	139	Pirate Bay, Pak ha mun	296
, Koh	139	Islands, Hatien	154
Pentebawa, Pulo	89	Pirates Island, Wallut	302
Penunjoh, Tanjong	79	Point, Kak Ba	280
Perforated Island, Hainan	322	Pirmotos Islet	98
Rock, Varela	232	Pitsanulok	28
Pernambuco Rock	199	Plage Island	298
Peta, Gunong	95	Plate Islet	162
Petalung	136	Platin, Koh	170
Petak, Koh	142	Ple Dam, Lem	137
Petchaburi, railway	28	, rock off	137
Petit Cochon	311	Plong, Koh	176
—— Lac	269	Plover Grove	510
Petley Reef	110	Island	380
Petrui, port	179	Pluvier Bank	300
Phahurat Light	172	—— Pass	292
Phillimore Rock	509	Reef	236
Philpott Island	416	Pnom Lok	154
Phitsanulok	187	penh, population	193
Phra Chanta Nakara	164	—— Sor (Bumbi)	156
nang Rock	175	Po top chau	519
Phroet, Koh	167	Pochin	338
Phu du Island	158	—— Bay	337
Picnic Bay, Lamma	465	, anchorage	337
Pigmy Shoal	124	—— Hill	337
Pigs Head, Hainan	318	Lagoon	337
Pik tan	399	—— Point	337
Piling, Pulo	89	—— River	337
Pillar Cape	330	, village	337
Island, Rambler Channel	470	Point Logan	213
Point, Canton River	423	Pok lu chau	465
Pillars, Bias Bay	516	Pokfolum Bay	502
Pilot charts	3	Poking han	414
Piloting coast	16	Polichiuelle Island	289
Pilot Island	174	Pollux Rock	501
— vessels, lights	40	Ponissan, Pulo	84
Pinanang, Tanjong	85	Pont Island	291
, Pulo	85	Pontean, Sungi	76
Pinang Bight	71	Port Island, Long Harbor	509
Islet, Port Aor	74	— Reef, Bias Bay	519
, Pulo, Redang Island	130	—— Bayard	287
, village	130	— Beaumont	357
Ping Point	507	— Courbet, approach	285
— nan City	388	, 'anchorages	288
————, distances to	387	, channels to	288
— tang Rapid	393	—— Dayot	230
Pinghai Settlement	221	— des Sylphes	294
Pingmar Mounts	332	— Kamfa	294

	Page.		Page
Port Shelter	504	Pulo Baua	87
———, inner	505	—— Bedung	130
, anchorage	505	— Berela	98
, directions	506	Berhala	77
—— ——, tides	506	Biliba	94
Wallut	302	Boiteu	99
Portalis Point, beacons	357	—— Brala	80
Porte-fanal Islet, Le	289	Buan	90
Portier Fort	354	Buton	91
Posé, city	397	Canton	243
, depths to	397	—— Cecir de Mer	212
, distance to	387		212
—— River	395	, anchorage , reefs	212
Pottinger Island	434	—— Cecir de Terre 21-	
—— Peak	477	—— Chelaji	134
Potue Island	414	—— Condore Group	113
Pouce Islet	293	, anchorages.	115
Powan Rock	438	— Dama Group	149
Powder Island, Whampoa	437	———, anchorages	150
Pra, Koh	172	—— Daru	84
Nom Mountains	137	—— Datu	86
Prachin	179	Dayong	84
Pradoo, Lem	168	— Dekar	90
Pran Rocks	144	Dinkor	91
Prap Light, Koh	140	— Domar	83
Pratas Island and Reef	125	Durai.	92
, anchorages	126	— Eu	70
, caution	127	—— Gambir (Kambir)	238
———, directions ———, tides ———, tide rips	127	—— Genting	8 <b>9</b>
, tides	·126	Gueta 99	, 101
	127	Gulu	130
Pratt Rock	431	Gumbong	85
Prea patang Rapids	192	Impul	86
Prince Consort Bank	105	—— Ipann	83
Prince of Wales Bank	105	—— Isan	101
Prins, Koh	148	Jankat	97
Printian Islands	131	Kapas	128
Prise Island, de la	218	—— Katukan	84
Prong Mountains	137	Kelong	93
Proserpine Rocks	481	— Kiladi	95
Pu miao hiu	393	Koran	95
— toi Group	475	Kramat	86
Puding, Gunong	85	Lamun	103
Puk sui village	371	— Lantinga	131
Pulo Abong	99	—— Laut (Natuna)	104
—— Akar	99	Lidi	94
Ania	86	—— Lima	91
			90
—— Aor	73	—— Lingai	133
— Ayam	85		
Baba	99	— Lubong gaii	102
Babi	72	Luyong	100
— Bahru	93	—— Manga	92
— Bajau	97	Manguan	102

	Page.		Page.
Manki (Mangkai)	86	Pulo Telok Pao	95
 Light	86	—— Temian	89
Mankian	102	Tingi	72
 Mantala	100	— Tioman	74
 Mantanio	89	Tulai	84
 Mantong Besar	94	Tungeran	98
 —— Kechil	94	—— Uching	93
 Memperuk	99	Udan	85
Midai	91	—— Ujong	90
 Minjalin	103	Varela	77
 Misabong	97	Wai	148
 Mobur; Anamba Islands	92	— Yu hesar	130
 Moburi; Anamba Islands	86	kechil	130
 Moso	91	Pumice Stone Bay	414
 Mudai	94	Pumreang	140
 Nauan	91	Pungailing	93
 Nyamok	97	Pungelat	98
 Obi	145	Punisan, Pulo	84
 ——, anchorage,	146	Puntin Island	413
 —, shoals	145	Putoi Island, Ladrones	415
 Pahat	92	Putau, Lem	172
Panginding	100	Pyramid Rock (Lit. Cat.)	117
 Panjang; Anamba Islands	100	—— (Dune) Island	225
 —; Pulo Obi	147	—— Island, Ladrones	416
 Passu	103	Peak	225
 Pejul	100	—— Point, Bias Bay	516
 Pemangil	74	, Hainan W	328
Pempang	85	—— Rock, Catwick I	117
 Pentebawa	89	, Lincoln I	121
 Piling	89	Pyramid Rock, Lo Shu Shan	300
 Pinang	130	, Rocky Harbor	506
 Piogos.	94	Pyramide Point, Kwang chau	357
 Ponissan	84	, ,	
Repon	87	. <b>Q.</b>	
 Riabu	88		
 Rittan	88	Quarry Bay	479
Sapatu	116	—— Point	479
 Sekatung	104	Quille Islets	281
 Selei (Selai)	101	Quoin Hill; Samit	163
 Semessa	90	; Tron	155
 Semot	93	—— Islet, Niwok	366
 Siantan	95		
Sibrong	84	R.	
 Sisi	156	Rach babu	189
Soe	96	—— Dinh	197
Sra	89	—— dua, light.	198
Stuju	103	Gia	150
 Tanapuniat	99	, town	151
 Tambin	90	——————————————————————————————————————	200
Tejah	77	Kahon	195
 Telaga	91	— Lap	198
Teliban	90	— Mongom	189
Telinjan	90	— muong Thuoi	196
 . vjan	υU	muong indol	100

	Page.		Page.
Rach Ong dien	202	Rifleman Bank	106
tach bai	189	Rin, Koh	174
Theu	195	Rippon Point	442
Rai Bon, village	176	Rittan, Pulo	88
Lang, village	176	River distances, Si Kiang	386
Rainfall, general remarks	51	Riversdale Patch, buoy	339
Rajanattianuhar Reef	147	Ro, Hon	231
Raket, rocks	70	Robert Island	124
Raleigh Rock, Ladrones	416	Robinsons Island	512
Rambler Channel	469	Robinson Rock, Jaguar Channel	<b>2</b> 96
Shoal, Hongkong	480	, West River	385
Rambutan, Telok	95	Roc aux Aigles Channel	293
Ran, Hon	158	Rocheux Island	235
Dokmai, Koh	176	Rock A, Kak Ba	280
	246	Rocky Harbor, Port Shelter	506
Rang, Koh	143	, anchorage	506
Kye	143	, dangers	506
Pet	143	— Islet, Amphitrite I	122
Ranpahtat, Koh	142	, Kamput	157
Ranza Shoal	199	, Lafsami	417
Rap, Koh	138	— — Lantau Strait	462
Rat Point	300	———, Pirate Islands	155
Rattler Channel	381	Point, West River	381
—— Islet	381	Roi, Hon	239
Island, Samshui	401	Rone, Kua	257
Rawa Island	72	Rong, Koh	161
Rayong, village, light	171	Sam Lem	160
<b>R</b> é, Hon	150	Ronkon, Koh	171
Red Cliff, Langsuen	141	Rosita Rock	156
— Hill, Kwang chau	354	Ross Island	376
—— Islet, Bias Bay	517	Rouge Islet, point	237
Point, Lantau	423	Round Hill, Tron Island	155
Red River (see Songka)	<b>26</b> 8	Island, G. Catwick	117
———, depths	268	, Lema Island	413
Red-water River	399	, Mandarin's cap	366
Redang Islands	130	, Tolo Harbor	511
Reef Islet, Bias Bay	517	—— Islet, Bias Bay	517
———, Gap Rock	412	, Five Island	369
Refuge harbors, Hongkong	486	—— —, Hainan	319
Regent Lighthouse, Bangkok	180	— Rock, Lon Island	223
Regni Islet	92	Rousse Island	293
Regulations, approaching and en-	-	Royal Bishop Bank	116
tering French ports	29	Naval Yard, Hongkong	486
Repon, Pulo	87	, dock	486
Repos Island	289	Royalist Bank	146
Retram Village	155	Ru Nuong Cliffs	260
Rhinoceros Cape	316	Ru Shott.	260
Riaba, Pulo	88	Rubado (Three Peaks)	260
Riat, Koh.	171	Rugged Mountains	364
Richelieu Patch.	165	— Rock, Kaipong	412
Riem Bay	160		154
——, anchorage.	160	Rumpin River	76
, town, river	160	Rumsey Rock	480
, , ,	'		

<b>S.</b>	Page.		Page.
Sa Hoi Cape	243	Sail Rock, Samui	139
mun (Three gates)	418	Sailing directions, information on.	1, 2
— ta hip	172	Sailam Channel	456
Saba, Koh	169	, town	456
Sahap, Kau	167	Sainam Creek	403
Sac Island	291	, telegraph	403
Sad Point, Hainan	332	St. Anne Cape	263
Saddle Hills, Hainan W	328	Enface Chapel	206
—— Islet, Hainan W	318	Esprit Shoal, current	125
— Mountain, Fai Tsi Long	286	— James Cape	196
— Rock, Bulua	152	, anchorage	197
Safe Bay (Tong Chong)	340	, signal station	197
Sagu Dampar	102	, storm signals	197
Sah Muk, Lem	178	— John Island	369
Sahemsan, Lem, light	171	, eastern side	370
	479	, eastern side	370
Sai Ki wan	492	—— Peter Island	316
Kung, storm signal		Coisson Donk	454
, village	505	Saiwan Bank	
lok Islet	416	Channel	454
—— pai, Bias Bay	519	—, town	454
sheklung Rock	434	Sakait, Koh	171
wan Bay	477	Sakit Mata Rock	72
, village, Fung Bay	507	Sala Ma Puak	187
Saigon Arm	198	Salomon Cape	324
—, city	206	Salpes Reef	284
, population	206	Salt Flats, Whampoa	439
————, anchorages	205	Sam cha san	390
———, prohibited	206	—— chau, town	381
, climate	208	—— chung a	510
———, coal	207	ha pai	300
, commercial port	200	hoi chuk	371
———, communication	207	Kok Island	416
with commercial		kong hau	400
harbor	200	long Islet	371
—————, directions	201	pai (Channel Rock)	509
, docks	207	— pan chau	426
———, hospital	207	— poni tsao	282
, supplies	206	sha	312
———, time signal	207	shui kok	500
———, tugs	203	shui po	472
—— River	198	wan, Hongkong	499
, approaches, dangers in.	199,	wan, Lamma	465
	202	Yot, Koh	139
, banks in 199, 20	2, 203	Sama Bay, port	324
, delta	195	—— Island	102
————, directions	203	, town, river	324
, main channel to Saigon.	202	, Gunong	95
, pilots	198	Samet, Koh, Chomporn Bay	142
, tides	203	, anchorage	142
, winds, typhoons 20		Samit, Koh, Kampongson	163
	203	—— Point	163
Sail Rock, Hainan	318	—, Chong	170
Liant	171	, .	36

	Page.	[ P	age.
Sampa Islet	103	Sawshi Channel 433,	458
Sampan Bay, Hainan	316	Scawfell Shoal	113
, village	317	Seal Bank, Hainan Strait 342,	344
Rock	291	—— Bluff	129
Samroiyot Hills	144	Rocks	129
Samshui Reach	401	Searchlights; signals	37
anchorages	402	Sêche Islet	225
———, directions	402	Second Bar, Canton River	434
, lights	401	, creek	434
, river level	402	, patches on	434
, tides, signal	401	, pagoda, fort	434
—— town	403	————, West River	384
Samtong, village	370	, leading mark	384
Samui, Koh	138	Sedili kechil, Sungi	70
— Strait	138	Segamat Hills.	22
Samun Island, road	515	Segansha Point	328
San chau, West River	376		450
		Sek ki	
tan (Long Rapid)	392	, village	459
, Three Islands rapid	398	Sekatung, Pulo	104
, town	436	Selat (strait or channel).	0.0
che li chang tan	392	—— Barawa	98
— Ho Cape	239	— Batu Birla	97
kiang kau	395	, directions	97
— men tan	392	— Firnenting	95
tong, town	460	— Jalan	98
—— wan	465	Mata	93
Sand Cay, Bias Bay	517	—— Onass	93
Sandpiper Creek	379	—— Simangi	98
—— Rock	380	—— Pananting	96
Sandy Bay, Hongkong	502	, directions	97
, St. John	369	Tanjong Suka	98
Point, Kam Ranh	218	—— Telok Dalam	100
, Mirs Bay	512	—— Tobong	94
Sanglier Island	297	Selei, Pulo	101
Sangul Rock	70	Semarak River	24
Sanki Bay	369	Sembang Islands	7
Santu Islets	72	Sembrong Endau	22
Sao chai shan	519	Semessa, Pulo	90
Saone Channel	293	Semot, Pulo	93
Island	295	Senhouse Mount	465
Sapatma Group	265	Reach	442
Sapatu, Pulo	116	Sentinelle Islet	287
Saracen Bay	161	Sepoi Islet	76
	148	Serpent Rapid	388
Sarong Lang Hills	132	Sesopone	186
		=	460
			337
			383
	J		409
	1	-	463
	4		513
		_	298
Sawri Ray			513
Sata hip. Sata hopeng Satahipjai, Koh Satie, village Sau ki wan, storm signals Saw chau Sawankalok Sawi Bay	171 350 173 369 492 423 28	Seven Star Mount. Seven Stars, West River. Sha hau, Pe kiang. — ku chau. — ne chung. — Pak wan.	

	Page.	ı	Page.
Sha u chung	510	Shoal Point, Hainan	327
Shak ket long Fort	333	Shoe Island	116
Shala Island	225	Shot, Kua	261
Shallow Bay, Mong chau	367	, Mai	261
Rapid	<b>3</b> 88	, Ru	261
Shamien Anchorage, Canton	440	Shuk Shan Hill, river	306
Island	440	Shum Lan Shan	298
Rock, buoy	439	Shumchun	36
Shan hau	311	Shun tuk Branch	455
Shao chau fu	409	————— District, delta	450
Shark Island	151	, town	<b>455</b>
Sharp Cone, Samui	137	Si Chang, Koh (see Sichang)	175
Island, Port Shelter	505	Si chi chau	417
—— Islet, Ladrones	416	Si Kiang, or West River	371
Peak, Mirs Bay	508	, above Kong mun	379
Shatin Pass	511		385
Shau king, town	<b>3</b> 82	Yung hsun hien	392
, tides	382	, communication	386
Shek kok, town	406	, current	386
kou, town	406	——, directions, general	377
—— lok tsui	466	, distances on	386
lung, town	460	, general remarks	371
ngau chau	<b>50</b> 8	, Estuary, Broadway	<b>376</b>
—— pai wan 50	0, 501	, directions	377
—— lung, East River	460	, first bar	382
mun Passes	359	, height of river	386
—— tan Creek	460	——, islands in approach	376
— tau po	311	, navigability	372
Sheldrake Sand Cay	342	, low river	390
Shelter Island	504	, pilots	<b>395</b>
Islet, Koh Tang	148	, rapids	388
—, port	504	, second bar	384
, inner	505		0, 392
———, tides	506	, tides and tidal streams. 37	7, 386
Sheltered Bay	172	, regulations	372
Sheng Cheng (Canton)	446	, treaty ports	375
Shenwen Pagoda	341	, waterways to Canton	
Range	341	River	450
Sheong goi kai tan	396	Si Maha racha, Koh	177
ma kok	378	, town	177
ti temple	384	Si wei loi	352
—— yu ( <b>Twins</b> )	385	Siak miu	478
Sheung lung Rock	380	Siam Gulf, eastern shore	145
Shiak o wan	477	————, head of	171
Shih kio	406	———, western shore	127
Shik kio, town	406	, trading season	127
—— tong tsui Point	475	, kingdom of	24
Shinchim, Koh, anchorage	328	————, boundaries	24
Shing lau, village	318	, capital	25
Shito Bay	369	, climate	27
Shiu kuan	409	, government	25
hing	383	, law on navigation	<b>25</b>
Shoal Islet, Bias Bay	517	—— ——, mails	28

•	Page.		Page.
Siam, kingdom of, population	25	Smait River	159
, products	27	Small Bar, Canton River	433
— ——, railways	28	Smith Islet	138
, shipping	28	Snake Island, Mirs Bay	512
, telegraphs	28	Point, Hainan	325
, treaties	25	, banks off	326
Siam Knoll	71	Soe, Pulo	96
Reap Province	24	Soirap River	196
Siang of Hunan	385	Sokku wan, Lamma	465
Siantan 95,	<b>96, 97</b>	Soko Islands	417
Siatin Rocks	128	Sokong, Sungi	134
—, Sungi	128	Som, Koh	139
Sibrong, Pulo	84	Sombrero Rock	174
Sibu Channel	71	Song Bai hap	146
, directions	73	Chang, light	278
, tides	73	—— Chi Canal	270
—— Island	71	—— Dinh, light	198
Islands	71	—— Gia, Song Ka	280
Kukus	71	Giang	256
Reef	71	Hoi	255
Sichang, Koh	175	Song Ka or Red River	267
, dangers	176	Song Kai	195
, tides	175	Kailon	151
Sie, Lem	123	Kau, village	237
— ho point, reef	362	Ма	266
Sifa Point	319	ong dok	147
Sigan Islet	510	— tai	268
Sik lung tsi	381	—— Tam Bak	275
Sikong sha Point	328	Thu Bon	246
Siku (Button) Islet	325	to, Tolo	511
Silvassi, Gunong	85	yui Point	364
Silver Mine Bay	462	, town	364
Simangi, Gunong	97	Soulier Rock, Le	166
, Selat	98	South Bank, Singora	134
Simpson Shoal	149	—— Banks, Hainan Strait	344
Sin nanzing Rock	442	—— Cape	79
ning chau, town	398	Channel, Hainan Strait	331
, distance to	387	, tidal streams	347
Sing Islet	143	, long harbor	508
—, Lem	167	Cone, Tonkin	255
Singes Island	301	—— Horn	143
Single Islet, Tuni ang	515	South Inner Patch, Lang suen	141
Single Tree Hill	455	—— Island, Kulao Cham	245
Singora Approach	134	— Point, Kiu Hon	239
, directions	135	, light	239
— Harbor, bar	135	—— Passage, Samui	138
, town	135	Patch, Lang suen	141
Siong Lai Tao	285	Sand Spit, Lintin	424
Siribuat Islands	72	—— Gau Islet	508
Sisi, Pulo	,156	Ninepin	502
Sisophon Province	24	—— Pak hai Island	357
Siu chau wan Points	479	Pirate Island	154
Slope Island (Jan chau)	478	—— Sibu	71

	Page.	•	Page.
South Taya Island	322	Su li pai Reef	286
— Vereker Bank	127	Subi Reef	112
Vung Nie Point	237	Submarines, exercising, English	37
Wantong Island	432	, French	30
	258	Submarine bells	7
	370	Sud de la Pass Point	294
Southeast Islet, Henriette	287	des Portes	247
—— Islets, Koh Tang	148	Sugar Loaf, Hui ling san	364
Southern Fairway, Hongkong	481	——————————————————————————————————————	517
Southwest Bank, Hainan Strait	326		317
— Bay, Condore	116	Sui Point	144
— Point, Hainan	326	Nong Tao, light.	282
, shoals off	326	tung Harbor.	362
— Hill	327	, village	362
Island, Kulao Cham	245	Suka, Tanjong	98
——————————————————————————————————————	160	Sulphur Channel, Hongkong	473
———, west river	376		
Point of Nam tou	424	Creek, Pe Kiang	408
Point of Nam tau		—— Point, Whampoa	436
Rock, Kam Ranh	221	Sum tong	460
, Tathong	477	Sun cheong	378
Spec Cape	227	kong	476
Spratly Island	106	sin kiu	384
————, tides	107	— wei town	378
Spread Tree Islet	155	Sungi (river).	
Squalls		— Endau	76
Square Islet, Bias Bay	517	Golok	24
Rock	161	— Kelantan	131
Sra, Pulo	89	— Kenaman	23
Sre cham	160	— Kumama	79
Sre Umbel River	162	—— Libih	129
———, town	162	—— Pontean	76
Srirachi, town, pier	178	—— Sedili Kechil	70
Stags Shoal	108	Semarak	24
Standard time	38	— Siatin	128
Stanley Bay	498	—— Sokong	134
—————, storm signals 49	2, 499	Telupín	133
Starling Inlet	513	—— Tringano	129
Staunch Island, light	380	Sunning, Railway	36
Staunton Island	433	Surprise Channel	296
Steep-cliff Head	506	Island	288
Steep Island, Hongkong	504	—— Pass, Nau chau	351
—— Point, west river	383	Susu, Gunong	157
Stokes Point	509	Swashway Bank Light	426
Stonecutters Anchorage	474	Syah Islet	424
—— Channel	474	Sylphes, Port des	294
Island	474	Symons Island	438
Storm (Spratly) Island	106	Sz, village	399
Stozenfields	202	Szachuan	36
Stragglers, The	376	Sze cheng kiang	397
Stripe Cliff	378	Szemao, treaty port	36
Strung Streng River	192	Szi pi	384
Stuin Pulo	103		406

T.	Page.	I.	Page.
Ta Ho Lagoon	242	Tai Long Head, signal station	476
Ta huang kiang	389	lum Islet	371
, town	389	lung Channel, rocks	454
, distances to	387	, town	455
ki tan	391	mei Beacon, light	443
—— kio miao rapid	388	Point	443
— kut, Koh	143	, tide gauge	443
—— lao pai	281	— mong Islet	371
miao	407	mui Anchorage	478
— miu hap	407	— mun shan Mountains	507
— sha	382	oa Bay, point	366
shik leng	408	—— pai tau	519
— uang Miao	392	— pak Island	464
— yin tan	390	— ping fu	398
Table Head, Cochin	151	, telegraph	398
— Hill, Singora	135	— po, Tolo	57
	512		492
Island, Mirs Bay			
——, Sylphes	294		391
Islet, Port Shelter	504	—— sha tau, railway	448
Mount, Hainan	317	shan Bay, island	424
——, Fai Tsi Long	295	shek barrier	443
——, Van Fong	218	, lights	443
— Rock, Brothers	156	, tide gauge	443
, Panjang	147	shek lung Rock	434
————, Samit	163	sing Cham (Pedro Blanco)	521
———, Samui	139	— ta mi Channel 413	
Table-top Hill	134	——————————————————————————————————————	413
Tachin, Menam	145	—— tong Gorge	399
, railway to	28	—— tub Rock	434
Tagne Island	219	u kong	503
Tah Kai Islet	142	—— wok	366
Tai. (See also Ti.)		wu san	367
Tai chan tao	300	yu shan Mountains	507
—— chau	319	Taifong, Hainan	314
————, Anchorages	319	Taiho wan	<b>502</b>
—— chuk chau	364	Taikam Island	370
—— co tai Channel	287	Taikoo Docks	486
fu (Tiger) Island	433	, repairs	489
——————————————————————————————————————	371	Tailung Creek	458
—— ho, Island, village	422	Taipa Island	419
—— kiang	189	Taiping chau	381
kok, Lamma Island	465	, city, Junk Creek	431
, Si kiang	371	———— Hii	381
chan Channel	454	Taipung Harbor	516
tau Entrance	427	Taitam Bay, head	497
	426	, beacons	498
Island	426	, directions	498
tsui, Hongkong	486	, tides	498
Ku chau	464	, village	498
——— —— Mount	211	Taito chau	477
Kweichan Rock	434	Taiwan, city, Lienchau	407
— lo Island, Ladrones	416	Tak hing, city	383
—— lok Island	416	— tu, Pe Kiang.	409
	,	,	

	Page.		Page.
Takekian, village	166	Tanjong Panunyut	79
Talong kong	371	—— Patani	134
—— pai	477	Pedass	95
Tale Sap	136	—— Pelor	80
Taluei, Koh	139	—— Penanang	85
Tam Island	224	Penunjoh	79
chau Channel, Canton 42	6, 452	Suka, Selat	98
, to Blenheim Pas-		—— Tembiling (Temiling)	78
sage	452	— Tuman	96
, tidal streams	452	Tankan shao	299
Tam chau Lagoon, Hainan	329	Tankwala Island	148
	329	Tanshan Railway	448
, town	330	Tascien Island	355
Tam kiang khau	196	Tap mun	510
— kon sha	312	Tapanham, Klong	186
— kong chau.	380	Tarote, Lem	176
- Kwam Point, river	242	Tat chin Island, bank	357
Tam Kwam, village			357
o shan	471		
sui, settlement, Nau chau		, tidal streams	7 <b>6, 4</b> 78
Tembin (Tembine) Dule	354		478
Tambin (Tambing), Pulo	90	—— Point	477
Tamkan Island	413	— Rock	477
Tammassu Island	150	Tau, Koh	139
Tamtu Island	<b>4</b> 78	kai, west river	382
Tan (rapid).		—— kao, village	459
chu, town	388	Passage	139
hai Island	350	— tau jau	510
kwi, village	<b>2</b> 34	Tauling Island, flat	433
—— shin sha Patches	327	Taya Islands	322
—— tze ki	409	, anchorage	322
Tanapuniat, Pulo	99	Tejah, Pulo	77
Tane, Lem	143	Tekere Island	151
Tang, Koh	148	Teksia Peak	150
chau	388	Teksu Island	150
kwan, Kau	135	Telaga, Pulo	91
Lang Islet	142	Kechil	91
Tanjong Point. (See also proper		Telanchau, anchorage	328
name.)		Teliban, Pulo	90
Baik	96	Telinjan, Pulo	90
Baluntao	99	Teloh Islet	142
—— Dungan	80	Telok (bay, see also proper name).	
Gelang	78	— Ayer Bandong	92
— Gliga besar	79	Bini	96
— Jibang	84	Bara	97
— Julan	83	Berserah	78
— Kangor	97	—— Dalam, Selat	100
Katong.	96	Kwala	84
Kirpinis	94	— Luing	96
— Laboha	80	Mampoh (Mampo)	85
Linang.	84	— Mata.	93
Mingar	86	Neratu	84
— Muning	94	— Niulwan	93
Pooks	80	Doo.	95 95
Packa	80		ษอ

	Page.		Page
Telok Rambutan	95	Tide tables	2,
Telupin, village	133	Tien Fung	31
, Sungi	133	Kiang	19
Tem, village	166	— Pak Harbor	36
Temian, Pulo	89	, anchorage, outer	36
Temiling, Tanjong	78	dangers	36
Temple Islet	157	directions	36
Teng chau	387	, tides	36
— hsien	387	, town	36
————, distance to	386	Tien sha Peninsula	24
— Yeuh, treaty port	36	, storm signals	5
Tenga, Bukit	79	Tien Yen Road	30
Teo shin sha	312		30
Terempa Cove	96	Tifu River	
-		<u>:</u>	24
—, village	96 514	Tiger Island, Cape Lay	25
Teyi Point	514	, Canton River	43
Thai Binh Mouth	270	————, Vine Point	21
Than Hoa, town	266	Tigers Claw	43
The-Kan River	244	Tooth, Tonkin	25
Thetis Channel	103	Tikok, village	30
— Reef	102	Tikoro Islet	130
Thi Nai Harbor	239	Tikus Rock	7:
— Tu Island, reefs	111	Timatao Island	28
Thint shui wan	500	Time signal, Hongkong	483
Thom, Hon	156	, Haifong	270
Thornton Rock	518	standard	38
Three-fathoms Cove	510	Timosa Bank	35
———— Patch, Hainan	341	Tin gau kiang	397
Three Gates (Sa mun)	418	Tingah Bay	7
Rapid, west river	392	Tingi, Pulo	72
— Hundred Peaks	144		72
—— Islands rapid	<b>39</b> 8	, rocks	72
Kings	230	Tingkao, village	47
—— Peaks (Rubado)	260	Tinhosa Island	319
Summits	255	, False	319
Three-tree Anchorage	326	Tioman, Pulo	74
Triple Islet	518	, tides	74, 75
Throat Gates	466	Tip chau	365
Thu dau mot	196	Tir Island	303
Thuan An, anchorage	251	Tit ngao Point	381
Thumb Islet, Hainan	330	Titau Peninsula	509
Ti fung kioh	363	Tizard Bank, reef	109
— tung, east river	460	, anchorage	109
Ti tung	397	— Islands	109
— wan Cape	209	Tki, Koh	172
, shoals off	209	Tlu, Koh.	143
Tian moi Island	157	Toan Channel	223
Tiao Tan Island	307	Tobong, Selat.	94
		9.	94 74
Tibu, Kampong Tidal streams	134	Toh Kyah Bay	
	8	Toi ko ke tou	377
Tide Cove, Tolo Harbor	510	Tokong Islet	89
, railway	511	— Belayer	93
—— Islet, Port Shelter	505	— Blinao	92

	Page.		Page.
Tokong Malangbaru	87	Tourane Cape, light	247
— Nannas	92	— River	248
Tolie Island, Malay Peninsula	76	, town	249
Tolo Harbor, Mirs Bay	511	, population	247
, railway	511	Tourelle Islet	289
———, settlement, storm signals	511	Tower Hill, Canton River	431
, storm signals	511	Town Island	506
North Channel	510	Tra Ko feland	306
Tomb Point, Hainan	323	—— li	269
Ton mei koi	324	— li — lo	274
Tondu Peak	224	Trai Boi, Hon	158
Tong Chong, or Safe Bay	340	Trali, mouth of Song Ka	268
ho Island, Ladrones	414	Tram Point.	210
Tong Kin, village, Hainan	317	Tran, Hon	241
Tonkin Gulf	254	, Lakh	266
, aspect	254	Trang (Omega), Hon	155
, north shore	307	Trapeze Point	233
, tides and tidal streams 254		Tre (Teksu), Hon	150
, Vigias	254	Tré Island (Hon Lon)	223
, winds 48	5. 254	— pied Island	223
	46	Treaty ports	375
territory, general remarks	34	Tree Head, West River	383
, climate	34	—— Island, Amphitrite	121
— , communication	35	Islet, Bias Bay	517
	31	—— Islet, Lantau	423
, telegraph	35	, Samit	171
, telegraph	34	Rock, Bulua	151
— Valley	268	, Tung Plong	174
Tong Krok	139	Tree-a-top Islet	517
— Ku Harbor	424	Trengganu (Tringano) State	23
——————————————————————————————————————	423	Trident Shoal	112
——————————————————————————————————————	424	Tringano Head	129
— Ku tan	389		23
— Lan, Lem	143	—— State, Sungi	129
—— sah Bank	342	Ulu	23
— sui mun Hill	333	Trio Islets	504
——————————————————————————————————————	333	Triple Islet, Bias Bay	518
Woh, Lem	333 142	—— Peak, Toan Channel	223
Tonken Mount			
Tonkon Mount	321	Triple Peak Range	144 120
Formt	321	Triton Island	474
————, caution	321	Tuelit Dulit	
Tonkwa Island	370	Trokit, Bukit	130
Tonos Islets and rocks	73	Tron, Koh	155
Tonze Rock	455	Tru, Hon	264
Toque Island	289	Truan, Hon	261
Tortoise Head	412	Truoi Lagoon	251
—— Island	225	Truock, Hon	149
Tortue Island, La	296	Truong, Hon	149
—— (Hara) Islet	242	— Dong, village	224
Touffe Island	294	— Xo, village	267
Touffu Rock	162	Tsang chau	518
Tourane Bay	247	, tides	520
————, aspect	247	Tseki Creek	434
79795—15——37			

	Page.		Page.
Tseu, Hon	258	Tung min	461
, anchorage	258	—— Plong Bay	174
Tshim shan Island	299	—— wan to	512
Tsi mi wan, Kaipong	412	Tung Yai Bank	165
Tsieng Mui Island	305	Bay	165
Mun	297		166
Island	297	Tungeran, Pulo	98
, Little	298	Tungku shan	321
san Island	298	Tuni ang Group	515
Tsin ha kuan	396		515
shui wan	499		515
Tsing chao chau Island	391	Tuok ai xa	210
Tsing chau la	512	Tupu tan	391
cheuk	512	Turenne, breakers	320
—— yuen, town	406	Turtle (Teksu) Island	150
, communication	406	Turtle-back Island	129
Tsinku Islet	520	Tweed Point	401
Tso Kiang (long chau)	397	Twin Rocks, west river	385
, navigability	397	— Black Rocks	320
Tsui lan am pai	499	Twins, Bias Bay	517
Tsz nai Island, rock	452	(Sisi)	156
Tu hien Pass	251	Tuo chau, west river	395
—— lok heu	384	—— lu hiu	398
Spit	384	— mein hiu	398
pu tan	391	Two Brothers	303
ut, Hon	257	—— Paps	238
	257	Typhoons, general remarks	46
Tua moi Bay	251	— practical rules	50
Tuching Reach (Do sing)	384	, signals	52
Tui lien shan	377	, Hongkong	490
— mui chau	512	See also Storm signals.	200
kok	325	. See wee Storm bighters.	
— tiao Islet	308	U.	
Tujoh, Gunong	85	U shek kok	513
Tuju Island	81	Ubon, Mekong River	193
Tulai, Pulo	84	—, Boratit Shoal	163
Tulu, Koh	170	Uching, Pulo	93
Tuman, Anamba Islands	97	Udan, Pulo	85
—, Tanjong	96	—, town	191
— Fort, Lei chau	350	Ujong, Pulo	90
Tumulus, The	359	Uli pai Reef	299
Tung, Bukit	133	Um cheun, town	362
— bo chau	500	— po, village	311
chung Bay, village	423	Unchau, Lamma Island	465
huen	387	Ungo Mount	330
Kaben Bay	169	Unicorn Rock	512
- Kiang	459	Uniform system of buoyage	38
— Klang	459	Union Island	285
			465
Kitea Bay	173 460	Unkok, Lamma Upper Paklat	184
Kong, river		Urmston Road	424
, village	397	Urn Island	505
Kun River	458	Ushek Point	312
, town	459		28
lung Island	478	Utaradit	40

<b>v.</b>	Page.	,	Page.
Vai han River	306	Volta Bank	244
Vaico Pass	291	, overfalls	244
, Grande	196	Channel	287
Vaiko branches of Mekong	189	Vong, Hon, Tonkin	265
Vamnao Canal	191	Vuladdore Reef	120
Van Fong Bay	227	Vulcan Rock.	222
Shon	265	Vung (bay).	
Uk Mouth	270	Bak Point	241
Vang Chau, creek	280	—— Chao Port	
tau town	197		237
Vanguard Bank	105	, peninsula	235
Van hai, village	285	— Chua Cape	257
Varela Cape	231	, anchorage	258
, anchorage	232	Gang Bay	217
, False	217	— Han Bay	259
, Pulo, Malay Peninsula	77	Kit, anchorage	244
, banks near	77	— La Anchorage	236
Variation of compass	17	— Lam Road	236
Vat, Hon, Tonkin	264	Moe, village	241
Vauban Bank, Hainan	342	Mong Point	238
Veer Islet	148	— Nie Point, South	237
Vereker Banks	127	—— Ro	231
Vert Cape	228	—— Tang, peak	241
Verte Hill	238	—— Thuk	227
—— Island, Bai ma lieng	233	—— Trikh Bay	237
, Casque Pass	292	———— Point	238
, Fai Tsi Long	294	village	238
	294 301	, village	238 238
		—— —, village	238 238
	301	, village	
	301 304	———, village	
	301 304 220	—— —, village	238
, Fai Tsi Long, Kua mo, Fu tai mun  —— Point, Kam Ranh  Vesatri Bank	301 304 220 166	——————————————————————————————————————	238 476 476
	301 304 220 166 503	————, village	238 476 476
	301 304 220 166 503 488		238 476 476 492
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148 148
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270		238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197	— —, village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302 99
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238	— — , village	238 476 476 492 148 167 124 116 302 99 507
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213	— —, village  — Vong, village  — W.  Wag lan, light — fog and signal stations — —, storm signals	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254		238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 474
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254 238	— — , village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 474 455
	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254 238 236	— — , village	238 476 476 492 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 455 107 392 387
— — , Fai Tsi Long. — — , Kua mo. — — , Fu tai mun. — Point, Kam Ranh. Vesatri Bank. Victor Rock. Victoria City, Hongkong. — Peak, signal station. Victory Shoal. Vien Tian. Vietri. Vigias. Village Rock, Mirs Bay. Ville de Paris Bank. Ville du Cap. Vin Hoa, village. Viné Point, anchorage. Ving Banh, village. — ho, village. — ho, village. — La Bay. Vinh, capital.	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254 238 236 263	— — , village	238 476 476 492 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 455 107 392 387
— — , Fai Tsi Long. — — , Kua mo. — — , Fu tai mun. — Point, Kam Ranh. Vesatri Bank. Victor Rock. Victoria City, Hongkong. — Peak, signal station. Victory Shoal. Vien Tian. Vietri. Vigias. Village Rock, Mirs Bay. Ville de Paris Bank. Ville du Cap. Vin Hoa, village. Viné Point, anchorage. Ving Banh, village. — ho, village. — La Bay. Vinh, capital. — Long. — te Canal. Vink hi, village.	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254 238 236 263 193	— — , village	238 476 476 492 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 455 107 392 387
— — , Fai Tsi Long. — — , Kua mo. — — , Fu tai mun. — Point, Kam Ranh. Vesatri Bank. Victor Rock. Victoria City, Hongkong. — Peak, signal station. Victory Shoal. Vien Tian. Vietri. Vigias. Village Rock, Mirs Bay. Ville de Paris Bank. Ville du Cap. Vin Hoa, village. Viné Point, anchorage. Viné Point, anchorage. Vinh, capital. — La Bay. Vinh, capital. — Long. — te Canal. Vink hi, village. Volant Rock.	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254 238 236 263 193 191		238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 455 107 392 387 511
— — , Fai Tsi Long. — — , Kua mo. — — , Fu tai mun. — Point, Kam Ranh. Vesatri Bank. Victor Rock. Victoria City, Hongkong. — Peak, signal station. Victory Shoal. Vien Tian. Vietri. Vigias. Village Rock, Mirs Bay. Ville de Paris Bank. Ville du Cap. Vin Hoa, village. Viné Point, anchorage. Ving Banh, village. — ho, village. — La Bay. Vinh, capital. — Long. — te Canal. Vink hi, village.	301 304 220 166 503 488 472 170 192 270 254 512 203 197 238 213 254 238 236 263 193 191 217	— — , village	238 476 476 492 148 148 369 167 124 116 302 99 507 474 455 107 392 387 511 508

	Page.		Page.
Wang kong	405	West Lamma, tidal streams	466
Kong hiu	400	Water Island	416
—— la tan	400	Western Cap	332
lan Rock	434	Channel, Bangkok	180
—— li, village	458	or Flora Temple Reef	109
mun, bank	426	Whale Mountains	507
, creek	426	Rocks, Harlem Bay	521
, lights	426	Whaler Point	518
Wangchuk kop hoi	510	Whampoa Barrier, lights	438
Wantong Islands, light	432	—— Channel	435
, anchorage	432	, anchorage	436
Warburg Rock	509	, dangers	437
Wardroper Island	454	————, directions	439
Wasp Island	369	, lights	435
Wat, Lem	177	, tide gauge	437
Water, caution	41	, tides	437
Water Island, West River	377	City	436
, Kamput	157	— to Canton	437
— Islets, West River	376	Whitcomb Island	454
Waterfall Bay	502	White Cove, Long Harbor	509
Watering Bay, Namo	368	— Head, Tolo	510
Waterwitch Rock	508	Point, Hongkong	474
Watson Island	436	— Rock, Anamba	87
, proh. anchorage	436	, Condore	115
Wau, Koh	139	, Heung chau	422
Wave Rock	506	, Lantau	424
Weather; see also Winds and	000	, Nhatrang	225
Weather	41	Mirs Ray	514
Webster Rock	385	, Panjang	147
Wedge Hill	132	, Riem	160
Wei sam chau	506	, Tung Plong	174
Weights and measures	хi	Rocks, Anamba	96
Weser Shoal	194	, Ladrones	416
West Arm, Long Harbor	509	————, Samui	138
— Bank, Hainan Strait	344	—— Horse Hill	311
—— Channel, Samui	138	—— Stone Mouth	379
—— Island, Samui	138	—— Tailed Dragon Island	282
——————————————————————————————————————	152	Wizard Rocks	370
, Sama Bay	324	Wilder Passage	454
—— Point, Bangkok	180	Winds and weather, general re-	101
West Point, Koh Kram	174	marks	41
——, Panjang	147	, gales	51
Reef, Hongkong	501	, gales, northeast monsoon.	42
— (London) reef	108	, northeast monsoon	42
River (see Si kiang)	371	——————————————————————————————————————	46
Rock, Lo shu shan	300	, typhoon signals	
— Au chau	432	Wing on, village	382
— Brother, Hainan	316	Wizard Rocks	370
——————————————————————————————————————	156	Wo lo tsui	466
— Junk Shoal, Bangkok	180	Wok tuk pai	506
— Lamma Channel	462	Wong cheong.	398
——————————————————————————————————————	466	— chu chuk	393 465
— , fairway	466	— chu kok	465
-, 1a11 way	400	thu kok	400

	Page.		Page.
Wong Chong Creek	460	Yeung chau, Tolo	511
ka san River	460	, hot village	400
— kam Island	376	Yi Bluff	504
—— man chau	508	hong kiu	397
— mu Island	414	—— li, village	396
shih	407	—— pai, Port Shelter	505
Wongsha Rock	439	Yie, Kau	136
Woodcock Rock	455	Yim tim	510
Woodmans Reef	512	Ying Khoa, village	326
Woody Island, Amphitrite	122	tak	408
Wreck-marking vessels	40	— te, Pe kiang	408
Wu chau fu	385	Yoh Nok, Kok	173
, communication	<b>3</b> 86	Yong chu tan sin	387
, distances	386 -	ngan	388
river level	386	—— River	387
tidos	<b>3</b> 86	Kong, village	367
—— ——, regulations	370	Young Hebe Shoal	512
to Nanning fu	387	Yu Islets	130
— Kiang (Liau chau)	399	Kiang or Nan ning River	389
shek (Shik), Pe kiang	409	———, rapids near	391
Wung Kum Island	376	—— Lin kan Bay	323
-		, anchorage	323
<b>X.</b>		Point	323
Xich Ram	210	Yü yuen River	409
Xuan Dai Point	234	Yueh-Han	36
, anchorage	236	Yuen River	387
Xung Bay	227	—— tsz chek	512
Xuong Huan	226	Yuet sing3	7 <b>2</b> , 383
<b>Y.</b>		Yum tin pai	505
Ya, Lem	171	Yung Islet	142
Yaichu Bay, fort	325	ki, town, delta	455
—, town, winds	325	, junction	455
Yam tiao fu	308	hsun hien	392
Yan cha tan	387	, telegraph	392
Yang Matak	93	, distance to	387
— P'u Harbor	329	—— long yuen	397
uei hiu	397	yuen	408
—— tse, west river	385	shan, city	407
Yapp, Lakh	266	Yunnan tableland	268
Yat mun, Lema	413	, railway	36
Yau i chau	424	Yusun Shoal	117
—— ma ti	511	Yuyu Bank, beacons	358
tong Bay	479	Swatchway	358
Ye chau Channel, Lema	413	Islet	287
Island	413	Rock	287
Yeh Lee Island	422		
Yellow Reach	455	Z.	
Von fo Mission	410	Zanna Pasa	199

# PRICE LIST OF BOOKS ON SALE BY THE HYDRO-GRAPHIC OFFICE.

Catalogue No.	Title of book.	Price.
	SAILING DIRECTIONS.	
73	Newfoundland and Labrador. Third edition, 1909	\$1.00
84	Mexican and Central American Pilot (Pacific Coast). From the United States to Colombia, including the Gulfs of California and Panama. 1915.	. 60
88	East Coast of South America. Third edition. 1904	1. 20
89	Do. Supplement. 1908. (Under revision)	. 15 . 80
96	Do. Supplements. 1909 and 1912. (Under revision) Coast of British Columbia, including Juan de Fuca Strait, Van- couver, and Queen Charlotte Islands. 1907. (Under revision)	. 20
99	Bay of Fundy, Southeast Coast of Nova Scotia, and South and East Coasts of Cape Breton Island. Third edition. 1906. (Under	
100	revision)	1.00
100 102	Gulf and River St. Lawrence. Third edition. 1908 North Atlantic Islands, and Africa from Cape Spartel to Cape	1.00
102	Palmas. Fourth edition. 1908	1.00
105	West Coast of Africa, from Cape Palmas to Cape of Good Hope, and	
7004	the adjacent islands. Third edition. 1908	1.00
108A 108B	Lake Superior and Saint Marys River. 1906	. 45
108B 108C	Lake Michigan, Green Bay, and Strait of Mackinac. 1906 Lake Huron and the St. Clair and Detroit Rivers. 1907	
108D	Lakes Erie and Ontario, and the St. Lawrence River to Montreal.	. 60
	Lake Supplement. 1908. (Supplement to Nos. 108A, 108B, 108C, and 108D).  Asiatic Pilot. Vol. I. East Coast of Siberia, Sakhalin Island, and	. 15
122	Asiatic Pilot. Vol. I. East Coast of Siberia, Sakhalin Island, and Korea. 1909.	. 45
123	Asiatic Pilot. Vol. II. The Japan Islands 1910	. 60
124	Asiatic Pilot. Vol. III. Coast of China, Yalu River to Hong- kong, and Island of Formosa. 1909.	. 60
125	Asiatic Pilot. Vol. IV. Singapore Strait to Hongkong. (In press)	
126	Asiatic Pilot. Vol. V. Sunda Strait and the Southern approaches to China Sea, with West and North Coasts of Borneo and offlying dangers. (In press).	
128	lying dangers. (In press)  West Indies Pilot. Vol. I. Bermudas, Bahamas, and the Greater Antilles. 1913	. 60
129	West Indies Pilot. Vol. II. Lesser Antilles and Coast of Venezuela. 1914.	
132	North Coast of France Pilot. 1915. (In press)	
133	North Coast of France Pilot. 1915. (In press)	
135	(In press)  North Sea Pilot. Eastern Shores from Dunkerque to the Skaw.  (In press)	
144	British Islands Pilot. Vol. I. South Coast of England and the	
149	English Channel. (In preparation)  British Islands Pilot. Vol. VI. The Faeroes, Shetlands, and Orkney Islands and the North and East Coasts of Scotland. (In	1
150	preparation).  British Islands Pilot. Vol. VII. East Coasts of Scotland and England from Fife Ness to North Foreland. (In press)	
57		· · · · ·

## PRICE LIST.

## Price list of books on sale by the Hydrographic Office—Continued.

Catalogue No.	Title of book.	Price.
	MANUALS, TABLES, ETC.	
9	American Practical Navigator. Originally by Nathaniel Bowditch, LL. D., etc. Revised 1914. (Including the "Useful Tables")	<b>\$</b> 2, 2 <b>5</b>
9:II	ful Tables")	<b>\$</b> 2. 25
	Part II of No. 9)	1. 25
30	List of Lights. Vol. I. Coasts of North and South America (except the United States) and the West Indies and the Pacific Islands.	
31	List of Lights. Vol. II. South and East Coasts of Asia and Africa and the East Indies, Australia, Tasmania, and New Zealand. 1914	. 30
32	Lists of Lights. Vol. III. West Coast of Africa and Europe, and the Mediterranean Sea, including the Adriatic and Black Seas, and Sea of Azov. 1914.	. 30
71	Azimuth Tables, giving the True Bearings of the Sun at Intervals of Ten Minutes between Sunrise and Sunset, for Parallels of Latitude between 61° N. and 61° S. 1909. (Can also be applied to the moon, planets, and stars as long as their declina-	
o-	tions do not exceed 23° N. or S.)	1.00
87	International Code of Signals. 1914	1. 50
90	Development of Great Circle Sailing. 1899	1.00
95	Average Form of Isolated Submarine Peaks, etc. 1890	. 30
103 107	Submarine Cables. 1892	. 30
114	Contributions to Terrestrial Magnetism. 1897	. 30
117	Contributions to Terrestrial Magnetism. 1897	. 15
120	tances by sea)	1. 50
127	Star Identification Tables, giving simultaneous values of declination and hour angle for values of latitude, altitude and azimuth ranging from 0° to 80° in latitude and altitude and 0° to 180° in azimuth. 1909.	. 75
131	Cuban Longitude Report of 1911–12	. 10

#### SUPPLEMENTARY PUBLICATIONS.

Notice to Mariners, weekly, giving changes in aids to navigation (lights, buoyage, harbor improvements), dangers to navigation (rocks, shoals, banks, bars), important new soundings, and, in general, all such facts as affect mariners' charts, manuals, and pilots or sailing directions.

Hydrographic Bulletin, weekly, gives more detailed facts than the Pilot Charts regarding ice, wrecks, and derelicts; also items on port facilities, use of oil to calm the sea, and miscellany of use and interest to mariners.

The Notices and Bulletins are obtainable on application to the branch hydrographic offices or to the main office in Washington.

Their scope includes the several oceans and the Great Lakes.

Reprints of Hydrographic Information.—These are pamphlets designed to keep in handy form articles and information scattered through the Pilot Charts and Bulletins. Obtainable at the Hydrographic Office or its branch offices. The following titles have appeared to date:

No. 1.—Port Facilities.
No. 2.—North Atlantic Ice Movements.
No. 3.—Use of Oil to Calm the Sea.

No. 4.—Port Facilities No. 2.

No. 5.—Submarine Sound Signals.

No. 6.—Compass Work on the Great Lakes.

No. 7.—Port Facilities No. 3.
No. 8.—Questions and Answers.
No. 9.—The Origin and Mission of the Hydrographic Office.

No. 10.—The Use and Interpretation of Charts and Sailing Directions.

No. 11.—Production of Navigational Charts.

No. 12.—Great Lakes Port Facilities.

No. 13.—Cyclonic Storms.

No. 14.—Questions and Answers No. 2. No. 15.—Port Facilities No. 4 (North Atlantic Ocean). No. 16.—Port Facilities No. 5 (North Pacific Ocean).

No. 17.—Port Facilities No. 6 (Indian Ocean). No. 18.—Port Facilities No. 7 (South Pacific Ocean).

No. 19.—Port Facilities No. 8 (South Atlantic Ocean). No. 20.—Port Facilities No. 9 (North Atlantic Ocean).

No. 21.—Questions and Answers No. 3.
No. 22.—Port Facilities No. 10 (North and South Atlantic Oceans).
No. 23.—Port Facilities No. 11 (Pacific and Indian Oceans).

No. 24.—North Atlantic Ice Patrols.

572

### BRANCH HYDROGRAPHIC OFFICES.

#### These offices are located as follows:

Boston	
NEW YORKRooms 30	1-302, Maritime Exchange, 78-80 Broad Street.
PHILADELPHIA	
Baltimore	
	Second floor, Customhouse.
NEW ORLEANS	Room 319, Customhouse.
Galveston	Rooms 401-402, City National Bank Building.
	Merchants' Exchange.
SEATTLE	Lowman Building.
SAULT SAINTE MARIE	
Duluth	

The branch offices do not sell any publications, but issue the Pilot Charts, Hydrographic Bulletins, Notices to Mariners, and Reprints to connecting observers

prints to cooperating observers.

They are supplied with the latest information and publications pertaining to navigation, and masters and officers of vessels are cordially invited to visit them and consult freely the officers in charge. Office hours, 9 a. m. to 4.30 p. m.

Note.—By authority of the Governor of the Panama Canal some of the duties of branch hydrographic offices are performed by the captain of the port at Cristobal and the captain of the port at Balboa. A full set of reference charts and sailing directions may be consulted at the Cristobal office and a more limited set at Balboa, and shipmasters may receive the Pilot Charts, Notice to Mariners, and Hydrographic Bulletin in return for marine and meteorological data reports. Observers' blanks and comparisons of navigational instruments may be obtained at the same time.

Digitized by Google

## AGENTS FOR THE SALE OF HYDROGRAPHIC OFFICE PUBLICATIONS.

IN THE UNITED STATES AND ISLANDS.

ABERDEEN, WASH.—The Evans Drug Co.
BALBOA HEIGHTS, CANAL ZONE.—The Captain of the Port.
BALTIMORE, MD.—John E. Hand & Sons Co., 17 South Gay Street.
BOSTON, MASS.—Charles C. Hutchinson, 152 State Street.
W. E. Hadlock & Co., 132 State Street.
BUFFALO, N. Y.—Howard H. Baker & Co., 18-26 Terrace.
CHARLESTON, S. C.—Henry B. Kirk, 10 Broad Street.
CHICAGO, ILL.—George B. Carpenter & Co., 440 Wells Street.
CLEVELAND, OHIO.—BUTOWS Brothers Co., 633 Euclid Avenue.
CRISTOBAL, CANAL ZONE.—The Captain of the Port.
DULUTH. MINN.—Joseph Vandervacht. DULUTH, MINN.—Joseph Vanderyacht.

EASTPORT, ME.—Bucknam-Colwell Co., 48-50 Water Street.

GALVESTON, TEX.—Charles F. Trube, 2415 Market Street.

HONOLULU, HAWAII.—Hawaiian News Co.

JACKSONVILLE, FLA.—H. & W. B. Drew Co., 45 West Bay Street. KETCHIKAN, ALASKA.—Ryus Drug Co. KEY WEST, FLA.—Alfred Brost. MANILA, PHILIPPINES.—Erlanger & Galinger, Post Office Building.

MOBILE, ALA.—E. O. Zadek Jewelry Co.

NEW ORLEANS, LA.—Woodward, Wight & Co., Howard Avenue and Constance Street.

Rolf Seeberg Ship Chandlery Co., P. O. Box 541.

NEWPORT NEWS, VA.—W. L. Shumate & Co., 133 Twenty-fifth Street.

NEW YORK, N. Y.—T. S. & J. D. Negus, 140 Water Street.

Lohn Blies & Co. 128 Front Street John Bliss & Co., 128 Front Street. Michael Rupp & Co., 112 Broad Street. R. Merrill's Sons, 66 South Street. C. S. Hammond & Co., 30 Church Street. Norfolk, Va.—William Freeman, 304 Main Street.

Pensacola, Fla.—McKenzie Oerting & Co., 603 South Palafox Street.

Philadelphia, Pa.—Riggs & Bro., 310 Market Street.
John E. Hand & Sons Co., 224 Walnut Street.

Portland, Me.—Wm. Senter & Co., 51 Exchange Street.
Port Townsend, Wash.—W. J. Fritz, 320 Water Street.
San Diego, Cal.—Arey-Jones Co., 933 Fourth Street.
San Francisco, Cal.—Geo. E. Butler, Alaska Commercial Building.

Louis Weule Co., 6 California Street.

H. J. H. Lorenzen, 12 Market Street. A. Lietz Co., 632-634 Commercial Street.

SAN PEDRO, CAL.—Marine Hardware Co., 509 Beacon Street. SAVANNAH, GA.—The Paulsen Co., 25 East Bay Street. SEATTLE, WASH.—Lowman & Hanford Co., 616-620 First Avenue.

Max Kuner Co., 94 Columbia Street.

Tacoma, Wash.—Cole-Martin Co., 926 Pacific Avenue.

Tampa, Fla.—Tampa Book & News Co., 513 Franklin Street.

Washington, D. C.—W. H. Lowdermilk & Co., 1424 F Street NW.

Wm. Ballantyne & Sons, 1409 F Street NW.

Brentanos, F and Twelfth Streets NW.

WILMINGTON, N. C.—Thos. F. Wood, 1-5 Princess Street.

#### AGENTS ABROAD.

Belize, British Honduras.—A. E. Morlan. Berlin, Germany.—Dietrich Reimer, Wilhelmstrasse 29, SW. 48. Canso, N. S.—A. N. Whitman & Son. CANSO, N. S.—A. N. Writman & Son.

Habana, Cuba.—Hillebrand y Mencio, 10 Mercaderes.

Halifax, N. S.—Creighton & Marshall, Ordnance Square.

Hamburg, Germany.—Eckhardt & Messtorff, Steinhöft I.

Montreal, Canada.—Harrison & Co., 53 Metcalfe Street.

Port Hawkesbury, C. B. I., N. S.—Alexander Bain.

Quebec, Canada.—T. J. Moore & Co., 118-120 Mountain Hill.

St. John, N. B.—J. & A. McMillan, 98 Prince William Street.





WILSON ANNEX AISLE 59